**Bartholinus anatomy; made from the precepts of his father, and from the observations of all modern anatomists; together with his own ... In four books and four manuals ... Also two epistles of the circulation of the [chyle and] blood / [by J. Walaeus] Being part of the first volumn of the Physitians Library, published by Nich. Culpeper Gent. and Abdiah Cole.**

### Contributors

Bartholin, Thomas, 1616-1680.
Walaeus, Johannes, 1604-1649.
Cole, Abdiah, approximately 1610-approximately 1670.
Culpeper, Nicholas, 1616-1654.

### Publication/Creation

London : P. Cole, 1662.

### Persistent URL

https://wellcomecollection.org/works/hh84rwz2

### License and attribution



Wellcome Collection
183 Euston Road
London NW1 2BE UK
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722
E library@wellcomecollection.org
https://wellcomecollection.org


BARTHOLIN
ANATOMY
1662

CE|-|- +Bi E|CE|-



BARTHOLIN, T

could these have been printed together?

fol. $A^2$(-1), B-$Z^2$, Aa-$Zz^2$, $Aaa^2$(-Aaa2), Aaaa-$Ssss^2$, $Tttt^2$(-Tttt2)

8 ll., pp.169, 301-377. (Lacks one leaf)

329, 333-

NB: The leaf missing in quire A was presumably the half-title or licence leaf. In spite of the gap in signatures between Aaa and Aaaa, there does not seem to be any text missing judging from the description of the contents on the title page. According to the title page there should be 153 "figures"; I could only count 73 illustrations. Perhaps the former figure refers to actual objects illustrated.

or a publisher's list as in 1668 ed. Could the list pasted to verso of t.p. be this list?

# Bartholinus Anatomy;

MADE

From the Precepts of his Father, And from the Obſervations of all Modern Anatomiſts; together with his own.

*With one hundred fifty and three* Figures; *cut in Braſs, much larger and better than any have been heretofore printed in Engliſh.*

IN

# FOUR BOOKS

AND

# Four Manuals,

Anſwering to the ſaid Books.

Book I. Of the Lower Belly.
Book II. Of the Middle Venter or Cavity.
Book III. Of the uppermoſt Cavities, *viz.* The Head.
Book IV. Of the Limbs.

*The Four Manuals Anſwering to the four foregoing Books.*

*Manual* I. Of the *Veins*, Anſwering to the Firſt Book of the Lower Belly.
*Manual* II. Of the *Arteries*, Anſwering to the Second Book of the Middle Cavity or Cheſt.
*Manual* III. Of the *Nerves*, Anſwering to the Third Book of the Head.
*Manual* IV. Of the *Bones*, Anſwering to the Fourth Book of the Limbs. *Alſo Two Epiſtles of the Circulation of the Blood.*

Being part of the firſt Volumn of the PHYSITIANS LIBRARY, Publiſhed by *Nich. Culpeper* Gent. And *Abdiah Cole* Doctor of Phyſick.

LONDON
Printed by *Peter Cole* Printer and Book-ſeller at the Sign of the Printing-preſs in Cornhill neer the Royal Exchange. 1662.

# *Physick Books Printed in* London, *by* Peter Cole *at the Exchange.*

1. A GOLDEN Practice of Physick: after a new, easie and plain Method of knowing, foretelling, preventing, and curing all Diseases incident to the body of Man. Ful of proper Observations and Remedies, both of Ancient and Modern Physitians. Being the fruit of one and thirty years Travel, and fifty years Practice of Physick. By Dr. *Plater*, Dr. *Cole*, and *Nich. Culpeper.*

2. *Sennertus* Practical Physick; the first Book in three Parts. 1. Of the *Head.* 2. Of the *Hurt* of the internal senses 3. Of the *external Senses*, in five Sections.

3. *Sennertus* Practical Physick; the second Book, in four Parts. 1. Of the *Jaws* and *Mouth.* 2. Of the *Breast.* 3. Of the *Lungs.* 4. Of the *Heart.*

4. *Sennertus* Third Book of Practical Physick in fourteen Parts, treating, 1. Of the *Stomach* and *Gullet.* 2. Of the *Guts.* 3. Of the *Mesentery, Sweetbread* and *Omentum.* 4. Of the *Spleen.* 5. Of the *Sides.* 6. Of the *Scurvey.* 7 and 8. Of the *Liver.* 9 Of the *Ureters.* 10. Of the *Kidnies.* 11. and 12. Of the *Bladder.* 13. and 14. Of the *Privities* and Generation in men.

5. *Sennertus* fourth Book of Practical Physick in three Parts. *Part* 1. Of the Diseases in the Privities of women. The *first Section.* Of Diseases of the Privie Part, and the Neck of the Womb. The *second Section.* Of the Diseases of the Womb. *Part* 2. Of the Symptoms in the Womb, and from the Womb. The *second Section.* Of the Symptoms in the Terms and other Fluxes of the Womb. The *third Section.* Of the Symptoms that befal al Virgins and Women in their Wombs, after they are ripe of Age. The *fourth Section.* Of the Symptoms which are in Conception. The *fifth Section.* Of the Government of Women with Child, and preternatural Distempers in Women with Child. The *sixth Section.* Of Symptoms that happen in Childbearing The *seventh Section.* Of the Government of Women in Child-bed, and of the Diseases that come after Travel

The *first Section.* Of Diseases of the Breasts. The *second Section.* Of the Symptoms of the Breasts.

To which is added a Tractate of the Cure of Infants. *Part* 1. Of the Diet and Government of Infants. The *second Section.* Of Diseases and Symptoms in Children.

6. *Sennertus* fifth Book of Practical Physick, Or the Art of Chyrurgery in six Parts. 1. Of Tumors. 2. Of Ulcers. 3. Of the Skin, Hair and Nails. 4. Of Wounds, with an excellent Treatise of the Weapon Salve. 5. Of Fractures. 6. Of Luxations.

7. *Sennertus* sixth and last Book of Practical Physick in nine Parts. 1. Of Diseases from occult Qualities in general 2. Of occult, malignant, and venemous Diseases arising from the internal fault of the humors. 3 Of occult Diseases from water, air, and infections, and of infectious diseases. 4. Of the Venereal Pox. 5. Of outward Poysons in general. 6. Of Poysons from Minerals and Metals. 7. Of Poysons from Plants. 8. Of Poysons that come from Living Creatures. 9. Of Diseases by Witchcraft, Incantation, and Charmes.

8. *Sennertus* Treatise of Chymistry, shewing the Agreement and Disagreement of Chymists and Galenists.

9. *Sennertus* two Treatises. 1. Of the Pox. 2. Of the Gout.

10 *Sennertus* thirteen Books of Natural Philosophy: Or the Nature of all things in the world.

11. Twenty four Books of the Practice of Physick, being the Works of that Learned and Renowned Doctor *Lazarus Riverius*, Physitian and Counsellor to the late King, &c.

12. Idea of Practical Physick in twelve Books.

13. *Bartholinus* Anatomy, with very many larger Brass Figures, than any other Anatomy in English.

14. *Vestingus* Anatomy of the Body of Man

15. *Riolanus* Anatomy.

16. A Translation of the New Dispensatory, made by the Colledg of Physitians of *London*, in Folio and in Octavo. Whereunto is added, The Key of *Galen's* Method of Physick.

17. A Directory for Midwives, or a guide for women

18. *Galens* Art of Physick.

19. A new Method both of studying and practising Physick.

20. A Treatise of the Rickets.

21. Medicaments for the Poor: Or, Physick for the Common People.

22. Health for the Rich and Poor, by Diet without Physick

23. One thousand New, Famous and Rare Cures, in Folio and Octavo.

24. A Treatise of Pulses and Urins.

25. A Treatise of Bloodletting, and Cures performed thereby.

26. A Treatise of Scarification, and Cures performed thereby.

27. The English Physitian enlarged.

The *London Dispensatory* in Folio, of a great Caracter in Latin.

# *Divinity Books Printed by* Peter Cole, &c.

Eighteen Several Books of Mr. *Burroughs's* viz. on *Matth.* 11.

1 Christs Call to all those that are weary and heavy laden, to come to him for rest.

2 Christ the great Teacher of Souls that come to him.

3 Christ the Humble Teacher of those that come to him.

4 The only easie way to Heaven.

5 The Excellency of Holy Courage in Evil times.

6 Gospel Reconciliation.

7 The Rare Jewel of Christian Contentment.

8 Gospel-Worship.

9 Gospel-Conversation.

10 A Treatise of *Earthly Mindedness*, and of *Heavenly Mindedness*, and Walking with God. And eight several Books more.

*Twenty one several Books of Mr.* William Bridge, *Collected into two Volumes,* Viz.

1 Scripture light, the most sure Light.

2 Christ in Travel.

3 A lifting up for the cast down.

4 Sin against the Holy Ghost.

5 Sins of Infirmity.

6 The false Apostle tried and discovered.

7 The good and means of Establishment.

8 The great things Faith can do.

9 The great things Faith can suffer.

10 The great Gospel Mystery of the Saints Comfort and Holiness, opened and applied from Christs Priestly Office. And eleven several Books more.

*New Books of Mr. Sydrach Sympson,* VIZ.

1 Of Unbelief, or the want of readiness to lay hold on the comfort given by Christ.

2 Not going to Christ for Life and Salvation, is an exceeding great sin, yet pardonable.

3 Of Faith, *Or*, That believing is receiving Christ; and receiving Christ, is believing.

4 Of Coveteousness.

*Mr.* Hookers *New Books in three Volumes: One in Octavo, and two in Quarto.*

These Eleven New Books of Mr. *Thomas Hooker* made in *New-England*, are attested in an Epistle by Mr. *Thomas Goodwin* and Mr. *Philip Nye*, to be written with the Authors own hand: None being written by himself before. One Volume being a Comment upon Christ's last Prayer, in the seventeenth of *John.*

Mr. *Rogers* on *Naaman* the Syrian, his Disease and Cure discovering the Leprosie of Sin and Self-love, with the Cure, *viz.* Self-denial and Faith.

A Godly and fruitful Exposition, on the first Epistle of *Peter*: By Mr. *John Rogers*, Minister of the word of God at *Dedham* in *Essex.*

An Exposition on the Gospel of the Evangelist St. *Matthew*: By Mr. *Ward.*

Mr. *Stephen Marshals* New WORKS.

# Thomas Bartholine Doctor of PHYSICK,

AND THE

# Kings Professor.

Wisheth Health to the

# READER

OF THIS

# Edition of Anatomy.

THE chiefest refreshment that I find in this time of Mortality, and that makes me constant and confirmed against all the dangers of Life and Death, is this, that I neither live, nor shall die, unknown to my self. For though we find many changes, in this Prison of our divine Soul, which is subject to Disease; Yet, Providence hath ordered, by searching into Anatomy, Medicines against the fear of Death and Diseases which we need not distrust. Man formerly only knew himself by the Face, which he admired as a painted shadow, before he searched into his own Bowels, by courage. Mangling the dead that he might know the living. He first began with Apes, Dogs and Swine and other Creatures, which he long practised upon without satisfaction, and at last came to dissect men that thereby he might better understand himself. And in this famous Art, there are many in every Age, that have immortal Names. But no Age hath been more happy then ours, for Curiosity and Invention, in which men seems to be restored and to flourish, and to know his own Parts, which were before unknown by the Negligence of Anatomists, and to come to perfection in this Art. It were in vain to mention all those that have taught the Ages, only I shall mention my Father, who hath satisfied many Learned Men. He made a History of the Anatomy of both Sexes, that procured favor from young Students by its short Method, and from the Ancient by variety and truth. This Treatise was received by all Auditious men, and all other Volums laid aside, as being too big, and confused. His Book was Accurate, and Rational, and when he was troubled with divers opinions, he by his experience decided the matter and declared the truth. He spent most of his time in Anatomical experiments, and had the best Tutors that could be found in Europe, Travailing to all Universities, and them he imitated and partly transcended. He openedmany Bodies in Padua with Casser. And consulted

*with* Aquapendent, Bauhin *and* Plater, *and also lent them his Knife. As* Democritus *he opened other Creatures, and compared them with Man, and then he made institutions for his Schollers in private, which he often published, First at* Wittenberg, *then at* Rostoch, *then at* Argentorate, *fourthly at* Gossary *with some Anatomical Disputes, and last of all at* Oxford, *then growing aged and weak, he was made Professor by his Majesty, and soon after died to the grief of the whole Country, and six Sons and a Daughter, which he left behind him, to imitate his example. After his Death his Works seemed to lament, and loose their native Lustre by the envy of the times, as if they also were Mortal; some condemned them, others say they were false, others said they were without Method, lame and poor: and then they began to make new Books of Anatomy with Figures, who lived before upon the ingenuity of* Bartholine. *Therefore I thought it my Duty, by the advise of Dr.* John Wall, *whose death I now lament, to preserve my Fathers spotless Honor, from pride and envy, being I was the Heir of his Fortune and Vertue, because his Memory was fresh among good Men and his institutions desired, and I was required by the Dutch to make an addition to them: This I could not deny, though I had many cares upon me, being a Traveller, because my Fathers Honor and the Common-wealth of Learning was so much concerned therein. Therefore I have added what I found out since, and amended what was before amiss; which my Father did not omit, but left it to others. I have Enlarged the History of Parts, and declared the Causes and Use of them, according to the opinion of the best Authors, and that young Students might want no help, I added the Figures, to the Life, according to those of* Vesal, Bauhin, Casser, Sylve *and* Asell. Francis Hack *Printed the first in good Letters, and fine Paper at* Leyden, 1640. *but in a year or two they were all bought up, and the Book-sellers called for more, at my return from travail, in many Countries,* 1645. *I made another Edition, and I rejoyce at the good Entertainment they both found, from Doctors and young Students, for the best of Scholers have commended them in their writings, as* Olaus Warme, John Riolan *the Son, (though he dealt unjustly here and there against me and my Father)* Fortune Licet, Aurel Severin, Simon Pauli, Albert Kypper, Dan Horst, Cecil Fole, John Jacob Wepser, *and others that mentioned my Works, as old* Salmas. Wall, Vesling, Conring, Lindan, Fontane, Drake, Plemp, Hogeland, Regius, Himsel, *and they translated them into other Languages, for the benefit of such as understand no Latin.* Simon Pauli *made my works speak Highdutch, he was my prodecessor in the Chaire of Anatomy.* Abraham Pratt *Dr. of Physick at* Leyden, *Printed it in French at* Paris. *And one unknown, yet to be Honored, Translated in* London *into English, to all these I give exceeding thanks for their Love and good will. Being Animated by the Opinions of so many Learned men: I once more have undertaken to set it forth. And being admonished by true friends, that the mentioning of my Fathers opinion and others, which I did not defend, was the Cause of much disturbance to the Readers, though they might be known, yet I thought better to profit the Reader then to Honor the ancient, for nothing is perfect at the first, and all Ages know not all things, but Nature discovers her self by degrees. While I thus thought the Printer intreats me for a third Edition, and I undertook it; I wish it may be to the Hearts desire of all the Learned, for it is a difficult thing to make old things seem new, to give Authority to new, and to bring things into fashion, and set forth dark things Plain, and set a Grace upon things that are loathed, to bring Faith to things in controversie, to bring all things, and Nature to all things. I amended my Fathers antient stile, and made it my own, with more Love to truth, then Piety to my Father, I made Obscure things plain. I amended things by sure Observations, and have added to all modern inventions. And which is chief I have in few Words set forth the Circular motion of Blood from* Harvey *and* Wall, *which is now received by many. And added many Opinions of my own; and I have followed Nature and Reason to reconcile all differ-*

*ences*

*ences between* Hofman, Riolan, Laurenberg, *and my Father. In a word, it is a new Work, that I am confident will please all, with Solidity and Variety. It is the Harvest of all my Travails, and Studies, and Learning, from Dr.* Wall, Falcoburg, Sylve, Vesling, Severine, Fole, Leonike, *and my Practice in other Academies, and here among Learned men, Noble men Senators, and King* Frederick *the third, whom God prosper. And that nothing might be wanting to Curious Eyes. I have made better Figures, by a Graver that was with me, and in Imitation of* John Horne *the Anatomist of* Leyden. *My fellow Student. and Dr.* Dionysius Kruyskerck, *to whom I am much bound. Do thou Reader entertain it as thou did'st the former, and thou shalt have more hereafter. As I hope to make more Discoveries, Farewel*

## *Books Printed by* Peter Cole, *Printer and Book-seller of* London, *at the Sign of the Printing-press, near the Royal Exchange.*

Mr. *Rogers* on *Naaman* the Syrian, his Disease and Cure: Discovering the Leprosie of Sin and Self-love; with the Cure, viz. Self-denial and Faith.

Mr. *Rogers* his Treatise of Marriage.

A Godly and Fruitful Exposition, on the first Epistle of *Peter*. By Mr. *John Rogers*, Minister of the Word of God at *Dedham* in *Essex*.

The Wonders of the Load-stone. By *Samuel Ward* of *Ipswich*.

An Exposition on the Gospel of the Evangelist St. *Matthew*. By Mr. *Ward*.

The Discipline of the Church in *New-England*. By the Churches and Synod there.

Mr. *Brightman* on the Revelation.

Christians Engagement for the Gospel, by *John Goodwin*.

Great Church Ordinance of Baptism.

Mr. *Love's* Case, containing his Petitions, Narrative, and Speech.

A Congregational Church, is a Catholick Visible Church. By Mr. *Stone* in *New-England*

A Treatise of Politick Power.

Dr. *Sibbs* on the *Philippians*.

*Vox Pacifica*, or a Perswasive to Peace.

Dr. *Prestons* Saints submission, and Satans Overthrow.

Pious Mans Practice in Parliament times.

*Barriff* Military Discipline

The Immortality of Mans Soul.

The Anatomist Anatomized,

The Bishop of *Canterbury's* Speech.

*Woodward's* Sacred Ballance.

Dr. *Owen* against Mr. *Baxter*.

Dr. *Owen* of the Stedfastness of the Promises.

*Abrahams* Offer, Gods Offering: being a Sermon by Mr. *Herle*, before the Lord Major of *London*.

Mr. *Sparrows* Sermon, being a Pattern of Repentance.

The Kings Tryal at the High Court of Justice.

Wise Virgin Published by Mr *Thomas Weld*, of *New-England*.

*Englands* Deliverance. By *Peter Sterry*.

The Way of God with his People in these Nations. By *Peter Sterry*.

The true Way of Uniting the people of God in these Nations. By *Peter Sterry*.

Mr. *Sympson's* Sermon at *Westminster*.

Mr. *Feak's* Sermon before the Lord Major.

The best and worst Magistrate. By *Obadiah Sedgwick*. A Sermon

A Vindication of Gospel Ordinance. By Mr. *William Bridge* A Sermon.

Grace and Love beyond Gifts: by Mr. *William Bridge*: A Sermon.

A Sacred Panegyrick: by *Stephen Marshal*: a Sermon.

The Craft and Cruelty of the Churches Adversaries: by *Matthew Newcomen* of *Dedham*: a Sermon.

Mr. *Philip Nye* of a Powerful Minister. And the Virtues desirable in a good Magistrate: a Sermon.

*Clows* Chyrurgery.

Mr. *Cordel's* Sermon.

——Good Samaritan.

Marks of Salvation.

*Fulwood* of Errors.

State of future Life.

Game at Picquet.

*Greaves* Seraglio.

Mr. *W.* against Mr. *Welds*, of *New-England*.

Tears of Repentance of the Indians in *New-England*.

Cunning Plot.

Antidote against Gangræna.

American Newes.

*Barbados* Relations.

*Challenors* Speech.

Copy-holders Plea.

*Gibbons* Speech.

*Pawsons* Sermon.

Mr. *Knapps* Sermon.

Poems of the Fight at Sea.

Charactery, or a most exact Method of short and swift writing.

*Riches* Short hand.

*Ribras* against the anabaptists.

Trumpeter sent by God.

*Tompkins* Speech.

Declaration of the Congregational Ministers.

*Jones* cause and cure of Divisions.

*Cowels* Institutes of the Law.

Dr. *Taylor* in Lementatio.

——Capitula Patrum.

The Judgement of the Reformed Churches, concerning Preaching without Ordination.

Mr. *Hobs* De Corpore Politico, Or the Elements of the Law; Moral and Politick.

*Des Cartes* on the Passions.

## *To the Physical Reader.*

THe greatest Reason that I could ever observe, why the Medicines prescribed in the Books mentioned, in the first Collum of the next Page, do not (somtimes) perform the Cures promised, is, the Unskilfulness of those that make up the Medicines. I therefore advise all those that have occasion to use any Medicines, to go or send to Mr. *Ralph Clarke* Apothecary, at the sign of the three Crowns on *Ludgate-Hill*, in *London*; where they shall be sure to have such as are skilfully and honestly made.

Several

*Several Physick Books of* Nich. Culpeper *Physitian and Astrologer; and* Abdiah Cole *Doctor of Physick, and of the Liberal Arts: commonly called,* The Physitians Library, *containing all the Works in English of* Riverius, Sennertus, Platerus, Fernelius, Riolanus, *and* Bartholinus. *VIZ.*

1. A GOULDEN Practice of Physick: After a new easie and plain Method, of Knowing, Foretelling, Preventing and Curing all Diseases Incident to the Body of Man. Ful of proper Observations and Remedies: Both of Ancient and Moderne Physitians. Being the Fruit of one and thirty years Travil; and fifty years Practice of Physick. By Dr. *Plater*, Dr *Cole* and *Nich. Culpeper.*

2. *Bartholinus* Anatomy, with very many larger Brass Figures, than any other Anatomy in English.

3. *Sennertus* thirteen Books of Natural Philosophy: Or, the Nature of all things in the World.

4. *Sennertus* Art of Chyrurgery in six Parts. 1. Of Tumors. 2. Of Ulcers. 3. Of the Skin, Hair and Nailes. 4. Of Wounds: with an excellent Treatise of the weapon Salve. 5. Of Fracttures, 6 Of Luxtions.

5. *Sennertus* two Treatises. 1. Of the Pox. 2. Of the Gout.

6. The English Physitian Enlarged.

7. *Riolanus* Anatomy.

8. Idea of Practical Physick in twelve Books.

9. Twenty four Books of the Practice of Physick, being the Works of that Learned and Renowned Doctor, *Lazarus Riverius.* Physitian and Councellor to the late King, &c.

10. *Veslingus* Anatomy of the Body of Man.

11. A Translation of the New Dispensatory, made by the Colledg of Physitians of *London.* Wherein is added, The Key to *Galens* Method of Physick, in Folio and in Octavo.

12. A Directory for Midwives, or a Guide for Women.

13. *Galen's* Art of Physick.

14. A new Method both of studying and practising Physick.

15. A Treatise of the Rickets.

16. Medicaments for the Poor, Or, Physick for the Common People.

17. Health for the Rich and Poor by Diet without Physick.

18. Three hundred new, Famous, and Rare Cures, in Folio and Octavo.

19. One thousand more Famous and Rare Cures: Or Experimental Physick, in two Volums in Octavo, or one Volum in Folio.

21. A Treatise of Blood-letting, and Cures performed thereby.

22. A Treatise of Scarification, and Cures performed thereby.

The *London Dispensatory* in Folio, of a great Character in Latin.

The *London Dispensatory* in twelves a final Pocket book in Latin.

20. A Treatise of Pulses and Urins.

Mr. *Burroughs* WORKS, on *Matthew*, 11. 28. 29. 30. *Viz.*

1. Christs cal to all those that are Weary and Heavy Laden, to come to him for Rest.

2. Christ the Great Teacher of Souls that come to him.

3. Christ the Humble Teacher of those that come to him.

4. The only Easie way to Heaven.

5. The Excellency of holy Courage in Evil Times.

6. Gospel Reconciliation.

7. The Rare Jewel of Christian Contentment.

8. Gospel-Worship.

9. Gospel-Conversation,

10. A Treatise of *Earthly Mindedness.*

11. An Exposition of the Prophesie of *Hosea.*

12. The Evil of Evils, or the exceeding sinfulness of Sin.

13. Of Precious Faith.

14. Of Hope.

15. Of Walking by Faith.

16. A Catechism.

17. *Moses* Choice.

*Twenty one several Books of* Mr. William Bridge, *Collected into two Volums.* VIZ.

1. Scripture Light the most sure Light.

2. Christ in Travil.

3. A Lifting up for the cast down

4. Of the Sin against the Holy Ghost.

5. Of Sins of Infirmity.

6. The fals Apostle tried and discovered.

7. The good and means of Establishment.

8. The great things Faith can do.

9. The great things Faith can suffer.

10. The Great Gospel Mystery of the Saints Comfort and Holyness, opened and applied from Christ's Priestly Office.

11. Satans power to Tempt, and Christ's Love to, and Care of his People under Temptation.

12. Thankfulnes required in every Condition.

13. Grace for Grace. A Treatise of Christ's fulness.

14. The Spiritual Actings of Faith through Natural Impossibilities.

19. Evangelical Repentance.

15. The Spiritual Life, and in being of Christ in all Beleevers.

17. The Woman of *Canaan.*

18. The Saints Hiding place in the Time of Gods Anger.

19. Christ's Coming is at our midnight.

20. A Vindication of Gospel Ordinances.

21. Grace and Love beyond Gifts.

*New Books of* Mr. *Sydrach Sympson*, VIZ.

1. Of Unbeleif. 2. Of Faith. 3. Of Coveteousnes.

*Mr.* Hookers *New Books in three Volums: One in Octavo, and two in Quarto.*

These Eleven New Books of Mr. *Thomas Hooker* made in *New England.* Are attested in an Epistle by Mr. *Thomas Goodwin*, and Mr. *Philip Nye*, To be written with the Authors own hand: None being written by himself before. One Volum being a Comment upon Christ's last Prayer in the seventeen of *John.*

*Wherein is shewed,*

1. That the end why the Saints receive all glorious Grace, is, That they may be one, as the Father and Christ are one.

2. That God the Father loveth the Faithful, as he loveth Jesus Christ.

3. That our Savior desired to have the Faithful in Heaven with himself.

4. That the Happiness of our being in Heaven, is, to see Christs Glory.

5. That there is much wanting in the Knowledg of Gods Love, in the most able Saints.

6. That the Lord Christ lends dayly Direction, according to the dayly Need of his Servants.

7. That it is the desire and endeavor of our Savior, that the dearest of Gods Love, which was bestowed on himself, should be given to his faithful Servants.

8. That our Union and Communion with God in Christ, is the top of our Happiness in Heaven.

Ten Books of the Application of Redemption by the Effectual Work of the Word, and Spirit of Christ, for the bringing home of lost sinners to God. By *Thomas Hooker.*

## Dr. *Hills* WORKS.

A Godly and Fruitful Exposition on the first Epistle of *Peter.* By Mr. *John Rogers*, Minister of the Word of God at *Dedham* in *Essex.*

Mr. *Rogers* on *Naaman* the Syrian, his Disease and Cure: Discovering the Leprosie of Sin and Self-love; with the Cure, *viz.* Self-denial and Faith.

Mr. *Stephen Marshals* New WORKS. *VIZ.*

1. Of Christs intercession, or sins of Infirmity opened.

2. The High Priviledg of Beleevers, they are the Sons of God.

3. Faith the Means to feed on Christ.

4. Of Self-denial.

5. The Saints Duty to keep their Hearts, &c.

6. The Mystery of Spiritual Life.

# THE CONTENTS OF THE FIRST BOOK, OF THE LOWER BELLY.

# THE CONTENTS OF THE SECOND BOOK, OF THE Middle Venter or Cavity.



# THE CONTENTS OF THE THIRD BOOK, OF THE Uppermost Cavities. *VIZ.* THE HEAD.



# THE CONTENTS OF THE FOURTH BOOK, OF THE LIMBS.

## THE CONTENTS OF THE FIRST MANUAL Concerning the Veins,

Anſwering to the

## FIRST BOOK OF THE Lower Belly.



## THE CONTENTS OF THE SECOND MANUAL Of the Arteries.

Anſwering to the

## SECOND BOOK, Touching the Middle Cavity or Cheſt.



## THE CONTENTS OF THE Third Manual *of the* Nerves

Anſwering to the

## Third Book *of the* HEAD.



THE

# THE CONTENTS OF THE Fourth and last Manual OF THE Bones, *and also of the* Gristles *and* Ligaments. Answering the Fourth Book of the Limbs.



# TWO EPISTLES OF *JOHN WALÆUS* Concerning the Motion of the Chyle, AND THE BLOOD.



THE

# The Introduction.

ANthropologia or the Doctrine of Mans Nature, is, though commonly, yet rightly divided into two Parts: *Anatomia* which treats of the Body and its Parts; and *Psychologia*, which treats of the Soul.

*Anatomia* therefore [more rightly called Anatomy, that is Section, which St. *Ignatius* reckons as a kind of Martyrdom, *Cælius* terms *Apertio* an opening, and *Tertullianus Prosectio* a cutting up, whence the term *Prosector*, a Cutter up] that I may come to that which is my business; in as much as it is a part of Natural Philosophy [for Medicinal Anatomy how ever useful and of which *Galen* treats in his Anatomical Administration, we must leave to Physitians] hath for its Subject the Body of any Animal or Live-wight whatsoever, whether frequenting the Land or or Waters, flying in the Air, &c. and not only the Body of Man. But we are wont most of all to search into the structure of Mans Body. 1. Because of the great Perfection thereof, which is the Rule of Imperfection. 2. Because the sundry sorts of Animals are almost infinite, so that to dissect and search into all of them, the life of man in this Age of the World is not sufficient. 3. Because of the incredible profit which thereby redounds to every man, who desires perfectly to know himself, and this House of his earthy Tabernacle, both the better to preserve Health and to cure Diseases: Nor can any man be a Natural Philosopher or deserve so to be called, unless he have the Doctrine of Anatomy at his fingers end, above all other Parts of Natural Philosophy. Yet is not the Dissection of other Creatures therefore unprofitable, or to be neglected by an Anatomist, partly by reason of the Analogie and Correspondence they hold with the Body of Man, partly to attain to the Knowledg of the Motions of Living Creatures, and partly, to conclude, for the Exercise of an Anatomist and Surgeon. *Democritus* sought the Seat and Nature of Choler in Living Creatures. After him *Galen* dissected Apes and other Living Creatures, as also *Severinus*, *Aldrovandus*, *Castellus*, *Bronzerus*, *Panarolus* and my self have cut up divers Living Creatures. By the cutting up of Creatures alive *Asellius* found out the *Venæ lacteæ* or milkie Veins, and *Harvey* and *Walæus* found the motion of the Blood.

*The Subject of Anatomy.*

*Why Anatomy treats chiefly of the Body of Man.*

*The Dissection of other Animals is useful to an Anatomist and why?*

Moreover, because in regard of the variety of its Actions, the Body of Man does not consist of one part all alike, but of sundry; therefore we must know that the whole Body is divided into Parts containing, Parts contained, and Parts moving, according to the ancient Doctrine of *Hippocrates*: that is to say, into solid Parts, Humors and Spirits. And in this large acceptation, all things are called Parts which make up and compleat the Body, even the Nails, Hairs, Fat and Marrow. But strictly and properly that is called a Part, which partakes of the form, and life of the whole, and such the Anatomists accounts only the *solid* Parts, And therefore *Fernelius* hath well defined a Part to be *A Body joyned to the whole, partaking of the common Life thereof, and fitted for the performance of some Functions or Use.* But *Galen* accounts that a Part, which is a Body in some sort joyned to the whole, and hath in part its own proper Circumscription. Briefly, they say, that a part is properly;

*The division of the whol Body of Man.*

*What a Part is?*

1. That which lives, is nourished, but does not nourish any other Part. And so they exclude the Spirits, Humors, &c. also the Fat, which somtimes nourishes the Parts, and the Marrow of the Bones, as being their Nourishment.

2. That which is solid.

3. Which hath a proper Circumscription of its own. The contrary whereof is in fat, which is terminated by the figure of the Parts adjacent.

4. Which is continued with the whole, Mathematically and Physically, both in respect of the Matter and Form joyntly considered.

5. Which is fitted for some Function or Use. And so Warts and Swellings, with other things which grow upon the living Body præternaturally, are excluded.

*What is the proper acceptation of the word Part.*

And that we may understand what is ment by Function and Use, I shall briefly open the same. An Action or Function may be either private or publick. The private Action is that whereby the Parts provide for themselves; the publick is that whereby they provide for the whole live Creature. A publick Action as it is opposed to use, is the Action of the principal Part of an Organ which performes the whole Action. For every Action in the Body of a live-wight, hath according to *Galen*, a peculiar Particle, by which it is performed. For Examples sake; The Skin hath of it self a private Action, such as the Attraction and Retention of Nourishment, &c. it hath also a publick action for the behoof of the whole Animal, viz. the discerning of the tangible Qualities, such as are perceived by the Sense of Feeling. So the action of the Liver is blood-making, of the Stones, Seed-making; of the Dugs Milk-making.

*What is ment by the Action of a Part.*

But the Use, is that help which the less principal Parts afford the more principal, in the performance of their Actions, which according to *Galen* is in all Parts, yea even in those which have no action at all. It springs chiefly from three Fountaines, and they are,

*What by the Use.*

1. The proper *Temper* of the Part, that is to say the Symmetry or even proportion of the first Qualities. For Examples sake, The Skin is in respect of the first Qualities temperate; and if

you ask wherefore, I answer, that it may be able to discern and judg of all tangible Qualities.

2. *Such things as follows the Temper*, and they are the second Qualities: Hardness, Softness, Thickness, Thinness, Compactness, Rarity, &c.

3. *Necessary Adjuncts*, as Magnitude, Number, Passages or Cavities, Figure, Conformation, Connexion, Situation, Surface. But I, in these Institutions, for the conveniency of Learners, shall, with other Anatomists, seldom observe this accurate difference between Action and Use especially, that I may avoid the tedious repetition of sundry things.

*Which Part of the Body is first generated.*

But before I proceed to the Division and Differences of Parts, I shal briefly resolve this question, *Which Part of the Body is first generated.* We must therefore know, that according to *Hippocrates*, all the Parts are formed and differenced at one and the same time, as in a Circle, there is neither beginning nor end, but altogether are both beginning and end. But all the Parts are not perfected and adorned at one and the same time; but in the first place the Navil-vein. 2. The Liver. 3. Afterwards the Heart (which *Aristotle* would have to be first made, as *Galen* would have the Liver to be) and lastly the brain. The Navil-vein therefore, is first finished and perfected, in regard of the enlargement thereof by the blood, but not in respect of its first Constitution of the Seed. But others said that the Groundwork or underwarpe of the Parts is Seed, and the Woof or Superstructure blood, supposing that there are two material Principles of the body: Seed and blood. Which Opinion I have refuted and sufficiently explained in my *Anatomical Controversies, Quæst.* 11. *touching the Parts and their Faculties and Functions.*

*Why the Vessels were to be made before the Bowels.*

And therefore the Vessels are laid in respect of Perfection to be generated before the bowels, and that justly. For otherwise the bowels could not be nourished without a proportionable Instrument to that end, namely a Vein, by which the blood is conveighed for their Nutriment. For as out of a Kernel or Seed put into the Earth, first a long Root descends into the Earth, after that other Roots spread themselves round about the Surface of the Earth, out of which afterwards, the Trunk and branches spring up; so out of the Seed committed to the Womb, there arises first the Navil-vein, receiving blood out of the Womb-cake; out of which Navil-vein arises the *Vena Portæ*, with its Roots.

*Division of the Parts.*

Let us now come to the Division or Differences of the Parts, which may be divers. Taking the word in a large Sense, some divide them into parts of *Necessity*, as the Heart, Liver, Lungs, Stomach; and Parts of *Commodity*, and that either *great* as the Eyes and Stones, or *less* as the Nails; and parts of *Ornament*, as the Hairs of the Head and Beard.

*In respect of their End.*

But I shall divide the Parts, chiefly in respect of their *End*, or in respect of their *Matter*.

*The principal Parts.*

In *respect of the worthiness of the End*, some are *Principal*, others less principal and *Subservient*. The *Principal* are the Liver, Heart, Brain, which are the Principles of other Parts. As, out of the brain arise the Nerves, according to the common Opinion, out of the Heart, the Arteries, out of the Liver, the Veins. Others add the Testicles, but without any need, because they make nothing to the Conservation of the Individual, and Generation is caused without them, as I shall shew by Examples in the 7. Book Chap. 22.

*The Beginning or principle of Radication.*

Now we do not mean the beginning of Radication or Original; for so, the Seed is the beginning of all the Parts, but of Dispensation and Distribution; that is such a beginning as sends out of it self some Instrument, Force or common Matter. So from the Heart, as the beginning or Original of Dispensation, the Arteries arise, because they receive their Virtue from the heart, and seem there to have their Original. The same may be said of the Veins and Nerves in respect of their Originals. So the Gristles have their Original from the bones, and also the Ligaments.

*The Original of Dispensation.*

*Parts subservient or ministring.*

The *Subservient* Parts are *necessary* or *not necessary*.

The *Necessary* are those without which the Animal cannot live, or cannot live well. So the Lungs serve the Heart, the Guts the Stomach; the Stomach the Liver and Spleen; the Gall-bladder, Choler-passage and Piss-bladder, serve the Liver; and all the Instruments of the Senses serve the brain.

The *Not-necessary*, as simple flesh, &c. in respect of other Parts: for in consumptive persons tis wasted away, and in fleshie persons tis a burthen, and infects according to *Aristotle* have no Flesh.

*In respect of their Matter.*

In *respect of their* immediate *Matter*, *some are* simple, Homogeneal or *Similary*; *others* Compound Heterogeneal, or dissimilary.

*A similar part what it is, and how manifold.*

A *Similar* Part, is that which is divided into Parts like it self, so that all the Particles are of the same Substance with the whole, as every part of flesh is flesh, &c.

Of such similar Parts, some reckons more, others fewer.

*Aristotle* in sundry places, thus reckons them: Blood, Flegm, Choler, Sanies or blood-water, Milk, Seed, Gall, Fat, Marrow, Flesh, Veins, Arteries, Nerves, Fibres, Membranes, Skin, Bones, Gristles, Hairs, Nails, Horns, Feathers.

*Averroes* omits some of these, and adds Melancholy, Spirits, Muscles, Cords, Ligaments, Suet.

*Galen* in sundry places, thus reckons them: A Bone, a Gristle, a Vein, an Artery, a Nerve, a Membrane, a Fibre, a Tendon, a Ligament, a Nail, Skin, Fat, Marrow, the Glassie and Chrystalline Humors, the flesh of the Muscles and bowels, with the proper substance of the brain, Stomach, Guts and Womb.

*Archangelus* retaines all the aforesaid, and adds three sorts of Spirits, four Alimentary humors, and the Excrementitious humors, as Urin in the Bladder, Choler in the Gall-bladder, Excrementitious Flegm, and all the Excrements of all digestions, the Scarf-skin, and the internal Skin of the inner Cavities. Moreover, he adds to these, seventeen similar parts, not common-

ly reckoned, *viz.* the proper substance (setting aside the other similar parts, Veins, Arteries, &c.) of the Brain, Tongue, Lungs, Heart, Liver, Gall-bladder, Spleen, Stomach, Guts, Kidneys, Ureters, Piss-bladder, Womb, Yard, Stones, Muscles, Kernels. But it is in Vain for him to reckon these parts as new: for all in a manner are comprehended under Flesh. For according to *Hippocrates* and *Galen*, there is a flesh of the Muscles, and a flesh of the Bowels, and a flesh of the Glandules or Kernels. But in another place *Galen* propounds a threefold flesh. 1. In a Muscle, which the *Ancients* did only cal Flesh. 2. The *Parenchyma*, or proper substance of the Liver, Heart, Kidneys, &c. 3. In the Stomach, Bladder, Veins. 4. In the Bones, though improperly.

*How many sorts of Flesh there are?*

Whence we may gather four sorts of Flesh. 1. Musculous flesh, which *Galen* frequently terms Fibrous flesh, and it is soft and red and properly termed flesh. And in *Hippocrates* his Language, by flesh many times is ment the Muscles. 2. Viscerous flesh or the flesh of the Bowels. *Erasistratus* cals it *Parenchyma* or an Affusion of blood; *Galen* cals it Similar and simple flesh, which supports the Vessels of the bowels, fills up the empty spaces, and performs the Action. 3. Membranous flesh, or the fleshy substance of every Membranous part, as in the Gullet, Stomach, Guts, Womb, bladder. 4. Glandulous flesh, or the flesh of Kernels, which serves. 1. For to support the divisions of Vessels. 2. To drink up superfluous humors, especially wheyish humors, because the Kernels are of an hollow Spungy substance; and therefore they are vulgarly termed *Emunctories* or Clensers. Those in the Neck being counted Clensers of the Head; those in the Arm-pits, of the Heart; those in the Groyns of the Liver. 3. To moisten the parts for their more easie motion, or otherwise to prohibit dryness. Such are those which are situate by the Tongue, Larynx, Eye-corners, &c.

*The Number of the Similar Parts.*

But the similar parts are reckoned to be *ten*: A bone, a Gristle, a Ligament, a Membrane, a Fibre, a Nerve, an Artery, a Vein, Flesh and Skin.

Of these some are similar only in the judgment of Sense, as Veins, Arteries (some add Muscles) others are simply and absolutely similar. That Veins, Arteries, Nerves, Muscles are not truly simple and similar, hath been rightly taught by *Aristotle*: for a Muscle consists of Flesh, Fibres, and a Tendon: Nerves are made up of the Dura and pia Mater, with Marrow: Arteries, of two different coats; the Veins of a coat (and of Fibres as some will have it) and Valves. Simply and truly similar parts are Bones, Gristles, Ligaments, Membranes, Fibres, Flesh and Skin. To these *some* add the Ureters, the Air implanted in the Ear, &c. but in vain. For, 1. They are not parts common to the whole body, but proper to some parts. 2. The implanted Air of the Ears, is nothing but an implanted spirit, which cannot be reckoned among solid parts.

Here we are to observe that all these *parts* are commonly divided, into *Spermatical*, *Sanguine*, or *mixt*.

*What a Spermatical Part is?*

The *Spermatical* are made of seed, and such are the eight first reckoned; which if they are cut asunder, they breed not again, nor can they be truly united, but they are joyned together by a Callus in the middle, by reason of defect of matter and formative faculty, which acts not after the Conformation of the Parts.

*What a Sanguine Part.*

The *Sanguine* or fleshy Parts, contrarywise are bred again, because they are supposed to be made of Blood, as the Flesh.

A mixt Part is the Skin, of which we shall treat hereafter, in *Book* 1. *Chap.* 2.

For seed and blood are commonly accounted the two general Principles of which we are made: so that in the Seed there is very little of the material principle, but much of the active, but in the blood much of the material principle, and but a little and weak portion of the active or effective principle. The first Rudiments and underwrap as it were of the parts, are said to be made of Seed; and the woose or superstructure of blood flowing in. But what the Truth is in Contradiction to this vulgar opinion, we have taught *in our Anatomical Controversies*. For we are rather to hold, that the parts are at first made only of Seed, as of their matter; and that the Mothers blood doth nourish, and encrease and amplifie the Parts. The Skin in comparison to other Parts, hath an indifferent proportion of Seed, not so much as the Spermatical, nor so little as the Sanguinary parts.

*What a dissimilar part is?*

The Compound or *dissimilar Parts* are, those which may be divided into divers unlike parts; as an Hand cannot be cut into other Hands, but into Bones, Muscles, Veins, &c. The dissimilar parts are by the Phylosopher called Members: but they are vulgarly termed *Organical* or instrumental parts.

*Organical parts.*

Now in every Organ, there are for the most part, four kinds of parts. For example sake, in the Eye there is, 1. That part by which the action, *viz.* Seeing is performed, namely the Chrystalline Humor. 2. That without which it cannot be performed, as the Optick Nerve. 3. That by which it is the better performed, as the Coats and Muscles of the Eyes. 4. That by which the action is preserved, as the Eye-lids, &c.

And because the Dissimilar parts are more or less Compounded, they are divided into four degrees or ranks.

The 1. Is such as are similar to the sense, as a Muscle, Vein, Artery. The 2. Is made of the former and the rest of the similars, as a Finger. The 3. is compounded of the second, as an Hand, Foot, &c. The 4. Is compounded of the third, as an Arm or Leg.

*The most convenient division of the whole Body of Man.*

Finally the *Body is divided* into its greatest Members, as by some into the Head, Chest, Belly and Bladder; by others as *Aristotle*, *Ruffus* and *Oribasius* into the Head, Neck, Chest (under they comprehend the lower Belly) and therefore *Hippocrates* placed the Liver in the Chest] the Arms

Arms and the Legs. But others have better divided them into the *Bellies* and *Limbs*.

The Bellies are certain remarkeable Cavities of the Body, wherein some noble bowel is placed: and as there are three principal Members, so are there *three Bellies*: the *lowest* belly, commonly called Abdomen or the Paunch, contains the Liver and Natural parts. The *Middle* or Chest, containes the Heart and vital parts. The *uppermost* or Head contains the brain and Animal parts. The *Limbs* which were given us for more conveniency of living, are the Arms and the Legs.

*This whole Work divided into four Books and four Petty Books or Manuals.*

And therefore we shall make four books: 1. Of the Lower belly. 2. Of the Middle belly. 3. Of the supream belly or Cavity, the Head. 4. Of the Limbs. And to these shall answer four *Petty Books*: The *first* of the Veins which arise from the Liver in the lower Cavity. The *second* of the Arteries which arise from the Heart, in the middle Cavity. The *third* of the Nerves, which are commonly thought to spring from the brain. The *fourth* of the bones, which are most what in the Limbs: and as the bones joyned together make a compleat frame and bodies as it were; so also do the Veins, Arteries, and Nerves.

*The division of the Body according to the Regions.*

We may find another division of the body in *Fernelius*, which nevertheless is of no use save in Physick. He divides the body into *pulpike Regions* and *Private*.

*Private Regions* he calls the brain, Lungs, Kidneys, Womb, &c. *Publick* or common he makes three extended through the whol body. 1. Hath the Vena porta, and all the parts whereinto its branches are spred. 2. Begins at the Roots of Vena Cava, and is terminated in the smal Veins, before they become Capillary. 3. Hath the Muscles, Bones, and Bulk of the body and ends in the Skin.

We purge the first Region cheifly by the Guts; The second by the Urinary passages; The third by the Pores of the Skin.

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

This TABLE holds forth the Pourtraicture of a Living Man, wherein both the external parts of the Abdomen, as all the Conspicuous Veins which are wont to be opened by Chirurgeons, and the places where Issues are wont to be made, are Represented.

A. *The Hypochondrium.*
B. *The Epigastrium.*
CC. *The Hypogastrium.*
D. *The Flanks.*
EE. *The Groins.*
F. *The Region of the Share.*
G. *The Navil.*
H. *The Heart-pit.*
I. *The jugulum or hollow of the Throat.*
K. *The Forehead Vein.*
L. *The Temple Veins.*
M. *The jugular Vein.*
N. *The Cephalica Vena.*
O. *The Basilica Vena.*
P. *The Mediana or common Vein.*
Q. *The Head vein of the left Arm.*
R. *The Salvatella.*
SSSS. *The Saphena Vein descending.*
T. *The Saphæna Vein in the Foot it self.*
V. *The Vena Sciatica.*
XX. *The place of Issues in the Arm and in the Thigh.*

The I. TABLE.

before page 1

THE

# THE FIRST BOOK; OF THE Lower Belly.

*The Reason of the Order. Why Dissection is begun in the lower Belly?*

According to the Method of Anatomy, this Belly or Cavity comes in the first place, and is first of all dissected that the Guts and Excrements may be the sooner removed, and the Body preserved from putrefaction.

*What the lower Belly is?*

It is all that, which is distinguished, within, from the Chest by the Midrif; it is circumscribed by the sword-like Gristle, the Share bones, Hip-bones, *Os Sacrum*, the *Vertebra's* of the Loynes, and the bastard Ribs on either side.

*The Parts of the lower Belly, and their Names.*

The former part thereof is called *Epigastrium*, which compasses the stomach & guts next unto it. The Arabians call it *Miach*, which generally is used for the Belly, but in a particular sence it is taken for those wrinkles of the belly, which remain after child-bearing, and for the Skin gathered together upon the belly, as *Giggejus* informs us.

And the upper part hereof, is termed *Hypochondrium*, neighbouring upon the lower gristles of the Ribs, and it is right or left: some term them *Phrenes* and *Præcordia*.

The middle Region is termed *Regio umbilicalis*, whose lateral parts *Aristotle* cals *Lagonas* by reason of their Laxity, and *Galen*, *Ceneonas* from their emptyness.

The lower part which reaches from the Navil to the Share, is termed *Hypogastrium*, by *Hippocrates*, *Galen*, *Ruffus*, *Pollux*; the latins terms it *Imus venter* and *Aqualiculus*. The lateral parts thereof are termed *Ilia*, and in the bending of the thigh by the Share *Inguina* the Groyns; and that part next over the Privities, which is covered with Down or Hair, is caled *Pubes* the *Share*.

The hind part of the lower Belly, is either the upper, which makes the *Loyns*; or the lower, which makes the *Buttocks*.

Moreover this Belly consists of parts covering and covered, that is to say *External* and *Internal*.

The coveting or *Containing* parts (which they properly call *Abdomen*) are either common, as the Scarf skin, the Skin, the Fat with its Membrane, the fleshy Pannicle, and the Coat proper to every Muscle; or proper, and they are the Muscles of the *Abdomen*, and the *Peritonæum*.

The inner or *contained* parts, do serve either for *Nutrition* or *Procreation*.

*All the Parts which are to be examined in this Book.*

For *Nutrition* or making of chyle, are subservient more or less, the Stomach, the Call, the Sweet-bread, the Guts with the Mesentery: to the *making of Blood*, are subservient more or less, the Mesaraick Veins, the *Venæ portæ* with their Roots, the *Cava* with its Roots, the Liver, the Gall-bladder, the Gall passage, the Spleen with the *Vas breve*, and the Hæmorrhoides, the *Arteria Cæliaca*, the Kidneys, the *Capsulæ Atrabilariæ* or black choler boxes, the Ureters and the Piss bladder.

Those which serve for Generation, are either Masculine or Fæmale: the Masculine are, the Spermatick Vessels, the *Corpora Varicosa* or Parastatæ, the Stones, the carrying Vessels, the prostate, the Seminary bladders, the Yard, &c. The Female are, the Spermatick Vessels, the *Corpus Varicosum*, the Testicles, the Ejaculatory Vessels, the Womb with its parts, &c.

But when a Man is in the Womb, there are yet other things considerable, as the Navil-vessels, the coats which infold the Child, &c. of which in their place.

## CHAP. I.
## *Of the Scarf-Skin.*

*The Scarf-Skin.*

The *Cuticula* or Scarf-skin, in Greek *Epidermis*, is by some called the highest or last skin, also the cream of the skin, the cover of the Skin, &c. It is a thin skin void of life and sense, close-compacted, bloodless; bred of Oyly slick and clammy vapors thickned by the external cold, that it might be a cover to the Skin.

*What it is.*

*Whether the Scarf-skin be made of seed?*

The *Matter* of which the Scarf-skin is made, *is not seed*, For 1. It is no part of the Body. 2. It is not nourished. 3. A Spermatical part taken away, breeds not again; but the Scarf-skin is easily lost by rubbing and wearing, or being raised into blisters, by burning with Fire or scalding Water, &c.

*Or of Blood?*

*Nor is the Matter thereof Blood*, For 1. All Veins do end at or within the Skin. 2. It hath no Spermatical Fibres, which are the basis of all sanguin parts. 3. In long lasting Diseases

and Consumptions, it many times grows thick. 4. Being cut or torne, it sends forth no Blood. 5. It is not of a red color, &c.

*Or of the Excrement of concoction.*

*Nor are the Excrements* of any Digestion, the matter thereof. Not the Excrements of the first or second digestion; for how should it be made of Dung, Urin or Gall? Nor the Excrements of the third. For the third Digestion or Concoction hath a threefold Excrement. 1. Vaporous and thin which Exspires. 2. Thin, but more solid then the former, of a watersh substance, such as are Ichors and Wheyish humors, which by their sharpness and Acrimony, would sooner hinder the Generation of the Scarf-skin, or corrode the same after it is generated.

*Laurentius and Archangelus confuted.*

3. Thick, Clammy, and sticking fast, which *Archangelus* and *Laurentius*, do suppose to be dried and turned into the Scarf-skin, and they demonstrate the same from the filth which is, in bathing, scraped from the soles of the Feet. And if their opinion were true, the Scarf-skin would come off in Baths.

*The true matter of the Scarf-skin.*

And therefore the matter thereof is *another Excrement*, viz. and Oyly, Thick, Clammy, and moist vapor (for of dry Exhalations the Hair is made) proceeding from the Skin and Members under the same. So we see in a Skillet of Water-gruel, a Skin grows over the top of the Gruel, being made, of the vapors thereout ascending, condensed by cold.

Now the Scarf-skin is *bred*, partly in the womb with the Skin, and partly without the Womb. Within, For 1. So there are the rudiments and beginnings of Hairs, Teeth, Nails in the Child in the Womb. 2. Without the Scarf-skin, the skin would be moist, and the Humor would sweat out with pain, as in gallings and where *Phænigmi* are applied. 3. Experience shews, that the Scarf-skin is somwhat apparent in an Abortion, and may be separated by some fretting Humidity. But whiles the Child is in the Womb, it is exceeding tender, soft, and but as yet begun to be made: becaus there is not in the Womb so much cold, only a smal degree springing from the serous humor which surrounds the Child. But it receives its Complement and perfection without the Womb, from the coldness of the Air, which doth more condense and dry, which is the Cause that the Skin of all New-born Infants looks red.

*The Efficient Cause thereof.*

Wherefore the remote and internal *Efficient* thereof is the inward heat of the Body, thrusting forth a vapor into the surface thereof, as Exhalations are made by the suns heat. The next and external, is the coldness of some body, as the Air, &c. compacting, and thickning. So Gruel, Hot milk, and other hot dishes of meat, have a skin growing over them: somtimes also the dryness of the Ambient Air, consuming the external humor, and compacting the remainders of the matter. Now by how much the said vapor is more Earthy and Clammy, by so much more solid is that which is bred thereof.

*Use*

The *Use* thereof, is to defend the Skin. And therefore tis somwhat *hard*, howbeit *exceeding thin* and yet transparent, like the transparent Skins of Onions; least if it were thicker, the Skin should not feel aright. Yet is it somtimes *hard* and *brawny*, in the Hands and Feet by reason of Labor and Travel.

Tis close wrought and more compact than the Skin. And therefore it is that watery pustles pass through the Skin but not the Scarf-skin. Yet not over close and compact, least it should hinder the bodies transpiration. And it is close wrought, not only to defend the parts under it but that also too great an efflux of Vapor, Blood, Spirit and Heat might not happen. For it is the cover of the Mouths and extremities of the Vessels. And therefore those cannot live in good health that are born without a Scarf-skin; as was seen in *Lewis* the King of *Bohemia* and *Hungaria*, who became gray hair'd while he was but a Boy.

*The color of the Scarf-skin.*

It is of a *waste color*, and therefore of a *cold and dry temper and quite void of Blood*, For being torn or cut, it sends forth no Blood. Nor is it nourished by Blood, as *Lauremberg* and *Sperlinger* would have it; for it is not intrinsically nourished by attraction of its proper Aliment; but by addition of parts, the vapor growing into the like nature of the Scarf-skin, as *Casserius* rightly disputes. The Scarf-skin is black in Blackmores, but not the Skin beneath it,

*Its number.*

As for *number*: there is but one Scarf-skin; only there was once two found by *Aquapendent*: the one being strongly fastned in the pores of the skin, and inseparable; the other separable without offence to the skin. Which happens in some only, not in all parts of the Body. Also *Laurembergius*, in applying Vesicatories, found the Scarf-skin double; but that is a rare case, for that Vesicatories do peirce unto the skin is apparent from the humor dropping out, and the pain. In brawny Callosities, indeed there are many little skins, as it were the skins of Onyons; but they are besides nature, whose Generation and cure is delivered by *Fallopius*.

*Its Connexion.*

In point of *Connexion*, it sticks so close to the Skin of a man, while he is alive, as if it were one continued body therewith. Yet many times it is cast of as Snakes and Serpents cast their skins, which *Felix Platerus* tels us did happen to himself; and which happens in burning Feavers and the smal Pox. *Salmuth* observe as much in some Gouty persons, in an Ague, and some other cases. In dead persons tis separated by a Candle, or scalding Water: in living Bodies with *Phænigmi*. In the Nut of the Yard, it sticks not to the skin, but to the flesh.

## CHAP. II.
## *Of the Skin.*

*What the Skin is?*

*Cutis*, the skin, is in Greek cal'd *Derma*, as it were *Desma* a band: it is the common covering of the Body; or a Temperate Membrane bred of the seed by a proper faculty, to be the Instrument of feeling, and to defend the parts beneath it.

*Piccolhominius refuted.*

It is called a *Membrane*, which must not be understood simply, but so as to be a Membrane of a peculiar nature and proper temperament. And therefore *Piccolhomineus* was mistaken when he would have the skin to be simply a Membrane; for the skin is thicker, hath a substance proper to it self, and is temperate.

*Galens Opinion touching the matter of the skin.*

But the opinion of *others* is, that the *matter* hereof is Seed and Blood well mixed together, so that the skin hath a middle nature between Flesh and Nerves. And therefore *Galen* saies, that it is as it were a Nerve endued

endued with blood: he saies not simply, but as it were. For he also likens it to a Membrane, because in some parts it may be extended, feels exquisitely, and is white.

Aristotles *Opinion.*

*Aristotle* would have the skin to consist of flesh dried and grown old as it were. But the skin is easily flaid from the parts under it, and between the flesh and skin there is fat, a Membrane, &c, to which Opinion *Fernelius* inclined, when he said that the skin of the Face, was a certain more dry portion of the flesh beneath it. Wherein he also is to be blamed, Because 1. It may be separated from the flesh. 2. It will admit of Scars as the skin in other places.

*The Opinion of others.*

*Others* say it is made of the Extremities of the Vessels widened, because it every where lives and feels, and the extremities of the Vessels end thereinto: but this may be said of all the parts of the Body.

*Others*, of the softer Nerves spred out in the surface of the Body, an addition of blood concurring: but this Opinion is of no more force then the former.

*The true matter of the skin.*

The skin therefore is made of Seed taken in a moderate quantity: and for its enlargement, it had a moderate quantity of blood; but seed seems to hold the greater proportion. For the skin is naturally whiteish; though it varies according to the plenty of humors and Bodies beneath it. For such as the Humor is, such will be the color of the skin. So Sanguine persons have it ruddy; those that are Jaundized, have it yellow or black. Examples whereof see in *Marcellus Donatus* and others. If flesh lie beneath it, the redder it is, if fat the whiter.

*A Scar, what it is?*

It is in respect to the seed, that Authors say, the skin grows not together again after it is wounded. In respect of the blood, there is somwhat like the skin produced, viz. a Scar: Which consists as it were of burnt and dried flesh. Howbeit in Children, by reason of the moisture of their skin, as also the abundance of glutinous humors, a wound hath been observed to be closed up with true skin: *Witness Spigelius.*

Wherefore the skin being made as it were of a Membranous cold and dry, and of a fleshy hot and moist substance; becomes temperate in all the first and second qualities, that it may rightly judg of all.

*The efficient cause of the skin.*

The *Efficient* Cause of the skin, is the Skin-generating faculty; as in a bone the Bone-generating faculty, in a Nerve the Nerve-forming power or faculty, &c. which faculty frames a part differing from all other similar parts. But how doth the faculty make of the same Seminal matter Nerves, Bones, &c. by an hidden and divine power as it were.

*The Action of the skin.*

The *publick Action* of the skin, and which is necessary for the whole Living-Creature is, to be the primary Instrument of the sense of feeling, for every Membrane is the Adæquate Organ, as may be seen in the Bones, Nerves, Stomach, &c. For though all the Organs of the senses are dissimilar parts, yet one similar part is the primary cause of the action, which is to be performed by the whol Organ. For examples sake, the hand is indeed the Organ of feeling, and especially that part of the skin, which covers the hollow of the Hands and Feet, as being of all other most temperate. And because the skin is temperate in the first qualities; it is therefore also temperate in the second, as softness, hardness, thickness, thinness, &c.

*Its Use.*

*The first use of the Skin is, to be* a Covering for the Body, and therefore it hath received a *Figure* so round, long, &c. as the subject parts required; and therefore also it is seated without the Body, and because it was to be as it were the Emunctory of the Body. The professors of Physiognomy, commend unto us another use of the skin, as it is streaked with lines; who are wont to tell mens Fortunes from the Lines and Hillocks in their Hands, and from the Planetary and Adventitious Lines in their Foreheads. A *third* use is Medicinal, being good for Anodine Emplasters. Being dried, it helps women in Labor; Epileptick Convulsions, according to the experience of *Hildanus* and *Beckerus*; Wounds of the Scul, according to *Poppius*. The *fourth* is more illustrious: that it might give way to Excrements, and exclude insensible sooty Fumes by way of insensible Transpiration, by which we are more disburthened then by all our sensible Evacuations put together. By this, *Sanctorius* through the statick Art, in the experience of thirty years, did learn that many persons in the space of one natural day, do void more by transpiration, then in fifteen daies together by stool. The *fift* is to attract. 1. Air in transpiration, in Apoplectick and Hysterical fits, and in such as dive deep and bide long under the Water. 2. Juyce, in long fasting, from plasters applied, if we credit the Observations of *Zacutus Lusitanus*; and the force of purgative and other external Medicaments. And for this cause.

Tis bored through in divers places, for the ingress and egress of things necessary. Now its holes are some of them visible, as the Mouth, the Ears, the Nostrils, &c. others invisible and insensible, as the pores. Those pores of the Body, being otherwise not Conspicuous, are seen in the winter, when the Body is suddenly bared; for then the Scarf-skin looks like a Gooses skin when the feathers are pul'd of. By reason (it seems) of these pores it was, that a certain *Persian* King made use of the skins of Men for windores, if we may credit *Oribasius*.

The Skin is *thick*, sixfold thicker then the Scarf-skin, but thinner then it is in other Animals, nor must any one judg of the thickness of the Skin after it is made into Leather, for by Tanning it is much contracted and thickned. And it seems to be made lighter, for a Mans skin Tanned according to the Observation of *Lofelius*, weighs four pounds and an half.

It is *soft* and exquisitely sensible, but softer and thinner in the Face, Yard and Cods; harder in the Neck Thighs, soles of the Feet, Back; of a midling constitution between hardness and softness, in the tops of the Fingers. So, some part of the skin is extream thick as in the Head, according to *Aristotle*, falsly cited by *Columbus*. Some is thick, as in the Neck; some thin as in the sides, whence proceeds tickling; some yet thinner as in the Palms of the Hands, some thinnest of all, as in the Lips, In Children tis more thin and porey then in grown persons, in women then in men; in an hot Country, then in a cold. Also the Skin is more rare and open in the Summer then in the Winter; and therefore it is that the skins of Animals flaid of in the Summer do more hardly retain their hair, then such as are flaid of in the winter. Also it varies very much according to the diversity of the subject; so that in some it hath been of an admirable density and thickness, if we beleive *Petrus Servius*, who tels of two Negro women, that could without hurt take up, carry, hold, and almost extinguish burning coles with their bare Hands. *Fallopius* saw the skin of a fat man so thickned, that he lost his feeling, by reason of the over-great covering of the Nerves.

As

*Its Connexion.* As to its *Connexion*: some skin is easily separated from the parts under it: as in the lower and middle Belly, in the Arms and Thighs. From others with more difficulty, by reason of the thick Membrane to which it is fastned by the Fibres, and by means of the Vessels. In the soles of the Feet and Palms of the Hands, it is hardly separated, to which parts it grows that they might lay the faster hold. Also hardly from the flesh of the Forehead and of the whol Face, especially of the Ears and Lips, by reason of tendons and Muscles mixed therewith, especially the Muscle *Latus* so called, mingled therewith. So, in the Forehead it is moveable, and in the hinder part of the Head of some People by reason of peculiar Muscles; but it is not so in the rest of the Body.

*Its Vessels.* The Skin hath received common Vessels, for Nourishment, Life and Sense. It hath received two cutany Veins, through the Head and Neck, from the Jugulars; two through the Arms, Breast and Back, from the Axillaries; two through the lower Belly, Loyns and Legs, from the Groyns, which are Conspicuous in women after hard Labor, and in such as have the Varices in many branches. It hath few *Arteries*. And those very small, in the temples and Forehead, Fingers, Cod and Yard. It hath no *Nerves* creeping in it, but it hath many ending in it, as *Galen* conceived: though *Johannes Vesslingus* the prime Anatomist of *Padua*, saies there are very final branches of Nerves running through the skin; and that rightly, for their presence was necessary to cause the sense of Feeling.

## CHAP. III.
## *Of FAT.*

*What Fat is?* FAt is a similary Body void of Life, growing together out of Oyly blood, by reason of the coldness of the Membranes, for the safegard of the whole Body. That it is void of Life, appears in that it is cut without pain, and Consumptions thereof shew as much. Therefore *Pliny* writes that living sowes are gnawn by Mice; and *Ælian* reports that the Tyrant *Dionysius* was so Fat, that when he was a sleep, the pricking of Needles could not awake him. Also in Greenland they cut Fat out of living Whales which they never feel nor perceive.

*The difference between* Pinguedo *and Adeps.* *Pinguedo* Fat, which the Greeks term *Pimelé*, is by *Gaza* ill translated *Adeps*: for *Pinguedo* is an Aety hot and moist substance of the moister sorts of Animals, and is more easily melted with heat, and will scarse ever become hard again, nor can it be broken, and it is soft laxe and rare: but understand the contrary in Suet, which easily grows hard and stif, but is hardly dissolved, &c.

*Fat is not a part of the Body.* Now Fat to speak properly, is not a part, but rather an humor, unless haply it be considered together with the Membrane, as many times it is by *Galen*.

The reason of our order is this; because fat in a man is between the skin and the fleshy Membrane, in Brutes it lies under the Membrane which moves the Skin.

*what parts have Fat, and what not.* Those parts are void of Fat, which could receive no profit thereby but hindrance by resisting convenient Complication and Distension, as the Brain, Eyelids, Yard, Cod, and Membranes of the Testicles. Now it is chiefly in those parts which are more strongly moved then the rest, hard like Suet, and interwoven between the Fibres and little Veins, as in the Palm of the Hand, the inner sides of the Fingers (for there are many tendons, Nerves and Vessels, which ought to be moistened) in the sole of the Foot, especially the Heel. It is softer in sundry parts of which in their place.

*It is not made of Chyle,* *Cæcilius Folius* hath lately written that the matter whereof Fat is made, is the milky juyce, or fatter portion of the Chylus, and that therewith the Bones are nourished. To which opinion I oppose. 1. That such as eat fat meats, do not presently grow fat. 2. That the Chylus is too crude to nourish the parts. 3. That Children should presently become fat as we see it happen in Children new born, who have been nourished only with their Mothers Blood. 4. That the Chylus is necessarily changed before it come unto the Parts. 5. There is no passage from the Mesentery to the extream parts of the body; for it is neither suckt through the Membranes, as some learned men suppose, nor is it carried through the Glandules. Not the former. 1. Because they are thicker, then to suck and draw as threads. 2. They would appear swoln, and would in Anatomy discover some Oyly moisture in them. Nor the latter, 1. Because the Kernels are not continued with the fat parts. 2. Nor do they receive any profitable humor, but Excrements, yea they abound withal white flegmatick, but not a fat humor. 3. We observe that many creatures grow fat which have no Kernels. Now the fatter part of the Chyle is the material cause of fatness, but it is only the remote cause, and therefore in deed and truth.

*But of Blood.* The *Matter* thereof is Unanimosly concluded to be *Blood*, whence *Aristotle* saies, that such Creatures as have no Blood, have neither Fat nor Suet: but it must be blood *Purified* and *Absolutely concocted*, nor yet all such blood, but that which is thin, Aiery and *Oyly*. It resembles the buttery substance of Milk, and the Oyly substance of Seed; and therefore *Aristotle* did well deny Fat to be moist; with a watery moisture, his meaning was, not with an Aery. Against whom *Fernelius* & *Columbus* have written. And when Fat is made of Oyly Blood, much of the heat is lost. Whence *Aristotle* saies; *Such things as are condensed by cold, out of them much heat is forced and squeezed.* And in another place: *Natural matters are such, as the place is wherein they are.*

*That blood is Aiery and oyly.*

*Fat is colder then Blood, yet moderately hot.* Therefore the nature of Fat is colder then that of blood, yet is it moderately hot; For 1. Outwardly applied, it Digests, Resolves, Discusses. 2. It is the thinner and more Oyly part of the blood. 3. It easily takes fire. 4. It encreases the heat within, as the Call assists the Stomachs Concoction, &c.

Some will have it to be cold, because *Aristotle* saies: what ever things grow together by cold, and are melted by Heat, are cold. But Fat is congealed by cold. I answer: Fat is cold in respect of the Heat which before it had, while it was blood. But we must learn from the same *Aristotle*, that such things as having been congealed by cold, are melted with an easie Heat, have not lost much of their Hotness.

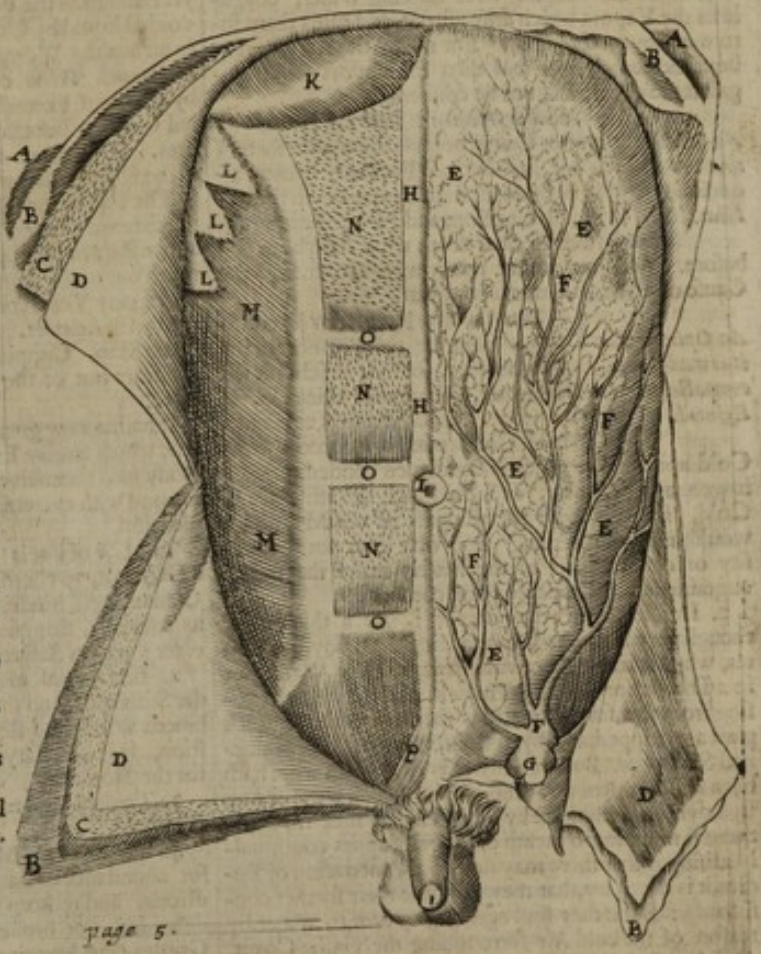
The

# In this TABLE are expreſſed the common Coverings of the Belly ſeparated, and on one ſide the Fat beſprinkled with its Veſſels, and on the other ſide certain Muſcles Detected.

## The II. TABLE.

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

AA. *The Scarf-skin.*
BBBB. *The Skin.*
CC. *The Fat out of its place, ſeparated from the Pannicle or Coat.*
DD. *The fleſhy Pannicle.*
EEEEE. *The Fat left in its proper place half the Belly over.*
FFFF. *The diſtribution of certain Veſſels through the Fat.*
G. *Store of Kernels in the Groyn.*
HH. *The White Line.*
I. *The Navil.*
K. *Part of the Pectoral Muſcle Detected.*
LLL. *The Productions of the greater Foreſide-ſaw-Muſcle.*
MM. *The oblique deſcendent Muſcle of the Breaſt in its Situation.*
NNN. *The right Muſcle of the Belly appearing through the Tendon of the oblique deſcendent.*
OOO. *The Nervous Inſcriptions of the right Muſcle.*
P. *The Right-ſide* Pyramidal *Muſcle in its proper place.*




page 5.

*The efficient cauſe of Fat.*

The *Efficient, or Generating Cauſe* of Fatneſs, is moiſt and temperate Heat, the Author of all Digeſtion. The *cauſe Efficient* of its growing together, is the coldneſs of the Membranes (from whence it gains its white color) not ſimple but reſpective; yet ſufficient to coagulate the oylie part of the blood ſweating forth,

*How Fat is bred?*

even as melted Lead grows congealed, when it is poured out into a place hot enough, yet colder then the fire. And Fat grows together by cold, in a certain degree as it were (for every thing is not made of every thing) and therefore Fat is

*'Tis proved that Fat is generated by cold.*

not bred in any part. Now that Fatneſs proceeds from Coldneſs *Galen* and other Learned men have determined, ſo that the Fat, light, and thin Part of the Blood, while in hotter Bodies it turns to Nutriment, in colder it is reſerved (and therefore hot and dry Animals are hardly ever fat) and when the Veins ſend it out of themſelves, it lights upon the Membranes, and grows together.

For 1. Even the Blood, when it is out of the Veſſels, does after this manner grow together, by meeting with the cold Air, though its internal Coldneſs do alſo help forward the mutation.

2. *Ariſtotle* ſaies, among ſuch things as melt, thoſe that are melted by heat, are congealed by cold, as Oyl.

3. The colder Creatures are the fatter, as Gueldings, Fœmales; alſo ſuch as lie long hid in the Earth without Exerciſe: So in the Winter, all Creatures are fatter.

*How Fat is bred in the Call?*

4. Fat is only bred in cold places, as in the Membranes: So we ſee the Call is fat, by reaſon of its membranous Subſtance, alſo in reſpect of its place, being far from the hot Bowels, for it lies upon the Guts, under the Peritonæum, and becauſe it is ſtored with abundance of Veins and Arteries, it gathers much

*And about the Heart?* Fat; so about the Heart Fat is collected, for there is the Pericardium, a cold and thick Membrane; also the wheyish Humor contained therein: below it there is the Midriff as a Fan, on either side the Lungs like Bellows, the Mediastinum &c. So about the the Kidneys Fat is gathered, because they abound with a wheyish Excrement, lie near the Backbone, and are covered by the Guts.

*And the Kidneys?*

5. A Cover hanging over boyling Water, coagulates the Vapors which arise unto it, and turns them into water by its Coldness. For make the Air round about exceeding hot, and then the Vapors striking against the cover, will not be condensed.

*An Opinion that Fat is caused by Heat.* *Another Opinion* is, that Fat is made by an hot Cause, because the matter thereof is hot, and because Fat easily flames; also because all things are made in the body, by Coction, and Heat. But the answer is clear from what hath been said before. And we do not mean meer Coldness, the Cause of Crudity, but a weak Heat.

*An Opinion that it is made by compactness. Refuted.* *Some* say that Fat attains its consistency from the compactness of the Membranes, for that which is it self compact makes other things so. I answer. That cold things condense, and Condensation proceeds from Cold, nor can that which is condensed condense; unless it were a first Quality, or should take the assistance of Cold, for otherwise the thinness of the Membrane would make the fat thin. And why does not the density or compactness of the Vessels make the matter contained to be condensed and compact?

2. In like manner they object: By a thick cover though very hot, the Vapor arising from boyling Water, when it meets therewith, is turned into Water, or in a Distillation by an Alembick, the Exhalations arising from the subject matter, meeting with the thick glass are stopped, and by reflection turned into a thickned Substance. But the Answer, is clear from what hath been said; moreover, the Vapors which are raised up by boyling, if they are by the Vessel so shut in, that there is no place to breath out, new Vapors continually arising, that there may not be a Penetration of Bodies, it is necessary, that they reassume their former consistency: But if they find egress, they turn to Water, by reason of the cold Air surrounding the glassie Cover. And therefore it is that, to make the Liquor issue more aboundantly, Distillers ever and anon cool the same with cold Water. So when the Air abroad is cold, hot Vapors within do turn to Water upon the glass Windows; which does not happen when the Air is hot abroad.

3. They say, that there are many cold Parts, as the Brain and its coats, &c. which have no Fat about them. I answer, those Parts also are dense. Nor would Nature have Fat in those Parts, for it would be both unprofitable and hurtful: And a moderate Heat is there provided for, by the thickness of the Skin, the Hair and the Skull.

*An Opinion that it is caused by Dryness.* *Fabius Pacius* makes the cause to be also Dryness, by reason of the Fibers of Fat. To which is repugnant 1 That Fat is not dry, but moist. 2 It hath not sensible Fibers, as the Blood hath. Touching which, see the *Anatomical Contradictions* of my *Father*.

*Other late Writers* are pleased with a new conceit, that Fat is made, by a peculiar fat-making form, as a bone is made by a bone-making form. Who doubtless are mistaken, because 1 Fat doth not live. 2 It hath no certain Dimension. And 3 The blood turns into the marrow of the bones, without the help of such a form.

*By a peculiar Form.*

*The form of Fat.* The *Form* of Fat as long as it is in the Vessels, is not congealed, but liquid and melted, by reason of the Heat which as yet remains in the Vessels. It hath been voided liquid by Urin, as *Helmont* hath observed, and in an healthy Woman by stool, in the Observation of *Hildanus*. *Folius* conceives it is liquid in the Vessels, by reason of likeness of Nature, but that it is congealed without, because of the different Nature of the Fibres. But no man can easily observe the dissimilitude of the fibres, either within the body, or without.

*Its Vessels.* The Fat of the Belly hath three *Veins*, the external Mammillary descending from above the *Vena Epigastrica*, arising from beneath out of the crural Vein, through the Groins, and very many Veins coming out of the Loins, accompanied with Arteries. And through these, and the Vessels of the Skin, Cupping-glasses and Scarifications draw Humors out of the inner Parts, as far as I can conceive.

*Its Kernels.* It hath a very great aboundance of *Kernels*, which receive Excrements out of the Body into themselves. In sickly persons, and such as abound with excrementitious Moisture, they are more plentiful.

*Its Uses.* The *Use* of Fat is 1 To keep warm like a Garment, to cherish Natural Heat, by its Clammyness, hindring the going forth thereof, and by its thickness, stopping the Passages, least Cold should enter; and in Summer, they keep out the Heat.

2. In a special manner to help the Concoction of the Stomach. And therefore the cutting out of the Call breeds Winds and Belchings, and to cause good Digestion, it is necessary to provide some other covering for the Stomach.

3. To daub and moisten hot and dry parts, such as is the Heart.

4. To facilitate Motion, provided it be moderate, for abundance of Fat hinders Motion and all other Actions, and to keep the Parts from being over dried, distended, or broken. Hence it defends the ends of Gristles, the Joyntings of the greater Bones; and it is placed on the outside of certain Ligaments, also about the Vessels carried to the Skin. For this very cause, there is store of Fat in the Socket of the Eye, least by reason of continual Motion, it should become dry and withered as it were. And the *Vena Coronalis* of the Heart, is fenced with much Fat, to accommodate the great Motion and Heat of the Heart.

5. It serves as a Pillow and Bulwark against Blows, Bruises, and Compressions. And therefore it is that Nature hath furnisht the Buttocks, and the Hollow of the Hands and Feet with plenty of Fat.

*Whether it may turn to nourishment?* 6. In times of Famine, it is turned into nourishment, for we are nourished with that which is sweet and fat, as being familiar to us and our Nature, if we will beleive *Galen* and other Authors. Whose Intention *Rondeletius* interprets to be, that the Fat doth only releive famished persons, and hold the parts of the Body in play, till they attain their proper Nourishment.

7. It fills up the empty spaces between the Muscles, Vessels,

Vessels, and Skin, and consequently renders the Body smooth, white, soft, fair, and beautiful. And therefore persons in a Consumption and decrepit old Women are deformed, for want of Fat.

## CHAP. IV.

## *Of Membranes in General, of the fleshy Membrane, and the Membrane which is proper to the Muscles.*

*The fleshy Membrane, its situation.*

UNder the fat in a Man, the *Membrana carnosa*, or fleshy Membrane lies, which in Apes, Dogs, and Sheep lies next the Skin. Before we treat thereof, some things are to be known concerning the Nature of a Membrane in general.

The Ancients called the Membranes *Hymenæ*, and sometimes *Chirona's* Coats, also *Meningas*; and otherwhiles *Operimenta*, and *Tegumenta* Coverings; and with *Galen* and other Anatomists, speaking in a large Sense, a Coat and a Membrane, are one and the same thing. But when they speak in a strickt and proper Sense.

*The difference between a membrane and a Coat, and Meninx.*

That is a *Membrane* which compasses some bulkie Part, as the Peritonæum, the Pleura, the Periostium; the Pericardium, and the peculiar Membranes of the Muscles.

But the term *Tunica* or Coat in a strickt sense, is attributed propetly to the Vessels, as Veins, Arteries, Ureters, the Womb, the Gall-bladder, and the Piss-bladder, the Gullet, the Stomach, the Guts, the Stones.

The term *Meninx* is properly given and peculiarly to the Membranes of the Brain.

*What a Membrane is?*

Now a Membrane is a similar part broad, plane, white, and which may be stretched, made by a proper Membrane-making faculty, of clammy and watery Seed, to the end that it might by cloathing defend the Parts.

The Form thereof is the equality of its Surface, Thinness, and Lightness (least it should burden) compactness and strength that it might be widened and stretched.

*Its Use.*

Its Use is 1. To cloath and defend the Parts by reason of its hardness and compactness; and to be the Instrument of feeling: For the Parts feel by help of the Membranes. And so great is the necessity of Membranes, that Nature hath covered every Part with a Membrane. 2. To strengthen the parts. 3. To defend the parts from the injury of the Cold, and to keep the Natural Heat from exhaling. 4. To joyn parts with parts. So the Mesentery knits the Guts to the Back. 5. To shut the mouths of the Vessels, least the Humors should flow out, or flow back: As in the Bladder, where the Ureters are implanted, in the Ventricles of the Heart, by the Valves.

*The Difference of Membranes.*

Now a *Membrane* is *thicker* or *thinner*.

The *thin* Membrane differs in thinness. For the Periostium of the Ribs is thinner then the Pleura, the Periostium of the Head, is thinner then the Pericraneum; the *pia mater* is thinner then the *dura mater*.

The *thick Membrane* is the *Membrana carnosa*, which is not every where alike thick; for it is thicker in the Neck then other places. And now let us speak of the *Membrana carnosa*, or fleshy Membrane.

*The fleshy Membrane what for a thing it is?*

The *Panniculus carnosus* or *Membrana carnosa* is by some termed a membranous Muscle, by others a Nervie Coat, a fattie Coat, &c. It is termed fleshy, because in some places, as about the Forehead, the compass of the Neck, and the Ears, it turns to a musculous flesh, and in such Creatures as by the help hereof can move their whole Skin, it seems to be a Muscle: It is endued with such fleshy Fibers, especially in their Necks, by the motion whereof they drive away flies. But in Man, save in his Forehead, it is immoveable; only *Vesalius* and *Valverda* report that there were some men who could move the Skin on their Chest and Back, and in other parts, just as oxen do. In whom doubtless this Membrane was made of the same constitution, which it hath in Brutes. Moreover in new-born Children, it resembles flesh, by reason of plenty of blood; in grown persons it is like a Membrane, by reason of continually being dried. In a Mans Body, if exact Separation be made, it will appear to consist of four distinct Membranes. *Spigelius* and others do take those membranous Fibers, which are every where interwoven among the Fat, to be *Panniculus carnosus*, or *Membrana carnosa*.

*Its Use.*

Its Use is 1. To defend the neighboring Parts, yea, and to cover and defend the whole Body, and therefore it is situate all over the body.

2. To keep in the Fat, that it flow not out, or melt by reason of the continual motion of the Muscles.

*Connexion.*

3. To support those Vessels which are carried into the Skin (which go between the Skin and this Membrane) for it is *knit into the Skin* by very many Veins, some fewer Arteries, branches of Nerves, and membranous Fibers; and to the Membranes under the Muscles, by the smaller Fibers. It is therefore false, that when the Fat is consumed by fasting, the Skin sticks to the Muscles no otherwise, then a Ball to a peice of cloth wherewith it is covered. It sticks most firmly to the Back, in fashion of a Membrane, and therefore it is said to arise from thence. In the former part of a Mans Neck and his Forehead, it can hardly be separated from the Skin and the *Musculus latus*; it sticks so close, and is thought to constitute the *Musculus latus*.

*Original.*

The *Surface* thereof is slippery, there where it touches the Muscles, by reason of that clammy Humor, which is wont to be daubed upon the Membranes, least the motion of the Muscles should be hindred. It is of exquisite sense; and therefore if it be twitched by a sharp Humor, it causes shivering and shaking, as by Choler in Agues.

*The Membrane of the Muscles, what?*

*The proper Membrane of the Muscles*, which some will have to spring from the Pericranium or Periostium, others from the nervous Fibers of the Muscles, is thin, and is knit unto the Muscle, by most thin filaments.

*Its Use.*

Its Use is 1. To cloath the Muscles, and separate them one from another. 2. To impart unto them the Sense of feeling.

CHAP.

## CHAP. V.
## *Of the Muſcles in General.*

A Muſcle is termed in Greek *Mus* a Mouſe, becauſe it reſembles a ſlaid Mouſe; and the Latins cal it *Lacertus* a Lizard, from its ſimilitude with that Creature: Howbeit we cannot allot one certain figure to the Muſcles, by reaſon of their variety.

*What a Muſcle is?* A Muſcle is an Organical Part, the Inſtrument of voluntary motion. For only this part can receive the Iuflux of the motive faculty. *Helmont* allowes the muſcles a life peculiar to themſelves, which continues for a while, even after death, as the convulſive motion in the Failing-ſickneſs which continues involuntarily. Which nevertheleſs does more truly ariſe, from the retraction and drineſs of the Nerves, and defect of Spirits. Alſo the ſame man is in an error in conceiving that new fibres do ariſe in the muſcles, and cauſe the Palſie. No man ever ſaw them, nor can they be bred anew, becauſe they are Spermatick parts. The Palſie ought rather to be referred to a defect of ſome fibres.

*A Muſcle is an Organical part.* A muſcle is an Organical part, becauſe it conſiſts 1. Of fleſh. 2. Of a tendinous part (and theſe are the two parts of a muſcle, which perform the Action) 3. Of Veins to carry back the Nutriment. 4. Of Arteries preſerving the inbred Heat, and bringing the Nouriſhment to the part. 5. Of Nerves, which contribute ſenſe and eſpecially motion. For the Brain ſends the motive faculty through the Nerves into the Muſcles. 6. Of Membranes which encompaſs and keep the muſcles together. 7. Of Fat which moiſtens them, and hinders them from being dried by over much motion.

*The Connexion of the Muſcles of the whole Body.* The Muſcles of the whole Body are moſt ſtraitly conjoyned one with another: Yet ſometimes they gape, and are at ſome diſtance, when Wind, wheyiſh Humor, or ſome other matter gets between them; as in the baſtard Pleuriſie, and concerning a Soldier whipt by the Turks. *Veſlingus* told me that his muſcles were ſo widened and ſeparated, that if he bent his body but a little, every muſcle would bear it ſelf out from its Natural ſituation, bunching out as it were, and ſwelling.

*The Parts of a Muſcle only two.* We divide the Muſcles into two *parts*, a *fleſhy* part, and a *tendinous* part.

*The tendinous Part how many fold.* Again, we make the *tendinous* part to be either *united*, or *diſgregated*, and *ſevered*.

*United*, where the whole tendinous part appears, white and hard, either in the beginning, end, or middle; or in all theſe parts.

Contrariwiſe it is *diſgregated* or *ſevered*, where it is divided into many ſmall fibres, ſcarce diſcernable to the ſight, being compaſſed about with fleſh: which tendinous fibers may notwithſtanding be diſcerned among the fleſhy ones, in boyled Hogs-fleſh, and in the fleſh of a Turkey-cock, &c. So in ſome Muſcles, eſpecially thoſe of the Thighs of a Turkey-cock, the tendinous parts appear whole and united from the beginning to the end. So in a man, ſomtimes the Tendon deſcends preſently after its Original, mixed with fleſh. Somtimes the tendinous part appears, united in the end, and ſevered in the beginning, as in the muſcle Deltoides; ſomtimes it is tendinous in the middle, and ſomtimes not at all.

*What the Tendon of a Muſcle is?* With *Aquapendent* we define a Tendon to be a Body continued from the beginning to the end of a Muſcle, and that it is a body of a peculiar Nature, cold and dry, made of Seed, as the principle of its Generation: But the beginning of its diſpenſation is a bone, for it ſprings from a bone, and is inſerted or implanted into a bone. Yet ſome Muſcles ariſe from Griſtles, and ſome from Tendons, and are implanted into them. And it is rightly termed *Tendo*, from ſtretching, becauſe it is bent and ſtretched like the ſtring of a bow.

*Its Beginning.*

*Why called Tendo?*

A *Muſcle* is otherwiſe divided into the *Head*, *middle*, and *End*.

*The Beginning and Head of a Muſcle.* The *Beginning and Head of a Muſcle*, when it is tendinous, is by *Galen* and other Anatomiſts, called *Ligamentum*, which they ſay is void of Senſe, and that it is leſs then a Tendon, or the end of a Muſcle.

*Both the beginning and end of a Muſcle may be called a Tendon.* Now the beginning in a great part of Muſcles, is tendinous, ſeldom fleſhy. And to ſpeak the very truth, the beginning may as well be termed a Tendon, as the end; ſeeing for the moſt part, ſuch as is the Beginning, ſuch is the End, in Subſtance, in Thinneſs, Lightſomneſs, Whiteneſs, &c.

*Two things obſervable touching the beginning of a Muſcle.* Now every Muſcle is ſaid to move towards its beginning, and every Muſcle hath a Nerve, which is inſerted either into the Head, or about the middle (and in ſome through the Surface of the muſcle, in others through the Subſtance) ſo that where the Nerve is implanted, there is the Head of the Muſcle: Which *Galen* laies down as a ſure Rule, and ſaith; that if the Nerve be implanted into the Tayl, there is the Head of the muſcle. But *Johannes Walæus* an excellent learned Phyſitian, likes not this Rule, and conceives that it is all one, whether the Nerve be inſerted into the beginning, the middle, or the end. 1. Becauſe that Rule renders the motions of many muſcles obſcure. 2. Becauſe it holds not true in the Pectoral muſcle, nor ſomtimes in other muſcles of the Cheſt and Belly. 3. Becauſe that Rule is not founded upon any reaſon, for whether the Nerve be inſerted into the beginning of the muſcle, or into any other part thereof, the Spirits flowing in by the Nerve, may equally move the muſcle: As we ſee in Wind-Inſtruments, the Air is let in ſomtimes above, ſomtimes beneath, one way as conveniently as another. 4. And whereas that Rule is oftentimes found true, it happens by accident, becauſe moſt muſcles are moved upward, &c. becauſe the Nerves deſcend from above, and therefore could not be more ſafely implanted any where, then in the upper part of the muſcles. And that which *Riolanus* objects againſt *Walæus*, touching the Contorſion or Wreathing of the recurrent Nerve, is nothing. For the Nerves run back, to avoid confuſion, otherwiſe, if Nature chiefly intended the Inſertion into the Heads of Muſcles, ſhe might have

*Galens Rule.*

*Diſliked by* Walæus; *and why?*

*The Objection of* Riolanus *anſwered.*

have carried them right out into the Larynx, as ſhe doth other Nerves of the ſixt Pair. Some Muſcles receive two branches of Nerves, as the Midrif: ſome five, as the temporal Muſcle.

*The middle of a Muſcle.*

The *Middle of the Muſcle*, which they call the belly or body, doth for the moſt part ſwell, and is fleſhy; ſome few have a tendon in the middle, as the Muſculus Digaſtricus which opens the nether Jaw, and the ſecond Pair belonging to the Os *Hyoides*.

*The end of a Muſcle how known by* Galen *and other Anatomiſts?*

*The end or taile of a Muſcle*, is by ſome called *Tendo*, by others *Chorda*, and *Aponeuroſis*. And the end is ſomtimes round, ſomtimes broad, ſomtimes long, other whiles ſhort; ſomtimes one, otherwhiles more then one. Now this end, or tendon, is commonly conceived to be made up of a Concourſe of Fibres, Ligaments, and very ſmal Nerves, which by little and little grow into one Body. For they will have a Nerve, when it comes to the place of a Muſcle to be divided into divers ſlips, which are met by a Ligament, cleft after the ſame manner. Conſequently they Determine.

*Whether the Head of a Muſcle be void of ſenſe?*

1. That the Tendon hath the ſenſe of Feeling, but not the Head, which they account void of ſenſe and Motion. But this is falſe; becauſe the tendinous head of a Muſcle, when it is prickt, breeds Convulſions and cruel Symptomes, juſt as if the Head of the Muſcle were prickt. Moreover, the beginning of a Muſcle hath motion, and therefore ſenſe. It hath

*If it have Motion?*

motion, becauſe a Muſcle, even in its Head, is contracted and expanded, eſpecially when it is fleſhy.

*Whether the end be thicker then the Head.*

2. They ſay alſo that the End is thicker then the Head: which notwithſtanding is ſomtimes true and ſomtimes falſe, as in the Muſculous Biceps, and others.

3. They will have the Tendon to be ſofter then the Ligament (as they call it) or the beginning of the Muſcle, namely ſo much ſofter, as it is harder then a Nerve. But the contrary is true, viz. that the Tendon is harder then the beginning, becauſe it many times changes into a boney and griſtley ſubſtance, as in the feet of feathered fowle; but the beginning doth not ſo. Moreover, I deny that Nerves

*Whether the Nerves go into the Tendon.*

enter into the Tendon. For *Aquapendent* and *Riolanus* have obſerved, by frequent diſſections, that when they are entred into the fleſh of the Muſcle, they are ſpread out into many little branches, which go into a certain Membranous flexure, and ſo vaniſh or end, before they come to the tendon. Moreover, a Nerve is ſoft, how therefore can it be mingled with an hard body? Neither is the end leſs deſtitute of ſenſe, then the Head, ſeeing there come no more Nerves to it then the other: for the Nerve being implanted, tends downwards, and not upwards.

*The action of a Muſcle is Motion.*

The *Action of a Muſcle* is voluntary Motion.

The Motion of a Muſcle, is threefold. 1. A Muſcle is contracted within it ſelf, towards the Head; and when this is done the oppoſite Muſcle is relaxed and looſned. 2. Being contracted, it continues ſo. And theſe two motions are primary, *per ſe* and not accidental. 3. After contraction it is relaxed, which motion is accidental, and proceeds from another. And therefore Muſcles are alwaies ſet one againſt another, as Antagoniſts.

Now the work of this Motion or Action, which is ſeen in the parts, whereinto the Muſcles are planted, doth vary according to the Variety of Parts. For in the throat it is ſwallowing; in the Arme bending and ſtretching forth, &c. Yea and ſomtimes one follows upon another. For the Muſcles of the Cheſt, when they act, do diverſly widen or contract the ſame, they draw in Air, or expel Fuliginous ſooty vapors, and cauſe Reſpiration.

*And that Voluntary.*

This Motion of the Muſcles, is ſomtimes called Voluntary, ſomtimes Animal, to diſtinguiſh it from the natural, in Brutes Spontaneous. For we can haſten, or ſlacken, or ſtop this motion as we pleaſe. And in this motion, the will of a Man or the Appetite of Brutes, is like an Horſeman guiding and putting his Horſe forward; the Nerves reſemble the Reins of the Bridle, and the Muſcles are like the Horſe. There are ſome ſingular Muſcles, as of the inſide of the Eare, the Midrif, the Muſcles of the Cheſt, and Eye-lids, whoſe motion is partly voluntary and partly natural, becauſe they many times perform their actions, when we have no thought nor will thereto.

*The uſe.*

The *uſe* of all the Parts of the Muſcle, is after the ſame manner, as in every perfect Organ. For 1. There is that by which the action is primarily and of it ſelf performed, and it is the Fibrous fleſh; [but eſpecially according to the Fibres, for the fleſh being wounded according to the length of the Fibres, the motion remains unhurt, but it is not ſo, when the fibres are wounded] for the moſt part the belly of the Muſcle, which is moſt of all contracted. Hence it is that if you cut a Muſcle of in the beginning end or middle, in a living perſon, or in one that is dead it purſes it ſelf round and draws it ſelf into it ſelf like a ball: as alſo it doth, being caſt into the water. *Riolanus* counts the principal part to be the tendon, upon which the Action depends, becauſe it hath a peculiar ſubſtance of its own, ſuch as is no where to be ſeen out of a Muſcle. But this is rather true of fibrous fleſh, which is in all Muſcles, where as in ſome there is no tendon. 2. That without which it cannot be performed as the Nerve: For if the Nerves be hurt the Muſcle looſes its motion. 3. That by which it is more ſtrongly and better performed, as the tendons and tendinous fibres. Wherefore thoſe Muſcles only, which perform continual and ſtrong motions, have received united and Conſpicuous tendons. For the Muſcles do either move themſelves only, as thoſe of the Fundament and Bladder; or they move alſo the skin, as in the Lips, forehead and face: and in theſe there is no tendon to be ſeen; or they move a bone, and theſe for the moſt part evidently end in tendons, becauſe the ſtrong motion of an heavy member did require as much: or they move ſome other light thing, as the Muſcles of the tongue and Larynx (ſome of which have tendons and ſome not) of the Eyes, Stones and Yard. 4. Such parts as conſerve and guard the action, as the Veins and Arteries, the Membranes and fat.

*Which Muſcles do move more ſtrongly?*

CHAP.

## CHAP. VI.
## *Of the Muſcles of the Belly, or Abdomen.*

THoſe which are called *Muſculi Abdominis*, the Belly-muſcles, do cover the lower Belly, and *Galen* reckons as many, as there are poſitions of fibres; right, tranſverſe, oblique, and theſe either upwards or downwards. So that according to *Galen* there are eight, four on each ſide; two oblique deſcendents, or external oblique ones, two oblique aſcendents or internal ones, two right and two tranſverſe: But *Maſſa* found out two others, and after him *Fallopius*, which they term Pyramidal Muſcles, others Fallopian Muſcles, and *Sylvius* calls them Succenturiatos. And ſo hither Anatomiſts have made theſe muſcles ten in number. *Caſſerius* accounts the right Muſcles to be many, and that rightly; ſeeing there are for the moſt part four of them on each ſide; and ſo for the moſt part.

This TABLE repreſents the Oblique Deſcendent Muſcle of the Belly out of its place, and the reſt of the Muſcles in their proper places.

The III. TABLE.

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

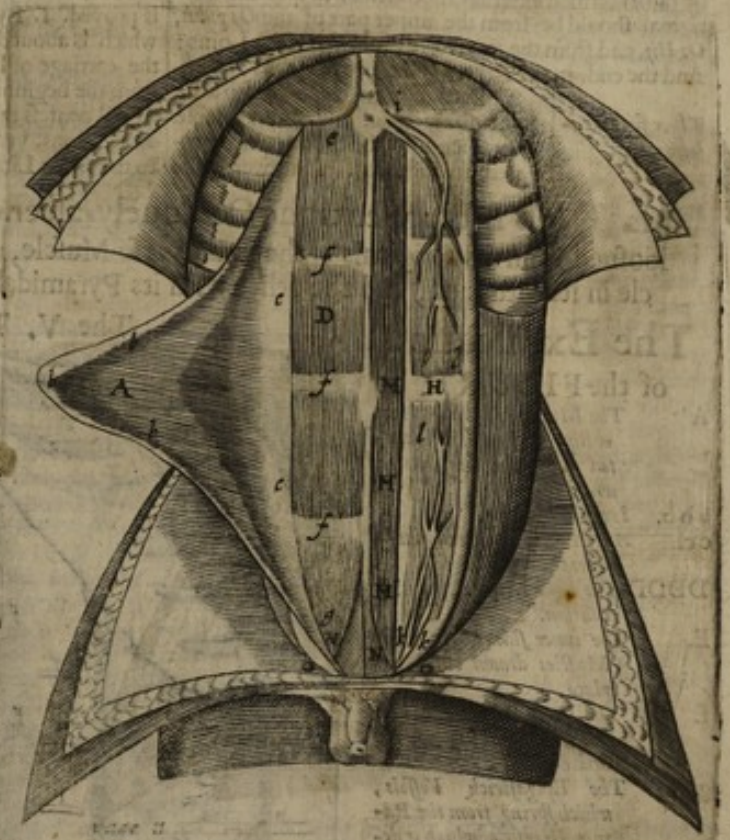
A. *Part of the* Obliquely *Deſcendent Muſcle on the left ſide.*
A. *The beginning of the Obliquely Deſcendent Muſcle removed out of its Situation, in the right ſide, as alſo the inſertion of many Nerves, and the oblique carriage of many fibres.*
B. *The Right Muſcles, of which two are found above the Navil* N. *and one beneath it.*
C. *The fleſhy part, or Belly of the obliquely deſcendent Muſcle ends here; and here begins the Tendon or Membranous end thereof.*
D. *The hole in the Tendon of this Muſcle, through which the Spermatick Veſſels, are ſent into the Stones towards the Cod.*
E. *The obliquely aſcendent Muſcle, in its ſituation, with the Fibres which run to the upward parts.*
F. *The Fleſhy beginning of the obliquely aſcendent Muſcles, growing out of the ſharpe point of* Os Ilij, *or the Appendix* GG.
G. *The Spina, or that ſame Appendix of the Os Ilium.*
H. *The Line about which the Tendons of the oblique Muſcles of the Belly begin, which* Spigelius *calls Semilunaris the half-moon-ſhap'd Line.*
I. *The ſtreight Muſcles tranſparent under the Tendons of the oblique aſcendent Muſcle.*
K. *Productions of the Peritonæum, involving the ſpermatick Veſſels, and deſcending into the Cod.*
L. *Holes in the end of the Aſcendent and Right Muſcles, to let the ſpermatick Veſſels through.*
M. *The Kernels of the Groyn laid open.*
N. *The Navil.*
O. *The white Line of the Belly.*
P. *The Thighs near the Privities,*
Q. *The Prick or Yard.*
1. 2. 3. 4. 5. *Nerves, which proceed from under each Rib, to be diſtributed into the oblique deſcendent Muſcle.*
9. 10. 11. 12. *The four lower Ribs.*
aaa. *The Fibres of the oblique aſcendent Muſcle.*

In this TABLE are ſhown the right Muſcles of the Belly, with their Inſcriptions, as alſo the Epigaſtric and Mammary Veſſels, which are conſpicuous from their inner ſide. Alſo the tranſverſe Muſcle of the Belly, ſeparated about its beginning, and the *Pyramidal* Muſcles in their Situation.

## The IV. TABLE.

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

A. *The tranſverſal or overthwart Muſcle, made looſe about its beginning.*
bbb. *Its beginning.*
cc. *A portion of the Tendon.*
D. *The right Muſcle.*
e. *Its beginning.*
fff. *Nervous Inſcriptions.*
g. *The End.*
H. *The back-ſide of the other right Muſcle, wherein.*
I. *Shews the Dug Vein and Artery deſcending.*
kk. *The Epigaſtry Vein and Artery deſcending.*
ll. *The Concourſe or Anaſtomoſis of the Veins.*
MM. *The Peritonæum freed from the Muſcles.*
NNN. *The Pyramidal Muſcles.*
OO. *The productions of the Peritonæum deſcending into the Cod.*



there are *ſixteen Muſcles of the Belly* for the moſt part, at leaſt and *ſeldomer fourteen*, when there are only three right Muſcles on either ſide; *ſomtimes eighteen*, when there are five *right ones* found, on each ſide. *Fontanus* found them all, folded and wrapped up in an Embryo or imperfect birth.

*The firſt Pair obliquely deſcendent*, [or the external] ſo called by reaſon of the Fibres, which deſcend obliquely from the upper to the lower part; covers all the *Abdomen*, on its own ſide, ſeeing it is very great and broad.

*The Original of the oblique deſcending Muſcle.*

Its original is in the breaſt, from the lower part of the ſixt, ſeventh and eight Ribs, before they end in Griſtles; and it ariſes from ſundry triangular beginnings, or ſpires, [near the great ſaw-ſhap'd Muſcle of the Breſt] which afterward grow into one. And to every triangular ſpire, from the ſpaces between its Ribs, and Nerve is carryed. Moreover, it ariſes alſo [a ſmal ſpace being interpoſed] from the point of the tranſverſe proceſſes of the Vertebra's of the Loyns. So largly is the beginning thereof ſpread out, namely from the ſixt Rib to the loweſt Vertebra of the Loyns.

*Its End.*

It ends in the middle of the Abdomen, where a white line appears, and it ends into a large Tendon, an infinite company of oblique Fibres running together in that place.

*What the white Line is?*

Now the *white Line*, which is ſomtimes fringed with fat, is the meeting together of the Tendons of the Muſcles of the Belly, ſaving thoſe of the right muſcles. For the Tendons of the oblique muſcles are united, and do ſo meet form both parts, that they form as it were a coat which covers the Belly, or as if it were but one Tendon.

It is white, becauſe void of fleſh, proceeding from the *Mucronata Cartilago* or pointed Griſtle which is ſeated at the Sharebone; and it is narrower below the Navil then above.

The two muſcles obliquely deſcendent are bored through. 1. At the Navil. 2. At the Groyn in men, that the ſeed Veſſels may paſs through; in Women, to give paſſage to the two round and Nervy Ligaments of the Womb, which are terminated in the Privity near the *Nymphæ*.

Now

*The Error of Aquapendent and Laurentius, touching the Original of the oblique-descending Muscle.*

Now as touching the Original of the obliquely-descending muscle, *Aquapendant* did long since hatch a contrary Opinion, which *Laurentius* did afterwards propound as new, and of his own Invention, reprehending all other Anatomists, who were the said miserably deceived. Now this contrary Opinion will have these muscles to be rather termed external Ascendents, so that their Original should be from the upper part of the *Os pubis*, *Os Ilij*, and from the transverse Processes of the Loins: And the end. in the Ribs. They prove it thus:

*Their first Reason refuted.*

1. Because a muscle ought to arise from some quiet and immoveable part, such as is the Share-bone compared to the Ribs. I answer, the Ribs are quiet and still, being compared to the white Line.

*Their second Reason answered.*

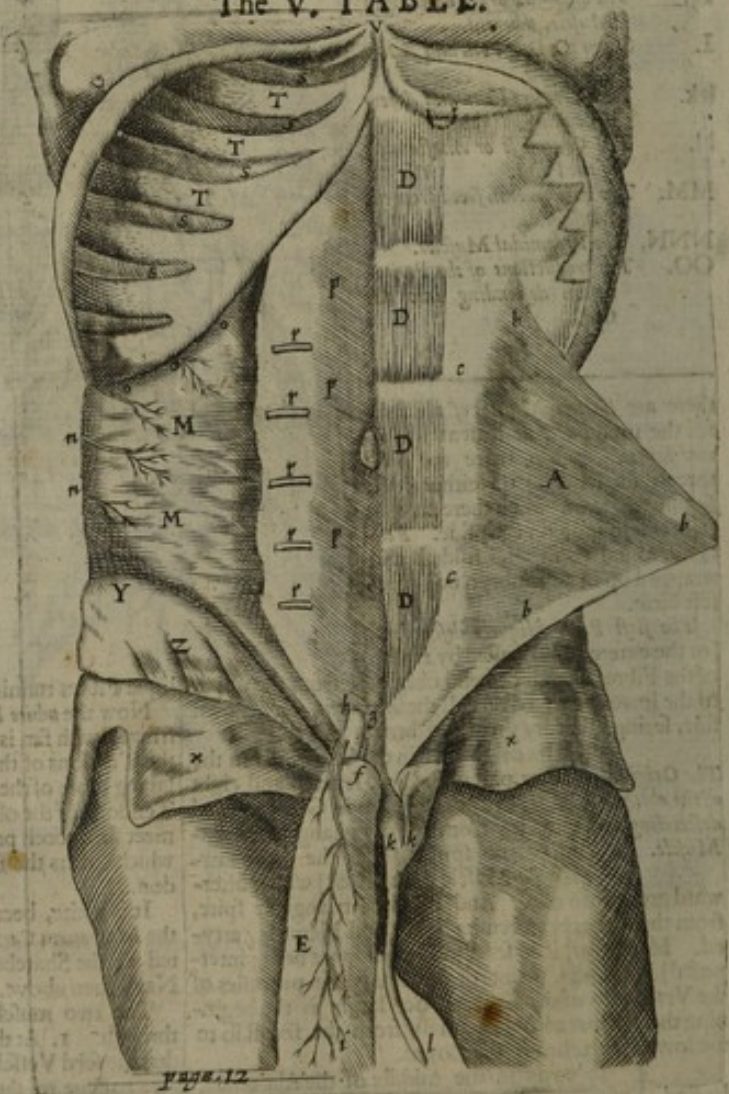
2. They say a muscle draws towards its beginning, and because the oblique-descendent serves for Respiration, it draws the Ribs towards the Share. I answer, this muscle doth not primarily serve for Respiration, as I shall shew hereafter.

*'Tis proved that these Muscles arise from above, not from beneath.*

Now our Opinion, which is *Galens*, is proved. 1. By the Ingress of Nerves, which is about the beginning. 2. By the carriage of Fibres, which go here from the beginning to the white Line. 3. All confess that there is a Concourse of Tendons, yea of those which obliquely descend, into the white Line. Therefore the End is there. 4. It

**This TABLE presents the Obliquely-ascendent Muscle of the Belly, loosned from its Originals; the Transverse Muscle, and the she one straight Muscle in its Situation, and the other with its Pyramidals removed from its place.**

## The V. TABLE.




## The Explication of the FIGURE.

A — *The Muscle of the Abdomen obliquely ascending, separated about the beginning; wherein.*

bbb. — *Is the Beginning.*

cc. — *A Portion of that tendon which covers the right Muscle.*

DDDD. — *The right Muscle in its Situation.*

E. — *The inner side of the right Muscles drawn out of its place.*

f. — *The lower End of the right Muscle, cleaving to the Share-bone.*

gh. — *The Epigastrick Vessels, which spring from the Ramus Iliacus, of which g denotes the Vein h the Artery.*

i. — *The End of these Vessels which are joyned with the Mammaria Descending from above.*

KK. — *The Pyramidal Muscles removed from their place.*

l. — *The Tendon of those Muscles which reaches to the Navil.*

MM. — *The transverse Muscle.*

nn. — *Its first Original which is Nervous & membranous.*

OOO. — *Its second fleshy Beginning.*

PPP. — *Its Tendon which grows to the Peritonæum.*

qqq. — *The Nerves which come from the marrow of the Back to this Muscle.*

rrrrr. — *The Boughs of the Vein and Artery of the right Muscles, which are sent unto the transverse Muscle cut off.*

SSSS. — *The Ribs.*

TTT — *The Intercostal Muscles.*

V. — *The Os Sternum or Breast-bone.*

XX. — *The Skin separated and hanging down.*

Y. — *The Spine, or sharp point of Os Ilij.*

Z. — *Certain Muscles which grow to the Os Ilij.*

is proved by the common Action, of which beneath.

The Uſe [according to *Riolanus*, who ſaith that the *Os pubis* or Share-bone being moveable, doth move this boney ſtructure forwards, the Cheſt reſting, or being lightly moved, in the Conjugal Embracement, and in the going of ſuch as want Leggs and Thighs. But we daily obſerve the Belly to be moved, in ſingle perſons that are chaſt, nor doth Nature frame Parts to ſupply unexpected defects of muſcles, but for Natural and Ordinary Actions. *Spigelius* ſuſpects, that from the ſame moveable beginning, that ſame bone is drawn obliquely upward, and enclined toward the Cheſt, by the help of the muſcles.

The *ſecond pare* is the OBLIQUELY ASCENDENT [or internal] having Fibres contrarily ſituated: It is ſituated next the former, and hath a triangular Figure.

*The Original of the obliquely aſcendent Muſcles.* Its *Original* is fleſhy, from the Rib of *Os Ilij*: but membranous, both from the tranſverſe Proceſſes of the Vertebra's of the Loins, from which it receives Nerves, and from the ſharp points of *Os ſacrum*.

*Their double End.* It grows a little by a fleſhy End, to each of the baſtard Ribs, and to ſome of the true Ribs, but the reſt its End turns by little and little into a Tendon, which is double: The one part goes upon the right muſcles, the other beneath, ſo that the right doth reſt as it were in a ſheath, but near the white Line it is reunited, and inſerted thereinto. Which *Riolanus* hath obſerved to happen only above the Navil, and not beneath.

The third pare of the *right Muſcles*, by reaſon of the right fibres. This pare is commonly reckoned to be but one.

*The Original of the right Muſcles.* *Galen* doth rightly make the beginning to be fleſhy, ariſing from the Breaſt-bone, on each ſide of the Sword-faſhion'd Griſtle, and from the Griſtles of the four baſtard Ribs. It *ends* in a Tendon at the *Os Pubis*. Others contrariwiſe, will have the beginning to be here in the Share-bone, and the End above. But I anſwer. 1. That the right Muſcles receive their Nerves in the upper part, viz. one branch of thoſe Nerves, which were inſerted into the oblique deſcending Muſcle, and others alſo from the laſt of the Back, and from the firſt pare of the Loins. 2. A Muſcle uſes not to have a tendinous beginning, and a fleſhy End. Other late Anatomiſts will have the right Muſcles to have two beginnings and two ends; one beginning and one end in the Breaſt, and another in the Share-bones. Who are for this Conceit of theirs, beholden to that new opinion touching the moveableneſs of the Share-bone, of which I ſhall ſpeak hereafter.

*That there are divers right Muſcles.* The *Muſculus rectus* or ſtraight muſcle, hath for the moſt part three. Inſcriptions in Perſons of a middle ſtature, and ſomtimes four in tall people, whoſe Belly is long. But according to *Carpus* and *Caſſerius*, we ſay that ſuitable to the multitude of Inſcriptions, there are more muſcles, becauſe 1. To every Joynting there comes a Nerve. 2. If it were but one, being contracted into it ſelf, it could not equally compreſs all parts. 3. There ſhould be no ſuch muſcle in the whole body, wherein nevertheleſs there are many long ones, without ſuch a number of Inſcriptions.

In the internal Surface of the right muſcles, there are *two Veins* conjoyned, with as many Arteries.

*The Veins.* The *upper* called *Mammaria*, ariſe from the *Vena cava*, lying beneath the Claves, the more remarkeable branch whereof reaches unto the Duggs, and runs out under the right Muſcle, as far as to the Region of the Navil, where it is terminated.

This is met by the other termed *Epigaſtrica*, which in Women ſprings from the Womb, in men the *Vena cava* goes upwards towards the upper Vein, which before it touches, it is for the moſt part obliterated. Yet theſe two Veins are ſomtimes joyned together by manifeſt Anaſtomoſis, touching one another, at their ends. Hence the Conſent is ſuppoſed to ariſe between the Duggs and the Womb, the Belly and the Noſtrils. For when the Noſe bleeds, we fix Cupping-glaſſes to the belly, and the Duggs of Women being handled, it incites them to Venery.

*The Arteries and Nerves.* The *Muſculi recti* receive *Arteries* from the Epigaſtrica Artery, and *Nerves* which proceed from the laſt Vertebra's of the Cheſt.

The proper uſe of theſe Muſcles according to *Riolanus*, is to move the Share-bone forward in Generation, which hath been already confuted. *Spigelius* will have them to draw the Breaſt to the *Oſſa pubis* or ſhare-bones, and the Share-bones to the Breaſt, in a ſtraight motion, and ſo to bend the Cheſt: whence it is, that in Dogs and Apes, they reach as far as to the *Jugulum*, becauſe their Cheſt did require very much bowing. But theſe contrary motions, unleſs they be holpen, with thoſe inciſions of the right muſcles, do involve a difficulty. *Helmont* ſuſpects that they are ſtretched in going up hill, and that from thence ſhortneſs of breath proceeds. *Flud* ſaith, that by a general uſe, they make the Belly round, and compreſs it centrally, or towards the middle point thereof.

*The Pyramidal Muſcles.* The *fourth pare* called the *Pyramidal* Muſcles, do reſt upon the lower Tendons of the *Muſculi recti*. Nor are they parts of the right Muſcles, as *Veſalius* and *Columbus* think; but diſtinct muſcles, as *Fallopius* proves with reaſons, which are partly convincing, partly vain. But that they are peculiar muſcles is hence apparent. 1 Becauſe they are cloathed with a peculiar membrane. 2. Their Fibres are different from thoſe of the *Muſculi recti*.

*Their Original.* They riſe with a fleſhy beginning, not very broad, from the external Share-bone, where alſo the Nerves do enter; and the farther they go upwards, the narrower they grow, till they terminate with a ſharp point, into the Tendon of the tranſverſe Muſcle. And from this place I have obſerved more then once, a ſmall and round Tendon produced, as far as to the Navil.

*Riolanus* hath obſerved the left Pyramidal Muſcle to be leſſer then the right, and when there is but one, it is oftner left then right.

*Their Uſe.* The Uſe of the Pyramidal Muſcles, is to aſſiſt the right muſcles, in compreſſing the Parts beneath. Hereupon, according as the Tendons of the right muſcles are more or leſs ſtrong, ſo, ſometimes the Pyramidal muſcles are wanting (though rarely) ſomtimes they are ſtrong, otherwhiles weak, and ſomtimes there is but one. *Bauhine* ſaith: If they are abſent, then either the fleſh joyned to the Heads of the right ones [which I have often obſerved] or the Fat performs their Office. And others will have them to be as it were certain Coverings of the right muſcles.

*Fallopius* will have the Pyramidal muſcles, to compreſs and ſqueez the Bladder, when we make Water, that the Urin may be forced out. Contrariwiſe *Aquapendens* will have it, that they raiſe and lift themſelves up, and together with them the Abdomen and Perito-

næum, that the parts beneath them, may not be too much burthened. Now *Columbus* charges *Fallopius*, that he would have these muscles serve to erect the Yard, whereas that is *Massa* his Opinion [ whose Opinion is followed by *Flud*, because of the situation of these Muscles] but they cannot serve for that intent, because they reach not the foresaid part, and because they are found likewise in Women.

*The transverse Muscles.*

The *fifth pare* called the Transverse Muscles, being lowest in situation, do arise from a certain Ligament which springs out of the *Os sacrum*, and covers the *Musculus sacrolumbus*, also from the lowest Rib, and the *Os Ilij*. *They end* by a membranous Tendon, into the white Line, and do stick extream fast to the Peritonæum, every where save about the Share. The proper *Use* of these Muscles, is to compress the Gut Colon.

*The Action of the muscles of the Belly.*

The Action of all the Muscles of the Belly, is as it were twofold. 1. An equable Retension and Compression of the Parts in the Belly: For they all act together, the Midriff assisting them, and this is the reason why the Fibres of all the Muscles, do meet together in one and the same Centre, according as they are thus described by *Robert Flud* *

*Why there are divers muscles of the Belly?*

2. The Second Action follows upon the former, viz. the voidance of Excrements. And because the number of parts to be compressed is great, as the Guts, Womb, Bladder; one Muscle could not suffice, but there was need of divers, acting in divers places, according to divers Angels: Right, transverse, oblique. Every

*A Præoccupation.*

part indeed hath an expulsive Power; but those parts which are hollow, and often, and much burthened, do need the help of these muscles; as in the Expulsion of Excrements, of Worms, of Urin, of a Child, of a Mole, &c.

*A Secondary action of the muscles of the Belly.*

These are their true Actions, which are apparent from their Fabrick. But Nature sometimes abuses the muscles, to move the Chest, when there is need of a great and violent Expiration, as in Outcries, Coughs, and the like. For then they do not a little compress the Chest.

Their Use. They are of an hot and moist Temperament. because flesh is prevalent in them: And therefore they *cherish Heat and Concoction*: They are moderately thick; and therefore they defend the Parts, and are a Safeguard to them, even when they rest: Also *they conduce to the Comlyness of the Body*: And therefore extream Fat, dropsied Persons, such as are very lean, &c. are deformed.

## CHAP. VII.

## *Touching the Peritonæum.*

*Peritonæum, how so called?*

ALl the Muscles of the Abdomen being removed, the *Peritonæum* comes in sight, being spread over the Guts, and having its Name *a circumtendendo*, from stretching and spreading about, because it is drawn over all those parts, which are between the Midriff and the Thighs.

*What is it?*

Now the *Peritonæum* is a membrane which doth cloath the Bowels of the lower Belly.

It is a membrane, and that sufficiently *thin* and *soft*, that it may not be burthensom; but *strong* and *compact*, that it may be loosned and distended. *It is thicker in Women, from the Navil to the Share*, that it may stretch the more, when they are with Child; in men that are great Feeders especially, it is thicker from the *Mucronata Cartilago*, to the Navil, *Laurentius* conceives for the Stomachs sake, which notwithstanding, is hardly probable: for it was fit the lower part should be thicker, least while we stand, it should become slackned and loosned by the weight of the Bowels.

Some will have the Peritonæum to be made of a ligamentous and nervous Substance: *others* of Nerves only; *others* only of Ligaments; *others* of the Coats of the Brain.

*The Shape of the Peritonæum.*

The *Shape* of the Peritonæum is oval: For it is like a Bladder, or a long-fashioned Egg. For it compasses all the lower Belly, and therefore it is answerable thereunto in *Longitude* and *Latitude*.

*Its Surface.*

Its *Surface* is inwardly smooth, and as it were daubed with moisture, by reason of the Guts which it toucheth: without it is fibrous, and a little rough, that it may be fastned with the muscles.

*Original.*

Its Original is at the Back-bone, at the first and third Vertebraes of the Loins, where the Peritonæum is thicker; so that it cannot in that place be separated without breaking.

*Connexion.*

It is knit also above most closely to the Diaphragma (and therefore when it is inflamed, the Hypochondria are drawn upwards) beneath to the Share-bone and the *Os Ilij*; before, to the white Line and the Tendons of the transverse muscles.

*It is double.*

Now it is in al places double (and *Laurentius* with *Cabrolius* make al Membranes double, even the *pia Mater* it self) which notwithstanding is most apparent upon the Back-bone, above the Navil it sticks so close, that its doubleness cannot be discerned: But from the Navil to the Share, it is manifestly divided into two Coats, so distant, that in their capacious doubleing the Bladder is contained, which hath been observed by few: And that was so ordered. 1. That the membrane might be stronger there, where it is burthened. 2. That the umbelical Vessels, which run out there, may be carried more safely: For they pass through the Doublings of the Peritonæum. Therefore also.

*The Error of Fernelius.*

*How many Holes there are?*

The Peritonæum is *bored through before* in a Child which is in the Womb: Also *above* it hath holes, where it grows to the Diaphragma, for the passage of the Vessels. *Fernelius* hath therefore done ill to contradict *Galen*, in denying that the Peritonæum hath Holes. They are three; The first where *Vena cava* passes through; The second where the Stomach passes; The third where the great Artery and the Sixt pare of the Nerves do pass through the Midriff. *Beneath* about the Fundament, the Neck of the Bladder and Womb, and the Vessels which pass through the Peritonæum to the Thighs, the Muscles of the Abdomen and the Skin.

*Its Productions.*

It hath two oblong *Processes* or Productions, like Pipes and wide Channels, descending in men, into the Cod, by the Holes of the Tendons of the oblique and transverse muscles, in which productions (call'd by the Ancients *Didymi*) the Seminary Vessels descend and run back, and near the Stones: These productions are more widened, and become the Coats of the Testicles. Where-

*The Cause of a Rupture.* Whereof, if the outer Coat be widened, and the inner (which sticks most exactly, save by the Share-bone, where it is separated) broken, a Rupture is made, according as the Gut or Call, or both, slip down.

*Its Vessels.* It receives *Vessels* from the neighboring Diaphragmatick, Mammary, and Epigastrick Vessels, and sometimes from the Seminary. It receives small *Nerves*, from those which are carried to the muscles of the Abdomen. And therefore the Peritonæum hath the Sense of Feeling, contrary to what others have thought before *Vesalius*, against whom Experience also bears witness.

*Its Use.* The Use of the *Peritonæum*, is the same with that of membranes in general. 1. To contain the parts, and to send Connexions here and there. This the Peritonæum doth most of all: for it covers all the Bowels of the lower Belly, and makes them more firm; lengthens out, and bestows a Coat upon all of them, to some a thinner, as need requires, and to others a thicker, as to the Stomach, Guts, Bladder, and

*It is the mother of the Coats in the lower Belly.*

**The Peritonæum is here expressed, with its processes, under which the most of the Bowels of the Lower Belly discover themselves.**

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

AAAA. *The four common coverings of the Body dissected Cross-wise.*
BBBB. *The Muscles of the Belly dissected after the same manner.*
CC. *The Breast-bone or Sternum.*
D. *The sword-fashion'd Gristle.*
EEEE. *The Peritonæum covering the whole Cavity of the Lower Belly and going about the same, under which the Bowels seem to shew themselves.*
FF. *The liver appearing through the Peritonæum.*
a. *A cleft into which the Navil vein L. is inserted.*
GG. *An obscure appearance of the stomach.*
H. *The figure of the Spleen appearing situate in the left Hypochondrium.*
IIII. *The manyfold turnings and windings of the Guts which appear obscurely in this place.*
K. *The Navil.*
L. *The Navil vein freed from the covering of the Peritonæum.*
MM. *The two Navil Arteries.*
N. *The Urachus or Piss-pipe.*
OO. *Vessels distributed, partly to the bottom of the stomach, partly to the Call.*
PP. *Productions of the Peritonæum, wherein the preparatory Vessels are contained.*
QQ. *The Muscles of the stones called* Cremasteres *or suspensores, of which the right is seen in its own place well near, but the left hangs separated.*
RR. *The stones freed from the Cod.*
S. *The Share Bone.*
T. *The Prick or Yard.*
V. *The Rise of the Epigastrick Vein.*
X. *The Epigastrick Artery, being a companion to the Vein.*
Y. *A certain branch of the Epigastrick Vein.*
Z. *Also a certain branch of the Epigastrick Artery.*

The VI. TABLE.


page 15.

Wonh

Womb. Also from it proceed two doubled members, the Call and the Mesentery. This also is an Office of the Peritonæum, that Vessels which are to be carried a great way, do run along between the two Coats thereof.

2. To shut the Orifices of the Veins. Hence the Liver, if it were not covered with a membrane, the mouths of its Veins would come into view. Hence also those parts in which there are more Arteries, have received a thicker Membrane, as the Spleen. 3. To further the actions of the Muscles of the Belly; out of *Galen.*

## Chap. VIII. *Of the Call.*

*The Etymologie of the Call.*

UNder the Peritonæum is the *Call* as it were a Covering, others name it *Zirbus*, *Rete* or *Reticulum*, by reason of the straggling course of the Vessels; the Greeks term it *Epiploon* the *Top-swimmer*, because it floates and swims as it were upon the Guts. For in all Living-Creatures it is.

*Its Situation*

It is *situate* at the Liver, Spleen, and Bottom of the Stomach, and from thence spred upon the Guts, whose turnings it involves and enters into. In some it ceases at the Navil, in others it reaches below the Navil, and somtimes to the *Os Pubis* where it is inserted: [ Somtimes it is joyned to the Womb with a strait Connexion, as the rarely learned *Marcus Aurelius Severinus* found at *Naples* in a Shee-Fool; and in another it was knit to the bottom of the Womb, in *Venice* when I was there] and when it comes between the bottome of the Bladder and of the Womb, the mouth of the Womb is thought to be compressed, and Women thereby made barren. In men an *Epiplocele* is caused, when it descends into the Cod. And because it is extended rather unto the left then the right side, therefore an *Epiplocele* of the left side is more frequent. *Epiplocele* is a Rupture in which the Call falls into the Cod.

*Its Connexion.*

*The cause of Barrenness.*

Many times the Guts being left naked, the Call lies lurking under the Liver, which happens not from strangulation, seeing in strangled persons, tis found in its right place, and in persons not strangled, we find it drawn back; but if we may credit *Spigelius*, it comes from the Guts being puffed up with wind. In Hydropical persons I have found it quite putrified. C. *Stephanus* unjustly denies it to hunters.

*Its situation in persons strangled.*

*In Infants.*

Infants, if we believe *Riolanus* are distitute of a Call over their Guts, which as they grow is spread out downwards, and in declining Age, it is again diminished.

*Its Original.*

It hath two distinct *Originals* from the Peritonæum and is as it were a doubled Peritonæum.

1. It arises at the stomach, viz. the bottome thereof.
2. At the Back and Gut Colon; and no beginning cleaves to another. Hence it hath two Walls or two Membranes, thin and light (that they may not be troublesome with their weight) which

*Its Parts.*

This TABLE expresses to the Life the Situation of the Guts and Call and the Navil Vessels.

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

AA. *The coverings of the Belly dissected and turned up every way, that the inner parts may come into view.*
B. *The Cartilago Mucronata, or Sword-like Gristle.*
CC. *The bunching side of the Liver.*
DD. *The stomach.*
EE. *Part of the Gut Colon seated under the Liver.*
FFFF. *The upper Membrane of the Call, fastned to the bottom of the stomach.*
G. *The Navil.*
HH. *The Navil-Vein.*
II. *The two Navil-Arteries.*
K. *The Urachus or Pist-pipe.*
L. *The Bladder.*
aaa. *The Gastrepiploick or Belly-Call Vessels, sprinkled through the Call and stomach.*
MM. *The Guts.*

The VII. TABLE.

which lie one upon another: the external or *former*, which is tied to the outer membrane of the ſtomach at the bottom, and to the bunching part of the Spleen. The inner and latter, which is tied to the Gut Colon, and ariſes from the Peritonæum, under the Midriff, juſt at the Back. And between theſe Walls, it hath a remarkeable Cavity: in which ſome very fooliſhly conceive the Natural ſpirit is contained. *Riolanus* will have it propagated from a production of the Meſentery, becauſe if you ſeparate the Membranes of the Meſentery, you may proceed as far as the Gut Colon; which he proves in another place, out of *Hippocrates*. But in vain, ſeeing the Meſentery it ſelf, ſprings from the Peritonæum, and he confeſſes the fourth part only of the Call to be Meſenterical.

Riolanus *refuted.*

*Its Figure.* The *Figure* thereof reſembles that of a Falconders pouch, for the upper Orifice thereof is Orbicular, and the lower part of the Call is round after a ſort, and ſomtimes unequal.

*Its Magnitude.* The magnitude thereof varies: for it paſſes in ſome men to the Navil, in others it goes further, as was ſaid before. Naturally it hardly exceeds the weight of half a pound, *Riolanus* obſerves. Howbeit *Veſalius* ſaw a Call of five pounds weight.

*Its Veſſels.* The Call hath this property above other membranes, that through the ſubſtance thereof, very many *Veins* and *Arteries* are ſprinkled, from the Cæliacal and Meſenterical branches; and ſmal *Nerves* from a double branch of the ſixt Pair. And by reaſon of the many Veins, there is much *Fat* in the Call: and between the ſame innumerable Kernels are interpoſed, which ſuck in and feed upon the dreggy humors. Which Fat I have often obſerved to have been molten in ſuch as have been ſick of Conſumptive Feavers.

## This Demonſtrates the Lower Membrane of the Call. Alſo the Meſentery with the Guts and Kernels adjoyned thereto.

## The VIII. TABLE.

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

AAA. *The lower Membrane of the Call, on which the Colon is ſuſpended.*
*aaa.* *The Veſſels of the Call.*
CC. *The Ligament of the Gut Colon.*
DDDD. *The Meſentery.*
EEE. *The ſmaller Kernels of the Meſentery.*
F. *The greateſt Kernel of the Meſentery, ſituate in the middeſt thereof, called, by* Aſellius, Pancreas.
GGG. *The Veſſels of the Meſentery.*
HH. *The thin and thick Guts.*
I. *The bottom of the Piſſ-bladder.*
KK. *The Umbilical Navil-Arteries.*
L. *The Piſſ-pipe, or Urachus.*
M. *The Navil cut off.*


Tis a moſt rare Caſe to find the Call perfectly fleſhy ſuch as I ſaw cut out of a Body in the Hoſpital at *Zeyden*.

*Its uſe.* The Uſe, 1. By reaſon of the plenty of its Fat it helps and cheriſhes the heat of the ſtomach, namely of the bottom thereof; for the upper part of the ſtomach is cheriſhed by the Liver, reſting upon it; alſo it cheriſhes the heat of the Guts, as being membranous and blood-leſs parts. And therefore, that ſame Fencer whoſe Call was taken away by

*Galen*, was easily hurt by cold, and therefore he alwaies covered his Belly with Wool. The Call therefore is as it were a Pillow to the Stomach, and furthers Digestion. For that is a rare case which *Foreſtus* relates of a young man, and *Riolanus* of others who lived well enough, after their Calls were taken away: Peradventure their Stomachs were some other way strengthened, or might be Naturally more strong then ordinary. Otherwise ordinarily, by defect of the Call, Catarrhs, Loosnesses, Lienteries, Consumptions do arise.

2. The Membranes afford this Use, that they prop up the Branches of a Vein and an Artery, which go unto the Stomach, Duodenum, and Colon Guts so called, and to the Spleen; also the Fat grows by benefit of the Membranes.

3. *Walæus* supposes that Branches of Arteries and Veins are attributed in greater quantity unto the Call, then is requisite to breed Fat, and nourish the Call, and that they are there placed, being Branches of *Vena porta*, that the greater quantity of Blood might return to the Heart.

## Chap. IX. *Of the Stomach.*

*The Stomach, why called Ventriculus?*

THe Stomach called *Ventriculus*, that is a little Belly, is an Organical part seated in the lower Belly, just under the Midriff, being the Instrument that makes Chyle. *Pareus* observes that it hath through a Wound in the Midriff ascended into the Chest, and gone downwards by reason of the encrease of the Call. But Naturally;

*Its Situation.*

It is *seated* in the Epigastrium, a place encompassed with no Bones, that it might stretch more easily, just under the Midriff, as it were in the middle of the Body, and it rests upon the Back-bone: Now its left side which is the greater and rounder in the bottom, lies in the left Hypochondrium, to give way to the Liver which lies on the right side, and that so the Body may be equally as it were poised, and ballanced, or trimmed, as the Watermen speak of their boats: Towards the right hand it grows small by little and little, that the meat may be gradually thrust thither. Whence we gather that it is better for such as lie down to sleep, to lie first upon their left side till the Digestion be finished, and afterwards upon their right, otherwise then is commonly imagined. But in the left side there is the bottom, where the meat ought to tarry, for being rowled to the right side, it is nearer passing out. Howbeit in this case, much must be allowed to Custom.

*The Number of Stomachs in feathered Fowle.*

'Tis only one in *Number* in man, and such live Creatures as have teeth in both their Jaws. *Riolanus* hath twice observed a double Stomach in a man, continued, but distinguished by a narrow passage out of one into another. *Sperlingerus* saw the same in a Woman of *Wittemberg*, and *Helmontius* saw a bag full of stones which grew to the Stomach. Yea, and that it hath been double in one that chewed the Cud, as *Salmuth* relates and others, is not to be doubted. In some Fowls there are two Stomachs, the one membranous, which the Latins term *Ingluvies* the Crap, which only receives the meat, that from thence being lightly digested, they may cast it into the mouths of their young ones, whereas otherwise young Birds could not be nourished. The other is very fleshy and hotter, having within a hard Membrane, wherein hard meat is received. *Petrus Castellus* a rare man, adds a third, which is in like manner fleshy.

*In Beasts that chew the Cud.*

In Beasts that chew the Cud, and have Hornes, and teeth only in one Jaw, there are four; The first *Venter*, the *Reticulum*, the *Omasus*, and the *Abomasus*; of which *Aristotle* speaks. The *Venter* and the *Reticulum* which is a part thereof, are ordained to hold the crude meat; The *Omasus* receives the Food immediately from the mouth, if it be thin, if thick, it is first chewed, and from hence after a short stay, it slips into the *Abomasus*. Now chewing the Cud, is a second chewing of the meat in the mouth, for the more perfect Digestion thereof, whence the Aliment proves excellent, and for that cause among the Jews, such as chewed the Cud were counted clean Beasts. Chewing the Cud is caused, not as some think, because the meat in the first Stomach gains such a quality, that it provokes the Stomach to cast it up; for so in every sharp biting of the Stomach, and in all Animals chewing the Cud, would happen against their Wills: but it depends upon the voluntary Action of the Stomach, which by a singular membrane, expels what it pleases, and when it pleases; as that some Tos-pot of *Malta*, whom I have seen, would as he pleased cast up what ever he had drunk; and others will swallow down the Smoak of Tobacco, and turn it out again. In great Sea-fishes I have observed a threefold Stomach, as in a Porpice and others; but it grew so together, that there was rather three distinct Cavities with passages from one to another, three perfect Stomachs.

*Its Orifices. The Symptoms of the Stomachs Mouth, and why like Heart-passions?*

It hath *two Orifices*, and both of them in the upper Region of the stomach.

The *left* is commonly called the upper Orifice, and sometimes singly the mouth of the Stomach, and sometimes tis termed the Stomach, because of its largeness: the Ancients did cal it *Cor* the Heart, because the Diseases thereof caused fainting Fits, and other Symptoms like those which happen to such as are troubled with Passions of the Heart; also because of its most exquisite sense, and because the Heart doth sympathize therewith, both in regard of its nearness, and they have Nerves proceeding from the same Branch. This Orifice is *greater*, thicker, and larger, so that it may admit hard or half chewed meat. *Tis situate* at the eleventh Vertebra of the Chest: It hath circular fleshy Fibres, that it may by Natural Instinct shut up the mouth of the Stomach, after the meat is received in, least fumes should arise, and go into the Brain, and breed Diseases; and that so Digestion may be more perfectly accomplished. So we cover it as we do our Seething-pots with a potlid, to keep in the Fumes, and to hinder the meat from falling back into our mouths, when we lie in bed, and tumble this way and that way. Through this Orifice, meats and drinks are received in. And it is but in the Epigastrick Region, and it is more near the Back-bone, then the sword-fashion'd Gristle or *Cartilago Ensiformis*: And therefore when it is diseased, we apply Epithems rather behind then before. *Helmont* places the seat of the Soul, and the Principle of life in the Stomach, as it were in its central point, so that it governes and rules over the Head and principal Faculties. If you aske him more particularly where it is placed, he will answer you that it is there after an exorbitant manner, centrally in a point, and as it were in the middle of an Atome of the thickness of one Membrane. But the Stomach cannot be the

*Whether the Soul be seated in the Orifice of the stomach?*

the Seat of the Soul, because. 1. It is alwaies full of impure meats. 2. No Faculties flow to us from thence. 3. Great Feeders and persons of large Appetite, should have more Soul then other people. 4. The Soul is not fixed to any Centre. 5. When the Stomach is hurt, death doth not presently follow, as appears in him that swallowed the knife. And any dammage happen, it is by reason of the Nearness of the Heart, and Community of Nerves, and consequently by accident. For the Soul sticks not in the Nerves primarily; but there rather from whence the Nerves have their Original; and it is a common Membrane. Yet in a large sense, it may be called the Principle of Life, because there is the Seat of Appetite, and the first Reception and Digestion of Aliments, whose fault in the following Concoctions, is never amended. Now it rules over the Head, by reason of the Consent of the Membranes, and the most undoubted arising of Vapors.

*The right Orifice, called Pylorus.*

The *right Orifice*, commonly called the lower, is as far from the bottom, well near, as the left: It is narrower, and abides shut until the Digestion of the meat be finished, that is to say until the meat be turned into a liquid Cream, or Posset as it were. Howbeit *Walæus* hath observed, that it may and doth let out the more liquid meats, and such as are of easie Digestion, by peicemeal before the rest, which may easily be done by opening it self a little way, so that the thicker and undigested meats cannot pass through, as *Riolanus* objects, seeing they cannot pass through a narrow chink: This *Walæus* I say observed in his Dissertion of Living Creatures. *Helmont* affirms that in Vomiting, it is shut upwards towards the Pylorus, because it is inconvenient to Health, that the faculent matter of Vomits should pass downwards. Yet he grants that it is sometimes opened between the first and other Vomits, when somwhat ascends out of the Guts. And the truth is, that it is also open to noxious Humors, *Lienteries* doth witness, and other fluxes of the Belly, *Miserere mei*, and other Diseases, which pass and repass through the Pylorus. The same Person beleives that it remains shut after Death, which doth, I conceive no otherwise happen, then as other parts are then stiff with Cold. It is a little bowed back, and hath transverse Fibres, and a thicker Circle cast about it (others call them Glandulous Pustles) like an Orbicular or Sphincter Muscle [some call it by the Name of a Valve, though it be seldom so closely shut, but that both Dung and Choler, and other things do ever and anon ascend. But the Chylus by a Natural propension, affects to go downwards, nor doth it go the other way, unless compelled] It is called the *Pylorus* or Porter, because it lets out the Chyle:

*It is opened in the Distribution of Chylus.*

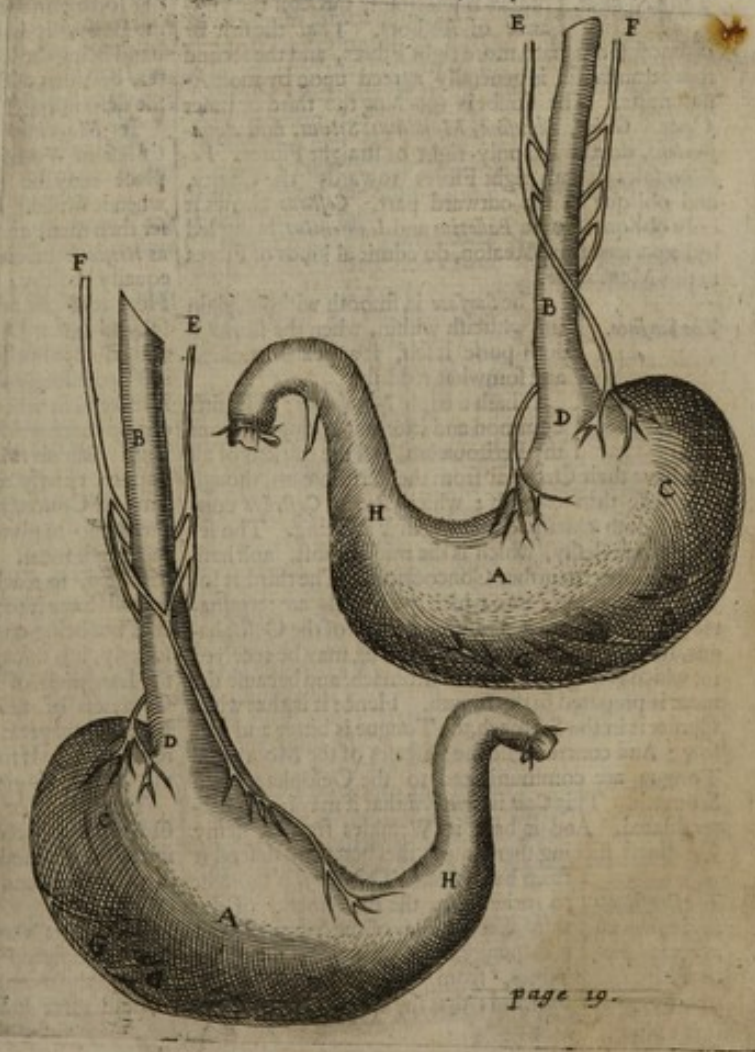
*It is shut sometimes, and opened in Vomiting.*

*It is sometimes exceedingly widened.*

It may be exceedingly dilated, even as also the left. Hence it is that many examples testifie,

## The Stomach-Nerves so called are Expressed.

### The IX. TABLE.




*page 19.*

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

A. *The Stomach.*
B. *The Gullet or Oesophagus.*
C. *The left and larger side of the stomach.*
D. *The upper Orifice of the Stomach called peculiarly* Stomachus, *and* Cardia *the Heart.*
E. *The right external Nerve of the sixt pare, compassing the Orifice thereof.*
F. *The external left Nerve of the sixt pare.*
G. *The Gastrick Vessels creeping along the Bottom.*
H. *The lower Orifice or Mouth of the Stomach called* Pylorus, *the Porter.*

how that very great things have been swallowed down, and voided out by Vomit, and by Stool; as Gold-rings, Nut-shels, small Knives, Pebble-stones, peices of Iron, Frogs, Lizards, Serpents, whole Eels, Pipes, Coins, &c. The *Pylorus* rules over all the inferior parts, according to the Opinion of *Helmont*, being Moderator of Digestion: From the Indignation whereof, he fetches the cause of the Palsie, and Swimming Dizziness of the Head; and saith that a Flint having stopped the same, Want of Appetite, and Death it self followed. *Salmuth* saw Death caused by the Gnawing and Scirrhous Tumor thereof, which Evils depend upon vitiated Concoction, or Digestion hindered.

*Whether the Pylorus have any Rule over the inferior Parts?*

*The Fibres of the Stomach and their use.*

The stomach hath three sorts of *Fibres*: straight, oblique, & transverse; which are conceived to serve for Attraction, Retention, and Expulsion. But some do peradventure more rightly determine, that the Fibres conduce to firmness and strength, as when we would have a peice of Cloath strong, we cause more threeds to be woven into it: Especially seeing many other parts, without these kind of Fibres do attract, retain, and expel; as the Liver, Spleen, Brain, Stones, Lungs, Duggs. And other parts, as Bones and Gristles, though they have Fibres, yet do they not attract or expel any thing.

*Their Number.*

The *Number of Fibres* in the Membranes is uncertain, through the variance of Authors. That the first or outmost Coat hath more right Fibres, and the second more transverse, is generally agreed upon by most Anatomists. The doubt is touching the third or inner Coat. *Galen*, *Abensina*, *Mundinus*, *Sylvius*, and *Aquapendens*, do allow it only right or straight Fibres. *Vesalius* saies it hath right Fibres towards the Cavity, and oblique in the outward part. *Costæus* allows it only oblique. I with *Fallopius* and *Laurentius*, being led by Experience and Reason, do admit al kinds of Fibres in this Membrane.

*The Surface.*

The *Surface* is smooth without, plain and whiteish within, when the stomach doth purse it self, it appears wrinkled and somwhat reddish.

*The Membranes.*

It hath a triple *Membrane*: The first common and external, springing from the Peritonæum, and the thickest of all that have their Original from the Peritonæum, though otherwise thin enough; which *Petrus Castellus* conceives doth chiefly concurre in Vomiting. The second more fleshy, which is the middlemost, and hath fleshy Fibres to further Concoction. The third is lowest and nervous, into which the Vessels are terminated, and it is continued with the Coat of the Oesophagus, Mouth, and Lipps, that nothing may be received in, which is ungrateful to the Stomach, and becaufe the meat is prepared in the mouth. Hence it is, that when Choler is in the Stomach, the Tongue is bitter and yellow: And contrariwise the Diseases of the Mouth and Tongue are communicated to the Oesophagus and Stomach. This *Coat* is *wrinkled*, that it may be the better dilated. And it hath its Wrinkles from a fleshy Crustiness sticking thereunto, the better to defend it from hard meats. This *Crust* is thought to arise from the Excrements of the third Concoction of the Stomach: and it is spungy, and hath passages like short Fibres, from the inner Surface to the outward; that the thinner Chylus may be the better detained till the End of Digestion.

*The Crustiness in the stomach whence it proceeds?*

The Substance therefore of the Stomach being membranous and cold, is holpen by the Heat of the Neighboring Parts. For the Liver lies over the right side, and middle part thereof; for it lies under the Heart-pit: At the left side lies the Spleen; it is covered by the fat Call: Under it lies the Pancreas or Sweet-bread; also near it lie the Midriff, Colon-gut, the Trunk of *Vena cava*, and of the Aorta.

*Its Connexion.*

The Stomach is knit in the left part to the Midriff (not to the Back-bone) by its Orifice; therefore when it is over full, by hindring the motion of the Midriff, it causes shortness of breath: On the right side it is joyned to the Gut Duodenum, by its other Orifice or the Pylorus.

At the Stomach, in the left side, under the Midriff, is formed a remarkeable *Cavity* enclosed with Membranes, partly from the Stomach, partly from the Midriff, and partly from the Call. Touching this Cavity, that place of *Hippocrates* is to be understood in the 54 Aphorism of the 7. Section. *Those who have Flegm shut up between the Septum transversum and the Stomach, which causes pain, and can find no passage into either of the Bellies, when the Flegm passes through the Veins into the Bladder, their Disease is cured.*

*Shape.*

The *Shape* of the Stomach is round and oblong, like a Bag-pipe, especially if you consider it together with the Duodenum and Oesophagus. In the Fore-part is is equally gibbous or bunching forth; in the Hinder-part, while it lies enclosed in the Body, it hath two bunchings, that on the right hand being the less, and that on the left hand the greater, between which lie the Vertebra's of the Back, and the descending Trunk of the *Vena cava* and the Artery.

*Its Magnitude.*

Its *Magnitude* varies; commonly tis less in Women then in Men, that place may be made for the Womb when it swells. For Women are for the most part lesser then men, and yet not more gluttonous then Men, as *Aristotle* beleives, viz. being of the same size and equally healthy; yea, and they are inferior to men in Heat to digest and concoct. Also in gluttonous persons and great Drinkers, it is greater then ordinary, so that when it swells, it may be felt as it were naked. For it is exceedingly dilated, and therefore it is thinner in Drinkers, in whom it is somtimes so attenuated, that it can no more wrinkle it self, whence follows long weakness. Which *Walæus* in Dissection hath observed to happen chiefly to those old men, whose Stomachs in time of Concoction do breed Wind; which oftentimes also in gluttonous persons, takes up more room then their meat. *Columbus* will have it, when it is stretched, to reach as low as the Navil, and *Archangelus* will have it to reach further, when it is over stretched; but being contracted and wrinkled in such as live soberly, it is thick, and lies hid under the Liver. Now the Largeness of the Stomach is known. 1. By the Greatness of the Mouth, for those that have large Mouths, are great Eaters, but withal bold and magnanimous. 2. If from the *Cartilago Ensiformis* to the Navil, the space is greater, then that of the Face or Breast.

The *weight* of the Stomach being dryed with the Oesophagus, according to the Observation of *Loselius* is two ounces and two drams; wherein notwithstanding I have found a variety, according to the diversity of subjects.

*Vessels.*

It receives very many *Vessels*. *Veins*, as from the Spleen *Vas breve*, which is inserted, not into the mouth but into the bottom thereof, and there insinuating it self into the tunicles, it creeps

creeps upwards between them, towards the Orifice: but before it reaches the same, it is obliterated; in some it is not visible, because of its smalness, in some it is quite absent [and therefore peradventure those persons have no good Concoction, or Nature Recompences that defect with other Arteries] in others I have seen it flourishing, with manyfold branches. And because it is implanted into the bottom of the stomach, and blood emptied there, cannot provoke Appetite, as many imagine. Others will have it that a Melancholick Excrement which could not be changed in the Spleen, is by this Vessel brought into the stomach, that by its harsh and acid faculty, it might further the stomachs Concoction, and make the meats abide therein, a convenient season. But Concoction should rather be hindred, by the casting in of a strange Excrementitious Humor. If we shall interpret it touching an acid fermenting juyce, the Opinion will be truer, which kind of juyce, can come from no other place but the Spleen. For according to the Observation of *Walæus*, the Spleen, especially of a Sow, being boyled and eaten, as coming neareſt that of a man, doth wont to help the heavyness and dullness of the Stomach. Hence sharp things are pleasing to the Spleen, and *Hippocrates* gives Vinegar to Spleenetick persons, and *Celsus* makes a Cataplasin for the Spleen tempered with the sharpest Vinegar. Moreover *Riolanus* hath found the left side of the inner part of the Stomach blacker then the right. *Others* suppose that nothing is carried into the stomach by the *Vas breve*, but that somwhat is carried out of the stomach into the Spleen; whether it be the thinner part of the Chyle, as *Conringius*, *Horstius*, and *Regius* prove, or Blood as *Hogeland* conceives; they being informed by Ligature in dissections of live Creatures: of which hereafter.

*Whether blood cast out of the Spleen help Appetite and Concoction.*

Moreover the stomach receives Veins from Vena Portæ, viz. the Pyloric, Gastric, and Gastroepiploic branches left and right.

There is one notable Vein called *Gastrica*, which creeps a long the bottom of the stomach, but doth not quite touch it least the stomach being very much stretched, it should be in danger to be broken; but it spreds many branches to the stomach: which *Picolhomineus* and *Aquapendent* will have to suck out the more thin and subtile part of the Chyle, before it passes out of the stomach to the Liver. And this Opinion seems probable. 1. Because otherwise no reason can be given, of so sudden a passage, seeing they who have drunk much, do presently Pisse it out plentifully. 2. Otherwise the stomach would be ready to burst, when it is overcharged. 3. Thence it comes, that strength is so soon repaired by fragrant Wine, broaths, and other comfortable things.

In some Men a part of the Choler passage, is inserted into the bottom of the stomach, by which our Country-men *Petrus Severinus*, would have choler to be carried into the stomach. But this is an Error of Nature, and therefore such persons are apt to vomit Choler, for they are exceeding Cholerick, such as *Galen*, *Vesalius*, *Fernelius*, and *Casserius* have observed. Such persons are said to be *Picrocholoi ano*, vomiters of Choler.

The stomach receives *Arteries* from the *Cæliaca Arteria*, which accompany the Veins, not only for lifes sake, but that blood may be supplied from the Heart, for nourishment, for that the stomach should be nourished with Chyle, is a false opinion and now out of date. Seeing it is nourished with blood, after the manner of other parts (it is only delighted with the chyle) which is brought out of the Arteries; which blood flows back again to the Heart, according to the Doctrine of Circulation proved and asserted by the renowned *Walæus* in his Epistles. By the Splenic Arteries an acid sharp juyce is conveighed into the stomach from the Spleen, as the said *Walæus* and *Hogeland* conceive, which I grant when there is no *Vas breve*, or in absence of the Spleen, wherein I easily consent with *Riolanus*.

Also it hath *Nerves* from the sixt pair, viz. a couple in its Orifice, from the stomach branches, being produced after it hath run back in the Chest and furnished the Lungs and Pericardium; which because they are soft and go a great way, they are covered with strong Membranes. And they do so cross one another, that they are carried obliquely and consequently with greater safety. The right branch compasses the fore and left part of the mouth of the stomach; the left the hinder and right part thereof. And therefore because the Orifice is so compassed with Nerves, as if it were altogether compoſed of Nerves' thence it is that this Orifice of the stomach is exceeding sensible; for there was to be the seat of Appetite and hunger: even as those that are very hungry, do feel that part to be as it were contracted and wrinkled together. Also branches of Nerves are sent from these downwards to the very bottom. A branch goes from the left Nerve, a long the upper part of the stomach to the Pylorus, which it infolds with certain branches, and goes to the hollow of the Liver. Other two Nerves also go unto the bottom of the Stomach, from the branches which run along by the Roots of the Ribs. And therefore it is no wonder, that when the Brain is smitten and hurt, the Stomach is disturbed, and falls a vomiting, especially in the pain called *Hemicrania*: As also that when the Stomach is misaffected, the Animal Faculty languishes.

*Its Nerves.*

In the Stomach *Fermentation* of the Meats goes before Concoction, which *Hippocrates* inculcates in his book *de Prisca Medicina*. Because hard things ought to be broken to peices; and thick things as bones and shells, &c. in the stomachs of Beasts, seem impossible to be melted by the natural heat alone, unless somwhat else do cut them in peices. This labor *Petrus Severinus* attributes to Choler, which nevertheless according to the ordinary Course of Nature is not found in the stomach, nor does it dissolve any hard meat, though Painters use to temper their colours. *De la Chambre* attributes it to Spirits, without which it can hardly be performed, *Riolanus* supposes that it proceeds from the Reliques of the Chyle, which have attained a fermenting faculty; it concurs indeed, for a fermentative quality may be communicated to any thing: but we must come to some first, thing, by which the Chylus is fermented, and from whence the ferment of the first meat was derived, before the Reliques of the Chyle could arise. The *greater part of Doctors* do attribute this whol work to Melancholy, which is carried by the *Vas breve* into the stomach, and of which Melancholick persons, who are otherwise no good digesters; do often complain by reason of its sharp taste. Which Melancholy, if it be understood of the acid juyce, it may be allowed. For any acid or sharp things taken in, as Vinegar, and Meats steeped therein, Juyce of Citrons, Oyl of Sulphure or Vitriol, Cream of Tartar, and the like, do ease and amend the weakness of the stomach. Also without the Body Vinegar ferments the Earth and Milk, even as black-

*The Stomachs Fermentation.*

choler doth, and the acidity of Vitriol ferments Treacle, and sour leven makes the bread arise, &c.

*Three things requisite to Concoction,* Now *Johannes Walæus* requires three things to Concoction, first some moisture to temper the meat and make it liquid, viz. Drink and Spittle; in the next place, somwhat to cut and mince it as it were, as the thin sharp humor, and lastly somwhat to melt and make liquid that which is cut, such as is heat, wherewith in ravenous beasts and some Men, the chyle is made fluid, though they do not alwaies drink, I should not doubt, but that the Excrements of the third Concoction, sticking to the Crust, as being still imprægnated with the virtue of the parts nourished, do give some assistance to the Concoction, which when they are fretted of, is impared, and so in long fasting men are not so able to digest: And that the spittle besides moistening and tempering the meats, doth perform some other more noble work in Concoction, viz. prepares the meat in the mouth, whereupon it comes to change its smels; and heals Tetters, and either kills or chases away Scorpions and Spiders.

But what becomes of that acid Juyce, when it hath performed its office of fermentation? *H. Regius* beleives that it remaines after the expulsion of the Chylus, to prick the stomach and provoke Appetite. But hunger is raised in the sensible mouth of the stomach, and not in the bottom thereof, where this acid juyce is; also there would be hunger after the stomach is full. I should think that it is expelled with the Chyle, and that then it is either therewith turned into blood, or that in obstructions of the Mesentery, it goes downwards, and raises disturbance.

*Concoction ü the Stomachs Act.* The Action of the stomach is *Coction* which is termed Chylification. For the stomach is the Organ of the first Concoction, the beginning and preparation of which Concoction is performed in the mouth, the middle in the bottom of the Stomach, and the Conclusion in the smal Guts. Now this Concoction is performed by heat, not of the stomach only, but also of the Neighbouring parts; as also by a faculty which is naturally bred in the stomach of every Animal. Now it turnes the meats into a white Chylus or Juyce, of a like substance, whiles both its Orifices being shut very well, it contracts it self, and closely embraces the food. But touching the whole manner of Concoction see the forecited Epistles of *Walæus*.

*How it ü made.*

*The use of the Stomach.* Its *use* is to receive the Meat and Drink, which it doth by reason of its notable and large Cavity. And whereas it somtimes contains and breeds little stones, as *Gentilü* and *Zacutus* have observed, as also a Toad, Worms, and other things by me often observed; this is beside the Intention of Nature. And the like we may say of an Infant conceived and formed there and voided out at the mouth, the History whereof is described by *Salmuth*.

## CHAP. X.

## *Of the Guts in General.*

*The Guts.* THe Guts are oblong, round, hollow bodies variously wreathed about, joyning with the Pylorus and reaching to the Fundament; serving to receive the Chylus and the Excrements of the first Concoction.

*Why called* Intestina. They have their name of *Intestina inwards*, because they are in the inmost seat of the Body [whence *Tirtullian* cal'd the Crosses, the *Intestina Trophæorum*, the inwards of the *Trophies*] and so the Greeks term them *Entera*; some have termed them *Chordaj*, and thence the Barbarians had their term *Chordæ*; for which cause also the strings of musical Instruments because they are made of dried Guts are termed *Chordæ*, Chords.

*Their greatness* Their *Magnitude* in respect of the Contents of their Cavities, and the thickness of their substance, is different, as shall be shewn hereafter. The weight of all of them dried, is according to the observation of *Loselius*, a pound. Their length, for the most part doth exceed the length of the person whose they are six times, little more or less. *Picolhomineus* saies they are a foot and half shorter; they are reckoned to be seven times as long by *Laurentius*, *Paræus* and *Riolanus*, and before them by *Celsus*, who nevertheless began to measure from the *Oesophagus*. *Hippocrates* saith they are near upon thirteen cubits, or not less then twelve: but the ful stature of a man, hardly exceeds three Cubits and an half. *Flud* in a certain Body an ell and half long, found the Guts to be but nine ells in length, so that no certain Measure can be determined. It varies according to the Multitude of the windings, and the greedines of the person in point of eating.

*The use of the turnings and windings of the Guts.* They have turnings and windings all over save at the beginning and end, that the Ingress and Egress might not be hindred. Now the reason why they have these windings and turnings is. 1. That the nutriment may not slip away, before Concoction be perfectly finished. Also least if it should presently slip away, before the Chylus be distributed, we should be compelled presently to eate more meat, and so should be hindred from our business through greedyness of eating. Hence it is that living Creatures by how much the way is streighter from their stomach to their Vent, by so much the more greedy they are of eating; and the more their Guts are coiled, the more abstinent they are: which *Cabrolius* observed in a very great eater, who had one only Gut, bowed after the manner of a Greek *Sigma*. 3. That we might not be continually going to stool, as it is with greedy Animals, seeing the Excrements may lie long in those windings.

*Their Situation.* They are situate in the lowest Belly, the greater Cavity whereof they fill up, somtimes they are forced to the right side, as I have seen in an Hydropick Woman dissected. They are *knit together* by the Mesentery, by which, and the Call coming between, they are tyed unto the Back, and are propped up in the Cavities of the *Os Ilij*.

*Their Substance.* They have a membranous *Substance*, like that of the Stomach; so that they may be distended by Chyle, Dung, and Wind. But their Substance is thicker in the thicker Guts: And the nearer they grow to an end, the thicker they are, as the End of the Colon, and the *Intestinum rectum*.

*Their Coats.* This Substance of the Guts may be divided into *three Coats*: The first is proper and internal, and is in the smal Guts wrinkled, in the Colon stretched out into little Cells, being otherwise sufficiently nervous. A certain membranous *Crust* as it were compasses about, bred of the Excrements of the third

*Their Crust.* The

**The Stomach is seen open, and the Bowels beneath the same and Joyned thereto, much in their natural Situation.**

The X. TABLE.

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

A. *The Oesophagus or Gullet.*
B. *The upper Orifice of the Stomach.*
bb. *The Stomach Nerves embracing this Orifice, rudely expressed.*
C. *Pylorus or the Porter.*
DD. *The common ventricle of the Stomach separated.*
E. *The first proper Coat of the Stomach, being the middlemost.*
F. *The second proper Coat of the stomach, which is innost and wrinkled.*
G. *A portion of Duodenum.*
h. *The passage for Gall.*
IIII. *The Guts Jejunum and Ileum, with Vessels creeping through the same.*
K. *The blind Gut, or the Worm-fashion'd Appendix.*
LLLLL. *The Gut Colon.*
M. *The Valve in the beginning of the Gut Colon, opened.*
mmm. *The Ligament containing the Cells of the Colon.*
NN. *The streight Gut is here seen, the thin Guts lying thereon being removed.*
O. *The Sphincter Muscle of the Fundament.*
PP. *The Muscles which lift up the Fundament.*


page. 23

Concoction of the Guts. 1. That the Mouths of the Mesaraick Veins may not be stopped. 2. That neither they nor the inner Coat might be made hard and callous, by the continual thoroughfare of the Chylus. Also the second is proper, and the middle most, being strong and furnished with fleshy Fibres. The *third* is common and external, being bred immediately of the Membranes of the Mesenterium [ save that where the Duodenum and Colon cleave to the Stomach, it arises from the lower Membrane of the Call ] but mediately from the Peritonæum. Of these two proper Membranes, the inner is often hurt in a Dysentery or bloody Flux, that other remaining unhurt.

*Their Fibres.* They have *Fibres*, not only transverse, as is commonly conceived, but of all kinds: The innermost hath oblique ones; the middlemost hath transverse ones. The right Fibres which are allotted for the safeguard of the transverse ones, are fewer in the thin or small Guts, more in the large, especially the right or the last Gut, which was to be strong, because it did collect hard Excrements.

The Guts are covered on the outside with *Fat*, on the inside with a slimy snotty Substance, that the Dung may thereby pass more freely, and that the Guts may be duller in point of feeling.

*Their Vessels.* For *Vessels* they have the *Venæ Lacteæ* or milkie Veins, which are chiefly distributed between the common and proper Membranes, which carry the Chyle to the Liver; and others from the *Vena Portæ*, which are conceived to bring Blood for Nourishment, but they rather carry back to the Liver the Blood which remains after the Guts have received their Nourishment. They have also Arteries from the Cæliaca for life, which by their motion preserve from putrefaction, but especially to bring Nourishment from the Spleen to the Guts, which wanted such kind of sustenance. They have *Nerves* from the sixt pare of Nerves. But *Walæus* conceives that the Guts have such great plenty of Arteries and Veins. 1. That Excrements might be conveighed to the common shore, which are contained in the Vessels, whence the Child in the Womb, though it take

nb

no meat in at the mouth, yet hath it Excrements in the Guts. 2. That greater plenty of Blood might be carried through the *Vena portæ* and the Liver, and might come to be perfected by the Liver.

*Difference of the Guts.* All the Guts are commonly *divided*, into the *thin*, or *small*, and the *thick*, or large Guts. For though they make one continued Channel from the Pylorus to the Fundament: Yet because this passage doth vary, in Magnitude, Number of Turnings, Substance, Situation, Figure, and Office, therefore is it distinguished into divers Guts.

*Whether the thin Guts may be right said to be uppermost?* The *thin* or small Guts, so called by reason of the thinness of their Membranes, are situate partly above, partly beneath the Navil; and therefore they possess both the Umbilical Region and Hypogastrium, which is not so in Dogs. Whereupon the *Ancients* taking Example from Dogs, called the upper Guts thin, the lower thick: which is false in Mankind. For a Man hath more of the thick Guts above his Navil, and more of the thin Guts beneath; seeing that which is the longest, is beneath; and the Jejunum which is short is above. And therefore all the small Guts are in the middle Region about the Navil. 1. Because they are the more noble. 2. That they may be the more near to the Centre of the Mesenterie, and consequently receive Veins and Arteries immediately from the Mesenterie, and quickly conveigh the Blood to the Liver. Now the small Guts are three: Duodenum, Jejunum, and Ileon. And these perfect and distribute the Chyle: In as much as by reason of their narrowness, every part of the Chylus may be touched, by their Coat and Vessels. This Distribution is holpen by the inbred Peristaltick motion, whereby the Guts are contracted from the upper part downwards.

*The thick Guts.* The *Crassa Intestina* or thick Guts, are so called, because they have thicker Coats; they contain the thick part of the Chyle: And are made to collect, and for a season retain the Dung. And they are three; Cæcum, Colon, and Rectum. And they are situate by the sides of the small Guts, which they wall about as it were, that they might give way to the thin Guts, and that the thin Guts might not be oppressed by the thick.

*Their Use.* The *Use* of all the Guts is, to be like the Earth, out of which the Mesaraick Veins suck Blood, and the *Venæ Lacteæ* or milkie Veins suck Chyle. And the *use* of the *thin Guts* is, to concoct the Chylus yet more in the passage, and to distribute the same. Of the *thick Guts* to contain the Excrementitious Reliques of the Chyle, viz. the Dung; also Winds and Choler proceeding from the Liver. A *Secundary use* of the Guts being dried, is to cure pains of the Cholick, and other Diseases of the Guts; and being preternaturally depraved, to contain several sorts of Worms, and Duggs, and Stones; also variously to be affected, of which Physitians are wont to treat.

## CHAP. XI.

## *Of the Guts in Particular.*

*The Gut Duodenum.* THe *first* thin Gut, under which the Sweet-bread lies, especially in Dogs, is called DUODENUM. *Galen* terms it *Ecphisis*, *Herophilus*, *Dodecadactylon*, as if it were just twelve fingers long; though in the dales and Bodies of ours, it is not found so long; nay it is hardly four fingers long, unless men are grown less of stature then they were anciently, which is not credible. Nor can we understand the fingers breath, of which this Gut hardly attains to eight, unless peradventure the Ancients did also comprehend the Pylorus in their mesuring.

It *proceeds* in the right side, from the Pylorus towards the Back-bone, or under the Stomach, where being joyned to the Vertebra's of the Loins, by membranous Ligaments, it defends right along, without any Circumvolution, and is *terminated*, where the Windings and Wreathings begin.

It is *thicker* then the rest of the thin Guts; but hath a more narrow Cavity, least the Chylus should slip in too fast. I saw a large one at *Padua*, and *Aquapendent* describes such another being puffed with Wind, such as that was, mentioned by *Trasselman*, which had in it many Stones as big as Nutmegs, of an Ash-color.

*The Holes of the said Gut.* It hath *two Holes* beneath, towards the Gut Jejunum; the one being the outlet of the Exoler or Gall-carrying passage, which is the reason we find it yellow in our Dissections; the other is the new passage of the Pancreas or Sweet-bread, invented by *Wirsungus*; which I have notwithstanding sometimes seen grow together, and joyned with one only Mouth.

Its peculiar *Use* assigned by *Helmont*, is to change the acid Cream brought out of the Stomach, forthwith into a brackish Salt.

It hath a proper *Vein* called *Vena duodena*.

It hath an *Artery* from the right Branch of the Cæliaca.

*The Gut Jejunum.* The *second* is called JEJUNUM, because for the most part it is more empty then the rest, especially in Dissections. 1. By reason of the plenty and greatness of the Mesaraicks [the milkie Veins] which in that place are as it were infinite, and do presently suck out of the greatest part of the Chyle. 2. By reason of the moistness of the Chyle passing through. 3. By reason of the nearness of the Liver. 4. By reason of the Acrimony of Choler. For the cholerick or Gall-passage, enters in at the beginning of this Gut, or at the End of the Duodenum, bringing Choler from the Liver to provoke Expulsion.

Its inner Membrane is longer then the Outer, and therefore it is wrinkled into Foles, the better to stop the Chyle, slipping by.

*Riolanus* falsly saies that Women have no Jejunum Intestinum, being deceived by those, who either were dull-sighted, or finding this Gut filled, thought it could not be the Jejunum. *Laurentius* observes, that it appears somwhat reddish, by reason of the Neighborhood of the Liver.

It hath *Veins* from the *Mesenterica dextra*, which are common to the rest of the Guts, excepting the last, or *rectum Intestinum*, the straight Gut.

It hath *Arteries* from the upper Mesenterick Artery.

*Nerves* from a Branch of the sixt pare, which is spred out unto the Roots of the Ribs.

*The Gut Ileon.* The third is called Ileon, because it is rouled so and twined, it is also for that cause termed *Volvulus*, by reason of many Circumvolutions, which make for the tarriance of the Meat, and for that cause it hath fewer pleites or foldings.

It *arises* presently after the Jejunum, where few mesaraick

## The Coats and Veſſels of the Guts are explained in this TABLE.

### The XI. TABLE.

### The FIGURES Explained.

FIG. I. A Portion of the Gut together with the Meſaraick Veſſels.

AA. *A Portion of the Gut, as yet whole.*

BB. *The External Coat of the Gut ſeparated, that the Carriage of the Veſſels under it may be diſcerned.*

CC. *The middle Coat of the Guts, or the firſt proper Coat.*

DEF. *The Meſenterick Veſſels, of which* D *points out the Vein,* E *the Artery,* F *the Nerve.*

FIG. II. Expreſſes the Coats by themſelves.

GG. *The common Coat of the Guts ſeparated.*

H. *The middle Coat of the Gutt.*

FIG. III.

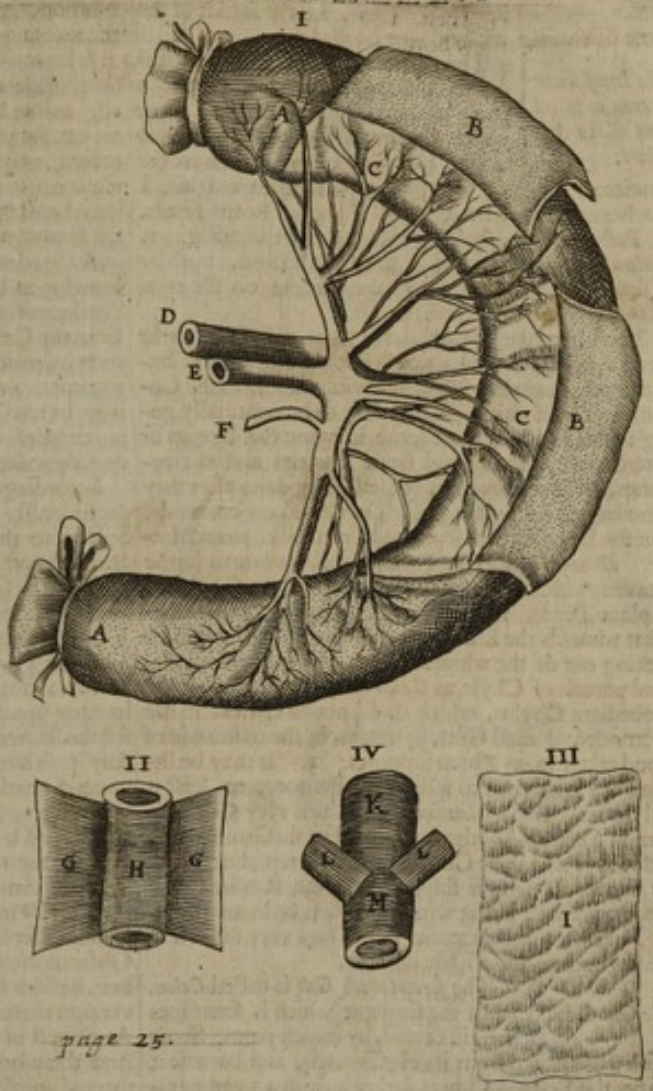
I. *The innoſt Coat of the Guts with its Plaites elegantly expreſſed.*

FIG. IIII. Preſents the Muſcles of the *Inteſtinum rectum*, or ſtraight Gut.

K. *A Portion of Inteſtinum rectum, or ſtraight Gut, or Arſe-gut.*

LL. *The two Muſcles called* Levatores Ani, *or Lifters up of the Fundament.*

M. *The Sphincter Muſcle of the Arſe.*




page 25.

ſaraick Veins are inſerted.

It *ends* at the Cæcum.

It is ſituate under the Navil, at the Flanks and Hips on each ſide.

It is the longeſt Gut, being near upon twenty one hands breadths in length; it is one finger broad. But the Jejunum is not ſo long, viz. about twelve or thirteen Handsbreadth long, and the little fingers in breadth, unleſs it be puffed up with Wind. And as the Ileon is under the Navil, ſo the Jejunum poſſeſſes well near all the ſpace about the Navil, with its very many turnings and windings.

*Rupture of the Guts.* This Ileon may frequently ſlip into the Cod, whence proceeds the *Hernia Inteſtinalis*, or Rupture of the Guts. And in this Gut happens the Volvulus or *Iliaca Paſſio*, in which the Patient commonly vomits Dung.

*The Paſſio Iliaca.*

*Riolanus* hath obſerved ſomtimes three Appendices in this Gut, reſembling the *Inteſtinum cæcum*

*The thick Guts.* The *firſt thick Gut* is called *Cæcum*. I.

*The Gut cæcum, or the blind Gut.* Becauſe of the obſcure Uſe it hath in perſons grown up, howbeit in the Infant in the Womb, it is ſaid to receive the Excrements. *Knobloch* indeed ſaith that it hath a double Orifice, ſevered with a membranous Partition, that by one it may receive from the Ileon, and by the other deliver into the Colon; but we have not yet found this in any man, in whom one and the ſame Orifice takes in and gives out. 2. Becauſe it hath only one Hole, whence it is alſo called *Monocolon*. For it is a little Appendix like a long Worm, which ariſing from the beginning of Colon, and the End of Ilium, of a ſubſtance ſufficiently thick, ſpreds it ſelf upon the Colon like a twined worm, and is annexed to the Membrane of the Peritonæum; but by its End, it is joyned to the right Kidneys, the Peritonæum coming between, and is quite free and looſe from the Meſenterie.

It is four fingers *long*, and as broad as ones thumb, but the Cavity thereof is very ſtrait. *Riolanus* did find it exceeding wide, and equal to the Stomach it ſelf, as I alſo have ſeen it. *Sylvius* did in many find it ſolid, without any Hollowneſs, and in ſuch perſons, the Dung

does go immediately from the Ileon into the Colon. And *Massa* suspects that this Appendix is only bred when the Child being from its Birth troubled with a Loosness, the liquid Dung passing speedily by the Cæcum, and not abiding therein, being frustrated of its Office, it grows lean. Howbeit, I have seen it of the same thinness in a Child new born.

*The Intestinum cæcum, or blind Gut of the Ancients.*

The Ancients by the Cæcum understood that globous and capacious part, at the beginning of the Colon, which *Celsus* and *Rufus Ephesius* intimate. For that it was known to the Ancients, contrary to what *Laurembergius* imagins, I do hence prove, because 1. They dissected Beasts. 2. *Pollux* and *Aristotle* have set it down distinctly. 3. *Galen* hath distinguished it from the Colon, both by Use and Situation, placing the Cæcum on the right Hand, and the Colon on the left.

The Use of the Cæcum is, not to be only for a marke or sign, as *Hofman* imagines, But first to receive Excrements, least they slip down violently into the Colon, and breed pains, and force us to be contiually going to stool. And there some imagine the Dreggs or Excrements proceeding from cherries and cherry-stones, which have been voided forty daies after they were eaten, did lie lurking. The *Conciliator* contends, that the Dung is here separated from all chylous Matter. *Helmont* places the *Fermentum stercoreum* or turdie Leaven, which turns the Excrements of the Chyle into plain Turds, in this place. 2. It may help somewhat towards the Elaboration of the Chyle, either by sucking out of the white Mesaraick Veins some neglected parcels of Chyle, as *Galen* said, or by digesting the inobedient Chylus, which could not be tamed, in the Stomach and small Guts, by reason of the multitude of Food taken in, as *Zerbus* supposes. 3. It may be instead of a Ligament to sustain the Peritonæum, least it fall down. But *Riolanus* observed this very Gut Cæcum in a certain Apothecary rouled to the Groin, and in little Boys into their Cod, in whom it rested upon the *Os sacrum*. *Severinus* suspects that the Reason why Dogs void their Dung with more then ordinary straining, is, because the cæcum is in Dogs very narrow at the beginning, and a little oblique.

*The Gut Colon.*

The *second thick Gut* is called *Colon*, from the torment which is somtimes therein caused, by colick pains. Some think tis so called from its Hollowness, and because it shapes the Belly. Others derive it from a word signifying to delay, because it gives a stop to the Excrements that are in passage. The Author of a Treatise falsly ascribed to *Galen*, derives it *a colando*, from straining, because it is narrow like a strainner, and involved, that there may be a Gradation of the Excrement, and that it may not descend all at once.

*Its Situation and Progress.*

Its *Situation* is various, for its beginning which is capacious and round, is in the right Flank, arising from the cæcum at the right Kidney to which it sticks; then it is turned back upwards under the Liver, where it is somtimes knit to the Gall-bladder, and is thereby dyed with a clay-color yellowishness: It passes further, athwart, under the bottom of the Stomach, and on the left hand is joyned to the Spleen, with thin Membranes, and then it is tyed to the left Kidney, where it hath very crooked Turnings, which are apt to detain both Dung and Wind; and from thence it ends straight long, upon the Rectum. Wherefore it doth as it were compass the whole Belly, and somtimes ascends, and otherwhile descends: (hence such as do their business, have commonly one Harvest after another distinct) that the Excrements may be the longer detained, and not flow out all on a sudden, and that we may not every foot be sollicited to go to stool. To which intent also serve its Magnitude and Cells: For;

It is commonly eight or nine hands-breath in *length*, and the thickest and widest of all the Guts.

It hath received *Cells*, that any hard Matter, not before sufficiently digested, might be perfectly concocted, and at last through the milkie Mesaraicks, which are carried to the Colon, that said Matter being concocted, might be sent unto the Liver. And that these Cells might not be dissolved, and that being collected into themselves, they might make the Cavities at times, somtimes greater, and somtimes less.

A *Ligament* described by few, or a *certain Band*, as broad as an half finger, is implanted through the middle thereof, on the upper part long-wise, and arising from the Cæcum, is termined in the Rectum. Moreover by reason of its largeness, it hath two strong Ligaments, one upwards, another downwards, that it may be tyed to the upper and lower Patts. *Riolanus* nevertheless accounts these two Ligaments to be but one, opposite to the upper Ligament.

According to the Longitude of the Colon, there are extrinsecally observed certain fat Appendices, from the Spleen to the beginning of the *Rectum Intestinum*, as *Riolanus* and *Spigelius* have observed. Whole use is to moisten the Gut, that the Excrements may slide down the more easily.

*A Valve in the Gut Colon.*

At the beginning of the Colon, a Valve is placed sufficiently thick and membranous, invented by *Bauhinus*, looking upwards, not downwards, as *Laurentius* writes; for the Excrements do ascend and not descend, when they pass out of the Ileon into the Colon, by reason of upper Situation of the Guts. But if the Natural setling of the Excrements be considered, they descend making hast out of the Body: And thus *Bartholinus* and *Sperlingerus* are reconciled. The first Invention of this Valve, seems to be long unto *Salomon Alberts* an Anatomist of *Witteberg*, as appears in an Appendix to three Orations set forth by him, about the End, and from the Observations of *Schenkius*, *Lib.* 3. *Title de Ilio*. Howbeit, besides *Bauhinus Varolus* did also attribute the Invention thereof unto himself, who was a well known Anatomist in the University of *Padua*, in the year 1572. And therefore *Riolanus* conceives the first Invention thereof, ought to be attributed rather to him then *Bauhinus*; But truly, it is in vain that he seeks to bereave him of this commendation, seeing divers Persons may observe one and the same thing, at one or sundry times, without stealing the Invention one from another. For Nature lies open to all diligent Enquires.

*How it is found out?*

*It is found* after this manner: Water poured or wind blown into the Gut Ileon, cannot pass through unless violently: But Water doth a little mar the Gut.

Touching its *Figure* or *Shape* and *Number*, Authors do not consent. For omitting such as wholly deny the same; *Bauhinus* determines that it is only one, having the figure of a Nail. *Archangelus* saith, that there are three Valves at the Cæcum, as in the Heart, looking downwards. I have sought it at *Padua* in many Bodies, and at other places, and alwaies found it, but never more then one, and that of an orbicular or circular Shape. *Pavius* to *Hildanus* and afterwards *Falcobargius*, did not find out a membranous Valve, but rather a Ring or Circle with an hanging brim. But the said Circle is nothing but a Valve, for some Valves are

found

found of a circular Figure, both in the Heart, and in other Veins. The whole constitution of this Valve is elegantly described by that great Practitioner *Nicholas Tulpius*, that it is a Circle on which hangs a Membrane, two fingers broad, and so shaped that it is fit to shut the egress of Intestinum Ileum. Before which there hings a Cortin or slack veile as it were; now the latitude of this Pendulous Membrane is very unequal; for where it looks towards the Ileum, it diffuses it self looſey, to the quantity of near two fingers breadth, but the farther from the place it is, the closelyer it is strai'ned, so that about the middle of the Gut (for so far it runs) it is either quite obliterated, and ends into that Membranous compass, which inwardly severs the Intestinum Colon a Cæco. From which unequal latitude there follows necessarily that same circular form which the value expresses being artificially extended: as the smaller picture faithfully expresses. Nowthis Membrane is fastned above to that same fibrous circle which ends the Colon, but it is fastned below or rather strongly held, by two very little Membranes, proceeding on both sides from the side of that Orifice, through which the thinner Guts disburthen themselves into the wider: the use of which bones, is to hinder that the value do not easily totter, for they bind it to the Ileum: But the lower part of the value doth wave up and down looſely.

The *use* thereof is, that nothing may pass back out of the thick Guts into the thin, be it Wind or Excrement, especially in a strong excretion or straining at stool, or in costiveness of the Belly. Hence it is, that the matter of Clysters cannot naturally reach unto the smal Guts.

The Colon hath *Veins* and *Arteries* under the Stomach from the Epiplois postica. But in the left side it hath the Hæmorrhoidal Vein, and from the lower Mesenterick, the Hæmorrhoidal Artery.

*The Intestinum rectum, or the straight Gut.*

The last thick Gut is termed RECTUM, because it goes straight out, without any turning, and ends at the Fundament; for it goes streight downwards, from the top of the Os Sacrum to the extremity of the Crupper-bone, to which it is *Knit* firmly, by the Peritonæum, least it fal of: also it *grows* in men to the Pispipe in the Yard; to the Neck of the Womb in Women, by mediation of a Musculous substance. Whence springs the consent of these parts in Men and Women, especially of the Womb and this Gut in Women. for the Gut being exulcerated, oft-times the Excrement is cast out the female Privity.

It is *long*, as it were an Hand-breath and an half, and three fingers broad; and Corpulent and *thick*, having Fat Appurtenances, growing thereto on the outside.

It hath *Veins* from the Hypogastrick branch of the Vena Cava, and Hæmorrhoidal Veins.

Four *Nerves* are inserted into the end thereof, which make this Gut very sensible, as is apparent in the Tenesmus.

*Touching the Fundament.*

Its end is termed *Podex* or *Anus*, the *Arse* or *Fundament*, having three Muscles, of which peradventure five may be made. The,

## This TABLE sets forth that Valve which is found in the Guts.

## The XII. TABLE.

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

*a.* *The Gut Ileum.*
*b.* *Cæcum or the blind Gut.*
*ccc.* *Colon.*
*dddd.* *The valve hanging.*
*e.* *The entrance of the Gut Ileum.*
*ffffff.* *The Gut Colon slit open.*
*gg.* *The inner coat of the Gut Colon.*
*hhh.* *The Valve lifted up.*
*i.* *The beginning of the Gut Ileum.*
*kkk.* *The Circle.*
*l.* *Its Connexion with the Ileum.*

*The Sphincter Muscle.*

I. Is termed *Sphincter* or *Ani Constrictor*, the shutter or contractor of the Fundament, so that though some part thereof may be cut of in Fistula's or other Diseases, yet is not therefore the whole use thereof, quite taken away.

*Galen* and *Fallopius* and others do make two of this Muscle, because its upper part is thicker; the inferior part is inseparably annexed to the Skin, as is seen in the Fore-head and Eye-lids, and therefore *Galen* called this part the skinny Muscle, or the fleshy Skin.

It arises from the lower Vertebra's of *Os sacrum* and is compassed with transverse Fibres all a long the Fundament.

It is *fastned on the forepart.* 1. To the passage of the Bladder, by Fibrous couplings. 2. To the Yard, to the Muscles whereof it gives beginning. 3. To the Neck of the Womb. *Behind* to the Crupper-bone which lies under it. *At the sides,* by Ligaments produced from the *Os sacrum,* into the *Os Coxæ.*

Its *use* is, to purse up the Fundament, that we may do our business when we please. And therefore being palsied or otherwise hurt, it makes the dung to come from a man whether he will or no: even as the Sphincter of the Bladder being hurt, the piss flows out involuntarily.

*The Muscles cald Ani Levatores, or Arse-lifters.*

II. and III. Two *other Muscles* have insertions into the upper part of the Sphincter, very much Commixed therewith. They are called *Ani Levatores* Arse-lifters. Because,

Their *use* is to draw the Fundament upwards into its own place again, after the Excrements are voided. especially when we have been forced to strain hard at stool. And therefore when they have been weakned or slacked, somtimes the Fundament is drawn up with difficulty, and somtimes it continues hanging forth.

These Muscles are under the Bladder broad and thin, arising from the Ligaments of the Share, the *Os sacrum* and Hip: from whence they are carried downwards, to the right and left sides of the Fundament, which they compass about. But they have a certain peculiar and distinct portion, growing to the Root and Neck of the Yard, which may be counted a third and distinct Muscle. The use of these Muscles ceases in those who have their Fundament shut up. Such a Case *Fernelius* saw, And I saw the like at *Padua* in one named *Anna,* whose Fundament was so shut up, that he voided his Excements by his mouth when concoction was finished, having an Horn to put into his mouth for that end.

## Chap. XII. *Of the Mesentery.*

*Mesentery why so called.*

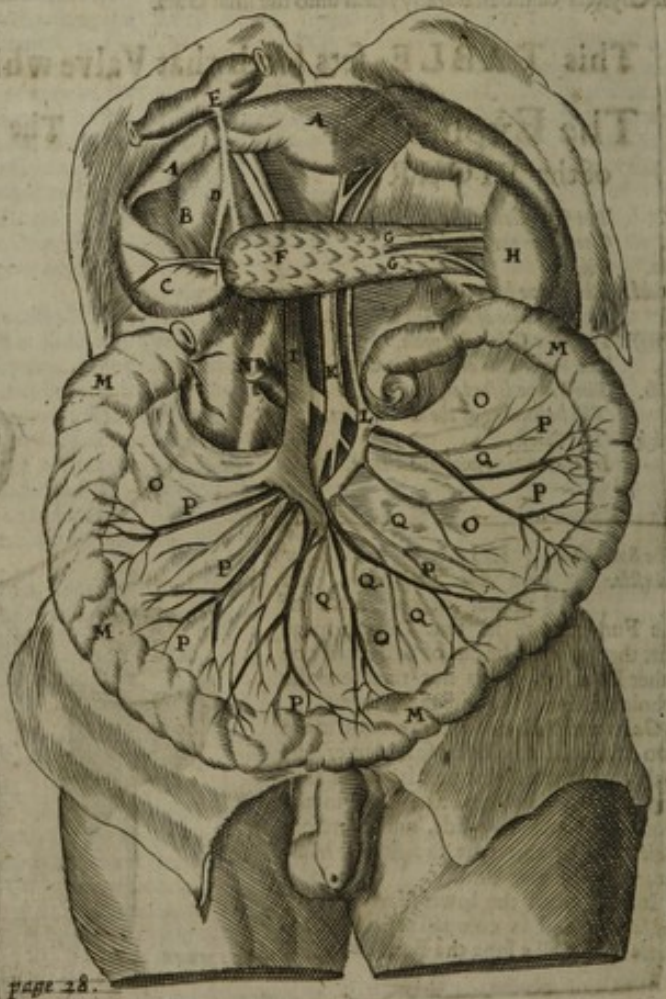
THe *Mesenterium* is so called, because it is in the middle of the Guts, not because it is the middle Gut as *Cicero will* have it [and *Macrobius* who follows him; for it doth not partake of the nature of a Gut, save in that it is Membranous, nor is there any defence for *Laurembergius,* because we are rightly said to dwell in the middle of the world, supposing the Earth to be a part of the World. *Spigelius* doth more rightly inter-

Here are described four kinds of Vessels disseminated through the Mesenterium, as also the Pancreas is discovered, in its Natural Situation.

The XIII. TABLE.

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

AA. *The Convexe part of the Liver.*
B. *The Concave part of the Liver.*
C. *The Gall-Bladder.*
D. *The passage for the Gall.*
E. *Part of the Gut Duodenum.*
F. *The Pancreas or Sweet-bread whole in its proper place.*
GG. *The Spleenic Vessels detected by opening the Pancreas.*
H. *The Spleen.*
II. *The Mesenterick branch of the Vena Portæ.*
K. *The Mesenterick Artery.*
L. *A Nerve of the sixt pair spred up and down in the Mesentery.*
MMMM. *The Guts cleaving to the Mesentery.*
N. *The beginning of the Intestinum jejunum.*
OOOO. *The Mesentery.*
PPPPPP. *The Vessels of the Mesentery, of which the black ones the Veins, those by the black ones the Arteries; and the white ones signifie the Nerves and Milkie Veins.*
QQQQQ. *The Kernels dispersed through the Mesentery.*




page 28.

The

# This TABLE expreſſes the Meſentery taken out of the Body.

## The Explication of the Figure.

## The XIV. TABLE.


A. *The Centre of the Meſentery, and that part of the Back, where it ariſes from the Membranes of the Peritonæum, which knit the great Artery and the Vena Cava in this place, to the Vertebra's.*

BB. *The great Kernel of the Meſentery, which Aſellius terms Pancreas, into which all the milkie Veins are knit together.*

CC. *Glandules or Kernels placed between the Veſſels, which reach as far as to the Guts.*

DD. EEE. *Part of the Meſentery which ties the thin Guts to the Back.*

F. G. *Part of the Meſentery which is faſtned to the Colon, from the right Kidney to the Liver.*

G. H. *The Membrane of the lower Call, which in this place ſupplies the Office of the Meſentery, faſtening that part of the Colon, which is ſtretched out under the bottom of the ſtomach, unto the Back.*

H. I. *Part of the Meſentery, knitting together the Colon, drawn out from the Spleen to the ſtreight Gut.*

I. K. *Part of the Meſentery, faſtning the ſtreight Gut unto the Back.*

L. *The two Membranes of the Meſenterium, drawn aſunder by the Nailes, between which Veſſels are carryed, and the Fat and Kernels are contained.*

M. *The firſt Membrane of the Meſentery.*

N. *The other Membrane of the Meſentery.*

pret the word *Inteſtinum* in *Cicero*, for ſome midling bowel] but becauſe like a Circle it embraces the Guts round, and gathers them together into the form of a Globe, and cloaths them. 'Tis called alſo *Meſaræon*: *Gaza* in *Ariſtotle* tranſlates it *Lactes* [in a large ſenſe] thereby underſtanding that which involves and wraps up the *Lactes* that is the Guts, and what ever is contained in them.

*Its Diviſion.* It is *one*; but others divide it into the Meſaræon or Meſenterium, and the *Meſo-Colon*. The *former* being in the middle of the belly and knitting together the ſmal Guts: the *latter* which knits up the Colon, in the right and left ſide and in the lower part thereof, cleaves to the right Gut.

*Its Figure.* It *Figure* is very near Circular, and after it hath been narrow in its riſe, in its progreſs, at the Circumference it degenerates into very many foldings, that it might gather in the length of the Guts: for one hands breadth of the Meſentry, doth embrace more then fourteen handsbreadths of the Guts in a narrow ſpace. In the ſides it becomes oblong, eſpecially on the left ſide, where it deſcends to the *Inteſtinum rectum*. Whereupon *Galen* made a threefold Meſentery: a right, left and middle.

*Its Magnitude.* Its *Magnitude* from the Centre to the Circumference is a ſpan: but its Longitude and Circumference is three ells.

*Its Riſe.* It *Ariſes* at the firſt and third Vertebra of the Loyns, [which is thought to be the Cauſe of that great conſent which is between the Loyns and the Guts] where Membranous Fibres are produced from the Peritonæum, which turn into ſtrong Membranes,

*Its Veſſels.* Through which the Meſaraick Veins [both the Blood and the Chyle-bearers] being exceeding ſmal and numerous, and by little and little running together into fewer and greater, are diſſeminated. [But of theſe more largely in the firſt Manual Chap. 3.] And after the ſame manner the *Arteries*: [from the *Caliaca*, that they may carry arterial blood with heat to the Meſentery and Guts for the Nutrition and Fermentation of each of them and in no wiſe to draw chyle in a found ſtate of Body, or other things as *Varolius* and *Spigelius* conceit. And that the blood is Circulated even in the Meſentery, by means of theſe Arteries, I ſhall demonſtrate hereafter againſt *Riolanus*.] It receives alſo *Nerves* from thoſe which are carried from the ſixth pair, to the roots of the Ribs, as alſo from the Nerves proceeding from the Vertebra's of the Loyns, that they may give the ſenſe of Feeling to the Meſentery, as is manifeſt in the baſtard colick and other pains; and an obſcure motion in diſtribution of the chyle.

*Its Kernels.* It hath *Kernels* interpoſed to fil up the ſpaces, and to cheriſh the heat: but one greater then the reſt it hath at its original which *Aſellius* following *Fallopius*, terms Pancreas: different from the other Pancreas ſituate under the Stomach and Duodenum. Out of this he fetches the Original of the milky Veins, with probability enough, becauſe there they grow all into one, and from hence are carryed both downwards and upwards to the Liver. Add hereunto, that it is in color like thoſe Veins; and the

Veins themſelves have in this place ſomwhat proper, viz. that they are interwoven in the whole Body of this Pancreas, with wonderful turnings, twiſtings, and twinings.

It is ſurrounded with *Fat* as in the Call, which proceeds from fat blood ſlipt out of the Veſſels, and retained by the denſity of the Membranes, and ſo congeled; that it may cheriſh the Heat of thoſe Parts, and further the preparation of Chyle.

*The Uſe of the Kernels.* The *Uſe* of theſe *Kernels* is, 1. To prop up and ſupport ſundry Diſtributions of the Branches of *Vena porta* and *Arteria magna*. Hence it is, that about the Centre of the Meſenterie are the greateſt Kernels, becauſe there is the Diſtribution of the greater and more collected Veſſels. Moreover, theſe Glandules or Kernels, when they are at any time troubled with a ſcirrhous hard Tumor; there follows a Leanneſs of the whol Body, becauſe they bear hard, and lie upon the branches of the *Vena portæ*, and of the milkie Vein, ſo that the Nouriſhment cannot be freely carried through the ſaid Veins. 2. To moiſten the Guts, with the Humors which they ſuck out of the Parts, and promote Digeſtion by way of boyling as it were. Which Uſe *Spigelius* denies, becauſe there are Animals that have not theſe Glandules, and nevertheleſs are fat; and others though they have theſe, are lean. Which may happen without any prejudice to my aſſertion, becauſe theſe former Animals have ſuch good Juyce, as needs no purification; the latter have ſo little nutritive Juyce, that it cannot ſufficiently be depurated by theſe Glandules. And therefore, 3. They ſerve to ſuck ſuperfluous Humors out of the Guts, which was *Hippocrates* his Opinion. I add 4. A peculiar Uſe, viz. to receive that plenty of milkie Veins which paſſes that way, and to keep ſome portion of the Chyle, becauſe 1. It is of like uſe with that greater middle Kernel, and its ſubſtance is the ſame with that which exceeds this only in magnitude, becauſe greater milkie Veins paſs that way. 2. I obſerved that in Fiſhes, eſpecially in a Lump-fiſh male and female, beſides the great white one, the others did alſo ſend forth a white Juyce. 3. This being granted, both Atrophia and other Diſeaſes are better underſtood, to which Opinion alſo *Aſellius* ſeems to have enclined. And whereas *Riolanus* makes the Seat and Root of al Kings-evil ſwellings to be in theſe Kernels, and ſaith they never ſhew themſelves on the outſide of the Body, except the Meſenterie be firſt diſeaſed with the ſame kind of Swellings, is not likely, for 1. Though they may be remote and accidental cauſes. 2. There is no communion between theſe kind of Swellings in the Head, and the Kernels of the Meſenterie. 3. Many have the Kings-evil ſwellings, in whom theſe Kernels are perfectly ſound. 4. All would be ſubject to ſuch Swellings, becauſe all have theſe Kernels. 5. Thoſe people dwelling under the *Alpes*, that are ſo ſubject to theſe Swellings, ſhould have their Meſenterie differing from thoſe that are not ſo troubled. 6. The ſaid Swellings are filled by any kind of Humor proceeding from any Region of the Body.

*The Uſe of the Meſenterie.* The *Uſe* of the *Meſenterie* is to be the common Band of the Guts, whereby they are knit to the Vertebra's of the Loins.

*And of its Membranes.* And the *Uſe* of its two *Membranes*, is that through them the Veſſels may paſs ſafer unto the Guts.

# Chap. XIII. *Of the Pancreas, or Sweet-bread.*

*The Subſtance of the Pancreas.* THE Word *Pancreas* ſignifies *All-fleſh*, whereas this part ſhould rather be call'd *All-kernel*, its Subſtance being wholly glandulous, looſe it is and ſhapeleſs, three or four fingers long, ſomtimes ſix or ſeven, and more, cloathed with a thin Membrane from the Peritonæum; and in fat Bodies, it ſeems all made of Fat, which others term dirty fat and moiſture; ſome *Calicreas* the Sweet-bread or White-bread, and Lactes; becauſe of its milkie whiteneſs and ſoftneſs.

*Its Situation.* Its *Situation* is under the lower part of the Stomach, and the bottom thereof, the Duodenum and *Vena portæ*, as far as the Regions of the Liver and Spleen.

*Original.* Now its *Original* is at the firſt Vertebra of the Loins. In the middle its Parenchyma is white.

*Its Veſſels.* And it hath for *Veins* the Splenick Branch; for *Arteries* the left Branch of *Arteria Cœliaca*; for *Nerves* thoſe of the ſixt pares branches, which go to the Stomach and Duodenum, and it hath alſo little Kernels.

Beſides all which, it hath alſo another *Paſſage* which is membranous, and of a peculiar Nature by it ſelf, ſpread out all along the Pancreas, ſomtimes in a ſtrait Line, ſomtimes in a crooked Line, which hath been as yet deſcribed by no Anatomiſt, being firſt diſcovered at *Padua*, when I was there, in the year 1642. by *John George Verſungus*, a very diligent Anatomiſt, but killed by cruel Fate; it is remarkeable for its Cavity, and the ſtrength of the Walls thereof. I beleive *Fallopius* did not know it. He mentions indeed ſmall Paſſages, ending into the Pancreas and Kernels next it; but becauſe this paſſage is only one, he rather ſaw through a miſt the milkie Veins, diſperſed into the Pancreas of the Meſenterie and other Kernels. It is for the moſt part ſingle, though the ſame Party had found it double running one by another in parallel Lines: A ſhort one in the ordinary place, and beneath it a larger. The Orifice whereof opens widely into the Gut Duodenum, near the Entrance of the Gal-paſſage, with which it is ſomtimes joyned by one and the ſame Mouth, but more frequently (as I found with the Author) by a different but neighboring Circle. The little Valve ſituate before the egreſs thereof, looking outwards, keeps the Probe from entring this new paſſage, being thruſt in by the Duodenum. And therefore in a Living creature, being bound towards the Gut, it ſwells more and more, but beyond it is preſently emptyed, if we beleive *Jacobus Baccius*, which is an Experiment hard to make for before that this paſſage which lies intangled and encombred can be freed, or bound, the Creature dies. From thence this paſſage creeps through the whole Body of the Pancreas, ſpreading out on both ſides infinite little Branches, until by narrower but orderly diſpoſed twigs, it goes by little and little ſtraight forward, and is ſilently *terminated* towards the Spleen. But it goes not into the Spleen, although *Folius* hath aſſured me, that he hath obſerved it to go thereinto. Peradventure that was againſt Nature, nor ſeems it ſeaſible, becauſe the Branches are firſt obliterated by an orderly defect, ere they touch the Spleen, and there is no cavity there about, though an eminent one towards the

In this **TABLE** both the Body of the Pancreas together with the new *Wirſungian Paſſage*, as alſo the Veſſels drawn there through to the Spleen, are expreſſed.

## The XV. TABLE.

# The Explication of the FIGURES.

### FIG. I.

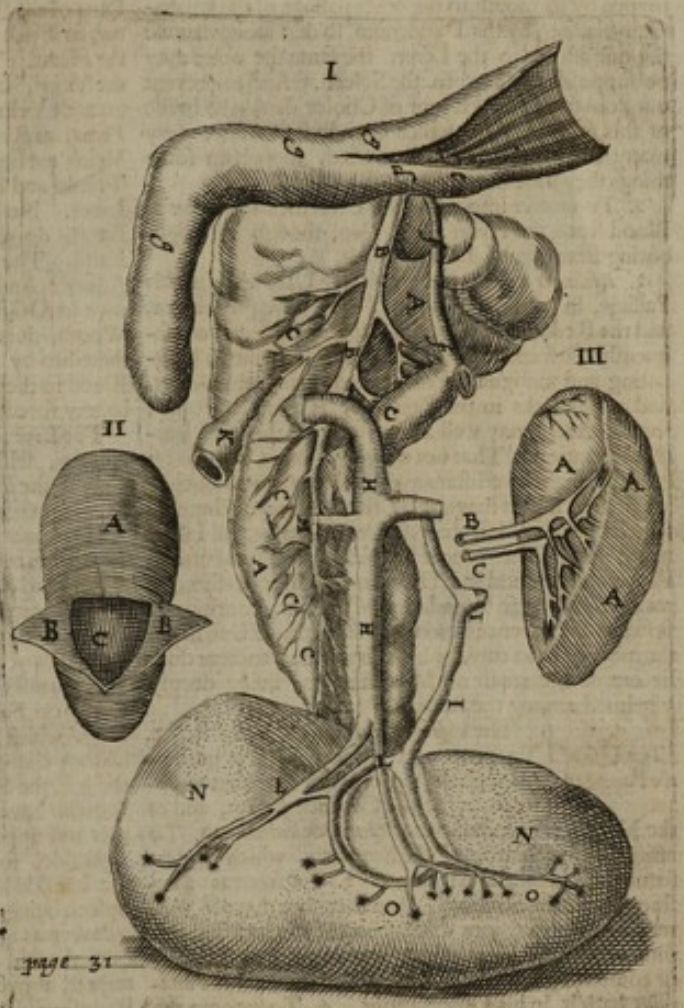
AAA. *The Pancreas diſſected.*
BB. *The new Paſſage found in the Pancreas.*
cccc. *Little Branches of the ſaid Paſſage.*
d. *The Orifice thereof.*
e. *The Orifice of the Choler-paſſage.*
ff. *The Choler-paſſage.*
ggg. *Part of the Gut Duodenum.*
HH. *The Ramus Splenicus.*
II. *The Spleenick Artery.*
K. *A Portion of the Arteria Cæliaca.*
LLL. *Anaſtomoſes or Conjunctions of the Mouths of the Spleenick Vein and Artery.*
M. *The Hemorrhoidal Branch of the Spleenick Vein.*
NN. *The Body of the Spleen.*
OO. *The Ingreſs of the Veſſels in the Spleen.*

### FIG. II.

A. *The convex part of the Spleen.*
BB. *The Spleens Membrane ſeparated.*
C. *The fleſh of the Spleen, which is blackiſh.*

### FIG. III.

AAA. *The concave part of the Spleen which receives the Veſſels.*
B. *The ſpleenick Vein.*
C. *The ſpleenick Artery.*




page 31

the Guts. In which Cavity (truly) there is no conſpicuous Humor, ſave that a Probe being thruſt in, is for the moſt part died with a yellow cholerick colour, the Walls thereof being coloured with the like tincture, ſo that Choler ſeems to be therein contained, by the ordinary Law of Nature, which *Johannes van Horn* likewiſe a Friend of mine ſaw at *Venice*, in a cholerick looſeneſs, the ſaid Veſſel being evidently full of Gall or Choler. And therefore this new found paſſages

*Its Uſe.* *Uſe*, is not to carry Chylus out of the Duodenum into the Spleen, beauſe 1. It doth not teach to the Spleen. 2. A Valve hinders the Ingreſs. Nor doth it ſerve to carry Melancholy out of the Spleen, to which uſe ſerve the *Capſulæ atrabilariæ*, the black Choler boxes. Nor to carry fermentative Juyce unto the Stomach, as *Horſtius Junior* ingeniouſly feignes, Becauſe 1. Such Juyce is not bred in the Pancreas, which is a glandulous Body. 2. The way is more ready to that purpoſe, from the Spleen; this being a more troubleſom and encombred paſſage, for it would be troubled by meeting the Chylus in the Duodenum, and would be infected by the nearneſs of the Gall-paſſage. 3. Never any ſuch Juyce ſeen in this paſſage. 4. Who will be bound that it ſhall be able to paſs beyond the Pylorus? Nor is it to prepare Chylus, which *Baccius* affirmes to be found in living Creatures. Nor to nouriſh the Pancreas, ſeeing that Humor is therefore unfit, and the coeliack Arteries do that work, but for the common good. But how, or which way ſhall it return to the Liver? For he rightly denies it to the Spleen. Shall it return to the Duodenum, and from thence to the Meſentery & There would be an infinite Circulation. He ſhall not eaſily find it in living Anatomies; alſo he confounds the Pancreas with the large Kernel of the Meſentery. Nor finally does it ſend the Excrements of the Chyle to the Duodenum, as *Liceti*, *Riolanus*, and *Veſlingius* conceive; for in this Paſſage no Chyle is ſeen, but yellow Walls. Moreover the refuſe of the Chyle is already voided by ſtool, nor does the Chyle part with any new Excrement, till it undergo a new change in the Veins of the Liver. Now ſure it is, that out of the

Pancreas

Pancreas it self, whose proper passage it is, and in which it begins, and is ended, somwhat is thereby voided into the Guts, and it doth as I conjecture.

1. Purge forth Choler, whether bred in the Digestion of the Pancreas, or in the Spleen, for each of these are taken to be Auxiliary Livers. And it is as it were the Bladder-gall of the Spleen, which is conveniently joyned by its mouth, to the other passage of the Livers-Gall-bladder, by the Duodenum, so that look what use the one affords to the Liver, the same the other may be supposed to afford to the Spleen. And to prevent our doubting, the Humor of Choler daubs the inside of this Passage. To which Opinion of mine, very many Learned men have asserted, though in some things they dissent.

2. To receive into it self the Excrements of Arterial Blood from the Heart and Spleen, though the neighboring Branches of *Arteria Cœliaca*.

3. *Riolanus* counts it a profitable Use, that by this Passage, in vomiting, divers Humors are purged out, and the Redundancies of the first Region; and consequently the fomenting Humors which maintain long-lasting and malignant Feavers and chronical Diseases, and which lurks in the Pancreas, is this way voided forth. And I may well ad somwhat to this most learned Invention. That not only by Vomit, but also by stool, through the assistance of Choler-purgers, hot cholerick Distempers may be by this Passage discharged, which burn the Meseutery, Spleen, Arteries, and Heart it self. And hence proceed cholerick stools in burning Feavers, and blood in a Dysentery or Bloody-flux, by reason of the large Inundation of Choler, continually flowing from hence into the Guts; which is so much the more hard to cure, by how much the Pancreas doth lie out of the reach of Medicaments, being deeply whelmed among the Bowels.

*The Use of the Pancreas.*

The *Use of the Pancreas it self* is, 1. To prop and support Vessels passing through the same, as the Branches of *Vena porta*, of the Cœliack Artery, and of the Nerves: Especially the *Ramus Splenicus*. 2. To assist the Concoction of the Stomach, which is performed in Heat and Moisture. 3. To serve as a cushion under the Stomach. And therefore that old Woman of *Rome* in whom it was become stoney, fell first into a continual Vomiting, afterwards into an Atrophy or consuming of flesh, and at last died thereof, as *Panarolus* hath it in his Observations. 4. To ~~help out~~ the wheyish Blood which slides along that way, and through help of the Kernels to purge it. 5. In sickly and melancholick Bodies, to perform the Office of the Spleen, which *Riolanus* shews from the Example of the most renowned *Thuanus*: Whose Pancreas or Sweetbread, did equal the Liver in amplitude and weight, yet was it wholly scirrhous; but his Liver hard and round as a ball, and full of Flegm like Potters-clay, and his Spleen was found so small, that it hardly weighed an ounce.

## CHAP. XIV.
## *Touching the Liver.*

ANd so much may suffice to have said touching the Organs destined to primary Digestion or Chylification, we come now to those which are any waies assisting the second Concoction or Sanguification. And the Principal of these is the Liver.

The *Liver* is an Organick Part seated in the Lower Belly, just under the Diaphragma or Midriff, on the right side, being the Organ of Blood-making, and the beginning of the Veins.

*Why the Liver is the Original of the Veins?*

It hath its Name in Greek, from a Word that signifies want or Indigency, because it supplies the want of the Parts of the Body, the Latins cal it *Jecur*, as if you would say *juxta Cor*, near the Heart. 'Tis called the Principle or Beginning of the Veins, because therein the Roots of two of the greatest Veins appear dispersed, viz. of the *Cava* and *Portæ*, as Roots implanted in the Earth. The milkie Veins are supposed to arise from the Pancreas: Yet Trunks and Branches of them are also to be seen in the Liver. Now the Roots of Trees dispersed in the Earth, do grow together into a Trunk without the Earth. The *Vena arteriosa* of the Heart, is in truth an Artery: And the *Arteria venosa*, is a Vein, and may owe its Original to the Liver, because in a Child in the Womb, it is joyned with the *cava*, and opens it self thereinto by an Anastomosis: And besides, it carries Blood to the Heart, but brings none from it, if there be any force in this Argument.

*Its Number.*

The *Liver* is commonly but one in *Number*, seldom two: And more seldom is the Liver quite wanting, as in *Matthias Ortelius*.

*Its Situation.*

It is *situate* in the lowest Belly, under the *Septum transversum* (which also *Hippocrates* and *Aristotle* acknowledged) by the Ribs, and for the greater part in the right Hypochondrium, a fingers breadth distant there from, that the motion thereof might not be hindered: Therefore a Swelling in the Liver causes shortness of breath. In Birds it lies equally on both sides: As also for the most part in Dogs which have a thin and long Spleen. In Man it seldom changes its place, so as the Liver should be in the left, the Spleen in the right side, which *Gemma* and *Sperevius* have observed. It rests lightly upon the former and upper part of the Stomach, especially on the right side, for otherwise some part thereof reaches to the left side also, and sometimes the greatest part, the Spleen being very small. But some conceive that *Aristotle* was ignorant of the Situation of the Liver, because the said *Huper de to Diazoma*, &c. which they interpret, above the Septum is the Liver seated. But the Philosoper is thus to be translated: It is placed on the other side, or beyond the *Septum transversum*; for *Huper* with an Accusative signifies beyond, but with a Genetive, it signifies above.

*Its Figure.*

And by reason of the Midriff, to which it was to give way, it hath its upper and outward *Figure* sufficiently round, convex or gibbous, even and smooth, where also there is an oblong Cavity, behind at the Passage of *Vena cava*. And because of the Stomach it hath received a Figure which is hollow on the inner and lower side, which is termed its simous or saddle side, and it is more uneven then the other having in it two hollownesses: One on the right hand for the Gall-bladder; another on the left, for the Stomach to pass by. So that the Liver is on the right side of an ample roundness, but on the left it is narrow and sharp.

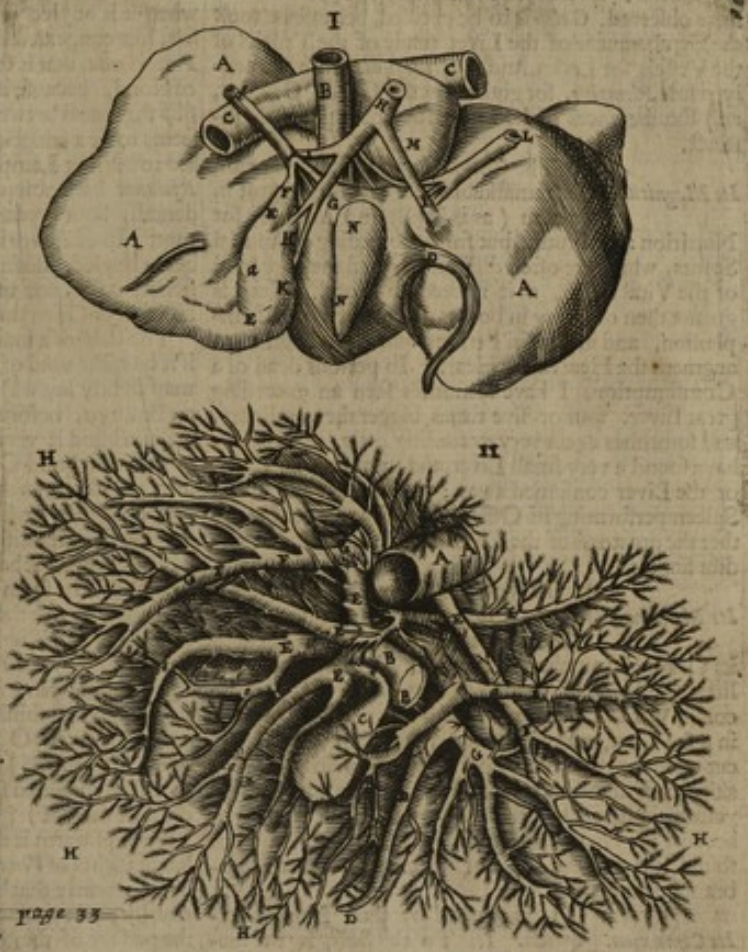
*Its Division.*

The Liver is *divided* by some, into the right and left part: between which there is a smal cleft or chink, where the Umbilical Vein enters. Otherwise for the most part, it is entire in a Man and undivided, save that *Spigelius* observed here a certain

*A Mans Liver is not divided into Laps or Scollops.*

# The Explication of the FIGURES.

**FIG. I.** Expreſſes the Liver taken out of the Body, and eſpecially the hollow ſide thereof. The XVI. TABLE.




AAA. *The Liver in its hollow ſide, cloathed with its Coat and ragged Nap.*

B. *The Vena Portæ, and its Egreſs out of the hollow ſide of the Liver.*

CC. *Two Trunks of Vena Cava, by the tuberant or boſſie part of the Liver.*

D. *The going forth of the Navil-Vein from out the Liver.*

EE. *The Gall-bladder ſeated in the hollow part of the Liver.*

F. *The Gall-paſſage, called Cyſticus Felleus.*

G. *The other Gall-paſſage called Hepaticus.*

H. *An Artery which comes from the Ramus Cæliacus to the hollow part of the Liver.*

I. *A branch of this Artery, which enters the Liver.*

KK. *Another branch of the ſame Artery which goes unto the Gall-bladder.*

L. *A Nerve of the ſixt pair which goes unto the Liver.*

M. *A ſmal Lap or Scollup ſtretched out unto the Call, by which the Liver being full of water, is ſomtimes emptied.*

NN. *Certain Eminencies of the Liver, anciently termed Portæ the Gates.*

a. *The bottom of the Gall-bladder, hanging without the Liver.*

d. *The common Channel, made up by the paſſages of Ramus Hepaticus.*

**FIG. II.** Shews the Veſſels of the Liver freed from the *Parenchyma* or Fleſhy ſubſtance thereof, with the Gall-bladder.

AA. *A portion of Vena Cava.*

BB. *A portion of the Trunk of Vena Porta, paſſing forth of the Liver.*

CC. *The Gall-bladder.*

DD. *The Navil-Vein ending into a branch of Vena Porta.*

EEEEEEE. *The branches of Vena Porta, diſperſed through the whole* Parenchyma *of the Liver.*

FFFF. *The branches of Vena Cava, eſpecially thoſe which are diſtributed through the upper parts of the Liver, and joyned in ſundry places with the branches of Porta.*

GGGG. *The moſt remarkable Anaſtomoſes or joyning together of the Mouths of Vena Cava and Porta.*

HHHH. *The extremities of the ſaid Veins, called* Capillary *Veins, becauſe of their ſmalneſs.*

a. *The* Meatus Cyſticus *or paſſage into the Gall-bladder.*

---

a certain little lobe, of ſofter Fleſh then the reſt of the Liver, compaſſed with a thin and ſubtile Membrane, which is carried out into the Call, and ſomtimes empties the Liver when it is full of Blood. In this little and ſoft lobe, I have manifeſtly obſerved certain milky Veins inſerted in the cutting up of Fiſhes; ſo that according to the diverſity of the parts of the Liver, we have now the Inſertion of three Veſſels, which hath hitherto been unobſerved. But in Bruits (excepting an Ox and ſome others) it is divided into divers parts,

which they call *Lobes* or Scollops, wherewith they say the Stomach is covered and contained, as with so many fingers. *Galen* therefore and *Plempius* have done ill to say that Mans Liver is divided Naturally into Lobes, Laps, and Scollops, for preternaturally and rarely it is indeed so divided, as *Fernelius*, *Sylvius*, and *Gemma* have observed. *Galen* is to be excused, because he took the Extuberances of the Liver made of the Trunks of the Vessels for Lobes. And *Horstius junior* doth learnedly refute *Plempius*, for giving out the Clefts, Cavities, and Extuberances of the Liver, for Lobes perfectly distinct.

*Its Magnitude.* The *Greatness* and thickness thereof, is remarkable and exceeding great in a man (as is his Brain) not only for Nutrition as in brutes, but for the breeding of Animal Spirits, which are often dissipated (and they are bred of the Vital Spirit, as it is bred of Blood. Yet it is greater then ordinary in bodies that are of a cold Complexion, and in fearful Persons and great Eaters, to augment the Heat of the Heart. In persons dead of a Consumption, I have sometimes seen an exceeding great Liver, four or five times bigger then ordinary, and sometimes again very exceeding little. And others have found a very small Liver, and sometimes no Liver, or the Liver consumed away; and a great and strong Spleen performing its Office. *Rhasis* and *Abensina* gather the greatness of the Liver from the length of a bodies fingers.

*Its Membrane.* It is compassed with a thin Membrane, springing from one of the Membranes of the Veins, which hath its Original from the Peritonæum. In this there arise little bladders of water, from whence the Dropsie come, Witness *Platerus*. I have seen of these bladders in a she Goat, many in number, whitish, which being cut open, were found to contain within a single coat or skin, wheyish Humor, with snotty Flegm, and another yellow substance, whether through a fault in Nature, or because the Goat was tamed. I have more then once found intertwisted ropes of Worms, in other Membranes of the Liver.

*Its Connexion.* It is *fastned* by three strong Ligaments. 1. To the *Belly*, by the *umbelicalis Vena*, or Navil-vein, which after the Birth, is in grown Persons dried up, and turns to a Ligament, least the Midriff should dangle too much, and should hang too low down. 2. *Above* to the Midriff, on the right side, by a broad membranous and thin Ligament, but yet a strong one arising from the Peritonæum, which the Midriff undercircles; and this is called the *Ligamentum suspensorium* or hanging Ligament. 3. Also *above* to the Diaphragma, but on the left hand, by another Ligament sprung from the Peritonæum, round, and exceeding strong: Also in its *after-part* where the *Vena cava* passes, it cleavs by its bunchy side to the Peritonæum. *Riolanus* reckons these three Ligaments for one, because he contends that the umbelical Vein is dried up, which being carried through a duplicature or folding of the Peritonæum, hath for its Companion the Membrane it self, which being rouled back over the Liver, runs out upwards & downwards to the Diaphragma it self, which it invests and fastens. But it is al one case. For Ligaments are termed sundry, because they fasten and suspend divers parts of the Liver, although the two latter arise from the Peritonæum. Now therefore according to his reckoning, there will be two Ligaments, not one only; the former from the Umbelical, and the other from the Peritonæum. The fourth Ligament annexed to the *mucronata Cartilago*, at the Cleft of the Liver, is no pecular one, but must be reckoned as part of our second Ligament.

*Its Substance.* It hath a *Substance* red and soft [so that with a little stick it may be beaten off, and separated from the Vessels interwoven, either when it is boyled or being raw] spred about the Vessels, like congealed blood, for which cause it is termed *Parenchyma*, that is to say an Effusion or shedding forth of blood, because it is poured about the Vessels, and fills the spaces between them [in some kind of fishes it seems to be a congealed Fat, out of which an Oyl is boyled to burn in Lamps. Yet is it hardly corrupted; for *Riolanus* hath observed that a Liver having been accidentally kept a year together, hath remained uncorrupt. In substance it is most like an Oxes Liver, and being boyled, differs not there-from, neither in consistence, color, nor tast, and therefore our flesh is more like that of Oxen then of Swine.

*Its Color.* The *Color* of a sound Liver is ruddie [but if it be quite void of blood, or boyled, we may rightly say with *Gordonius*, that it is whiteish, as in an Embryo, before affusion of blood be made. But we shall find it very large and red, in Children new born, of a good Constitution. I have demonstrated it to be yellow, in the fish called a Lump. In a Lamprey it is green (which makes *Bronzerus* dispute touching the Principallity of the Liver) though the blood be red, whether it have contracted its color here, or in the Heart, or from it self] In some sick persons, as those which have the Dropsie, it is very pale, as also the Spleen and Kidneys.

*Its Vessels.* Now those *Vessels* in the Liver, are the *Roots of Vena portæ and cava*, (with a few [to a mans first thinking, but upon serious Examination according to the Observation of *Walæus*, an innumerable company of] small Arteries interposed, of a whiter color, dispersed from the Cœliaca, through the saddle part thereof) [partly that they might nourish the Liver, and warm it throughly with the heat of the heart the branches of *Vena portæ* assisting likewise to the same intent; partly that by the motion of the Pulse, and the necessity of running back, it may assist and provoke the passage of the blood out of the Liver according to the conjecture of *Slegelius*. For whereas *Galen* tells us that the Liver is cooled by the Arteries, that is not consonant to truth: For they are hot, and by their motion further the blood, and draw it to those parts wherein they are implanted;] which appear distinct, the flesh or Parenchyma of the Liver being taken away, how they are carried this way and that way, without order, among which also small branches are disseminated, which afterwards unite into one common Passage, and so carry Choler into the Gall-bladder. Now it is conjoyned with the Roots of *Porta*, that there the Blood may be separated from the Choler. But more Roots of the *Porta* are spred up and down here and there through the lower part of the Liver, very few through the upper part: Contrariwise, more of the Roots of the *Cava* are carried through the upper and tuberous, or bossie part thereof, and fewer through the hollow or saddle part. To these must be added the Roots of the Milkie Veins. *Asellius* did sometimes observe their trunk to be in the Liver. But he did not precisely add the place, which I have determined to be in the third Lobe.

*Their Anastomoses.* The *Anastomoses* or Conjunctions of the Roots of *Vena Porta* and *Vena Cava*, are peculiarly to be observed. For rejecting those who altogether deny the Union of these Veins,

Veins, or who conceive that they are obſcurely and hardly known: [among whom *Harvey* and *Riolanus* are lately come upon the ſtage, the former of whom could no where find any Anaſtomoſis, either in the Liver, Spleen, or any other Bowel, though they had been boyled, till the whole *Parenchyma* would crumble in peices, and was ſeparated like duſt from all the ſtrings of the Veſſels, with a needle. Only he obſerved this one thing, in a freſh Liver, viz. that all the branches of Vena Cava creeping along the boſſie part of the Liver, have Coats like ſeives full of infinite little holes, as being made for the draught of the Body, to receive ſuch Blood as ſettles there; but that the branches of the Vena Portæ are not ſo but are divided into boughes, and that every where the branches of both, do run out to the higheſt Eminency of the boſſie ſide of the Bowel, without Anaſtomoſes. But the Porta hath likewiſe very many holes great and little, as the Cava hath, ſome of which will admit the probe, others not, only they make certain Cavities covered with a thin Membrane. Whence it is apparent, that the blood is ſtaied by thoſe cloſed holes and not ſtrained out, ſome of them being covered with a Coat, *Riolanus* inſpired by the ſame Spirit, doth ſtrongly oppoſe the Anaſtomoſes of the Vena Cava and Portæ leaſt he ſhould be forced to admit the Circulation of the Blood in that Place. He was afraid that the concocted liquor ſhould be confounded and mixt with the unconcocted. And what if they be, confounded and jumbled together? The Chymus being changed into imperfect blood is confounded coming out of the milky Veins, with that which is contained in the Cava, for both of them are to be perfected in the Heart. And the other which flows out of Porta, prepares both with its acid juyce. But be it how it will be, the Authority of all Anatomiſts doth aſſert thoſe Anaſtomoſes from the times of *Eraſiſtratus* and *Galen* to our daies, becauſe it is manifeſt to ſuch as ſearch diligently, that theſe roots are joyned together, ſomtimes athwart, ſo that one lies over the middle of another as it were, ſomtimes the extremities of one Vein touch the Extremities or ends of another, otherwhiles the ends of one touch the middle of the other; and ſomtimes they touch not one another at all; peradventure where the Branches of the Liver ſerve only for Nutrition. *Bauhinus* wiſhes us chiefly to obſerve a remarkable Anaſtomoſis, which reſembles a channel, and is as it were a common and continued paſſage, out of the Roots of Porta into the Roots of Cava, admitting a pretty big Probe. But becauſe we cannot rely upon naked Authorities, experience muſt be called by us to counſel, which doth neceſſarily perſwade us that there are ſuch Anaſtomoſes or Unions of the Mouths of the Veſſels, by reaſon of the paſſage of the Blood out of the milky Veins and the Venæ Portæ, unto the Cava, and out of the manifeſt Arteries, ſeeing the paſſage only through the fleſh cannot ſuffice, in a quick and plentiful Flux. I confeſs all the kinds of Anaſtomoſes are not appearant to the Eye as to be ſeen open, in dead bodies, though no man can therefore deny that there are ſuch things; but ſome of them are inſenſible, which admit neither Probe nor Wind, and ſome admit Wind and nothing elſe. The Renowned *Walæus* obſerved and found by experience, that the Veins of the Porta are in the Liver no where opened into the greater branch of Vena Cava, but that the very ſmalleſt branches of Vena Porta, do open into the ſmalleſt branches of the Vena Cava, as he obſerved in a Liver blown up with wind, after the fleſh was taken away, and floating upon water. I have in an Oxes Liver curiouſly ſought for apparent Anaſtomoſes, becauſe there they muſt needs be viſible becauſe of the greatneſs, following the example of the moſt learned *Slegelius*. But the very truth is they are not viſible to the Eye: the Veſſels indeed are divers waies interwoven and twiſted one among another; Trunk with Trunk, branches of the Trunkes, either with the Trunk of another Vein, or with little branches; and that either in the middle of thoſe little branches, or in the extremities, even as we ſee both the Veſſels cleave together in the Womb-cake: But a Probe finds no entrance, by any open hole of an Anaſtomoſis. Nevertheleſs, it is not to be denied, but that in living Bodies there is a paſſage known to Nature though unknown to us by reaſon of the neceſſity of a through paſſage. Which I the rather believe, becauſe that in the conjunction of the Veſſels, yea even of the greater, where the Anaſtomoſes ſeems ſhut, the Coat is extraordinary thin and for the moſt part ſingle, as appears by its tranſparency, which in Living Bodies being rarified by heat and motion, doth eaſily ſuffer the blood to paſs through.

By theſe Unions therefore of the Roots of the Vena Cava and the Vena Portæ, the Blood may paſs through: And by them likewiſe the peccant matter paſſes, when we Evacuate the habit of the Body by Purgations. Not that it ſhould be carried out of the Porta to the Meſentery, as hath been hitherto beleived, but ſo as thence to paſs through the Heart, and be emptied out through the Cæliacal Arteries, and thence through the ſtomach or the Gall-Conduits into the Guts, forced along by virtue of the purging Medicament.

Thoſe Anaſtomoſes are likewiſe to be obſerved, by which the ſmal Veins of the Gall-bladder, are joyned to the Branches of Vena Portæ and Vena Cava.

*The Original of the Veins.*

The Roots of Vena Portæ, do by little and little towards the lower part become ſmaller and greater, until they make one Trunk, which is called *Vena Porta*, the Gate-Vein: So alſo the Roots of the Cava, above and in the fore-part do altogether make up one *Trunk*; before the going out whereof, certain Circles are placed, here and there in the greater branches, being of a Membranous ſubſtance and very like to Valves, ſomtimes thicker, other whiles thinner and like Cobwebs, which were firſt diſcovered by *Stephanus*, and after by *Conringius* in an Oxes Liver; and I likewiſe found them, looking towards the larger trunk, which hinder the return of blood, not ſo much of that which is impure and dreggy, as of the pair being once gone out to the Heart: afterwards, as ſoon as it comes to the Liver, it is divided into two great branches, the aſcendent and deſcendent; and hence it is that they ſay, the Cava ariſes from the upper or boſſie part of the Liver, and the Vena Portæ from the lower and hollow part.

The Liver hath two *Nerves* from the ſixt pair, one from the Stomach, another from the Coſtal, diſperſed only through its Coat, and not through its ſubſtance (as *Veſalius* will have it) that in its inmoſt body, it may be void of ſenſe, in regard of ſo many motions of humors. And therefore the pains in this part are dul and rather a kind of Heavyneſs then pain. Yet *Riolanus* hath obſerved, that two remarkable little Nerves do accompany the Vena Portæ, and go into the very ſubſtance of the Liver.

*The place of Blood-making, the Matter and Efficient.*

The Action of the Liver is Sanguification. For of the Chylus drawn by the Meſaraick milky veins, the Liver makes Blood; and the Blood is made in

# The Explication of the FIGURE.

## This TABLE shews both sides of the Liver and the Gall-bladder, Distinct one from another. The XVII. TABLE.

FIG. I.

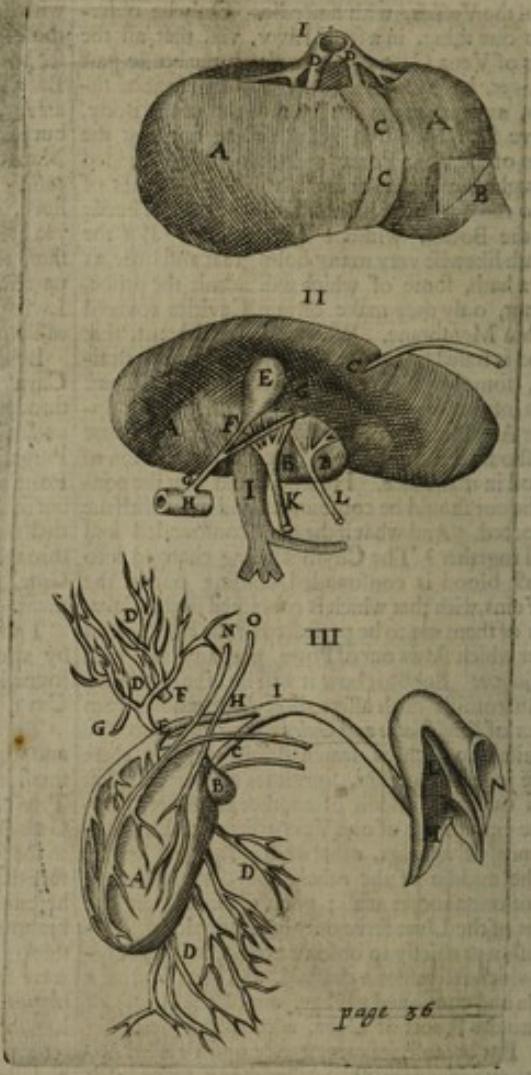
AA. *The Convexe or Bossie side of the Liver.*
B. *The Livers Membrane Separated.*
CC. *The Ligament of the Liver called* Septale.
DD. *The coming forth of Vena Cava, out of the upper part of the Liver.*

FIG. II.

AA. *The concave part of the Liver turned up.*
B. *A Lobe or Scollup of the Liver to which the Call joynes.*
C. *A cleft of the Liver, out of which the Navil-Vein D. descends.*
E. *The Gall-bladder.*
F. *The Gall-bladder Channel.*
GG. *The Choler-passage, ending into the Duodenum* H.
I. *The trunk of Vena Portæ descending from the Liver.*
K. *The Right-hand Cœliacal Artery.*
L. *A Nerve brought unto the Liver.*

FIG. III.

A. *The bottom of the Gall-bladder.*
B. *A Cavity at the rise of the Neck of the Gall-bladder.*
C. *The Neck of the Gall-bladder.*
DD. *The Passage of the Gall-bladder between the roots of the Vena Portæ* F. *and of the Cave* G. *dispersed through the substance of the Liver.*
E. *The concourse of the passages of the Gall-bladder.*
H. *The Porus Biliarius or Choler-pipe, broader then the Neck of the Gall-bladder.*
I. *The common passage of the Choler-pipe and Neck of the Gall-bladder.*
K. *The Orifice of the Choler-passage, in the Gut Duodenum.*
L.M. *The Gut Duodenum opened.*
N. *An Artery dispersed into the Liver.*
O. *A final Nerve of the Liver and of the Heart of the Gall-bladder: which the graver hath represented too large.*




in the branches of the milkie veins; the substance of the Liver, doth not only sustaine the Veins, as some would have it, but it is the efficient of Sanguification: And together with Blood, it generates natural Spirit.

*The Authors opinion how the blood is made.*

*Sanguification* therefore or Blood-making, is thus performed: the more unprofitable and thicker part of the Chyle (which is made first in the Stomach and finally perfected in the thin Guts) is thrown out into the thick Guts, and voided at the Fundament; but the more laudable and thin part, is drawn in by the milky veins, spred up and down in the Guts; and a little altered, and from them by means of a power proceeding from the Liver, it receives the first Rudiments of Blood, and is then called *Chymus*. The greatest question is whether the Liver draws it, or it is forced thither. It seems to be drawn by the heat of the Liver, as Chaf or Straw is drawn by heated Amber, and as Blood is drawn into the outward parts by hot Fomentations. Which is here visible by Ligatures and live dissections, in which the attraction of the Liver is so great, that the milky Veins are speedily emptied. There is not the same necessity, that it should be forced thither, as others have thought, because the beginning of the Motion or moving principle should either be without the Chylus, or within it. It cannot be in it. 1. Because nothing thrusts or drives, but that which is alive. 2. The Chyle newly drawn out of the Vessels, doth not move it self. 3. It is void of Appetite. 4. It should alwaies be driven downwards, not up to the Liver. Nor can it be in

any

any thing without it. 1. Becauſe the meſaraick Arteries have enough to do to drive out their own blood, and the Veins have work enough to receive it. 2. And the milkie Veins are exceeding ſmall. 3. The proper Fibres of the Veins, do ſerve more for ſtrength, then for driving. 4. The Stomach indeed, and the Guts are contracted, but they are not able to expel the chyle; for their motion is obſcure, and though it were evident, yet it would not preſently follow, that it muſt drive into the Liver. 5. Thoſe Bowels being contracted on all ſides, and ſhut up, as much Chyle is retained, as is expelled. 6. The Abdomen doth oftimes reſt, according to our deſire and pleaſure, being apt to be moved by the Muſcles; but the motion of the Chylus is performed continually and ſwiftly, viz. the due time of diſtribution being come. 7. The dreggie Chyle ſhould be ſent unto the Liver, without difference, as well as the pure. It is therefore *principally* drawn by the Liver, howbeit ſome conſtruction of the Guts, is *ſecondarily* aſſiſtant thereunto. This Chymus being attracted, in the Roots of the milkie veins, as in the place where, is by the Parenchyma or Subſtance of the Liver, as the Efficient cauſe, with the aſſiſtance of the internal heat of the Chyle, changed into a new ſubſtance of blood. Now it gains a *Redneſs* like the ſubſtance of the Liver, not ſo much from the fleſh of the Liver alone, which it ſelf owes its color to blood ſhed about it, which it laies away when it is waſhed or boyled, and in ſome other Creatures we find it of a green color, as from its own proper and adventitious Heat (as Grapes are red) which vaniſhing away, the redneſs ceaſes, as it happens in blood-letting. Nor is that a ſufficient cauſe, ſeeing in healthy bodies it continues afterwards red, and therefore we muſt take in light as another Cauſe, of which there is a great quantity in red colors, ſubſiſting even without Heat, unleſs the ſubject happening to be diſſolved, it come to be extinguiſhed and exhale. Hence it is, that boyled blood becomes black, and putrid blood is duskie. Hence alſo, by how much the more Natural inbred light any man hath; the more he ſhines with bright blood; contrariwiſe, in Melancholick perſons, the ſame being darkned, the blood grows black and dark. That light and fire are the cauſe hereof appears in Oyl of Sulphur, by the mixture whereof Liquors become red.

Now this *Heat* and *Light*, is partly planted in the liver, and the Chyle it ſelf, ſpringing thereout, by reaſon of its previous preparation, and partly kindled therein, either by reaſon of the nearneſs of the Heart, and bordering parts, or by reaſon of the Arterial blood, derived from the Heart and Spleen.

The more crude Blood being thus made, is not diſtributed to nouriſh the Liver or the Body, which Office is performed by the Hepatick Arteries, but by inſenſible Anaſtomoſes of the Fleſh and Veſſels, it is expelled into the Roots of *Vena cava*, where by longer tarriance, it is more elaborated, and ſoon after with the returning blood of the *Vena portæ* and the Arteries, it is poured out into the Trunk of *cava*, going all ſtraight along, through the upper part of the Trunk to the heart, that it may there attain its laſt accompliſhment, whereby it becomes fit to nouriſh all the Parts. Not any thing returns this way to the Liver, the Valves hindering, which in the Liver look outwards, in the Heart inwards, as the whole Fabrick and Ligatures do teſtifie. By theſe it is, that the *Cava* alwaies ſwells towards the Liver, and is empty towards the Heart.

Afterwards the Nouriſhment of all the Parts of the Body being accompliſhed by the Capillary Arteries, becauſe all the blood is not conſumed, which by continual Pulſations is ſent forth, nor can that which is ſuperfluous return the ſame way, by reaſon of the Valves of the Heart ſeated by the Aorta, which lets any thing paſs from the Heart, but admits nothing back again; and becauſe any Artery being tied, is ſul, and ſwels towards the Heart, but is empty, and lank towards the Veins: Therefore it muſt needs return as it were by a circular motion, out of the ſmalleſt Veſſels back again into the greateſt Veins, and the Trunk it ſelf of the *Cava*, and thence into the Heart. As it paſſes through the Liver, other blood there newly bred, is joyned with that of the *Vena portæ*, and that which is redundant from the Arteries, for the reſtoring of that which is ſpent, and ſo the *Circulation* is again repeated. Mean while, as hath been ſaid, Choler is drawn out of the blood, by branches of veſſels, terminating into the Gall-bladder and Choler-paſſage. But the wheyiſh part, is becauſe of its thinneſs retained a while, that the blood may more eaſily paſs every where, and afterwards it is ſent away, partly to the Kidneys (with the wheyiſh blood, which according to *Galen* is not concocted in the Kidneys, but becauſe the Serum is an Excrement of the Liver, the Kidneys do only ſeparate the blood from the whey) and from thence by the Ureters into the Bladder; whence the Urin does afterward partly go into the Skin, and paſſes out by ſweat and inſenſible Tranſpiration.

## CHAP. XV.

## *Of the Receptacles of Choler, viz. the* Gall-bladder, *and* Choler-paſſage.

ON the right hand and hollow part of the Liver, for the Reception of two ſorts of Choler, thick and thin, two Conduits or Paſſages are engraven: The *Veſica bilaria* or Choler-bladder, and the *Canalis bilarius* or Choler-channel. *Galen* himſelf knew as much, when he ſaid that from the Liver a twofold cholerick Excrement was purged; the one unmixt and ſimple, the other mixed and thick, which I collect contrary to what *Hofman* aſſerts, out of the fourth Book of the Uſe of the Parts, 12. and 13. and from the fifth Book Chap. the 6. For the Channel poures out thick and dreggy choler, but the Bladder ſuch as is more thin and yellow. For the latter bordering upon the *Vena portæ*, ſucks more plentifully out of the Spirituous and Arterial Blood; the former being placed at the Roots of the *Cava*, draws a leſs quantity of Choler, and ſuch as is more thick, becauſe *that* blood is thicker. *See* Fig. III. Table 17.

The *Veſica bilaria* or *Gall-bladder* called alſo *folliculus Fellis*, is a Veſſel long and round, faſhioned like a Pear, hollow, furniſhed with a double Membrane, the one, whereby it is faſtned to the Liver, from the Peritonæum [which is alſo the ſame, wherewith the Liver is covered] without Fibres, and wherewith that part only is covered, which hangs without the Liver: The other proper and more thick, but ſtrong, having all manner of Fibres; which a certain Cruſt encompaſſes, bred of the Excrements of its third Digeſtion, to keep off the ſharpneſs of the Gall. *The Shape of the Gal-bladder.*

This *Gall-bladder* is *ſmall*, compared to the Spleen and Kidneys. Being two *Its Greatneſs.*

fingers breadths in deepneſs: but the more cholerick any perſon is, the greater is this Gall-bladder obſerved to be.

*Diviſion.* 'Tis *divided* into the Bottom and the Neck.

*Bottom.* The *Bottom* is round, and ſeated lowermoſt, viz. when the Liver is in its Natural Situation, it is died with a yellow color, and ſometimes black, viz. when the Choler being over long kept, is burned.

*Neck.* The Neck, being harder then the bottom, looks upward, grows long and narrow, until it end into a very ſmall and narrow paſſage. At the Neck is obſerved, firſt a certain peculiar hollowneſs, and alſo certain little Valves or Membranes, ſomtimes two, otherwhiles three, which hinder the Regreſs of Choler. *Regius* proves, that they are ſomtimes opened by Spirits, through a Nerve inſerted into the liver, and ſo let Choler return into the Liver; which appears by anger, and the ſudden boyling of the blood in angry perſons, by admixion of burnt Choler. Howbeit by preſſing, or ſqueezing, and blowing, we cannot force any Choler back. And if the force of the Spirits were ſo great, they might as eaſily open and ſhut the valves of the Heart, when they are in the Arteries more plentiful then ordinary. They pierce indeed by their fineneſs the valves, when they are ſhut, but they carry not the blood with them. Choler, truly, may by ſome other means be inflamed, which is every where among hot blood. Finally, the valve would be broken by the violence of Spirits, and greater danger might follow thereby, then if the Gall-bladder were broken, an Example whereof *Salmuth* relates.

The Gall-bladder hath received very many ſmall *Paſſages*, furniſhed with ſundry little twigs, ſowed up and down in the Liver, between the Roots of *Cava* and *Porta*; which afterwards being joyned into one paſſage, do carry pure Choler into the Gall-bladder: and the Gall-bladder having diſgorged it ſelf into the Gut, is daily filled again, and ſo it continues that courſe. Contrary to the Opinion of *Arnifæus*; that the Bladder is filled with Choler, which being hindred by the Chylus, from deſcending by the *Porus biliarius*, into the Guts, does drive back again into the Bladder. For I have often ſeen *Walæus* demonſtrate, how that the Bladder being never ſo little ſqueezed with a mans hand, even when the Guts are full of Chyle, Choler is eaſily ſquirted into the Guts.

*Its Veins and Arteries.* It hath two very ſmal *Veins* to nouriſh it. Alſo it hath very ſmall Arteries from the Cœliaca, to nouriſh and preſerve Heat. It is not therefore nouriſhed with Choler, as *Joubertus* conceives. It hath a little diminutive Nerve, ſcarce viſible, from a little Branch of the ſixt pare, which crawls up and down the Coat of the Liver.

*Its Uſe.* Its Uſe is to receive yellow excrementitious Choler, pure and thin (not the Excrement mingled with the Blood, as the Kidneys do) and to retain it ſome while, and then to expel it.

Now touching the *uſe* of this Choler, Learned men are of ſundry minds. Some with *Ariſtotle* will allow it no uſe, only it was a thing could not be avoided, and is drawn away, that the Blood may not be defiled; which Opinion *Conringius* maintains. Others attribute more to Choler, and make it uſeful to the whole Body. 1. In that it warms the Liver, according to *Haly-Abbas* and *Abenſina*, and by that means comforts the ſecond Digeſtion, and helps the Natural Heat of the Liver, like fire under a kettle. Yea, it heats the whole Body, if we will credit *Nemeſius*, eſpecially the Stomach, to further its Digeſtion. If that be true, we muſt underſtand it of a moderate quantity thereof; otherwiſe an over great Heat of Choler would burn the Stomach.

2. Of kin to theſe, is the Opinion of *Helmont*; that it is the balſom of the Liver, and the whole Blood, brought from the Liver to the Meſentery, and that therefore the Gal præceeds in the work of Sanguification, and the Liver follows; alſo he ſaies it hath the Conſtitution of a neceſſary Bowel. But how ſhould it come into the Liver, ſince Anatomy doth teach, that this humor is brought out of the Liver, but not carried back thither. For, the way is too long, through the Meſentery, where by reaſon of its acrimony, it makes haſt out, or the edge thereof is blunted. And of what ſhall it be bred, if it go before the Concoction of Blood? There are few Veins and Arteries diſperſed there abouts, but ſtore of Choler is collected. That the Action of the Liver goes before that of the Gall, Children in the Womb do ſhew, in whom the Liver is full of blood, before the Bladder ſwell with Gall, or be ſo much as lightly colored therewith.

3. Their Opinion is not much unlike, who conceive that Choler preſerves the neighbouring Parts, and the Liver it ſelf from corruption, which *Zerbus* would therfore prove, becauſe when the Gall-bladder is removed from the Liver, the ſubſtance thereof where the Gall-bladder lay, does preſently diſſolve and melt.

4. A greater number of Authors will have it to ſerve to expel the Excrements of the Belly, by ſtrengthening the Guts with its Heat, or provoking them to Expulſion by its Acrimony. For although the Choler-paſſage, be implanted into the beginning of the Gut Jejunum, or into the Duodenum; yet it hath an eaſie paſſage to the Colon and Ileum. That it paſſes through the Jejunum, is manifeſt from its yellow color, and the quick paſſage of the Chyle there through. Howbeit, it ought to be moderate in quantity, otherwiſe the Belly is dried and made coſtive, or too much looſned.

5. I add, that it makes the Dung liquid, and apt to paſs, to which intent Painters uſe it to temper their colors.

*Porus biliarius.* The other Receptacle of Choler, is the *Canalis* or *Porus bilarius*, the Choler-paſſage, which is found even in thoſe Animals which have no Gall-bladder, as the Hart, the Deer, the Camel, the Roe, the Dolphin, the Sea-calf, &c. It is a veſſel round and long, and the paſſage thereof is twice as large as the Neck of the Gall-bladder, and it goes right out from the Liver [being ſomtimes forked, yet ſo that its two branches do ſoon become one, according to the Obſervation of *Riolanus*] through the common paſſage into the Gut (not into the Gall-bladder, as *Fallopius* conceived) receiving a thick cholerick excrement, which may plainly be perceived, if the ſaid paſſage be opened and blown up, for then the Gut ſwells, and not the Gall-bladder. And *Riolanus* obſerved that ſome have died of a Dyſentery proceeding from Choler, in whom the Neck of the Gall-bladder was obſtructed, but the *Porus biliarius* or Choler-paſſage, very much enlarged. Which alſo was known to *Galen*, who will have Choler to be forced right forwards, even from the Liver into the Gut Duodenum: And next to *Galen* we are beholden to *Fallopius* for the true Deſcription of this Choler-paſſage.

*Ductus, communis, naturalis, the common paſſage natural* The Ductus *communis* or common Paſſage, which goes into the beginning of the Gut Jejunum, or

about

about the end of Duodenum, is made up of the Necks of the Choler-paſſage, and of the Gall-bladder, and is obliquely inſerted between the two Coats of the Gut, the length of a finger, and ſomtimes it is parted into two, having looſe Membranes, from the inmoſt and middle Coat of the Guts, before its Orifice. Where there is plenty of Choler, as in cholerick Natures, it often flows back into the Stomach, ſo that ſuch perſons faſting, are often griped in their Bellies.

*Preternatural.* Somtimes though ſeldom, this Paſſage goes into the bottom of the Stomach, and there empties Choler. Whence proceeds Vomiting of Choler, and ſuch perſons are termed *Picrocholoi ano*, Choler-vomiters. Which is ſeldom found in ravenous Beaſts, according to the Obſervation of *Argenterius*; as alſo in Dogs by the Obſervation of *Walæus*, contrary to the Opinion of *Akakia*. But in caſe this paſſage be inſerted into the end of the Gut Jejunum, ſuch perſons are ever troubled with cholerick Looſneſſes, and are termed *Picrocholoi cato*, Choler-purgers by ſtool. Such as he muſt needs have been, in whom the Choler-paſſage was inſerted into the Gut Colon, as *Severinus* obſerved, when he diſſected the ſaid party at *Naples*.

# Chap. XVI. *Of the Spleen.*

*Situation of the Spleen.* LIen or *Splen* the Spleen, is ſeated under the ſhort Ribs on the left ſide, juſt over againſt the Liver, as if it were a ſecond Liver, under the Midriff, between the Ribs and the Stomach, being in ſome higher or lower then in others. Yet in all it is nearer to the hinder or back-part, ſeeing it reſts upon the Vertebraes and the baſtard Ribs, ſo that a man cannot feel it with his hand, unleſs it ſwell, and ſo become nearer to the Belly-rim; and this ſituation of the Spleen is ſeldom ſo changed, as to find the Liver in the left ſide, and the Spleen on the right.

See Table XV.

*Its Number.* It is for the moſt part only one, ſeldom two (as *Ariſtotle* obſerves in the 4. *de Generatione Animalium*, Chap. 4. And *Poſthius* at *Mompelier*, and *Panarolus* at *Rome*) and more rarely three one upon another, though not all of like bigneſs (as *Falloppius* obſerved) but a moſt rare caſe it is for the Spleen to be wanting (as *Ariſtotle* hath obſerved in the place forecited, and alſo *Laurentius* and *Sebenkius* concerning one *Matthias Ortelius*, and *Hollerius* in a certain Girle) nor can it naturally be wanting, becauſe *Nature abounds not in things ſuperfluous, nor is wanting in things neceſſary*. That vulgar Opinion is therefore fabulous, which holds that it may be taken out of the Body without danger of death, and that in ſuch as uſed to run Races, it was uſually taken out, which never any man yet ſaw or recorded, excepting *Pliny*, *Flud*, *Fiorovanta*, *Rouſſetus*, who if they ſpeak truth, doubtleſs thoſe perſons made a very bad ſhift to live, or died ſoon after, for want of that moſt noble Bowel, or only the outward part of their Spleen was cut off. For deep Wounds in the Spleen are to be accounted mortal, becauſe of the plenty of Arteries, and the conſent it hath with the principal Parts of the Body. This Conceit ſprung from that old Opinion of *Eraſiſtratus*, who conceived that Nature had made the Spleen in vain, which Opinion *Plautus* alſo follows in his Comedy

*Whether the Spleen may be taken out of the Body?*

called the Merchant. And others follow them, who are ſo far to be born with, if they ſhall ſay it is not neceſſary in reference to all kinds of Livewights, but only in reſpect of ſome ſorts. For ſuch live Creatures as have no bladder, do want a Spleen without detriment, as the Chamæleon, and many others. Inſects have no Spleen, and therefore that Proverbial Speech is falſe: *Habet & muſca ſplenem, even a Flie hath a Spleen.*

*Why a Man hath a large Spleen?* It is not ſo great as the Liver, yet in Mankind the Spleen is ſufficiently thick and big, not ſo much becauſe of the ſtubborn humor which it is to maſter, and is hard to overcome, as becauſe of the Arterial, fermentative, or leavening, and yeaſtie Blood, which it was to contain. For it is ſix fingers long very near, three fingers broad, one finger thick, of which greatneſs it is not found in any other living Creature. Yet is its bigneſs various, according to the variety of Subjects, and the ſeveral Conſtitutions of Men. 'Tis thought to be larger in ſuch perſons, as have Naturally a greater quantity of Melancholy or acid Juyce then others have, which flowing thereunto, it is ſoon augmented by reaſon of its looſe and ſpungie ſubſtance. Thoſe perſons whoſe Spleen is over grown, are lean, and bad colored. Whence it was that the Emperor *Trajan* termed the Exchequer a Spleen, becauſe as the Princes Exchequer is inriched, the People are impoveriſhed; ſo as the Spleen increaſes, the Body pines. They who conceive it elaborates the Chylus, do bring this for a reaſon, viz. that it draws too much Chyle by the *Ramus ſplenicus*, and defrauds the Liver. But becauſe that Action of the Spleen is queſtioned, another reaſon muſt be ſought after. The moſt renowned *Conringius*, allows the Præmiſes for true in a præternatural greatneſs of the Spleen, otherwiſe, if it be Natural and legitimate, the Body flouriſhes when the ſpleen does flouriſh.

Be the ſtate of the Spleen what it wil, I conceive the Body is diminiſhed, when the Spleen is augmented, becauſe it bereaves the reſt of the Body of the fermentative acid Juyce, and either conſumes it to nouriſh it ſelf, if it be naturally great; or is unable to prepare and expel it, when its greatneſs is præternatural and ſickly.

*Its Shape.* Its Shape is for the moſt part like an Oxes tongue, whence ſome have called it *linguoſum Viſcus*, the Tongue-bowel. On the outſide towards the Ribs and the Midriff, it is a little bunching and boſſie; ſomtimes it hath marks made in it by the Ribs, being hollow on that ſide, which is towards the right hand, by reaſon of the ſtomach which lies cloſe by it: Where all along the middle part, there is a certain white Line, with prominencies in it, which admits Veins and Arteries with the Call. Howbeit, præternaturally it receives ſundry Figures, viz. exactly round, triangular, ſharp-pointed, *made rough* with eminencies, divided into two parts; as *Archangelus* hath rightly obſerved.

*Its Color.* Its *Color* in a Child in the Womb, is red like that of the Liver, becauſe it is nouriſhed with pure Mothers Blood: But in perſons come to age, it is blackiſh, becauſe of the thick blood wherewith is is nouriſhed, and in ſuch as are yet older, it becomes black and blew. I have obſerved it red in grown perſons, and *Veſalius* before me, as alſo *Spigelius* who therefore beleives, that ſuch as have it blackiſh are unhealthy. *Conringius* thinks that black color is cauſed by Intemperance in eating, and in drinking eſpecially. I do attribute much to the temper of particular perſons in this caſe, and to the variety of Heat. Now the Spleen does præternaturally put on many colors, according

cording to the Humor prædominant, as black and blew, ash-color, &c. In Beasts of hot Constitution, it is blacker then in Mankind, and in Swine it is whiter.

*Connexion.* It is knit by thin Membranes arising from the Peritonæum, to the Peritonæum it self, the Call, and the left Kidney, somtimes also to the Septum, which *Fernelius* denies, nor can he be excused, unless we shall say he intended the Centre of the Midriff, for thereto it is not fastned. But in its hollow part, it is knit to the upper Membrane of the Call, from which also (according to others from the Peritonæum, or as some will have it, proper to it self) it receives

*Its Coat.* A *Coat* thin and single, yet thicker then the Membrane of the Liver, which in aged persons is oftentimes hardned, so as to become boney and gristley. It ought to be thicker, that it might be stronger to endure the force of the Arterial Blood.

*Substance.* Its *Substance* or Parenchyma, is like thick, black, and congealed blood.

It hath *Vessels* of all kinds.

*Its Veins.* It hath from the *Vena Portæ* a remarkable Trunk, which is called *Ramus splenicus*, situate far beneath the Liver, and sent athwart unto the Spleen. The numerous branches of this bough, being for the most part small as Fibres, are spent in the Spleen, saving two which somtimes pass out of the Spleen: The one is called *Vas breve*, entring into the stomach, somtimes by one, otherwhiles by more branches [which more frequently, as *Walæus* informs us, is a little branch of *Vena splenica*, which when it is come to the middle space betwixt the stomach and the Spleen, it is divided forkewise into two twigs, one of which goes to the Spleen, the other to the stomach] which vessel some will have to belch out acid blood to provoke appetite, or to strengthen the stomach, which is afterwards voided by the Guts. Another branch goes unto the Fundament, and makes the internal Hæmorrhoid Veins.

*Its Arteries.* It hath many and great *Arteries* from a branch of the Cœliaca, which the Liver hath not. 1. To cherish life and inbred heat. 2. That the Blood might be more strongly altered. 3. That for its own Nourishment, it might receive blood, and withal prepare acid Juyce brought thereunto, with Arterial blood, for to ferment the Chyle and all the Blood.

*Its Anastomoses.* Now we are to take special notice of the frequent *Anastomoses* of the Arteries of the Spleen, with the Veins thereof, especially one remarkable one, before the Entrance of the Vessels into the Spleen: the rest are in the Spleen.

Also we must observe its *little Nerves*, arising from the left Costal branch of the sixt pare, dispersed rather through the Coat, then the Substance thereof.

The *Action* of the Spleen is by such Doctors as follow the old Opinion said to be chiefly threefold. 1. To draw melancholick, excrementitious, and slimy Humors out of the Liver. 2. To separate the melancholick Excrement therefrom, that it may be nourished by the good blood. 3. To void it being separated, into the Stomach and Guts. Also they say that the nutriment of the Spleen is elaborated and broken by the Arteries, because spongy and loose flesh ought to be nourished with vaporous and subtile blood. The Passages by which the melancholy Juyce is said to be belched forth, are first the *Vas breve*, and then the Hæmorrhoidal Vein. They will have the Spleen therefore to be the Receptacle of the melancholick Excrement, or of thick dreggie Blood separated in the Liver (even as the Gall-bladder receives the yellow Choler) and that therefore the Spleen is set just over against the Liver.

*Whether the Spleen receive Melancholy from the Liver?*

*Howbeit I deny that the Spleen is ordained only to receive an Excrement*; For

1. In the Spleen there is no large cavity receiving, as in the Gall-bladder, and in the membranous hollowness of the Kidneys, and in the Bladder.

2. If it were a Receptacle for Excrements, why was it not seated in an inferior place, that it might more conveniently receive the weighty Excrement, as other Receptacles?

*The Argument of* Rondeletius *invalid.*

3. *Rondeletius* denying that the spleen is the Receptacle of Melancholy, gives this reason: because that humor while it is naturally disposed, is all consumed upon the boney, and other hard and dry parts; and seeing it is in us the least in quantity of al humors, therefore there is no part ordained to receive it, no more then there is for bloody Excrements, which pass away by Sweat and insensible Transpiration. Yet I conceive this Argument is not very strong.

4. Why are there no Branches of this Receptacle spred through the substance of the Liver, or at least of the *Ramus splenicus*, even as the Gall-bladder receives Branches spred up and down the Liver?

5. Why are there not some Passages, which carry this Juyce from the Liver.

6. No part is nourished with an Excrement, notwithstanding the Saying of *Columbus*, that no part is nourished with an Excrement saving the Spleen.

7. It is absurd that an Excrement should flow back into the *Vena portæ*, and afterwards into the *Ramus splenicus*.

8. It should receive in, and purge forth Excrements, by the same Passages.

9. The strongest reason, that the Spleen is no Receptacle of Melancholy is, In as much as it is another Organ of Sanguification, as shall be proved by and by.

*Whether the Spleen make Blood?*

Later Anatomists have conceived, that the Spleen doth elaborate Blood, as the Liver doth, but they are not agreed, touching the way, nor the Nature of the Chyle. *Caspar us Bartholinus* my Father was of Opinion, that the Spleen did *make a thick*, but good sort of Blood, of the thicker part of the Chymus, which by an inbred Faculty it hath, it draws to it self, through the *Ramus splenicus*. This he proved,

1. By the likeness of the structure of the Spleen, with that of the Liver. For as the Liver is a fleshy Bowel, covered with a Coat, furnished with very many Vessels, the flesh whereof resembles blood, shed round about: Even so, the Spleen is a Bowel, furnished with a Coat, and with very many Vessels variously interwoven, whose proper flesh is as it were congealed blood, shed round about the Vessels.

2. In the Spleen, there are very many textures of the Vessels and infinite Anastomoses. Now there are no where such textures, and plications, or foldings of the Vessels, save for a new elaboration, as may be seen in the Brain, Liver, Stones, Duggs, &c.

3. It appears from the Situation of the *Ramus splenicus*, which is far beneath the Liver, out of the Trunk of *Vena portæ*, where part of the Chymus is attracted, or of the Chyle, which hath some disposition towards blood: If therefore it receives matter there, of which blood is made, why therefore shall not the Spleen make blood?

4. Nature

4. Nature is wont either to double the Parts of the Body, and set one on each side, as appears in the Kidneys, Stones, Lungs, Duggs, Organs of the Senses, &c. or if she makes only one, she is wont to place it in the middle. as the Heart, Stomach, Womb, Bladder, Nose, Tongue, Mouth, &c. Therefore the Spleen must needs be another Liver.

5. Diseases of the Spleen, as well as of the Liver, do hurt Blood-making or Sanguification.

6. Somtimes the Situation of the Liver is changed, so that it is in the left side, and the Spleen on the right.

7. The Liver failing and growing less, the Spleen is augmented, and assists the Liver, as is known by many Examples, whence the Spleen hath been often seen in Dissections, to be greater and redder then the liver.

8. Tis unlikely that so many Arteries enter into the Spleen, for the sake of Excrements, but rather to digest & concoct thick Blood, that so by contrary thinness, the stubborn thinness of the said Blood may be overcome.

9. In a Child in the Womb, the Spleen is red as is the Liver, by reason of the cause aforesaid.

10. Such as the Diseases of the Liver are, such in a manner are those of the Spleen.

11. And the Diseases of the Spleen and Liver, are cured well neat with the self same Remedies.

12. If Authorities are of force, enter *Aristotle* in the 3. Book of the Parts of living Creatures, Chap. 7. where he saith, that the Liver and Spleen are of a like Nature; also, that the Spleen is as it were an adulterate Liver, and where the Spleen is very little, there the Liver is Bipartite, or of two parts, and that all parts in the Body almost are double. *Plato* calls the Spleen an expres's image of the Liver. Others call it the Livers Vicar, the left Liver, &c. *The Author of the Book touching the use of Respiration*, hath confirmed this, as also *Aphrodisæus*, *Aratæus*, and others. *Archangelus* makes another use of the Spleen to be, to make more plenty of Blood.

*For what Parts the Spleen makes Blood?*

If any shall demand, *To what end serves the Blood which the Spleen makes?* Some conceive it serves to the same end, with that of the liver, viz. to nourish the whole body, and to assist the liver.

But he was of Opinion, that this was not done save when necessity requires, in some defect or Disease of the Liver.

But he conceives that ordinarily the Spleen is an Organ to make blood, *to nourish the Bowels of the lower Belly*, as the Stomach, Guts, Call, Mesentery, Sweetbread, &c. and that the Spleen it self is nourished with some portion of the said Blood, and sends the rest to the parts of the body. And he conceives that the liver makes blood for the rest of the parts, especially the musculous parts. And he proves it,

1. Because the bowels of the lower Belly receive their nourishment from the *Vena splenica*, or from the branches yssueing therefrom, namely from the branches of *Vena portæ* only, and not from the *Vena cava*.

2. Because those bowels are thick, more earthy and base: And such as the like parts are not found in the body besides, and therefore these parts stood in need to receive such blood from the Spleen.

3. And therefore the liver is greater, because it makes blood for the whole body besides: The Spleen less, because it makes blood only for the lower Belly, save when in cases of necessity it is forced to help the Liver.

4. In Dogs the Spleen is long and thin, because the Parts or Bowels of the lower Belly are smaller in a Dog, and less wreathed and folded, then in a Man.

5. There is an evident difference between the Fat bred in the musculous Parts, or those which are nourished by the *Vena cava*, and that dirty, and soon putrifying Fat, which is bred in the lower Belly as in the Cal, Guts, Mesentery, &c. Hence arise so many Putrefactions in the mesenterick Parts. And by how much an Humor is thicker (as is the muddie Fat we speak of) so much the sooner it putrifies: As the dreggie fat doth sooner, then the Fat in musculous parts. So the Blood of the Spleen is more disposed to Putrefaction, then that of the liver, and this then the blood of the right Ventricle of the Heart. Moreover, the blood of the Arteries is less subject to Putrefaction, then any of the former; and the Spirit least of all.

6 He believes this to be a most strong Argument, that where a part is found having the substance of the Bowels, there also there are Veins from the *Vena portæ*, or the branches of the Spleen: but where a part is consisting of musculous flesh, there are Veins which have their Original from *Vena cava*, as appears in the *Intestinum rectum*, in which by reason of its twofold substance, Nature hath placed two sorts of Veins. In the musculous Part, there are the external Hæmorrhoid Veins, which arise from the Cava: In the bowellie or guttie substance, there are veins from the *Vena portæ*.

These, and such like Reasons prevailed with my Father of pious Memory, to prove that the Spleen drew Chymus, by the *Ramus splenicus*. Which Opinion was at that time embraced by most Anatomists, as *Varolus*, *Posthius*, *Jessenius*, *Platerus*, *Bauhinus*, *Sennertus*, and *Riolanus* in his first Anthropographia. But that Age deserves excuse, as being ignorant of what Posterity hath since found out. For the milkie veins discovered by *Asellius*, do shew, that no Chyle thick or thin, is drawn by the Mesaraick Veins, or carried any whether, but by the milkie Veins only to the Liver, and not to the Spleen. Moreover, a Ligature in live Dissections declares, that nothing is carried through the Mesaraicks to the Spleen, but contrariwise from the Spleen to the Mesaraicks. Yet I allow thus much to the foresaid reasons, that there is a certain Generation of Blood made in the Spleen, by the manner hereafter to be explained, not of Chyle, which hath here no Passages, but of Arterial Blood, sent from the Heart.

*Whether any portion of Chyle be carried to the Spleen, and what way?*

*Hofmannus* and *Spigelius* bring the dreggie part of the Chyle, through the mesaraick Veins unto the Spleen, that it may be there concocted into Blood. Who are in the same fault. For the Arteries are ordained to carry blood to the Mesentery, which is very manifest by Ligatures, and it is contrary to the course of Nature, for the blood to be carried, and the Chyle brought back the same way, least they should be mingled together. Moreover, in live Anatomists, there was never any Chyle observed there. And the dreggie Portion of the Chyle, which no part stands in need of to nourish it self, is more fitly purged out by the Guts.

*Sperlingerus* a learned Man, conceives that this work is performed by the milkie Veins, as to the Liver. Which were a ready way, if the milkie Veins do go to the Spleen, which no man as yet hath been able to observe. Those that thought otherwise were deceived by nervie Fiberkies.

*Others* who very well saw, that the Mesentery sent nothing to the Spleen, would have the Chyle to come right out from the Stomach to the Spleen, by waies manifest or hidden. They account the manifest waies to be the *Vas breve*, and its branches, by which the spleen sucks the more watry part of the Chyle. But the *Vas breve*, carries acid Juyce from the Spleen, but nothing

to the Spleen, no more then the other Veins. Moreover, sometimes it is not inserted into the Spleen, but there is a Branch of the *Splenica* without it. I omit, that the *Vas breve* is never full of the white liquor. *Daniel Horstius* indeed hath in this case substituted the *Vena splenica*, but contrary to Experience, and the Office of the Veins. The splenick Vein receives all its blood from the Spleen and its Arteries, and returns nothing, and therefore being bound in living Anatomies, it is filled, and swells towards the Spleen, according to the Observation of *Walæus*, but towards the Liver it is emptied. Howbeit *Regius* appeals to the Ligature, that the *Vas breve* swells betwixt the Ligature and the Stomach, and that it is lank between the Ligature and the Spleen. *Bachius* is nothing moved herewith, though he cannot untie the knot, and *Hogeland* is various in this Observation; so that I much doubt, whether the *Vas breve* is alone so filled, before I shall see it attested by the Eyes of some others.

Besides the *Vas breve*, *Carolus Piso* proves that the wheyish and potulent matter, is drawn out of the Stomach, by the Gastrick and Epiploick Veins; who was ignorant of the motion of humors in these veins. Both the vessels disburthen themselves into the *Ramus splenicus*, and then the blood is sent by a straight Passage unto the Liver, and returns unto the Spleen, without any hindrance of the Valves.

Those who are for hidden Passages, would force upon us, either the Pores of the Stomach, or a distinct vessel, to us as yet invisible and unknown. Among the former is *Vesslingus*, among the latter *Conringius*, who nevertheless differ, touching the Concoction of the Humor. *Vesslingus* will have the Spleen to make blood of the more watry Portion of the Chyle, with the earthy and slimy parts mixed therewith, drawn by the invisible Pores, like the milkie veins, resting upon the stomach it self, and the Pancreas. *Conringius* will have only the potulent liquor to pass by a vessel to us invisible, by reason of the close sticking of the Spleen to the stomach, and the Serum therein contained, which is not so white: Which Vessel will at one time or other be discovered. But all would be well, if those men that have eyes in their heads, would shew us either those Passages, or that peculiar Vessel. The Pores are too narrow for the dreggie parts of the Chyle to pass through, and who can hinder them sweating out some other way, rather then into the Spleen? Many times when the Spleen stuck not so close to the stomach, I could see no vessel, nor could I see any such thing in a Youth, who having largely drunk, was here lately choaked with a bit of a Neates-tongue.

Howbeit, *Reusner*, *Piso*, and *Conringius* lately praised, do suppose, that only potulent matter, is by the Spleen presently suckt out, and that therefore it makes only watry Blood ordinarily. But there is no strong and sufficient reason for this Opinion, seeing there are no manifest Passages. Nor must it only draw that which is thin, which both the Blood and Chylus stand in need of, as a vehicle or carrier, though it flow not alone, but is variously mixed with grosser matter, according to the Constitution of the blood; till having plaid its part, it is either separated by the Kidneys, or sweats through the whole Habit of the Body. If the wheyish moisture be præternaturally separated in the stomach, from the thicker Chyle, either it is voided by Vomit, and the grosser Chyle wanting the help thereof to carry it, will make the Colick in the Guts, as I saw in our famous *Wormius*; or it is voided through the *Pylorus*, which is alwaies open for liquid meats, and such as are easily digested, according to the Observation of our most desired *Walæus*; much more after much drinking, which is sometimes in great Drinkers, quickly voided by urin, not passing through the Spleen, but through the Guts, if there be a conveniency of quality, thinness of Humors, loosness of the Vessels, and strength of the attractive Faculty. All which conspiring, *Asellius* rightly avouches there is no way so long, which is not soon passed over. In such as are otherwise constituted, Drink does not so soon slip away by Urin. For some will drink all day, and never use a Chamber-pot. In some also their Belly becomes loose, and the Drink goes away, questionless, by the Guts. The blood, indeed, of Splenetick persons, is thin and watry, not that it comes such immediately from the stomach, but the fault is in the whole blood, communicated by the Arteries to the Spleen. I pass over, how that these are the signs of a disordered Spleen, from the præternatural state whereof, no good Argument can be drawn to prove any thing, touching its Natural condition; by which Answer, all other Arguments brought by most learned men, for this potulent Chylus are answered.

*What Creatures have no Spleen?*

It is a doubtful question, why only such Creatures have Spleens, which have Kidneys and Bladders, according to *Aristotle*, which *Panarolus* found true in a Chamæleon. Is it because of the Attraction of wheyish Humors? I cannot beleive it. But they have no Spleen, because they make little blood, and therefore the wheyish Humor did not want peculiar Receptacles, but the Superfluities of the blood is spent upon Feathers, Skin, Scales, &c. They are therefore without a Spleen, because Fermentation was not necessary, in the imperfect Concoction of those kind of Creatures, who have a perpetual and Natural Lientery.

*Riolanus* hath lately in his Enchiridion out of all these Opinions, hammer'd a mixt action of the Spleen, to attract slimy Blood for its own Nourishment, and after that to pour out a certain particular fermentative Whey, through the splenetick Arteries into the stomach, and because its flesh is of a drinking Nature, to draw and suck superfluous Liquor through the Veins out of the stomach. To which I have already answered, part by part. The Action verily of the Spleen is more noble, then to receive superfluous Humors out of the stomach. And through what Passages should it do that? For the Office of the Veins is, to carry back the blood in the parts, out of the Arteries to the Trunk, according to the Doctrine of the Circulation, which *Riolanus* does here vainly oppose. And Ligatures in living Anatomies do shew the same.

*Franciscus Ulmus*, *Carolus Piso*, and *Æmilius Parisanus*, will needs have it that the Spleen makes Arterial blood, for the left Ventricle of the Heart, as the Liver doth for the right Ventricle. Which Opinion is confuted, because, 1. There is no way by which the blood here made, can go into the left Ventricle of the Heart; for it cannot go by the *Aorta*, because of the Valves there placed at the mouth thereof. 2. There would be a mixture of perfect and imperfect Juyce, if by the same way, and at the same time the Heart should receive and return blood. 3. Many Creatures live without a Spleen, which generate Vital Spirits nevertheless.

*Mr. De la Chambre* in his Treatise of Digestion, supposes that the Spleen makes Spirits for the use of the Belly. But there is Spirit enough to nourish and vivifie the inferior Parts, supplied from the *Aorta*. But if he understand some qualification of the spirituous blood accommodated to the use of the belly, he deserves to be excused.

*Helmont*

*Whether the Spleen be an Organ of the ſenſitive Soul?*

*Helmont* a late Writer, hath deſtined the Spleen for more noble Actions. He gives it out to be the ſeat of his Archeus, which being the immediate Organ of the ſenſitive Soul, determines the Actions of the Vital Soul reſiding in the ſtomach. He calls it the Seat. 1. Of the Underſtanding, wherein the Conceptions thereof are formed, becauſe it is of all the Bowels the fulleſt of Blood, and enriched with very many Arteries; and the Brain does only keep the Conceptions ſent to it from the Spleen. 2. Of Sleep and Dreaming. 3. Of Venery, becauſe Pollutions are in the night; and there about the ſtomach, the firſt motions of luſt are perceived: For they are ſaid to proceed out of the Loins, in which the Spleen is the principal Vital Member. Finally, perſons troubled with the Quartan Ague, are not ſubject to luſt, becauſe their Spleen is diſeaſed. 4. Of ſundry Diſeaſes, which are accounted to be Diſeaſes of the Brain and Cheſt, as the Tiſſick, Pleuriſie, Apoplexy, Falling-ſickneſs, Night-mare, Swimming of the Head, &c. But 1. All theſe Conceits bottom upon a falſe Foundation. 2. No ſound Anatomiſt will grant that the ſtomach and not the brain is the ſeat of the Soul. 3. The Spleen is full of blood for other uſes, that it may prepare acid blood for the fermentation of the whole blood and the Chylus. 4. There are Living-Creatures, that both ſleep, and are addicted to Venery without any Spleen, or though they have a Spleen, when the ſame is diſeaſed. 5. Nocturnal Pollutions ſpring from an hot Conſtitution of the Spermatick Veſſels, and wheyiſh ſharp Blood, as the Diſſection of the ſaid Parts does declare. 6. That is rather to be affirmed touching the Kidneys in the Loins, as ſhall hereafter appear. 7. Other Parts in the Belly are diſeaſed beſides the Spleen, in ſuch as have Quartan Agues. Yet it cannot be denied, but that the Spleen does aſſiſt in ſome meaſure, by adminiſtring acid blood 8. The Spleen is but the remote ſeat of the foreſaid Diſeaſes, by reaſon of Vapors raiſed from thence; but proper Diſeaſes which ſpring not from Sympathy, do primarily depend upon the Brain.

*The Opinion of* Walæus *touching the uſe of the Spleen.*

The laſt and trueſt Opinion, is that of *Walæus*, my quondam moſt worthy Maſter, founded upon ocular Inſpection, and moſt certain reaſon. He finding in live Anatomies no motion of Humors through the *Ramus ſplenicus* of *Vena portæ* to the Spleen, did certainly conclude, that it was unlikely, that either Melancholy or Chyle is carried out of the Liver into the Spleen, by the *Ramus ſplenicus*; and that therefore the Spleen receives no melancholick Excrement from the Liver, nor that any blood is made in the Spleen of Melancholy or Chylus. But contrariwiſe he obſerved alwaies, that all the blood was carried, both ſwiftly and ſtrongly enough perpetually out of the Spleen into the Liver, as alſo the blood which comes out of the Hæmorrhoidal Vein, the *Vas breve*, and other Veins which are joyned to the *Ramus ſplenicus*. And that there is no motion of Humors to the Spleen, unleſs by the *Ramus ſplenicus* of the *Arteria Cœliaca*: And therefore the Spleen does not receive any matter to change and alter from any place, ſave the *Arteria Cœliaca*. And he conceives that it is moſt likely, that the blood being further to be perfected, is diſſolved by the Heat of the Heart, and that when it is forced from the Heart, through the Cœliacal Arteries into the Spleen, the whole maſs of blood is not retained by the Spleen, but as the Gall-bladder contains only Choler, ſo the Spleen holds only the acid or ſharp part of the Blood, which you may call Melancholy, juſt as we ſee the acid Spirit ſeparated from things that are diſtilled: And that the ſaid acid Humor is perfected by the Spleen, by means of which the Spleen appears black and acid. And that this ſharp humor is afterwards mingled with Blood in the Veins, and with Chyle in the Stomach, and makes them thin: And that therefore the Spleen being obſtructed, groſs Humors are multiplied in the Body, not becauſe thick Humors are not drawn by the Spleen, which naturally are never found there; but becauſe the Spleen cannot communicate that attenuating acid Humor to the Blood or Chyle. And that as much of this acid Humor, as is unfit for Digeſtion, is voided with the Serum by Urin, for ſuch acid Liquors, as Vinegar, Spirit of Sulphur, &c. are eaſily mingled with Water; and the ſaid acid Humor, by Diſtillation may again be ſeparated from the Urin.

*How the Spleen may be ſaid to be the ſeat of Laughter.*

In as much therefore as the Spleen draws the ſharp part of the blood out of the Heart, and ſends it prepared to the Meſentery, that the reſt thereof being to be wrought by the Liver, may become more pure and clear; the Opinion of the Ancients may be allowed, which held the Spleen to be the ſeat of Laughter. For the cheerfuller, and livelier Animals, or live Wights, have great ſpleens; the more laſcivious have great livers; the gentler have little gall-bladders; the fearfuller have great hearts, and the loudeſt, have large lungs, &c. Whence that Verſe had its Original.

*Cor ardet, pulmo loquitur, fel commovet iras,*
*Splen ridere facit, coget amare jecur.*

*Heart* fears, *Lungs* ſpeak, the *Gall* moves' anger fel,
*Spleen* makes us laugh, **Liver* doth Love compel.

*Tis called *Lover in the North of* England, *& poſſibly that is the Etymology of the Word.*

*How the Spleen voids its thin Excrements.*

The Spleen therefore perpares blood to accommodate the Bowels of the lower Belly, and of the whole Body after the manner aforeſaid. And the excrementitious part of the blood, which cannot be ſeparated by the Spleen, if it be thin and watery, it is purged out. 1. By the Arteries, not only to the Guts, but alſo to the Kidneys by the emulgent Veins. Hence in Diſeaſes of the Spleen, Urins are many times black, for which cauſe in ſuch caſes we adminiſter Diureticks. And ſplenetick and melancholick perſons ſo called, abound with wheyiſh Humors, as is well known from *Hippocrates* and *Galen*, for ſerum ought to be the vehicle or carrier of the groſſeſt Humor. Hence is it, that perſons troubled with the Quartan Ague, do moſt plentifully ſweat and piſs: Alſo when it is very plentiful, by the Hæmorrhoid Veins. 2. By the ſtomach, whence in the Scurvey, the Patients ſpit exceedingly, as alſo in the Quartan Ague, ſo that *Galen* places ſpitting and ſpawling among the ſigns of that Diſeaſe. Hence alſo melancholick perſons are wont to be extream ſpitters. Now it comes from the Spleen to the ſtomach, not only by the *Vas breve*, but alſo by other near Veſſels.

*How its thick.*

If the Excrement of the Spleen be thick and earthy, it is voided directly by the Fundament, and comes not at the ſtomach, for 1. From Melancholy as *Galen* tells us, comes the blackneſs of the Excrements. 2. By reaſon of its weight and heavineſs, it ſettles downwards. 3. The evacuation of Melancholy by the internal Hæmorrhoid

thoid Veins, does free men from melancholick Diseases present, and preserves from future, as the divine *Hippocrates* teaches in many places.

## Chap. XVII. *Of the Kidneys.*

*The threefold excrement of the Blood.*

A Threefold Excrement is purged from the Blood; thin Choler into the Gall-bladder, thick Choler into the *Canalis bilarius*, and Whey into the Kidneys. And because we have already spoken of the Receptacles of the two former Excrements, we shall now also speak of the third.

*The true Exposition of the Kidneys.*

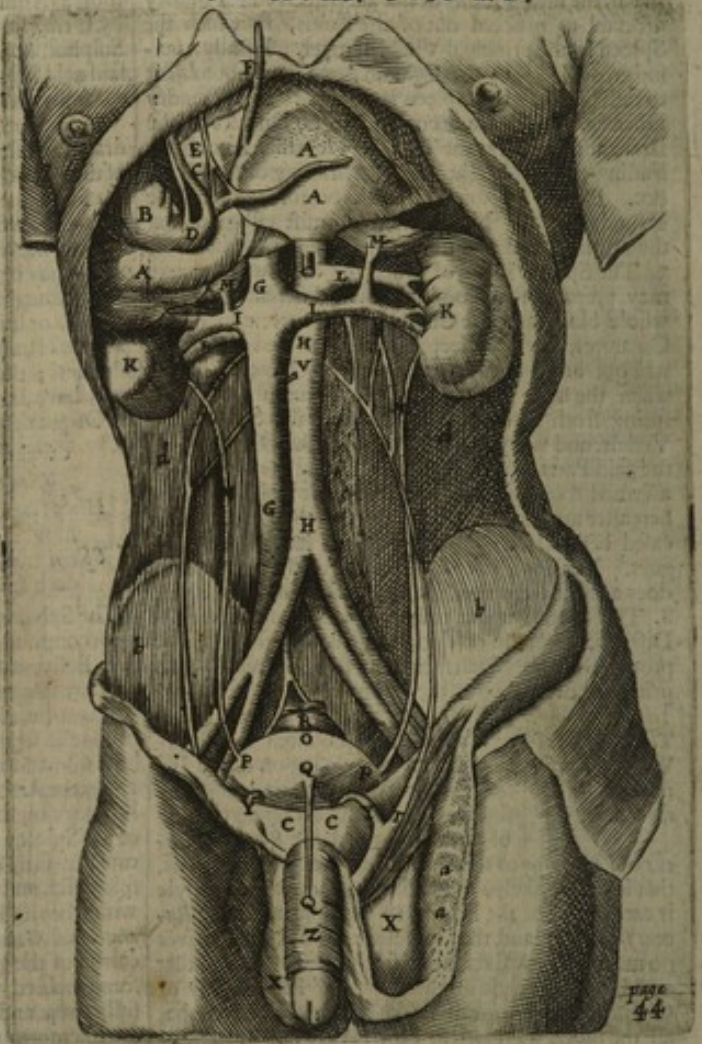
The Kidneys are termed RENES, from flowing, because the Matter of Urin does flow through them. In Greek they are termed *Nephroi*, as if you would say *Pissers*: From which Etymology that taken out of *Varro*, differs not much. viz. that they are called *Renes*, as if you would say *Rivuli* Rivolets or little Springs.

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

This FIGURE shews the Urinary Instruments, and Parts serving for Generation in Men, in their Natural Situation.

AAA. *The hollow part of the Liver.*
B. *The Gall-bladder.*
C. *The Choler-passage or Ductus bilarius.*
D. *The Vena Cystica or Gall-bladder Vein.*
E. *An Artery distributed both into the Liver and the Gall-bladder.*
F. *The Navil-vein turned upwards.*
GG. *The descendent Trunk of Vena cava.*
HH. *The descending Trunk of the Arteria magna.*
II. *The Emulgent Veins.*
KK. *The Kidneys in their Natural Place.*
LL. *The Emulgent Arteries.*
MM. *The Capsulæ atrabilariæ, with Branches distributed into them from the Emulgent Vein.*
NN. *Ureters descending from the Kidneys to the Bladder.*
O. *The bottom of the Piss-bladder.*
PP. *Insertion of the Ureters, into the sides of the Bladder.*
QQ. *A Portion of the Urachus or Piss-pipe.*
R. *A Portion of the right or straight Gut cut off.*
SS. *The preparatorie Vessels, of which that on the right hand is bred out of the Trunk, that on the left out of the Emulgent Vein.*
T. *The Pyramidal Body arising from the Union of the Veins and Arteries preparatorie, expressed on the left side.*
V. *The Original of the preparatorie Arteries from the Trunk of Aorta.*
XX. *The Stones, the left being laid open from its common Coat.*
YY. *The Vasa deferentia which ascend from the Stones to the Belly.*
Z. *The Yard.*
aa. *The Cod, which covered the left Stone, separated therefrom.*
bb. *The Ilia or Flanks.*
cc. *The Share-bones.*
dd. *The Loins.*

The XVIII. TABLE.




*Their Number*

The Kidneys are *two* in number, because among all Excrements, the wheyish is most plentiful, and exceeds the two excrementitious Cholers, by reason of the Blood, whose vehiculum it was to be, until it come into the large Veins of the *Cava*; and that one being diseased, the other might

*Whether when one Kidney is diseased the other ceases to perform its office?*

might draw the wheyish Humor; but I am not of the Opinion of *Severinus* and of *Lusitan* after him, that one Kidney being diseased, the other draws the wheyish Humor. For the contrary is seen in such as have one Kidney only stopped with a great stone, or consumed by an Ulcer; and the contrary to what he imagines, is seen in other parts, for one Eye being hurt, the other sees; and all the scollups of the Lungs being consumed on one side, that on the other side does further Respiration, unless haply both parts be affected by some common Cause, for otherwise they must be forced to say, that that happens only sometimes. There is seldom found only one, and then it is a great one placed in the middle, for otherwise the body should not be well ballanced, nor could the Vessels be conveniently carried. Tis monstruous, when both the Kidneys are joyned into one beneath, and cleave together, as I have seen at *Padua*. Tis more rare to find three or four placed one upon another, or one beneath another.

*Their Situation.*

They are *situate* under the Liver and Spleen, where they rest upon the Muscles of the Loins, between the two Coats of the Peritonæum, at the sides of the *Vena cava* and *Arteria magna*, under which very great Nerves lie hid, both of the Muscle *Psoas*, and others, which evidently pass this way unto the Thighs. Whence it is that a stone being in the Kidney, a numness is felt in the Thigh of the same side. It is a rare case which *Cabrolius* hath observed, for the Kidneys to rest upon the Back-bone of the Loins. Nor are the Kidneys seated just one against another, least there should be some impediment to attraction, and least some part of the wheyish humor should slip aside. But the *right-side* Kidney is *lowest in Men*, to give way to the Liver, under which it rests immediately, reaching by its end, the third Vertebra of the Loins. It is seldom higher then the left, and seldom are the two Kidneys seated one just against another. The left Kidney for the most part, lies partly under the spleen, but is seldom higher then the spleen. Contrariwise in Brutes, the spleen goes more downwards, and the right Kidney lies higher, and therefore there is a Cavity in the Liver by means of the Kidney, which does not Naturally happen in men. Here some observe that the right Kidney is nearer to the *Cava*, and the left more remote, by reason of the left Emulgent Vein, which is much longer then the right.

*Which Kidney is the highest?*

*Their Bigness.*

They are not alwaies both just of one bigness, but for the most part they are. They are commonly of the length of four Vertebra's; their latitude for the most part, three fingers, their thickness that of a thumb, yet the right Kidney is very many times larger then the left, because by reason of the heat of the right part, it draws the wheyish blood more vehemently, unless it be fretted by some Disease, for then it grows lean and thin. Also such as are given to fleshy desires, have larger Kidneys then ordinary. But their Proportion is not alwaies alike convenient for the body.

*Surface.*

The Surface of the Kidneys, as in the liver is slippery and smooth: It is seldom in Mankind uneven, as if it were composed of many Kidneys or kernels, which any man may frequently find in a Child yet in the Womb. But the Kidney is alwaies so made, in an Ox and Bear, in a Calf, and most curiously of all in a Sturgeon, in which the Kidneys are made up like bunches of Grapes, of triangular and quadrangular dies or tiles as it were after an Artificial manner, as I have demonstrated in the Anatomy of that Creature.

*Their Colour.*

The Colour of the Kidneys is a dark red, but seldom intensely red. In diseased persons the Kidneys are variously coloured, even as the Liver and Spleen are.

*Shape.*

The Kidney is shaped like a kidney-bean so called, also like an Alarum leaf, if you respect the plane surface. Externally in the Back or about the Flanks, it is of a round, bunching shape; beneath towards the upper and lower part it is bossie, but in the middle concave and hollow. *Helmont* hath seen the left Kidney triangular, and in the same person the right Kidney not so big as an Hazel-nut. *Hippocrates* compares the kidneys to Apples: Without doubt to the broader sort of red Apples; unless by the word *meloisin* he intended the likeness of the kidneys in man to other Creatures.

*Connexion.*

They are knit by an external Membrane, which is from the Peritonæum, to the Loins and Midriff, and by the emulgent Vessels to the *Cava* and *Aorta* Vessels, by the Ureters to the Bladder. And the right kidney, to the blind Gut, sometimes also to the Liver, the left to the Spleen and Colon. Hence pains of the kidneys are exasperated by plenty of Winds and Excrements.

*Membranes.*

They have a double *Membrane*: The first internal one near and proper, being very thin without Fat and Veins, from the external and common Coat of the ingredient Vessels dilated (for a Vein only goes in with but one Coat) which growing very close, makes the flesh more compact, and being turned back inwards, it accompanies the Vessels, enters into, and invests their Bellies. *Another* external from the Peritonæum, which adhæres but loosely, whence they term it the *Swath-band* of the kidneys. For it is as it were a coverlid or blanket of the kidneys; and because it is encompassed with much Fat, for the sake thereof, it hath received the *Vena adiposa* so called, that is to say the Fat-vein, so that in fat persons the kidneys lie quite hidden. Whence he that knows or searches into hidden things, is said to search the Reins. For the Scripture uses two words *Pelajoth* and *Taboth*, the former of which *Mercerus* will have to be derived from a word signifying to perfect and finish, because there is in the Kidneys a power of consulting, and finishing things consulted upon: The latter they derive from *Tuch* a blot, and from the Radical word *tsvvach* to daub, or plaster, and crust over, because the Kidneys are crusted, and hidden as it were with Fat. Some indeed explain the Phrase of searching the Reins to be meant of Concupiscence carnal and venereal Delectation, from the word *Calah* to desire, Witness *Rabbi David*, and *Pagnine*, or from *Celi* a Vessel, because in and from the Kidneys is the desire of Venereal pleasures. Howbeit this also is a secret Quest, stoln pleasures Venereal seeking the night and dark places and secret carriages, which I have largely demonstrated in my *Vindiciæ anatomicæ* against *Hofman*. Fat is bestowed upon them to preserve the Heat of the Kidneys in regard of plenty of Serum which would overcool them, and to defend the Vessels. There is less about the right Kidney if we beleive *Aristotle*, more about the left, because the Heat of the right Kidney, either suffers it not to congeale, or melts it when it is congealed.

*What it is to search the Reins?*

*Substance.*

They have a substance or flesh hard compact and dense, much like that of the

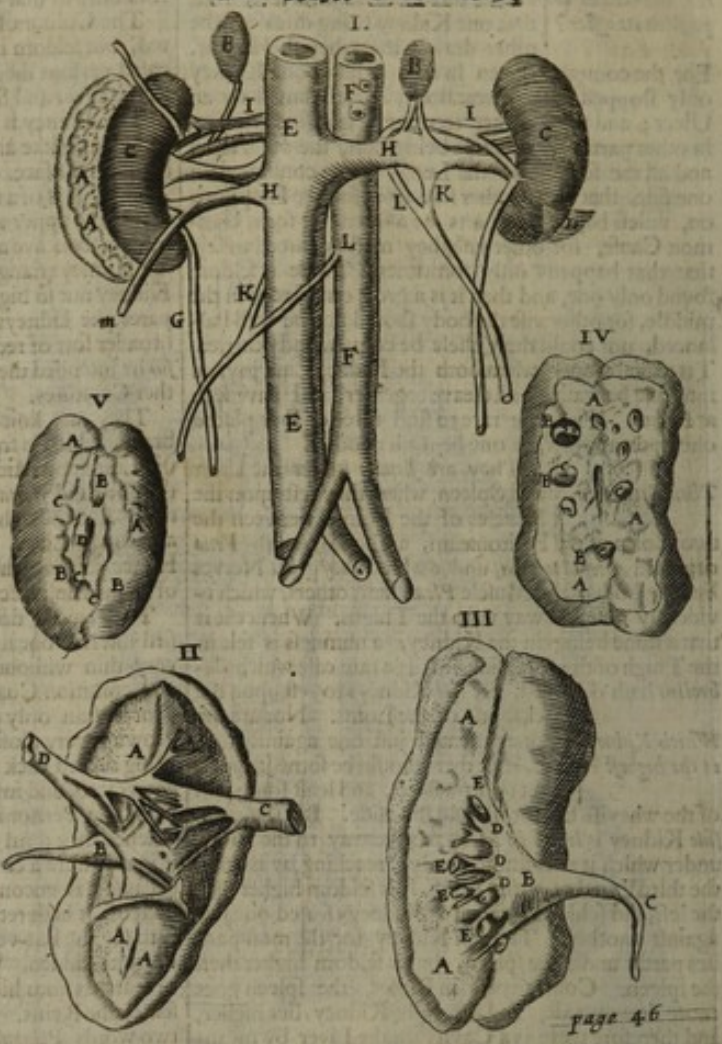
## The FIGURES explained.

This TABLE propounds the Kidneys both whole and cut asunder, that the Ingress and Egress of the Vessels might be discerned.

FIG. I. Shews the Form of the Kidneys and of the Emulgent Vessels.

AA. *The common Membrane of the Kidneys compassed about with Fat, and here separated.*
BB. *The Capsulæ atrabilariæ, or auxiliary Kidneys.*
CC. *The Kidneys.*
D. *A Particle of the proper Membrane of the Kidneys separated from the rest.*
EE. *The Trunk of Vena cava descendent.*
FF. *The Trunk of the Arteria magna descendent.*
GG. *The Ureters or Piss-channels.*
HH. *The Emulgent Veins.*
II *The Emulgent Arteries.*
KK. *The Spermatick Veins, or Seed-veins.*
LL. *The spermatick or Seed-arteries.*
m. *The Vena adiposa or fat Vein from the Emulgent.*
n. *The Arteria adiposa, the fat Artery.*

## The XIX. TABLE.




page 46

FIG. II. Shews the Entrance of the Emulgent Vessels, into the hollow part of the Kidneys.

AAA. *The inside of the Kidney cut open,*
B. *The Basin of the Ureter.*
C. *The Emulgent Vein spred by sundry Branches into the Kidney.*
D. *The Emulgent Artery variously divided, joyning it self to the little Branches of the Veins.*

The III. FIG. Shews the Rise of the Aorta.

AAA. *The Kidney cut open.*
B. *A large Cavity, or the Basin of the Ureter, about the Kidney.*
C. *The Ureter looking downwards.*
DDD. *Little Pipes embracing the Caruncles of the Ureter.*
EEE. *The Teat fashion'd Caruncles or Bits of Flesh, which do strain the Urin into the Kidneys.*

The IV. FIG. Shews the Caruncles.

AAA. *The appearance of a Kidney split open.*
BBB. *The Mouths of the Ureters, which compass the Caruncles opened.*
CCC. *The Papillary Caruncles so called, which strain the Urin into the Kidneys.*

The V. FIG. Shews the Kidney cut open to its Belly.

AAA. *The Kidney divided through the bosse part.*
BBB. *The Caruncles cut through the middle.*
CCC. *The Pipes of the Ureters.*
D. *A Wound piercing into the Belly of the Kidney.*

---

Heart, but not so fibrous, because the Fibres of the vessels are there. But on both sides of the internal Cavity, the Fat being removed, there appears a loose substance, uneven and hollow. This flesh sometimes is consumed and putrefies, whence comes worms in the kidneys. In a Dog I have seen a worm so great in the right kidney which lay hid like a snail, that beside the external Coat of the kidney, there was none of the flesh left.

*Their Bellies.*

The kidneys have two *Bellies* as it were, the outermost in the hollow part which *Fallopius* calls *Porta*; through which the emulgent vessels are carried, and first they enter bipartite or divided into two, and soon after they are commonly divided into four, and so spread abroad into the whole substance of the kidneys, till at last they are consumed and spent into very small and fine threads. The inner Belly is nothing but the large Cavity of the Ureter, that is to

say

say a membranous Cavity, made of the Ureters, spred out and widened in the Cavity of the kidneys. But the Ureters in their progress are not attenuated within, as other Vessels are, but they have the ends of their branches (eight or ten for the most part) broad and open like Pipes, embracing certain Caruncles, or little fleshy Eminences.

*The Caruncles.* These *Caruncles* are like kernels, less coloured and harder then the rest of the flesh. *Carpus* was the Finder out of them, though *Rondeletius* saies that he did first observe them, and calls them Mammilary productions. Others call them Papillary Caruncles, because they are very like the Nipples upon Womens Duggs: They are as big as Pease, somwhat broad above, convex beneath, and they have very little holes bored through them, so that they will hardly permit an hair to enter, which furrows and little channels may be observed, if the kidneys be cut long-wise. I have instead of these found stones in an Ox. The holes were to be exceeding small, least the blood which is requisite to nourish the kidneys, should with the Serum and Choler flow into the Ureters, which indeed happens when the kidneys are diseased or the Passages too open.

They have *Vessels* of all kinds. *Veins* from the *Cava*.

*The emulgent Veins and Arteries.* 1. The *emulgent* or *milking* Veins so called from their Office, which are great and remarkeable by reason of abounddance of wheyish humor in the Body: In which *Bauhinus* saith there are Valves to be seen, which hinder the return of serum into the *Vena cava*. But Experience teaches otherwise, for with their broad end they look towards the *Cava*, and with their sharp and lunary part they respect the kidneys, by which they are opened, according to the Opinon of Dr. *Harvey*, which I have found true, and demonstrated by visible Inspection, so that any matter may easily repass, from the kidneys by the Emulgents to the *Vena cava*, in the solemn Circulation of the Blood. By a short and crooked passage they are carried downwards to the hollow part of the kidneys, as also the *emulgent Arteries*, which are remarkable and large, derived from the Trunk of the Aorta, unto the kidneys, not so much to furnish vital Heat, to resist coldness, as to nourish the kidneys, and to purge away the wheyish humor, which is most plentifully contained in the Arterial blood. For these emulgent Vessels are seldom one like another, or one in number, somtimes with six, five, four, three, and for the most part two branches, they go distinctly to the kidneys, and that either on the one or both sides, seldom on one alone. And when they have entred the hollow part of the kidney, each branch is suddenly subdivided into four or five little ones, which being again divided into other lesser ones, they are at last spent into Veins and Arteries as smal as hairs, which end at the the Heads of the Caruncles, into which they shed their wheyish humor, that it may distil into the little Pipes of the Ureters: Yet are the Emulgents never opened at the Pipes of the Ureters. For wind or water being forced in, it flows indeed through the Emulgents, but it goes not out by the Pipes. Into the left Emulgent in some bodies there is implanted a branch of the *Vena azygos* so called, which is thought to be the cause of that Consent which is between the Chest and the Kidneys, which the Arteries do not a little further.

*A Valve in the Vein.*

*Venæ adiposæ.* 2. The *Venæ adiposæ*. The right being drawn from the Emulgent, seldom from the Trunk, the left from the *Cava* to the outward Coat, which contain blood to nourish the Fat. Moreover, the kidneys need no other Vessels to nourish them besides the Arteries, as the *Vesica bilaria* or Choler-bladder, and the Piss-bladder; for they do not draw a pure Excrement as those do.

*Their Nerves.* The Kidney hath one very small *Nerve* on each side, from the Stomach-branch of the sixt pare, distributed into its proper Membrane, whence arises the Sympathy between the kidneys and the stomach, as when persons diseased in their kidneys, are troubled with stomach-sickness and vomiting. But there are a few branches of Nerves,

*Why such as have a stone in their kidney are subject to vomit?*

which proceed from about the beginnings of the Arteries of the Mesentery, part of which enters into the hollow of the kidneys with the Emulgents, and is disseminated through their substance. Hence persons having the stone in their kidneys, have more vehement gravative and stretching pains: But their pain becomes more sharp, when the stone enters into the narrow and very sensible Ureters.

*The structure of a Dogs kidney.* Now this is the structure of the Kidneys in Mankind. For in a *Dog* it is *otherwise*, in whose kidneys there are other Cavities; but in the kidneys of a Man there are none, save what are formed by the Emulgents and Ureters variously divided.

*The Cribrum benedictum of the Ancients.* Also there is a feigned Dream of some of the Ancients, touching the *Cribrum benedictum* by them so called. For they feigned that there were in the kidneys, two Cavities seated according to their length: The one uppermost, into which the wheyish blood should be poured out of the Emulgents, the other lowermost, which a certain transverse Membrane was thought to sever like a seive bored through with very small holes, which made them call it the *Colander*, and the blessed seive, through which they would have the Serum strained into the Ureters, and the good blood to stay behind to nourish the kidneys. These Dreams

*The Error of* Vesalius. of the Ancients *Vesalius* did rightly reject; but he is mean while deceived, while he would have such Cavities in the kidneys of men, as there are in Dogs kidneys, and will not have the kidneys of a man or sheep to be cut up, because of the Fat. *Riolanus* defends this Opinion of the Colander or Seive, but he explaines it only of the Caruncles (as I do) which are pierced through with very small holes.

Aristoles *Error touching the use of the Kidneys.* Their *Use*. *Erasistratus* and the followers of *Asclepiades* did conceive that Nature had made the kidneys in vain. And *Aristotle* somtimes saies, that there is no need of them. But

*How the Urin is made?* Their *Use* is to draw the wheyish blood, by the emulgent Arteries, that so the mass of blood may be purged. The blood therefore going out through these Vessels, is alwaies carried through the branches of the Emulgents, which are spred abroad through the whole flesh of the kidneys, and go at last into very small passages, so that at last the wheyish Humor is poured right out into the flesh of the kidneys: But the sanguine and laudable portion, does partly remain to nourish the kidneys, and partly returns by little emulgent Veins which are open into the *Cava*, and so to the Heart. The wheyish and watry part is strained through the Papillary Caruncles, which have holes into the branches of the Ureters, which grow together into one large Cavity or Expansion of the Ureter, into which the wheyish hu-

ish humor is emptied, and through the Ureters into the Bladder, where it becomes urin. And because urin is yellow, a portion of yellow Choler not drawn out by the Gall-bladder, is thought to pass along with the Serum or wheyish humor, that the Ureters might be clensed by Choler, as the Guts are.

*Whether the Kidneys prepare Seed?*

*Olhafius, Sennertus, Olaus Wormius,* whom a great many others have followed, as *Hofman, Meybome, Horstius, Loselius, Eichstadius, Sperlinger,* and others have attributed to the Kidneys the preparation of Seed, because hot Kidneys cause a propensity to fleshy lust, and cold Kidneys indispose to Venery, and because in Creatures that use Venery, the kidneys have a rank smell and tast of Seed, which in guelded Animals they have not. Because in a Gonorrhœa proceeding from abonndance of Sperm, Remedies are successfully applied to the kidneys: because men are said to proceed from the Loins of their Progenitors, and they have been famed for the seat of Lust: Because the Loins being whipped, do raise an Appetite to Venery: And finally because are consumed. Which Arguments are indeed of some weight, unless peradventure that smell and tast happen to the kidneys, because they are nourished with such a nutriment as is the matter of Seed, which is carried for the Generation thereof in bordering Vessels. And when the kidneys are hot or cold, the neighbouring places are also hot or cold, through which the matter of Seed is carried, and in which it is altered, and therefore Seed may have affinity to the Constitution of the kidneys. For *Johannes Walæus* conceives that the Circulation of the blood cannot admit this use of the kidneys, for blood is not carried from the kidneys to the stones, by the Emulgents and Veins; but it falls down only out of the Aorta by the Spermatick Arteries. But this action of the kidneys defended by such Learned men, may be reconciled with the circular motion of the blood, if we shall say. 1. That the more wheyish part of the Arterial blood is drawn by the kidneys through the emulgent Arteries, whereby the rest which descends right along through the Spermatick Arteries, becomes more pure and fitter to make Seed. Of which this is a sign, that when the attraction of the kidneys is weak, and the blood comes to the stones more wheyish then it ought to be, the seed which is voided, is unfit for Generation, though plentiful in quantity. 2. That the neighbouring Spermatick Vessels are irradiated and virtuated by the kidneys, even as the Brain irradiates the lower Parts, by an inbred property resembling light. 3. If any thing should be carried from the kidneys to the stones, we might very well say, it is a wheyish substance, which stirs up a sharp titillation and strong provocation and desire to Venery. For I am not perswaded by the Arguments of *Helmont*, that the salt of the Urin takes away the fruitfulness of the Seed, if it be moderate, seeing it helps the Seed both by its acrimony and fluidity or thinness of substance. Little Birds, indeed, though very lascivious, have neither kidneys nor bladder; yet they have somwhat that supplies the Office of the kidneys, viz. certain Caruncles or little parcels of flesh, which resemble the kidneys, which are continued with the *Vena cava* and *Aorta*, Witness *Aristotle* and others.

*This Opinion reconciled with the Doctrine of Circulation.*

*Whether the Kidneys make Blood?*

*Bevorovicius* attributes a kind of Sanguification or Blood-making to the kidneys. 1. Because they have a Parenchyma and very many Vessels. But they might have their Parenchyma because of their Vessels, that they might not be intangled one with another. And it was requisite they should have very many Vessels, to the end they might plentifully purge away the Serum or wheyish part of the Blood, so that through very many and very small outlets, the Whey might be issued out into the Caruncles, without any considerable quantity of Blood therewith. 2. Because the Kidneys which in healthy persons are red, clear, solid; according to the kind of the Disease, become somtimes obscure and blackish, somtimes whiteish; otherwhiles loose, brittle, and as it were rotten; and somtimes again, hard and dried. But that might happen, because as some other parts, so the kidneys might be sick, or through sickness of the Body, Concoction being somwhere hurt, they could not be nourished with good blood. 3. Because the Urins of persons troubled with the stone are crude: But of that another cause is commonly rendred. Viz. in that the kidneys being stopped, the thinner part only of the Urin can make its way forth. 4 Because persons troubled with the stone are wont to swell and look pale, like those that are termed *Leucophlegmatici*. But this may easily happen, because the kidneys either through weakness cannot sufficiently draw the wheyish humor out of the blood, or being stopped it cannot be duely expelled. But if he or any other shall affirm, that allowing the Circulation of the blood in these parts, the blood is there somwhat more changed, then it was in its simple Vessel, I shall not disagree with them therein. For themselves it is that they change the blood, but it is for the rest of the body only, that they purge out the wheyish Excrement.

## Chap. XVIII. *Of the Capsulæ Atrabilariæ, or Black-choler Cases.*

THese Vessels are by most Anatomists neglected and not observed, though they are evermore found in all Bodies, what ever *Archangelus* saies to the contrary. Nor must we say that these Capsulæ are made of a superfluous Matter, as a fixt finger uses to be.

*Their first finder out.*

We are beholden to *Bartholomew Eustachius* for the first discovery of these small Bodies, who mentions them by the name of Kernels, and after him *Archangelus* and *Bauhinus*. *Casserius* cals them *Renes succenturiatos* Deputy-kidneys or Auxiliary kidneys. I shall call them, in regard of the use I allot them, *Capsulas atrabilarias*, Black-choler Cases.

Now these Cases are so seated, that they rest upon the upper part of the kidneys on the outtide, where they look towards the *Vena cava*, being covered with Fat and Membranes.

*Their Number.*

Their number is the same with that of the kidneys. For upon each kidney there rests a Case. I have once seen four of them, of which the two greater being four square were seated above, and the two smaller being round, uneven, and rough, were placed beneath the emulgent Veins.

*Their Magnitude.*

Their Magnitude is not alwaies alike: commonly that on the right side is bigger then that on the left, yet somtimes the latter is bigger then the former. In a Child new born, they are near as big as the kidneys,

kidneys, peradventure becauſe they are moiſter then ordinary, and contain a more thin melancholy Juyce, which becauſe they do not ſtrongly enough expel, but treaſure it up rather, therefore theſe Caſes are widened. But in grown perſons they are ſtraitned, and become leſs, though they abound more with Melancholy, partly becauſe the Melancholy being gathered by degrees, is through the ſtrength of nature by degrees expelled; partly, becauſe the Serum in hotter perſons is dried up, wherewith the new born Infant abounded; and partly becauſe as the Reins grow bigger, they are compreſſed. Yet I have once obſerved them in a grown perſon, by reaſon of aboundance of black Choler, twice as big as ordinary, whereas commonly they are no bigger then a large vomiting Nut.

*Their Cavity.* They have an apparent internal Cavity, both in perſons grown and new-born babes, compaſſing the inner circumference of the whole Caſe as it were, in which they are found to contain a dreggie and black humor, ſo that even the inner ſides are coloured with the ſaid blackneſs. In Infants I have ſeen to my thinking wheyiſh blood in them. I admire that *Riolanus* could not, or would not ſee this Cavity, for though he cries that it is ſo ſmall, that it will hardly admit a little Pea, yet is it ſomtimes wider, and alwaies ſo large, as to contain many peaſen compreſſed, and we can thruſt a Probe into it, this way and that way, without violence. It contains therefore a large Cavity, reſpecting the ſmalneſs of its Body. Nor hath Nature ever labour'd in vain, no not in the ſmalleſt ſpaces of the Capillary Veins. It is a ſmall matter which they can hold, yet it may be counted much, becauſe it is ſucceſſively received in, and caſt out again. This Humor might have been indeed allayed and ſweetned by the admixture of blood, as Choler alſo might, yet Veſſels and Receptacles are ordained for both theſe Excrements, that the blood might not be pollated.

*Their Shape and Subſtance.* In *Shape* and *Subſtance* they many times reſemble the kidneys, ſave that their ſubſtance is a little looſer; ſo that they ſeem little kidneys reſting upon the great ones. Which perhaps was the Reaſon that *Caſſerius* did call them Auxiliary kidneys: But more frequently their ſubſtance is flat like a Cake (howbeit hollow within) and their ſhape is round-long and ſomwhat ſquare. Somtimes they are three corner'd, ſeldom round; for they are ſeldom ſeen in one and the ſame ſhape.

*Their Connexion.* They are *knit* where they reſt unto the external Membrane of the kidneys ſo faſt, that negligent Diſſecters, when they take out the kidneys, leave them ſticking to the Membrane of the Diaphragma or Midriff. And this is the Reaſon that many obſerve them not.

*Their Veſſels.* They have *Veſſels*: *Veins*, and *Arteries*, derived to them from the middle of the Emulgents. Somtimes alſo a Vein is ſent thither from the kidney, and ſomtimes alſo a branch near the Liver from the *Cava* is brought thereto, ſomtimes alſo from the *Vena adipoſa*, and ſomtimes from all thoſe places, ſomtimes with a ſingle, otherwhiles with a double branch. Somtimes they have a ſingle Artery from the Emulgents, ſomtimes a double one; and otherwhiles they have from the Trunk of the Aorta, one while a ſingle branch, otherwhiles three together.

Theſe Caſes have *Nerves* alſo. For about the beginnings of the Arteries of the Meſentery, ſome branches of Nerves mixed together are produced, one part of which goes unto the kidneys, and theſe Caſes which reſt upon them.

*The uſe according to the Authors Opinion.* Their *uſe* hath been hitherto unknown. If it may be allowed to conjecture, as doubtleſs it is, due conſideration being had to the Structure and Paſſages; we may ſay, that a thick and excrementitious black-cholerick humor, is detained in theſe Caſes, which had not been purged from the Blood made in the Liver, or Spleen, or both, but eſpecially that blood which we formerly proved to be made in the Spleen; which is here kept and digeſted, becauſe it could not paſs through the narrow waies of the kidneys. Nor let the aſcending of an heavy ſubſtance trouble us, which ever and anon happens in the Body, by means of the expulſive and attractive Faculty of ſome Part; yea and vehement attraction is advantaged by the highneſs of Situation in motions Spiritual. Hence alſo peradventure it is that Urins are ſomtimes black, when at any time this Humor is collected in the Caſes, in too great a quantity. Where alſo may be often doubtleſs, the ſeat of ſome morbifick cauſe, eſpecially of Melancholy. And the reaſon why melancholick perſons are thereby little pained, is becauſe the ſmallneſs of the Nerves, and the thickneſs of the Humor, do render the Senſe dull. The renowned *Veſlingus* agrees with me in this uſe, but he ſhews not whence, nor how the humor comes. For he conceives they help to draw the wheyiſh humor, and that they treaſure up a parcel of black Choler, which furthers the ſeparation of Whey from the Blood, like Runnet.

*According to Veſlingus.*

*According to Olhafius.* *Olhafius* will have them to receive the thick and terreſtrial Excrements of the kidneys, which remain after their Digeſtion. And therefore becauſe a greater Bowel hath more Excrements then a leſſer, the Conceptacle for the right kidney was to be larger, and that for the left leſſer, and therefore the right ſide Caſe is greater then the left ſide, becauſe the right kidney is greater then the left. But no man hath thought of the waies by which the black blood ſhould be diſcharged into theſe *Capſulæ* or Caſes. The Arteries do eaſily occur to ſuch as hold the Circulation of the blood. For according to the old Opinion, a way is readily found to theſe Capſulæ from the Emulgent, or from the Trunk of the Aota it ſelf, which bringing Nutriment ſuch as it is, do withal unlade the Excrement of the Arterial blood, which was not evacuated formerly. But how it returns out of the Capſulæ, how it comes to the kidneys to colour the urins black, is not ſo eaſie to ſhew, for the Veins end in the Emulgents, or in the *Cava* it ſelf, ſeldom in the kidneys, and ſo either they ſhould perpetually keep that excrementitious Juyce, which is unlikely, or ſend it back again to the *Cava* and the Heart, or they ought, verily, to enter the kidneys directly by the Emulgent Veins, without any hindrance by the contrary motion of the blood going out of the kidneys. This contrary motion a thicker and ſtronger humor can eaſily overcome, manifold branches alſo oppoſing the ſame, as in Rivers we now and then ſee waters run contrary to the ſtream, by the banks and in the middle, by reaſon of ſome fountains opened. But oftentimes the Vein of the right ſide Caſe, is immediately inſerted out of the Trunk of the *Cava*. And in ſuch a chance, truly, either that *Capſula* or Caſe is not ſufficiently purged, whence ariſes ſome hidden Diſeaſe; or the circular motion muſt be there neglected, which in the

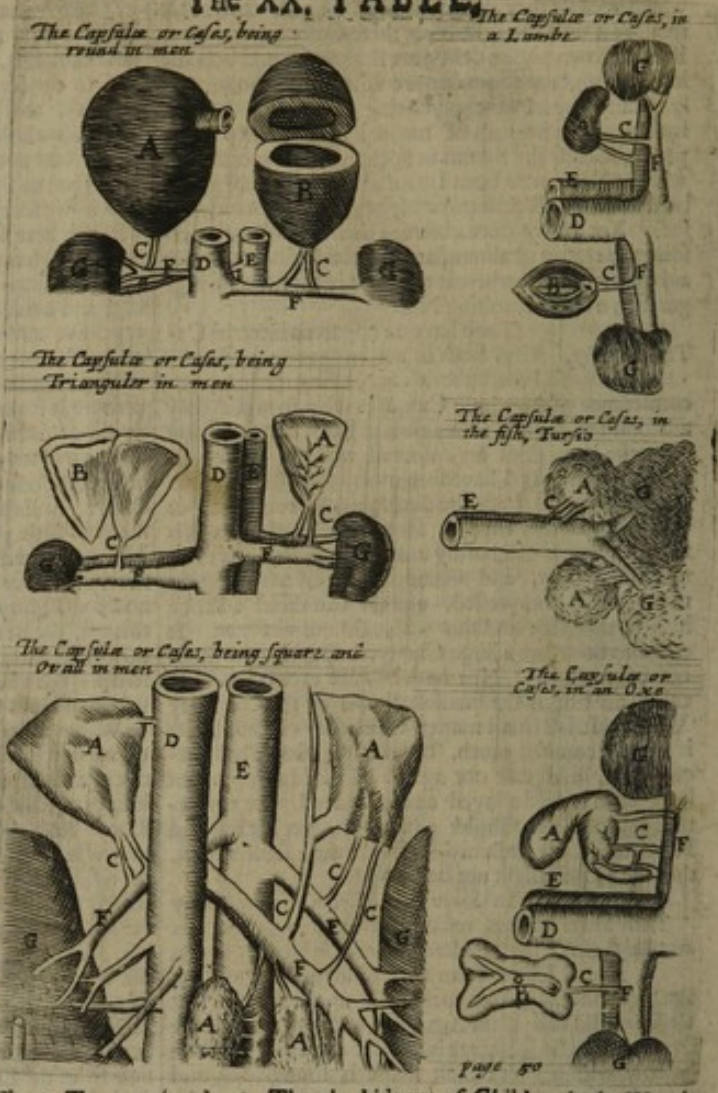
*How the Humor comes out of the Caſes into the Kidneys.*

## The FIGURES explained.

The Capsulæ Atrabiliariæ in Men and other Creatures, are here described. In all which FIGURES.

A. *Represents the Cases whole.*
B. *Shews them dissected, that the internal Cavities may be seen, which are of various Forms.*
C. *Points out their Veins and Arteries, arising from the Aorta and Cava, and from the Emulgents.*
D. *Is the Vena cava.*
E. *Is the Arteria Aorta.*
F. *The Vessels on both sides, called Emulgents.*
G. *The Kidneys cropped off.*

## The XX. TABLE.




smallest Vessels doth frequently vary: or if it must be Religiously observed, we must here conceive a Reverberation of the Kidneys; for the Blood flowing back out of the Kidneys through the Emulgent Veins up to the *Cava*, because it discharged only Whey and no thicker Juyce in the kidneys, it insinuates it self by the Vein next the Capsula, and coming back out of the Capsula by the little Arteries, with the Emulgent Arteries it goes again to the kidneys, and from thence is purged by urin. He that can give the best Conjecture, let him be counted the best Prophet. *Spigelius* whom *Laurenbergius* of *Rostock*, does faithfully imitate, has assigned other uses to these Capsulæ. 1 To fill the empty space between the Kidneys and the Midriff. 2. To prop up the Stomach, in that place which is above the emulgent Veins and Arteries. But I answer, 1. Nature makes, nor does nothing in vain or inconsiderately, much less doth she appoint a noble animated Part, only to fill a space, which she might have filled by making the kidney a little bigger. 2. These props would have been too weak by reason of their smalness. Nor should this use belong to the Stomach alone, but to other neighbouring Parts. *Riolanus* writes that they have no use in grown persons, but that after the Child is born they become useless, and therefore we must seek for their use in the Child in the Womb, when it is great, whose kidneys being void of Fat, the Juyce ordained to breed kidney-fat, is received into these Cases. But, 1. Their Cavity, Veins, Arteries, Humors, &c. will not allow us to say they are withered up in grown persons. 2. The use of the Navil-vessels ceases, because the Child is no longer to be tied to its Mother, nor to draw its nutriment from her. And that these Cases or *Capsulæ* are serviceable to grown persons, was proved before, for otherwise their Veins, Arteries, &c. would be to no end. 3. That the kidneys of Children in the Womb should be alwaies void of Fat, I have found to be false. 4. The kidney-fat is never made of that wheyish black Juyce, and hardly any man ever saw an oylie Juyce in these Capsulæ.

*Their use according to* Spigelius & Laurenbergius.

*Whether they have any use in grown persons.*

## Chap. XIX. *Of the Ureters, or Urin-channels.*

THe *Ureters* or *Urin-carryers*, are round-long Vessels or Channels, arising out of the Kidneys, planted into the Bladder, into which they carry the Urin from the Kidneys. *The Ureters.*

The Ureters are commonly two in *Number*, on each side one, sometimes two, & sometimes more, yet al growing into one before their Insertion, as also *Carolus Stephanus* observed in a certain Body. But the far renowned *Riolanus*, in a body infected with the venereal Pox, saw two Ureters on either side, inserted into the bladder at divers places, the one towards the neck, the other in the *Their Number.*

the bottom thereof. *Salomon Albertus* obſerved three on the right ſide, and but one on the left. I have frequently obſerved the like difference, as among other things I ſhew in my *Rare Anatomical Hiſtories*.

*Their Situation.* *Their Situation.* They run through many parts in their beginning, middle, and end. Their beginning is in the kidneys themſelves, what ever *Hofman*, *Riolanus*, *Laurenberg*, and *Plempius* ſay to the contrary; in which they riſe like Roots out of the Earth, and as a Vein out of the Liver. Nor does their ſimilitude with the Bladder move me; becauſe, 1. The Nature of the Ureters is peculiar and diſtinct from them both. 2. They are not much unlike the belly of the kidneys. 3. All Parts do carry with them the nature and colour of their Original, as we ſee in the Aorta and the Cava. Nor does their cleaving faſt to the Bladder infer any thing, ſeeing the connexion is not greater there then in the kidneys, being conveniently ſeparable, between the

*The Original of the Ureters.* Membrane of the Bladder and the Muſcle. And therefore this *Original* is in the kidneys, out of nine or ten little Pipes or Channels, to each of which the Caruncles aforeſaid are applied, though the Caruncles may be alſo applied to their middle part being bored through. Now thoſe Pipes go into fewer and greater branches, commonly into three, diſtributed into the upper, middle, and lower Region of the kidney. Theſe grow afterwards into one large Cavi-

*Their Middle.* ty which goes out of the flat ſide of the kidney. The middle part, is the whole long-round Pipe or Channel, reſting upon the Muſcles of the Loins, between two Membranes of the Peritonæum, with which

*Their Connexion.* The Ureters *are faſtned*; above to the kidneys, below to the Bladder, with the inner ſubſtance whereof they make one continued Body, ſo that they cannot be

*Their End.* pluckt away without breaking. Their *End* is, where they are implanted, being carried obliquely a fingers breadth, between the proper Membrane of the Bladder, and its circumvolved Muſcle, not far from the Neck of the

*Why the Urin cannot go out into the Emulgents.* Bladder, in its hinder part. And beſides the oblique Inſertion of the Ureters (which cannot at al, or very highly hinder the regreſs of the wheyiſh Humor into the Ureters, becauſe it is broad) two little Membranes are placed in the Implantation, like the Valves in bellows, ſhutting up the paſſage of the Ureters, ſo that the Urin cannot go back. Hence it is, that the Bladder being blown up, will not admit ſo much as any wind. *Laurentius*, *Riolanus*, and *Plempius* deny theſe Valves, contrary to all other Anatomiſts. But though the paſſage be crooked, yet is it open enough. The Gut Colon is not a little wreathed, and the Ileon more then that, and yet they have a Valve affixed. Yea they are themſelves forced to confeſs, that the two Membranes clapt together, do exactly ſhut up the paſſage of the Ureters, and what hinders but that they may be termed Valves.

*Their Magnitude.* As for their *Magnitude*. They are long-round Veſſels, thick and hollow, as big as ſtraws. But in Diſſections of perſons troubled with the Stone, we have often ſeen their Cavity ſo wide as to admit two fingers, yea and as big as the Guts.

*Figure.* As to there *Figure*, they are round Veſſels like Water-pipes, a little crooked like the letter, S.

They have a double *Membrane*. The one common from the Peritonæum for ſtrength ſake, the other proper, like the inner ſubſtance of the Bladder, and continued therewith, white (whence ſome and *Celſus* among the reſt call them the white Veins) bloodles, nervous, thick, ſtrong, futniſhed with ſtraight and crooked Fibres, that they may be ſtretched. *Membranes.*

They receive ſmall *Veins* and *Arteries* from the neighbouring Parts. *Veſſels.*

They have *Nerves* from the ſixt pare, and the Marrow of the Loins. Whence they have an exquiſite ſenſe, and are pained when ſtones paſs through them, which ſenſe of pain is encreaſed, by the diſtention of theſe membranous Bodies, cauſed by great ſtones.

*Uſe.* Their *Uſe* is, that through them as Conduit-pipes, the Urin ſeparated from the Blood by the kidneys, may be carried into the Bladder; and ſomtimes Gravel and Stones, Worms, Pins, Hairs, Quittor, Blood, &c. Now the Urin is carried by a manifeſt Paſſage formerly explained into the bladder, which Paſſage, becauſe *Aſclepiades* was ignorant of, he would have the Urin carried into the bladder, after a blind manner, as if it were firſt reſolved into a vapor, and did ſo ſweat through, and afterward became an humor as before: Which tranſudation *Paracelſus* likewiſe held.

*The Error of Aſclepiades and Paracelſus.*

# Chap. XX. *Of the Piſs-bladder*

*The Situation of the Piſs-bladder.* THis Bladder is *ſeated* in the loweſt part of the Belly, between two Coats of the Peritonæum, in a Cavity faſhioned by the *Os ſacrum*, the Hip and Share-bones (as it were in a little belly of its own, ſeparate from the Paunch) in men above the *Inteſtinum rectum* or Arſe-gut; in women between the Neck of the Womb, and the *Os pubis*, and the Share-bone.

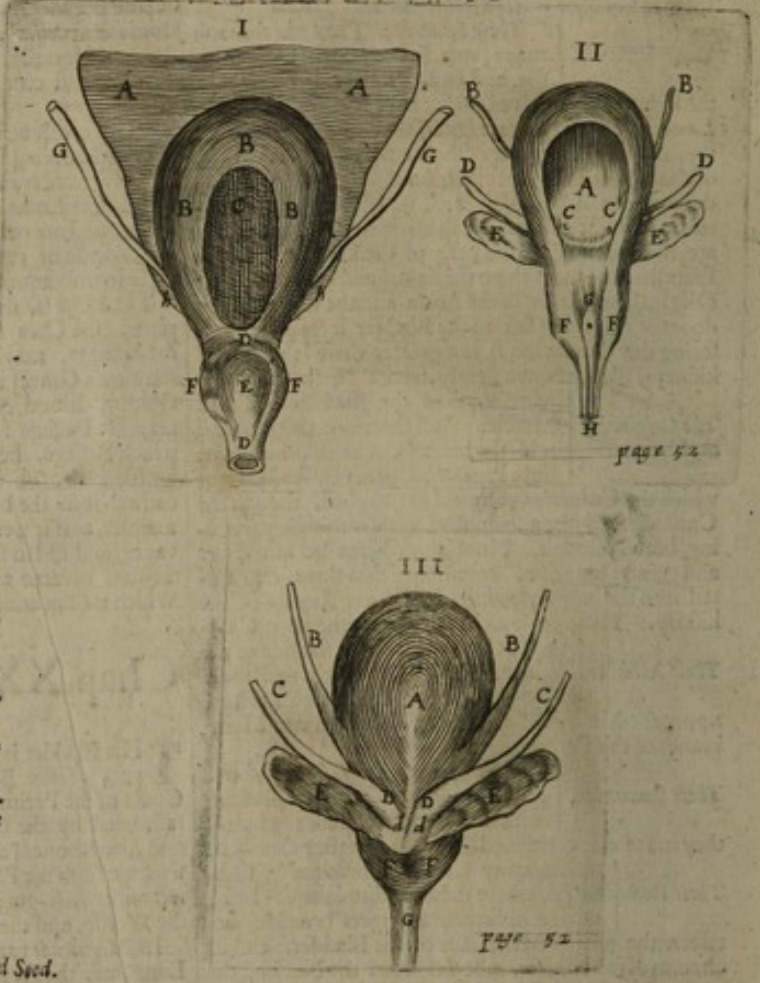
*Its Magnitude.* Its *Magnitude* varies, for the greater the Lungs are, the greater is the bladder, ſo that thoſe Live-wights which have no Lungs, have no bladder; and according as it is variouſly diſtended. For ſomtimes being full, it does ſo ſtrout in the belly, that it may be felt by the hand, and ſomtimes being empty, it is in Diſſections hardly diſcerned at firſt, by reaſon of its ſmallneſs, being no bigger then a large Pear.

*Its Figure.* Its *Figure* is long-round and globous, that it may hold the more: And it hath within one Cavity, ſeldom two, diſtinguiſhed by a Membrane as a partition wall. Such were found in a Maid of thirty five years old, by *Voltherus Coiter*, and *Caſparus Bauhinus*, and *Raphael Thorius*, and *Brovardus*, have deſcribed unto us the like which they found in the body of the great *Caſaubon*, the one of which being the left and præternatural, had a paſſage into the right by a round hole, which would admit the tops of four fingers, being full of the urin, which at ſet times, and its uſual endeavor, it voided by the right Cavity, which was ſix times as great as it, being continued thereunto, with as many Membranes thick, and common to the reſt of the greater bladder. This double Cavity in theſe and the like, is not formed of the dilatation of the Ureter, within the foldings of the bladder, which may nevertheleſs often happen, but in *Caſaubon* each Ureter did end in the bladder, and that it was originally ſo, the ſaid perſons demonſtrate. It being the pleaſure of nature

## The FIGURES Explained,

This TABLE expreſſes the Coats of the Bladder, as alſo the Seed-bladders ſeated in the Hinder-part thereof.

## The XXI. TABLE.




### FIG. I.

AA. *The common Coat of the Bladder.*
BBB. *Its middle Coat, furniſhed with muſculous Fibres.*
C. *Its inmoſt wrinkled Coat.*
DD. *The Neck of the Bladder.*
E. *The Sphincter Muſcle of the Bladder.*
FF. *The Kernels called* Proſtatæ.
GG. *A Portion of the Ureters.*
hh. *Their Inſertion between the two Coats of the Bladder.*

### FIG. II.

A. *The inner Coat of the Bladder being opened.*
BB. *Part of the* Ureters.
CC. *The Orifices of the* Ureters *widened in the Bladder.*
DD. *A Portion of the Vaſa deferentia, or carrying Veſſels.*
EE. *The Seminal Bladders diſplaid.*
FF. *The Kernels called* Proſtatæ *divided.*
G. *An Hole going from the Bladders into the beginning of the Piſs-pipe, furniſht with a Valve.*
H. *The common Paſſage of Piſs and Seed.*

### FIG. III.

A. *The Hinder ſide of the Bladder, with its External Coat taken off.*
BB. *The* Ureters.
CC. *A Portion of the Veſſels which carry away the Seed.*
DD. *The Seed-caſes, or Capſulæ Seminales.*
dd. *Their End.*
EE. *The Seed-bladders expreſſing divers Cells.*
FF. *The Kernels called* Proſtatæ.
G. *The Piſs-pipe.*

---

ture, that as his mind was above that of other Mortals, ſo the unuſual ſtructure of his body, ſhould afford like admiration to Poſterity. From the bottom, it is by little and little ſtraitned into a narrow neck, whence ariſe *two parts* of the Bladder, The *Bottom* and the *Neck*.

*Its Connexion.* The *Bottom* is faſtned to the Peritonæum, alſo to the Navil, by an intermediate Ligament, called *Urachus*, and the two Navil-arteries dried up, leaſt when a man walks upright, the bottom ſhould reſt upon the Neck. Hence is the Sympathy between the neck of the bladder and the Navil. The neck of the bladder is faſtned in Women to the Neck of the Womb, and the neighboring Hip-bones; in Men to the *Rectum Inteſtinum*.

*Its Subſtance.* Its *Subſtance* is partly membranous for ſtrengths ſake, and becauſe of extenſion, and wrinkling together, and partly fleſhy, becauſe of motion. For it hath two Membranes, and one Muſcle infolding the whole bladder, which all other Anatomiſts except *Aquapendent*, do make to be a third Membrane, and not a Muſcle.

*Membranes.* The *firſt Membrane* is outmoſt and common, from the Peritonæum, ſtrong and thick.

The *other* is inmoſt, and proper, thin, of exquiſite ſenſe, interwoven with all kind of Fibres, that it may admit of much diſtention and contraction [wherein there are very many wrinkles, in perſons troubled with the ſtone, and little cavities are engraven which hold ſtones, being cauſed through long want of diſtention] And it is covered with a fleſhy Cruſt, or wrinkled Coat as it were, made of the Excrements of the third Digeſtion, leaſt the innermoſt Coat ſhould be

*The Cruſt of the Bladder.*

fretted

stretted by the sharpness of the Urine.

That which is in the middle, betwixt this proper and the outmost Coat, is by others called the second proper Membrane, which nevertheless they grant to be thick, and furnished with fleshy Fibres.

*The expulsive Muscle of the Bladder.*

But it is rather a *Muscle* encompassing the whole Bladder: because it hath Fibres visibly fleshy, inserted into the beginning of the bladder: So that, as the circular Muscle called Sphincter, does cloze the bladder, that our water may not pass from us against our wills, so this Muscle does help the voidance of our water, whilest by contracting it self, it squeezes the bladder. And this is, indeed, the Opinion of my Master *Aquapendent*; the truth whereof *Walæus* was wont thus to prove in the Dissection of live Dogs: having cut off all the Muscles of the Abdomen, he makes a small piercing wound into the bladder, out of which wound or hole, the urin spins out as far, as naturally it does from the Yard: yet I shal not refuse to grant thus much to other Authors: Viz. that the Muscles of the Abdomen or Belly, do also help forward the Expulsion of Urin. It makes nothing against us, that the stomach, and Guts, and Womb, have the like fleshy membrane; for they also did need such an one, that they might more easily be widened and contracted. Hence, though the Membrane of the Bladder be more fleshy, yet in a large sense, the Membrane of these other parts may likewise be termed musculous. But the condition of Spirituous blood, forcibly issuing forth, and of a dull and lazie urin are different. Moreover, in the Veins, the precedent blood is forced on by that which follows, according to the Laws of Circulation, and the inbred Faculty.

*Its Holes.*

The Bladder hath three *Holes*: Two a little before the Neck, where the Ureters are inserted, of which before, the third is in the Neck, to let out the Urin.

*Its Neck.*

Now the Neck of the Bladder, is its narrower part, through which the Urin is voided. In *Men* this Neck is more *long-round*, *narrow*, and a little writhen, because being placed under the bodies which compose the Yard, it is carried upwards, under the Share-bones, from the Fundament to the Original of the Yard: To which in the hinder part two Kernels are adjoyned, called the *Prostatæ*. In *Women* the *Neck of the Bladder* is *short and broad*, stretched forthright downwards, and implanted above into the Neck of their Womb. In both Sexes the Neck is fleshy (which therefore heals, being wounded, whereas wounds in other parts of the bladder are deadly) interwoven with very many Fibres, especially such as run athwart, which purse up the Neck of the bladder, that

*The Sphincter Muscle.*

our water may not pass from us against our wills, and this orbicular Muscle is therefore called the *Sphincter*. Which if it be over cooled, or troubled with the Palsie, or any other Disease, the Patient cannot hold his water.

*Its Vessels.*

The Bladder hath *Veins*, termed *Venæ Hypogastricæ*, implanted into the sides of its Neck, which being variously distributed through the bladder, are mutually conjoyned one with another, and with the Arteries, and are penetrable by mutual holes from one to another, so that the blood may easily pass out of one branch into another, according to the Observation of *Sylvius*, that the nutritive blood brought in by the Arteries, may return by the Veins. Now the reason why the Bladder hath Veins, is, because it draws a meer Excrement, viz. the Urin, with which it cannot be nourished.

It hath *Arteries* from the Hypogastrica in Men, in Women from the Vessels which go into the Neck of the Womb.

It hath considerable *Nerves* from the sixt pare, and from the *Medulla* of *Os sacrum*.

*Its Use.*

Its *Use* is, to contain Urin, and to be the Bodies Chamber-pot; also Stones it contains and Gravel, and sometimes other things, as Hairs, Witness *Galen*, *Donatus*, *Hollerius*, *Skenkius*, *Tulpius*; Worms, by report of *Hollerius*, *Mundanella*, *Dodoneus*, of which there was a late Instance at *Hasnia*, Pinns, and which is most strange, Pot-herbs, according to the late Observation of *John van Horn*. And its next use is to expel the said Urin contained.

# Chap. XXI. *Of the Seed-præparatory Vessels in Men.*

HItherto we have handled the Organs of Nutrition; those of Procreation or Generation come next to be spoken of, which are different in Men from those in Women. In Men those which first present themselves, are

*The Spermatick Vessels and their Original.*

The *twofold Spermatick Vessels*, viz. the *two* Spermatick *Veins*, and the *two* Spermatick *Arteries*.

The *right hand Vein*, arises from the Trunk of *Vena cava*, a little below the Rise of the Emulgent: The *left* springs from the Emulgent, for otherwise it should go over the Aorta, and there would be danger of breaking, or rather least by the Pulse of the Artery, the motion of the blood in the Vein, should be in some sort stopped and hindered. Therefore it hath its Rise seldom from the *Cava*, and sometimes from both places.

Both the *Seminal Arteries* do arise from the *Arteria magna*, or great Artery: Almost two fingers breadths distance from the Emulgents.

*Their Magnitude.*

These Vessels are in Men greater then in Women; and the Arteries are larger then the Veins, because very much Heat, and Vital Spirit, and Arterial blood are requisite, for to make the Seed. Sometimes one Artery is wanting, and sometimes both, peradventure in such as cannot ingender.

*Their Passage.*

These Vessels are somwhat distant one from the other; they are obliquely *carried* above the Ureters to the Groyns, but in their progress, these Veins and Arteries are joyned by infinite Anastomoses (so that the Arteries are so coupled within the Coat of the Veins, as if they were but one Vessel) and they are knit together by a Membrane arising from the Peritonæum, and are afterwards carried to the beginning of the Stone, like the tendrils of a Vine, being so interwoven, that a curious eye cannot distinguish a Vein from an Artery.

*The Corpus varicosum.*

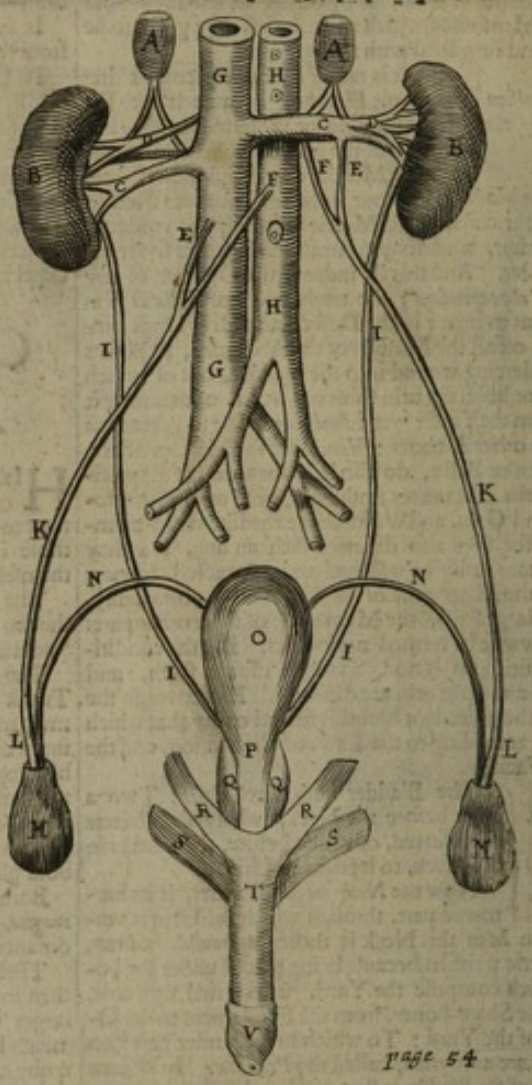
And this Intertexture of Veins and Arteries thus made, is by some called *Corpus varicosum*, pampiniform, Pyramidal, &c. which others do thus distinguish: Where the præparatory Vessels do from a narrow beginning, first widen themselves into a broader Basis, they are termed *Pyramidalia*. And when afterward before their entrance into the Stones, they become here and there crisped like the Tendrels of a Vine, they are called *Pampiniformia*. Howbeit, these Vessels do not pass through the Peritonæum, as in Dogs; but are carried between

## The FIGURE explained.

This TABLE comprehends the Kidneys, Bladder, Yard, and Seminary Veſſels, as they are wont to be ſhewed, taken out of the Body.

AA. *The Auxiliary Kidneys, or Deputy-kidneys.*
BB. *The true Kidneys.*
CC. *The Emulgent Veins.*
DD. *The Emulgent Arteries.*
EE. *The Spermatick Veins.*
FF. *The Spermatick Arteries.*
GG. *The trunk of Vena cava, divided into the Iliack Branches.*
HH. *The trunk of the great Artery, divided in like manner.*
IIII. *The Ureters.*
KK. *The Veſſels which prepare the Seed.*
LL. *The ſame Veſſels where they make the Vaſa pampiniformia.*
MM. *The Stones covered with all their Coats.*
NN. *The Veſſels which carry away the Seed going behind the Bladder.*
O. *The Piſs-bladder.*
P. *The Neck of the ſaid Bladder.*
QQ. *The Kernels called* Proſtatæ.
RR. *The Muſcles which raiſe the Yard.*
SS. *Two other Muſcles which widen the Piſs-pipe.*
T. *The Body of the Yard.*
V. *The Fore-skin covering the Nut of the Yard.*

## The XXII. TABLE.




page 54

its double Coat, with a ſmall Nerve, from the ſixt Conjugation, and the Muſcle Cremaſter.

Theſe Præparatory Veſſels of Generation, when they come unto the Stone, are not changed into the carrying Veſſels, as if one continued body with them as many imagine. But they pierce through the proper Coat of the Stone, and are ſpred through the ſubſtance thereof, and ſo obliterated.

*Their Uſe.* The *uſe of the Spermatick Arteries*, is to carry Blood and Spirit to the Stones, and in thoſe various interweavings to prepare the ſame, by a vertue which they fetch from the ſtones, by reaſon of its long ſtay and accurate Concoction, and ſifting in thoſe crooked Mazes, that it may becom Seed, and may nouriſh the Stones, for which nouriſhments ſake, in thoſe that are not yet of ripe age, theſe Arteries carry blood, before they can labor and make Seed. Now the uſe of the Spermatick Veins, cloſely interwoven with the Arteries about the Stones, and joyned to them by mutual Anaſtomoſes, is, to carry back that blood which remains ſuperfluous, after the Stones are nouriſhed, and the Seed made, unto the left Emulgent, or to the *Vena cava* immediately, on the right ſide, where the Spermatick Vein is commonly propagated from the *Cava*. Nor is there any need to fear, leaſt this return of the blood through the Veins ſhould withdraw matter from the Seed, or that the generating Spirit, ſhould return upwards from the ſtones. For by reaſon of the intricate mixture and intertexture of the Veſſels, no part goes back, ſave what the ſtones diſmiſs, as not neceſſary for themſelves, nor the whole Body. And therefore we do for the moſt part find the Arteries which bring the blood greater, and the Veins which carry it back leſſer, becauſe the Stones do not return ſo much as they receive. And that the Spirit is retained, the ſilent courſe of the blood through the Veins, is a token. Which blood, verily, is retained in the ſtones from flowing back, by the ſame power whereby it is retained in other Parts of the Body.

## CHAP. XXII.

## *Concerning the Stones.*

THe *Stones* or *Teſticles* ſo called, as witneſſing the courage and ſtrength of a man, | *The Stones.*

man, without which a man was no ſufficient witneſs in the Roman Court, are alſo called *Dedymoi* or *Gemelli* Twins, becauſe commonly

*Their Number.* They are in *Number* two. Seldom one great one and no more, as in *Sylla* and *Cotta*, Witneſs *Arrianus*; ſeldomer three, as in *Agathocles* the Tyrant of *Sicilie*, and ſome Families of *Italy* of the *Colci*, eſpecially at *Bergoma*, and others at *Paris*, according to the Obſervation of *Fernelius*, which is alſo proper to a renowned Family in *Germany*, ; and four, which *Ariſtotle* partly obſerved, and *Riolanus* the Father, ſo ſmall that they proved barren, becauſe either they do not ſufficiently digeſt the matter of Seed, or they do not eaſily receive the ſame, becauſe of the ſtraitneſs of their paſſages.

*Why placed without in Men?* They are *ſeated* externally in Men, without the Abdomen, under the Belly, at the Root of the Yard, in their Cod or Covering. 1. For Chaſtities ſake, if we believe *Ariſtotle*. For ſuch live-wights as have their Stones hid within their Body, are very lecherous, do often couple, and get many young ones. 2. That by reaſon of the longer paſſage, the greater ſtay of the Seminal matter, may cauſe the better preparation. 3. *Laurembergius* would have them nearer that external place wherein they were to generate, viz. the Wom's. But that nearneſs, doubtleſs, helps nothing to Generation, though the nearneſs of the Yard does: Nor do we find this obſerved in many Animals which generate out of themſelves.

That the Stones have lain hid in the Cavity of the Abdomen, until Puberty or Ripeneſs of Age fit for Generation, *Martinus Rolandus* proves in two Hiſtories, *Pareus* in one, and *Riolanus* in a ſtory not unlike. In which kind of perſons, if the Yard ſhould alſo lie hid, we ſhould ever and anon have an appearing change of Sexes.

The *Epididymides* reſt athwart upon the Stones, and compaſs them as it were, being a kind of little Stones, oblong, round, white, and wreathed, but at both ends, ſomwhat ſharp, of which ſee the following Chapter.

*Their Greatneſs.* Their *Magnitude* in men does commonly anſwer that of a ſmall Hens Eg. And in men the Stones are greater then in women.

*Their Figure.* The *Figure* of the Stones is Oval. Which Figure varies ſomtimes, by reaſon of the neighboring Veſſels more or leſs turgent: And therefore ſome ſay the *right* Teſticle is more full vein'd, and it is thought to be more hot, and have ſeed better digeſted. Whence *Hippocrates* calls it the *Boy-getter*, becauſe it receives more pure and hot blood and Spirits out of the great Veſſel, viz. the great Artery. The *left* Stone is thought to contain *colder Seed*, more whevish and and weak, becauſe for the moſt part, the matter is beleived to be brought from the Emulgent, and therefore *Hippocrates* cals this Stone the Girl-getter. Whence that common Saying, Wenches are begot by the left Stone in the left ſide of the Womb; Boys by the right Stone in the right ſide. And *Hippocrates* ſaies, *there is in a man as well as in a woman both male and female Seed*, that is to ſay, hotter and colder. But I am not of Opinion, that wenches are alwaies begotten by the left Stone, and that it receives a colder ſort of Seed, for, 1. There are ever and anon *Virago's* or manly Women, which exceed Men in ſtrength and courage. 2. Blood is communicated from the great Artery, as well to the left Stone as to the right. 3. The *Arteria Spermatica* is oftner wanting on the right ſide then on the left. But the Generation of the frailer Sex, depends not ſo much upon the coldneſs of the left Teſticle, as upon the cold Conſtitution of both the Stones, or rather of the whole body, which adminiſters Matter for the Seed. Howbeit the left parts of the body are generally ſaid to be colder then the right.

*Whether the left Stone be colder then the right.*

Moreover the right Stone is fuller of Seed, doth ſwel more, and hath a greater Vein and Artery, ſo that Nature ſeems to deſign the Generation of Fœmales more then of Males. It was therefore ill ſaid of *Ariſtotle*, that Nature of her ſelf did alwaies intend the Generation of Males, as being moſt perfect, and that a Fœmale is ingendred, when Nature being hindered, could not ingender a Male, ſo that a Woman is in his account a kind of Monſter in Nature. Howbeit Nature ſeems more ſollicitous for the Generation of Women then of Men, for the Cauſes aforeſaid, nor does Nature alwaies regard that which is beſt or moſt perfect, but that which is moſt neceſſary, as a woman is: For many of them are but enough for one man. For women when they are big with Child, are uſeleſs to a man; alſo they are ſhort lived, nor can they bear ſo long, as a man can beget. But of this, I have diſcourſed more fully, *in my 12. Anatomical Controverſie de partibus.*

*The Error of* Ariſtotle.

*Whether Nature alwaies intends to beget Boys.*

*Their Coats.* The Teſticles have *Coats* and Coverings, ſome *proper*, others *common*.

*Common.* They have *two Coats common* to them and other parts, to defend them from external injuries.

*The Cod.* The *firſt* is formed of a thinner skin and ſcarf-skin, then is to be found in other parts of the Body, and is called *Crotum* or *Scortum*, hanging out like a purſe or bag, and ſubject to the touch. *Tis ſoft and wrinkled*, void of Fat, that it might be more eaſily extended and wrinkled together: becauſe the oylie matter which ſhould make Fat, goes into the Stones to make Seed. In the lower part it hath a line running out according to the length thereof, which divides it into a right and left part, and is called a *ſuture* or ſeam,

*Why void of Fat.*

The *ſecond* Coat conſiſts of a fleſhy Pannicle, which is alſo thinner then is found in other places, full of Veins and Arteries, and called *dartos*. Which Covering is by others comprehended under the term Scrotum.

*Proper.* The *proper* Coat or Coverings, which on either ſide do cloath each Stone are *three*.

The *firſt* proper Coat is called *Vaginalis* the ſcabberd Coat, and by ſome *Helicoeides*, by reaſon of its ſhape, which is thin, but yet ſtrong, full of Veins, ariſing from the proceſſes of the Peritonæum. It cleavs to the Dartos, by many membranous Fibres, which others have reckoned for a peculiar Coat. Whence it is externally rough, internally ſmooth.

The *ſecond* is termed *Erythroeides* the *red* Coat, being furniſhed with ſome fleſhy Fibres, bred out of the Cremaſter, and inwardly ſpred over the former. *Rufus* names this in the firſt place, and *Riolanus* and *Veſlingus* following him, account it the firſt Coat, becauſe it compaſſes the former, and is propagated from the Cremaſter.

The *third* laſt and loweſt, immediately encompaſſing the ſubſtance of the Stone, and is as it were binding the ſame, is termed *Albuginea*, and by ſome *Nervea*, becauſe

## The Explication of the FIGURES.

The Coats of the Stones, their Substance, and Vessels are propounded in this TABLE.

### FIG. I.

AA. *The Skin of the Cod separated.*
BBB. *The fleshy Membrane which is here called* Dartos.
CC. *The first Coat of the Stones called* Elythroeides.
DD. *The Muscle Cremaster.*
E. *The second Coat of the Stones, which the Author calls* Erythroides.
FF. *The Coat of the Stones called* Albuginea.
G. *The kernelly Substance of the Stone.*
H. *The Pyramidal or Pampiniform Vessel.*
II *Epididymis.*
DD. *The Parastates variciformis.*

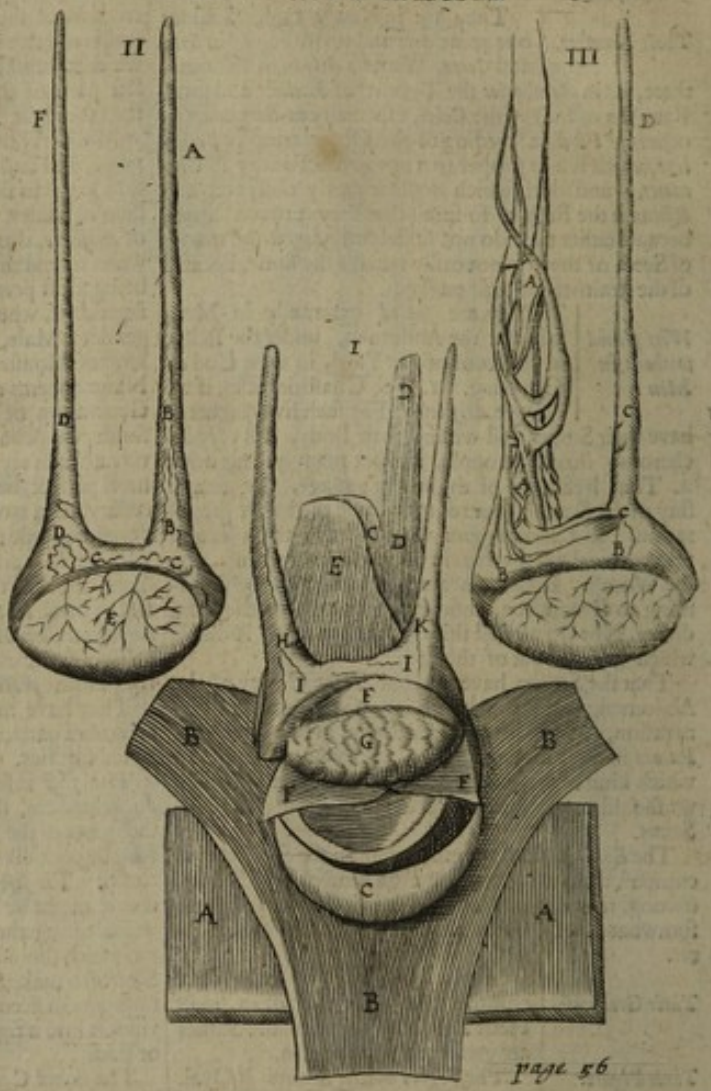
### FIG. II.

A. *A Portion of the preparatory Vessels.*
BB. *The Pyramidal Vessel.*
CC. *Epididymis.*
DD. *Parastates variciformis.*
E. *The Stone covered with its proper Membrane.*
F. *A Portion of the Vas deferens.*

### FIG. III.

AA. *The Veins and Arteries in the Pyramidal Vessel laid open.*
B. *The Epididymis.*
CC. *The Parastates variciformis.*
D. *The Vas deferens.*

## The XXIII. TABLE.




page 56

because it is white, thick, and strong, arising from the Coat of the Seminal Vessels.

*The Substance of the Stones.* The *Substance* of the Stones is glandulous, white, soft, loose and spongy, by reason of very many Vessels there dispersed and loose, though without Cavity, as the Liver also and the Spleen have no Cavities. They have *Vessels* of all kinds. *Veins* and *Arteries* from the Seminary Vessels: An indifferent large *Nerve* from the sixt pare; somtimes also they have two Nerves from the one and twentieth pare of the Spinal Marrow, conjoyned to the Seminal Vessels, carried with them through the production of the Peritonæum, and disseminated into the Tunicles.

*Vessels.*

*Muscles.* They have on each side one *Muscle*, arising from a strong Ligament, which is in the Share-bone, where the transverse Muscles of the Belly end, of which they seem to be Parts. They go along through the production of the Peritonæum, which they compass about well-near, and grow to the beginnings of the Stones. They are called *Cremasteres* or *Suspensores*, hangers or sustainers, for they hold up the Stones, that they may not too much draw down the Seminal Vessels. Also in the Carnal-conjunction, they draw back the Stones, that the Seed-channel being shortned, the Sperm may be sooner and easier conveigh'd into the Womb. In some persons these Muscles are capable of voluntary motion, who can draw up, and let down their Stones as they list: where these Muscles are doubtless stronger then ordinary, that they may not only hold the Stones suspended, but move them from place to place.

*The Efficient cause of the Seed.* The *Use* of the Stones is, by their Heat and inbred Faculty, to make seed. For the Efficient cause of Seed is the proper flesh or substance of the Stones, both in regard of their hot and moist temper of their specifick Property; since no flesh in the Body is found like that of the Stones. Now they turn the blood being prepared into Seed, which is requisite to preserve the Species of Mankind: And that which remains over and above, either goes back by the Spermatick Veins into the Heart, or turns to nourishment for the Stones.

*Without the Stones there is no Generation.*

Stones. Nor can Seed be ordinarily bred without the Stones, nor perfect Animals without them, for from them the Seed receives both its form and colour. That some have ingendred without Stones, though not according to the ordinary Course of Nature, *Smetius* in his Miscellanies, *Fontanus* in his Physica, *Cabrolius*, *Hofmannus de Generatione*, and others, do testifie. Now the place wherein the Seed is bred, is not any large Cavity in the Stone, but certain very small Vessels therein formed, covered with a very delicate thin Coat, as *Vesalius* rightly teaches. Now these following Authors after *Aristotle*, have taken away the faculty of Seed-making from the Stones, viz. *Fallopius*, *Cabrolius*, *Posthius*, *Casparus Hofmannus*, *Cæsar Cremoninus*, *Adrianus Spigelius*, *Regius*, and others, because the Matter of Seed does not go into the Stones, nor is there ever any Seed found in them. But they wil have them principally to be Receptacles for the wheyish Humor which flows in with the Blood; which they collect from their glandulous substance, and the largeness of the left Stone. But they are confuted by Eunuchs and gelt persons, whose Stones being cut out or bruised, they become unable to engender. Also Seed hath been frequently observed in the Stones. Witness *Dodonæus* in his 39. Observation touching a Spanish Soldier, *Hofman de Generatione* Chap. 18. *Carpus* and *Riolanus*. It is indeed not to be found in some Bodies, because it was not bred, by reason of some sickness, or Imprisonment, or upon Death the Spirits being dissipated, a watry Liquor appears instead thereof. Nor can the Seed come to the *Vasa deferentia* otherwise then by the Testicles, which begin at the Stones, as the præparatory Vessels end in them, by the Observation of very many Anatomists, and why the left Stone is greater then the right, another reason is alleadged by learned men.

*The Sympathy of the Stones with the whole Body,*

Also the *Stones* seems to give strength and courage to Mens bodies, as may be seen in gelded persons, who are changed well-near into Women, in their Habit of Body, Temperament, Manners, &c. And doubtless the stones do exceedingly sympathize with the upper Parts of the Body, especially with the Heart. For we see that cordial and cooling Epithems in fainting Fits and bleeding at the Nose, being applied to the Stones, do help as if they were applied to the very Heart and Part affected. The Cause hereof is hard to tell; *Jacobinus*, *Laurentius*, *Hofmannus*, conceive that it comes to pass by reason of Passions of the Mind, which are joyned with fleshly Lust. But Eunuchs also are lustful, for they are great Lovers of Women: And Eunuchs are often transported with anger and other Passions of the Mind, but they receive not never the more the Habit of Men. *Galen* seems to have been of Opinion, that a Spirit was bred in the Stones and diffused thence al the Body over. But glandulous Bodies of the number of which the Stones are, are unfit to engender an hot Spirit; nor are there any Passages about the Stones, for the distribution of that new Spirit, according to the Opinion of *Galen*. Nor is therefore the Opinion of *Mercatus* allowable, viz. that those Spirits are not indeed bred there; but that the Vital Spirits are collected in the Stones in great quantity, that from them they may return back into the whole Body; for those which are there collected, are collected to engender Seed. But the Opinion of *Thomas a Vega* does better please me, til I shall find a more probable, viz. that a Seminal Air is raised up in the Generation of Seed, which thus changes the whole Body. The flesh truly of ungelt Creatures, hath a rammish tast of the Seed, which the flesh of such as are gelt hath not. This Vapor or Air of the Seed is carried to the Heart, either by the inner Pores of the Body, or by the Veins which reconveigh to the Heart the superfluities of the generated Seed. *Helmont* imagines the Stones do act by a ruling power, at a distance, as the stomach does upon the Womb, the Womb upon the upper Parts, and that without any right waies or marks; which nevertheless an Anatomist seeks to find, if it be possible. *Vestingus* ingeniously makes the reason of the change of voice, temperament, strength, &c. in persons guelded, to be the oppression of their inbred Heat by plenty of Matter, which ought to turn to Seed. Now their Sympathy with the Heart, depends partly upon the Nerves, partly (for we hold the Circulation in the Stones) from the foresaid Veins returning back to the Heart, by which both the vertues of Cordials ascend, and of cooling Medicaments, even as we apply Cordials and Coolers to the Hands, with like success.

## Chap. XXIII. *Of the* Vasa deferentia, *the* Ejaculatoria, *the* Parastatæ, *Seminal Bladders, and the* Prostatæ.

WEE have propounded the Spermatick præparatory Vessels above, which end into the Stones, to which they carry Matter to make Seed.

Now there are other Vessels, which begin at the Stones, and end at the Root of the Yard, whither they carry and there squirt out the Seed, which hath been made in the Stones. And these are termed *Vasa deferentia*, or Vessels that carry away the Seed; and they are two in number, on each side one.

Now we divide these Vessels into the Beginning, Middle, and End.

*The Parastatæ.*

The *Beginning* are termed *Parastatæ*, as if you would say idle attenders upon the stones, ceremonious waiters, also *Corpora varicosa* or *varicæformia*, because they are twisted and wreathed, like those crooked black Veins called *Varices*. *Galen* in his Interpretation of hard words used by *Hippocrates* calls them *Epididymides*, because they rest upon the stones, which nevertheless others distinguish by a peculiar use, as that they prepare the seed; and the Parastatæ do add more perfection thereto: Others invert the Matter, and perswade themselves that the Parastatæ prepare the seed, and the Epididymides finish it, which Opinion of theirs they have received, I know not how well, from the ancient Physitians. And they are oblong Vessels, placed upon the stones, white, thick, and round, a little depressed, and solid, growing narrow by little and little.

*Names.*

*Their Substance.*

As for their *Substance*, tis of a middle nature betwixt that of the stones and that of the *Vasa deferentia*. For their substance is softer then the latter, and harder then the former, because they are glandulous within, and fungous; and externally membranous.

*Their Rise.*

As to their *Original*, the Opinion of *Spigelius* and other late Anatomists, does against all former Authority thus determine: viz. that

they arise by continuation from the Seminary Vessels, so that both the Præparatory Vessels, and the Parastatæ, and the Out-carrying Vessels, are but one continued Body, receiving divers Names according to its different Parts, and their respective Offices and Situations.

But *Walæus* conceives, that it is more suitable to what appears in Dissection, to say, that these Vessels do not arise from the Præparatory Vessels, but are rather mixed with them, fastned to, and opened into them: and that as he supposes, to the end that the blood forced in by the Præparatory Vessels, may deposite that Matter which it contains fit to breed seed, into the little branches of the *Vasa deferentia*. But the rest of the blood, which is unfit for Nutrition and Generation of Seed, is by other Anastomoses shed into the Veins, and by Circulation returns to the Heart.

Now they have their Original from the stones. by means of innumerable small Pipes or white Fibres. And there is no communion at all between the Vessel that carries away the Seed, and the Veins, and Arteries of the stones, which *Vesalius* conceives to be apparent in Dissections. Yet are they fastned to the inmost Coat of the stones, though they have a proper Coat of their own.

*Their Use.* The *Use* of the Parastatæ, is to perfect and finish the seed, by a power which they receive from the stones. Moreover, while the seed abides in them, it comes to pass that vehement and frequent Lust is not provoked.

The *Ejaculatory* or squirting Vessels, are simply termed the Middle, because they carry seed from the stones and the *Corpora varicosa*, to the seminal bladders: for they are seen to carry a whiteish Humor, yea and the Parastatæ are frequently found full of seed.

They have a *Substance* white and nervous; and their *Figure* is round and long: They have an obscure *Cavity*, because the seed by means of the spirits whereof it is full, does easily pass.

Their *Situation* is partly in the Cod, partly in the Cavity of the Belly, above the *Os pubis* or Share-bone. For they are carried upwards, and are knit to the Præparatory Vessels, by a thin Membrane, and so pass along to the Flanks and the Share-bone, which for that cause have a slight Cavity. And afterwards being turned back downwards, they are carried above the Ureters, and under the hinder part of the Bladder, above the *rectum Intestinum*, they are on each side widened at the Neck of the Bladder, where

Their *End* is, and these Vessels so widened do constitute

See Fig. III. Tab. XXI. The *seminary Bladders*, which are many in number like little Cells, and seem to make on each side one remarkable, great, and winding one, because one goes into another, which you cannot compare to any thing better then to a bunch of Grapes. The Cavities do neatly represent the Cells of a Pomegranate in order and figure. *Rondeletius* did first of al describe these Bladders, and after him *Fallopius*. These nervous Bladders are seated between the Ligaments of the Piss-bladder and the Arse-gut, by the sides of the deferent Vessels, a little before the said Vessels grow thick, and unite.

Their *Use* is, to contain the seed being wrought, and to reserve the same til time of Copulation, so that there may be seed sufficient to beget many Children. And

*Whether a Bull may ingender after he is gelt.* therefore that is no wouder which *Aristotle* relates of a Bull that engendred after his stones were cut off: though others attribute this effect to the Prostatæ, as *Archangelus* and *Columbus*. Now the seed may be contained in these Cells many months together, and in regard of the multitude of these little Bladders, seed may be voided in many Acts of Copulation; and all not spent at one Essay.

*Whether seed is contained in the Bladderkies.* And that seed is contained in these little Bladderkies, besides the Authority of *Fallopius*, *Platerus*, *Laurentius*, *Aquapendent*, and *Casserius*, it is manifest by this Experiment: If you squeez them, presently seed is forced into the Pipe of the Yard, just like Milk out of the Dug, or piss out of the Piss-bladder, &c. But if you press the Prostatæ with your finger, yet nothing comes away, unless you press the Bladders also. And that the seed does not continually distil and drop out of them, into Urinary passage, a little Caruncle hinders, which stops their hole. The perpetual seat of a virulent Gonorrhæa, hath been by the Observation of late Anatomists found to be in these Bladders, for upon Dissection there hath been found an evident Imposthumation in these parts. From the situation of these Bladders and of the stones, without the Cavity of the Abdomen, *Riolanus* would give a reason why men are not so cruelly infested with the filthy vapors of corrupt seed, as women are. But the Peritonæum does not hinder the evaporations of the seed, because the Veins do inwardly open upwards. Also *Virages* or manniſh women, are not troubled with the said vapors. The reason must therefore be sought in the quality of the seed, which being in men and manly women more benigne, does neither go to, nor infect the Heart.

*Whether in the Prostatæ?*

After the Constitution of the seminary Bladders these deferent Vessels are united into one smal passage which goes into the Prostatæ.

See Tab. XXII. Let. QQ. Now the *Prostatæ*, as if you would say the Waiters, are two Kernels, manifestly differing from the seed bladders, in use, form, situation, and magnitude, though *Hofman* think otherwise; their

*Situation* is at the Root of the Yard, above the Sphincter or Muscle of the Bladder, on each side, at the neck thereof. *Columbus* calls them *Prostatæ*, *Vesalius glandulosum corpus*, *Fallopius glandulosum assistens*, others call them the little stones, to difference them from the true stones. Before and behind they are flat, on the sides round.

They are commonly as *big* as a Walnut.

Their *Substance* is spongy, and yet harder and whiter then that of other Kernels, and they are covered with a thicker Membrane; all which is to hinder the oylie substance, of it self apt to run, from passing out. And because they are of exquisite sense, therefore they cause pleasure in Copulation. These Kernels are open by certain Pores into the Urethra or Piss-pipe, which is evidently apparent in such as have died of the Gonorrhæa, of which Gonorrhæa these Pores being dilated are many times the seat.

Their *Use* is to contain an oylie, slippery, and fat Humor, which is pressed forth when need requires, to daub the Urinary passage, to defend it from the acrimony of the seed or urin, and that it may not fall in through driness, but may remain slippery; because through it in Copulation, the said Humor does suddenly flow out of the seed.

This is that which *Galen* ment, when he said that they contained a certain Humor like seed, but much thinner, the use of which Humor, is to excite Lust,

and

and to cause Delight in Carnal Copulation.

*Woether the Prostatæ do make seed.*

Mean while, *Spigelius*, *Riolanus*, and others do conceive that they contain seed, which is there collected, and thence voided, having attained some further perfection, as *Vestingus* conceives. Others as *Laurentius*, conceive they do both; for he will have the Prostatæ both to thicken the seed, and to breed a thin humor, and excite titillation. But that they do not contain seed, their compression shews, which voides none, unless the Vesicles or seed-bladders be withal compressed. And seeing the seat of the Gonorrhæa is here, which we frequently observe to continue many years, without any remarkable Detriment to Health, it is unlikely that the seed flows from the Prostatæ. I saw a man at *Padua*, who was troubled thirty years with the Gonorrhæa, and hath it still, being otherwise in Health. The seed therefore is not contained in them, nor does it stay there, though it may pass through.

*The seat of the Gonorrhæa.*

*The Prostatæ do not help to make seed.*

Others do conceive, that they help to make the seed, yea that they and the bladders are the only seed-makers, as *Regius* endeavors to prove. Which if it were true, guelded persons might engender. Guelded persons do indeed send forth a moist matter resembling seed, and they are provoked to Venery, but they can get no Children. And if they have been observed at any time to engender, according to what is related of guelded Horses and Bulls; there was doubtless remaining in the seed-bladders, so much seed made by the stones, as might serve for one bout of Generation. But if they engendred more then once, doubtless one stone was left behind, when they were guelded.

# Chap. XXIV. *Of the Yard.*

*Its Names.*

THe Genital Member of a Man is commonly called in Latin *Penis a pendendo*, because it hangs, also *Virga* the Rod or Yard, *Colis*, &c. Many other Names are wont to be put upon it, which are better past over then mentioned. In English tis most usually termed the *Yard* or *Prick*. *Plato* in his Timæus compares it to a certain living Creature, because it hath an Appetite to Generation. Howbeit, it is indeed the Part and Instrument of a Live-wight, and the Faculty of Appetite is seated in the Brain.

*Situation.*

Tis *seated* at the Roots of *Os pubis*, that carnal Copulation might more conveniently be accomplished, and that it might be no impediment to other parts: it is placed in the middle, because only one in number. Yet there was once a man dissected at *Bononia* who had two Yards. Which also *Obsequens* relates of a Boy, among his Prodigies. Another named *Anna*, being lately a vagrant in *Italy*, had no Yard, but instead thereof a certain piece of spongy flesh under his Navil, which Nature had provided him to piss withal.

*Figure.*

Its *Figure* is round and long; but not exactly, because it is broader on the upper side, which they call the Back of the Yard.

*Magnitude.*

Its *Magnitude* consisting in thickness and length, does vary, both in the several sorts of Animals, and in the Individual Creatures of the same sort. *Particularly*, tis in Man so great as was necessary to propagate his species or kind: But proportionally shorter then in many Brutes, because Mankind couples after another manner then those beasts do. In particular Men, there is exceeding great variety. For it is for the most part greater then ordinary, 1. In little Men. 2. In such as abstain from carnal Embracements, if we beleive *Galen*. 3. If the Navil-strings be not tied close to the Navil in Infants; for otherwise, by reason of the Urachus or Piss-pipe, the Bladder and neighboring Parts, are drawn more upwards. Yet *Spigelius* is herein of a quite contrary mind. 4. In such as have large Noses. For the proportion of the Yard answers that of the Nose very much, if we will beleive Physiognomists. 5. In Block-heads and dull-pated Asses. Some Nations have this Member larger then ordinary, as the Æthiopians or Blackmores.

It consists of the Scarf-skin, Skin, fleshy Membrane, and a proper substance of its own.

*Why the Yard is void of Fat, the first Opinion.*

Laurentius *his Error.*

It is void of *Fat*, even in the fattest men. And it is a great question why there is no Fat found either in it or about it. Some, as *Laurentius*, think it is because fat through its softness would hinder its erection: But the Yard will stand, as long as the Bodies thereof are blown up. Others make the Cause to be least the weight thereof should do hurt, and that the Yard might not grow too great. But if there were a little Fat, it would add nothing to the weight, nor would it enlarge the Yard over much. The truer Cause therefore is this, that there is therefore no Fat, that its sense might not be dulled, and the pleasure of Copulation abated, when the Fat should melt by rubbing the Yard.

*Its Substance.*

*The four Parts of the Yard.*

Its proper *Substance* is not boney as it is in a Dog, a Wolf, a Fox, a Whale, &c. but peculiar and proper to it self, such as is no where to be found in any other Part of the Body. Now there are four proper Parts of the Yard, the Urethra or Piss-pipe, the Nut, and the two nervous Bodies.

*Urethra.*

The URETHRA or Piss-pipe, is a nervous Pipe or Channel, always of the same size, from the neck of the bladder (to which it is joyned, but does not arise therefrom, nor communicate therewith) like a long neck, to the End of the Yard; save where the Nut is joyned with the nervous Bodies. For there indeed it hath a superficial Cavern or Hollowness, in which an Ulcer and intollerable pain does sometimes happen; when some corrosive humor is there collected, by means of a Gonorrhæa, or some other occasion. It is exceedingly widened in persons troubled with the stone. *Alpinus* saw it so wide in *Ægypt*, that it would receive a large Hazel-nut. And therefore it is easily blown up, to draw out the stone.

In the beginning thereof are those Pores, through which we said before the seed stills forth. There is also a *little Membrane* or Caruncle like a Valve stretched before it, to keep the seed and urin from returning into the spermatick Vessels. It is eroded or fretted by sharp Humors, or by use of the Catheter, whence follows a perpetual Gonorrhæa. *Riolanus* observs that it is found in Boys, till the twentieth year of their Age, but I see no cause why it should not remain in their after Age, when the encrease of seed, makes it more necessary then formerly.

The Bodies of the Yard do embrace and touch this Urethra, and it is bowed back with them, and so reaches to the Nut, and so makes the figure of an S.

Moreover the Urethra hath a double *Membrane* and a substance also proper to it self. One

## The Explication of the FIGURES.

All the Parts of the Yard are represented in this TABLE.

### FIG. I

AA. *The inner Surface of the Urethra being dissected.*
B. *A Part of the Urethra which makes its way into the Nut.*
CC. *The Nut of the Yard.*
DD. *The two Nervous Bodies of the Yard.*

### FIG. II.

A. *The Membrane of the Nervous Body separated.*
B. *The blackish Pith of the said Body.*
C. *The Nut of the Yard made bare.*

### FIG. III.

AAA. *The inner Part of the Nervous Body, all the spongy Substance being taken out of it.*
B. *The Nerve which goes into the said Body.*
CCC. *The Artery of the said Body.*
DD. *The transparent Partition, by* Spigelius *so called.*

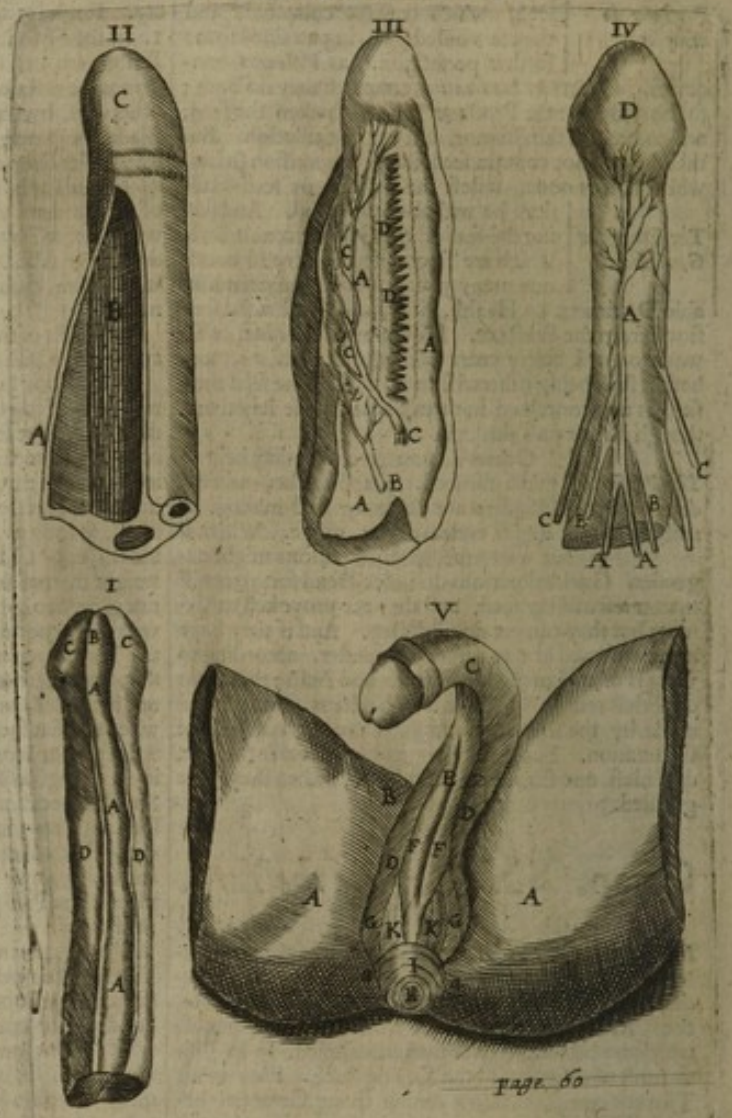
### FIG. IV.

AAA. *Veins running along the Back of the Yard.*
BB. *Arteries.*
CC. *The Nerves of the Yard.*
D. *The Nut of the Yard.*

### FIG. V. Shews the Muscles of the Yard in their places.

AA. *The Parts about the Buttocks.*
B. *The Region of the Share.*
C. *The Yard with its Skin flead off*
DD. *The two Nervous Bodies.*
E. *The Urethra or Pisse-pipe.*
FF. *Two Muscles which widen the Pisse-pipe.*
GG. *Two Muscles which raise the Yard.*
aa. *Their Beginning cut off from the Hip-bone.*
H. *The Fundament.*
I. *The Sphincter Muscle of the Fundament.*
KK. *Two Muscles which draw up the Arse-gut.*

## The XXIV. TABLE.




page. 60

One Membrane is internal and thin, of exquisite sense, as those can witness who are troubled with the stone. With which also the Nut is covered; and it is bred out of the thin Membrane, which cloaths the Nerves of the Yard. The other is external, more fleshy and furnished with transverse Nerves. The middle part of its proper substance, is loose, spongy, and black, that it may be distended together with the nervous Bodies.

The Use of the Urethra, is to be a common passage for the Urin, Seed, and oylie Humor.

*The Nut of the Yard.*

The *Nut* or Head of the Yard, is the outmost swelling part thereof, roundish or pointed, even and compassed with a Circle like a Crown.

It hath *Flesh* more sensible and solid then the rest of the Yard, covered with an exceeding thin Membrane.

It is soft and of exquisite sense, for Titillations sake. In some Men it is more sharp, in others more blunt.

It hath a Coat or Covering called the *Fore-skin*, or *Præputium a putando*, from cutting off, for the Jews and Turks cut it off, and therefore they are nick-nam'd *A-*

*pella*

*pelle* and *Recutiti*, skinleſs or skin-cut. In which Nations tis wonderful what *Veſtingus* told me himſelf ſaw, viz. that in young Boys it grows out ſo long and pointed, that it reſembles a tayl. *Hildanus* obſerved it in a certain perſon very great and fleſhy. At the lower end it is tied to the Nut by a Membrane or Band termed *Frænum* the Bridle, which is terminated in the hole of the Nut. Some will have it to be made up of the extremities of the Nerves. *Carolus Stephanus* thinks it is compoſed of a Combination of the Tendons of the Muſcles of the Yard, and a Nerve.

*The nervous Bodies.*

The *two nervous Bodies*, on each ſide one, do make up the remaining and greateſt part of the Yard: the whole ſubſtance whereof is like a moſt thick ſpungy Artery, ſtuffed with fleſh.

For the ſubſtance thereof is twofold, the firſt external, compact, hard, and nervous; the other internal, ſpungy, thin, and hollow, and of a dark-red colour enclining to black; and therefore *Veſalius* ſaies tis filled with a great deal of black Blood, like a Pudding.

*Whence the hardneſs and Erection of the Yard proceeds.*

Now this ſubſtance is rare and pory, that it may be filled with Spirit, and Venal and Arterial Blood; by which means the nervous ſubſtance thereof is the more ſtretched, and the Spirits are not ſoon diſſipated, whence proceeds the hardneſs and ſtiffneſs of the Yard, not ſo much for Copulations ſake, as that the man might ſquirt his ſeed right out as far as might be, even to the Orifice of the Womb, after the Yard hath been moved in the female Privity.

Theſe two Bodies have their Original from the lower parts of the Hip-bones, as from a firm and ſtable Foundation, to which they are ſtrongly tied with two Ligaments; where in their Riſe they keep ſome diſtance, that place may be allowed to the Urethra; and then they are carried upwards, and grow into one about the middle of the Share-bone (like the two horns of the letter y) but ſo as they do not both remain perfect, but they looſe near a third part of their nervous ſubſtance. Howbeit they remain diſtinct, by the coming between of ſome membranous partition (which conſiſts not of a double Membrane, as at the Riſe of the Bodies, but of one ſingle one) very thin and tranſparent, ſtrengthned with nervous and ſtrong tranſverſe fibres; which fibres are ranked and ordered like a Weavers Comb.

All kind of *Veſſels* enter into the Yard, *Nerves*, *Veins*, and *Arteries*. 1. *External* ones running in the Skin, very frequent, from the *Pudenda*, and alſo internal ones ſpred through its Body. They are therefore miſtaken, that think the Yard is deſtitute of Veins. Its internal *Arteries* are two remarkable ones, ariſing from the Hypogaſtrica, which are inſerted at the beginning of the growing together of the Bodies, and are ſpred up and down, according to the length of the Yard. But in the middle, where the Septum or partition is thinneſt, they ſend branches up and down, through the ſpaces of the Fibres, the right Artery into the left Body, and the left Artery into the right Body, carrying Spirit and Blood, to blow up, erect, and nouriſh the Yard. The Nerves alſo are diſſeminated from the Marrow of *Os ſacrum*, through the Yard, as well the external and Skin-nerves, as the internal, and thoſe remarkable ones, which aſcend through the middle of the forked diviſion, and are thence diſſeminated into the Muſcles, the whole Body, and the Nut; that there might be an exquiſite ſenſe and delectation.

*The Muſcles of the Yard.*

Alſo the Yard hath two pare of *Muſcles*.

The *firſt pare* ſhort and thick, are the Yard Erectors; this pare ariſes nervous, under the beginning of the Yard, from an Appendix of the Hip, and growing fleſhy, it is carried to the bodies of the Yard, into which it is inſerted, not far from their Original.

Their *Uſe* is to raiſe and keep the Yard up in Copulation.

The *ſecond Pare which widens the Urethra* is longer, but thinner or leaner. Theſe two fleſhy Muſcles ariſe from the Sphincter of the Fundament, following the length of the Yard: then they are carried beneath, and inſerted into the ſides of the Urethra, about the middle thereof.

Its *Uſe* is to widen the lower part of the Piſs-pipe, both in piſſing, and eſpecially in Copulation, when the bodies of the Yard are full, that the Egreſs of the Seed may not be hindred. And in theſe Muſcles is the place where Surgeons do commonly take out ſtones. The Line of the Cod being drawn to one ſide, according to their length, and not according to their breadth as *Marianus ſanctus* notes againſt the Ancients, an hollow Catheter being thruſt into the Ureter, upon which, the Inciſion is to be made, which manner of cutting *Aquapendent* deſcribes and approves of.

*Copulation.*

The *Uſe* of the Yard is for Copulation: which a man cannot rightly perform without the Erection of his Yard, and the ſquirting out of the Seed which follows thereupon. For the man ſquirts his Seed right out into the Mouth of the Womb, where being afterward joyned with the womans Seed, an drawn in, and retained by the Womb, Conception is ſaid to be made.

*Conception.*

A ſecondary *Uſe* thereof is to void urin, yet was it not therefore made, ſeeing women do make water without it. By reaſon of this twofold uſe of the yard, the Arabians make two paſſages, as *Veſalius* tells us, who obſerved ſuch a like Conformation in a certain perſon.

In ſome the Nut of their Yard is not bored through in the fore part where it ought to be, but in the lower part, as *Hofman* hath noted out of *Ariſtotle* and *Paulus*, who cannot make water if their Yard do not ſtand, or when they ſit. Others, and that more frequently, have it imperforated in the upper part. They are both unapt for Generation. Somtimes the Yard hath no paſſage at all as *Julius Obſequens* hath obſerved.

## Chap. XXV. *Of the Parts ſerving for Generation in Women, and firſt of the Spermatick Præparatory Veſſels.*

*The Genitals in Women quite different from thoſe in men.*

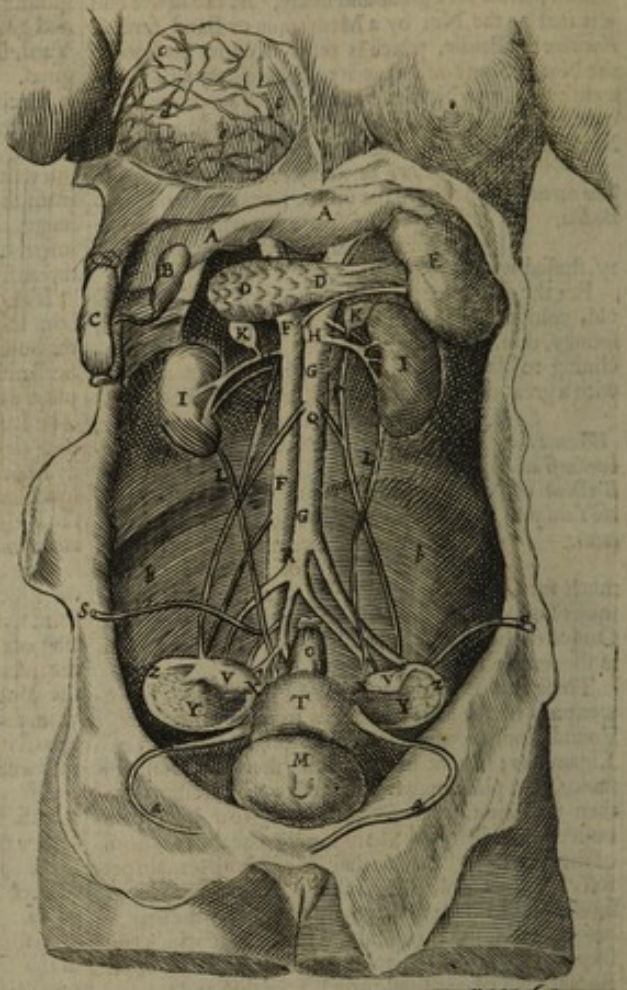
THe Parts ſerving for Generation in Women, do ſome of them agree after a ſort with thoſe in Men, as the ſpermatick Veſſels, the Stones, and the *Vaſa deferentia*, or Veſſels that carry away the Seed. Others are wholly different, as the Womb with its Bottom, Orifice, and Neck, the Hymen, the Myrtle-ſhap'd Caruncles, the Vulva with its Wings, the Clitoris, and the little Hillocks.

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

The Parts which in Women serve for Generation are represented in this TABLE, in their Natural Order and Situation; also the internal Structure of a Womans Dug, is represented in the same TABLE.

..... *The Liver in its proper Situation.*
B. *The Gall-bladder with the Porus bilarius or Gall-passage.*
C. *A Part of the Gut Duodenum.*
DD. *The Pancreas or Sweet-bread in its proper Situation, through which Vessels go into the Spleen.*
E. *The Body of the Spleen.*
FF. *The descendent Trunk of Vena cava with its Branchings.*
GG. *The descendent Trunk of the great Artery, which is variously branched beneath.*
HH. *The Emulgent Vessels.*
II. *The true Kidneys.*
KK. *The Auxiliary or Deputy Kidneys.*
LL. *The Ureters going down to the Bladder.*
MM. *The Bottom of the Piss-bladder.*
N. *The Insertion of the Urachus into the bottom thereof.*
O. *A Portion of the Arse-gut.*
PP. *Præparatory Vessels from both sides.*
Q. *The Rise of the Præparatory Vessels from the Trunk.*
R. *The Place where the Trunks of the Cava and Aorta do branch themselves, where an Artery goes over a Vein.*
SS. *Portions of the Navil-arteries.*
T. *The Bottom of the Womb.*
VV. *The Womans Stones.*
XX. *Vessels which carry the Seed from their Stones to the Womb.*
ZZ. *The Trumpets of the Womb, by* Fallopius *so called, or the blind Passage of the Seed.*
YY. *The two upper Ligaments of the Womb, resembling the Wings of Batts or Flitter-mice.*
aa. *The two lower Ligaments of the Womb, round, cut off from the Share.*
bb. *The Hollow of the Flank-bone or Os Ilij, which is in Women larger then in Men.*

## The XXV. TABLE.



page 62

### The Characters of the Dug explained.

ccc. *Vessels spred over the Surface of the Dug.*
d. *The greatest and middlemost Kernel.*
e. *The Nipple.*

---

For we must not think with *Galen*, *Archangelus*, *Fallopius*, and others, that these Female Genital Members, differ from those of Men only in Situation. Which Opinion was hatched by those who accounted a Woman to be only an imperfect Man; and that her Genital Members could not be thrust out by reason of the coldness of her temper; as in Men they are thrust out by vertue of their greater Heat.

Howbeit, the generative Parts in Women differ from those in Men, not only in Situation, but in their universal Fabrick, in respect of Number, Surface, Magnitude, Cavity, Figure, Office, and Use; as is sufficiently manifest to a skilful Anatomist, and to any one that will compare what follows to what went before.

*The similitude of the Yard and of the Womb, ridiculous.*

And the falsity of their Opinion is sufficiently apparent, by means of the sundry Conjectures which they bring. For some liken the Womb to the Cod of a Man, and some to the Nut of the Yard. Some will have the Neck of the Womb to answer the Mans Yard, and others will have the Clitoris. Which Conceits falling to the ground by their own weakness, I shall proceed to explain the Parts.

*The præparatory Vessels in women.*

The *Spermatick præparatory Vessels* in Women, agree with those of Men, in

in their Number, Original, and Office, &c. I must now therefore only tell you wherein they differ.

*How they differ from those in Men.*

They differ first in *Magnitude*. These Vessels in women are shorter, because of the short way they are to go, but therefore they have many turnings and windings which make up the *Corpus varicosum*: to the end the seed may stay long enough to receive due preparation. In the next place they differ in their Implantation. For in women they are not totally carried to the stones, but they are divided in the middle way: and the greater part goes to the stone, and makes the *Corpus varicosum*, and the lesser part ends into the womb, into whose sides it is disseminated, especially to the upper part of the bottom, for to nourish the Womb and the Child therein; and that by those Vessels some part of the menstrual blood may be purged forth in such as are not with Child. For the lesser branch being tripartite, is below the stone divided into three branches, one of which, as was said, runs out into the womb, the other is distributed to the deferent Vessel or Trumpet of the Womb, and to the round Ligament; the third branch creeping along the side of the Womb through the common Membrane, ends near the true neck of the womb, insinuating it self also among the Hypogastrick Veins, with which and the Arteries, they are joyned by Anastomoses. Of which see *Zerbus*, *Fallopius*, *Platerus*, and others who have shewn *Riolanus* and my self the way. That is a rare case, which is figured out by *Besterus*, viz. for the spermatick Arteries to be joyned by way of Anastomosis with the Emulgent Artery. For this cause in women these Vessels go not out of the Peritonæum, nor reach to the Sharebone: because the Stones and Womb are seated within.

These seminal Veins and Arteries are interwined with many wonderful Anastomoses, for the preparation of seed. Yea and the Veins do receive into themselves the Hypogastrick Arteries of the Womb, according to the Observation of *Arantius* and *Riolanus*. Yet I remember the Arteries were wanting in a woman that had bore male Children, and *Franciscus Sanchez* relates how they were turned into stone in a woman of *Tolouse*.

## CHAP. XXVI.
## *Of Womens Stones.*

*How the Stones of Women differ from those of Men.*

NOw the *Stones* of *Women*, though as to their use, they partly agree with those in Men; yet in many things respecting their structure, they differ from them. And 1. in respect of their

*Situation*; which they have within in the Cavity of the Belly, two fingers breadth above the bottom, in such as are not with Child, and are knit by means of certain Ligaments above the same: viz. to the end they might be hotter, and consequently more fruitful; since they were to work a matter of which alone Mankind was to be generated, the seed of the man being added not as a material, but an efficient Cause.

*Why Womens stones are placed within their Bodies.*

2. In *Magnitude*, which is not so great in women as in men, unless very seldom. For by reason of the encrease of Heat, they are contracted after a woman is past fourteen, whereas they are before that time distended more largely being full of a white Juyce.

3. In their external *Surface* which is more uneven, then that of a mans stones.

4. In *Figure*, which is not so round, but broad and flat on the fore and hinder parts. Also the stones are within more hollow, and more full of spermatick moisture.

5. In *Substance* which some conceive to be harder then that of mens stones, but others conceive, and that more truly, that it is softer, and if you take off the Membrane, you shall find them conglomerated or knobbed together of divers little Kernels and Bladders, but seldom like those of men. In some great sea-fish, there is no difference of the stones of the Males and Females, in substance, but only in the size.

6. In *Temperament*, which is commonly accounted more cold, and that the seed contained in them, is more moist, thin, and watery.

7. In *Coats*. For they are covered with one only Coat, because they are otherwise in a close place. And that Coat sticks exceeding strongly to them, and is by *Galen* termed *Dartos*. Howbeit, where the stones receive the seminal Vessels, they are covered half over with the Peritonæum.

8. In *Connexion*; for they are knit unto the womb by two manifest passages, or rather the one of them is an obscure one, out of which during carnal Copulation, there is shed, not a wheyish substance, but the womans seed.

Their *Use* is to make seed which helps to generate after its way and manner: which *Aristotle* against all Reason and Experience, was bold to deny to women, in some places of his Writings, contrary to the express Doctrine of *Hippocrates de Genitura*, where he tells us that women also send forth seed out of their Bodies, somtimes into their womb, whereby it is moistned, and somtimes without, if the Orifice thereof do gape over much. Now that in the Womb it helps to the Generation, he thereby demonstrates, in that if after Copulation. The woman shal not conceive, the seed which they have both of them voided, does flow out of the womb. But some other Anatomists deny that these stones do make seed. But they will have them to be meer Kernels, to receive that moisture which needs abound in the womb, which is the Opinion of *Cremoninus*; or that they are only made for a mark and sign, which was the Conceits of *Rhodiginus*, and of *Hofman* since him, who account them rather Carcasses of stones then true stones, because they are small, void of Juyce, and uncompact. But as for what concerns Humidity we deny that Argument, and say 1. That there was no need of so much preparation to water the womb. One Vessel gently carrying a wheyish Humor, might have served that turn, yea the Pores alone might have sufficed, as it is well known to happen in a clammy humor distilling into the Knee. 2. They may answer both Intents, viz. Generation and Irrigation. 3. Experience tells us that seed and no other humor hath issued out of the stones of women being dissected. *Guinterius* was hindred in his Dissection, by the plentiful eruption thereof. The nocturnal pollutions of women testifie the same, and women became barren, when in ancient times they were guelded or spayed. Witness *Athenæus*. *Galen* experimented the same in Sows. *Varro* writes that Cows being guelt, do conceive if they go to Bull presently after. 4. The said seed is found in the Dissections of women, if they are lusty and free from Diseases. In them and in Women with Child, *Besterus* hath found the stones swelling with seed, which he

he hath expreſſed by a neat Picture. 5. That it is true ſeed, we may gather from a real and ſenſible effect thereof, like that of the ſeed of men, as Moles, and imperfect Eggs, by reaſon of the difference of Sex, to which the Male adds Life and Perfection. 6. Women have ſufficient heat to make ſeed, and ſufficient inſtruments to that end; yea, and ſome of them are better provided then men. Their ſtones are indeed ſmal and little, but not void of Juyce. Their number does recompence their ſmalneſs, even as we ſomtimes ſee more Juyce preſt out of a Bunch of Grapes, then a ſolid and whole Apple.

## CHAP. XXVII.

## *Of the Veſſels that carry away the Seed, eſpecially the Trumpet of the Womb.*

COncerning the Veſſels which carry away the Female-ſeed, the Doctrine of Anatomiſts hath been hitherto ſomwhat intricate, partly through varity of opinions, and partly the obſcurity of the matter it ſelf, which nevertheleſs I ſhall endeavor to reduce, and as much as may be to illuſtrate the ſame.

The *deferent Veſſels* are taken either in a large or a ſtrict ſignification. Strictly for thoſe ſame obſcure Paſſages and Veſſels only, which carry part of the ſeed bred in the ſtones, into the womb. *Largely* and *generally*, 1. For the preparatory Veſſels alſo, 2. For them and the *Womb-trumpet*, which others refer to the ſervatory and jaculatory Veſſel. I ſhall ſpeak of both briefly and diſtinctly.

The *deferent Veſſels* are properly thoſe ſmall paſſages derived from the ſtones, either to the bottom of the womb, with a very ſhort paſſage, or diſſeminated at the trumpets of the womb, with ſundry, and thoſe exceeding ſmall Twigs, reſembling the *Venæ lacteæ*, ariſing from the ſpermatick preparatory Veſſels, and continued with them, however here they change their name and uſe, becauſe they immediately paſs over, and lick the ſtones.

*Galen* conceives that the former is only inſerted into the ſides of the womb, which are termed *Cornua*, or the wombs horns, and other Anatomiſts are of the ſame opinion, who profeſs they could find no other Inſertion. But *Zerbus*, *Fernelius*, *Laurentius*, found another Branch herefrom, which goes not into the bottom as the former, but into the Neck, ſo that one part of this deferent Veſſel which is the ſhorter but larger, is inſerted into the middle of the Horn of the ſame ſide, and there poures out ſuch ſeed as it hath, into the Cavity of the womb: but the other part being the narrower and longer, is carried along the ſides of the womb, below the Mouth, to the beginning of the Neck. *Varolius* hath alſo made mention of this Part, and ſaies it is ſo ſmall in ſuch as have never conceived, that it cannot be found, ſave by a skilful Anatomiſt, but in Women with Child it is very large. *Spigelius*, becauſe he could not ſomtimes find it, did count it a ſport of Nature. *Veſlingus* does ſeem to allow of it, ſeeing he brings ſeminal Matter from the ſtones, to the bottom and ſheath of the womb, this way. I ſhould willingly aſſent to the Opinion of *Spigelius*, becauſe it is ſeldom ſeen. Little Branches indeed are alwaies diſſeminated unto the neck of the womb, but they come directly from the preparatory Veſſels, and bring blood rather then ſeed, of which ſee other Anatomiſts, eſpecially *Platerus*, *Riolanus*, and my Father *Barthelinus* beneath.

The *Uſe* of theſe Veſſels is, partly to carry the ſeminal Matter to the Trumpets, that it may be there further accompliſhed, and better wrought, and reſerved for further uſe, and partly to the bottom of the womb. Where another Branch ends into the Neck, the ſeminal Humidity is voided this way alſo, cauſing greater delight by reaſon of the length of the way.

The other *deferent Veſſel*, which ought to keep the Seed before it be ſquirted out, is the *Trumpet of the Womb*, by *Fallopius* ſo called, from the likeneſs it hath to a Trumpet of War, which he thus deſcribes. There ariſes a ſeminal Paſſage, ſmall and very ſtrait, nervous, and white, from the Horn of the womb it ſelf, and when it hath gone a little therefrom, it grows broader by little and little, and criſps it ſelf like the tendrel of a Vine, till it comes towards the end. Then diſmiſſing its wrinkled Criſpations, and becoming very broad, it *ends* into a certain Extremity, which ſeems membranous and fleſhy, by reaſon of its red Colour, and at laſt becomes very torn and ragged, like the jagged edges of worn clouts, and hath a large hole, which lies alwaies ſhut, thoſe jagged ends alwaies falling in upon it, which nevertheleſs if they be diligently opened and widened, they repreſent the broad end of a brazen Trumpet.

I ſhall handle the Particulars more diſtinctly. The *Trumpets ariſe* from the bottom of the womb by one end, nor do they reach with their other end to the Stones, or any other remarkable Part. And therefore they are not manifeſtly paſſable in this other Part, but ſhut up and blind, ſo that they are like the *Inteſtinum cæcum*, and are as it were an Appendix of the Womb. But this ſhutting up may be made according to the Opinion of *Fallopius*, which *Riolanus* who was ſince him, challenges for his own, by the fringes and jagged ends of the Trumpets, falling together, like Raggs of Cloath.

They are two in *Number*, on each ſide one.

They are *ſeated* ſo as to compaſs half the Stones, but they are diſtant from the Stones, on every ſide, neat half a fingers breadth, unleſs the womb be diſeaſed, by which they are drawn up nearer to the Stones. They are ordinarily faſtned only by very thin Membranes, not unlike the wings of Bats or Flitter-mice, through which many Veins and Arteries are diſſeminated, carried from the Stones into theſe Paſſages, and carrying Seed out of the Stones.

Their *Subſtance* is nervous, white, thick and hard.

Their *Figure* is round and hollow. Somtimes their Cavity ſo præternaturally widened, as to contain a Mole, which *Marquardus* relates in his *Empirica Praxi*; ſomtimes a Child, Examples whereof are recited by *Riolanus*. Nor could he ſee any other waies for the mans ſeed to enter, ſave the turning and winding Paſſages of thoſe Veſſels. But in a living woman, the mans ſeed full of ſpirits, might eaſily be drawn thither, by the widened waies of the womb miſaffected, which Paſſages being afterwards (Conception being made, and the Trumpets diſtended) ſhut up, were not ſeen by Diſſectors. Or whether hath there not been a ſhapeleſs Mole, or a Child without life been ſhaped, without the ſeed of a Man, of the Mothers ſeed only contained in the Trumpets; which having received no life from any Father, and the paſſages being ſhut up, it grew great, and kil'd the Mother?

In the Natural *Figure* let us conſider the Beginning, Middle, and End. The Inſertion or *Beginning* is at the

the bottom of the womb large, where it attains a nervous Pipe, ſtretched out to the middle well-near of the Trumpet, hollow, that it may tranſmit the Seed to the bottom of the womb. The *Middle* being capacious, ſhews certain little Cells, containing white ſeed. The *End* is narrower, though it carry ſome wideneſs with it. Howbeit before the End, it is wreathed and criſped like the tendrel of a Vine, as is viſible in Men and Beaſts.

The *Paſſage* therefore of the Trumpets, is not in all parts ſtraight, but winding, becauſe the way is ſhort from the ſtones to the womb. But the pleaſure ought not to be ſhort, when the ſeed is poured plentifully out of the ſtones into the horns of the womb in Copulation. And look what the *Seed-bladders* are in Men, as to preſerve the ſeed, theſe blind paſſages may be the ſame in Women, when they couple oftentimes, and ſtil void ſeed. For they may be ſo termed, becauſe they are annexed to the ſtones by little Membranes, that by Veſſels brought to them from the ſtones, as by the milkie and meſaraick Veins, they may eaſily draw the ſeed by them concocted, and lay it up within themſelves for future occaſion, and ſend it forth when need requires.

Their *Uſe* is, 1. According to *Fallopius* to ſerve as Chimneys, by which the ſooty vapors of the womb may exhale. Which I for my part cannot believe. For the ſooty Vapors are condenſed, and being reſolved into water, are reſerved till the time of Childbirth, or aſcend by inſenſible Pores, or breath out at the mouth of the womb, both in Women with Child, becauſe the mouth of the womb is never ſo cloſe ſhut as to hinder, as the Examples of Superfœtation teſtifie, as in ſuch as are not with Child. Nor can I wel tel how the ſooty vapors ſhould find way through theſe crooked Paſſages. 2. According to the ſaid *Fallopius* in his Obſervations, they make ſeed, becauſe he alwaies found ſeed in them, but never ſaw any in the ſtones; to which I anſwered before. 3. Their true Uſe is, to draw ſeed out of the ſtones, by blind paſſages of the Veſſels diſperſed through the Membrane, and when it is drawn to perfect the ſame by ſome tarriance in the Tendrels and Cells, by the irradiation of the vertue of the ſtones; that it may be more fit for a Child to be made of; finally to carry it to the womb, eſpecially in the Act of Copulation, by thoſe little Pipes implanted in the Horns of the womb, that it may meet the mans ſeed in the Cavity of the womb or its Neck, to cauſe Conception.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

## *Of the Womb in General.*

THe Womb is by the Latins termed *Uterus*, from *Uter* a Bottle by reaſon of its hollowneſs, in which Senſe *Tacitus* does uſe *Uterum Navis* for the Keel of a Ship. *Iſidorus* ſaies tis ſo called, becauſe tis on each ſide one: in a more large ſignification tis termed *Venter* in the *Digeſts* and *Inſtitutes*. Alſo tis called *Matrix*, *Utriculus*, and *Loci mulicbres*, where conſiſt the beginnings of Generation, according to *Varro*. In other Animals, according to *Pliny*, tis termed *Vulva*, eſpecially in Sows, which the ancient Romans did account a delicate Diſh: Of which ſee *Plutrach*, and *Langius* in his Epiſtles, alſo *Martial*, *Horace*, *Apitius*, *Athenæus*, and among late Writers *Caſtellanus*. *Hofman* conceives that *Vulva* is corrupted from *Bulga*, and *Bulga* a Word uſed by *Lucilius* and *Varro*, is originally French, if we believe *Feſtus*, who renders it a Bag. *Nonius* interprets it to be a Satchel or Knapſack hanging about a Mans Arm. See hereof *Voſſius*. But the term *Vulva* is approved by *Celſus*, and the Authors formerly commended.

*Why the womb is placed in the Hypogaſtrium.*

It is *ſituate* in the Hypogaſtrium, or the lower Part of the lower Belly, which is framed in the Cavity termed *Pelvis*, by the *Os ſacrum* and the Flank-bones. And therefore that *Pelvis* or Baſin, is larger in Women: and therefore they have Buttocks greater and wider. Now it was requiſite that it ſhould be ſo placed, that the Womb might be diſtended according to the greatneſs of the Child, and that the Child might be conveniently excluded.

Moreover the Womb is placed in the middle inclining to no ſide, ſave ſomtimes when a Woman is of Child with a Boy or a Girl: for then the Child lies more to the right or left ſide, though that be no certain Rule.

Now it lies between the *Inteſtinum rectum* or Arſegut, which is beneath it, and the Bladder which lies upon it, as between two Pillows. Why therefore ſhould we be proud who are bred between Dung and Urin?

*Its Magnitude.*

Its *Magnitude* is conſidered in length depth, and thickneſs, and all theſe vary in reſpect of Bodies, Age, and Venery.

Its *Length* in thoſe of a middle ſtature, who uſe Venery, from the external Privity to the bottoms end, is commonly eleven fingers; the bottom is three fingers.

The *Breadth* of the bottom, is two or three fingers, becauſe in Women not with Child, the latitude of the bottom and neck is one and the ſame. And hence the amplitude may eaſily be conjectured.

But in *Virgins*, which have not attained to ripeneſs of Age, it is little and leſs then the Bladder: in ſuch as are full of Age it is greater: yet if they abſtain from Venery it is ſmall enough, though thick, as it is alſo in very old Women. But it is greater in ſuch as have oft conceived, and bore Children: that a man may well near graſp it in his hand, unleſs when the Women are great with Child: for then it is more and more enlarged, and whereas before Gravidation, the bottom of the Womb did not paſs beyond the beginning of *Os ſacrum*, it reaches afterward to the Navil and beyond, ſo that it reſts upon the thin Guts.

*Whether the womb becomes thinner in women with Child.*

The *thickneſs* of the Womb does vary after the ſame manner. For in Virgins the ſubſtance thereof is thin, in grown perſons thick; and by how much a Woman hath been oftner with Child, by ſo much is the ſubſtance of her womb the thicker. When the Courſes flow, the womb grows thick; and when the voidance of the Courſes is at hand, the ſubſtance of the womb appears ſwelling and thick. In Women with Child, *Galen*, *Veſalius*, and other Anatomiſts conceive, that the womb the more it is ſtretched, the more it is attenuated, & that its thickneſs is ſpent in its length, as *Galen* ſpeaks. But ocular Experience makes againſt this, and the Authorities of *Sylvius*, *Mundellus* a *Surgeon of Paris*, *Aranthus*, *Varolus*, *Platerus*, *Bauhinus*, *Heurnius*, *Rouſſetus*, and *Laurentius*. For from the firſt Conception until the Birth, it is encreaſed according to all Dimenſions, and becomes as larger, ſo a little thicker and ſofter, ſo that in the laſt months the wombs ſubſtance is two

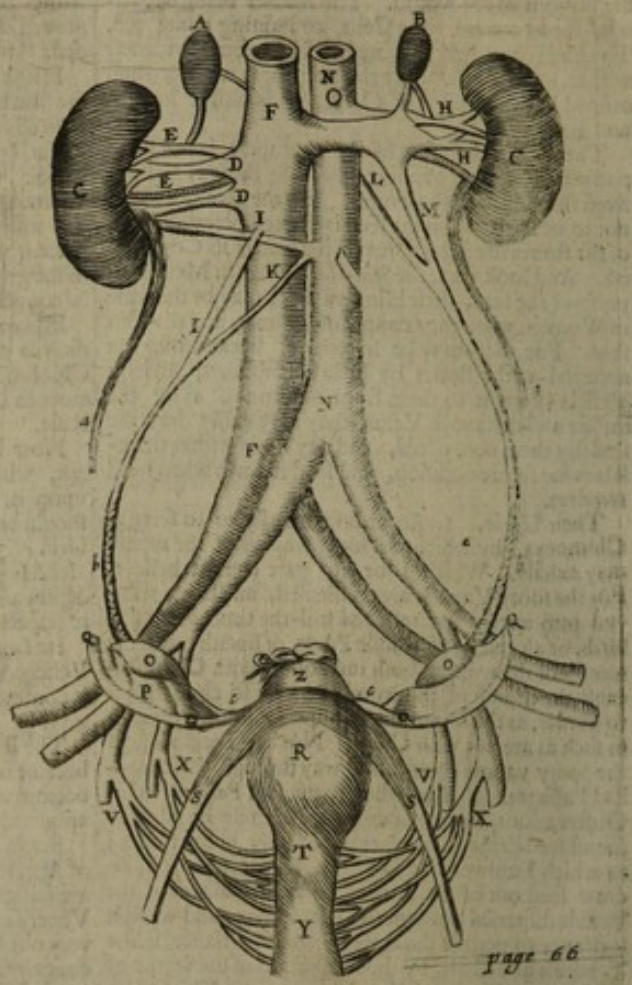
*An Error of* Galen *and* Veſalius.

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

This TABLE presents the Generative Parts of Women, taken out of the Body.

A. *The right side deputy-Kidney.*
B. *The left deputy-Kidney.*
CC. *The Kidney on both sides.*
DD. *The right side emulgent Veins.*
EE. *The right side emulgent Arteries.*
F. *The Trunk of Vena cava.*
G. *The left emulgent Vein.*
HH. *The left emulgent Arteries.*
II. *The right spermatick Vein.*
K. *The right spermatick Artery.*
L. *The left spermatick Artery.*
M. *The left spermatick Vein.*
NN. *The Trunk of the great Artery.*
OO. *The Stones in Women.*
PP. *A broad Ligament, like the wings of Bats or Flitter-mice.*
QQ. *The Trumpets of the Womb.*
R. *The Bottom of the Womb.*
SS. *The round Ligaments of the Womb, cut off at the Share.*
T. *The Neck of the Womb.*
VV. *The Hypogastrick Veins on both sides.*
XX. *The Hypogastrick Arteries on both sides, carried unto the Neck.*
Y. *The Sheath or Scabberd of the Womb.*
Z. *A Portion of the Inteſtinum rectum, or Arſe-gut.*
aa. *The Ureters cut off.*
bb. *The Vaſa pampiniformia, or Veſſels criſped like the Tendrels of a Vine.*
cc. *A Paſſage or deferent Veſſel to carry from the Stones to the Horns of the Womb.*

## The XXVI. TABLE




page 66

fingers thick. The Womb does then so far depart from a membranous Substance, and becomes red, and of a fungous and spungie Substance, and full of holes like a Pumice-stone, divisible as it were into many Barks and Shells: which happens because of the plentiful Afflux of Blood and Spirits for the Child. Touching both Opinion *Falcobergius* thus judges; that the Substance of the Womb does indeed become more thin, as he observed in Dissections of Women with Child; but that it seemed thicker, because the Womb-liver does grow exceeding close thereto, and that this might deceive many. But *Nicolas Fontanus* saies, that in the womb of a Woman with Child, he hath separated the Womb-liver from the Membrane, and that he hath found the Membrane to be exceeding thick. Which may very well be, for the Membrane being spungie, drinks in the affluent moisture of the womb, and puts on a thicker condition of Substance. If at any time it happen to be præternaturally thin, either through defect of Humor, or through much Distension, it is easily broken. And *Salmuth* hath observed as much in a Childbed woman, by reason of strong Forcers. Now the Substance of the womb is thickest of all about the internal Orifice, which is strait, whence proceeds that same admirable Dilatation in Child-birth, and Coarctation afterwards.

*The true Figure of the Womb.*

The *Figure* of the Womb is by some counted round, by others Pear-fashion'd. But though the Womb encline to roundness that it may be of the greater capacity; yet we conceive with *Soranus* and *Fallopius*, that its bottom may best of all be resembled to a Gourd; because it is by little and little straitned downwards. But the Neck of the Womb resembles an oblong and round Pipe or Channel.

The *Connexion* is either of the Neck of the Womb or of the Bottom.

The Neck is tied by its own substance, and by membranes; but the Bottom by peculiar Ligaments.

On the foreside the Neck grows to the Piss-bladder and the Share-bones, by Membranes arising from the Peritonæum. In the hinder part to the *Os sacrum*, and the *rectum Inteſtinum*, with some Fatness. But about the Privity it grows together with the Fundament. On the sides, it is loosely knit by certain Membranes to the Peritonæum.

*The Ligaments of the Womb.*

The Bottom is not fastned by its Substance, but is free, because it ought to be moved, as shall be said in its Action (wherefore a Venetian woman died of pains in her

her womb, the bottom thereof being tied by the Call) but in the sides it is knit by *two pare of Ligaments*, whose use is to hold the womb suspended or dangling.

*The upper Ligaments of the Womb.*

*One upper pare* is broad and membranous, and is held to arise from the Muscles of the Loins; and it ends into the bottom of the womb, near the horns. It is loose and soft, that it may be distended and contracted. *Aretæus* likens it to the wings of Bats or Flitter-mice. And by help of this pare, the bottom is fastned to the Bones of the Flank. But because it is interwoven with fleshy Fibres, therefore *Vesalius* and *Archangelus* have, perhaps not unjustly, reckon'd them to be Muscles. Now they carry along the præparatory and deferent Vessels, even as they contain the Stones. Now this pare of Ligaments or Muscles, is somtimes loosned by violence, difficult Labor in Childbed, weight of the Child in the Womb, &c. so that the Bottom of the Womb fals into the Privity, somtimes with the Neck inverted; also somtimes it hangs out, and is cut off; in which case also it is necessary that there be a Solution of the Connexion of the Neck.

*The falling down of the Womb.*

*The Lower.*

The *other pare* is *lower*, being round like Earth-worms, reddish like Muscles (whereupon some have conceived them to be Muscles, that perform the Office of the Cremasters in Men, so that the Womb is by them moved up and down, or at least is established and strengthned, in carrying Burthens, expelling the Child, Outcries, and Labors, in Desiux of Humors into this Part, which Opinion *Pineus* embraces. Also it is hollow, especially in the end. It arises from the sides of the Bottom of the Womb, and at its beginning touching the deferent Vessels, it ascends to the Groins, and as the spermatick Vessels in men, so these Ligaments in Women, pass along through the productions of the Peritonæum, and the Tendons of the obliquely descendent Muscles of the Belly, and there they are obliterated into Fat, or Membranes of the Bones near the Clitoris, to which they are fastned, and degenerated into a broad and nervous thinness. Where two other Muscles begin, without the Belly, being thin and broad, cloathing the whole inner face of the Lips; by help of which, some women move the Lips. The remaining part of the foresaid Ligament, runs to the Knee, and afterward into a Membrane of the inner part of the Thigh. Hence it is, as *Riolanus* acquaints us, that women with Child do in their first months complain of a pain in the inside of their Thighs.

The *Use* of this Part is, 1. As hath been said, to draw the Bottom of the Womb upwards, least it should fall down in relaxations, in bearing of weights, and in taking off pains; which nevertheless be more rightly said of the pare. 2. To hinder the ascent of the womb towards the upper parts, which of it self cannot happen, unless with all the Privities which are continued therewith, and the sheath be drawn upwards, but in the womb relaxed, and distended, it often happens. 3. *Riolanus* suspects that the excrementitious Humors of the womb are somtimes carried into the Kernels of the Groins, by these Ligaments, where also he hath found venereous Bubo's raised. Otherwise, *Hippocrates* draws the Bubo's in the Groins of Women from their Courses, which *Aurelius Severinus* refers to critical Abscesses, and *Arantius* seeks out their Passages in the Veins, by which the turgent Humor is carried from the womb to the Groins. I put the Arteries in place of Veins, whereby Excrements are both here and in other parts, carried to the extremities or outmost places in the Body. 4. *Spigelius* in a Woman kil'd with over much carnal Copulation, observed these Ligaments near the Womb, full of Seed. Which makes me suspect that these Ligaments, having received a Seminal Moisture, do moisten the neighbouring Parts in Women with Child, that all Parts may more easily be loosned and stretched in Virgins and barren Women, they are meer Ligaments, and by their Moisture defend the womb from the violence of burning Heat.

*Its Substance.*

The *Substance* of the womb is membranous, that it may be dilated and contracted, as need shall require, furnished with many pleits and folds, which in Women with Child are stretched out, to widen the womb, but they are contracted when the Child is excluded, and in aged women. Besides these pleits, it hath in women with child Pipes and large Cavities, or Cells exceeding manifest. Now the Substance of the womb is made up of a common and proper *Membrane*.

*Its Membranes.*

The *common* is doubled, and grows to the sides on each hand, arising from the Peritonæum, being exceeding thick, and most firm for strength, smooth every where, save where the Spermatick Vessels enter, or the Ligaments go out.

The *proper* and internal is also double; though it is hard to discern so much, by reason of its close adhæsion, save in Exulcerations. And berween both there were fleshy Fibres, such as are found in the Stomach: which some call the proper Substance and Parenchyma of the womb (whereinto a spungie Body is here and there strewed) and the use thereof is to heat the womb. But these Membranes are not of the same thickness always: as was said before, when I spake of the Magnitude.

*Its Vessels.*

The *Vessels* of the womb are Veins, Arteries, and Nerves.

The *Veins* and *Arteries* accompanying one another, are carried between the Coats of the womb, and pour forth their Blood into those membranous Pipes of the womb, but are not carried into the inmost Cavity of the womb. And they are twofold: some arise from above; others from beneath. For, from the upper and lower parts, that is to say, from the whole Body, the Blood ought to come, both that in the monthly terms, the whol Body may be purged, and also that in the time of a womans going with child, her Fruit might be nourished. Those which come *from above*, do creep all the womb over, but especially in the bottom thereof, and they are Branches derived from the Seminal Vessels, before the præparatory Vessels are constituted, and also from the Hæmorrhoidal Branch, whence there is so great a Consent between the Womb and the Spleen.

*Why the left Veins of the Womb are joyned to the right*

The left ends of the Veins and Arteries are joyned with the right ends: that the right part may also be augmented with plenty of Blood. The Menstrual blood is shed forth by the Arteries in Women not with Child: and therefore according to the Observation of *Walæus*, if about the time of the Menstrual Flux, the Pulse of the Heart and Arteries may be made greater, then the blood is more vehemently forced into the womb by the Arteries, and so the Menstrual Flux furthered. We see also when we have given Cordials appropriate to the womb, and stirring the Spirituous part of the Blood, that then the Courses encline to flow. Finally, the colour of the Menstrual blood in healthy women, declares that it is Arterial blood. Now it runs back again to the Heart, by the Veins joyned to the Arteries, for all that Blood neither

neither can, nor muſt be voided out of the Body, when they are obſtructed, becauſe the blood cannot freely paſs upward out of the leſſer Veins of the womb into the greater, the Menſtrual blood is collected in great quantity, and makes great commotions of the womb. Thoſe Veins and Arteries which come *from beneath* and aſcend, do ariſe from the Hypogaſtrick Branches of the *Cava* and the *Aorta*, and creep through the neck of the womb, and the lower part of the bottom, where they are every where joyned with the ſuperior ones.

*Anaſtomoſes in the womb.*

For very broad Veſſels are united through the bottom, both without, and in the ſubſtance of the womb, which Anaſtomoſes do more appear in menſtrual women, and in ſuch as are with Child. And they may be eaſily obſerved, if in dead Bodies ſome of them be blown up. For they all ſwell by that blaſt into one. The Mouths of theſe Veſſels or Pipes rather, do enter into the Cavity of the bottom, and are called *Acetabula* or *Cotylidones* Cups or Saucers: which gape and are opened, when the Menſtrua are purged. And in Women with Child, when the womb-liver is joyned to them (in Beaſts the *Verticilli* or Tufts) drawing blood for the Child. And becauſe Branches are carried into the neck of the womb from theſe Veſſels, by them women with Child that are Plethorick, may void Menſtrual blood in their firſt months, when there is more blood then needs to nouriſh the Child. For it is not probable, that that blood comes out of the womb: for the Child would be ſuffocated, and through too great opening of the internal mouth of the womb, Abortion might follow.

*The Largeneſs of the Uterine Veſſels.*

Now it is obſervable, that the Veſſels of the womb, do in the time of a womans going with Child ſo ſwell with blood, eſpecially about the time of Childbirth, that they are as big as the Emulgent Veins, or half as big as the *Vena cava* or *Aorta*.

*Nerves* very many in number, are carried from the pares of the Nerves of *Os ſacrum*, and from the ſixt Conjugation of the Brain, to the Neck of the Womb, and the parts about the Privities for pleaſures ſake: as alſo to the lower part of the Bottom. Whence there is a great Sympathy betwixt the Womb and the Brain. To the upper part of the Bottom few Nerves are carried, and they are intertwiſted like a Net.

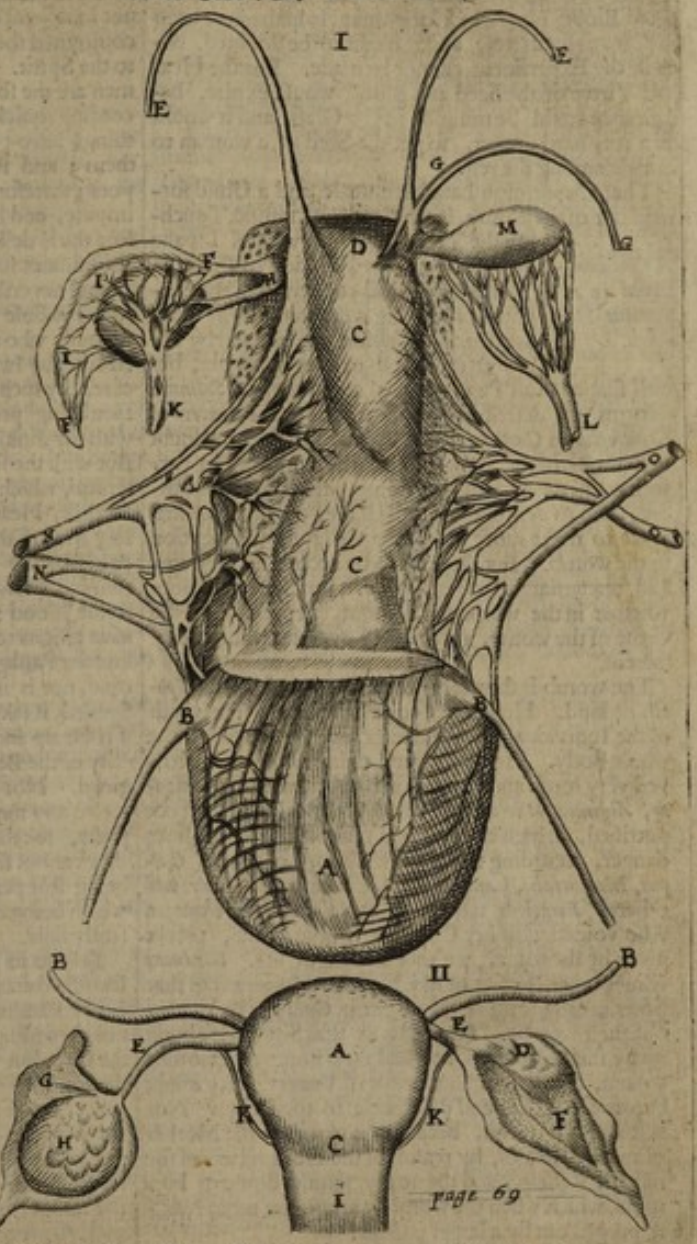
*The Action and uſe of the womb.*

The *Action* and *Uſe* of the womb, is to attract and retain the womans ſeed expelled by her Stones, and the mans ſeed, caſt in by his Yard. Both theſe Seeds are drawn into the bottom, retained, conſerved, and cheriſhed, whence proceeds Conception. For the Womb is like a Garden or Field, which receives, preſerves, and nouriſhes the Seed: and therefore *Ariſtotle* cals it the Field of Nature. For even the womb is alſo a Field of Generation, the place or matter wherein, affording alſo Nutriment of Arterial blood, yea and the Matter of which viz. the womans Seed; for the Spirituous ſubſtance of the Mans Seed, is the Architect which performs the work, and gives life to the womans Seed. Now the Seed of both of them, ought to be fruitful with the formative virtue which falls from the whole Body, and well and duely conſtituted; the womans being fit to receive the animated form, and the mans to give the ſame. To the internal Heat of which two Seeds joyned together, the external Heat of the womb joynes it ſelf, and by a ſingular virtue, ſtirs up that ſame inbred formative faculty, to perform its work, by a way to us altogether unknown. *Hegelandius* adds the *Fermentation* or Action it ſelf impreſſed upon the Seed, and the due *Situation* of a certain Maſs in the Seed, becauſe we ſee that of an Eg never ſo little ſhaken, no Chicken is ever hatched, and alwaies in the middeſt of the Seed of Animals, a little after Conception, we find a certain chryſtalline tranſparent Maſs. Certain it is, that all the Particles of the Seed, have a peculiar Determination, referring to that Part of the Body of the Parents, from whence they came, and which they are to form in the Child. But the change of this, or that determinate clotter of the Seed, does only vary the Situation of the Child formed in the Womb, which is the cauſe that we find the Child variouſly ſituate in the Womb. Eggs that have been ſhaken, ſeem to be leſs fruitful, by reaſon of the confuſion and rupture as it were, of the ſingular determinate parts, and the loſs of the Heat. *Fabricius*, *Pacius*, and *Harvey* do attribute the formative or ſhaping Faculty to the Womb, and deny the ſame to be in the Seed; wherein they are miſtaken. For, 1. Chickens are hatched out of the Eggs, only by the ſitting of the Hen or ſome other Bird, alſo in a bed, in the artificial Furnaces of *Ægypt*, *Tuſcany*, *Denmark*, and Seeds of corn do ſprout upon Chamber-floures, without the aſſiſtance of any womb. 2. The external Members would ſooner be ſhaped then the internal. 3. The Father ſhould contribute nothing to the formation of the Child. 4. No cauſe could be given of the likeneſs of the Child, ſomtimes to the Father, otherwhiles to the Mother. Now the Followers of *Des Cartes*, and amongſt the reſt *Regius* do aver, that the Particles of the Seed are agitated only by the Heat of the womb and of the Seed, and they being agitated, in regard of their figures, do neceſſarily fall into the Branch of a Livewight, juſt as when the oblong Particles of Salt, agitated in water by the force of Heat, and joyned one with another, do firſt make a plate, and by the frequent multiplication thereof a four ſquare grain or corn, and as of ſix little balls agitated upon ſome plane and united together a Roſe is made; and as of the Particles of Vapors ariſing out of Cellars in cold weather and variouſly ſmiteing upon their doors, with a whirling motion, ſundry pictures of the patts of Plants are formed. And out of the ſaid Branch or Stalk, by little and little the whole ſhaping of the Child is perfected without any underſtanding of the Soul, or any corporeal Faculty, directing the ſame, as in the Work-houſes of Glaſs-makers after a Bubble of Glaſs is rudely cut, Gloves, Boots, and other things are blown by ignorant perſons that come to ſee the works; and in ſome Fountains, by reaſon of the figures of the Pores in the Pipes, we ſee Images formed by force of the water breaking forth. A neat way, truly, of Conception and Formation in the womb, if it were true. No man is able in this Matter to trace the Workmanſhip of Nature. But I cannot as yet perſwade my ſelf, that all things are done rudely and mechanically in the Body, who have alwaies had an higher Opinion of Nature then ſo. By this means a Man were an accidental Being, and his firſt ſhaping would be accidental and fortuitous, or by chance medley. The figures of the foreſaid things happen by accident and contingently, and vary in the Particulars, whereas the Divine Shape of the moſt noble Creature Man, is alwaies one and the ſame, and happens of it ſelf after the ſame manner. How could that Branch be formed without the Mind, which is not in our Hands? I profeſs I know not. For a Glaſs is formed by the widening and working of an inanimate Matter, and as in the formation thereof, there is required the blaſt and the hand of the Artificer, with the aſſiſtance of the fire; ſo in an animated Child, the internal

# The FIGURES Explained,

## The XXVII. TABLE.

The Womb taken out of the Body, with the Stones, and all kind of Veſſels faſtned thereunto, and the Piſs-bladder.




page 69

### FIG. I.

A. *The Piſs-bladder turned upſide down.*

BB. *The Inſertion of the Ureters into the Bladder.*

CC. *The Neck or Sheath of the Womb into which very many Veſſels are diſſeminated.*

D. *The Bottom of the Womb.*

EEEE. *The two low and round Ligaments of the Womb cut off.*

FF. *The Vas cæcum, or trumpet of the Womb, as yet faſtned to this upper and broad Ligament.*

GG. *The ſame Veſſel on the oppoſite ſide, ſeparate from the broad Ligament.*

HH. *The deferent Veſſels of both ſides, ending from the Stones to the Bottom of the Womb.*

II. *The upper and membranous Ligament of the Womb, reſembled to the wings of Batts, through which very many Veſſels are diſſeminated, ariſing from the præparatory Veſſels.*

K. *The præparatory Veſſels of one ſide, as yet not freed from the membranous Ligament.*

L. *The præparatory Veſſels of the other ſide, freed from the membranous Ligament, that their Inſertion into the Stone may be diſcerned.*

MM. *The Stones of which the right is covered with its Membrane and the left quite naked.*

NN. *Very many Veins and Arteries ſpred abroad into the Neck and Bottom of the Womb, ſerving for the monthly Purgation and the Nouriſhment of the Child.*

OO *Nerves ſpred up and down through the Body of the Womb, which are repreſented by the Graver too large.*

### FIG. II.

A. *The bottom of the womb.*

BB. *The lowermore round Ligaments of the womb cut off.*

C. *The Region wherein the inner Mouth of the womb is placed.*

D. *The right Stone covered with its Membrane.*

EE. *The deferent Veſſels reaching from the Stones to the Horns of the womb.*

F. *The upper and membranous Ligament of the womb, faſtning the deferent Veſſels to the Stones.*

G. *The Membrane of the Stone ſeparated therefrom.*

H. *The glandulous or kernelly Subſtance of the Stone.*

I. *The Neck of the womb, commonly called the Sheath.*

KK. *Paſſages ariſing from the defevent Veſſel, and carried into the Neck of the womb, into which they ſay Women with Child do ſquirt their Seed.*

---

ternal formative Faculty of the Animated Seed, does joyn it ſelf to the Heat of the womb and of the Seed. Nor is the Formation of the Child only apparent, as the artificial Images of water are, but true, conſtant, and permanent. *Abenſina*, *Paracelſus*, and *Amantus Luſitanus*, have contrariwiſe been perſwaded that a Child may be generated out of the Mothers womb: but no body will be forward to believe them, unleſs

they could shew us some example, which their Followers will never be able to do. For that a little child should be made in a Glass of a Mans Seed and Menstrual Blood, placed in Horse-dung, it hath never been my hap to see as yet, and it ought to be doubted. because the Experiment cannot be made. For the Heat and Virtue of the Seed and Blood would expire, before they could be mingled in the Glass, and it would be a very hard matter, to get the Seed of a woman to mingle among the rest.

That Conception hath been made, and a Child formed out of the womb, some Examples testifie. Touching the Trumpet of the womb, I spake before, from the Relation of *Riolanus*. That a Child was conceived in the Stomach of a young woman the Wife of an abominable Taylor, and voided by her mouth the length of a mans finger, but well shaped in all Parts external and internal. *Salmuth* informs us, describing the Story from the Letters of *Kemelerius* to *Gothofredus Hofmannus*, nor does he doubt of the truth of the Story. That the same may be performed in the neck of the womb, those Superfœtations, seem to demonstrate, which are voided in the first place to make more room for the larger Conception in the womb. But these are to be accounted very rare and præternatural cases, if true. But Superfœtation, whether in the womb or without, depends from the virtue of the womb, reaching all over the whole Body thereof.

*A Child conceived in a womans Stomach.*

The womb is therefore necessary to preserve the *Species* or kind. Howbeit it contributes also to the health of the Individual, as the emunctory or clenser of the whole Body. Howbeit very many women have lived very long, and happily without it, witness *Abenzoar*, *Ægineta*, *Wierus*, *Zacutus*. When it hath fallen out putrified, it hath been all in a manner cut off without danger, according to the Observations of *Rhases*, *Carpus*, *Mercurialis*, *Langius*, *a Vega*, *Paræus*, *Bauhinus*, and others. *Fernelius* tells us he saw a childing woman, who voided with her Child her whole womb, pluckt away by the roots, without danger of life. *Saxonius* relates other Stories of like Nature. *Saxonius* saies that Sows are made more corpulent in *Galatia*, by cutting out their wombs. *Pliny* tells us that Sows were hung up by their fore Legs, and had their stones and wombs cut out, that so loosing the use of Venery, they might become more fat and delectable to the Palate. Nor is it without reason, because the womb is the Mother of many Diseases, by reason of the Obstruction of the narrow Vessels, and the ready falling down of Humors, which when the womb is away, are more readily purged out by a larger passage.

Moreover another action of the womb is said to be a certain Natural motion: whence *Plato* would have the womb to be a certain *Animal* or Live-wight, and *Aretius* saies it is an Animal in an Animal, because of its motion. For in carnal Copulation, and when it is possessed with a desire to conceive, it is moved now up and then down, and gapes to receive the Yard, as a Beast gapes for its Food. And sometimes it is moved downwards, to expel the Child and Secondine, with so much violence, that it falls out.

*The wombs motion.*

Moreover it is moved with, rejoyces in, and is delighted with sweet smelling things: but it shuns stinking and strong smelling things, as Castoreum, Asafœtida, &c. Hence *Aristotle* saies, that women with child will miscarry at the smell of a Candle-snuff.

But the womb is sensible of Odours, not under the formality of Odours, but is only affected by the delicate and subtile vaporous matter conjoyned. Even as we see al the Spirits recreated, by sweet smelling things, not in respect of the smell precisely, but of the vapor conjoyned therewith, which is familiar and acceptable to the Spirit. And therefore the Genital parts of women are the sooner affected, because they have an exceeding quick Sense. And because sweet smelling things have good and pleasing Vapors joyned with them; and stinking things have filthy and ugly Vapors; therefore by the latter, the Spirits are made more impure, and because the womb is full of Spirits, therefore she is delighted with sweet and fragrant things, and abominates such as are stinking.

And nevertheless, some women are found whose wombs are badly constituted, who are put into Fits of the Mother by sweet smelling things, and cured by such as stink; because Nature being provoked to Expulsion by the latter, does with the stinking Vapors expel the morbifick Matter. But with the former filthy Vapors are stirred up in the womb, which before lay hid, so that they ascend to the Midriff, Heart, Brain, &c. whence proceed strangling Fits of the Mother. Now these Vapors ascend partly by the sensible Pores, and partly by the Veins running back, and carrying the said Vapors with the uterine Blood: for I cannot allow of the power *Helmont* assigns to his ruling Parts, without manifest and known Passages. Now the womb it self does not ascend, nor is it moved out of its place, unless being distended, it takes up more room then ordinary, nor does it roule up and down like a Bowl or Globe in the Cavity of the Belly, as *Hippocrates* and *Fernelius* have imagined. Nor do the horns of the womb being swelled, move any more then the womb it self, as *Riolanus* suspects, for they are fastned by their Membranes, and they cannot shed their Seed into the Belly, the waies being stopped, but Vapors have an easie motion, which being dissipated, the Swelling of the Belly presently falls.

*Why sweet smelling things do hurt some women.*

Besides its Sense of Smelling, Tasting, Feeling, it is furnished according to *Helmont*, with a kind of brutish Understanding, which makes it rage, if all things go not according to its desire. But these things savor of the Opinion of *Plato*, who improperly did compare the womb to a living Creature. Whence that fury proceeds, I have already declared. As for what that same Novelliſt *Helmont* saies, that it lives many times, and keeps a coile after a woman is dead, no man will easily believe it. For its life depends upon the life of the whole Body; and if it stir after death, either that motion proceeds from winds, or from a Child seeking its way out, after the Mother is dead, as sundry Examples demonstrate. *Sphinx Theologico-Philosophica*, tells us that the Mother being dead, a Child suddenly issued out of her womb, and cried lustily. After which manner *Laurentius* describes the Birth of *Scipio* and *Manlius*. *Eberus* hath two Examples of a Child born after the Mothers death, as also *Johannes Matthæus*, and the like cases are fresh in the memory of many here at *Hasnia*. But in opposition to *Winchlerus*, *Sperlingerus*, and others that deny it, we must observe, 1. That the Child must necessarily be strong. 2. That the Orifice of the Mothers womb must be large. 3. That the Mother being dead, the mouth of the womb must be widened, and her Thighs spred, or else the Child will be strangled before it can come forth.

CHAP.

# Chap. XXIX. *Of the Bottom of the Womb, and its Mouth.*

See Tab. XXVII. WEE have treated hitherto of the Womb in General, and its similar Parts. The *dissimilar Parts* follow, into which we have divided the same: viz. the *Bottom*, the *Neck*, and the *Privity*, with the Parts annexed.

The *Fundus* or Bottom of the womb, is that part which reaches from the internal Orifice to the End upwards. We divide it into the lower and narrower part and the larger upper part; to which we ad a third part viz. the Mouth.

*The short Neck of the womb.* The *lower and narrow* part, is that betweën the Mouth of the womb, and the beginning, largeness thereof, and it may be called the short Neck, to difference it from the true and long Neck. For before the wideness of the womb begins, between it and the inner Mouth, there interceeds another Neck as it were, or narrower Channel, then the largeness of the Bottom, and this is observed both in Man and Beast. And *Fallopius* is of Opinion, that this part was called the Neck of the womb by the Ancients, as *Galen*, *Soranus*, &c. *Pineus* reckons this part to be as long as a mans thumb, I have observed it to be five fingers breadth, long in a Doe.

*Some Cause of Barrenness.* The Cavity hereof is not large, but such as will admit a Probe or large Quil. It is rough, least the Seed which hath been drawn in, should flow out again, as happens in some barren women, which have this part slippery, by reason of bad Humors. This roughness arises from wrinkles, which according to the Observation of *Pineus*, have their Roots situate beneath, and their Edg tending inwards or upwards, that they may easily admit, hardly let go any thing.

*The Bottom.* The *large* and *upper Part* is chiefly termed *Fundus* or the Bottom, and this Part is properly called the Womb or *Matrix*, and it is the principal Part for whose sake the rest were made, being wider and larger then the rest.

It is seated above the *Os pubis* or Share-bone, that it may be there dilated and widened.

*No Cavities or Cells in the womb of a woman.* The womb hath in a woman only one Cavity, not distinguished into any Cells, as some falsly attribute thereunto seven Cells. In Brutes it is commonly divided into two parts, and therefore those parts are called the two Horns of the womb: though the form of Horns is not conspicuous in all Brutes, but in Cows, Does, Sheep, Goats, &c. Howbeit in imitation thereof, Authors have attributed horns to the wombs of women, because on the sides of the bottom thereof, there is on each side some protuberancy, where the deferent Vessels are inserted. But the womb of a woman is very seldom divided into two parts, as it is in Beasts, as it hath been observed in some by the *Brother* of *Bauhinus*, *Sylvius*, *Riolanus*, and *Obsequent* before them. And I doubt whether their wombs be so divided, who bear two or more Children at a Birth. The last year many women at *Hasnia* bore Twins contrary to their custom, yea and some three Children at a Birth, which they never did before nor since. We must not therefore account that to be proper to Families, or attribute the same to the wombs being double, which properly belongs to the Seed. Also that they are not conceived in a double womb, the womb-cake testifies, which alone is sufficient for many Children, only it hath so many strings fastned to it in several places, as there are Children, as *Besserus* hath lately described it in a like History.

*Why Horns are said to be in the wombs of women.*

Yet is it divided into the right and left part. In the former Boys are for the most part ingendred: in the latter Girls. And it seldom happens otherwise, if we believe *Hippocrates* and *Galen*. Hunters have this sign whereby they known whether the Beast they hunt have a male or female in her belly, for if when she is struck dead, she fall on her right side. they conclude she is big of a Male, because the burthen she goes with is most weighty on the right side; if on the left she fall, they judg it is a Female. Tis reported that women with child of a Boy, do lift their right foot higher then their left, as they walk, as *Salmuth* gives us to understand, all which signs are nevertheless fallacious. *Hippocrates* and his followers do reckon other signs, which are not proper for this place.

The right and left side are differenced by a Line or Seam which sticks up obscurely, which *Aristotle* termes the Median Line. The like Line is seen in the lower Belly under the Navil, dividing that Region into two parts, which they conceive to be then more visible, when women bear twins. But in some women with child I have seen this Line manifest, who bore afterwards only one Child.

The outward Surface is smooth and even, and covered as it were with a watry Humor. The inner part hath many Porosities, which are Mouths, through which in the time of a womans going with child, blood easily passes out of the Veins of the womb to nourish the Infant.

Its *Use* is to receive the Seed, contain the Child, nourish it, &c.

*The inner Orifice of the womb.* *The Orifice or inner Mouth of the womb* is oblong, and transverse, but very narrow (but when it gapes, it is round and orbicular, which is perhaps the cause why the German Midwives call it the Rose, and the French Midwives, the Crown of the Mother) like the Hole of the Nut of the Yard, that no hurtful thing may enter in, nor the Seed drawn thither, easily pass out. If at any time it fall out of the Privity, or be turned inside out, it resembles exactly the Mouth of a Tench.

If the *Situation* thereof be changed, so that it be not just in the middle, looking towards the bottom, tis conceived a Man cannot squirt his Seed thereinto, and that the Seed will sooner flow back, then the woman conceive. If it be quite absent, which seldom falls out, an uncurable Barrenness is thereby caused. As also Barrenness is caused, if it be otherwise affected, viz. with Cancers, scirrhous Tumors, Obstructions, Callosity, over much Fatness: especially through over much Humectation and Relaxation, either through over much Copulation as in Whores, or through too great a Flux of Humors.

*Some Causes of Barrenness.*

In women with child a glewish clammy Matter grows to the Orifice, and fills the short Neck well-near; that these Parts being moistned, may more easily be opened in the time of Travel.

Within the Channel of this Mouth to the lower part thereof, grows a little bunch, which does more exactly shut the hole, according to the Observation of *Riolanus*.

*lanus*. He also informs us that about this little bunch, there are to be seen Pores or little Holes, which seem to be the ends of the deferent Vessels, ending at the Neck. *Columbus* found those Vessels implanted like the teeth of a comb, full of Blood.

*The Use of the Orifice of the womb*

By this Orifice, the womb draws the Seed into it, which being conceived, it is said to be shut so close, that the point of a needle cannot enter. And therefore Physitians do vainly squirt Liquors thereinto with a Syringe, and Whores endeavor in vain to draw out the Conception. But it is opened in Superfœtation, in the Ejection of a bad Conception without hurt to the Child, which sometimes happens in the Emission of Seed, but it is especially opened after a wonderful manner at the time of Child-birth, when it ought to be widened according to the greatness of the Child, so that the wideness is in a manner equal from the bottom of the womb to the Privity, whereout the Child passes. And this saies *Galen* we may wonder at, but we cannot understand. And he admonishes us upon this occasion, that it is our duty to acknowledg the Wisedom and Power of him that made us. But this Orifice as well as the womb, does chiefly consist of wrinkled Membranes, which being smoothed out, will admit of unimaginable Dilatation.

*When the Mouth of the womb is opened.*

## Chap. XXX. *Of the greater Neck of the Womb.*

See Tab. XXVII.

IN the Bottom of the Womb we have observed three things; the *Bottom* it self, the *lesser Neck*, and the *Orifice*. In the greater Neck also, three things are to be noted. The *Neck* it self, the *Hymen*, and the *Mouth of the Bladder*. Of the Hymen we shall treat in the following Chapter.

The *Neck* or Channel of the womb, is by *Aristotle* also sometimes called *Matrix*, and the Door of the Womb, *Fallopius* calls it *Sinus pudoris*, the Privity. It is a long Channel, being hollow even when the Child is in the womb, admitting both a Probe and a mans finger, as may be seen in such as are new born.

It is *situate* between the external and the internal Mouth, receiving the Yard like a sheath.

Its *Figure*. The Neck is somwhat writhen and crooked, also it is shorter and straiter, when it is loose, and fals together; that the internal parts may not be refrigerated. But it is straight and widened 1. In carnal Copulation. 2. In the monthly Flux. 3. In the time of Child-birth, when it is exceedingly stretched according to the Shape of the Child; whence also proceeds the exceeding great pains of women in travel: and then as also during their Courses, women are very much cooled.

Its *Magnitude*. The length thereof is eight fingers breadth commonly, or seven; so as to be as long as a Mans longest finger. It is as wide as the *Intestinum rectum* or Arse-gut. But the longitude and latitude of this part are so various, that it is hard to describe them. For in carnal Copulation, it accommodates it self to the length of the Yard, and this Neck becomes longer or shorter, broader, or narrower, and swells sundry waies according to the lust of the woman. And when that happens, the Caruncles swell with Spirits which fill them, as appears in Cows and Bitches that desire Copulation; but the Channel is made narrower and less, as also in the Act of Generation, that it may more close embrace the Yard: and therefore its

*Substance* is of an hard and nervous flesh, and somwhat spungy, like the Yard; that it may be widened and contracted within, the upper part is wrinkled, when it is not distended, but being widened, it is more slippery and smooth. Howbeit in the Neck of the womb also when it is distended, there are many orbicular wrinkles in the beginning of the channel near the Privity, most of all in the fore part next the Bladder, less towards the Intestinum rectum on which it rests; and they serve for the greater Titillation caused by the rubbing of the Nut of the Yard against the said wrinkles. And in young Maids these wrinkles are straiter, and the Neck narrower, through which the Menstrual blood is voided; also in grown persons that are yet Virgins. But the wrinkles are worn out, and the sides become callous, by reason of frequent rubbing, 1. In old women. 2. In such as have used much Copulation, or have frequently bore Children. 3. In those that have been troubled with a long Flux of the Courses, or of the Whites. And in all these the substance does also become harder, so that it becomes at last gristley, as it were old women, and such as have born many Children. But in young Maidens, it is more soft and delicate.

*Wrinkles in the Neck of the womb.*

The *Use* of the Neck is to receive the Yard being raised, and to draw out the Seed.

Finally, beyond the middle towards the end of the Neck, in the fore and upper part, not far from the Privity, comes the *Insertion of the Bladder* into sight, that the Urin may there be voided by the common Passage. It is as long as a knucle of ones finger, without fleshy, or rather covered with a fleshy Sphincter. *Pineus* observes that it is black within, of the same substance with the Piss-pipe in Men, as any man may see, now *Riolanus* that told us so.

*The Orifice of the Bladder.*

*Wierus* hath noted in his Observations, that the outer extremity of the Neck of the Bladder, does not in all women appear in the same place, in many tis seen above the outer straits of the neck of the womb, under the Nymph; in some few it lies hid inwardly, in the upper part of the Privity. But the entrance into the Bladder, is found on the back-side, when the Membrane called *Hymen* is there: of which we are now to speak.

## Chap. XXXI. *Of the Membrane called* Hymen.

See Fig. IV. *and* V. *of* Tab. XXVIII.

THe Hymen or Membrane called *Eugion*, is by others called the closure of Virginity, and the Flower of Virginity, because where it is, there is a sign of Virginity.

*That there is some true sign of Virginity.*

Now *whether or no there is any sign of Virginity*, ought not to be doubted. For all Men find that marry Virgins, that there is somwhat that hinders their Yard from going in, unless it be thrust forward with great force and strength. Whence *Terence* saies the first Copulation of a Virgin is exceeding painful. And at that time for the most part, blood issue with great pain, more or less; which Blood is also called the *Flower of Virginity*.

For

*Why Virgins are pained in their first carnal Copulation.*

For by reason of the widening of the strait Neck of the Womb, and the tearring of the Hymen, all Virgins have pain and a Flux of blood in their first Copulation. Younger Virgins have more pain and less Flux of blood, because of the drineſs of the Hymen and the smallness of their Vessels; but those that are older, and have had their Courses, have less pain and greater flux of blood, for the contrary causes.

*An Exception.*

But if her Courses flow, or have flowed a little before: the Yard is easily admitted, by reason of the Relaxation of those Parts, whence there is little or no pain, and little or no flux of blood. And therefore Maids ought not to be married at that season, least the Bridegroom come to suspect the Virginity of his Bride.

*What is the token of Virginity.*

Now what it is that hinders the Yard from entring, that is to say, in what part the token of Virginity consists, there are sundry Opinions and Differences.

*The* I. *Opinion of the Arabians.*

I. The *Arabians* say the Hymen is a piece formed of five Veins at the middle of the Neck of the womb, inserted on either side, so that the Mouths of the right-side Veins are joyned with those on the left.

These are Fancies.

*The* II. *Opinion.*

II. Others (among whom are *Fernelius* and *Ulmus*) do say that the sides of the Neck grow together, and when they are separated and widened, the Veins are broken which run in those Parts. But this is contrary to Experience, which witnesses, that in little Girls the Neck hath its Cavity, nor do the sides thereof stick together.

*The* III. *Opinion.*

III. *Others* say it is a transverse Membrane.

And herein they are right. But they are deceived, who have feigned it to have Holes in it like a Seive, and placed it in the lowest end of the Neck: through which they would have the Urin to be voided.

*The* IV. *Opinion.*

IV. The newest Opinion of all, is that of *Severinus Pinæus*, a most expert Surgeon of *Paris*, who hath wrote an whole Book of the Notes of Virginity, not unprofitable to be read. Now he accounts the four Myrtle-shap'd Caruncles to be the Hymen, tied together by a small Membrane, placed in the outer part of the neck of the womb; of which hereafter. And some learned men are at this day of his Opinion, as *Bauhinus* for one. I could find no other in a young Girl, lately dissected in this place.

*The* V. *Opinion strengthned by many Authors.*

V. The more common Opinion is, that the Hymen is a transverse Membrane going athwart the neck of the womb, a little above the Neck of the Bladder, which resists the first Entrance of the Yard. And many Experiments and Authorities stand up for this Opinion. And in the first place of four most renowned Anatomists, of *Padua*, *Vesalius*, *Fallopius*, *Aquapendent*, and *Casserius*. And all Antiquity had some knowledg hereof. Hence the Author of that old Friers verse, or riming verse.

*Est magnum crimen perrumpere virginis hymen.*
*Tis a huge sin to break the skin of a Virgins Gim.*

*Archangelus*, *Alexander Benedictus*, and *Wierus* assent hereunto. *Carpus* also knew as much, nor does *Scaliger* seem to have been ignorant hereof in the 1. Sect. of his 175. Exercitation, where he speaks of a Root that extreamly excites Lust. For he saies; *If any shall piss thereon, they say he will presently be full of fleshy desires: Virgins that look to Cattle in the fields, if they sit thereon or make water, tis said the skin in their Privity will break, as if they had been deflowred by a Man.* *Columbus* and *Sebizius* did three times find it, *Bauhinus* twice, as he averrs in his Book of the similar Parts, and *Wolfius* seems in his Institutions to assent thereunto, who witnesses that he found it at *Padua*. *Adrianus Spigelius* affirms that he found it in all the Virgins that ever he did cut up, and I my self and *Vestingus* at the same time saw it at *Padua*. Nor is it necessary to bring all the Authorities which might be had in this subject to this place.

*The Confutation of such as deny it to be alwaies found in Virgins.*

And whereas *Columbus* and *Paræus* deny that it is alwaies found, and *Laurentius* saies he could never find it: the reason was that they wanted Bodies to dissect, or were negligent in their work: or they might dissect supposed Virgins who had been defloured. Or if they dissected young Virgins, they through wantonness do sometimes with their fingers break the said Skin or Membrane. But if they shall say they did cut up abortive Births, Girls of two or three years old &c. I answer tis incredible that the Hymen should be wanting in such, seeing the Authorities and Expetiences of skilful Anatomists forecited, are against it. Again, if in some by them dissected, it was wanting; by the same right that they say this Membrane is præternaturally present, we shall say it was præternaturally absent. For it is seldom absent, and for the most part present. And others that are for *Laurentius* against us, such as *Capivaccius* and *Augenius*, are to be rejected as persons not skilled in Astronomie.

*The* VI. *Opinion.*

VI. There is a midling Opinion of *Melchior Sebizius*, viz. that all the signs of Virginity must be joyned together, when they are present. And when the Hymen or Skin so called is absent, we must rest in the straitness of the Neck and other marks, which being widened in the first Copulation, pain and effusion of blood follows by reason of the Solution of Continuity.

These things thus premised, let us come to the Structure of this Hymen or thin Skin which goes cross the neck of the womb.

Tis *situate* in the neck of the womb, near the end thereof, just behind the Insertion of the Neck of the Bladder, or a little more inward. For the Situation does now and then vary, though the difference is but little. And there this Membrane goes cross the Cavity, like the Diaphragma or Midriff.

Its *Figure*. In the middle it hath an hole like a ring, so that in grown Maids, it will admit the top of ones little finger, through which hole the Courses flow.

*The hole in the middle of the Hymen, is of several fashions.*

But *Aquapendent* hath many times found this hole in a threefold difference.

I. As being Naturally constituted, and just opposite to the external Privity.

II. Higher, and not just against the Privity.

III. That in the middle was no round hole, but a chink somwhat long. *Sebezius* likens it to the horned Moon a little full. For Nature sports her self in the variety of Shape.

But seldom is the Hymen without any holes, and then the Courses cannot come away, whence follow at last Diseases and Death, unless it be opened, as Examples testifie.

Its *Magnitude.* On its sides, where it grows to the neck of the womb, tis thicker then in the middle.

Its *Connexion.* It is continued to the Substance of the Neck, as if it grew out of the same.

Its *Substance* is partly membranous, partly fleshy, nor yet very thick. And in some it is thinner and weaker then in others. As in the Prayan Virgins of *Campania*, who are there all devirginated after twelve years of age, partly by the Heat of the Sun, partly of their own Bodies breaking the Membrane, as I was told by Relation of Friends there. In some it is more solid and thick, and somtimes so strong, that it must be cut open, especially when the Bridegroom is lazie and impotent: for if he be a lusty Carle, he is wont after some months labor, to make his way through.

This Membrane is furnished with many *little Veins*, which being broken in the first Copulation, pain and blood-shed arises. Finally, it wears away at last, either through Copulation, or wanton rubbing; even as in men the *Frænum* or bridle of the Yard is somtimes torn.

*A Question touching the shedding of blood in the first Copulation.*

But there is a great and serious Question, *whether or no in the first carnal Act, all Virgins must needs void Blood*, as a certain sign of their Virginity?

I answer, that it happens so for the most part, and ought alwaies so to happen. And therefore in 22. of *Deuteronomie*, at Marriages the bloody cloath was shewed to the Elders, as a witness of the Virginity of the Bride. *Leo Africanus* saies the same custom was used in *Mauritania*, and I was told by a Syrian, that it is observed at this very day in *Syria*. *Augenius* indeed out of *Rabbi Salemon* and *Lyranus*, do understand this Text Metaphorically, as if the spreading of the Garment did signifie, the words of witnesses, by which the Chastity of the Bride was diligently enquired into and declared. But the best Interpreters retain the Litteral Sense of the Words. *Sebizius* proves that it was to them a perpetual sign, because 1. Their Virgins were married very young. 2. Every one was careful of himself because of the Law of *Jehovah*. Others contrarywise conceive that it was a sign for the most part. *Marius* excepts when the Bridegroom is impotent, and a Surgeon may easily judg in such a case. *Semmertus* saies in that Law the affirmative Inference is good, but not the negative; and that nothing else can be concluded, but that where it is, it is a sign of Virginity. Therefore it may be hindred, and not appear.

1. If Virgins break it through wantonness with their fingers, or some other Instrument. Hence it is that some Nations, sow up the Privities of Girls new born, leaving a little way for the Urin to come forth; nor do they open it till the time of Marriage: and then the Bridegroom causes it to be opened, that he may be sure he hath a Virgin.

2. If it be the time of her Courses, or she have had them a little before.

3. If the Chink in the Hymen be very long, for then there happens only a Dilatation and no breaking.

4. If the Neck of the Womb be very wide, and the Yard not sufficiently thick.

5. If the Man thrust in his Yard cleverly.

6. If the Virgin have had the falling down of the womb, whereby the Hymen was broke.

7. If the Virgin be in years before she is married.

8. If by continual Deflux of sharp Humors, the Hymen be either moistned or fretted, which frequently happens in sickly men, through fault of their Constitution and the badness of the Climate. The healthly Hebrew Virgins, being in a good Climate, and of a strong Constitution, did easily by care avoid these Inconveniences.

The *Use* of the Hymen is, to defend the internal Parts from external Injury. 2. To testifie a Maids Virginity.

*Whether Conception may be made without hurting the Hymen.*

Now a Maid may conceive without hurting the token of her Virginity, which *Americus Vespucius* relates to have been common in the *Indies*, and *Speronus* and *Peramatus* prove the same. Tis reported that at *Paris* a certain woman in this present Age wherein we live, was got with Child, without any Detriment to her Virginal Parts, and a like History is related by *Clementina*. Which we may conceive to be done five manner of waies, reckoned up by *Plempius* and *Sinibaldus*, which for Honors sake, I shall here omit. Nor does this any waies prejudice the Conception of our Savior, which was performed without any of these waies, without the Embracement of any Man, and only by the overshadowing of the Holy Spirit, of which it belongs to Divines to treat. If we believe *Suidas*, the Membrane was by the Midwives found in the Virgin *Mary*, when it was question'd, whether she had lost her Virginity or no; which I conceive to have been inconsistent with the Modesty of that blessed Virgin. The living *Simon Magus*, that he might be reputed for a God, boasted that he was born of his Mother *Rachel*, she being a Virgin. St. *Augustine* conceits that in the State of Innocence, the Seed of the Man might be conveighed into the Womb of the Woman, her Virginity remaining uncorrupted, even as now Menstrual blood comes out of the womb of a Virgin, without any Detriment to her Virginity. Which Opinion *Vives* does explain and approve.

But that Women can become fruitful without the Seed of a Man, is incredible. For *Caranza* judges that Story of *Pomponius Mela*, of certain hairy women in an Island, which are fruitful without any Copulation of Men, to be a Fable. Touching *Incubæ*, the Question is different, which I have handled in another place. It was lately reported in *France*, that *Magdalena d'Auvergnont* the Wife of *Hieronymus Augustus de Montelione* a French Knight, did conceive a Son called *Emmanuel*, only by imagination, which *de Lord* a Professer at *Monpelier*, made to be suspected, and *P. Sanchius* in the same place did wish me not to believe it. Old Authors relate that Mares in *Portugal*, do conceive by the wind, *Ludovicus Carrius* does justifie their report. But *Justinus* the Epitomizer, does more rightly explain their meaning to have been only to note the fruitfulness of those Mares, and the speediness of their Conception

## CHAP. XXXII.

## *Of the Womans external Privity in General.*

WHere the Neck of the Womb ends, there begins the last and outmost part of the womb, viz. The *Womans Privity*, or the outward Orifice, or Mouth of the Neck of the womb; others call it *Vulva quasi valva*, as if you would say a folding Door, also *Cunnus a cuneo* from a wedg, or from an Impression [*whence in a Manuscript of English Receipts, I have found it called* the Print] *Plautus* calls it *Salius*, a Wood or Grove, or straight

ſtraight. Alſo by another Metaphor he calls it *Concha* the Shell-fiſh, and *Navis* the Ship; others commonly call it *Natura muliebris*, the Womans Nature. *Varro* tells us the Romans called it *Porca* the Furrow or Parſley-bed, the Sow. And what Experience of biting made, *Suidas* and *Euſtathius* call it *cuneiron* or *cuona*, the Dog, let thoſe judg that can ſpeak by Experience.

It is only one in *Number*. *Obſequens* tells of a Woman that had two Privities, and *Liceus* hath obſerved many ſuch as Monſters.

*Parts of the Privitie.*

Its *Situation* is external, in the former Region of the Share-bones, where very many parts are to be ſeen without Diſſection, and ſome without drawing open the Lips; as the Hairs of the Share, the Lips, and the Hillocks themſelves; the great external Chink, the Wings, the Tentigo; but ſome parts cannot be ſeen without drawing the Lips aſide, as the *foſſa navicularis*, the two ſmaller Chinks by the Nymphs, the bodies of the Clitoris, the Hole of the Neck of the Bladder, with with a fleſhy Valve, the wrinkled Chink or immediate Mouth of the Neck, with four Caruncles, and as many Membranes: where afterwards the Channel begins of which we have ſpoken.

The *Hairs* of the Share in ſuch as are ripe, break out about the Lips, the better to cloſe the Chink. And they are in Women more curled then in Maids; of ſundry colors, being produced by Nature, partly the ſhelter, and partly to cover theſe parts, which ſhe judges ought in decency to be covered. But the Italian and Eaſtern Women out of a deſire of cleanlineſs and nearneſs, do by Art remove theſe Hairs as unprofitable.

See Fig. II. *and* III. *of the* XXVIII. Tab.

The Lips being drawn open, there appears 1. MAGNA FOSSA the large Trench or Ditch, with the outer GREAT CHINK, and we may call the foreſaid Ditch *Foſſa navicularis* the Boat trench, becauſe of its likeneſs to a little Boat or Ship. For it is backwards more deep and broad, that the lower and after-end might degenerate as it were the Ditch or Trench. In this Ditch the Lips being opened, two Holes appear, but hardly viſible, ſave in live bodies, out of which a good quantity of whayiſh Humor iſſues, which moiſtens the Mans Share in the time of Copulation. The Orifice or Beginning of the Neck of the Womb, is in the middle of this Ditch.

Now this Ditch with the external Chink were to be large, that the Child might in the external part come out more eaſily, ſeeing the Skin cannot be ſo ſtretched, as the membranous Subſtance within may be.

Then we meet with two COLLATERAL CHINKS, which are leſs: the right and the left, and they are between the Lips and the Wings.

Now in this large Ditch, there are firſt of all to be ſeen certain *Caruncles* or little Parcels of fleſh, of which we are now to diſcourſe.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

## *Of the Myrtle-ſhaped Caruncles.*

See. Fig. IV. *of* Tab. XXVIII.

IN the Middle of the Ditch or Trench aforeſaid, appear four CARUNCLES or little Particles of fleſh, preſently after the Wings.

They are ſo *ſituate* that each poſſeſſes a corner, and oppoſe one another in manner of a quadrangle.

*One* of them is before in the circumference of the hole of the urinary Paſſage, to ſhut the ſame (it being greater then the reſt, and forked) leaſt after the water is voided, any external thing as Air, &c. ſhould enter into the Bladder.

The *ſecond* oppoſite to the former, is ſituate behind, the *two* remaining ones are Collateral.

Their *Shape* reſembles the Berries of Myrtle.

Their *Size* varies, for ſome have their ſhorter, longer, thicker, and thinner then others. Howbeit they abide til extream old Age, and wear not away ſo much as in thoſe that have uſed frequent Copulation and frequent Child-bearing.

They have ſome Membranes joyned to them, which *Pinæus* together with the Caruncles terms Valves: ſo that their ſubſtance is partly fleſhy and partly membranous.

The *Hole* in the middle between theſe Caruncles, is of various ſize, according to the age of the Party. Howbeit *Rioland* hath obſerved, that in Virgins it equals a third part of the great Chink.

Alſo *He* conceives, theſe Caruncles are made by the wrinkling of the fleſhy ſheath of the Privity, that the external part being narrower then the ſheath, may in time of travel be widened as much as it. And therefore in a Child-bed Woman, after ſhe was brought to bed, he obſerved them for ſeven daies quite obliterated, by reaſon of the great diſtention of the Privity, nor is there any appearance of them till the Privity be again ſtraitned and reduced to its Natural form.

Their *Uſe* is, I. to defend the internal parts, while they immediately ſhut the Orifice of the Neck, that no Air, Duſt, &c. may enter. To which end alſo the Nymphs and Lips of the Privity do ſerve.

II. For titillation and pleaſure, while they are ſwollen, and ſtrongly ſtrain, and milk the Yard as it were, eſpecially in young Laſſes.

But *Pinæus* will have their uſe to be far different. For he ſaies theſe Caruncles, whoſe Extremities are fleſhy Membranes, are ſo bound together, as to leave only a little hole, and ſo to make the Hymen or true Mark of Virginity. Nor will he have it ſeated acroſs or athwart, but long-waies, ſo that the figure of the whole Hymen ſhould make an obtuſe cone, or a cone with the ſharp end cut off.

## CHAP. XXXIV.

## *Of the CLITORIS.*

FAllopius arrogates unto himſelf the Invention or firſt Obſervation of this Part. And *Columbus* glorioully, as in other things he is wont, attributes it to himſelf. Whereas nevertheleſs *Avicenna*, *Albucaſis*, *Ruffus*, *Pollux* and others, have made mention hereof in their Writings.

*The Names of this Part.*

Some cal it the Nymph, as *Aetius* and *Ægineta*. *Columbus* terms it *Dulcedo amoris* the Sweetneſs of Love, and the Sting of *Venus*; becauſe this part is the chief Seat of Delight in carnal Copulation: which if it be gently touched in ſuch as have long abſtained from carnal Embracements, and are deſirous thereof, Seed eaſily comes away. The Greeks call it *Cleitoris*, others name it *Tentigo*, others the womans Yard or Prick: both becauſe it reſembles a Mans Yard, in Situation, Subſtance, Compoſition, Repletion, with Spirits and Erecti-

*Cleitoris.*

*Its likeneſs to a Mans Yard.*

# The FIGURES Explained.

## The XXVIII. TABLE.

This TABLE comprehends the Sheath of the Womb, the Body of the Clitoris, and the external Female Privity, both in Virgins, and such as are defloured.

FIG. I.

AA. *The Bottom of the Womb dissected crosi-waies.*
BB. *The Cavity of the Bottom.*
C. *The Neck of the Womb.*
D. *The Mouth of the Neck in a woman that hath bore a child.*
EE. *The rugged inside of the Neck cut open.*
FF. *The round Ligaments of the Womb cut off.*

FIG. II.

A. *The Nymph or Clitoris rather in its proper Situation.*
BB. *The Hairs of the Privities.*
C. *The Insertion of the Neck of the Bladder near the Privity.*
DD. *The Privity.*
EE. *The wings of the Privity.*
FF. *The Neck of the Womb cut off.*

FIG. III.

A. *The Body of the Clitoris sticking up under the Skin.*
BB. *The outer Lips of the Privity separated one from another.*
CC. *The Alæ or wings, and the Nymphs likewise separated.*
D. *The Caruncle placed about the Urin-hole (a)*
EE. *Two fleshy Myrtle-shap'd Productions.*
FF. *Membranous Expansions which contain the Chink.*

FIG. IV. Presents the Privity of a Girl.

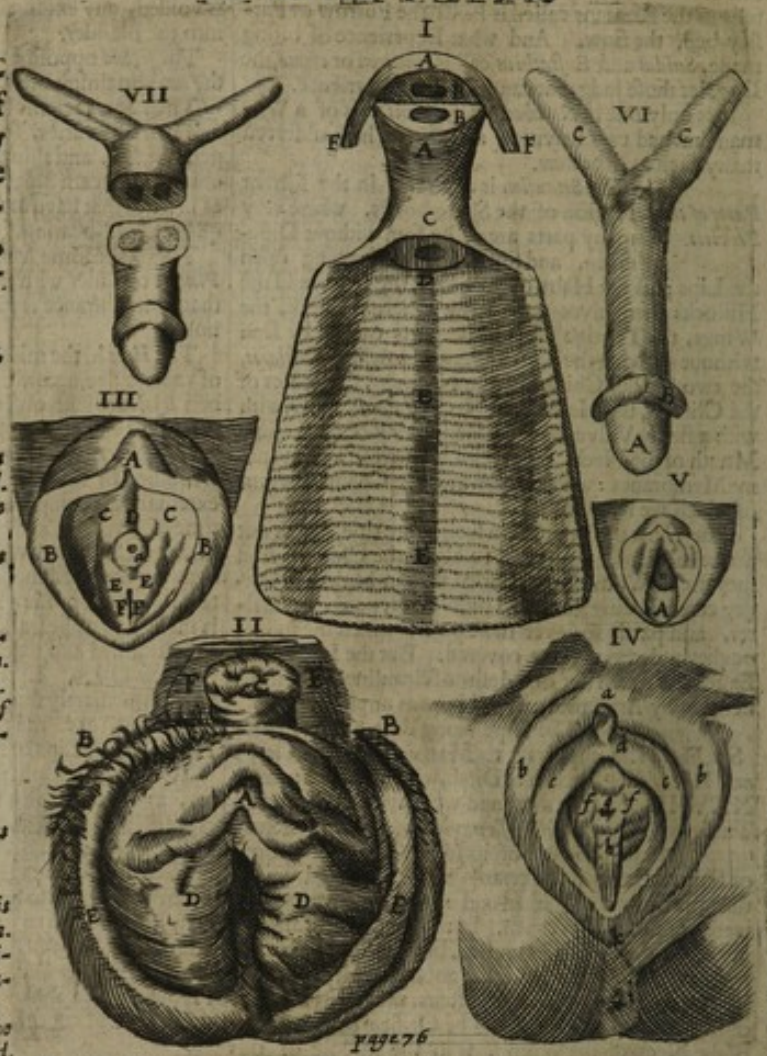
*a.* *The Clitoris.*
*bb.* *The Lips of the Privity.*
*cc.* *The Wings or Nymphs.*
*d.* *The Orifice of the Urethra or Piss-pipe.*
*e. ff. h.* *Four Myrtle-shap'd Caruncles.*
*e.* *The upmost Caruncle which is divided into two, and shuts the Passage of the Piss-pipe.*
*g.* *The Hole of the Hymen or* Virginity-skin.
*h.* *The lowest Caruncle.*
*i.* *The Fundament.*
*k.* *The Perinæum.*

FIG. V. Letter A. Shews the Membrane drawn cross the Privity, which some have taken to be the Hymen or Virginal-skin.

FIG. VI. Shews the Clitoris separated from the Privity.

A. *The top of the Clitoris resembling the Nut of a Mans Yard.*
B. *The Fore-skin thereof.*
CC. *The two Thighs of the Clitoris cut off from the protuberancy of the Hip or Huckle.*

FIG. VII. The Clitoris cut asunder athwart, its inward spungy Substance is apparent.




Erection. And also because it hath somwhat like the Nut and Fore-skin of a Mans Yard, and in some Women it grows as big as the Yard of a man: so that some women abuse the same, and make use thereof in place of a mans Yard, exercising carnal Copulation one with another, and they are termed *Confricatrices* Rubsters. Which lascivious Practice is said to have been invented by one *Philenis* and *Sappho* the Greek Poetress, is reported to have practised the same. And of these I conceive the Apostle *Paul* speaks in the 1. of *Romans* 26. And therefore this part is called *Contemptus virorum* the Contempt of Mankind.

Now the CLITORIS is a small Production. See Tab. XXVIII.

It is *seated* in the middle of the Share, in the upper and former end of the great Chink, where the Nymphs meet.

Its

Its *Size* is commonly ſmall; it lies hid for the moſt part under the Nymphs in its beginning, and afterward it ſticks out a little. For in Laſſes that begin to be amorous, the Clitoris does firſt diſcover it ſelf. It is in ſeveral perſons greater or leſſer: in ſome it hangs out like a mans Yard, namely when young Wenches do frequently and continually handle and rub the ſame, as Examples teſtifie. But that it ſhould grow as big as a Gooſes neck, as *Platerus* relates of one, is altogether præternatural and monſtrous. *Tulpius* hath a like Story of one that had it as long as half a mans finger, and as thick as a Boys Prick, which made her willing to have to do with Women in a Carnal way. But the more this part encreaſes, the more does it hinder a man in his buſineſs. For in the time of Copulation it ſwells like a mans Yard, and being erected, provokes to Luſt.

*Its Subſtance.* Its *Subſtance* is not boney (though it was ſo in a Venetian Courtezan, who had it cut off, and the hardneſs whereof did inflame the Yards of the Lovers) but as that of a mans Yard, it conſiſts of two nervous Bodies hard and thick, within porous and ſpungy (that this part might riſe and fall) ariſing diſtinctly from the Hip-bones, about the brims of the ſaid Bones. But they are joyned together about the Share-bone, and make up the Body of the Yard.

*Its Muſcles.* Its *Muſcles* are, according to *Pinæus* three, according to *Riolanus* and *Veſlingius* four, like as in a mans Yard, and ſerving to the ſame Intent. The two uppermoſt round ones, reſt upon longer Ligaments, and proceed from one and the ſame place; the two others being lower, broad, and fleſhy, proceed from the Sphincter of the Fundament.

*Tentigo.* The outmoſt End or Head, ſticking out like the nut of a mans Yard (the reſt lying hid) is called TENTIGO, having an hole as a mans Yard, but no thoroughfar.

It ſeems to be covered with a Fore-skin as it were, which is made of a ſmall Skin ariſing from the Conjunction of the Wings.

*Its Veſſels.* Alſo it hath *Veſſels* of all ſorts brought unto it.

*Veins and Arteries* common to it and the Privity, a *Nerve* from the ſixt Conjugation, all more large then the Nature of its Body might ſeem to require, to cauſe an exact Feeling and Erection.

*Its Uſe.* Its *Uſe* is to be the Seat of Delectation and Love. And it is like the *Frænulum* or Bridle on the Nut of a mans Yard. For by the rubbing thereof, the Seed is brought away.

Howbeit *Aquapendent* conceives that the Uſe of the Clitoris, is to ſuſtain the Neck of the Womb in the time of Copulation.

*Bellonius* and *Iovius* do conceive that this is the part wherein the Æthiopians were wont to circumciſe women. *Aetius* and *Ægineta* do ſhew us how to cut it off, confounding it with the Nymph. And even at this day, the Eaſtern Nations, in regard of its bignes extraordinary, do ſear it, that it may grow no more. And they hire ancient women to perform this Piece of Surgery, which they improperly term Circumciſion. And it is to thoſe people as neceſſary, in regard of the deformed greatneſs of the Clitoris, as it is comely; for at *Alcair* in *Ægypt*, Wenches go naked after this Circumciſion, and when they are married, they wear a Smock only. Of which things is alſo this kind of Circumciſion, I have diſcourſed at large in my *Puerperial Antiquities*.

## CHAP. XXXV.
## *Of the Wings and Lips.*

TWo red Productions offer themſelves to our view between the Lips, which they term *pterugia* and ALAS, that is the *Wings*.

*Galen* calls them NYMPHS, either becauſe they do firſt admit the bridegroom, or becauſe they have charge of the Waters and Humors iſſuing forth. For between them as it were two walls, the urin is caſt out to a good diſtance with an hiſſing noiſe, without wetting the Lips of the Privity. Others call them the Cuticular Caruncles. See FIG. III. *and* IV. *of the* Tab. XXVIII.

They are *ſeated* between the two Lips.

Their *Magnitude* is not alwaies alike: for ſomtimes one Wing, otherwhiles both, ſeldomer in Virgins then in women, do grow ſo big, eſpecially being frequently drawn by the fingers, or otherwiſe by an Afflux of Humors: that by reaſon of the impediments thereby happening, tis neceſſary to cut them. And *Galen* tells us that this Diſeaſe is frequent among the Ægyptians; ſo that they are fain to cut them in Virgins that are to marry, and in other women alſo; and *Aetius* and *Ægineta* do ſpeak to the ſame purpoſe, which others will have to be underſtood of the Clitoris. And they are in the right as I conceive, becauſe the Clitoris being over long, may hinder the amorous Embracement, and may be raiſed like the Yard; but the Nymphs cannot be this way troubleſom, which are ſofter, and in ſome do hang down very long, yea in Whores that trade with theſe Parts.

They are in *Number* two; the right and the left, now they are in the beginning commonly joyned together, where they make a fleſhy Production, like a Fore-skin cloathing the Clitoris.

Their *Figure* is triangular, but one angle is blunter then the reſt, viz. that which comes without the Lips. It is like a Cocks-comb: and for that cauſe haply by *Juvenal* termed *Criſta*.

Its *Colour* is red like a Cocks-comb under his throat.

T is covered with a thin *Coat* rather then Skin, as the Lips and other parts of the Mouth.

Its *Subſtance* is partly membranous, ſoft, and ſpungy (bred peradventure of the doubling in of the Skin, at the ſides of the great Chink) and partly fleſhy.

Their *Uſe* is the ſame with that of the Myrtle-ſhap'd Caruncles. And moreover that the Urin might be conveighed between them, as between two wals. Some conceive they ſerve as a Ligament, to ſuſpend and ſtraiten as it were, in Virgins, the lower part of the external Chink, which ſeems unlikely. The Lips perform that Office, and the Nymphs ſhould rather ſtraiten ſuch as are defloured, in whom they are longer.

*The Lips and Venus Hillocks.* The two LIPS, between which the external Chink conſiſts, have certain ſrifings adorned with hair, which are termed *Monticuli Veneris*, the Hillocks of *Venus*. In women they are flatter then in maidens. This Part is that which is properly termed the Privity. Theſe Hillocks are longiſh, ſoft Bodies, of ſuch a Subſtance, the like whereof is not to be found in the whole Body again: for it conſiſts partly of Skin, and partly of ſpungy Fleſh, under which is placed a parcel of hard Fat.

The lower *Juncture* of the Lips, is in Virgins tight,

ſtrait, as it were a ligamentiſh Subſtance for firmneſs; but in ſuch as have loſt their Maiden-head, it is looſe, and in ſuch as have had a Child, yet looſer; as *Riolanus* hath found by Experience, and any body elſe may find that covets the Glory of ſuch Experiments.

The *Uſe* hath been hinted before.

## CHAP. XXXVI.

## *Of the Membranes which infold the Child in the Womb.*

ALL the Parts ſerving for Generation, both in Men and Women are explained. But becauſe my deſign is to diſcourſe of what ever comes under knife of an Anatomiſt, I muſt alſo propound ſome things which are contained in the Womb of a woman with child, ſuch as are

*Wherein the Child in the Womb differs from a grown perſon*

I. The Infant, whoſe Structure differs only in ſome things, from that of a grown perſon. Which I ſhall briefly recount, as I did publickly, not long ſince demonſtrate the ſame, at the Diſſection of a Child. Now the parts of a large Child differ from thoſe of a tender Embryo, and the parts of both theſe from thoſe of a grown Man. 1. In *Magnitude*, either proportionate to the whole Body, or leſs proportionate. 2. In *Colour*, ſome parts are more red, ſome more pale then in a grown perſon. 3. In *Shape*, as may be ſeen in the Kidneys and Head. 4. In *Cavity*, as in the Veſſels of the Navil and Heart. 5. In *Number*, either abounding, as in the Bones of the Head, Breaſt, and Sutures of the Skull; or *deficient*, as in the Call, ſome Bones, of the Back, Wriſt, &c. 6. In *Hardneſs*, as in the ſaid Bones. 7. In *Situation*, as the Teeth. 8. In *Uſe*, as the Navil-veſſels, and thoſe of the Heart, the Gut Cæcum, &c. 9. In *Motion*, as the Lungs, &c. 10. In *Excrements*. 11. In *Strength* and Perfection of the Whole.

## The FIGURES Explained.

This TABLE ſhews how the Parts of a Child in the Womb differ from thoſe of a grown Perſon.

### FIG. I.

AA. *The Deputy-kidneys.*

BB. *The true Kidneys, as yet diſtinguiſhed into ſundry Kernels, il expreſſed by the Graver, in reſpect of their Situation.*

C. *The Arteria magna, out of which branches go to the Deputies and the Kidneys.*

D. *The Vena cava out of which the Emulgents proceed, and the little Veins of the Deputies.*

FIG. II. Shews the Poſture of a Child in the Womb, which does nevertheleſs ſomtimes vary.

A. *The Head of the Child hanging downwards, ſo as its Noſe is hid between its Knees.*

BB. *The Buttocks to which the Heels are applied.*

CC. *The Arms.*

D. *The Cord drawn along its Neck, and turned back over its Fore-head, which is continued with the Womb-cake, expreſſed in the next Figure.*

### FIG. III.

AAA. *The Membrane Chorion divided.*

BB. *The Membrane Amnios, as yet covering the Cord.*

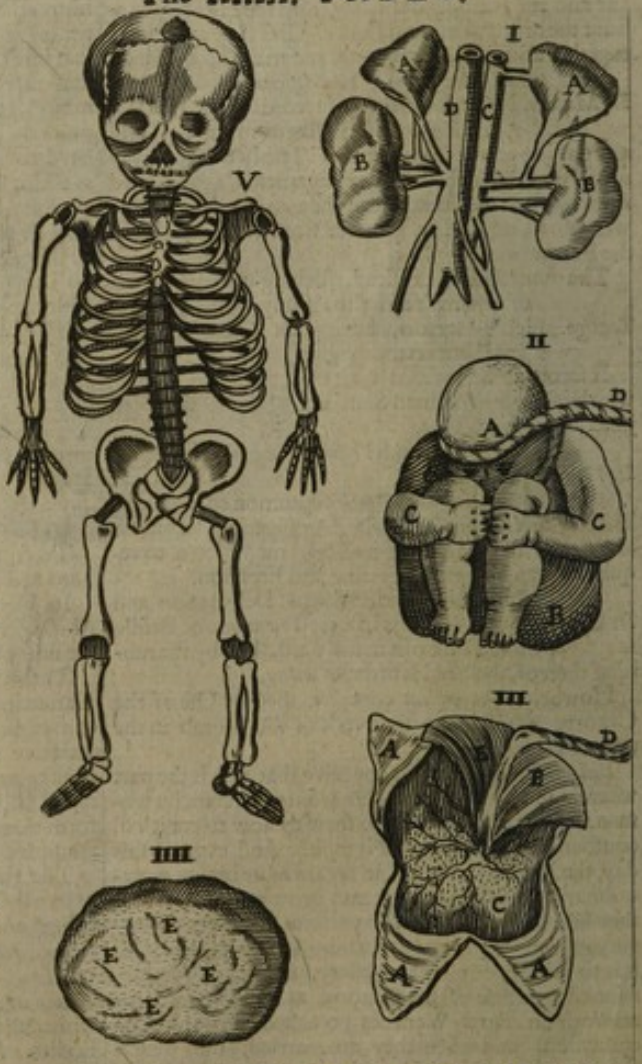
CC. *The hollow and inner ſide of the womb-cake which looks towards the Child, with the Twigs of Veſſels.*

D. *A Portion of the twiſted Cord.*

FIG. IV. Shews the outſide of the Placenta, which cleavs to the Womb, though here ſeparated, with the Clifts and Chinks [EEEE] which vary in Number and Depth.

FIG. V. Shews the Skeleton of a young Child, in very many things differing from that of a Perſon grown up; as appears by the Text.

## The XXIX. TABLE.




Th

These things will be more evident, if we shall run over all the particles which are in a Child different from the parts of our Bodies,

1. The *Umbilical* or *Navil-Vessels*, vulgarly called the *Navil strings*, are three, and hollow throughout to pass and repass the Mothers blood, which in grown persons turn to Ligaments.

2. There is little or no appearance of the Call, because there is as yet no publick digestion of the Stomach or Guts, and they are sufficiently cherished by the Members of the Child folded together and the heat of the Womb.

3. The *stomach* is smal, no bigger then a Wall-nut, and for the most part empty, there being no publick Concoction, or it is moistened with a clammy Humor.

4. The *Cæcum intestinum* is large, somtimes thick, other whiles long, for the most part ful of Excrements, of which I spake before.

5. The *thin Guts* appear contracted, colored with yellow Excrements descending through the Gall-bladder.

6. The thick Guts especially the *Rectum*, do contain thick black Excrements, from the private digestion, of the Stomach, Guts, Liver and Spleen or of the Spleen only, voided hither by the *Coliaca*, or of the Liver alone, purged out by the Choler-passage. They are black, through their long stay.

7. The *true Kidneys*, are compacted of very many Kernels. The deputy Kidneys are large and more hollow.

8. The *Liver* with its bulk fills both the Hypochondria. The *Spleen* is smal, because there is yet no fermentation in the Stomach and Veins. The color of both, is more bright and red, then in a grown person.

9. In the *Dugs* there are no kernels, only a little sign of a Nipple.

10. The *Thymus* growing to the Vessels, is visible beyond the Heart with a threefold large kernel.

11. The *Ears* of the Heart are large, especially the right Ear, and pale.

12. The *Unions* of the Vessels in the Heart, by *Anastomosis* and a little Channel, are singular, of which we shall speak in the following Book.

13. The *Lungs* shine with a yellow redness, which is afterwards allayed by their motion. Because they are at present immoveable, because transpiration alone and the Ventilation of the Mothers Blood do suffice the Child in the Womb, unless it happen to cry in the Womb.

14. In the *Head* all things are large. The Eyes stick out, the skull is exceeding big, but divided into many parts, the brain is soft and commonly overflows with moisture; the *Pericranium* continued with the *Dura mater*, passes through the Sutures.

15. In the *Skeleton*, the Bones of the whole Body are soft in the first months, afterwards some are hard, according as they are of use, as the Ribs; some are gristly, as the Brest-bone, the Wrist-bone, and the Tarsus or beginning of the Foot (all without any hard *Apophyses* or *Epiphyses*) which nevertheless in tract of time do grow to a bony hardness, the middle parts growing hard first: and after their hardning some remaine one continued bone, others are divided into many Particles.

16. The *Crown* of the Head remains very long open, covered only with a Membrane, which by little and little with age grows close up. The *Sagittal* suture reaches to the Nose. The greater *Conjunctions* of the bones are moveable, placed one upon another, that in the coming out of the Womb, the skul being pressed, may give way to the straitness of the passage. The *Os Cuneiforme* is divided into four parts. The Bones of the *Nose* and both the Jawes are divided, a Gristle coming between. The *Teeth* lie hid in their sockets, covered with the Gums. The *Vertebræ* of the Back, have no sharp productions, that they may not hurt the Womb. The *Breast-bone* being soft, hath in the middle according to the length thereof, four little round bones, Plane and Pory. Also the *Flanke*, *Hip* and *Share-bones* are distinguished by Gristles. The *Carpus* and *Tarsus* are Gristly, and afterward as the Child grows bigger, they are spread out into divers bones, when there is a necessity of using the Hands and Feet, to handle and go.

17. In the *outward parts*, as the Skin, Hairs, Nails, &c. there is some difference, known to all.

II. The Membranes which invest the Child, cloath and cover it: of which in this Chapter.

III. The Navil-vessels, of which in the Chapter following.

The MEMBRANES which infold the Child, are the first thing bred in the Womb after Conception, to fence the nobler part of the Seed as may be seen with the Eyes, even in the smalleſt Conceptions, and as the Authority of all Authors well-near does testifie.

*Whether the heat of the Womb only be the Efficient cause of the Membranes.*

Their *Efficient cause*, is the formative faculty, and not only the Heat of the Womb; as the Heat is wont to cause a crust upon Bread or Gruel. For then, I. The Crust would stick hard to the Child and could not be separated.

II. The Heat of the Womb is not so great, as to be able to bake the substance of the Seed in so short a time; whereas these Membranes are bred, well near immediately after the Conception. And if there were so great Heat in the Womb, no Conception could be made, according to *Hippocrates* in the 62. *Aphorism* of his *fifth Book*.

*Sundry opinions concerning the matter of the said Membranes.*

We conceive their matter to be the thicker part of the womans seed. Others, as *Arantius*, will have them to be productions of the inner Tunicles, the Chorion of the Peritonæum, and the Amnion of the *Membrana carnosa*. Others that the Mothers seed alone makes these Membranes: others, that they are made as well of the mans as the Womans seed.

*Their Number. What the Secondine is, and why so called?*

These Membranes in Man-kind are two, in brute Beasts three: which being joyned and growing together, do make the SECUNDINE so called.

1. Because it is the second tabernacle of the Child, next the Womb.

2. Because it comes away by a second birth, after the Child. [Hence in English we call it the After-birth.]

The *first Membrane* is termed AMNIOS because of of its softness and thinness, also *Agnina*, *Charta Virginea*, *Indusium*, &c. And it is the thinnest of them all, white, soft, transparent, furnished with a few very smal Veins and Arteries, dispersed within the foldings thereof. It compasses the Child immediately and cleaves every where almost to the Chorion, especially at the ends, about the Womb-Cake, united in the middle thereof, where the Umbilical Vessels come forth. Yet we can easily separate it from the Chorion. There is in it plenty

plenty of Moisture and Humors wherein the child swims which proceeds in Brutes from Sweat, in Mankind from Sweat and Urin. But *Aquapendent* having observed that in Brutes the Sweat and Urin were contained in several little Membranes, the latter more low and externally in the Chorion, the former higher, and more inwardly in the Amnion; he thought it was so in Mankind much more. But Experience and Reason are against it, because there are no Passages to the Chorion. And because we do not find the Urachus open in Mankind, therefore the Urin cannot be thence collected in the Amnios, but is voided by the Yard if it be troublesom, and the remainder is kept till the time of the Birth, in the Bladder, which in Children new born is for the most part distended and full, but in Brutes empty. Nor does the sharpness of the Urin offend the Child in the Womb, because 1. It is but little in a Child in the Womb, because of the benignity and purity of its Nourishment. 2. The Skin is daubed with a clammy Humor, and Brutes are defended by their hairiness. Therefore the *Use* is

*Whence the Liquor proceed that is in the Amnios.*

I. That the Child floating therein as in a Bath, may be higher and less burthensom to the Mother.

II. That the Child may not strike against any neighboring hard Parts.

III. That in the Birth, the Membrane being broke, this Humor running out, may make the way through the Neck of the Womb, smooth, easie, and slippery.

Part of the Amnios does ever and anon hang about the Head of the Child when it comes forth, and then the Child is said to be *Galeatus* or Helmeted. This Helmet the Midwives diligently observe for divers respects, and they prognosticate good fortune to the Child, and others that use it, if it be red; but if it be black, the præsage bad fortune.

*Paræus*, *Lemnius* and others, conceive that the happy and strong Labor of the Mother, is the cause that the foresaid Helmet comes out with the child, but in a troublesom Labor it is left behind. *Spigelius* contrariwise, thinks that when the Mother and child are weak, it comes away. *Bestonus* makes the Reason to be the toughness of the Amnios, which the child is not able to break through, or the weakness of the child, for which cause it seldom lives to ripeness of Age. I have seen both those that have come into the world with this Helmet, and those without it, miserable; and by chance it comes to cleave both to the Heads of strong and weak children.

The second Membrane is termed Chorion, because it compasses the child like a Circle.

This immediately compasses the former, and lies beneath it in a round shape like a Pancake, whose inner or hollow part it covers and invelops, spreading it self out according to the measure thereof. It is hardly separated therefrom, and it strongly unites the Vessels to the Womb-liver, and bears them up. Towards the child it is more smooth and slippery, but where it is spread under the Womb-cake, and fastned thereto, it is more rough: also it is sufficiently thick and double. In Brutes the *Cotyledons* cleave hereunto, which consist of a fleshy and spungy substance. But in Mankind, this Membrane cleavs immediately to the womb, by a certain round and reddish lump of flesh, fastned to one part only of the womb (commonly the upper and former part) nor does it compass the whole child; being framed of an innumerable company of Branches, of Veins, and Arteries, among which blood out of the Vessels seems to be shed and interlarded.

*What the Cotyledons are.*

That same round Mass is called Placenta Uteri the Womb-pancake, by reason of its Shape; also the Womb Liver: which I will now exactly describe according as it hath been my hap to see it.

Its *Figure* is circular, but the Circumference unequal, in which I have observed five Prominences ranked in due order, and the Membrane Chorion in the intermediate spaces, thicker then ordinary. Where it looks towards the Womb, it is rough and waved, like baked bread that hath chinks in it; and being cut in this part, it discovers an infinite number of fibres, which if you follow, they will bring you to the Trunks of the Veins.

It is one in *Number*, even in those who bear two or more children at a burthen. For into one Womb-cake, so many Cords are inserted in divers places, as there are children.

Its *Magnitude* varies according to the condition of the Bodies and the children. Yet it is about a foot in the Diameter.

The *Substance* thereof seems to be a Body wove together of infinite little fibres, blood as it were congealed being interposed, which is easily separated. Seeing therefore it hath a Parenchyma, it is no wonder, if like a kind of Liver it make or prepare blood to nourish the child.

The Nature and Appearance of the Substance, is not every where alike. For here and there it is *glandulous*, especially in the tops of the Hillocks, as being the Emunctories of the childs Work-house, placed in the outmost Verges. It is *thicker* in the middle of the hillocks, and thin about the brims, variously interwoven with the Capillary Veins. For,

It hath *Vessels*, viz. *Veins* and *Arteries* running through the same, from the Umbelical Vessels, which by little and little are all extenuated about the brims of the Womb-cake, making wonderful contextures, closely sticking to the Substance thereof, so that no part of the Branches is void. They are joyned together by various Anastomoses, which shall be hereafter described, through which the blood in the child runs back, out of the Arteries into the Veins. For I have observed in the Veins of the Womb-cake, how that the blood contained, may easily by ones finger or an instrument, be forced towards the Trunk or Cord, but not towards the Womb-cake. The contrary where to happens in the Arteries, which by impulse of the finger, do easily send the blood to the Womb-liver, but hardly to the Trunk.

Its *Use* is 1. To support the Navil-vessels, under which it is spred as a Pillow.

2. Because it hath a singular kind of Parenchyma, to prepare blood to nourish the Child, as the true Liver does in grown persons. For it mediately sucks the Mothers blood through its Veins, out of the Veins of the womb, and prepares and tempers it for use, and soon after sends it through the greater Navil-vein, into the Liver of the child, that it may be carried right forth unto the Heart, by the Anastomosis and little Channel; out of which by the Arteries it is distributed into the whole body of the child to nourish the same. But part of the blood returns through the Iliack Arteries, to the Womb-cake, as an appurtenance to the child; partly to preserve the same by its heat, and to nourish it with Arterial blood, partly that it may be there further perfected; which Labor being finished, it returns back again into the concomitant Veins, that together with other blood, newly supplied by the Pipes of the womb, it may pass back again by the Umbelical Veins, and repeat the foresaid Circle.

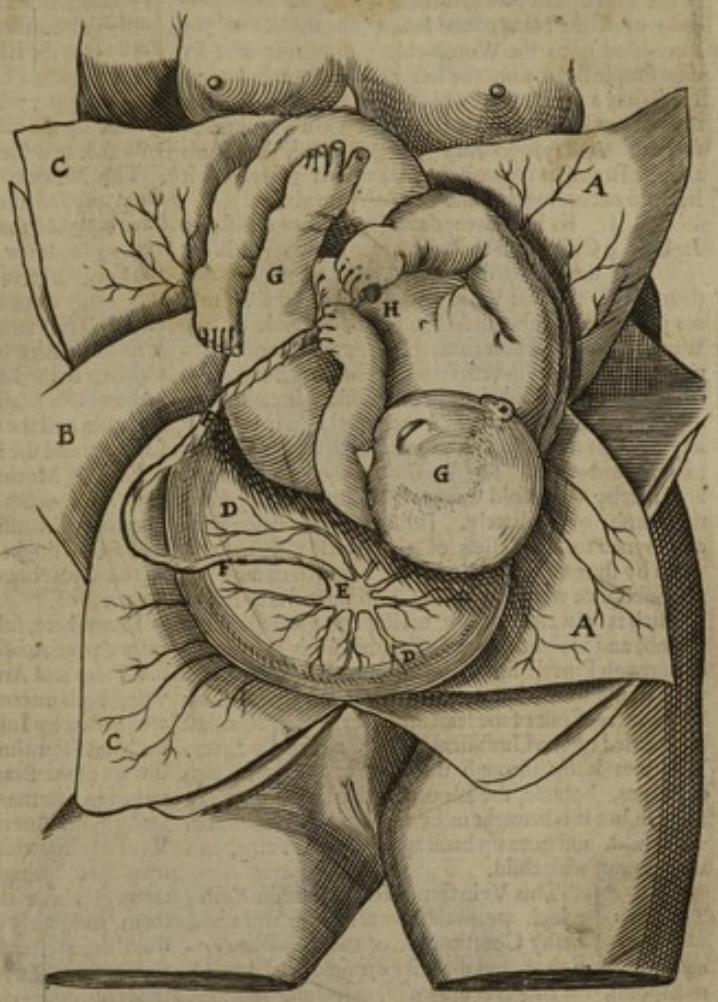
The

## The FIGURE Explained.

This TABLE presents a Child in the Womb naked, al the Coats both proper and common being divided.

AA. *Portions of the Chorion dissected and removed from their place.*
B. *A portion of the Amnios.*
CC. *The Membrane of the Womb dissected.*
DD. *The Womb-cake or womb-liver, being a Lump of Flesh furnished with divers Vessels, through which the Child receives its nourishment.*
E. *The Branching of the Vessels, which in this place make one Ligament to cover the Umbilical Vessels.*
FF. *The Band or Ligament, through which the Umbelical Vessels are carried from the Womb-cake to the Navil.*
GG. *The Situation of a perfect Child in the Womb, ready to be born.*
H. *The Implantation of the Umbilical or Navil-vessels into the Navil.*

## The XXX. TABLE.




The *third* called ALLANTOIDES the *Pudding-membrane*, does not cloath the whol conception, but compasses it round like a Girdle, or a Pudding.

Its *Use* is, to receive Urin from the Urachus in Brutes. For in Mankind there is no such Membrane: for the child in a woman, its Urin is received by the Amnios mingled with Sweat: or is kept in the Bladder till the Birth-time. And therefore *Spigelius* cannot be excused, for admitting this Membrane in Mankind; whose Description (because it belongs not to this Anatomy) he that desires to see, let him look in *Aquapendent.*

# Chap. XXXVII. *Of the Umbelical or Navil-vessels.*

THe Membranes being dissected and removed, the UMBELICAL Vessels come in view, so called, because in the Region of the Navil, the child being excluded, and the blood a little forced up to nourish the same, they are cut off, and being tied in a knot, do make

*What the Navil is, and of what parts it consists.*

The NAVIL which is in the middle of the Belly, yea and of the whole Body, if you measure it with a circle, the Arms being stretched out.

Now there are four Navil-vessels: ONE VEIN, TWO ARTERIES, and the URACHUS. Which are covered and veiled as it were with a certain common *Coat* or Crust, which some call *Intestinulus, Funiculus, Laqueus*, &c. which does not only wrap up all the Vessels, but also distinguishes them one from another.

And the Use of this Coat, is to keep the Vessels from being intangled one within another, broken, or any other way hurt.

*The Vena umbilicalis.*

The VENA UMBILICALIS, much greater then the Artery, being carried through the two Coats of the Peritonæum, is bred in the first place before all other Veins, in respect of Perfection, because it ought to afford nourishment to the rest.

*Its Insertion.*

It is seen inserted into the Liver by a Cleft, and goes through the Navil, sometimes simple, otherwhiles double, and divided into two Branches, the length of about an Ell and half, as far as

to the Womb-cake. And it is variously coiled or rouled about, that its length might prove no hinderance. From the Navil it goes over the Breast, and from thence it is obliquely carried over the right and left side of the Throat and Neck, turning it self back at the hinder-part of the Head, and so over the middle of the Fore-head unto the Womb-cake; sometimes also by this simple flexure on the left hand, it compasses the Neck like a chain. All which is to be understood of the whole Cord, and the rest of the Vessels contained therein. And this Journey being finished, it spreads infinite Branches through the Secondine, till it loose it self into exceeding delicate fine hairy thrids.

*Its Use.* Its *Use* is to draw Blood to nourish the Child, and to carry it into its Liver, Now the way is doubtful. Most men perswade themselves, that the Veins and Arteries of the Womb, are joyned with the little Veins and Arteries of the Womb-cake, and that from them joyntly blood is derived into the Navil-vessels to the Child. But the *Arteries* are to be excluded from this Office, because they are not joyned to the womb, nor ought they to carry any thing to the child, but to carry back from the child to the womb-cake. The *Veins* do only bring thither, and that by a twofold way, either immediately from the womb, or mediately. Immediately, when they are joyned to the Vessels of the womb; mediately, when by the interceeding or going between of any fleshy Substance whatsoever, both in Mankind and Beasts (which is alwaies for the most part glewed to the womb, and violently broke off in the Birth) it is sucked through Pipes, first out of the womb into the outer parts of the womb-cake, and thence into the Capillary Veins thereof, out of the least into the greater, till at last it is carried to the Umbilical Trunk, and to the Liver. Nor does it slip through the Veins of the womb into the Pipes, because the Blood of the Veins does not nourish, but it is brought in by the Arteries in a woman with child, and goes up back again by the Veins, in a woman not with child.

*The Knots.* This Vein seems full of certain *Knots*: which are nothing but a more thick and fleshy Constitution of the *Membrana carnosa* in those Parts; and a wider opening, wherewith as a spoon, the Blood is drawn in, in its long Journey, and is by little and little stopped, least it flow too violently; that the Blood may be there the longer labored, as we see in the Spermatick Vessels: and that the Vessels may be stronger.

By the Number of these Knots, the Midwives do guess the number of Children that a woman shal bear: and if the Knot which first follows, be white and narrow, they foretel that the next child will be a Girl, if red, round, and swelling, that it will be a Boy. The first Divination is vain; for there are as many Knots in the Navil of the last child, as of the first. But the latter may be excused by the defect or abundance of Natural heat, whence the Diversity of Sexes arises. From the distance of the Knots one from another, they foretel that the Conceptions will be sooner or longer one after another, and that there will be Twins, if one Knot rest upon, or be near to another. Which we have often found to be false, though chance, do now and then confirm the hope of credulous women.

*Arteries.* TWO ARTERIES are inserted into the Iliack Arteries, and are carried with the Vein after the foresaid manner to the womb-cake, where it is spred about in divers Branches, whose *Use* is not, as hath hitherto been believed, to bring to the child vital Spirit with Arterial blood, because these Arteries are not joyned to the Arteries of the Womb, according to the most certain Observation of *Aranius*; but to carry back part of the Arterial blood, which is superfluous to the Nourishment of the Child, by the two Iliack Branches into the Placenta or Womb-cake, partly to nourish the same, and fill it with vital Spirit. Partly that the Blood may there be made more perfect, being weakned by a long Journey, and nourishing the Membranes; which afterwards runs back again to the Child, by the hairy twigs of the veins joyned thereto, with that new blood coming out of the womb.

This Motion is confirmed by Experience. I have often pressed the swelling veins with my finger, and have observed that the blood is easily forced out of the vein towards the Child, not to the Womb-cake, where the knots like valves do stop the same; contrariwise, it is easily forced out of the Arteries into the Womb-cake. The same is manifest by Ligatures. For the Umbilical Arteries of a live Child being bound, as yet cleaving to the Mother being alive, *Walæus* hath observed and others after him, that they pulse between the Ligature and the Child, but have no Pulse between the Ligature and the Mothers womb.

*Anastomoses of the umbilical Vessels.* For this Motions sake the venal and Arterial branches are joyned together by *Anastomoses*, within the Womb-cake, that the Passage might be ready for the blood to run back out of the little Arteries, into the little Veins.

I have here, following my own sight, observed several waies of Anastomoses. For sometimes the twigs of the Veins and Arteries, do go one over another crosswise, both internally and externally. Sometimes they are joyned by Insertion, sometimes they couple side to side, and sometimes they are wreathed. The smallest Twigs of the Branches are inoculated into the greater, united in like manner, but with more blunt Anastomoses, till the Arteries are reduced to four Branches, the Vein to two, which at last grow into the trunks of their own kind, springing out of the Womb-cake. The Arteries go about the veins, and do partly accompany them, and partly creep alone by themselves. I suspect that there are Anastomoses only in those places, wherein they are necessary for the passing Blood out of the Arteries into the veins, and that the solitary veins do suck fresh Blood out of the Womb.

*Their Twisting.* Without the Navil and Womb-cake, these vessels being united, as they pass along like a *Rope*, they are well twisted one with another, yet for the most part by an orderly Circumvolution, even as a larger Rope is made of smaller cords twisted together, representing the wreathings of our Unicorns Horn, which we could easily perceive by holding it to the light. Which is so contrived 1. Least by the winding passage of the Navil-vessels, the motion of the Blood should be hindred, seeing every vessel that is twisted, keeps it course. 2. That the Child in the womb might receive its pittance of Nourishment by little and little, without danger of choaking. 3. That by this wreathed and crooked Journey, the future Aliment of the Child, might be by little and little purged and clarified.

Moreover, it is to be *noted* in the twisting of the cord 1. That knots and spots are transparent in the vein and not in the Arteries, by reason of the Blood appearing through a thinner Coat. 2. That a spans distance from the Conjunction there appears, a wonderful contexture, and a rougher and more confused twisting then in other Parts. 3. In the outer Coat of the Intestinum, infinite cuts and lines are seen imprinted as it were

ware, according to the length thereof, colored on the outside with blood, ſuch as are to be ſeen in the *Cerebellum*.

*The length of the Rope.* Its *Length* was before noted, viz. an ell and a half, in a grown child, or three ſpans, that the child may ſtir more eaſily, the blood may be better prepared, and the ſecundine drawn out. If this cord be ſometime either overtwiſted, or by motion wrapped about the Neck of the child, there is danger that the child will be ſtrangled, and the Mother have an hard labor, becauſe the child is drawn back by reaſon of the ſhortneſs of the cord, nor can it bear the violence of an indiſcreet Midwife. I have ſeen it twiſted divers times about the Neck of a child, whereby the birth was retarded for divers hours, and when the child came forth it could hardly breath: if in ſuch a caſe the childs Face be red tis a good ſign, but a deadly token if the Face be black and blew.

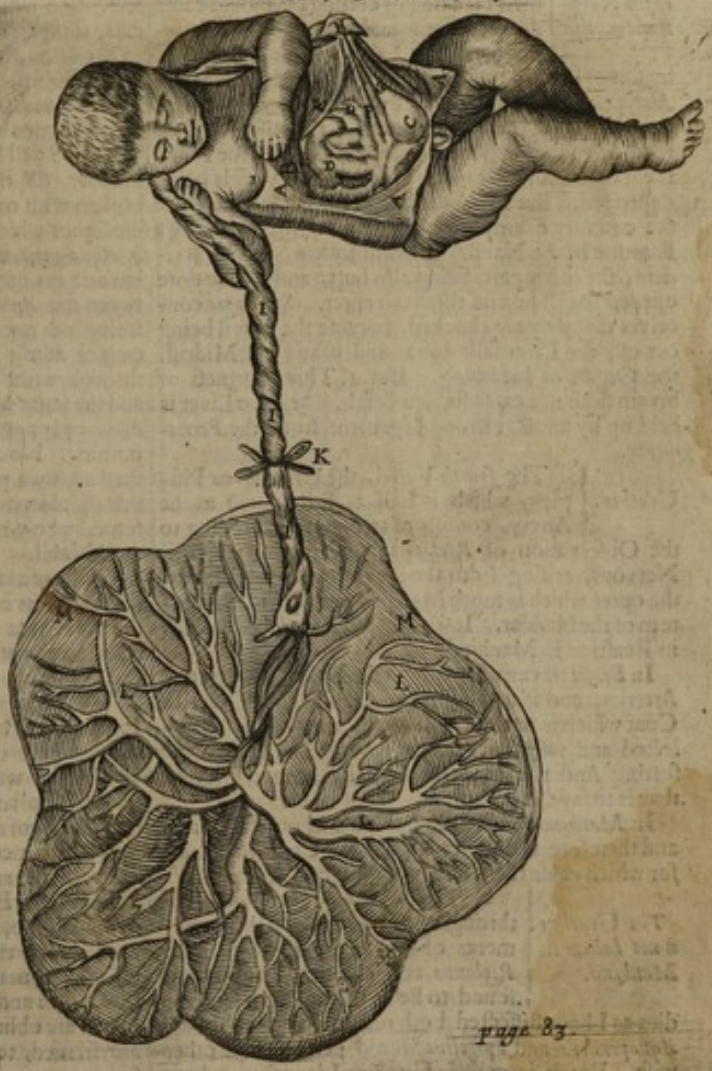
*Its thickneſs.* Tis as *thick* as a mans Finger, becauſe ſtrength and a juſt capacity is requiſite to ſuſtain the Veſſels. When it is dry it becomes ſmaller, and it is kept to procure other births.

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

It ſhews the Child taken out of the Womb, but faſtned ſtill to the Womb-Cake, the Umbilical Veſſels being ſeparated about their Riſe.

AAA. *The Abdomen or Belly opened.*
B. *The Liver of the Child.*
C. *The Piſs-bladder.*
DD. *The Guts.*
E. *The Umbilical Vein.*
FF. *The Umbilical Arteries.*
G. *The Urachus or Piſs-pipe.*
H. *The Umbilical Veſſels out of the Body joyned together by one Membrane.*
III. *The Umbilical or Navil-veſſels extended from the Chorion to the Child.*
K. *A Ligature which makes the Veins beneath it ful and the Arteries lanke and empty.*
LLLL. *The Veins and Arteries diſperſed through the Womb-cake.*
MMM. *The Womb-cake.*

## The XXXI. TABLE.




*page 83.*

*The binding of the Navil.* The Child being born, the rope muſt be tied near the Belly, the diſtance of two or three Fingers breadths, with a ſtrong rhred wound often about, and about three Fingers from the binding, it muſt be cut off, and the Navil muſt be lookt to, till it dry and fall off, of its own accord. Now the times of its falling of are uncertain, in reſpect of the Conſtitution of the child, and the plenty of Blood which flows thereto, from whence the Midwives Prognoſticate how long the child ſhall live. If it fall of the fift day from the hour it was tied, they foretell the children will be long-lived; if on the third day, they ſay they ſhall be ſhort-lived.

The Navil being thus ſhaped and confirmed, is covered with a ſtrong Skin, which may be preternaturally ſtretched to an immenſe degree, to receive the Guts in a Rupture of the Navil, ſuch as *Severinus* hath deſcribed in a Picture, and as my ſelf have ſeen at *Haſnia* in an ancient Woman.

In ſome there is a paſſage through the Navil into the Belly. *Alpinus* reports that the Ægyptians cure a bloody Flux, by thruſting their Fingers into the Patients Navil, and turning it divers times about. Dung came out of the Navil of a Student, and Worms like Earth-worms with quittor came out of the Navil of a Boy, according to the Obſervation of *Salmuth*. *Tulpius* ſaw quittor which Nature ſent from the Cheſt, come out at the Navil, and *Folius* found Stones bred here. I. D. *Horſtius* obſerved blood flow from the Navil in a certain Gentleman, monthly. And he

tells

tels us of a Boy who had a wheyish liquor like Urin dropping from his Navil, and sometimes fresh blood. For the inner Vessels are many times opened, by the Acrimony of the blood and wheyish humors. Also the Navil doth insensibly open it self when purgatives, Medicines for the Mother and to kill the Worms, &c. are applied thereto.

Now these Vessels, after the Child is born, do within the Belly degenerate into Ligaments: the Vein to a Ligament of the Liver, the Arteries into lateral Ligaments of the Bladder. Because their use is now lost, and there is no longer any passage of the Mothers blood, unless they be sometimes preternaturally opened as in the examples alleadged. Yet are they not of so great moment, that their breaking or cutting off, should cause death, as some and among them *Laurentius* imagine, being questionles abused by some Fabulous story. For they report that the Ægyptians punish Robbers by flaying them alive, and that they leave the Navil untoucht, that they may be tormented the longer: for they think when the Navil is cut off a man must needs die, the four Vessels being destroyed. But *Riolanus* a man of great experience saw contrary examples, and any man may judg by a Rupture of the Navil. If death follow, it is by accident, the inner parts being also hurt, and a wide dore opened for all hurtful things to enter. *Sperlinger* conceives that they are choaked, because the Navil being cut off, the Liver falls down and draws the Midriff, the Organ of breathing. But 1. This shortness of breath doth not cause sudden death. 2. The Liver is held up by another strong Ligament from the *Peritonæum.*

*The Dignity of the Navil is not much.*

*Urachus.* The *fourth* Vessel, the *Urachus* or Piss-pipe, which is half as little again as the Artery, consists of two parts, according to the Observation of *Riolanus*; the inner, which is Nervous, arising from the inner coat of the Bladder the outer which is more Membranous, from the bottom of the bladder. It is not after the same manner in Beasts as in Mankind.

In *Beasts* tis carryed without the Navil between two Arteries, and is at last spred out and widened into the Coat which is termed *Allantoides*, where Urin is collected and reserved, till the young one is brought forth. And therefore this Vessel is termed *Urachus*, that is to say the Piss-pipe.

In *Mankind*, 1. It doth not go without the Navil, and therefore it doth not make the Coat *Allantoides*, for which cause the Child hath only two Coats.

*The Urachus is not hollow in Mankind.*

2. The *Urachus* is not hollow throughout according to the experiments of *Carpus*, *Arantius*, *Cortesius*, *Riolanus* and others, whom I have found to be in the right, in such Bodies as I have dissected both old and young, though *Aquapendens* and *Spigelius* would perswade us otherwise. But it is a little Cord or Ligament, wherewith the bladder is fastned to the Peritonæum and sustained, least when it is distended with Urin, its Neck should be squeezed: Though I deny not but that the same thing is done by the Arteries.

But a Child in the Womb voids Urin by its Yard into the Membarne *Amnios* (which makes it so ful of Liquor) and a great part is retained also in the bladder, which is the cause that new born Children, for the first daies are in a manner continually pissing. *Aqua-pendens* denies this because, 1. The motive faculty doth not exercise it self in a Child in the Womb. 2. No Muscle Acts. 3. Neither doth Nature use so different a manner of voiding Urin in Men and Beasts. But I answer, 1. That the various moving of a Child in the Womb, which Big-bellied Women feel, doth witness that the Child hath a moving faculty though imperfect. 2. The bladder is provoked to excretion, by the over great quantity and sharpness of the Serum, or wheyish humor. 3. The Coat called *Allantoides* which is not in Man-kind, doth shew the difference between Man and beast.

*Urolus* will have all the Urin to be contained in the bladder, till the birth come. But then it would be broken with over stretching; and whence comes all the liquor which is in the Coat *Amnios*.

*Aqua-pendens*, *Spigelius* and almost all others will have it go out by the *Urachus*, and be collected between the *Amnios* and *Allantoides*, as in beasts. But seeing it is not perforated, but solid in Man-kind, it cannot admit the Urin. For it cannot be strained through, without a manifest passage, because it is thick, and the same way might hold in grown Persons. *Vesslingius* propounds both these opinions and determins nothing. Now it is no more Porous in a young child then a grown person. And *Laurentius* eagerly defends this opinion out of *Galen*, bringing the examples of some, who when their Urin was stopt, did void it at their Navil.

*The Error of Laurentius.*

But I answer: This is done præternaturally, as it is also a known opinion of many, that the Umbilical Vein hath been preternaturally opened in Hydropical persons, and voided the Water. And *Laurentius* himself confesses, that all the four Umbilical Vessels do turn to Ligaments; wherein he is right, for they are dried. How therefore can they be opened unless preternaturally? So it was I conceive preternaturally opened in the same Italian called *Anna*, who hath no Yard, in stead whereof a spungy bit of flesh hung out under his Navil, whence the Urin dropt. *Fernelius* and others have other examples of the *Urachus* opened.

Before the Production of all the Umbilical Vessels in the Womb, the seed being curdled in the top of the hinder part, two certain Roots are inserted, on each side one from the horns of the Womb, first observed by *Varolius* and called *Radices Dorsales*, the back Roots which are obliterated, when the rudiments of the Child are framed, touching which *Riolanus* explains *Aben-spna.*

THE

# THE SECOND BOOK; OF THE Middle Venter or Cavity.

*The middle Venter what it is.*

THe *middle Venter* or Belly termed *Thorax* the Cheſt, and by ſome abſolutely *Venter*, is all that which is circumſcribed above, by Clavicles or Channel-bones; beneath the Midriff; on the foreſide by the Breaſt-bone; on the hinder part by the Bones of the Back, and on the ſides by the Ribs.

The fore-part is called *Sternon* and *Pectus* &c. the Hinder-part, the Back; the Lateral Parts are termed the Sides.

*Hippocrates and Ariſtotle.*

Howbeit the Ancients as *Hippocrates* and *Ariſtotle*, &c. did comprehend all from the Channel-bones as far as to the Privities, that is to ſay, the middle and lower Belly under the Name of Cheſt. And therefore in this Senſe *Hippocrates* did well write, that the Liver is ſeated in the Cheſt: which other unskillful perſons not underſtanding, did imagine that *Hippocrates* was ill verſed in Anatomy.

*Its Figure.*

Its *Figure* is after a ſort Oval, though not exactly, and *Hippocrates* compares it to a Tortoiſe or the Belly of a Lute. In Mankind, it is more bunching in the fore-part, but in the middle of the Breaſt-bone it is flatter, about the ſides round, becauſe of the bowing of the Ribs, in the Back more flat.

*Magnitude.*

Its *Magnitude* in General, varies according to the different degree of Heat: for by the wideneſs of the Cheſt we meaſure the Heat of the Heart. But in Particular perſons it is larger towards the lower Belly, where the vital bowels are concealed, and grows narrower by little and little at the beginning of the Neck.

*Subſtance.*

Its outer *Subſtance*, is partly boney, partly fleſhy.

This middle Belly is not wholly fleſhy as the lower is, 1. Becauſe it was not to contain any Parts, that were very much to be ſtretched. 2. That over-much Fat might be bred there, and hinder Reſpiration.

Yet is it partly fleſhy, becauſe it contains Parts which ought to be moved, as the Heart and Lungs, and for the ſame Cauſe,

It could not be altogether boney, like the Skull; for that is a very rare caſe which *Cardan* mentions in his 11. Book of Subtilties, Page 458. in my Edition, of a Man that inſtead of Ribs, had one continued Bone from the Throat to the Flanks.

Yet is it in part boney, for to ſafeguard the noble Parts. For,

*Its Uſe.*

Its *Uſe* is, to contain the vital Parts as the lower and firſt Belly contains the Natural.

*Its Parts.*

Now *the Parts* likewiſe of *this Belly* are either *containing* or *contained*: and the former either *common* or *proper*.

*Common.*

The *Common* are the ſame which are in the lower Belly. Howbeit theſe things following are here to be obſerved.

*The Uſe of the hair under the arm-pits.*

The *Skin* of the middle Belly is hairy under the Arm-pits. Theſe *Hairs* are called *Subalares Pili*, being uſeful to keep thoſe Parts from wearing and fretting, in the Motion of the Arms, ſeeing they exceedingly and quickly ſwear, becauſe they are termed the Emunctories of the Heart, receiving the Excrements thereof (in ſome alſo that are hotter of conſtitution and ſtrong-hearted the breaſt is hairy) as the Groins are called the Emunctories of the Liver.

*Why there is little Fat in the Cheſt.*

Moreover, there is little *Fat* found in the Cheſt, if you except the Dugs, that Reſpiration may not be hurt by the weight thereof. For by reaſon of its boney part, ſo great plenty of the matter of Fat could not flow into it, as in the lower Belly, which is wholly fleſhy, and therefore alwaies the fatteſt part of the body; the middle belly or Cavity is indifferently ſtored with Fat; the Head is leaſt fat of all. But the fat it ſelf being otherwiſe white, is wont in the cheſt to appear a little more yellow then ordinary, by reaſon of the heat of the vital Parts which lie under the ſame.

*The proper Parts.*

The *proper* Parts beſides the Muſcles, Bones, &c. are the *Dugs* of both Sexes, the *Midriff*, the *Membrane* of the Sides termed *Pleura*, and the *Mediaſtinum* or Partition-wall.

The Parts *contained* are the Bowels and Veſſels. The Bowels, are the *Heart* with its *Heart-bag*, or *Pericardium*, the *Lungs* and part of the *Weſand*, or *Wind-pipe*, or *aſpera Arteria*. The Veſſels are *the Branches of the Vena cava and Arteria magna*, underpropped with the *Thymus* or Kernel in the Throat, and ſundry Nerves.

# Chap. I. *Of the Dugs.*

See Tab. XXV. Lib. I.

ACcording to our Anatomical Method, the first Parts in the Chest which we dissect, as soon as we have done with the lower Belly, are the Dugs. Now we shal treat of the Dugs of Women, casting in between while, wherein those of Men differ therefrom.

*Why the Dugs in Mankind are seated in the Breast.*

The *Situation* of the Dugs, is in the middle of the Breast, above the Pectoral Muscle, which draws to the Shoulder. 1. Because of the nearness of the Heart, from whence they receive heat. 2. For Comeliness sake. 3. For the more convenient giving of suck: because the Infant cannot presently walk after the manner of Brutes, but being embraced in his Mothers Arms, it is applied to the Dugs. No other Creatures have Dugs in their Breasts saving the Apes, who hold their young ones in their Arms likewise. *Laurentius* tells us the Elephant does the like, and *Riolanus* saies as much of the Bat or Flitter-mouse. Some great Sea-fishes of the Whale-kind, have Dugs on their Breasts, full of Milk, as we lately observed in a Whale that came out of *Norwey*.

*Number of the Dugs.*

They are two in *Number*: not because of Twins; but that one being hurt, the other might supply its Office. Howbeit *Varro* reports, that Sows will have so many Pigs as they have teats. *Walæus* in a certain woman observed three Dugs, two on the left side of her Breast, and one on the right. And *Cabrolius* observed in a certain woman four Dugs, on each side two.

*Magnitude.*

As to their *Magnitude*. In Girls new born, there is only a Print or Mark visible on the breast, and afterwards by little and little it swells, and in little wenches hardly any thing appears beside the teats, until by degrees they grow to the bigness and shape of Apples; and when they are raised two fingers high, their Courses begin to flow. In old women they wither away, so that nothing appears but the Nipples, the Fat and Kernels being consumed.

In women they swel more, and in women with child the last months, they are more and more encreased.

*The difference of the Dugs in men and women.*

In men they do not rise so high as in women, because ordinarily they were not to breed milk [yet because of the equality of the kind, it was convenient that men should have them as well as women.] And therefore in men, the Dugs are commonly without Kernels: yet in burly people, the Fat which is under them raised the breasts. In the Kingdom of *Sengea*, the Dugs of women hang as low as their Bellies; and in the Isle of *Arnabo*, tis said they turn them over their shoulders to their backs, and there suckle their children.

*Their Shape.*

Their *Shape* is roundish. They represent as it were an half Globe. And in some because of their over-great weight they hang down.

*Their Parts.*

The Dug is *divided* into the Nipple and the *Dug* it self. For in the middle of the Dug there is to be seen a peculiar Substance, which,

*How the Nipples come to have so exquisite Sense.*

Is called *Papilla* the Teat or Nipple, being spungy, like the Nut of a Mans Yard, and therefore it will fall and rise when it is suckt or handled. For it hath an excellent and exquisite Sense of feeling, because it is as it were the Centre, into which the Ends of the Nerves, Veins, and Arteries do meet. Which is apparent from the Delicacy of its Sense, and the redness of its colour, a sure token of Blood brought in by the Arteries, by reason of the Concourse whereof, Surgeons do judg Cancers and other Tumors about the Nipple, pernicious.

*Riolanus* believes that the Skin is doubled, and as it were compressed: but the doubling would make it thicker. But the Skin is exceeding tender, easily rubbed off, and apt to be pained when the Child sucks very freely. Only in old women it grows thick. Nor is the Nipple any other where made of the Skin straitned or folded.

If the Nipples turn upwards, a Male child is in the Mothers womb, if downwards a Girl according to the Tradition of *Hippocrates*, which hath not been as yet ratified by the confession of women with child.

As to *Number*, there is one Nipple on each Dug. *Hollerius* saw two Nipples upon one Dug, which both yielded Milk.

Their *Colour* in Virgins is red, in such as give suck it enclines to black and blew, and in them also they are more sticking out, by reason of the Infants sucking: in such as are past Child-bearing, the Nipples are of a black colour.

The have a Circle round about them which is called *Areola* the little Parsley-bed, in Virgins pale and knotty, in such as are with child and give suck, brown, in old women black.

Tis *bored* through the middle, with very small holes for the Milk to pass through: For

The *Use* of the Nipple is to be instead of a Pipe or Funnel, to put into the Mouth of the Infant, whereout it may suck the Milk: Secondly, to serve for a pleasing Titillation, whereby Mothers and Nurses are enticed the more willingly, and with a certain Sense of pleasure to give their children suck.

*The Dug.*

The Dugs do inwardly consist of a Membrane, Vessels, Kernels, or rather kernelish Bodies, and Fat: though the two last do chiefly make up the Dugs; the Kernels and Fat lie concealed between the Membrane and the Skin.

Now the fleshy *Membrane* does fasten the kernellish Substance which it compasses, unto the Muscles which lie there under.

The *Kernels* are many: In Virgins more hard, in old women consumed, in such as are with child and give suck, more swelling and pappie. Yet there is one great one, just under the Nipple, which the other lesser one do compass about, and infinite textures of Vessels lie between them. *Riolanus* hath observed a womans Dug to consist of one continued Kernel, and not of many, the contrary whereto we see in scirrhous and cancerous Tumors.

The *Use* thereof is, to turn Blood into Milk. And the use of the fat of the Dug is to encrease heat, and to make the Dug of an even round shape. And therefore such as have the Fat consumed by some Disease or old Age, they hang ill favoredly like empty Bladders, and are unfit to make Milk.

The *Vessels*. The Dugs receive their Skin and external *Veins* from the Axillary, which are called the *Thoracicæ Superiores, the upper Chest-veins*, which in women with child and such as give suck, are often black and blew visible. They receive other internal Veins, brought thither a long way, that the Blood might be the longer therein wrought, which are termed *Mammariæ*

*The Venæ Mammariæ.*

*mariæ Venæ* or Dug-veins, which descend on each side one, from the Trunk of the Auxillary Vein, under the Breast-bone, to the Glandules or Kernels of the Dugs. These are met by other ascendent Veins, by the right Muscles, of which before: and therefore the Infant being born, the Blood is carried no longer to the womb, but to the Dugs, and is turned into Milk. And hence it is that women which give suck, have seldom their Courses. Hence also, when the children suck over-much, Blood comes out at the nipples. Yea, it hath been observed that a womans courses have come away through her Dugs, and Milk by her womb; howbeit, this is a rare chance.

*Why Milk is bred after the child is born.*

But the Matter of Milk, be it what it will, cannot according to the Principles of the Bloods Circulation, be carried by the Veins to the Dugs. The *Venæ mammariæ* or Dug-veins, do only carry back what remains superfluous, after the Child is nourished, and Milk made. Moreover, they are seldom joyned with the Epigastrick Veins, and they are too few and small, alone to carry so much blood from the womb, as may suffice a Child that is a liberal Sucker.

*Their Arteries.*

Their *Arteries* proceed from the upper Trunk of the great Artery: and from the Subclavian branches, which are joyned after the same manner with the Epigastrick Arteries, as was said of the Veins. The *Thoracicæ Arteriæ* or Chest-arteries, so plentifully and evidently, that in cancerous Tumors of the Dugs, a woman hath bled to death by them, of which case I remember some Examples. Hence it seems more likely, blood is carried to the Dugs to make Milk, which blood being consumed in fat and elderly women, they are therefore none of the best Muscles. Hence it is that women which give suck, receive great dammage by loosing their blood; contrariwise they are advantagd, by whatever may draw and provoke their blood to their Dugs, as by rubbing them, &c.

*The matter of Milk is not Blood as* Martianus *holds.*

Now *Prosper Martianus* and *Petrus Castellus* do maintain out of *Hippocrates*, that the matter of Milk is twofold, viz. Blood and Chyle: and that the greatest part of the matter thereof, is pressed out of Meats and Drinks, not yet digested in the Stomach, into the Dugs, by the Child swelling in the womb, and after the Child is born, by the passages made wide by sucking: and that another *small* part is made of blood ascending from the womb, which is rather to be reckoned as an Efficient cause, by reason of its Heat, then of a *Material* cause.

That *Blood* alone is not the matter of Milk, besides the Authority of *Hippocrates*, they prove, because

1. Otherwise it were impossible that a woman should live, voiding two pounds of blood every day, in the form of Milk.

2. When a woman gives suck, her Courses flow, which in the first months of her going with child, are suppressed.

3. When a woman left breeding Milk, she would fall into a dangerous Plethory, or fullness of Blood.

4. There would be no Child-bed Purgations at all, the Milk being so violently carried into the Dugs, the second day after Child-birth, that it causes a Feaver.

5. Nature would then have framed greater Vessels from the womb unto the Dugs.

6. The Milk would not retain the smell, and virtue, or operation of the Meats eaten, because these things are changed in the blood.

7. The Blood collected into the Dugs, does bred Madness. *Aphor. 40. Sect. 5.*

*But arises from the Stomach & the Chyle.*

But that it depends upon the *Stomach* and the *Chyle*, these following Reasons evince.

1. The force and efficacy of Purgatives, is after some hours violently carried into the Dugs, as divers Experiments do teach. Yea and our Country-women, when children that have the cough, suck at their breasts, they drink pectoral Decoctions, and believe that the sucking child does presently draw them.

2. If a Nurse do swallow an hair in her meat and drink; it comes into her Dugs according to *Aristotle*, and sticking in the Nipples, it causes the Disease *Trichiasis* or *Hair in the Nipple*.

3. A branch of Cichory according to the Observation of *Martianus*, hath come out of a womans Dug, which she had eaten the night before at Supper: and bran hath been seen in the Excrements of a child that only lived with sucking.

4. Nurses perceive as soon as ever they have eaten and drunken, the going down of the Milk, and the swelling fullness of their Dugs. Yea, and our Nurses are extraordinary careful not to eat, while they give their children suck, for otherwise the children should suck undigested Milk.

5. *Castellus* pleads their Situation over the Stomach, not near the Liver or Womb, excepting in beasts.

6. The Milk is colder then the Blood, and leaves more Excrement in her that gives suck, then blood does in the Embryo or child in the womb.

Howbeit we find many difficulties in this new Opinion, and those of no small moment.

*The said Opinion refuted.*

1. There are no manifest passages from the Stomach to the Dugs, which if any man can find, I shall willingly acknowledg my self convinced. *Martianus*, indeed, *Castellus*, *Vesslingus*, *Horstius*, do talk of invisible passages, like the milkie Veins, which cannot be discerned in a dead body; or at least they conceive the Pores of the flesh may suffice to admit a passage for milkie Vapors. But the Pores seem too narrow for thick Chyle to pass through, which in the Mesentery did require large milkie Veins, which any body may discern. A subtile Spirit and thin Vapors with smoakie steams, do pass through the Pores, and not the Chylus, not blood, according to Nature; for if so, then there were no use of Vessels. Nor is the Infant satisfied only with Vapors. I willingly acknowledg, that Nature endeavors the translation of Humors from one part to another, by unknown waies, but she does it compelled, and besides her customary Course, whereas the breeding of Milk is a constant and ordinary thing.

2. The Dugs being heated by any other cause whatsoever, do not breed Milk, but the action is hindred by the said Heat.

3. Nurses confess, that after they have drunk, the Milk does manifestly descend out of their back, backs, and from about their Channel-bones, and puts them to some little pain. For there the Chest-arteries are seated, and not the Stomach.

4. A tender Infant should be ill nourished with undigested meat, having been used to be nourished with blood before.

5. Out of the Nipples of Children newly come out of the Womb, before the use of meat, a wheyish matter drops like Milk, before they have eaten any meat.

6. What shall we say to that *Aphorism* of *Hippocrates*?

If

*If a Woman want her Courſes, neither any ſhivering or Feaver following thereupon, and ſhe loath her Meat: Make account that ſhe is with Child.*

7. Cows, when they eat graſs after hay, or hay after graſs, before the fifteenth day, there is no perfect change either in the Conſtitution or colour of their Milk or Butter, according to the Obſervation of *Walæus*; yet they perfectly change their Chyle the firſt day, but their Blood more ſlowly. Alſo our Nurſes obſerve, that after they have ſlept, and their Meat is digeſted, their Dugs make Milk, which does not ſo happen, if they want ſleep.

8. *Hogeland* proves by Famines and Seiges, that when all the Nutriment of the Nurſe is turned into perfect blood, yet neverthelefs Milk is bred in the Dugs.

*And the Argument of* Martianus *and others are anſwered*

Wherefore until ſome diligent hand ſhall have found evident waies and paſſages, for the Anſwering of the contrary Arguments: You are to note 1. That we admit of the Chyle as the remote matter of Milk, but not as the immediate matter thereof. 2. That the Blood being plentifully evacuated by the Milk, is bred again by plentiful meat and drink; and therefore the plenty of Milk ceaſes when there is little drink taken in, as all Nurſes do teſtifie. Moreover, ſuch as are of a Sanguin conplexion afford moſt Milk, whereas thoſe that are of a tender conſtitution grow lean by giving Suck. 3. That all the blood which is poured out of the Arteries into the Dugs, is not turned into Milk, but only the more wheyiſh part, a great deal running back by the Veins into the Heart. 4. That Women which give ſuck have their Courſes, becauſe the Veſſels of the Womb are then more enlarged, then in the firſt months of their going with Child: and ever and anon they flow ſparingly from Nurſes, and leave of by fits. Alſo Women that give ſuck ſeldome conceive, unleſs they be of a Plethorick habit of Body, that is to ſay ful of good blood. 5. Our women when they would wean a Boy, if their Dugs ſwel, they do by certain Medicines keep back the Milk, by ſtraitning the Veſſels, that the matter thereof may not enter nor be drawn that way. 6. That the Breaſt and Dug-Arteries are large, and are more and more widned by continual ſucking. 7. That the Milk doth drink in the faculty of Meats and Purgatives, even by mediation of the Blood, which conſerves the color and faculty of the meats, though ſundry digeſtions have preceeded; though vapors alone be raiſed, and the ſubſtance aſcend not. 8. That many things are performed in the body, according to the ſingular conſtitution of particular perſons, yea and many things which rarely happen, which is to be underſtood of the Milk, which was in the Dugs of that *Man* at *Coüs*, and of other things thence voided.

*Their Nerves.*

*Nerves* are carried from the Nerves of the Cheſt, eſpecially the fift, for to cauſe ſenſe, and they end in the Nipple.

*Their Pipes.*

Beſides theſe Veſſels, the Dugs have alſo white *Pipes*, according to the obſervation of later Anatomiſts, ſpringing from the whole Circumference of the lower part, which growing narrower, do alwaies meet together, wherein Milk being made, is preſerved for uſe. Whether or no they are nothing but widened Arteries, becoming white, becauſe of the change of the milk and the bordering kernels (which I am willing to believe) I leave to acuter Eyes and Wits to determine. They treaſure up the Milk, when there is occaſion of omiting to give the Infant ſuck: and when that uſe is over, they grow as ſmal as the moſt Capillary Veins.

*The uſe of the Dugs.*

Their Uſe is, I. General in Women and Men, to be ſafeguards to the Heart: hence Nature hath guifted Men of cold Complexions with larger Dugs then ordinary; and Women that looſe their Dugs become rough-voiced, according to *Hippocrates*. Nor doth the pectoral Muſcle hinder, which performs the ſame Office, which is *Riolanus* his Objection; for the more noble parts require great fencing, even by the ſmalleſt thing, as the Eyes from the Eye-brows, the Heart from the water in the Heart-bag or Pericardium, &c.

II. In women their uſe is to breed Milk, to nouriſh the young Infant. For the Child was nouriſht by blood in the Womb, and milk is the ſame blood only whitned, ſo that Nature ſeems to have put a trick upon living-Creatnres by obtruding upon them the gentler appearance of white milk, in place of red blood, as *Plato* hath it. Which is the Cauſe that the People of *Savoy* and *Daulphine*, did anciently prohibit their Preiſts, the uſe of milk, as well as of Blood.

*The Efficient cauſe of Milk.*

Now the *Efficient* Cauſe of milk, is not the Womb, where milk was never obſerved, nor do the Dugs breed milk, by that virtue thereof which it felt wants; nor are the *Veins* or Arteries, unleſs it be the neareſt, the vertue be communicated from the Dugs. For as for what *Baronius* relates of St. *Paul* how when he was beheaded, not blood but milk ran from his Neck, either it was a miracle, if true; or a ſerous humor flowed out, which ſomtimes flows from the Arm, when a Vein is opened, and I have ſeen it very like to milk, or finally the Liquor of Kernels being cut, did reſemble milk. But the true efficient cauſe of the milk, is that ſame kernelly fleſh of the Dugs, unto which there is none like, in the whole body. Now it works this moderate Concoction by the propriety of its ſubſtance, and by reaſon of its proper temperament. *Aulus Gellius* conceives the milk becomes white, by Reaſon of plenty of heat and ſpirit Book 12. Chap. 1. But I am more enclined to believe, that milk is white, becauſe it is aſſimilated to the Dugs that are of the ſame color.

*Milk may breed in Virgins, Men, Women not with Child, &c.*

Somtimes therefore (though it happen ſeldom) milk may be bred in Virgins, and in Women not with Child, according to the Obſervation of *Bodinus* in his Theatre of Nature, of *Joachimus Camerarius* in *Schenkius*, of *Petrus Caſtellus* touching one *Angela* of *Meſſina*, of *A. Benedictus* and *Chriſtopher a Vega* concerning a Girle of *Bridges*, and of others. In *Scania* in our Country, a maid was lately accuſed to have plaid the Whore, becauſe ſhe had milk in her Dugs, which neverthelefs ſhe proved to be a propriety of her Family, by producing her young brother who likewiſe had milk in his Breaſts. Infants new born ſhed a wheyiſh milky liquor out of their Nipples. Theſe examples are confirmed by the Authority of *Hippocrates* in the 39. *Aphoriſme* of his *fifth Section*, where Women have milk though neither with Child, nor lately delivered. And this happens, when the Dugs are filled with abundance of ſpirituous blood, and ſuppreſſion of Courſes be joyned thereto: for then the Glandulous ſubſtance digeſts more then is neceſſary to nouriſh the Woman. Yea, in men that are fleſhy, large-dug'd, and cold of conſtitution, a milky humor, and as it were milk is frequently ſeen; eſpecially if there Nipples be frequently ſuck't, and their Dugs rubbed, as

the

the examples of many do testifie. *Aristotle* writes of a certain Hee-goat in the Island *Lemnos*, who yeilded so much milk, that Cufds were made thereof. *Matthiolus*, tels us that in sundry places of *Bohemia*, three Goat-Bucks were found, that gave milk, by which persons that had the Falling-sickness were Cured. Others have seen Men, out of whose Dugs store of milk came. *Aben-sina* saw so much milk milked from a Man, that a Cheese was made thereof. *C. Schenkius* relates that *Laurentius Wolfius* had store of milk in his Breasts from his youth, till he was fifty years old. *Jo. Rhodius* had such an Host in *England*, and *Santorellus* knew a *Calabrian*, who his Wife being dead, and he unable to give wages to a Nurse, did nourish his own Child with his own milk. *Walæus* saw a Flemming of like Nature, who being even forty years of Age, could milk abundance of milk out of huge Dugs which he had. *A Benedictus* relates the story of a Father that gave his Son suck. And *Nicolaus Gemma*, *Vesalius*, *M. Donatus*, *Aqua-pendens*, *H. Eugubius*, *Baricellus*, do witness the same thing, and I have allready told you as much of a Boy of *Scania* in our Countrey of *Denmarke*, and *Cardan* saw a man thirty four years old, out of whose Dugs so much milk did run, as would have suffised to suckle a Child. They relate how that in the new world, all men well-near abound with milk. Now that this was true milk which we have related did run from men, is hence apparent because, it was as fit to nourish children, as that of Women.

III. The use of the Dugs in Women is to adorne them, and render them the more delectable to Men.

IV. They serve to receive Excrementious moisture. Whereupon their Dugs being cut off, Women incur sundry Diseases; because the blood which ascends finding no Vessels to receive it, runs hastily into the principal parts, the Heart, Lungs, &c, Which danger I conceive the *Amazonet* did study to avoid, by their so vehement exercising themselves in warfare. Some cut the Dug off when it is cancered, but the operation is dangerous, by reason of the bleeding which follows.

## CHAP. II.

## *Of the* Intercostal, *or* Rib-between *Muscles.*

*See the Figure of the following Chapter.*

SUndry Muscles which we meet within the Chest shall be first of all explained in the fourth Book, by reason of the Method of Section. But the *Intercostal* or *Rib-between* Muscles, so called; because they are interwoven between the Ribs, must be explained in this place.

*Their Number.*

Now they are totally fleshy, forty four in number, on each side two and twenty; eleven external; and as many internal. For evermore between two Ribs, two Muscles rest one upon another: and there are eleven Intervals or Spaces between the Ribs.

*The Error of others.*

Others have done ill to make their Number sixty eight. For in the Intervals of the true Ribs, they have made divers Muscles lying hid between the boney parts of those Ribs, differing from those which are found between the Gristley parts.

The *External* ones arise from the lower parts of the upper Ribs, and descending obliquely towards the back-parts, they are inserted into the upper parts of the lower Ribs. The *Internal* contrarywise.

The *External* end at the Cartilages: The *Internal* fil the spaces, both of the Ribs and Gristles.

They have oblique Fibres and mutually cross one the other like this Letter X, because the Muscles are otherwise short, because of the smalness of the Intervals. Hence in the opening such as have a suppuration in their Chest, Section is to be made straight according to the Course of the Fibres, not overthwart,

They have received sundry *Vessels*. Veins from the Azygos and upper Intercostal. *Arteries* from both the Intercostals. *Nerves* from the sixt pare; joyned to them which proceed from the Marrow of the Back.

*Their use.*

Their *use*, is to Dilate and Contract the Chest: the externa imitate the drawing of the Subclavii: By raising the Ribs, and straitning the Chest, and help towards Exspiration. The internal draw awa the Ribs, and by enlarging the Chest help the Drawing in of the breath. *Galen*, contrarywise, makes the external serve for drawing in, and the internal for blowing out of the Air, whose opinion is favored by *Vslingius*,

Others with *Vesalius*, will have the external Muscles to thrust the lower Ribs upwards, and the internal ones to draw the upper Muscles downwards, that they might so mutually assist one another in straitning of the Chest. But we should rather think, that when the Internal ones are quiet, the External do act by themselves.

*Fallopius*, *Arantius*, *Rolanus*, do account them only to be fleshy Ligaments of the Ribs, whereby they are knit one to another, beause the Ribs cannot be moved of themselves, savoby the Muscles of the Chest. But the Thorachick or Chest Muscles being unmoved, the Ribs are oftermoved by help of these Muscles, receiving some impulse also from the Diaphragma or Midriff. The Ligaments of a Muscle are never bare. The Ribs may be fastned one to another, and likewise moved by these, which is common to all other Muscles. Howbeit the motion of the Ribs is obscure, becaus they are inarticulated in one part only, and the parts between the Ribs are narrow; But their Number supplies their smalness.

## Chap. III. *Of the* Diaphragma *or Midriff.*

*The Diaphragma or Midriff, why so called.*

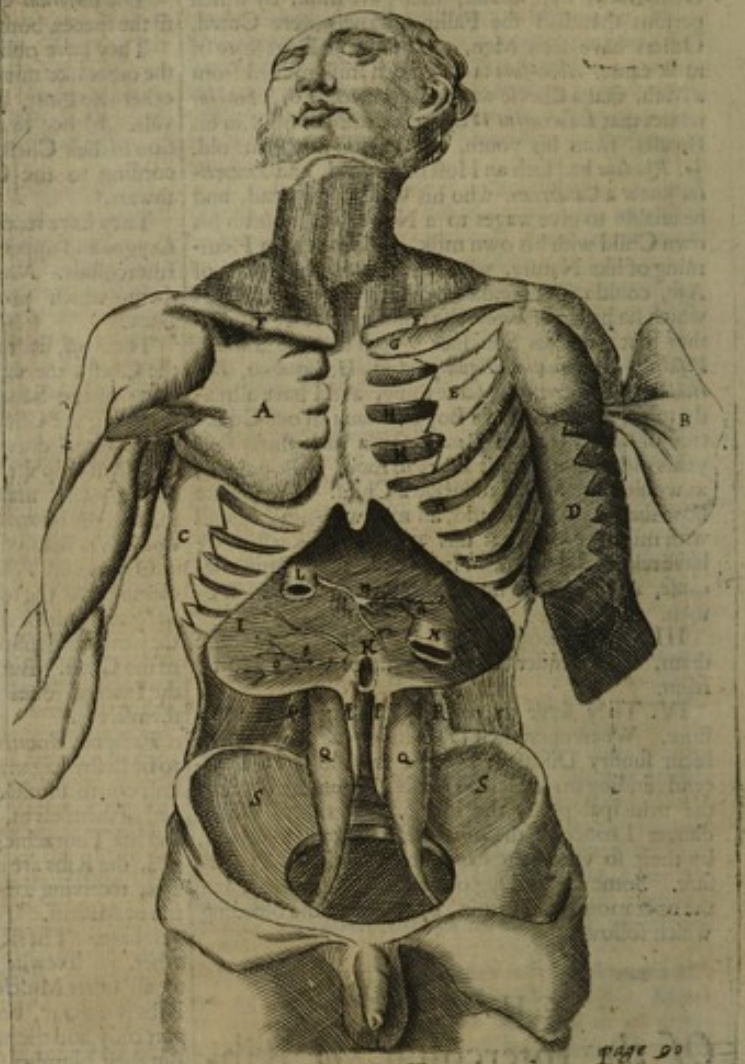
The DIAPHRAGMA or Midriff, is so termed from distinguishing or separating, some term it *Præcordia* because it is ordinarily stretched out before the Heart, and *Phrenes*, because it being affected, the Mind and Sense are disturbed by reason of the Consent it hath with the brain, so that when the Midriff is inflamed a *Paraphrenitis* or petty Phrenzy is caused. The Cause of this consent is very doubtful. *Hippocrates* saies, the Heart becomes foolish through blood flowing back unto the Heart and Midriff, from the multitude thereof, which foolishness makes it dull and nummed as it were, and that nummedness makes it Phrentick. But the more firm experience of latter Physitians, hath proved that the brain and not the Heart, is the seat of Madness. *Aristotle* attributes

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

This Figure presents the External proper Parts of the Breast, also Delineates the Situation of the Midriff in the Body.

A. *The Pectoral Muscle in its proper place.*
B. *The same out of its Situation.*
C. *The Muscle Serratus major Anticus, or Greater-fore-side-Saw-muscle in its own place, being partly visible.*
D. *The same out of its place.*
E. *The Serratus anticus minor, lesser foreside-Saw-muscle.*
FF. *The Claviculæ or Chael bones.*
G. *The Subclavian Muscl.*
HHH. *The Intercostal, or Rib-between Muscles.*
III. *The Diaphragma or Midriff.*
K. *Part of the great descendent Artery.*
L. *An Hole for the Vena Cava descendens.*
M. *An Hole for the Gullet passing through the Diaphragma.*
nn. *The Venæ Phrenicæ or Phrenick Veins so called.*
oo. *The Phrenick Arteries.*
PP. *The two Appendices or Appurtenances of the Diaphragma.*
QQ. *The Muscles termed* Psoas.
RR. *The* Musculi Quadrati *or square Muscles of the Loynes.*
SS. *The internal Cavity of* Os Ilium, *or the Flanck-bone.*

## The I. TABLE.




Page 90

prudence to the midriff, and when it draws out of the neighboring Liver and Heart Excrementitious Humors, the mind is thereby hurt, and the external Senses. Yea, Neither doth he solve the doubt, for many other parts draw like Humors, without causing madness; nor doth he unfold, how the Midriff imprints these ravings upon the Brain. The consent of Vicinity makes nothing to the purpose, because it is nearer other parts, nor society in the same Office, because the Lungs being diseased in a *Peripneumonia*, do not cause a *Delirium*; nor finally, the communion of Nerves and Vessels, because in the Inflammations of other Nervous parts no such thing happens; *Cassirensis* doth therefore necessarily flie to an occult consent, peculiar to this part alone. Others term it *Septum transversum* the Cross-partition, because it goes cross, and divides the Body, and separates the middle belly from the lowermost. Some call it *Cinctus, Dissepium, Discretorium*, and the Greeks also call it *Zóne, Diazema, Perizema*, &c. Now it is a singular and peculiar kind of Muscle, having an action and figure differing from all others. *What it is?*

Its *Situation* is overthwart, or across the body, and because it enclines a little downwards, oblique. *Its Situation.*

Its *Figure* is circularly round, saving the long Appurtenances. *Its Figure.*

This Muscle is in *Number* only one, because of the unity of its Action common to both sides, but it is a great one. *Meyssonerius* saw a double Midriff at *Lyons*. *Its Number.*

Its *Magnitude* answers the Diametral wideness of the lower Belly, which is comprehended *Magnitude.*

comprehended between the lower Vertebra's of the back and the Ribs. Hence great and whaley flesh, because they have longer and more Ribs then we have, have a larger midriff, creeping mean-while as far as to the extremities of the Ribs. For,

*An Head and Tail in the Midriff.*

For it seems to *arise* from the Vertebra's of the Loyns, by two somwhat long fleshy parts (which cleave to the muscles of the Loyns, at the sides of the great Artery, and growing by little and little wider, about the lowest Vertebra's of the Chest they grow together, where this Muscle begins to grow Circular) and is fastned to the Chest round about, being knit where it is fleshy to the extremities of the Ribs: though we should do peradventure more rightly, to make the beginning thereof, in its whole Circumference, as well from the Loyns as the Ribs, which *Galen* doth also somwhere insinuate: For seeing it could not be knit to the eleventh Vertebra, because of the great Artery, and the beginning of the Lumbal muscle, it is strongly inserted, by its two smal appurtenances to the Vertebra's of the Loyns.

*Galen* somwhere (whom *Sylvius*, *Vesalius*, *Aquapendens*, *Spigelius* and many more follow) will have the middle of the *Diaphragma* to be the Head thereof, because the Nerves are there inserted, and the Centre in a Circle, upon which one point of the compass doth rest, while the other is carryed about, may be well taken for the Head of the said Circle. But as it is a peculiar muscle, in Situation, Action, Figure, Nobility, &c. so hath it somwhat peculiar in this point. But the beginning or Head cannot be in this Centre, because it is moveable, and the Ribs and Vertebræ of the Loyns, in respect thereof immoveable. Moreover, the Nervous or Tendinous part, is the End of the muscles, and not their Head.

*Its substance.*

Its *Substance* is fleshy, in the middle Nervous and Membranous, where a Membranous *Centre* shews it self and a *Nervous circle* in stead of a Tendon, to which fleshy Fibres do run, from the Circumference of the Chest, as to their Centre. Whence necessarily the middle part of the motive muscle is Nervous, for otherwise it could not be moved. *Secondarily*, it helps to strength, in a perpetual motion, and in the suspension of the bowels which adhere thereunto: moreover it serves to secure the Vessels which pass through. To sustain the beating of the Heart, it was not to be strong, as *Riolanus* suspects, because 1. A soft part doth easily give way and yeild to a blow. 2. The point of the Heart doth not strike against the Midriff in its pulsation, for the Heart smites the breast when it is erected in the Systole, and is contracted at the sides: in the Diastole when it descends to the Diaphragma, it becomes soft and flaggy, and gives no pulsation.

*Note* that Wounds in the Nervous Centre of the Diaphragma, are by all accounted deadly, whether because a Nervous part being offended, doth induce a Convulsion, or because it cleaves to the Pericardium or Heart-bag and to the Liver, or because respiration perishes, and the Heart placed over the same is likewise hurt: for the Pericardium and Liver being hurt, do admit cure. A wound is more safely made in the fleshy Circumference thereof.

*Its Membrane.*

It is cloathed with a double membrane, for strength. The upper is from the Pleura, to which the Pericardium or Heart-bag is firmly fastned, and sometimes also the Lobes or Laps of the Lungs by little smal Fibrikeies; the lower is from the Peritonæum. Also it hath its proper substance, formerly described.

*Its Holes.*

It hath *Holes*: some being very exceeding little, and others great. Those very little ones are the Pores, through which vapors arise from the inferior parts. They are widned by the perperual motion of the Diaphragma, not by Odours and Fumes, as *Helmont* believes. Otherwise, because the Mem'brane is thick, it hinders the drinking in of thick vapors, and will not let them ascend without the Vessels. Among the greater, there is one on the right hand, in the middle of the Nervous part, to give a passage to the Vena Cava: Another on the left hand greater and somwhat backwarder, for the letting through of the Gullet or Oesophagus with two Nerves which go unto the Stomach. And where it arises about the Vertebra's of the Loins, there appears a division, for the through-fare of the great Artery, and the *Vena sine Pari*, or Vein without fellow. These wide holes do admit from the inferior parts, the passage of thick Vapors with the blood, which cannot be prohibited by the Diaphragma. Hence in the 29. *Aphorisme* of the *first Section* 'tis said, in a Fruitful Women, her lower parts being perfumed, the scent goes up to her Nostrils.

*Vessels.*

As to its *Vessels*. It has *Veins* and Arteries from the Neighbouring Vessels vena cava and Arteria magna, called *Venæ phrenicæ*: and sometimes from the Vena adiposa

*Nerves* are spred through its whole Substance, being brought from the spinal marrow of the Neck, between the fourth and fift Vertebra: which is proper to this part, and common to no other internal part under the Channel bones, because according to the Conjecture of the renowned *Hofman*, it was not to lie open to external wounds or Blowes, least we should be masters of our own Life or Death. But instruments of death are every where obvious, which the Love of Life and Fear of God hinders us from making use of. Now they are carried through the Cavity of the Chest, and are propped up by the mediastinum. Other Anatomists have observed other Nervs passing that way from beneath, proceeding from the costal and stomachick Branches. And because the Nervs of the Diaphragma or Midriff are in their passage mingled with certain little twigs, which are spread abroad into the muscles of the Jaws and Lips: hence when the Diaphragma is smitten there arises a kind of Laughter, which is no real Laughter, but a counterfeit one such as they call *Risus Sardonius* the Sardonian Laughter, because the muscles of the Face suffering a Convulsion at the same time, and the Jaws and Lips being moved this way and that way, the partie seems to laugh. Such was the laughter of *Thycenis* in *Hippocrates* and of *Agnerus* in our Countryman *Sarco* his relations, who was cut asunder in the middle with a sharp sword: also of that man in *Aristotle* whose Midriff being in the fight pierced with a Dart, made him die laughing. *Pliny* relates as much of other Fencers, and *Homer* tells us that *Juno* laught with her Lips when her Forehead scowled.

*Sardonian Laughter,*

*Galen* makes the Cause of the Sardonian Laughter to be in the Musculus latus quadratus, the broad square Muscle. But it reaches not to the Lips. *Laurentinus Politianus*, makes the spirits to be the cause of this Convulsion, which because of the sense they have of some troublesome thing, run back to the upper parts. *Mancinius* will have the Heart to be widened, and the face drawn into the posture of laughing, by the heat which

is raised by tickling and wounds, because he will have the Heart to be the seat of Laughter, in defence of *Aristotle* whom Physitians have confuted. *Riolanus* has sometimes observed laughter to arise in the guelding of a man, which was the forerunner of a deadly Convulsion; for which cause he condemns our reason drawn from the Nerves, not giving us in the mean time any better reason viz. why laughter should arise upon the wounding or hurting the nerves of the Midriff and Privities, and not when any other nerves are wounded.

*Use.* Its *Use* is 1 To help free Respiration; for violent respiration is assisted by the muscles of the Chest; the former Respiration *Galen* terms *gentle* or small, which depends only upon the Midriff, the other *strong*, the intercostal muscles assisting thereto, a third *sublime*, where the Diaphragma, intercostal or rib between muscles, and muscles of the Chest do act all together. *Birds* indeed, though they breathe have no Midriff, but their breathing which is light and scarse perceptible, because of the lightness of their bodies, is performed by their Lungs and Chest. Contrariwise *Fishes* which breathe not have a Midriff, but membranous, to seperate one Belly from another. In the greater sort of Sea fishes of the whaley kind, I have observed a fleshy Midriff like that of Creatures which live on the Land.

*How the motion of the Diaphragma is performed.* Now the motion thereof is thus: when the Breath is drawn in, the Midriff is stretched, when it is blowne out, it is remitted or slackned, contrary to the Opinion of *Arantius* and *Laurentius*. Of whom the latter will have the Midriff contrary to all other nauscles to draw towards its end; and he will have the fibres which run out from the Circumference of the Chest, to be equally contracted, and the ribs to be drawn to the nervous Circle, and so to cause respiration. But how can the membranous Centre of the Septum, draw the ribs to its self and contract the whole Chest unless haply because it is fastned to the Mediastinum. But I have observed more then once in dissections of living Bodies, that the Midriff is stretched out, when the Creature draws in its Breath. For the Guts are driven downwards by the Midriff when the Breath is blown out, and they ascend again when the Breath is drawn in, which also any man without Anatomical Section, may perceive in himself, by laying his Hand upon his Belly. In Wounds of the Diaphragma, the Guts and Stomach, when the Breath is drawn in ascend into the Chest, which *Paræus* twice observed, which differs only according to more or less, from the naturall course of breathing. Now the motion of the Midriff ought to be such, because the Chest when the Breath is drawn in, must be widened to receive and contain the Air and swoln Lungs; and contrarywise, when the Air is breathed out, the Chest ought to be straitned, because then the sooty vapours are expelled, and the Lungs flag and become small again, and therefore in the former case the Midriff is lifted up, and in the latter depressed.

*Jo. Walæus* besides that motion, whereby the fleshy part gives way inwardly, has observed another motion in the Diaphragma during the drawing in of the breath, whereby the fleshy part thereof being contracted into it self, comes to have folds in it, so that one portion of the fleshy part is placed upon another: and he observed that this folding is chiefly about the Appendices or Appurtenances, and when the breath is strongly drawn in: and he conceivs that by this means the Midriff is the more shortened, and the Chest by the lifting up of the Ribs, more widened.

II. To assist the muscles of the belly, in their compression, when they would force out the Excrements and the Child in the womb: for from above it thrusts the Guts downwards. Hence, according to the Observation of *Platerus*, when the belly is costive, Sneezing and Coughing do help, because thereby the Midriff and Dung conteined in the Guts, are driven downwards, because of the Strugling of the said Midriff and its bearing down, the Excrements of the belly and Urine come away of themselves in live Anatomies and in such as are put to death by hanging.

III. To distinguish the lower belly with the naturall parts, from the middle belly with its vital parts, least from the Ignoble parts frequent vapours should ascend, to the parts more noble, as the Heart &c.

IV. According to *Hippocrates*, it is the Fan of the lower belly, which fannes and cooles the *Hypocondria* or parts under the short ribs.

V. Others suppose it causes natural respiration, beause it depends not upon our will and pleasure, and moves when we are asleep, and never so much as think of it, and by help thereof, Men in Apoplexies do for a season breathe. But *Piccolhominneus* does more rightly assign a voluntary motion thereunto, howbeit only when some necessity constrains, as in easing of the belly, pissing, and fetching of breath, because it is a Muscle of a nature by it self; but not a motion *absolutely* or simply voluntary, which is discerned in progression & apprehension, that is to say in going and handleing.

Its motion ceases in a strong Apoplexy, only transpiration does then remain: but in a light Apoplexy, we see the Diaphragma also moved with the Chest muscles.

## CHAP. IV.
## *Of the* Pleura, Mediastinum, *and* Thymus.

*What the Pleura is, and its Original.* THe Pleura or Rib-coate, which the Greeks call *Chitôn hupezocôs*, or absolutely *humên*, is a membrane which on the inside cloathes the cavity of the Chest, hard and white, but in some pleuretick persons according to *Hippocrates*, black and blew, whence it is that Practitioners conceive that this is affected in the Pleurisie, which notwithstanding is demonstrated to happen secondarily, by *Manelphus, Cletus, Platerus, Zacchius, Vitalianus, Benedictus*. It is somewhat thicker and stronger then the Peritoneum. Arising from the Coats, which cover the intercostal nerves which proceed out of the Backbone, by means of which it is continued with the Coats of the Brain. And therefore it is thicker in the Back, to whose vertebra's it cleavs as it were inseperably. *Hofmannus* will have it arise from the Breast-bone rather than the vertebra's of the Back, wherein he is out, as I have proved in my *Animadversions* upon *Hofman*, and in my *Anatomical Colledge*. In diseases of the Chest, it becomes many times ten-fold thicker: though others say it is so attenuated in pleuritick persons, that it can hardly be descerned. *Fallopius* saw it of a thick callous substance, in a Dropsie

*Its Thickness.*

of

of the Lungs, and *Platerus* saw it in like manner swoln by a Scirrhous Tumor.

It is every where *double*, that the Vessels may be carryed within the folding thereof. The outer part which looks towards the Chest, is harder and thicker, the inner part being fastned to the Ribs is thinner. Between these the matter of the Pleurisie is often collected, and not only between the Pleura and Muscles. *Galen* makes it to be single, and will allow it to be double, only about the Mediastinum. *Riolanus* explains that same Duplicature to mean its thickness, which cannot be shewed without tearing. The contrary whereto is manifest in the swoln sides of such as have the Pleurisie.

*The place of the matter which causes a Pleurisie.*

It hath its inner surface smooth, least it should by its roughness hurt the Lungs; its outer more rough that it might be the stronglyer fastned.

Somtimes it is found furnished with a little fat (as there is also now and then in the Peritonæum) near the Vertebra's of the back, where the Vessels are greater then ordinary.

The Ribs also have their *Periosteum* or Membrane so called, which some call the third coat of the Pleura, and others *Membrana Circumossalis* the bone-about *Membrane*.

It hath very many *Holes*, the lower-more of which I have reckoned up in the History of the *Diaphragma*, the upper are there where it affords passage to the *Vena Cava*, the *Arteria aorta*, the Wezand or *Aspera arteria*, the Gullet and the Nerves of the sixt Pare.

*Its Holes.*

*As* for its VESSELS. It hath *Veins* from the solitary Vein or *Vena sine Pari*, and the upper Intercostal or Rib-between Vein; *Arteries* from the Intercostal or Rib-between Artery, and from the great Artery; *Nerves*, twelve in number, proceeding from the foreside of the Vertebra's of the Chest. And therefore wounds in this part are attended with most grievous pains.

ITS USE is. 1. According to *Galen* to plaster over the whole Cavity of the Chest and to render it smooth and even, that the Lungs migt not be hurt in their motion. 2. To cloath the Chest and its parts on the inside (even as the Peritonæum affords coats to the parts of the lower Belly) and to constitute the Partition Membrane. Or,

MEDIASTINUM, Which is an of-spring of the Pleura, being a double Membrane; separating the Cavity of the Chest and the Lungs into two parts. For after that the Pleura having taken its Original about the Back hath ascended by the sides to the Breast-bone, taking its course again towards the Back-bone, it is carried right out from the middle of the Breast to the Back. Being fastned on each hand to the sides of the Breast-bone, this Membrane is not obscurely double, as is the Pleura, but visibly, being constituted of the Pleura doubled; and there seems at first sight to be as great a space between both, under the Breast-bone, as the breadth of the Breast-bone comes to. But this is only in appearance and not really so; for that same Cavity under the Breast-bone, is then only caused, when the Breast-bone is in dissection, pluckt from the Mediastinum, for before the Membranes of the Mediastinum are most closely united one to another. Which it is strange that no Anatomist did observe before *Ad Falceburgius*. After him, I have often made the Experiment, in grown persons and Children new born, in Land-beasts and large Sea-fishes; nor could I shew any Cavity betwixt the Mediastinum and Breast-bone, no not to the most expert Spectators, but I found the Membranes of the former sticking close by certain Fibres to the latter, which we forcibly separated with a Penknife. Which that it might be more apparent, the inwards of the Belly and the Midriff being taken away, I made it visible to the Eyes of all that were present. These things are to be understood of the lesser Cavity (to satisfie *Riolanus* who is my Adversary in this point) between the Membranes of the Mediastinum and the sternum: For the greater, wherein the ever-moveing Heart is seated, no man in his right wits will ever deny. In this greater Cavity, or in this Duplicature if a wound inflicted on the foreside shall penetrate, lightly, so that the Heart settling beneath remain unhurt, it is sufficiently void of Peril and safe enough; which one unskillfull in Anatomy would pronounce deadly. But towards the Vertebræ, the Cavity grows narrow by little and little, and the Membranes meet together. But in the middle the Cavity is wider, and in the fore part of the said Cavity, the Heart and Vena Cava are placed; in the latter part the Gullet, with the Stomach Nerves. If in this Cavity humors præternaturally assemble and putrifie, they may safely be let out by boreing an hole in the Breast-bone, if we believe *Columbus* and *Hofmannus*, which *Nicolaus Fontanus* doth notwithstanding deny.

It is of a thinner and softer *substance* then the Pleura; and about the Vessels tis frequently full of fat like the Call.

*Its substance.*

For *Vessels*, it hath *Veins* and *Arteries* from the Dug-vessels and the solitary Vein or *Vena sine Pari*, applied inwardly to the breast-bone, which being taken away they become visible: Also it hath its own proper Vein called *Mediastana*, which is somtimes one and large, other whiles double and smal.

*Vessels.*

Also the Phrenick and Stomachick Nerves are carryed through this Duplicature, and afford branches to the *Mediastinum*.

The *use of the Mediastinum* is, I. To divide the Chest into two parts, that one Division of the Lungs being hurt by a wound or otherwise, the other might perform its office.

*The use of the* Mediastinum

II. To hang the Heart and Heart-bag dangling in so free a posture, as to strike against no part of the Chest.

III. To sustaine the Vessels running through the same, as also the Midriff in Mankind, least it should by the weight of the Bowels be drawn too much downwards.

The *Thymus* grows thereto in the *Jugulum* or Throat-pit the highest part of the Chest, whereunto in ordinary Anatomical Figures it is fastned, and hath its name from the leafe of time which it resembles, not from *Thumos* the Mind, as if in disturbances thereof by passion, the blood and Spirit should work or grow hot within this Kernel, in the *Vena Cava*, as *Riolanus* interprets the meaning of the word; for the blood grows hot in the Heart, here it hath only a passage and tarries not, seeing few branches are discernable in the body of the Thymus, unless somwhat be left by the Arteries for Nutrition sake. In children and the *Embryo* in the Womb, less subject to passions, the Thymus is greater and more Numerous, in persons of ripe years who are soon angry, we find it dried and contracted. Now it is a kernellish, soft, spungy, and white body (some term it the Sweet-bread, be-

*The* Thymus *what it is?*

## The FIGURES Explained.

This TABLE represents the Breſt-bone cut off and lifted up, alſo the Mediaſtinum and the Lungs, with the Midriff.

### FIG. I.

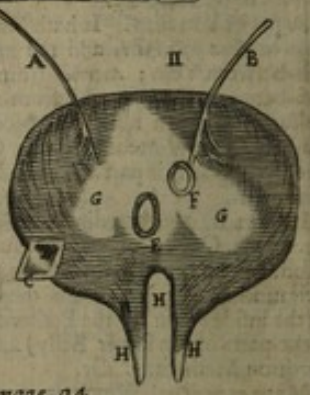
AAA. *The inner ſurface of the Breſt-bone and the Griſtles interwoven therein.*
BB. *The Dug-Veins and Arteries deſcending beneath the Breſt-bone.*
C. *The Glandulous Body called* Thymus.
DDDD. *The ſides of the Mediaſtinum pluckt aſunder.*
EE. *The diſtance between the two Membranes of the Mediaſtinum which is cauſed by its forcible ſeparation from the Breſt-bone.*
F. *The Protuberancy of the Mediaſtinum, where the Heart is ſeated.*
GG. *The Lungs.*
HH. *The Midriff.*
I. *Cartilago Enſiformis, the Sword-like Griſtle.*

### FIG. II.

A. *The left Nerve of the Midriff.*
B. *The right Nerve thereof.*
C. *The upper Membrane of the Midriff a little ſeparated.*
D. *The naked ſubſtance of the Midriff.*
E. *The Hole for the Gullet to deſcend through.*
F. *The hole of the Vena Cava.*
GGG. *The Membranous part or Centre of the Midriff.*
HHH. *The Portions or Appendices thereof, between which the great Artery deſcends.*

## The II. TABLE.






page 94

### FIG. III.

Repreſents that ſame Glandulous Body, ſeated by the Larynx.

AAA. *The Glandules or Kernels which naturally breed upon the Larynx.*
B. *A portion of the Jugular Vein, out of which two ſmal twigs proceeding, do ſpread themſelves through the ſubſtance of the Glandules or Kernels.*

---

cauſe in a Calfe 'tis counted a dainty bit) In a Child new born tis diſtinguiſhed into a threefold Kernel ſufficiently big. In grown perſons, tis extenuated, its moiſture being conſumed by heat. Howbeit I have ſeen it large in great Sea-fiſh, from which many other Kernels were diffuſed on either hand, about the Mediaſtinum and ſides of the Lungs.

Blood-conveighing *Veſſels* do paſs through this *Thymus* or Sweet-bread; howbeit in the ſubſtance thereof, being diſſected, we cannot manifeſtly diſcerne any.

The *uſe* therefore of the *Thymus* is 1. To underprop thoſe great Veſſels which aſcend that way, as the *Vena Cava*, *Arteria magna*, and their branches paſſing along to the Arms and Shoulder-blades. 2. Alſo for ſafeguard, as is uſual, and that the Veſſels may not be hurt by touching upon the bones. 3. That it may be as it were a cover and fence for the Heart, for I have ſeen it as a Bulwork to the Heart, which the Heart of a Child in the Womb ſtands in need of, becauſe as yet it ſtirs not. And therefore it hath a large Thymus, as a Sturgeon alſo hath and other Creatures which live in the Water, by reaſon of the external cold.

CHAP.

# Chap. V. *Of the Heart-bag and the Humor contained therein.*

*The Pericardium.* *See Tab. 3. of Book 2.*

THe *Pericardium* which some term the Coat, Case, Box, Chamber, Cover of the Heart, or Heart-bag, &c. is a Membrane compassing the whole Heart, whose Figure it therefore Emulates, as also its Magnitude: But it is so far distant from the Heart, as is necessary for the Hearts motion, and the reception of the Liquor contained in this Bag. *Columbus* assures us, that a Scholar of his had no Pericardium.

*Its Original.* It arises at the Basis from the Coates which compass the Vessels of the Heart, which proceed from the Pleura (for this Coat is not between the Basis of the Heart and the Pericardium) where for their sakes.

*Its Holes.* It hath five Holes; *viz.* for the ingate and outgate of the *Vena Cava*, and for the letting out of the other three Vessels.

*Situation.* Its *Situation* is more to the left side then the right; and more to the fore then the hinder part of the Body.

*Its Connexion.* It is *knit* circularly to the Mediastinum, with very many Fibres, and to the neighbouring parts, but especially the Nervous circle of the Midriff, it cleaves exceeding close, which is a thing peculiar to Mankind: For herein a Man differs from Dogs and Apes, and in all other Creatures likewise, the difference holes.

*Its Surface.* Its *External Surface* is Fibrous, the *Internal* slippery, and both void of fat.

*Its Substance.* Its *Substance* is thick and hard, and so much harder then the Lungs, as it is softer then a bone.

*Its Vessels.* Its *Vessels*. It hath small *Veins*, below from the Phrenick Vessels, above from the Axillary.

It hath no Arteries that can well be seen; peradventure, because it is so near the Heart. Yet doubtless it hath some although hard to be discerned.

It hath very small *Nerves*, from the left Recurrent, and the little twigs of the Septum.

*Its Use.* Its *Use* is I. To be a firme tabernacle for the Heart, that in its motion it might not strike against the hard parts of the Body.

II. To contain a *wheyish* or Watry *Humor*, like Urin to see to, though neither sharpe nor Salt, transparently clear, in some like water, wherein flesh hath been washt; *Guil. Toletus* in *Burgensis* calls it a flegmatick Humor of an unpleasing taste. And because of this Liquor *Galen* resembles the Heart to a Bladder.

*Whether all Live-Wights have this wheyish Liquor in their Heart-bags.* This Humor is found in all Animals naturally constituted, both living and dead, yea and in the Child in the Womb, as appears by the dissection of bodies both living and dead: But in some more in others less; in persons that are in a Consumption, it is very little and inclining to yellowness. In persons Pleuritick it is now and then of a quittorish nature, according to the Observation of *Salmuth*.

*Why more plentiful in dead Bodies.* In dead bodies tis more plentyful: Because then very many Spirits are in the cooled parts of the body condensed into water. In Women, Children, and aged persons, tis more plentyful, by reason of the debility of their heat.

If it happen to be in two great a quantity, Palpitation of Heart, and a suffocating death follows therefrom: if it be quite consumed, a Consumption of the body happens. But that it may be bread a fresh when it is spent, we see clearly in those whose Heart-bag being wounded, the said Liquor hath run out; for in *Johannes Saviolus*, his Heart-bag being wounded with a Dagger, water issued at every Pulse of his Heart, out of the wound, yet was he happily cured by the Renowned *Vestingus*.

*Whence the liquor in the Heart-bag proceeds?* Whence this water should have its original, the opinions of learned men are different.

*The first Opinion.* I. The first Opinion is of those, who will have it to be sent out of the Vessels of the Heart, seeing Blood-letting cures the Panting of the Heart proceeding from the Super abundance of this Liquor: And they conceive that this wateriſh Liquor is forced out by the fervent heat of the Heart, as in a stick of wood when it burns the sap runs out. Of kin to this is the Opinion of *Nicolas Massa*, which will have it to proceed from the strainings of the blood, which come from the Liver to the Ear of the Heart. And *Hofman* is much of his mind, who maintaines that it is part of that wheyish moisture which ascends to the Heart with the blood; but because the motion thereof is perpetual, there would no final danger arise, from so large an Afflux of Humors. I let pass, how that the stronger persons, whose blood is moved most swiftly, have less quantity of this Water then those that are weaker.

II. Others, and among them *Hippocrates* seems to make one, will have it to proceed from our drink, some portion whereof they conceive peirces like Dew out of the *Asperia Arteria*, into the *Arteria Venosa*.

III. Some conceive it proceeds from a Watry matter in the Seed, as the inbred Air of the Eats, is thought to proceed from a windy matter in the said seed.

IV. Of kin hereunto is the opinion of *Jasolinus*, who will have it to be a select, most perfect and Elaborate portion of the serous Humor, sent thither by Nature it self, haply in the first formation of the Child, through the Veins and Arteries, besides another part of the drink, of which *Hippocrates* speaks, and he has experiments touching the same.

V. Some say it proceeds from the watry Excrements of the third digestion.

VI. Others from the spittle, slipping out of the Kernels of the Tongue into the Wezand, and from thence into the Arteries and Heart.

VII. Others, from the fat of the Heart, by agitation turned into water.

VIII. Others from the thicker part of the Air which we draw in, being changed into water.

IX. And lastly, some think (which I conceive to be most likely) that it proceeds from moist Vapors and Exhalations, forced out of the Humors of the Heart by the motion and Heat theerof, and thrust forth into the Heart-bag and there congealed into water, in regard of the compactness of the said Heart-bag.

*Its Use.* Its *Use* is, I. To moisten and cool the Heart, and to facilitate the motion thereof. And therefore those in whom it is consumed, have their Hearts roasted: As it happened to *Casimire* the Marquis

Marques of *Brandenburg*: And to that young man of *Rome*, mentioned by *Panarolus*. *Hofmannus* being of a contrary mind, will needs have it to be as a Spur and Incitement of Heat; as Smiths are wont to dip their wisps of Straw in Water that they may burn the longer: And as Wood is sprinkled with Water to make it burn more lustily. But those bundles of Straw are preserved by the water, because their substance being made more moist and Tenacious, is not so soon consumed. But the heat of the Heart is preserved by its radical moisture, and by the blood continually flowing in, nor doth it need any Incitement from the Water, for if so, then the Heart would be more hot and lusty in old persons, who have most water in their Heart-bags. II. It serves to make fat by congelation. III. That the Heart by swimming therein, may be less ponderous, and may not strike against any part.

An Humor likewise is commonly found in the *Cavity* of the *Chest*, resembling blood and water mingled together, wherewith the parts of the Chest are smeared, that they may not be overheated nor overdryed. Hence the side of our Saviour being opened, blood and water flowed out, which by the suddan flux, and mixture of blood and the Authorities of the Ancients, I have at large proved, in my Dispute of the side of Christ, against *Laurentius*, *Arias Montanus*, *Bertinus*, *Nancelius*, *Poza*, *Tremellius*, *Beza*, *Tirinus*, *Grotius* and others, who would have it to proceed from his Pericardium or Heart-bag, also against *Collius*, *Tarnovius*, *Brentius*, *Laurenbergius* among the late writers, and *Cyprianus*, *Prudentius*, *Brigitta*, *Vida*, *Sannazarius*, *Vigerius*, &c. who would fetch it from the Vessels of the Heart being wounded. Now the Objection of *P. Laurenbergius* is not worth a button, who saies there was not enough of the said Liquor in the Cavity of the Chest; because 1. The natural quantity might suffice, seeing the Evangelists do not record that it come away in a great quantity. 2. It might be augmented in that last conflict for life, notwithstanding the great perfection of his Body, which being for our Redemption made liable to temporary passions, underwent death it self. 3. I have at *Padua* sometimes observed so great a quantity of Water in this part, that it hung down like a great purse, the Midriff being depressed by its weight. *Jasolinus* in wound of the Chest (the inner parts being unhurt) did sometimes collect every day five measures of water called *Heminæ*, for thirty daies together, which the Membranes being inflamed, was dried up and diminished, but when the Inflammation was cured, it returned in its former Quantity.

In a Boy at *Paris*, who died of the small pox, I being present, store of water was found in this part, but of a green colour, of which else-where.

## Chap. VI.
## *Of the Heart in General.*

THe Heart is called in Latine cor *à currendo* from running, because of its motion; some peradventure will derive it from the Greek name *Kêr* which they derive from *cêo* which signifies to burn: the Greeks term it *cardia*, we the *Heart*, quasi *hierôn* a sacred thing. It is the principall part of a living Creature, which none is found to want according to *Aristotle*, and by the hurting whereof the Creaure does for the most part immediately die, because it is the fountain of Life, and labors the vital Spirits, which having made, it distributes, by the Arteries arising from it self, into the whol body, Yet may you find examples in *Schenkius*, of those that have had no Hearts. See also *Gellius* book the 16. Chap. 15. *Galen* relates that beasts sacrificed have lowed at the Altar, after their Hearts were taken out; and the Lord *Verulam* tells of a man who spake three or four words of a prayer, when his Heart was pluckt out of his Body, and in the hand of the Executioner. *Plinie* tells us the entrails were twice found without any Heart, when *Cæsar* sacrificed, and *Julius Obsequens* saies the same. The Lives of such persons were maintained by the remainders of arterial Blood. And *Spigelius* suspects that among the Bowells, the Heart was rather hid, and unfound then wanting, who saw so much fat in an Ostrich, that a man might easily have bin deceived, so as to think the Fowl had no Heart. Peradventure those Hearts of the sacrifices were stole away by the Devil.

A Live-wight dies not with every hurt of the Heart. For the Heart undergoes all kind of diseases. 1. *Putrefaction*, witness *Galen*, in a pestilential and a putrid Fever. 2. The *Consumption* according to *Plinie*, to be dried like a roasted warden, according to *Jordanus*. 16 be wholly consumed by immoderate Heat, as *Tiberius* averrs. 3. *Inflammation*, in which Case it cannot live a natural day, as *Saxonius* found by experience in a certain Reader. 4. *Filthy hollow Ulcers* have bin found therein by *Fernelius*, *Trincavellius*, *Rivetus*. 5. Divers kinds of *Tumors*, *Columbus* saw an hard Tumor in the left ventricle of a Cardinal, as big as an Egg. *Benevenius* saw a swelling of black flesh. *Massa*, *Hollerius*, *Bauhinus*, and *Joubertus*, have other like Stories. I lately found in the Parenchyma of an Oxes Heart on the left side a swelling as big as a Pigeons Egg, in a double Coat, full of Whey and Flegm.

On the out side *Gesner* saw an Excrescence of Flesh, in the Basis the quantity of an ounce and six drams *Bavius* makes mention of the Membrane eaten and fretted away round about.

Also Histories shew that it will bear wounds for a season. *Parœus* tells of one wounded in the Heart who ran two hundred paces. *Jacotius* tells of an Hart that carried an old arrow fixed in its Heart, which is confirmed by *Thomas à Vega* and *Alexandrinus*. *Galen* saw an Hare wounded in the Heart, run a dans cast after the wound received. Of a Student at *Ingolstadt*, *Semmertus* and *Johnstonus* tells us, who had both the ventricles of his Heart peirced through with a weapon, and *Nicholas Mullerus* of a Souldier who lived fifteen daies after he had received a wound in his Heart, of which he hung up a Table at *Groningen*. He recounts many like examples seen by himself, and *Tulpius* tells us of one that lived two daies, being wounded in the right ventricle. *Glandorpius* tells us after *Sanctarius*, that the Heart of a Rabbit was pierced with a sharp Instrument, and yet it lived many months after.

Wee must therefore note 1. That the Heart can endure Diseases, but because it lies far from the way of medicines, it cannot hold out so well as other parts.

2. That, as *Galen* tells us, if the wounds do pierce into the belly thereof, the party or Creature wounded dies, of necessity, but if they be in the Substance thereof, it may live a day and a night, but then Inflammation arising death follows.

3 That the right Ventricle does more easily bear an hurt, because upon the left depends the life of the whol Body.

4. Both Ventricles may endure a small time after they are hurt, if the Vessels that continue the motion of the blood, be undamnified. The

The Heart is one in *Number*. *Theophraſtus* writes, that in *Paphlagonia* Partridges have two Hearts, an example whereof *Galen* relates in a man, in his anatomical adminiſtrations.

*Why the Heart is in the middeſt of the Body.*

It is *ſituate* in the middle of the body, not conſidering the leggs, as it is in brutes; in which the Heart is in the middle, for moveableneſs and Securities ſake, and in the middle of the Cheſt likewiſe. where it is on all ſides compaſſed with the Lungs. Now the Heart in reſpect of its baſis, is exactly in the middle. that nourſhing blood and ſpirit might more commodiouſly be diſtributed into the whole body.

Howbeit the *Motion* thereof is more diſcernable in the left ſide.

*A vulgar Error that the Heart is in the left ſide.*

1 Becauſe in its left Ventricle the vital ſpirit is contained, and from thence ariſes the *Arteria magna*, hence the common people imagin that a Mans Heart reſides in his left Side. but Practitioners applie Cordials to the left ſide.

*Why the point of the Heart enclines to the left ſide.*

2 Becauſe the point of the Heart enclines towards the left ſide, under the left nipple, that it may give way to the Diaphragma: now to the right hand it could not decline, by reaſon of the Vena cava, which aſcends there through the middeſt of the Cheſt. Sometimes the upper part of the Heart enclines to the left ſide, and ſuch perſons are left handed if we beleive *Maſſa*, thoſe whoſe Heart is exactly in the middle, uſe both hands alike.

*Who have the greateſt Hearts.*

As to its *Magnitude*. In a man proportionably the Heart is greater then in other Creatures, as alſo the brain and Liver. According to the common Courſe of Nature, it equalls ſix fingers breadths in length, and four in breadth. Otherwiſe, the greatneſs of the Heart differs according to the Difference of the Age and Temperament. For perſons cold of Conſtitution, and fearfull have great Hearts, but ſuch as are more hot and confident, have little Hearts: Of which ſee *Donatus*. Hence *Ariſtotle* ſaies of fearfull Creatures, as the Hare, Deer, Mouſe, Hyena, Aſs, Weazel, &c. that they have a great Heart, conſidering the proportion of their bodies. The Philoſiphers of *AEgypt*, in ancient times, as appears by *Herodotus* in his Euterpe, have dreamed theſe things of the greatnes of the Heart. That the Heart of ſuch Perſons, as are not waſted by any violent diſeaſe, does every yeer grow two drams heavier, till they become fifty yeers old, ſo that a man of fifty yeers Age, his Heart weighs an hundred drams: but from the fiftyeth year to the hundredth, by a retrograde or back motion, it looſes every yeer two drams, till it vaniſh away, and the party die.

Its *Figure* is conick, becauſe it ends in a point. Its upper part by reaſon of the full veſſels therein, is broad and round, although not exactly, and is called the Root and Head, and Baſis of the Heart: the lower part being ſharper is called *conus*, *mucro*, *vertex*, *cuſpis* and *apex Cordis*; the cone, point, top of the Heart. *Hippocrates* calls it the end and taile. On the foreſide the Heart is more boſſie, on the hinder ſide more flat. In the contractions the whole Heart is longer as ſome hold, but broader and more drawn together according to others: in its Dilatations or Widenings it is greateſt, and of a globous figure, of which I ſhall ſpeak more exactly hereafter.

*Connexion.*

Its *Connexion* is to the Mediaſtinum and the Midriff by the Pericardium; but to other parts by its Veſſels, they are joyned to the Baſis. the point being free, and hanging dangling like a bell in the Steeple, that it may the more eaſily be drawn back to its Baſis, or moved to the Sides.

Its *Subſtance* is firſt membranous, like a Bladder, in the Child in the Womb, afterward from the mothers blood there grows fleſh or a ſolid, thick and compacted parenchyma.

*Why the Subſtance of the Heart is ſo thick.*

1. That it might endure the perpetuity of the Motion: for a fence, and that it might more forcibly drive the blood to places far diſtant in the whole Body.

2 Leaſt the ſubtile and lightfull Spirits contained even in the moveable blood ſhould exhale together with the inbred heat.

In the right ſide the wall is leſs thick, becauſe it ſends blood only to the Lungs, which have their venal blood not ſo ſubtile. The ſtrength of the left ſide is greater, by reaſon of ſtronger motion to drive on the blood, to ſupply the neceſſity of the whole body. In the point, the fleſh is thicker and harder not ſo much becauſe it ought not to be moved, as *Riolanus* conceives, as becauſe it is free, contracting the whole Heart in a brief manner, and deſtitute of Veſſels and Ears. In its Baſis, it is not ſo much ſofter as thinner. whoſe Veſſels and Ears do recompence what it wants of firmneſs. Now this fleſh hath all kinds of Fibres, ſo mingled one with another, and ſo compact, that they cannot be eaſily diſcerned; partly for ſtrength, partly for motion. For all theſe Fibres being ſtretched in the Syſtole of the Heart they draw together the Ventricles and the inner ſides, to help the Protryſion or thruſting forward of the blood.

*Its Coat.*

This ſubſtance is cloathed with a *Coat* hardly ſeparable, for the greater firmneſs, to which it grows in reſpect of the matter, not of the efficient Cauſe.

There is *Fat* about the Baſis of the Heart but hardly about the Cone or ſharpe End thereof, becauſe it is moiſtned by the liquor of the Heart-bag. 1. To anoint the Veins about the Heart. 2. And to moiſten the Heart, that it may not be dryed by motion. 3. To heat the water in the Heart-bag, as the fat of the Kidneys doth, according to the conjecture of *John Daniel Horſtius*. Somtimes it is quite hid with the ſaid fat, which *Spegelius*, *Riolanus*, *Jeſſenius* obſerved in a prince of *Lunæburg*, ſo that the by-ſtanders are apt to be deluded and think there is no Heart.

*Whether Fat is found about the Heart?*

It was nevertheleſs rightly ſaid by *Ariſtotle*, *Galen* and *Avicenna*. that fat called *Pimele* could not grow about any hot part, as the Heart, the Liver, the Arteries, the Veins, &c. For this kind of Fat is eaſily melted by heat; but in the mean while, to ſtear *Adeps* or Tallow, which differs much from *Pimele* or Greaſie fat, in ſubſtance, conſiſtency and place, as I have demonſtrated in my *Vindiciæ Anatomicæ* from *Pollux*, *Suidas*, *Erotianus* and others, may grow about ſuch parts, becauſe it is not eaſily melted. Which makes a ſputtering when it is put to the flame of a Candle, becauſe of a watry ſubſtance mingled therewith, according to the Obſervation of *Jaſolinus*, which hinders it from ſuddain congealing: ſo that it is no wonder that it is not melted by the heat of the Heart. Now this ſame Tallow is bred about the Heart, either

because the Heart being of a very hard substance is nourished with thick blood, of which suet is bred; or because Excrementitious dregs are bred of the Nutriment of the Heart; or because the blood is much stirred, as by the great Agitation of Milk, better is extracted, which is the opinion of *Achillinus*.

*The Coronary Vein of the Heart.*

As for *Vessels*. The Heart hath a Vein which is termed *Coronaria* the Crown-vein, because it incircles the Heart, and is somtimes double. It arises from the Cava, without the right Ventricle, about whose Basis it Expatiates in a large tract from the right Eare, and with a wide Channel it compasses about externally to the left Ear, which it doth not enter, but turns aside into the *Parenchyma* of the Heart. Hence it spreads its branches downwards through the surface of the Heart, but the greatest store through the left side thereof, because the flesh is there thicker. A smal valve is fastned in its original, which grants entrance to the blood into the right Ventricle, but will not suffer it to go out.

## The FIGURE Explained.

## The III. TABLE.

This TABLE shews the Situation of the Heart in the Body and the going out of certain Vessels therefrom.


A. *The Heart in its natural Situation enclosed in the Heart-bag.*
BB. *The Lungs.*
CC. *The Nervous part of the Midriff.*
DDD. *The fleshy portion thereof.*
E. *A portion of the Vena Cava above the Heart, going upwards.*
F. *Part of the said Vein piercing the Midriff.*
G. *The great Artery arising out of the Heart.*
HH. *Its branches termed* Carotides, *the Drowsie-Arteries.*
I. *The point of the Heart enclining to the left side of the Body.*
KK. *The Nerves of the sixt Conjugation, from which the recurrent Nerves do spring, which distribute five branches to the Heart-bag & the Heart.*
L. *The left Ear of the Heart.*
M. *The right Ear.*
N. *The Vessels of the Heart-bag.*
O. *The* Cartilago Scutiformis, *Sheild-fashioned Gristle.*
P. *The first pare of the Muscles of the Larynx in their proper place,*
Q. *The Situation of* Os Hyoides.
R. *The* Aspera Arteria *or Wezand.*
S. *The Axillary Artery, about the Original whereof, the Right-hand Recurrent Nerve begins.*

---

As for its *Use*. Some have perswaded themselves, that it serves to nourish the external part, because it is lesser then ordinary, creeps about the external surface only, and the Heart is nourished with Arterial blood. *Others* will have it to nourish the whole Heart. *Licetus* assignes its Office to strain the blood to the left Ventricle of the Heart, which I wonder at, Because 1. It is exceeding smal. 2. It creeps about the External parts. 3. It arises externally from the *Vena Cava*, and not from the right Ventricle of the Heart. *Botallus* seems to have acknowledged the same way, whose opinion examined by *Walæus*. Others, as *Riolanus*, make it serve not so much for Nutrition, as to repaire the fat; but, first it reaches farther then the fat. 2. No branches thereof are to be seen in the fat. 3. The fat may be generated from Vapors

Vapors of the Heart, without any Veins. The *true Use* of the *Coronary* Vein is, to bring back the blood of the other Veins, when it returnes from nourishing the heart, into the right Ventricle again, which the Situation of the Valves doth hint unto us, and the unfitness of this blood to nourish the solid substance or *Parenclyma* of the heart.

It hath two Coronary *Arteries* from the great one, at the same place, in its original, before it passes out of the Pericardium, furnished with a Valve which prohibits the regress of the Blood. Through these, because they are moved and Pulse, blood is carryed to nourish the heart and Ears, and here is made a peculiar kind of *Circulation*, as *Harvy* teaches, out of the left Ventricle into the Arteries, out of them into the Coronary Veins, out of which it slides into the right Ventricle, being to be forced again through the Lungs into the left Ventricle.

Now some men perswade themselves, and especially *Hogelandius*, that the Blood which remains after Nutrition, doth not all pass back through the Veins, but that some particles thereof sweat through the *Parenchyma* into the Ventricles, and cause Fermentation in the Generation of Arterial blood. But 1. The Fermentation, if there be any, may be made by the reliques contained in the Cavities. 2. The coronary Vessels, do not reach unto the Ventricles. 3. Tis hard when the body is in health, for the blood to sweat through so hard and compact a flesh, unless the blood be very wheyish, and the body of a thin Texture. 4. Why doth not the blood sweat through the Skin, which in some parts is very thin? 5. No particle remains in the flesh, save what is ordained for the nourishment thereof.

*Nerves* it hath likewise, obscure ones, from the sixt conjugation, inserted into three places: One being terminated into the heart it self: Another into its Ears; A third among its greater Vessels, to cause sense and not motion according to *Piccolhomineus*, because the Nerve being cut asunder the heart moves nevertheless. The heart hath not many Nerves, but a great Contexture of Fibres like to the Nerves, which *Aristotle* perhaps reckoning for Nerves, said the heart was the Original of the Nerves. But that may be *Materially* true, not formally. Yet I have seen in the heart of a Sow, the branches of the Nerves with intangled twigs towards the *Cone* or Point, carryed from the Septum to the Wall of the Belly.

*An Error of* Fallopius.

Yet that is false which *Fallopius* tells us, that a great Squadron of Nerves is spread up and down the Basis of the heart, resembling a Net: For the motion of the heart, is no Animal motion, but a natural motion, because the heart is no Muscle: For the heart is moved without our will, and it beats in the Child in the Womb, before the Child hath received the Animal faculty. And *Galen* did rightly deny that the heart was a Muscle.

*Whether the Heart be a Muscle?*

1. Because it hath all kind of Fibres. 2. Because a Muscle is the Instrument of voluntary motion. But if any one shall say the heart is a Muscle subservient to natural motion, I shall oppose such an improper manner of speaking: And so that of *Hippocrates* may be true, that the heart is a muscle. For he defines a Muscle to be flesh made up into an Orbicular shape. *Others* conceive that being long boyled it resembles a Muscle, and that then it is not one, but divers Muscles, by reason of divers motions contracted into themselves. Others grant it to be a Muscle of a nature by it self, as the Midrisl, which is perpetually moved. *Walæus* most rightly of all others calls it not a Muscle, but saies it is contracted in its motion like a Muscle, by Fibres interwoven in the flesh, and especially in the Ventricles, like the temporal Muscle in such as chew their meat.

*The Error of* Averroes.

The *Temperament* of the heart in respect of active Qualities is hot, yea the hotest of al the parts of the Body. How beit with a gentle and light-ful heat, not scorching and burning, if it be rightly disposed. And therefore tis no wonder, that in live dissections, somtimes we feel so little heat in the heart with our Finger, especially when our Skin is thick, we hold it but a little while, and the external Air is not rightly prepared before hand. It communicates the same heat to other parts, and renders ths Arterial blood fit to nourish, which heat being asswaged in the Veins by reason of the long jorney, it must of necessity run back again to the heart, that it may be refurnished and restored with the same heat. But vain is the opinion of *Averroes*, that the heart is cold, because of the cold parts which it contains, *viz.* its Vessels and Valves: Unless haply he ment the heart void of Spirit, as many will have it.

*An Hairy Breast what it signifies?*

Those whose heart is hotter then ordinary have their Breast rough with hair, and the parts near their Hypochondria; and those men are angryly inclind, and daring.

*An Hairy Heart what it signifies?*

Seldom is the heat of the heart so great, as that it self should thereby become rough with hair, such as *Pliny* and *Valerius Maximus* tell us was found in *Aristomenes* a Micenian; and in *Hermogenes* a Græcian, *Cœlius Rodiginus* relates: and *Benevenius*, *Zacutus Lusitanus* and *Marcellus* avouch that they saw such hairy heart in certain Famous Theives. Now such Men are audacious in the highest degree, extream hot and crafty, and for the most part wicked. *Riolanus* tells us, that the matter of these haires, is the thick setlings of that wheyish humor which is in the Heart-bag. But I am more apt to beleive, that it is the plenty of Fuliginous Excrements springing from an hot heart.

As to the passive Qualities, the Heart is moist, viz. more moist then the Skin, but drier then the Muscles, because harder: for the parts of the bodie, look how much softer they are then the Skin, by so much are they moister then it. It is a most rare Case for a mans Heart to be so solid, dense and compact, as that it will not burn, such as was the Heart of *Germanicus* the son of *Drusus*; or cartilaginous, such as *Riolanus* observed in a wicked fellow.

The primary *Use* of the Heart.

1. According to *Harvey*, *Baccius*, and other of his followers, is no other then to be the Instrument of the Soul, to force and urge the venal blood received from the Ears into the Arteries, by whose assistance it dispenses Nutriment to the whole body, and is rather joyned as an Assistant to the Ears, that being of greater force, it may supply the defect of the Ears.

But this is a secondary use of the Heart. For 1. Nutriment was to be prepar'd & filled with vital heat, which it has not else where save from the heart. 2. Nature might have provided for this passage of the blood, by some other member not so laboriously framed, 3. The necessity of the Heart would not be so great as it is. 4. It is a signe that some farther thing is performed in the

the Heart, in that venal blood does not nouriſh, before it enters the Heart.

Now the primary action of the Heart is to be.

II. The *Fountain* of *Heat*, whence it is ſpred into the whole body, whereby the parts are animated and ſuſtained. Swowneing teaches ſo much and other defects of the Heart, in which the heat of the Heart being intercepted, the Members of the Body begin to flag and being deſtitute of heat, become ſtupid. And therefore cordials do good in ſuch caſes, which ſtir up the languiſhing and nummed heat of the Heart. Alſo the Diſſection of living Creatures does ſhew, that the Heart is hot, yea that the heart of a Creature being taken out and newly dead, a warm finger, or ſome other warm thing being laid upon it, is ſeen to come to its ſelf again and to ſtir, which the Lord *Bacon Conſtantine*, *Harvey*, and others have obſerved in a Dove, an Eele, a Salmon, and a Man.

It is therefore the Fountain of Heat, both in reſpect of its *Subſtance* and of the *Blood* contained in it. I joyn both together. For the Heat ſprings not from the blood alone, as *Harvey* would have it, for the Heart in an Egg, and a Child in the Womb, before it is perfect and hollowed with ventricles, is hot and moves, and the ſame heat remains in Hearts taken out of the Body and cut up. The blood which flows thither from the Coronary Veſſels, flowes thither for Nutritions ſake and to preſerve the Heat. Nor are the reſt of the ſanguine parts, therefore judged to be hotter then other parts becauſe they more abound with any heat, but becauſe they have Arteries full of arterial blood, and depend upon the influence of the heart, wherewith the blood is heated. So that unleſs all the blood did paſs through the heart, the parts would never grow hot, and the further the blood goes from the heart, by ſo much the ſloer in its motion, and the colder it growes. That the coldneſs of the heart makes the parts of the Bodie cold, though full of blood, the ſlowneſs of the Pulſe is a ſign.

Nor do the Blood and Heart grow hot only from the motion of the Heart, as the followers of *Des Cartes* wil have it, for 1. they grant that the fiery atomes or indiviſible particles of fire, are excited and put into action by motion, though they are only brought into play, but not produced by the ſaid motion. 2. Many things are moved without waxeing hot, as water, unleſs they have an inbred principle of heat. 3. Before motion there was heat proceeding from the ſeminary original, which is afterwards *preſerved* by continual motion.

III. Not ſo much to make as to perfect the Blood.

*Whether the Heart doe perfect the Blood.*

It makes Arterial Blood, and perfects the venal, or that which is contained in the Veins. For they are out who attribute too much to the heart, as if the heart alone did make blood of the Chylus, they alſo are miſtaken, who maintaine that the heart contributes nothing to blood-makeing. I goe in a middle way. The Liver challenges the firſt makeing of the blood of the Chylus, as I have formerly demonſtrated, which becauſe it is not there perfected, being to thick and unfit to nouriſh, it is neceſſary that it ſhould receive its perfection from other parts. No part is fit for this work ſave the heart, which is one of the firſt parts generated in the Womb, and through which in a grown perſon all the blood in the body has its paſſage. That the Lungs and heart-ears ſhould perform their Office, no man will beleive.

The heart perfects *two ſorts* of *Blood*, *that of the Liver* and *that of the Veins*. That of the Liver is twofold, the one of the Vena portæ, the other a cruder ſort newly made of Chyle. The *Vein* blood is likewiſe twofold, one of the deſcendent trunk of vena cava, and the other of the aſcendent trunk of the ſaid vein. It receivs the Liver blood through the Cava, to which another joyns it ſelf out of the lower and upper Truuk, which remaining over and above after the parts are nouriſhed, by its long journey is become pauled and ſluggiſh, and has loſt its heat, which is neceſſary for pulſation and nutrition.

This perfection which the Blood receivs from the heart, is hereby confirmed, in that the blood when it comes out of the left Ventricle, has not altogether the ſame Conſiſtence nor Colour, which it had when it entred the right Ventricle. The diverſity conſiſts in *Heat* and plenty of *Spirits*, wherewith it is furniſhed when it goes out of the heart, and which it wants when it enters therein to; and in *Effect* or *Operation*, for that which goes out is fit to nouriſh, but that which enters in is moſt unfit, Vital Spirits are added by the inbred faculty of the heart, and the ſooty vapors are taken away by that moſt ſhort Concoction, being evacuated by the Lungs and Pericardium or heart-bag.

For what parts does the heart perfect and renew the blood.

The *ancients* did beleive that the Heart made blood only to nouriſh the *Lungs*. But the Veſſels of the lungs are greater then is requiſite only for their Nutrition, and there is continually more blood forced thither by the pulſation of the right Ventricle, then could any waies be uſeful for the Lungs, unleſs they were to be nouriſhed with as much blood as is ſufficient for the whole Bodie. And that all is not conſumed upon the ſubſtance of the Lungs, the blood which returnes is a witneſs, which runs in great plenty at every pulſation, to the left Vetricle, through the Arteria venoſa, which in live anatomies being tied, is ſeen to ſwell betwixt the ligature and the Lungs. For there is no way for it to return into the right Ventricle, the paſſage being ſtopped by the cloſe ſhutting of the mitre-faſhioned Valves.

The right Ventricle therefore is buſied about blood which is to be ſent to nouriſh the Lungs; the left doth perfect the blood which flows back from the Lungs, being there impregnated with air, for the Nutrition of the whole Bodie. For the arterial blood alone is that which nouriſhes, becauſe it is only fit for nutrition, and it alone is forced through the Arteries into the utmoſt parts of the Bodie.

*What things are requiſite to perfect the Blood?*

To perfect this blood many things concur. 1. *Heat*, which is very dull and laſie, as well in the crude blood of the Liver, as in the returning blood of the whole Body. 2. *Vital Spirit* which by the confeſſion of all men, ought to be joyned therewith, 3. *Light* the companion of the Spirits, by which the blood receives a more Illuſtrious color, is moved and made fit for Nutrition. 4. A certain light and momentary Concoction, ſweetning the cruder parts, attenuating the whole ſubſtance, and drawing forth the latent flame. 5. The whole *Fabrick* of the heart, internal and external, and the Veſſels both receiving and expelling. 6. The ſeparation of Excrements, though the receptacles of the ſaid Excrements are not very manifeſt. The *ſooty Vapors* of the right Ventricle do evaporate through the *Vena Arteriosa*. The *Watry Vapors* of both the Ventricles, are congealed into the water of the Heart-bag, and are ſpent into the ſubſtance of the Hairs under the Arms. The *remaining Excrements* continue mixed with the Blood, and are carryed into the Arteries, and the wheyiſh parts are purged by the emulgent Arteries into the Kidneys,

Kidneys, and by ſweats into the habit of the Body, the thicker parts by the Hemorrhoidal Arteries and the Ramus Meſentericus. Some parts return with the blood through the Veins into the Heart, that by ſeveral repeated courſes there, they may be at laſt maſtered and overcome.

*In which Ventricle the Blood is perfected.*

*Whether or no is the Blood equally perfected in the right and left Ventricle?*

Although the heat of both the Ventricles doth ſeem to be equal, becauſe in Mankind they are both made of ſpiritful ſeed, and as much is afforded to the right Ventricle by the Liver-blood, and the returning blood of the Veins, as to the left by the Lungs; moreover in Live Anatomies we can hardly perceive that the one is hotter then the other.

Yet that in the left the blood receives greater perfection, theſe ſigns and tokens do perſwade me; becauſe

1. It receives the Blood in ſome meaſure prepared from the Lungs.

2. It ought to perfect it for the whole Body, whereas the right perfects it only for the Lungs.

3. It hath thicker Walls, more compacted fleſhy Pillars, wherewith the heat is both more eaſily preſerved and reverberated, and the blood more ſtrongly driven.

4. The blood is therein more frequently clottered by heat, and Cartilaginous and boney ſubſtances appear being dryed by heat.

5. When the left Ventricle is hurt, there is greater danger of death, then when the right is hurt.

6. Many Live-wights want the right Ventricle.

7. In dying perſons it is ſooner dead and void of motion then the right.

8. The Cavity thereof is more narrow, and therefore it doth more eaſily preſerve and perfect that which is contained therein.

We cannot exactly define *the place*. It is the whole Cavity, endued with the virtue of the Parenchyma, becauſe the blood fils the whole in the Diaſtole, and the inbred ſpirit, is every where diffuſed. Nor is there any token, of any ſtay which the whole blood makes in one place more then another, nor of any peculiar virtue of any particle.

The *Time*. It is perfected in a Moment, becauſe

1. It is forthwith received and expelled, and makes no tarriance.

2. From its abidance there, the blood would not be perfected but become aduſt.

3. The flame on the Candle ſnuf, lights another Candle in the twinckling of an Eye.

4. The Arterial Blood doth continually run to the extremities of the Body, and therefore it ought to be continually and ſuddenly perfected in the Heart.

IV. A fourth uſe of the Heart is perpetually to move. 1. That it might preſerve the Blood and all parts of the Body from putrefaction. 2. That it may help the heat and Elaboration of the Blood. 3. That it might kindle and ſtir up the vital Light. 4. That it might ſend fitting nouriſhment to all parts.

*What the Pulſe is.*

This motion of the Heart is termed PULSUS the PULSE, which is continual without ceaſing, raiſed by the influent Blood, and the Pulſifick or Pulſative faculty, there reſident.

*Its Parts.*

It conſiſts of a *Syſtole*, *Diaſtole* and *Peri-ſyſtole*. Which muſt be diligently explained by all their cauſes, according as Ocular Inſpection of living Bodies and reaſon ſhall Dictate.

*Syſtole*, being the proper and natural motion of the heart, is a contraction and drawing of the heart into a narrow compaſs, that the blood may by that means be forced out of the right Ventricle through the Vena Arterialis, into the Lungs, and out of the left Ventricle through the Aorta into the whole Body.

*Diaſtole*, being an accidental motion, is the widning of the heart, that Blood may be drawn in through the Vena Cava into the right Ventricle, and through the Arteria venoſa into the left,

*Peri-ſyſtole* is a certain reſt and ſtop going between both motions, when the Blood is about to enter into or go out of the Ventricles, ſo ſmal in healthy perſons that it cannot be diſcerned, being very manifeſt in ſuch as are at the point of death. It is only one between the Syſtole and Diaſtole, or between the Diaſtole and Syſtole. This is the natural ſtate of the heart.

Beſides theſe motions two others are Obſerved.

1. A certain Undation or waving towards one ſide according to the carriage of the right Ventricle, as if it did gently wreath it ſelf, as we ſee in an horſe when he is drinking; of which *Harvey* ſpeaks. 2. A *trembling* motion of the Heart, when it is cut in ſunder. The former depends upon the Situation of the right Ventricle: The latter is preternatural to the heart, not ariſing from other particles or ſmal Bodies, ſent in by the Coronaria, which is then cut in ſunder, but from the remainders of the vital Spirits.

*The Heart takes in Blood in the Diaſtole.*

We are taught by the teſtimony of our Eyes, that in every *Diaſtole* blood is plentifully received in, and in every *Syſtole* plentyfully expelled, both into the Vena Arterioſa and the Aorta. This appears I ſay to our Eye-ſight.

1. By Ligatures or bindings in live Anatomies. If the *Cava* and the *Aorta* with the Veſſels of the Lungs ſhall be bound or preſſed down with the Finger or any other Inſtrument on either ſide; we ſhall manifeſtly perceive that the part of the *Cava* which is inſerted into the Heart is made empty; that in the *Diaſtole* of the Ear, it is filled, and thereby the Heart; and that the other part of the Aſcendent and Deſcendent Vein, on this ſide the Ligature, doth ſwel. In like manner, the *Arteria Venoſa* being tied near the heart, by the *Diaſtole* of the left Ear, it is made void and empty on this ſide the Ligature where it looks towards the heart, but towards the Lungs it ariſes and ſwels. The Arterial Veſſels of the heart, do ſhew themſelves in a contrary faſhion: For the *Vena Arterioſa* being tied, it ſwels towards the heart, becauſe it is filled by the *Syſtole* of the right Ventricle; the *Arteria Magna* being bound, ſwels between the heart and the Ligature, being filled by the *Syſtole* of the left Ventricle.

2. Beſides the Ligatures, we may gather as much from the veſſels being opened or wounded. The *Vena Arterioſa* and the *Aorta Arteria* being opned by a Lancet, at every *Syſtole* or Elevation and Contraction of the heart, it pours forth plenty of blood, as long as the heart continues ſtrong, for when it languiſhes, it intermits ſome Pulſes, before it voids any Blood. Now we obſerve no ſuch thing, when the *Cava* or *Arteria Venoſa*, are opened between the heart and the Ligature.

3. The point of a living Heart being cut off, or the heart being cut aſunder through the middle, in every Contraction blood iſſues out, as long as the heart remains vigorous, which by the Information

# The FIGURES Explained.

This TABLE doth in some measure expres the Systole of the Heart in a Living-Creature, and the Circulation of the Blood.

## FIG. I.

AA. *The Lungs drawn back.*
B. *The Aorta Artery bound, and swelling towards the Heart.*
C. *An Orifice made in the swoln part.*
D. *The Vena Arteriosa tied, in like manner swelling towards the Heart, growing yellow where it looks towards the Lungs.*
e e. *The Ears on both sides.*
FF. *The Fore-side of the Heart, being in the Systole somwhat hard, and bent, and with its sides extended, its point being drawn back to the Basis or broad End.*
gg. *The Coronary Vessels.*

## FIG. II.

Shews the form of the Heart in its Diastole, and the motion of Humors in its vessels.

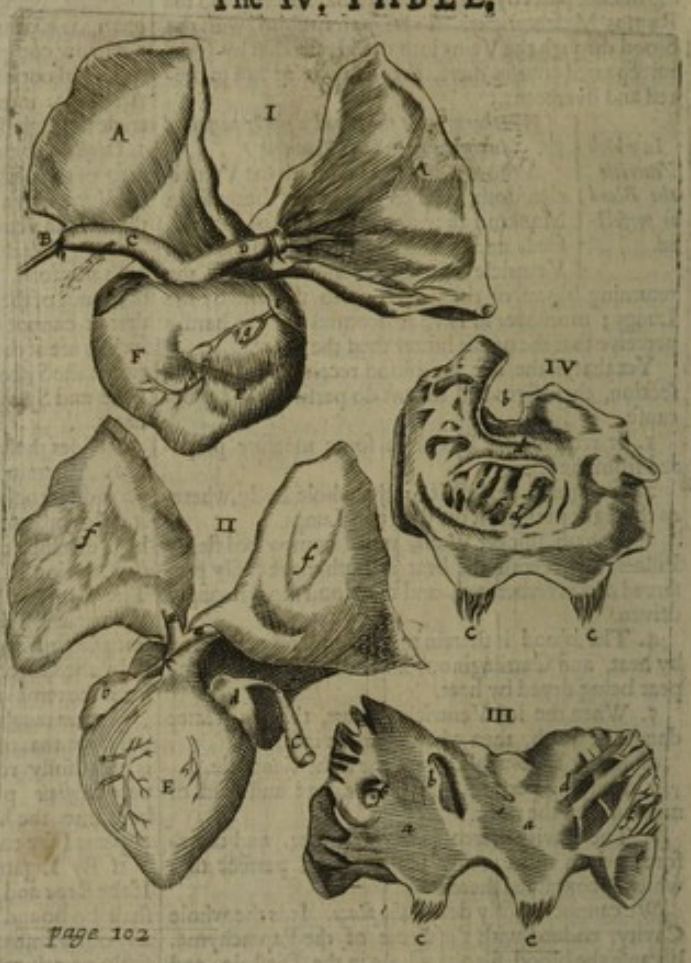
a a. *The Arteria Venosa without binding, being ful towards the Lungs, empty towards the Heart.*
b. *The left Ear, which receives blood from the Arteria Venosa.*
C. *The Vena Cava tied, empty towards the Heart, ful towards the Liver.*
d. *The right Ear swoln or heaving.*
E. *The hinder-side of the Heart, as it is in its Diastole, flagging.*
ff. *The hinder part of the Lungs, which are bunching or Bossie.*

## FIG. III. and IV.

Represents the Inside of the Earlets or little Ears of the heart. The third Figure Represents the left Earlet; The fourth, shews the Right

aaa. 3. 4. *The Plane Membrane of the Earlet.*

## The IV. TABLE.




page 102

b. 3. *The Orifice of Arteria venosa.* 4. *The Orifice of Vena Cava.*
cccc. 3. *The three-pointed Valves with seven Fibres, in* 4. *the same with five only.*
ddd. *The larger fleshy Pillars.*
eeee. *The lesser fleshy Pillars, Interwoven one within another with wonderful artifice.*
fff. *Many-feld Cavities formed between the Pillars.*

---

of *Harvey*, I have often seen in the Dissections of *Walæus*.

4. The swelling of the Heart and the Flagging thereof, being Palpable and visible to the external sense, do sufficiently demonstrate, when it is made strait in the Systole, that of necessity somwhat must be squeezed out as it were forcibly, and that when it is widened in the Diastole, it must needs be filled with humors.

5. The Ventricles in the Diastole appear greater, and in the Systole lesser.

6. From the largness of the Vessels of the Heart: the *Vena Cava* and *Arteria Venosa*, do open into the heart with wider mouths, then to suffer only a smal quantity of blood to enter. Also the Arterial vein and the *Aorta* are larger, then to send forth nothing, or only Spirits.

*The Quantity of blood in the Heart.*

The Quantity of Blood which fills the Heart in the Diastole, and which goes out by the Systole at every pulsation, cannot be exactly measured, because it varies according to the different state of the heart,

heart, and the temper of Animals, their Age, Sex, course of Diet and Life, &c. It is apparent to our Eyes in live Anatomies, that much is received and expelled. But it moves not in and out in so great quantities in persons that are well in health, when the Heart is more quiet and hath the command of it self. The Antients supposed that a drop or two was enough at a time, and that the blood did freely pass and repass the same way. But one drop of blood unaltered, is not able to fill the heart, nor doth provoke it to pulsation, not to speak how the foresaid experiments do shew the plenty that passes to and fro. Now the Valves do hinder the free passage and repassage of the blood by the same waies, of which the three pointed ones or *Tricuspides* so called, do hinder the blood which enters the heart from passing back the same way, and the Mitre-shap'd Valves do hinder the blood which goes out of the heart from returning the same way.

*Later Physitians*, are divided in their opinions. Some suppose that a drop or two is either so rarified as to fill the heart, amongst whom is *Des Cartes*; or is turned into spirit, as *Riolanus's Primrose*, *Leichner* and others suppose, who measure it by grains, whom we shall answer when we come to the *Causes*: Others being Patrons and favourers of the circular motion of the blood, as *Harvey*, *Walæus*, *Conringius*, *Slegelius*, *&c.* do calculate the quantity, by ounces, drams and scruples.

To clear up this Question, three things are to be considered, 1. How much blood is contained in the Diastole of the heart. 2. How much is expelled or driven out of the heart, in its Systole: whether all that enters the Heart in its Diastole, is squirted out in the next Systole. 3. How many pulsations the heart makes in one hour; or how often the heart receives somwhat by its Diastole, and expels somwhat by its Systole, in the space of an hour.

1. In the heart being in its *Diastole*, *Harvey* hath found above two ounces of blood. Also *Plempius* found near upon two ounces of blood, in the left Ventricle of the heart of a man that was hanged. *Riolanus* will hardly allow half an ounce in the left Ventricle of one that was hanged, and saies there was more blood in the right Ventricle. *Hogeland* also wil have half an ounce or a dram at least, to enter, at every opening of the Ear.

Now the quantity of all the blood contained in the body, doth seldom exceed twenty four pounds, or come short of fifteen.

2. In the *Systole* there is expelled either a fourth part, or a fift, or a sixt, or at least an eight, or all together that is contained in the heart.

*Harvey* supposes half an ounce in a man, or three drams, or one dram, in a Sheep and a Dog he saies a scruple. And he proves the same by that suddain effusion of all the blood, if the very least Artery be cut, and because in the space of one half hour, all the blood may be passed through the heart, he certainly concludes, that in every Systole of the heart, much blood is expelled. *Conringius* approves of his Computation. *Walæus* admits of half an ounce, but he supposes only one scruple, as doth *Slegelius*. *Regius* has many times observed half an ounce, somtimes two or three drams, in the heart of a Dog dissected. *Hogeland* contents himself with a dram. I being more sparing suppose half a scruple, in the smallest proportion to the quantity which issues in such as are wounded. For there goes not out so much in an healthy free heart, as in one that is bound and forced; nor is there so much expelled in the following Systole, as was drawn in by the Diastole, some part sticks in the hollow pits of the heart, much staies in the Cavity formed by the production of the three pointed Valves and Distinct as it were from the Ventricle; finally, the heart cannot be so straitly contracted in the Systole, as to squeeze out every jot of the Blood therein contained. Therefore *Conringius* doth rightly suspect that abides there the space of one or two Pulses, till by little and little it raise it self, which I understand of the reliques and part of the Blood, not of the whole received by the foregoing Diastole.

3. *Primrose* numbred in one hour 700 pulsations of the Heart. *Riolanus* 2000. *Walæus* and *Regius* 3000, *Harvey*, 2000. in some 4000, 6000, 8000. *Cardan* 4000. *Plempius* 4450. *Slegelius* 4876. I have told upon mine own wrist about 4400, But the number varies according to the Age, Temperament, Diet &c. of every person. So many Systoles therefore and so many Diastoles there will be in one hour, as long as the Heart is vigorous, for a languishing heart has more Diastoles then Systoles.

From these three Præmises I have calculated, how much blood may in an hour be squirted out of the Heart, by its sundry pulsations.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| From 1 scruple 3000 | | 101. 5 ounces. |
| 1 scruple 4000 | | 131. 10 oun. 5 dr. 1 scr. |
| 1 scruple 4450 | times | 151. 5 oun. 3 dr. 1 scr. |
| half a scruple 4400 | re- | 71. 7 oun. 5 drās, 1 scr |
| 1 dram 2000 | peat- | 201. 10 ounces. |
| 2 drams 2000 | ed, a- | 41 l. 8 ounces. |
| half an ounce 2000 | rise. | 83 l. 4 ounces. |
| 1 ounce 2000 | | 166 l. 8 ounces. |

Now supposeing all the blood contained in a mans body to be fifteen pounds, if that be taken away which goeth into the Nutriment of the parts, the defect whereof is suplied by new blood bred in the Liver, it will follow,

1 That more blood passes through the Heart every hour, then can be afforded by the Concoction of the Liver and the Stomach.

2 That all the Blood in the Body passeth through the Heart, in the space of a quarter of an hour, or half an hour, or an hour, or an hour and an half, or two houres at the most. For I cannot agree to *Riolanus* his conceit, that the blood is circulated only once or twice in a day, because he builds upon a false supposition of drops, and that only half the blood is circulated.

3 That the parts to be nourished do not need so much blood for their nourishment.

4 Because neither the Vessels are broken, nor the Arterial blood can run back again because of the valves nor is elsewhere dissipated, of necessity it runs back through the Veins into the Heart, and the Circulation is performed, of which I shall speak more in my book of Veins and Arteries.

*The form of the Heart in the Systole.*

What the form of the Heart is in its Systole and Diastole, is known by three tokens. 1 By the Anatomy of living Creatures 2 By the Comodity and Convenience of motion and Rest. 3. By the carriage of the fibres and the situation of the parts.

In the *Systole* 1 The Point of the Heart draws up to the basis or broad end, and it becomes broader because it is busied in expelling the blood, the length thereof being changed into breadth, because the basis or broad end is immoveable in respect of the point, which

which is tied to no Veſſels. But according to the obſervation of *Walæus* in thoſe living Creatures, whoſe *Aorta Arteria* does not proceed from the Baſis, the broad end or baſis of the Heart withdraws it ſelf from the Point. *Riolanus* will have the Baſis of the Heart alwaies to draw towards the Cone or Point thereof, becauſe the ſaid Cone is harder then to be drawn or bended backwards. But elſe where, he denies that the Baſis being ſtrongly faſtened to the veſſels, can be drawn towards the Point. And therefore other, whom he and *Slegelius* do follow, conceive that it is extended long-waies, that its walls being contracted, it may expel the Blood. But then the Orifices of the Veſſels being drawn downwards in the lengthening of the Heart, would be ſhut, and a contrary motion would happen; beſides that living Anatomies do ſhew, that the heart becomes ſhorter in its Syſtole. Nor can it appear longer but ſhorter, if either the point draws to the Baſis or the Baſis to the point. Both forms ſerve for expulſion of the blood, for whether you preſs a bladder ful of water longwaies or broadwaies, you will ſqueeze out the water as ſoon one way as another.

2. The inner walls are on each ſide, drawn up to themſelves towards the Ribs, becauſe they are contracted and ſtraitned, as we find by putting our Finger in: But the outer parts being ſwelled, ſeem to be made broader, by reaſon of the contraction of all the parts, blown up in the diſtenſion. It differs therefore from *Galens* Syſtole, which *Leichnerus* will have to be drawn likewiſe into it ſelf, the Longitude of the Heart being changed into Latitude. For indeed and in truth the Diaſtole is, when the heart is made wider, either long-waies or broad-waies, to the intent that it may be filled, unleſs the inner parts be ſtraitned.

3. The foreſide of the heart is lift up towards the Breaſt-bone, eſpecially about the Baſis. For the Broad end or Baſis of the heart, ſmites the Breaſt where the Pulſe is felt, becauſe that part is raiſed, and neareſt the Breaſt-bone; in the Syſtole the Heart is, vigorated and mettleſome, not in the Diaſtole, and then the Arteries are dilated and filled, whereas the heart is emptied in the Syſtole, and at the ſame time the Pulſe is felt, in the Wriſt and the Breaſt, at one and the ſame time. But the Pulſe is moſt of all diſcerned, in the left ſide of the Breaſt, becauſe there is the Oriſice of the Arteria Aorta.

4. The whole heart becomes every where tight and hard.

5. It is more contracted and ſtraiter then within, and leſs in bulke, which we judg by our ſight and feeling.

6. It appears white, eſpecially in the more imperfect ſort of Animals, by reaſon of the voidance of blood in its Syſtole.

In the *Periſyſtole*, when the heart is looſe and ſoft, before the *Diaſtole* follows, and the heart is in its properſtate.

1. The point withdraws it ſelf from the Baſis, and the Baſis from the point in ſome perſons.

2. The lateral parts internal and external do extend themſelves towards the Ribs.

3. The foreſide falls in, the hinder part is depreſſed, eſpecially above at the Oriſice of the Aorta, according to the accurate Obſervation of *Walæus*.

The other *Periſyſtole* which goes before the Syſtole, is hardly by any notes diſcernable from the *Diaſtole*.

*The ſhape of the Heart in the Diaſtole.*

In the *Diaſtole*, which *Backius* tells us begins in the middle way to Dilatation, and ends in the middle way to contraction,

1. The upper ſide is lifted up and ſwolne by blood flowing in on either hand by the Venal Veſſels, the ſwelling proceeding by little & little to the point. But it doth not then ſmite the Breaſt, as *Laurentius* and *Roſſeus* would have it, becauſe the Arteries undergo the Syſtole, and the heart ceaſes from expulſion, for which cauſe it is not Vigorated.

2. It is more flagging and ſofter, becauſe it ſuffers in its reception of blood.

3. The ſides remain more lank and extended, and the Cavities remain wider, and therefore when a man puts his Finger into a living heart, he feels no conſtriction.

4. It is red, becauſe of the thinneſs of the walls, and the Blood received in, which is Tranſparent.

5. The Cone departing from the Baſis in the Periſyſtole, renders the heart more long, that it may be more capacious to receive the blood. That it is drawn back towards the Cone, as many write, our Eye-ſight will not allow us to believe, nor can it or ought it ſo to be. It cannot becauſe the Fibres are relaxed and not bent; nor ought it, becauſe it muſt be enlarged to receive, which you may in vain expect, the Ventricles being ſtraitned and revelled. Nor do I aſſent to *Des Cartes* and *Regius* men of moſt ſubtile wits, that in the Diaſtole the point draws near to the Baſis, in the Syſtole it departs therefrom; for they confound the Periſyſtole or quiet poſture of the heart, in which the heart is ſoft, looſe and void of blood, before the Diaſtole is performed, after the Syſtole is ended. Moreover, *Walæus* believes, that thoſe men were deceived, who in a wounded living heart, pretend to have ſeen blood expelled in the Diaſtole; becauſe they took that to be the Dilatation, which was indeed and in truth the contraction. The blood which goes out of the wound, goes out in the Diaſtole, not driven by the Pulſe, but becauſe the way lies open downwards, it gently ſlides out, drop by drop.

*The next Efficient Cauſe of the motion of the Heart.*

The *Efficient* Cauſe of the motion of the heart, is either immediate or remote. The *Immediate* is twofold, the *Blood* and the *Pulſifick* faculty. *Pulſifick* or *Pulſative faculty*.

The *Blood* either remains in the ſame quantity as it flowed in, or it is changed in quantity by boiling, working and rarifying.

1. *Pure* blood and ſincere, flowing in through the Vena Cava and Arteria Venoſa, and remaining ſuch, only becoming more perfect and vital, raiſes the heart into a Tumor like water in a Bladder or Skin-bottle, which being for the greateſt part diſtended, becauſe the plenty of blood is burthenſome, it raiſes its ſelf to expel the ſame, by gathering together its Fibres; and this motion happens to the heart in this caſe, as the motions of other Members, *viz.* the ſtomach, Guts, Bladder, Womb, which are extended by the reception of Chylus, Whey, Wine, Blood, &c. which being expelled they fall again; and like the Muſcles, which are ſtretched being ſwoln with Animal Spirits. By this Blood the Heart is continually moved, as a Mill-wheele is by the perpetual falling down of the Water, which ceaſing the Wheel ſtands ſtill. There is plenty of blood enough to diſtend it, not ſo much furniſhed from the Liver, as from the aſcendent and deſcendent branches of the Cava, running

ning back from the remoteſt Veinulets or ſmalleſt branches of the Veins, and it is continually forced along, with Celerity and Vehemency, according to the Demonſtrations and Doctrine of *Harvey* and *Walæus*. I ſhall juſtifie what I now ſay with only one experiment: If the Veſſels which bring into the heart be tied and ſo ſtopt, the Hearts motion ceaſes, and there remains nothing but a Wavering and a Palpitation; but the Ligature being looſned, it recovers its motion.

*Ariſtotle* makes the Cauſe to be Blood which is not pure, nor in ſo great quantity as to be able of it ſelf to diſtend the Heart, but boyling and working, which boyling of the blood many have followed, though explained after a different manner. *Cæſar Cremoninus* makes the cauſe to be the reſiſtency of the Heart, and the ſwelling thereof by reaſon of the Ebullition, which afterward falls, by reaſon of the inbred heavyneſs of the heart, as parts puft up with wind, do of their own accord ſettle when the wind is out, and the heaving of the Earth cauſed by repletion and blowing up of wind, ſettles again, by the peculiar heavyneſs of the Earth. *Caſpar Hofman* flies to the inæquality of the boyling blood, which is like boyling water, part whereof aſcends and part deſcends.

Others do interpret the matter with greater ſubtilty ſaying that the blood is changed into an Airie ſpirit. *Primeroſe* ſaies, that blood juſt as Milk, Honey, and very many things beſides, doth exceeding ſwel and riſe, ſo as to become nothing but a kind of Spirit or light Air. *Leichnerus* ſaith that of one grain of good blood a great quantity of Cordial Balſam is made; even as by one grain of Odoriferous Gum caſt upon a Cole, an whole Chamber is filled with a delitious ſmel.

But many difficulties ſtand in the way of this Opinion.

1. No boyling is of it ſelf equal, but the Pulſe is ſomtimes equal.

2. The Pulſe ſhould be greater accordíng as the Boyling is greater. But the boyling of the blood is greateſt in burning Fevers, by reaſon of the extremity of bubbling heat and the various nature of the Blood, yet is the Pulſe in ſuch caſes very ſmal, and in Putrid Fevers it is evermore little in the beginning according to *Galen*.

3. In live Anatomies, if you wound the heart or the Arteries near the heart, pure blood leaps out abundantly, not frothy, nor boyling, nor heaving, and it continues as it came forth. Nor can it in a moment of time, either boyl in the Heart or Leave boyling, if it did boyl. Yea and if in two Veſſels you ſhall receive the veiny blood out of the Cava near the heart and the Arterial blood out of the Aorta near its orignal, you ſhall find no difference; neither at the firſt, nor afterwards. This *Harvey*, *Walæus*, and as many as have made trial can witneſs with me.

4. It cannot all be turned into pure ſpirit by the heart, nor ought it ſo to be. Not the former, becauſe there is not ſo much heat in a ſound heart, nor can the blood taken out of the Arteries ſet over a great fire be all extenuated, as *Conringius* hath obſerved. Not the latter, becauſe the parts for whoſe nouriſhment it is ordained, are not meerly ſpiritual.

5. Plunging into cold water would aſſwage the boyling. But the Arm being hard bound till it ſwel and grow red again, and then thruſt into moſt cold Water or Snow, when you unbind the ſame you ſhall perceive how much the Blood returning to the Heart doth cool the ſame, as *Harvey* hath taught us.

The moſt ſubtile *Renatus des Cartes* and *Cornelius Hogelandius*, and *Henricus Regius* who tread in his footſteps, with equal commendation, do after another manner demonſtrate the motion of the Heart to proceed from a *Drop* or two of blood *rarified*: when the Ventricles of the Heart are not diſtended with blood, of neceſſity two large drops do fall thereinto, one out of the Cava into the right Ventricle, another out of the *venoſa Arteria* into the left, becauſe thoſe two Veſſels are alwaies full, and their Mouths towards the Heart are open, which drops becauſe of their aptneſs to be dilated, and the heat of the Heart, and the remainders of blood therein burning, preſently they are ſet on fire and dilated by rarefaction, by which the Valves through which the drops entred are ſhut and the Heart is diſtended. But becauſe of the ſtraitneſs of the Ventricles, the blood rarifying more and more cannot there abide, therefore at the ſame moment of time, it opens in the right Ventricle the three Valves of the Vena Arterioſa which look from without inwards, and being agitated by heat, it breaks out through the ſaid Vena Arterioſa, and by diſtending the ſame and al its branches and driving on the blood, makes them beat the *Pulſe*: but in the left ventricle it opens the three valves of Arteria magna looking from without inwards, and through them breaks into the great Artery, which it widens, and drives the next blood warmed and expelled by the former pulſations, into the reſt of the Arteries of the whole body, that they might be thereby diſtended. And ſo they conceive the Diaſtole is cauſed. And they ſay the reaſon of the Syſtole is, becauſe the blood being expelled out of the ventricles of the Heart, the Heart is in part evacuated, and the blood it ſelf in the Arteries cooled, wherefore of neceſſity the heart and Arteries muſt flag and ſink, whereupon way is again made for two drops more to enter, that ſo the Diaſtole may be repeated.

I dare not deny a light Rarefaction from a gentle heat, ſuch as we obſerve in the opening of a Vein, and I grant that it may be ſomtimes præternaturally augmented; but that a few drops ſhould be rarified into ſo great a bulk, as to cauſe the motion of the Heart, and that they ſhould be cooled in the Arteries, many Arguments, beſides thoſe before thoſe oppoſed to the Ebullition of the blood, do diſſwade.

1. Living Diſſections, in which neither when the Heart, nor when the Arteries are wounded, does the blood come out drop by drop or rarified, but pure, ſuch as the Ear had forced out.

2. The Heart being cut in pieces or pricked, is ſeen to pulſe, without any rarefaction of blood, which is but imaginary.

3. In ſtrong Dogs the point of the Heart being cut off, *Walæus* obſerved, that when by reaſon of the Efflux of Blood, it was not half full, it was nevertheleſs erected, but not filled by rarefaction: but when it was contracted, that portion of blood which remained in the Heart, was caſt out to the diſtance of more then four Feet. It is in vain to call in the outward Coldneſs of the Air as an aſſiſtant cauſe: for the blood in the Heart doth not grow cold in a moment, the heat thereof being yet Vigorous, as a boyling pot taken from the fire and uncovered doth not immediately ceaſe to boyl but after ſome time.

4. *Jacobus Back* doth elegantly devince the ſame from the ſtructure of the heart and its Veſſels. For the Muſculous fleſh of the heart being firme and

ſtrong, is unapt to riſe and fall by the bare Rarefaction of the blood. A more vehement action is requiſite to move this vaſt bulk. Alſo the Arteries of the heart ſhould have had a greater Orifice, and the rarefied blood being to go forth would require a larger ſpace, then was neceſſary for its entrance.

5. A Confuſion would ariſe in the motions of the Heart and valves, as he obſerves. The Diaſtole of both of them would be performed in the ſame time, and ſo the valves ſhould be uſeleſs, both which is repugnant to expetience. Moreover the valves muſt, be both ſhut and open, in the Syſtole of the Arterie.

6. That it ſhould be cooled in the Arteries, neither reaſon or occular inſpection will permit. It is drawn hot out of the Arteries, differing little or nothing from that which is contained either in the Heart, or near it. In the ſmall Arteries there is indeed no Pulſe felt, but that is to be imputed to the ſmalneſs of the veſſels and their diſtance from the Heart which forces the blood. Nor ought it becauſe it enters into the Capillary Veſſels, that it may nouriſh the parts with hot Blood, not with ſuch as is cooled and thickned, before it is changed into the ſecondary humors. And what uſe is there of rarefaction, if it preſently ſettle again.

The Experiments and Reaſons which learned men bring to the contrary, from an Eele and an hunting dog, from the contraction of the members by Cold from palpitations, from ſpirit of wine reſembling the Pulſe, from vehement protruſion &c. are eaſily anſwered if you conſider

1 That a certain motion is reſtored even in Hearts that are dead, by exciteing their heat as in Muſcles.

2 The Fault is in the Veſſels contracted by Colds not in the Blood. when they fall in and flag.

3 Palpitations ariſe from plenty of blood, as examples teſtifie, ſuppreſſion of the Courſes, and the cure by blood-letting.

4 In the Heart there is an even motion, different from that which raiſed by ſpirit of wine or any thing elſe.

5. The protruſion by pure blood is more vehement, if the faculty concur, and the Fibres of the Heart be united.

6. The Heart is in its Periſyſtole or very near it, when in the point cut off, no dilatation is obſerved, if it continue ſtill in the Syſtole, the dilatation is not felt, till the Diaſtole follow.

*Whether there be a pulſifick Faculty.*

The *pulſifick Faculty* implanted in the Heart, muſt needs be joyned with the blood as the cauſe of its motion, either that it may guide the influx and egreſs of blood, and aſſiſt the ſame, which would otherwiſe proceed diſorderly, as I explain the matter; or that it might of it ſelf produce the motion, according to the Opinion of the Ancients, which cannot be conſerved, if the perpetual flux of the blood ſhould be ſtopped. That the Heart ſtands in need of ſuch a faculty I prove

1. Becauſe the Pulſe would be alwaies unequal, the influx being unequal, unleſs directed by ſome Faculty.

2. When the Heart in Feavers is more vehemently moved then ordinary, through the urgency of heat, and in dying perſons Nature being at the laſt pinch, and uſing all her might, yet is the motion of the heart weak, as appears by the Pulſe, becauſe the inbred Faculty is either loſt or weakned. Contrariwiſe, though the ſaid Faculty be ſtrong, and the influx of the blood ceaſe or be hindred, after large bleedings, or by reaſon of Obſtruction of the Veſſels, either in the whole Habit of the Body, or the paſſages thereof, or near the Heart, the Motion of the Heart fails. And therefore both are to be joyned together as primary Cauſes.

3. Any Particles of the Heart being cut off, do pulſe by reaſon of the reliques of this Faculty or Spirit remaining.

4. The Heart being taken out of the Body, or cut in pieces, lightly pricked with a pin, does preſently pulſe, as *Walæus* hath obſerved.

5. It were contrary to the Majeſty of the principal Part, to be moved by another whether it will or no, without any aſſiſtance from it ſelf, and ſo to receive a violent Impreſſion.

*Regius* hath ſubſtituted the influx of Animal Spirits into the fibres of the Heart inſtead of Animal Spirits, and *Hogeland* the little petite Atomes of the blood moved in the Parenchyma. But we muſt know in the firſt place 1. That the motion of the Heart is Natural which laſts perpetually, yea againſt our wills, and when we are aſleep, and not Animal. 2. That we exclude not the Spirits, which are the Souls Servants and Inſtruments. 3. The ſmall Boddikies or indiviſible Particles of the Blood, have all dropped out in diſſected Hearts, becauſe the *Vena coronaria* was cut aſunder. And that if any reliques of the ſaid Bodikies did remain, they could not be excited to motion, either by pricking alone, or by raiſing heat, unleſs a Spirit or Faculty be allowed, which being extinguiſhed, though the pieces of the Heart be laid in never ſo hot a place, they will never pant.

*Remote Cauſes of the motion of the Heart.*

Among the *Remote Cauſes* there is

1 The vital *Spirit*, as well that which is implanted in the Heart, as that which comes thither from without, with *heat* ſufficiently manifeſt in live diſſections, and which warms the whole Bodie. And that either not *ſhineing with light*, as moſt will have it, or *ſhineing*. That a lightfull heat of the Heart is requiſite in this caſe, many things argue. 1 The motion of the Elements is ſimple, never circular, and light moves it ſelf and the humors with a circular motion. 2 The Heart and the Blood are more quickly moved by light then otherwiſe they could be, which in the twinkleing of an eye, dazeles all things, illuminates all things. 3. There is in all particular parts beſides the obſcure principles of the Elements, alſo a lightfull part propagated from the ſeed, which ought to be preſerved by a like flame, kindled from the Heart 4 In *Hippocrates* to dream of pure and brightly ſhining ſtarrs, ſignifies Health of Bodie. 5 No Humor although hot, does pant and move it ſelf, unleſs a burning flame, as we ſee in ſpirit of wine, a Candle, and other things. 6 In Glow-wormes their hinder-part only pants and ſhines, where their Heart is, of whoſe light I have diſcourſed in my *Second Book of the light of Animals* Chap 11 and 12. That the vital ſpirit is really endued with light, and that there is an inbred light in the Blood and Heart, which helps forward the circular motion of the blood, I have demonſtrated in my ſaid Treatiſe Lib. 7. Cap. 5. 23. *Helmont* conſents that the animated ſpirit, in the left Ventricle of the Heart, inlightned by the former light, is the Mover of the Heart. After *Caimus* and other ancient Authors, *Ent* aſſerts the ſame thing touching the flame, raiſed out of the Seed in the firſt bladder of the Heart raiſed by the heat of the Hen which hatcheth, and firſt of all ſhineing forth, when the Lungs perform their office. yet he errs, that in the external widening he begs, in the Conſtruction more inwardly he tends to the beginning: for in the Syſtole all that illuminats

is expelled, and then it is vigorated in a narrow heart, which is evident in optick tubes and hollow glaſſes. I add that in the Diaſtole of the left Ventricle, it ſets on fire and kindles by the Syſtole from the Lungs, the vital flame.

2. The Shape and Conformation of the Heart and Veſſels being exceeding well fitted to receive and expell the blood. Eſpecially the *fibres* of the Heart, and the *fleſhy columns*. Theſe make not ſo much for the Strength of the Heart alone, as for the motion. For all the fibres being contracted greater and leſſer, in the walls and ſeptum, which according to *Harvey* are circular, as in an artificial Net, or Purſe ſqueezed, the contents are expelled. They are ſtretched in the Syſtole, and remitted in the Diaſtole. By help of the ſmaller fibres, wherewith the fleſh is interwoven, a *languiſhing* conſtriction is made, but to a *ſtronger*, thoſe greater fleſhy ones concur contained in the Ventricles, which *Walæus* often obſerved in live Bodies diſſected.

3 The *Pulſe* of the Heart, the Blood and the extream parts, the pulſe is from the Heart, which ceaſing, the motion alſo ceaſes. Now it begins from the vena cava, and is continued from the Auricula dextra, by and by from the right ventricle into the Vena arterioſa, or if the point be cut off, externally from the *Arteria venoſa* into the left Earelet, thence into the left Ventricle, out of which the Pulſe is felt by a manifeſt conſtriction to goe into the Aorta, in the Anatomy of living Creatures.

They drive, becauſe 1 The Blood is offenſive by its Quantity. 2 They are moved being irritated by any external force. 3 Blood is continually ſuppeditated. For *Blood* thruſts and drives on Blood, ſo that even after the Heart has bin taken out of Bodies, *Walæus* has ſeen a quick motion of the blood in the veins. Which nevertheleſs did not happen by any proper power, which the Blood has to move it ſelf, but partly by the driveing of the *external parts*, which remitt or ſend back that which remains after nutrition as burthenſome and ſuperfluous, partly by a ſpontaneous contraction of the Veſſels filled with Blood, whoſe Arteries in living Bodies being bound towards the Heart, do ſwell; towards the extream parts they are empty: But the Veins too near the ſmalleſt branches and the parts from which they bring back the Blood are puffed up, but are flat where they look towards the Heart, to which they drive the Blood; in a word, partly by the contraction of the *muſcles* and their driving, in the fleſhy and outward parts, as *Harvey* obſerves.

4 The *Attraction* of the Heart and Parts, leaſt they be deſtitute of aliment profitable and ſufficient for them, which we obſerve according to Nature in thoſe parts that are nouriſhed; but beſides nature in wounds, Ulcers, Tumors, &c. And this may eaſily be done, becauſe the blood diſperſed in all places, is immediately faſtened to the Heart and Parts which draw it, the Pulſe of the cava and Arteries aſſiſting the ſame.

## Chap. VII.

## *Of the parts of the Heart in ſpecial, viz. the Earlets, Cavities, Septum, Veſſels, and Valves.*

THe parts of the Heart which are ſpecially to be conſidered, are either externally ſeen as the *Earlets*, or within only, as the *Ventricles* or two Cavities, the *Septum* or partition, and the *Veſſels* with the Valves.

*The Earlets of the Heart why ſo called?*

The *Earlets* or little Ears, were ſo termed, not from hearing, but becauſe of ſome reſemblance in their ſhape. For from a long Baſis they end in a blunt point (howbeit the left is more accumulated) of an obtuſe triangle; and they have a Cavity, that the Ventricles might be produced before the Heart. For that ſame pulſing Bladder in an Eg, is the Earlets, becauſe they were neceſſary in the Child in the Womb, though the Heart were not ſo ſoon neceſſary, which afterwards grows upon the Bladder. Others give another reaſon, becauſe the Earlets obſerve the ſame proportion in their pulſing as the Bladder had. But this is very hard to diſtinguiſh in the firſt Generation. *Others* take the Bladder for the Heart, whoſe Expanſions or Earlets appear red, becauſe they are tranſparent, but the Heart is not ſeen by reaſon of the plenty of Seed, and Pulſe intermitted. I ſuſpect that both may be hid under the *Veſicula* or bladderkie, but that the Earlets are preſently drawn and moved, becauſe of their uſe. Otherwiſe it would ſeem inconvenient that the Appendix ſhould be greater then the whole Body. Nor is the Heart a bare Parenchyma or affuſion of blood. It hath Cavities produced doubtleſs out of the foreſaid Bladderkie.

*What pulſes firſt in an Eg.*

Now the Earlets are Proceſſes or Appendixes; and according to *Hofman*, nothing but the Subſtance of the Heart attenuated and widened. Which I know not how true it is. I ſhould rather ſay they ſeem to be the ſubſtance of the neighboring Veſſels dilated, although they are made firſt of Seed out of the bladder, and are the firſt motion, and the laſt in dying.

*Their Situation.*

They are *ſituate* at the Baſis of the Heart, before the Orifices of the veſſels venal to which they cleave, and whereby they are mediately joyned to the heart. They are on each ſide one

*Number.*

For two they are in *Number*, anſwerable to the number of the Hearts Ventricles, the right Earlet being greater, and the left ſmaller. And both are large in an Embryo or Child in the Womb; the former is joyned to the *Vena cava*, with which it ſeems to be one common body; the latter to the *Vena arterioſa*.

*Subſtance.*

The *Subſtance* of the Earlets is peculiar, ſuch as there is none in any other part; by reaſon of their ſingular uſe. Howbeit they are thin and ſoft, for their more eaſie contraction and nervous for ſtrengths ſake. But the left is more hard, a little more fleſhy and thicker: yet the Heart is not ſo. Howbeit they anſwer in a certain proportion to the Ventricles of the Heart.

*Their Surface.*

Their extetnal *Surface*, when they are extended and full, is even and boſſie or bunching (but their circumference unequal) when they are contracted, it is wrinkled; and in the left it is more wrinkled then in the right, becauſe the inner fabrick is more turning and winding, and hath more pits in it, for

The Earlets being *inwardly* diſſected and ſpread open, do diſcover unto us 1. a certain fleſh-membranous *plain*, ſtretched out to the extremities of the treble pointed Valves, to which the fibres of the Valves are faſtned. 2. About the whole circumfereuce fleſhie Columnes grow out, firſt the great crooked ones,

Out

out of which Spring many lesser ones, with a wonderful and neat contexture, sometimes single, sometimes wreathed, and infolded either with the great ones, or with one another. 3. Between these Columnes deep *Pits* are seen, more in the left, fewer in the right. In the middle partition of each Earlet. *Folius* hath found out many *little Holes*, which I have also seen, through which he conceives the blood is carried into the left Ventricle, when there is need of less matter. But seeing they are rarely to be seen, nor do they penetrate into the Ventricles, yea they are less, I am more apt to think they are Pores common to many, serving for motion, or the nutrition of the Part.

See Tab. IV. of Book II.

*Botallus* hath found a *Passage* sufficiently visible near the right Earlet, which goes presently right out, into the left Ventricle. This *Walæus* explains to be ment of the oval hole, or that passage by him observed, which goes obliquely out of one Earlet into the other. Such an one I have often seen in Oxen and Goats, but it is the coronal Vein, nor does it pierce into the left Earlet, but descends into the Parenchyma of the heart.

As to their *Colour*: In an Infant in the Womb some months old, they are red, by reason of the abundance of purple blood, according to the Observation of *Harvey*. I have observed the same in the Conceptions of beasts, the Heart being white and bloodless, and the Earlets

*Their Colour.*

## The FIGURES Explained.

FIG. I.

Shews the Heart cut in sunder athwart.

A. *The Basis of the Heart.*
B. *The Point of the Heart.*
C. *The right Earlet.*
D. *The left Earlet.*
EE. *The Shape of the left Ventricle like an half Moon.*
FF. *The Cavity of the left Ventricle.*
GG. *The partition between the Ventricles.*

FIG. II.

Shews the Vena cava with the right Ventricle dissected.

A. *The Orifice of the Coronary Vein.*
B. *The Appearance of an Anastomosis, between the Vena cava & Vena pulmonalis.*
CCC. *The trebble-pointed Valves with the Fiberkies wherewith they are fastned.*
D. *The Ventricle cut long-waies.*

FIG. III.

A. *The right Ventricle of the Heart opened.*
BBB. *The Sigma-fashion'd Valves, visible in the Vena arteriosa.*

FIG. IIII.

AA. *The Arteria venosa dissected.*
B. *The Print of an Anastomosis between the Arteria venosa and Vena cava.*
CC. *The two Mitre-shap'd Valves.*
D. *The left Ventricle opened.*

FIG. V.

A. *The great Artery cut asunder near the Heart.*
BBB. *The Semilunary Valves, in the Orifice of the great Artery.*

## The V. TABLE.


full of blood and ruddy. In grown persons they are commonly more obscure then the Heart it self, when they move not, but in their motion they successively change their colour, as the Heart does; for being moved they are pale, because they expel the blood in their contractions, which does most of all appear in their extremities; they grow red again in their Diastole, when they have received blood.

*Their Motion.*

Their *Motion* is manifest to the sense in live Anatomies, by reason of the blood rushing in, and filling them, wherewith they swell in living bodies, and by their contracting themselves, by means of their fleshy fibres contracted into themselves, endeavoring to force the blood out into the Ventricles.

There are three parts of their motion; *Systole*, *Diastole*, and the rest or pause which comes between them. which cannot be discerned, save in persons ready to die, for they are performed so swiftly in sound persons, that they seem to be confounded, and to be performed all at once, as in the discharge of a Gun, all seems to be performed in the twinkling of the eye, and in swallowing, as *Harvey* informs us.

T

The *Diaſtole* is cauſed by the blood received from the Vena Cava and Arteria Venoſa. The *Syſtole* is performed, when the Earlets being filled, do by contracting themſelves, expel the Blood into the Ventricles.

The Diaſtole and Syſtole of both the Earlets, do happen at one and the ſame time. When the right Earlet undergoes its Diaſtole, at the ſame time the left Ear undergoes the ſame; when the latter is contracted in the Syſtole, the former alſo expels. But the Diaſtole of the Heart and Earlets, happens at different times, as alſo both their Syſtoles. The Syſtole of the Earlets happens at the ſame time with the Diaſtole of the Ventricles, and contrarily, and the conſtriction of the Earlets doth alwaies forego the Diaſtole of the Ventricles, both in healthy perſons and in ſuch as are at the point of death. But the motion of the former is more laſting then the motion of the latter, When the left ventricle ceaſes, the left Earlet ſtill continues pulſing, which being extinct, the remaining motion is in the right ventricle. and that ceaſing, the right Earlet proceeds panting, being the laſt that dies, ſave that when it ceaſes, a certain trembling motion doth as yet continue in the blood which flows in, by reaſon of the driving of the extream parts.

*Their uſe.* Their *uſe*, is I. To be Store-houſes to the Heart; for they firſt received the Blood and Air, that they may not ſuddenly ruſh into the heart, whence the heart might be hurt, and the Animal faculty ſuffocated. And hence it is that they are placed only at the veſſels which pour into the heart, and not at the Arteries which void the blood forth.

II. To ſafeguard the veſſels to which they are joyned.

III. To be inſtead of a cooling Fan to the Heart, according to *Hippocrates*.

IV. According to *Walæus*, to be in place of a meaſure, by which the vena Cava and Arterioſa do meaſure the blood into the heart, for ſeeing all the blood was not to go out, at every pulſe, but the greateſt part was to ſtay behind to be further perfected, nature joyned the Earlets to the heart, as veſſels which ſhould give in ſo much blood to the Heart, as was naturally to be caſt forth at every pulſation. For which cauſe he thinks it is, that the right Earlet is greater then the left, becauſe the right Ventricle is more Capacious then the left, and like more is voided therefrom then from the left, viz. ſooty Exhalations and the Nutriment of the Lungs.

*The Ventricles of the Heart.* Ariſtotles *Error.* The CAVITIES of the Heart or its Ventricles, Chambers, or Caves &c. are not three, as *Ariſtotle* falſely aſcribes to greater Beaſts, for three are not found, no not in a Whale, but only two, as *Walæus* and *Sylvius* have obſerved in the diſſection of a young Whale. Nor did *Galen* at Rome find more in an Elephant. And by a very rare chance three were obſerved by *Æmilius Pariſanus* at Venice in the Heart of a certain Coverlid-maker. And *Veſlingius* twice obſerved the like. Alſo *Walæus* ſaw a third Ventricle in the Heart of an Oxe. *Cæſalpinus* obſerved three in Birds and Fiſhes, and the right Ventricle doth eaſily appear to be divided into two near the point, by a certain thin Partition, yet in truth both come into one. *Licetus* underſtands that ſame third Ventricle of *Ariſtole*, to be the Prominency of the right Ventricle, turned in beyond the left, ſo that the left Ventricle commonly ſo called is *Ariſtotles* middle Ventricle. *Conringius* doth otherwiſe excuſe *Ariſtotle*, viz. that the right Ventricle in his account is whence the Cava ariſes, the middle whence the Aorta ſprings and the left, whence the Arteria Venoſa or left Earlet ariſes, which being the leaſt of all, is in ſmal Live-Creatures hardly viſible. But ſo there ſhould be four Ventricles, the Vena Arterioſa being added, as at firſt ſight may ſeem, not three only. There are therefore only two Cavities found in the Heart of a Live-wight, the right and the left, having their inner ſurface uneven and rough, eſpecially the left. The Heart of a certain Polander cut up by *Riolanus*, was perfectly ſolid, having no Ventricles at all.

Many *Pits* are formed in them by the fleſhy Fibres, in the right more, but narrower, in the left fewer, but deeper, that they might contain the blood received in, hence in the Conſtriction of a Living Heart they are leſſer, in the Dilatation wider. The Pits are conſtituted and fenced by

*Fleſhy Pillars in the Ventricles of the Heart.* Thoſe *fleſhy Particles* termed *Lacertuli* Muſclekies, ſomtimes round, ſometimes thin, being five or more in the right, two only viſible in the left, but very thick ends. *Veſlingus* obſerves that the larger have Pores which paſs through them. The *uſe* of them, is according to ſome, to be Ligaments of the Heart. *Maſſa* counts them little Muſcles. *Veſalius* and *Riolanus* call them *Columnæ carneæ*, fleſhy Pillars, which being contracted, do further the *Diaſtole* of the Heart. *Pariſanus* ſaies by help of them the Heart contracts it ſelf, *Walæus* alſo hath obſerved in live Diſſections, that they aſſiſt the Contraction or Syſtole of the Heart, eſpecially when it is ſtrong and vehement, at what time their ſwelling begins at their Baſis, and goes on by little and little unto the point. *Harvey* ſaies they draw the Cone or Point of the Heart to the Baſis or broad end thereof, by their oblique fibres. And he is apt to think that heat is carried through all of them. *A. Benedictus* and *Ent*, that they hinder the blood from going into Clotters, while it is ſhaken and agitated by them. *Backius*, that they are inſtead of Ropes and Bands, to hinder leaſt in the Contractions of the Heart, the Valves being forced beyond their pitch and overſhot, ſhould be unable to retain the Blood. *Stegelius* will have it that they are contracted, that they may ſhut the Orifices of the Veſſels of the Cava and Vena Arterioſa by their Fibrekies. All theſe Opinions are true and muſt be joyned together, as will manifeſtly appear to him that ſhall accurately conſider the times of the motions of the Heart.

*Things preternatural found in the Heart.* Many things are preternaturally found in the ventricles of the Heart. *Bauhin* hath found bits of fat, and our moſt expert Countryman *Wormius* hath took out of both the ventricles certain Caruncles or ſmal particles of Fleſh, whiteiſh within, but of a ſhining red color without; which I alſo have long ſince found, at *Padua* and at *Hafnia* in my Diſſections, both of Men and Beaſts, *Eraſtus* hath found a Flegmatick concretion, like yellow marrow, which is found, in the boyled bones of Oxen. *Veſalius* two pounds of Glandulous and blackiſh fleſh, *Benivenius* a Gobbit of fleſh like a Medlar.

*Salvius* hath obſerved Worms, as alſo *I. D. Horſtius* at *Confluentia*; *May* a twibladed Snake like a Whip at *London*, and *M. A. Severinus* much ſuch another at *Naples*. *Hollerius* found ſtones (with an Impoſtume) in a woman troubled with the ſtone; and *Wierus* ſtones as big as Peaſe.

*A Bone in the Heart.*

Bones are more rarely found in the Hearts of Men. Yet *Gemma* did once find some, and *Riolanus* twice, in the dead body of president *Nicolas* being eighty years of Age, at the beginning of the Aorta, and in the Queen Mother of *Lewis* the thirteen King of *France*, being after her decease opened to be Imbalmed. *Johannes Trullius* found one in the Heart of *Pope Urban* the eighth of a triangular Figure representing the letter T. *Simon Pauli* my Renowned Predecessor in the Anatomical Theatre, took a bone as hard as a stone of a Figure of the *Pythagorean* letter Y, out of the Heart of a Man of *Hafnia* forty years of Age, the bigness of a Wallnut, and the shape not unlike the Heart. I conceive they are all bred through the dryness and slow motion of the Humors in aged and sick Persons. Yet nature makes use of this defect to provoke and quicken the motion of the blood, when it passes slowly, as waters flow more easily when a peice of wood is cast in, or that all the blood may not clotter, as our Women and Butchers stir their blood about with a stick, when they intend thereof to make Puddings, that it may not go into Clotters.

*The right Ventricle.*

The *right Ventricle* receives blood out of the Vena cava, which Vein it receives into it self: And therefore it hath not so thick a flesh or wal, as the left hath, that their might be an even poise, seeing it contains more matter, and bears a greater weight then the left. Nor is there so perfect a Concoction made in this Ventricle, as in the left in which there is more heat.

It is not exactly round but semicircular, resembling the Moon encreasing, nor does it reach to the End of the Point, but it seems to be as it were an Appendix to the left Ventricle, which when the left is taken away, seems still as it were to represent an whole Heart.

Yet is it deeper and larger then the left, by reason of the store of blood, which it was to contain, both to nourish the Lungs, and to make vital Spirits in the left Ventricle. For

Its *Use* is 1. To receive blood out of the vena cava, to nourish the Lungs, the said blood being poured into the Lungs through the *Vena arteriosa*. Therefore Fishes which have no Lungs, and draw no Air in at their Mouths, are without this Ventricle, having no more then one. This right Ventricle therefore, does concoct and attenuate the Blood, for the Nourishment of the Lungs.

II. To send the thinner part of the Blood through the Septum or partition, into the left Ventricle, to make vital Spirits; and the thicker part through the Lungs, both to nourish them, and that it may return to the left ventricle, for the Nutriment of the whole Body.

III. Further to perfect and prepare the blood which runs back as superfluous after the extream parts are nourished, and the crude blood which is bred in the Liver.

*The left Ventricle.*

The *left Ventricle* is narrower, but more noble; having a round Cavity, and which reaches unto the point of the Heart. Its flesh or wall is three times as thick as that of the right ventricle. Also it is harder, that the vital Spirits may not exhale, and that the motion of the blood might be stronger, being to be forced into the farthest parts of the body.

Its *Use* is to make vital Spirit and Arterial blood, of a twofold matter. I. Of blood prepared in the right ventricle, and passed through the Septum and the Lungs. II. Of Air drawn in by the Mouth and Nostrils, prepared in the Lungs, and transmitted through the *Arteria venosa* with the blood into the left ventricle of the Heart, to kindle and ventilate the vital flame, yea and to nourish the same. The latter fishes stand in need of and Leucophlegmatick persons, the former such as are seated in a narrow or infected place, or are under extream heat, for fear of suffocation and extinction of the flame in the Heart.

The *Use* therefore of both ventricles is in a manner the *same*, viz. to generate Arterial blood, and to perfect the venal, and to receive the same running back from all parts of the body through the veins, and to expel the perfect blood through the Arteries into the farthest parts of the body, that they may be thereby nourished. This is proved by the Conformations of the ventricles, which in part are like one to the other, in the right two vessels, a Vein and an Artery carrying out, and bringing back, and as many in the left. In the former are two sorts of Valves the treble pointed, and Mitre-shap'd, and the like in the latter. The left expels and receives as much as the right, save that it is consumed in nourishing the Lungs and the Heart. Yet their different Constitution and Magnitude, argues some difference. Whence 1. There is a different Coction in the one and other, as hath been demonstrated above. 2. The right works for the Lungs the left for the whole Body. 3. The right sends footy Exhalations and blood to the Lungs; the left receives from the Lungs Blood Impregnated with Aire.

There is a *Septum* or *Partition* between the two Ventricles, which is thick like the other Wall of the left ventricle (which *Columbus* once observed to be Gristley) hollow on the left side, on the right bunching, full of hollownesses and holes. which some suppose to be the third ventricle of *Aristotle*; which hollownesses or Caves are more large towards the right side, but their utmost ends towards the left side are hardly discernable. *Helmont* describes them to be triangular, whose Cone ending in the left ventricle, is easily stopped, but the Basis of the said triangle in the right ventricle, is never stopped save in Death. But I have seen them Circular so that they could easily admit a Pease, but obtuse towards the left Hand.

*Manifest Pores in the Septum of the Heart.*

That they are open is the opinion of the Ancients and of many Anatomists which follow them. *Gassendus* saw *Payanus* at *Ajax* shew the Septum of the Heart to have through-fares, by reason of sundry windings and crooked Conv-holes as it were, and that by lightly putting in his Probe, without any violence, which he wreathed gently and turned it upwards and downwards and to the sides. And although by a Probe breaking the tender flesh of the Septum, we may easily make a way, yet we may not doubt of the Eyewitness of *Gassendus* nor of the Dexterity of *Payanus*; seeing I also of late found the partion of a Sows Heart, in many places obliquely perforated with manifest great Pores, which were open of themselves without the use of a Probe, so as to admit a large Pease: but when I put in my Probe, it brought me to the left ventricle, where a thin Membrane as it were an Anastomosis was placed, hindering any regress. *Riolanus* also hath seen it bored through towards the point, where it is most thin. *Walæus* in the Partition of an Oxes Heart, did sometimes find a Cavity in the upper part according to the length of the Heart, open into the left ventricle about the point

of

of the Heart, the length and breadth of a Mans Fore-finger, which he conceives to be the third Ventricle mention'd by *Ariſtotle*.

Yet are they not alwaies open in dead bodies, becauſe in living bodies they are kept open, by the continual agitation of the Heart, which ceaſing, they are not ſo viſible to the Eye-ſight, even as we ſee no manifeſt paſſages. when the ſweat breaks out plentifully through the Skin, nor when the ſeed breakes out of the Kernels and Spermatick veſſels, into the Urinary paſſage: nor the Pores by which the Empyema or out of the blood out of the vena Arterioſa peirces into the Arteria venoſa, through the ſubſtance of the Lungs, or the blood in the Liver, out of the branches of Porta into the Cava. *Celſius* is in the right, where he ſaies, that nothing is more fooliſh, then to think that look what and how it is in a living Man, ſo it muſt needs be in one that is dying, Yea that is dead. Whence many (as *Columbus*, *Spigelius*, *Hofman*, *Harvey*, &c.) have denyed that any thing paſſes through this Septum or Partition. But it is no wonder that they make a doubt of it: For,

I. They are ſo crooked and winding, that a Probe cannot eaſily paſs through them. Howbeit theſe Pores become more conſpicuous, in the Heart of an Ox long boyled, as *Bauhinus*, *Riolanus*, my ſelf with others can witneſs. And you are to obſerve, in oppoſition to *Hofman* and *Plempius* that deny it. that in the boyling a moderation muſt be uſed, and that the Fibres in living Bodies do never ſtick ſo cloſe together, but that they leave Pores, as the Nerves do ſhew, finally, that the quickeſt-ſighted Anatomiſts can ſee no Membrane in the boyled Hearts of Oxen. II. In dead Bodies all paſſages fall in and ſhrink together. III. That an extream ſtraitneſs was requiſite in the End; becauſe the thinneſt part of the Blood, is ſtrained as it were in that part: And in the mean time, becauſe theſe holes are not in vain, therfore,

*Whether the Blood paſs through the partition of the Heart?*

The *Uſe* of the Septum or Partition of the Heart, is, that the thinner blood may paſs there-through into the lef ventricle, for the Generation of vital blood and ſpirit, which is afterwards diſtributed through the Arteries into the whole Body, for to preſerve and ſtir up the life and natural heat. But the thicker and greater part of the blood, by a natural and ordinary way, and not a violent only, is communicated to the Arteria venoſa, through the vena Arterioſa, by mediation of the Lungs, that in the left ventricle it may be mingled with that which ſweats through the Septum. The thicker part is ordained to nouriſh the Lungs, and that it may return back to the left ventricle tis tempered with Air. The thinner part paſſing through the Septum, nouriſhes the ſame in its paſſage, becauſe the external Coronary veſſels do only creep through, and in that long and dangerous journey through the Lungs, it would vaniſh away and come to nothing. By this way only ſuch as dive deep into the Sea, and thoſe that are hanged for a ſmal while, do live a while and come to themſelves, after the motion of their Lungs is ceaſed.

The *Motion* of the *Septum* or *Partition* doth help forward this paſſage, which that it is moved according to the motion of the Ventricles, I have theſe ſigns and tokens; Becauſe 1. It is furniſhed with Circular Fibres, as well as the Walls, in a boyled Heart, ſuch in a manner as are in the Sphincter Muſcle, as *Harvey* teſtifies, which ſeeing them move the Ventricles, they muſt as well move the Septum. 2. A certain Palpitation is felt, if you put in your Finger into a living Heart, according to the obſervation of *Walæus*. 3. In Creatures ready to die, when the motion of the left ventricle ceaſes, the Septum follows the motion of the right Ventricle, as the ſame *Harvey* obſerves: and if the right Ventricle be wounded, *Riolanus* tells us, that the motion remains in the Septum in his *Obſervations*. Yet the ſame *Riolanus* in another place being wiſer, denies that it is moveable, unleſs towards the Baſis where it is ſoft gives way a little, and that ſo it ought to be that the paſſage may be maintained, becauſe when the Ventricles are dilated above the through-far'd Septum, and ſtraitned again like Bellows, the little holes would be ſhut up. But there is no fear. For in the Syſtole, when the point is drawn back to the Baſis, the Pores are opened in the Septum moved upwards, that the blood may at once paſs both the Septum and the Lungs. Contrarywiſe in the Diaſtole, becauſe the Heart is diſtended long waies, the pores are drawn back with the Septum, and are ſhut up, until the Heart be filled.

*Veſſels of the Heart.*

As to the *Heart-veſſels* there are found four remarkeable ones going out of the Heart which *Hippocrates* calls the Fountanes of Humane Nature. Into the right Ventricle are inſerted two Veins: the *Vena Cava* and *Vena Arterioſa*; into the left, as many Arteries; *Arteria Venoſa* and *Arteria Magna*. Before all which are placed within eleven *Valves* or little dores, made of the Tunicles of their Veſſels widened and ſtretched out. The Veins which bring in to the Heart, viz. the Cava and Arteria venoſa, have trebble-pointed valves, looking from without inwards; the Arteries which *carry away*, viz. the Aorta and the Vena Arterioſa, have Sigma-ſhap'd or Mitre-faſhion'd valves open inwards, ſhut outwards. The former admit blood into the Heart; being open they ſuffer the blood to flow out, being ſhut they hinder it from returning the ſame way. The trebble-pointed valves do not only wink, but they are cloſe ſhut by the blood diſtending the Heart, and by the conſtriction of the Heart which ſtraitens the veſſels. The Sigmoides or Sigma-ſhap'd are ſhut by the Relaxation and falling in of the Heart in the Diaſtole, whereby the Fibres being ſtretched out long-waies, they are drawn downwards with the Walls and ſo ſhut, like the Chains in Draw-bridges.

The *Trebble-pointed* or *Tricuſpides*, are opened by the impulſe of new blood through the Cava, and Arteria venoſa, and the Diaſtole of the Heart, whereby the Fibres being drawn downwards, they are opened; But the Mitre-ſhap'd valves, are open'd in the Syſtole by the Conſtriction of the Heart, and the blood urgeing its way out. Alſo they may be præternaturally ſhut, by the blood expelled and ſtanding ſeated in the full veſſells, to which, endeavouring to run back, they make reſiſtance by reaſon of their conformation, which Artifice of Nature, we ſee every where imitated by the Flood-gates and Locks made upon Rivers. But that according to nature they are not ſhut by the returning of the expulſed blood, as ſome conceive *Walæus* proves, Becauſe 1. Our ſenſes obſerve that the blood is carried from the Heart, not to the Heart by the Arteries. 2. In a rare and languiſhing Pulſe, the Artery doth not riſe or ſwel laſt in the upper part towards the Heart, but it ſwels there firſt. 3. If an Artery be tied two fingers from the Heart, and it be ſo opened betwixt the Ligature and the valves, that the blood may freely paſs forth, yet the valves will divers times ſtraitly be ſhut, and the Heart is orderly moved.

The

## The Explication of the FIGURES.

This first FIGURE shewes the right side of the Heart entire, and withall the Earlet cut off, and the Vessels which goe out of the Heart, but especially the Anastomosis by which *Folius* will have the Blood to flow from the right into the left Ventricle.

### FIG. I.

AAA. *The Heart in its proper posture, over the Surface whereof, the Vena Coronaria is disseminated.*

BB. *The right Earlet of the Heart, partly dissected, partly intire.*

C. *A certain white and circular place between the Earlets, in which on one side, under a certain little skin like a valve, an Anastomosis is found, that is a wreathed winding hole, through which* Folius *will have the Blood to pass, into the left Ventricle.*

D. *The vena cava dissected, as far as to the Situation of the Liver.*

E. *The Vena Aorta which goes to the Throat and Arms dissected.*

F. *The Arteria magna ascending.*

G. *The same descending near the Back-bone.*

H. *An Arterial Pipe, which joines the great Arterie with the Arteria venosa.*

I. *The Arteria venosa yssuing out of the right Ventricle of the Heart.*

K. *The Vena Arteriosa, Nurse of the Lungs, yssueing out of the left Ventricle.*

aaaa. *The Vena coronaria radicated and diffused through the surface of the Heart.*

b. *The beginning of the Vena coronaria, in the Earlet near the Vena cava.*

cccc. *A certain portion of the Earlet dissected.*

dd. *The other part remaining yet intire.*

ee. *A Probe thrust into the Anastomosis.*

f. *A little skin like a Valve placed at the mouth of the Anastomosis.*

gggg. *The Branches of vena cava, spred up and down and rooted in the Liver.*

hhh. *Ascendent branches of the Arteria Magna.*

### FIG. II.

This other Figure shewes the left Ventricle of the Heart, as also the Earlet dissected, together with the going out of the Probe, demonstrated in the first Figure.

AA. *The Heart cut open through the whole left Ventricle.*

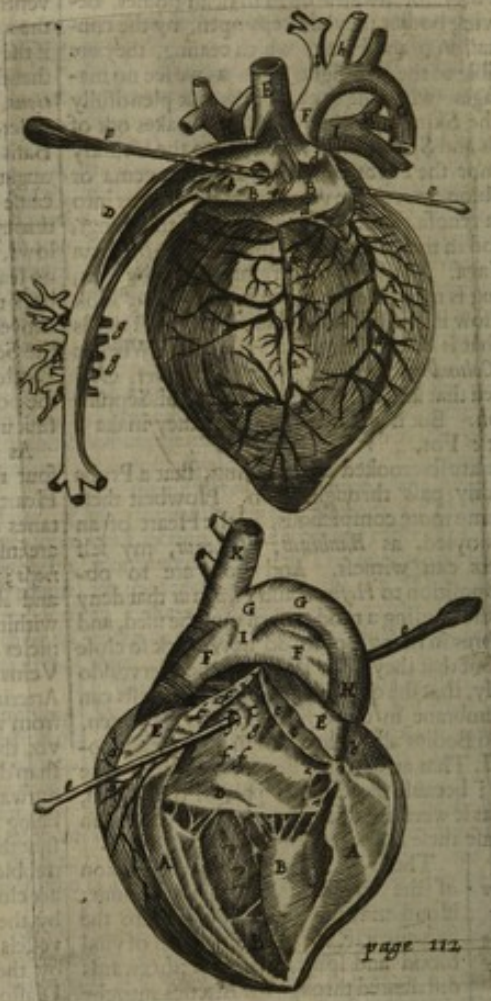
BBB. *An exact Representation of the said Ventricle.*

C. *The Egress of the Probe, through the Anastomosis, from the right into the left Earlet.*

D. *A Valve placed at the mouth of the great Artery.*

EE. *The left Earlet of the Heart dissected, being less then the right.*

## TABLE VI.



page 112

FF. *The Arteria Venosa going out of the right Ventricle of the Heart.*

GG. *The Arteria Magna ascending.*

H. *The said Artery descending near the Back-bone.*

I. *The Arterial Pipe knitting the Vena Arteriosa to the Magna Arteria.*

K. *The Trunk of the great Artery, ascending to the Arms and Throat.*

aa. *A certain part of Vena Coronaria dispersed through the surface of the Heart, the smallest part thereof is visible.*

bb. *The Arteria Coronaria dissected.*

cccc. *The left Earlet cut open as far as to the Vena Arteriosa.*

dddd. *Certain Nervous particles, in the very Ventricle of the Heart, accounted Nerves by* Aristotle.

ee. *The Probe thrust in through the Anastomosis.*

fff. *Certain final holes, through which* Folius *will have the blood to pass, while the Anastomosis grows together, and there is need of less matter.*

g. *A Valve on the side also set before the Anastomosis.*

And therefore many of the *Ancients* and *later writers* are deceived, who imagined that the blood did freely paſs out of the Heart, and back again thereto. And that the valves do not naturally cloſe and open, appears by a Tumor in the Arteries between the Ligature and the Heart, and the emptying of the veins near the Heart.

*Vena Cava.* The *firſt veſſel* is the VENA CAVA inſerted into the right Ventricle, with a very large and gaping Orifice, three times greater then the Orifice of the Aorta, and therefore it ſeems rather to ariſe from the heart, then from the Liver, eſpecially ſeeing it ſticks ſo firmly to the right Ventricle, that it cannot be ſeparated therefrom.

Whether it hath any *motion* is hard to determine. *Ariſtotle* and *Galen* ſeem to have been of that opinion; but the Interpreters expound thoſe places to mean an obſcure motion. But *Walæus* hath diſcovered a manifeſt motion therein, from the Jugulum as far as to the Liver, but moſt evident near the heart: and that therefore even in that place the Vena Cava is furniſhed with fleſhy Fibres, whereof it is deſtitute in other places. Alſo *Ent* hath obſerved that the vena Cava of a dead Beaſt, being with a mans Finger lightly touched in the Belly near the Thighs of the Beaſt, did expreſs a trembling motion.

Its *Uſe* is, to bring in Blood from the Liver, and the whole body, by its aſcending and deſcending Trunks.

A *Membranous Circle* grows to the Orifice thereof, to ſtrengthen the heart: Which is preſently ſplit into three ſtrong Membranous.

VALVES, termed *Janitrices*, Gatewarders, looking from without inwards, that the blood may indeed enter; but not return back into the Cava.

*Its treble pointed Valves.* They are termed TRIGUSPIDES, trebble-pointed, by the Greeks *Trichlochines*, becauſe they are like the Triangular heads of Darts, when they are ſhut, and fall cloſe one to another.

They grow, as alſo the reſt of the valves do, to many ſhreds (in the Cava commonly each one to five remarkeable Threds, intertwiſted with many little ones) whereby they are joyned to that *fleſhy particle*, before explained; which ſome call the Ligaments of the heart, others as *Ariſtotle* perhaps, the Nerves of the heart.

*The Vena Arterioſa, why called a Vein?* The VENA ARTERIALIS or *vas Arterioſum*, the Arterial veins or Arterial veſſel. Others call it *Arteria Pulmonaris*, the *Lungs Artery*, becauſe it is in truth an Artery, both in Subſtance and Uſe.

'Twas called a Vein firſt by *Herophilus* and afterwards by moſt other Anatomiſts, before the Circulation of the blood was found out, from its Office, becauſe it ſends blood to nouriſh the Lungs.

*Why call'd an Artery?* Tis termed an *Artery*, I. By reaſon of its Subſtance, which conſiſts not of a ſingle Coat, as a vein doth, but of a double one. II. Becauſe in a Child in the Womb it performs the Office of an Artery, and Pulſes as ſhall be ſaid in the next Chapter, As alſo in a grown perſon, becauſe it carries Nutritive blood to the Lungs, which is partly wrought in the right ventricle.

*Its Original and Progreſs.* This veſſel paſſes out of the heart with a ſmaller Orifice, and yet greater then the Lungs ſtand in need of: For *Columbus* and *Arantius* obſerve, that two Fingers have been thruſt thereinto; and it ought to be the greater, becauſe it receives blood from the continual pulſation of the right ſide of the heart. Moreover, reſting upon the Arteria Magna and inclining to the left ſide, it goes to the right and left parts of the Lungs with a double branch, a right and a left: Which afterward ſpend themſelves into ſundry branches in the Lungs.

*Its Uſe.* It *Uſe* is, to receive blood out of the right Ventricle, and to carry it to the Lungs for their nouriſhment, and according to the obſervations of latter Authors, to paſs over the reſt of the blood through the Arteria venoſa into the left Ventricle of the Heart, and to hinder the blood from ſliding back again into the heart.

*The Sigma-faſhioned Valves.* Three VALVES are placed therein, ariſing from the Coat of the vein it ſelf, looking from without inwards, and reſembling an half Circle, or the letter Sigma, as it was anciently figured, and did reſemble the Latine letter C.

*The Arteria venoſa, why an Arteria?* The ARTERIA VENOSA, which others call *Vena Pulmonaria*, is the third Veſſel of the heart, which is ſeen in the left Ventricle.

It is termed an Artery becauſe of its Office: For I. It Pulſes in a grown perſon, becauſe it is united to the left Ventricle, but it moves not by a proper motion of its own, becauſe it is neither an Artery, nor doth it carry pure Arterial blood. II. It is implanted into the left Ventricle.

*Why a vein.* Tis called a VEIN, I. Becauſe of its Subſtance. 2. Becauſe in a Child in the Womb, it performs the office of a vein. And it is produced as it were from the Cava, to which it is joyned, by way of Anaſtomoſis. Yea and in a grown perſon, it carries blood alſo to the heart, as doth the Cava.

It *Ariſes* with a round and great Orifice (greater then that of the Arteria Magna) divided into two parts preſently after its egreſs, juſt in a manner as if it aroſe with a twofold mouth; and it is diſſeminated into the right and left part of the Lungs.

The Uſe.

*Whether Air enters into the Heart?* I. In its Dilatation to draw Air to the heart, not bare and ſimple Air, but mixed with the blood which returns from the Lungs, for the Generation of vital ſpirits and Arterial blood, and to nouriſh and kindle up the vital flame. For the Arteria venoſa being opened in living Anatomies, doth pour blood and not pure air into the heart, which for the moſt part we obſerve thicker then ordinary in the Carcaſſes of Men and Beaſts, becauſe the motion of the left ventricle ceaſing, the blood received in this vein, cannot be driven or drawn to the heart. And when the Arteria venoſa is cut or opened, there appears no air, becauſe the air is not pure and ſimple, being mixed throughout with blood. And when the Lungs of a living or dead Creature are by Art blown up, not a jot of air is perceived to come thence to the heart, becauſe the Carriage of blood is wanting, and the natural Drawer and Driver is alſo wanting. But that the air ſuch as it is, doth come into the heart, their Examples do teſtifie, who have been ſtifled with the fums of Quick-ſilver. Coles, Lime, &c. And otherwiſe the Lungs and Lung-pipes were made in vain.

II. In the Contraction of the Heart to thruſt out a portion of vital blood, into the Lungs, together with

footy exhalations; which is an old opinion. But that in the Syſtole of the heart, blood or footy ſteams ſhould be carried this way. 1. The Valves hinder, which will not ſuffer any thing to return. 2. The Arteria venoſa being tied, doth ſwel towards the Lungs, and is lank and emptied near the heart. 3. Being opened it pours forth blood on this ſide the band, but beyond it being opened it voids neither blood nor footy exhalations. 4. The footy ſteams of the right Ventricle, do evaporate through the vena Arterioſa, turn into water in the Pericardium or Heart-bag, breed the hairs in the Arm-pits, and exale into the whole habit of the Body, through the Aorta. 5. The air which goes into the heart, and the footy ſteams which go out with the blood, ſhould be carried the ſame way, in contrary motions, which is a thing unuſal in the natural courſe obſerved in the body. For though ever and anon Excrements are driven from and Nutriment is drawn to the ſame part, yet the way is different, eſpecially where the afflux is continual, as in the Arteria venoſa from the Lungs; or at leaſt they are performed at different times. Therefore.

III. In the contraction of the heart, it drives blood which is ſuperfluous after the nouriſhment of the Lungs, or that which runs back, out of the vena Arterioſa, into the left Ventricle of the heart.

*The Mitre-ſhap'd Valves.* Two Valves only are placed at the Orifice of this veſſel, which look from without inwards (bred out of the Nervous circle which grows out of the ſubſtance of the heart) which being joyned together do reſemble a Biſhops Mitre, They are greater then the Valves of the Cava, have longer threds (and each hath ſeven large ones, beſides little ones annexed to them, which from a broad Baſis do commonly end into a ſharp point) and for ſtrengths ſake very many fleſhy Explantations. Therefore two were ſufficient to ſhut the Orifice cloſe, becauſe they are greater then others, the Fibres longer and larger, the Columnes or Pillars ſtronger, and the Orifice it ſelf is more Ovall-ſhap'd, then that of the reſt.

*The Arteria Magna.* The Arteria Magna or *great Artery* ſo called, becauſe it is the root of all others, is another veſſel of the left Ventricle, from whence it proceeds and ariſes.

At the Orifice hereof, is placed inſtead of a Prop, not in Men, but in certain Beaſts, as Harts, Oxen, Horſes, &c. a certain hard ſubſtance, which is ſomtimes Griſtly, ſomtimes Boney, according to the greatneſs and Age of the Beaſts. In man the moſt noble and ſtrongeſt, *Harvey* ſaw a portion of this Artery turned into a round bone, near the Heart, whence he concludes that the Diaſtole of the Arteries, is cauſed by the blood alone, not by any Pulſifick faculty, derived through the Membranes. Alſo *Johannes Schroderus* writes that the meeting together of the Arteries in the Baſis of the Heart, was in an heart degenerated into a bone.

*Its Uſe.* The Uſe thereof is, to communicate the Vital ſpirit, with the Nutritive Arterial blood, received from the heart, unto all parts of the Body, for Nutrition and life; which that it may not paſs back again into the heart, Three

*Its Valves.* Valves are placed (like thoſe in the vena Arterioſa exactly ſhut) looking from without inwards, which are termed Sigmiodes or Sigma-ſhap'd Valves.

# Chap. VIII.

## *How the Veſſels are united in the Heart of a Child in the Womb.*

*In the Child in the Womb.* THe Veſſels in the heart are otherwiſe diſpoſed when the Child is in the Womb, then they are after it is born; which though *Galen* knew and made mention thereof; yet the greateſt part of Anatomiſts have either neglected the ſame, or have delivered falſities thereabout, by ſaying that the Unions of the veſſels were ſome of them only made by a Chanel, others only by way of Anaſtomoſis.

*The Union of the Veſſels of the Heart.* But the Conjunctions or Unions of the Veſſels of the Heart in a Child in the Womb, are twofold:

One is made by an *Anaſtomoſis*, another by a Chanel.

By *Anaſtomoſis* an Union is made of the Vena Cava and the Arteria Venoſa, under the right Earlet, near the Coronaria, before the Cava doth abſolutely open it ſelf into the right Ventricle. The hole is large and of an Oval Figure.

Now Nature contrived this Union by way of Anaſtomoſis, 1. By reaſon of Vicinity. 2. Becauſe of the likeneſs of ſubſtances.

Before this hole in the Cavity of Arteria venoſa is placed a Pendulous, thin, hard, little Membrane, larger then the hole.

*Its various Uſes.* Its Uſe is, 1. According to the Doctrin of *Galen* and his Clients, that the blood may be carried through this hole, out of the Cava into the Arteria venoſa (not into the right ventricle, for vital ſpirit is not yet bred, nor do the Lungs need blood ſo attenuated) to nouriſh the Lungs; becauſe they could not otherwiſe be nouriſhed in a Child in the Womb, becauſe in it the heart hath no motion whereby the blood might be forced out of the right ventricle into the vena Arterioſa: And therefore this Arteria venoſa, is a vein in the Child in the Womb. But that it ſerves the turn of the Heart, and not only to nouriſh the Lungs, divers things *Evince* obſerved by the favorers of the Circular Motion. For 1. The Heart is moved even in an imperfect Child, after the third moneth, as Egs and Embryo's do teſtifie. But before the third moneth only a little Bladder of the Earlet pants, as in Inſects before the Heart is perfectly hollowed. But this motion were in vain, if the Heart ſhould not receive or expel any thing. 2. The blood by the Anaſtomoſis is immediately poured into the left Ear, and is neceſſarily thence conveighed by the Syſtole of the Heart, into the left ventricle. 3. All the blood is carried through theſe Unions, doubtleſs not for the ſake of the Lungs alone, which might be nouriſhed after the ſame manner as in grown perſons, although void of motion, the veins in part gaping. 4. The Child in the Womb is nouriſhed with Arterial blood, which can come from no place but the Heart, as ſhall be demonſtrated hereafter. Therefore,

II. The true uſe is, that it might conveigh part of the blood in a Child in the Womb, out of the Cava of the Liver, into the left ventricle of the Heart, which cannot go thither the ordinary way, the Lungs neither dilating themſelves nor Reſpireing. In which paſſage the right ventricle alſo draws ſomwhat to it ſelf.

And

*The uſe of the little Membrane.*

And that the blood may not ſlide back into the Cava, a little Membrane there placed hinders, when it falls in and ſettles.

*'Tis ſhut after the Birth.*

A little while after the Birth this Hole grows together and is dried up, ſo that a man would think the place had never been perforated, and that by reaſon of the plenty of blood in a grown perſon, forced out of the Lungs now opened and inlarged directly to the left Ear-let, which ſuffers not a final quantity of blood to flow out of the Anaſtomoſis, whereupon being ſhut it grows together. Howbeit in grown perſons, it remains for a ſeaſon open. *Pineus* obſerved it thrice, *Riolanus* once, and my ſelf more then once. *Botallus* moſt frequently in Calves, Sows, Dogs of a large ſize, and therefore he would have it to be alwaies and naturally open, that blood might paſs this way out of the right to the left Ventricle. *Cæcilius Folius* treading in his Foot-ſteps, thinks it is open in all Men, to the ſame end, as in a Child in the Womb, but contrary to experience. For it is then only open, when Nature hath ſhut up other paſſages, as I ſaw at *Padua* in that old Man, whoſe Arteria venoſa was ſtopped with Flegm. In Water-fowl and other Animals that live in the Water, as Ducks, Caſtors, Swans, Bitturns, &c. it is alwaies open, becauſe they live now and then in the Water, without the Uſe of their Lungs. And I have ſomtimes obſerved in dead bodies the little Membrane winking, and receiving the Probe without any violence, but I cannot allow that it is ſo alwaies. And that light opening would be unprofitable. For the paſſage of ſo much blood.

*By a Chanel or Pipe.*

Another Union is by a longiſh Channel, viz. that of the vena Arterialis, and the Arteria Magna, becauſe they are diſtant one from another.

This Union is without the Heart (the other within the ſame) two Fingers from the Baſis, in grown perſons four, for the Channel doth not begin from the ſtock of the Arteria Magna. It goes obliquely to the Arterioſa (therefore no valve is annexed to it becauſe the crookedneſs was able to hinder the Egreſs) [or rather becauſe the blood is forced thither, from the right ventricle of the Heart through the vena Arterioſa but it is not in like manner driven back out of the left,

## The Explication of the FIGURES.

In this TABLE are preſented the Unions of the Veſſels of the Heart in a Child in the Womb, alſo the Heart incompaſt with the Lungs, and the ſmal twigs of the Weſand or Wind-pipe call'd *Aſpera Arteria.*

### FIG. I.

A. *The Heart.*
B. *The Aſcendent Trunk of Vena Cava.*
C. *The Deſcendent Trunk thereof.*
D. *The Aſcendent Trunk of Arteria Magna.*
e. *The Axillary Artery.*
f. *The Deſcendent Trunk of the great Artery.*
g. *The Ear-let of the right Ventricle.*
K. *An Anaſtomoſis as it appears in Vena Cava.*

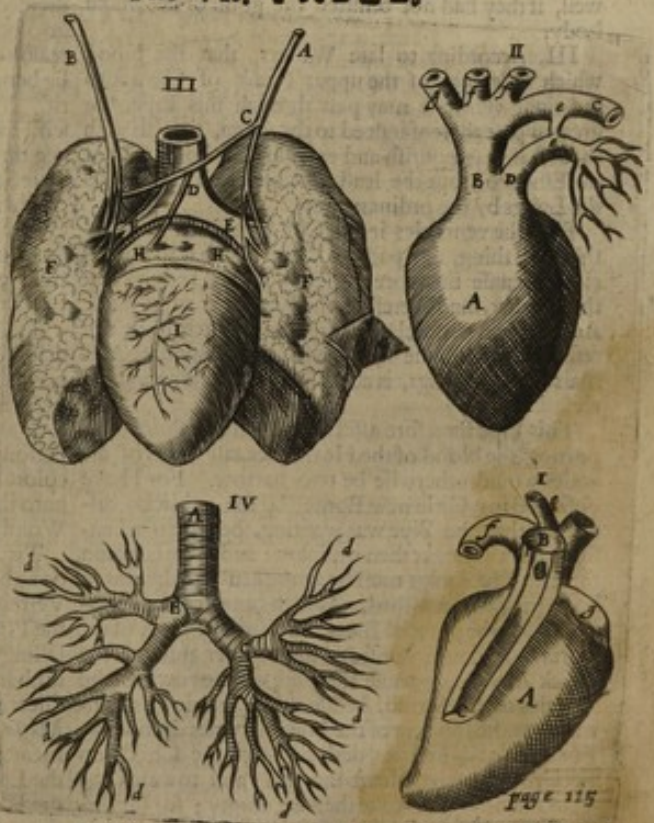
### FIG. II.

A. *The little Heart of a Child in the Womb.*
B. *The Trunk of the Arteria Magna, ſpringing out of the Heart.*
C. *A Portion of the ſaid Artery going down-wards.*
D. *The Vena Arterioſa drawn out of the Heart.*
ee. *The Channel between the Vena Arterioſa and Arteria Magna.*
ff. *The Riſe of the Arteries termed* Carotides *or drouſie Arteries.*
g. *The beginning of the Subclavian right Artery.*

### FIG. III.

A. *The right Nerve of the ſixt Pare going towards the Lungs.*
B. *The ſame Nerve on the left ſide.*
C. *The middle Branch between the two Nerves.*
D. *The Off-ſpring thereof, which is carried to the Pericardium.*
EE. *The two greater Branches of Aſpera Arteria, which on the back-ſides are Membranous.*
FF. *The hinder part of the Lungs.*
G. *The proper Membrane of the Lungs.*

## The VII. TABLE.




HH. *A remaining portion of the Pericardium or Hearts bag.*
I. *The Heart in its proper place.*

### FIG. IV.

A. *The Aſpera Arteria or Weſand, cut off under the Larynx.*
B. *Its right Branch, divided firſt into two.*
C. *The left Branch of the Arteria Aſpera, diſtributed in like manner into greater and leſſer Branches.*
ddd. *The Extremities of the Branches,*

by

by the Arteria venosa] where it is divided into two, as if it had three parts; the least whereof notwithstanding is the Channel.

*Which is dried up.* In Infants of three or four years old, it is stil to be seen, but without any through-passage: in grown persons tis by little and little attenuated and dried, being distitute of all Nutriment, because no Humors pass any longer through the same, until through absence of Life and Nourishment, it Putrifies and Consumes quite away.

*Its use.* The *use* thereof is, I. According to the Mind of *Galen*, that the vital Spirit being received from the Navil-Arteries into the Arteria Magna, may from hence be carried, through that Channel into the vena Arteriosa and so straight into the Lungs, to maintain Life. But, 1. It serves not the Lungs alone. 2. The Navil-Arteries do bring out of the Arteria Magna, but carry nothing thereinto. 3. The Pipe is greater then to serve only to carry Spirits. 4. The Lungs of a Child in the Womb being red, are not nourished only with Spirits.

II. According to *Petrejus* and *Hofmannus*, to bring Arterial blood to nourish the Lungs. Who had said well, if they had not omitted the good of the whole body.

III. According to late Writers, that the blood which slides out of the upper Trunk of Cava into the right ventricle may pass through this Pipe, the greatest part thereof indeed to the Aorta, that so with the rest it may nourish and enliven the whole body of the Embryo; but the least portion of all goes up to the Lungs by the ordinary way.

Both the ventricles in the Child perform one and the same thing, and part the blood which is to be carried, because the more perfect blood is supplied by the Mother, and therefore the Walls are a like thick. And the two ventricles in the Child which doth not respire, perform the same, which in imperfect Animals void of Lungs, is accomplished by one ventricle.

This Pipe therefore assists the Anastomosis in transporting the blood of the Heart, because either of the waies would otherwise be two narrow. For I have observed in a Girle new Borne, by me publickly dissected, that the Pipe was wanting, because the Anastomosis was larger then ordinary: and there is reason for it. The Lungs must be nourished and the whole body must be nourished. Which can never be effected, unless the Arterial Blood be distributed out of the Aorta. It comes not from the Mother through the Iliack Arteries, because they are not joyned to the Arteries of the Womb, besides their motion is contrary, as the binding of the Navil Arteries doth shew. For the Navil-Arteries derived from the Child, do swel towards the Heart thereof, and towards the Placenta or Womb-cake they are empty; for the Arterial blood in the Child. after it is nourished, runs back through the Iliack veins to the Placenta, as a part of the Child which must be nourished, out of which it passes again into the Navil-veins, and is mixed with that other blood which comes out of the veins of the Womb, and runs joyntly back again to the Liver and Heart of the Child, that the Circulation may be repeated. Now it flows conveniently out of this vena Arteriosa through the Pipe or Channel into the Aorta, by reason of its Situation downwards, and its crooked insertion into the Aorta. Therefore seeing the Arterial blood, is not carried from the Mother, upwards to the Heart, neither can the Lungs be nourished thereby.

# Chap. IX.
## *Touching the Lungs.*

*The Reason of their Name.* THe Lungs called in Latin *Pulmones* in Greek *Pneumon*: or *Pleumones*, have their name from Respiration or drawing in and blowing out the Air: because they are given to Animals living in their Air and breathing, but not to fishes which have neither Neck nor Voice.

*Their Situation.* They are seated in the Cavity of the Breast or Chest, which they fil, when they are distended.

*Division.* They are divided into the right and left part by means of the Mediastinum: that one part being hurt, the other may yet perform the Office.

*Into Lobes.* Each of these parts is divided into two Lobes, Laps or Scollups, about the fourth Vertebra of the Chest, of which the upper is shorter then the lower; seldom is one part divided into three Lobes, as in Brutes; because a man goes bolt upright, Brutes looking downwards, nor by reason of the shortness of the Chest, could any thing lie between the Heart and the Liver, except the Midrif. Yet oftentimes *Piccolhominens*, *Riolanus* and my self, have after *Hippocrates* and *Ruffus Ephesius* observed three. Now the Lungs embrace the Heart with their Scollups as with certain Fingers.

*Their Figure.* Their shape resembles that of an Ox-hoofe. On the outside towards the Cavity of the Chest, the Lungs are Bossie or bunching out, on the inside they are hollow, where they embrace the Heart.

*Their Colour.* Their *Colour* in the Child is red like that of the Liver: by reason of the nourishment is receives from its Mother; in grown persons tis yellowish Pale; somtime Ash-colored: in such as have died of a long sickness blackish. In some persons healthy enough. I have seen them Party colored, like Marble. In that part where it is knit unto the Chest by Fibres, tis red, as in a Child in the Womb.

*Connexion.* Tis *Knit* in the Fore-part to the Breast-bone by the Mediastinum, behind to the Vertebra's; somtimes the Lungs at the sides grow to the Pleura by certain Fibrous bands, whence arises a lasting shortness of Breath. Now this Connexion doth frequently deceive Physitians, not knowing or discerning Penetrating wounds of the Chest. *Nicolas Massa* conceives this Connexion profitable to the Heart, least it should be oppressed with the bulk of the Lungs, or the facility of breathing should be hindred, and *Riolanus* saies he evermore found this adhesion. I have cheifly observed it about the lower Ribs, near the Diaphragma, least they should press and bear upon it. Others say the Lungs are bound to Fibres, that in the wounds of the Chest, they might follow the motion of the Chest; though with a weaker motion.

*A certain Cause of long lasting Short-winded-ness.* *Hippocrates* in his second Book *de Morbis* calls it the Lungs slipt down to the side; and this comes to pass either from ones Birth, or after a Pleurisie, or by reason of Tenacious and clammy flegm interposing it self; or from some external cause, as negligent

Curing

Curing of a wounded or suppurated Chest. Also the Lungs cleave to the Heart, by the Vena arteriosa and the Arteria venosa.

*The Substance.* The *Substance* in a Child in the Womb is compact and thick; so that being cast into Water it sinks, which the Lungs of grown persons will not do. But after the Birth, because it begins to be moved with the Heart, by heat and motion the Heart becomes light and soft, lax, rare and spungy; so that the Lungs will be easily raised and fall again, and easily receive the Air: Which may be seen by the use of a Pare of bellows in dead bodies. *Helmont* hath seen the Lungs hard and stoney, in an Asthmatical person, and *Salmuth* observes that little stones have been there generated in shortness of Breath. Also touching stones we have the Testimony of *Galen, Trallianus, Ægineta.*

*Membrane.* The Lungs are compassed with a thin light Membrane, furnisht with many Pores which Pores are sufficiently visible, when the Lungs are blown up with a pair of bellows, and *Joh. Walæus* hath observed the said Pores in live Anatomies, as big as a large Pease. This way the Sanies or Corrupt matter of the Chest may Penetrate and come away by Coughing. This Membrane is produced from the encompassing Pleura. For when the Vessels enter into the Lungs, they devest themselves of their Coat, which grows out of the Pleura, which doth afterwards invest the Lungs.

*The Vessels.* The *Vessels.* The Substance of the Lungs is interwoven with three sorts of Vessels, which make not a little also for strength. Two proceed from the Heart, of which before: The *Vena Arterialis* and *Arteria Venalis.*

The third is proper, *viz.* The *Trachea* or Aspera arteria so called, of which in the following Chapter.

If these Vessels be fretted asunder as in persons *Phtisical*, or having the Consumption of the Lungs, many times plenty of blood is cast forth, or some Cartilaginous substance; yea and the Vessels themselves of the Lungs intire, which I have seen, and *Tulpius* hath two examples. And oftentimes persons in a Consumption die suddenly, because the greater Vessels being fretted asunder, the Heart is strangled with blood issuing there from.

*Why the Lungs hath so great Vessels?* These Vessels of the Lungs are great, not so much because they wanted much blood, for their substance is very smal, setting aside the Vessels, nor needed they so much blood as is sufficient to nourish the whole body; but they are great, because the greatest portion of the blood is carryed this way out of the right Ventricle of the Heart into the left by those wide passages, for the more subtile blood can find its way through the obscure Pores of the Septum. This passage is proved.

1. By the greatness of the vessels. For the vena arteriosa and the arteria venosa are most large. And because the former is a vessel which carries out of the Heart, it is furnished with the Mitre-fashion'd valves, which hinder the blood from passing out of the Lungs the same way; and the latter bringing blood out of the Lungs into the Heart, has the treble-pointed valves, hindring the blood from returning.

2. Great Quantity of Blood is continually sent by the Pulse of the Heart, through the vena arteriosa and thence through the arteria venosa unto the left ventricle, which is further confirmed by Ocular Inspection.

3. By Ligatures in living Anatomies. For the Vena arteriosa swels towards the Heart; but near the Lungs it is empty; the Arteria venosa contrarywise, swels towards the Lungs, but is empty towards the Heart. *See Tab. 4. of Book 2.*

4. The left Ventricle of the Heart being wounded, or the Arteria aorta, great plenty of blood will issue, as long as life remains, till all the blood in the body be run out. And from what other place can it come, seeing so much is not contained in the Heart, but out of the Lungs through the Arteria venosa, which had drawn the Blood out of the Vena arteriosa by the Anastomoses.

5. In the Arteria venosa as well of a living as a dead Body, so much Blood is found, that it hath often hindred me in my publick Dissections.

6. By the similitude of the Vessels one with anothet. The Vena arteriosa carrying out of the Heart into the Lungs, is just like the Aorta in substance, largeness, neighbourhood, and Valves. The Arteria venosa doth in like manner resemble the Vena cava by straitness of Connexion, substance of a Vein, Earlets and treble-pointed Valves.

*How Circulation is caused in the Lungs.* This *Circulation* through the Lungs is *furthered*, 1. By the widening of the Lungs when Air is drawn in, which being every where filled, the vessels are distended, as when they cease, the motion of the Blood is either retarded, or quite ceases. 2. By the Situation of the vessels of the Lungs. The Vena arteriosa is Disseminated in the hinder or Convex part of the Lungs, because it is strongly moved by the Pulse of the Heart, the Arteria venosa doth cheifly possess the foremore and hollow part, that the Blood might more readily slide into the Heart. In the Middest of which the Branches of the Wind-pipe are seated, that in the blowing out of the Air, they might receive sooty Exhalations from the Vena arteriosa, and in drawing the Air in, they might communicate the same to the Arteria venosa. 3. The anastomoses, by which the vessels are joyned together, both the branches which joyn mouth to mouth (though in dead bodies they cannot be discerned by the Eye-sight) and the Pores of the Parenchyma which is light and Porous.

*Contrary objections answered.* It is to be noted for the answering the objections made against this Circulation.

1. That the Lungs are not oppressed or burthened so long as they being sound, the Blood perpetually glides through by Peice-meal.

2. That the blood doth not drop out through the Pipes of the Wesand, because partly they draw in only Air or sooty Exhalations, and in no wise Blood of a thicker nature then they, unless they be preternaturally fretted in persons that have the Consumption, partly because nature never ceases to drive sound humors through the passages ordained for them, and retains what is necessary, which would otherwise go out at the passages of the Body being opened.

3. Although the Lungs of Dead bodies are whitish, yet the vessels do manifestly transpire through the external Coat. The Parenchyma it self is frequently ful, in persons strangled with blood, in others it is found emptied, because in the Pangs of Death it is forcibly excluded.

4. In burning Feavers, both the Lungs are hot, and thereupon the voice is Hoarse and dry, and they are oppressed, as appeared in the Epidemical Feaver

which raged up and down this year, by which many were ſtrangled.

5. It is no good judging of the healthy ſtate of the Body, from the preternatural ſtate thereof.

*Why Ulcers of the Lungs are without pain.*

Very ſmal *Nervulets* from the ſixth Pare are ſpred only through the Membrane thereof (which if it be inflamed, a pain will be felt, and communicated to the ſide it ſelf and to the Back) not through the ſubſtance of the Lungs, leaſt by Reaſon of their continual motion they ſhould be pained. Hence the Ulcers of the Lungs are without pain. Howbeit *Riolanus* allots very many Nerves to the ſubſtance of the Lungs alſo, drawn from the Implication and Contexture of the Stomach Nerves. I alſo have ſeen many ſpred abroad within the Lungs, proceeding from the ſixt Pare, and alwaies in a manner accompanying the Broncha or Lung-pipes, derived from the hinder part, and only a little twig conveig'd to the Membrane from the forepart.

What the *Action* of the Lungs is, Authors Queſtion. That they never move at all is *Helmonts* Paradox, but ſerve only as a ſeive, that the Air may paſs pure into the Cheſt, and that the Muſcles of the Belly alone do ſuffice for Reſpiration. But that they are indeed and in truth moved, the cutting up of live bodies ſhews, and Wounds of the Cheſt, that they move long and ſtrongly. Moreover that they may be moved, any one may try with a pair of Bellows. Finally, They ought to be moved, for otherwiſe both the Heart would be ſuffocated, and the motion of the blood in the Lungs, would be hindred. The Muſcles of the Belly do indeed concur, but ſecondarily, becauſe they are not joyned to the Heart, and when they are moved Reſpiration may be ſtopped, Yea, and when they are cut off in a living Anatomy, the Lungs are moved nevertheleſs. But whether they are moved by their own proper force, or by ſome other thing, is a further Queſtion. *Averrhoes* who is followed among the late writers by *John Daniel Horſtius*, conceives the Lungs are moved by their own proper force, not following the motion of the Cheſt, for otherwiſe ſaies he we muſt grant that a violent motion may be perpetual.

*Whence the motion of the Lungs proceeds.*

But we are to hold, that though the Lungs are the Veſſel of Reſpiration, yet they are ſo not by doing, but by ſuffering. For they have no motive force of their own, as *Averrhoes* will have it (becauſe at our pleaſure we can ſtop our breathing, or quicken or retard the ſame) nor do they receive the principle of their motion from the Heart, or from the blood raiſing them, as *Ariſtole* conceives, and his followers, For 1. The efflux of the blood out of the Heart, is made by the ornary motion, but the Reſpiration is voluntary. 2. The Cauſe of the Pulſe and Reſpiration would be one and the ſame, and they would be performed at one and the ſame time. But thirty Pulſes anſwer one Reſpiration. 3. While we draw in our Breath ſtrongly, and hold the air drawn in for a ſeaſon, the ſwelling of the Lungs ſhould compel us to let our breath go, becauſe it lifts up the Cheſt, according to their opinion. 4. The Blood of the Heart doth not abide in the Lungs by an unequal retention, ſo as to diſtend them, but it is forthwith expelled according to nature. 5. When it tarries longeſt in diſeaſed Lungs, it makes ſhortneſs of Breath or difficulty in breathing, but no Tumor. 6. In a ſtrong Apoplexy, the motion of the Lungs ceaſes, the Pulſe being ſafe and the Heart unhurt.

Ariſtotles *Error.*

*The Opinion of* Falcoburgius.

Nor are the Lungs raiſed up, by the air forced in, which when the Cheſt is lifted up, becauſe it hath no other ſpace whither it can go to, it is carried through the Aſpera arteria or Weſand into the Lungs, as *Falcoburgius* and *Des Cartes* conceive, and *Hegelandius*, *Regius*, and *Præus* who follow him: For 1. The air may eaſily be condenſed, as may be proved by a thouſand experiments, as by Cupping-glaſſes, Weather-glaſſes, Whips, Trumpets, Winds and infinite things beſide: and therefore it may be moſt ſtraitly compacted about the Cheſt, and compreſſed within it ſelf, as well by the internal ſubtile nature of the air and diſperſed by Atomes, eaſily recollected one within another, as by the external impulſe of the Cheſt, whereby it may more eaſily be condenſed, then driven into another place. 2. By the motion of the Cheſt or ſuch a like body, we do not ſee the lighteſt thing that is, Agitated. By an hole in a Wall all Chinks and Dores being cloſely ſtopped, our Noſtrils being ſtopped, we may with our Mouthes draw air out of the next Chamber, to which it is not credible that the air moved by the Cheſt, can reach with a ſtrong motion; and though air may penetrate into the Chamber, through ſome chinks and Rifts, yet is it not in ſo great quantity, as to ſtretch the Cheſt ſo much as it ought to be ſtretched, in free Reſpiration. The ſame experiment may be made in a Glaſs or Silver veſſel applied cloſe to ones Mouth. 4. While I have held my Breath, I have obſerved my Belly to be moved above twenty times the while. But whether is the Air then driven? Muſt it not needs be, becauſe all places are ful of bodies, that the air next the Belly is compteſſed and condenſed? See more of this ſubject in my *Vindiciæ Anatomicæ*, and in a peculiar *Diſcourſe*.

Therefore the Lungs do only follow the motion of the Cheſt to avoid *Vacuum*: And therefore only they receive the air drawn in, becauſe the Cheſt by widening it ſelf, fils the Lungs with air.

*The motion of the Lungs is proved to ariſe from the Cheſt.*

Now that the Motion of the Lungs ariſes from the Cheſt experience ſhews. For 1. If air enter into the Cheſt, being peirced through with a Wound, the Lungs remain immoveable, becauſe they cannot follow the widening of the Cheſt, the air inſinuating it ſelf through the wound, into the empty ſpace. But the Cheſt being ſound, the Lungs follow the widening thereof, to avoid Vacuum: as in Pipes, Water is drawn upwards, and Quittor, Bullets, Darts and other hard things are drawn out of body through the avoidance of Vacuum. 2. If the Midriff of a live Creature be peirced through with a light wound, Reſpiration is ſtopped, the Cheſt falling in.

*An Obſervation in live Anatomies.*

But ſomwhat there is which hinders many worthy men from aſſenting to this cauſe of the Lungs motion, becauſe after the Cheſt is perfectly opened, the Lungs are oftentimes moved a long time, with a vehement motion. But according to the Obſervation of *Johannes Walæus*, *Franciſcus Sylvius*, and *Franciſcus Vander Shagen*, that is not the motion of Conſtriction and Dilatation, which is the natural motion of the Lungs; but it is the motion of an whole Lobe upwards and downwards, which motion happens, becauſe the Lungs are faſten'd to the Mediaſtinum, the Mediaſtinum to the Midriff, and the Lungs are alſo

ſeated

ſeated near the Midriff: whence it happens, while the Creature continues yet ſtrong, that either the Lungs with the Mediaſtinum are drawn, or by the Midriff driven, the Diaphragma or Midriff, not yet falling down nor looſing its motion, which I obſerve in contradiction to the moſt learned Son of *Horſtius*. Now that this motion proceeds not from the inbred force of the Lungs, doth hence appear, in that alwaies when the Cheſt is depreſſed, the Lungs are lifted up, being forced by the Midriff, which at that time riſes a good height into the Cheſt; and contrarywiſe the Cheſt being lifted up, the Lungs are depreſſed. And becauſe the Lungs are the Inſtrument of Reſpiration, Hence it hath theſe following,

*Its Uſe.* Uſes, I. According to *Plato*, *Galen*, and *Abenſinæ*, to be a ſoft Pillow and Cuſhion under the Heart.

II. According to others who follow *Columbus*, to prepare and wellnigh generate the vital Spirits (which are afterwards to receive their perfection in the heart) whiles in them the blood is as it were Circulated, firſt boyling with the heat of the Heart, and afterwards ſettled by the coldneſs of the air.

III. It hath more proper uſes when it is Dilated, and when it is contracted.

When the Lungs are Dilated, they receive in the Air like a pair of Bellows through the Branches of the Wind-pipe.

*All kind of Air is not a friend to mans Spirit.* I. To prepare Aire for the Heart, for the convenient nouriſhment of the lightful Spirit. For every quality of the Aire is not a friend to our Spirit, as is ſeen in ſuch, as are kild with the ſmoak of Charcole, and the ſteam of newly whited Walls.

*Helmont* conceives that the Air is united to the ſpirit of the Heart, and that it receives a fermentation in the Heart, which accompanying the ſame they do both diſpoſe the Blood to a total tranſpiration of it ſelf, which is the reaſon why in the extremity of cold weather and at Sea, we eat more heartily, becauſe the thinneſs of the Air diſpoſes the blood to inſenſible tranſpiration. *Backius* is ſomwhat of the ſame mind, who conceives that by the moiſt and thin body of the Air, the blood is made apt to run, ſo as that it may be diffuſed into the ſmalleſt paſſages of the Body. Others aſcribe both theſe effects to the abundance of Seroſity in the Blood. Therefore *Hippocrates* ſaies that water is hungry; and we ſee that ſuch as are given to drink, are enclined to ſweat much, as alſo Scorbutick perſons.

*Our heat doth want a Cooler.* II. To fan and cool the heat. For we ſee that the heat of our Bodies ſtands in need of ſomwhat that is cold, without which it is extinguiſhed, as is apparent in ſuch as ſtay long in very hot Baths, as the flame of a Candle in a cloſe place, wanting Air goes out. And therefore the Lungs are called the Fan and cooler of the Heart, and the Fiſhes in the Water and other Animals that have but on Ventricle in their Hearts, are without Lungs, becauſe they do not want ſuch a cooling. As alſo Infants in the Womb, being fanned by their Mother, and the wide Anaſtomoſes, have their Lungs without motion. Hence it is that having ſeen only the Lungs, you may judg how hot any Creature is; for Nature makes the Lungs the larger, by how much the Heart is hotter. Therefore the Lungs are not abſolutely neceſſary to Life, but ſerve to accommodate the Heart. For inſtead of Lungs a boy of *Amſterdam* four years old, had a little Bladder ful of a Membranous wind, as *Nicolas Fontanus* a Phyſitian of that Citty doth teſtifie, which being guarded with very ſmal Veins, had its original from the Aſpera Arteria or Weſand it ſelf, whoſe office it is to cool the Heart. Who nevertheleſs died of a Conſumption, becauſe haply, his Heart was not furniſhed with a ſufficient quantity of Air.

*Why Fiſhes need no Lungs.*

*The Lungs of Children in the Womb move not.*

When the Lungs are contracted in Expiration, they do again afford us a twofold uſe. I. Sooty Excrements do paſs away through the ſame, being carried out of the Heart with the blood, through the Vena Arterioſa. II. To make an articulate voice in Men, and an inarticulate ſound in Beaſts, by affording Air to frame the voice. And therefore Creatures that have no Lungs, are mute, according to *Ariſtotle*.

## Chap. X.

## *Of the Lung-Pipe or Weſand.*

*The Weſand.* THe Pipe or Channel of the Lungs, is by the Ancients called *Arteria*, becauſe it contains Air: *Galen* and others call it *Trachea arteria* or the rough Artery, becauſe of its unevenneſs, and to difference it from the ſmooth Arteries. *Lactantius* terms it *Spiritualis Fiſtula*, the Spirit or Air-Pipe, becauſe the Air is breathed in and out thereby. Now it is a Pipe or Channel entring into the lower part of the Lungs, with many branches, which are by *Hippocrates* termed *Syringæ* and *Aortæ*, whoſe head is termed *Larynx*, of which in the following Chapter; the reſt of its Body is termed *Bronchus*, becauſe it is moiſtened with drink.

*Why call'd Trachea or Aſpera Arteria?*

*Whether any part of our drink doth paſs into the Weſand and Lungs.* For that ſome part of the drink doth paſs even into the Wind-pipe and Lungs, *Hippocrates* doth rightly prove by an Hog new kild, in whoſe Lungs matter is found juſt ſo colored as the the drink was, which he drunk immediately before he was killed. And that ſome drink may be carried through the Wind-pipe, may be proved out of *Julius Jaſolinus* an Anatomiſt of Naples, who ſeeking in the body of a Noble perſon, the Cauſe of his death, found his Pericardium or Heart-bag, ſo diſtended with Humor, that it being ſqueezed, ſome of the ſaid Humor came out at his mouth.

*Its Situation in Man-kind.* As to its *Situation*: in Man-kind it reſts upon the Gullet, for it goes down from the mouth ſtraight along to the Lungs: and at the fourth Vertebra of the Cheſt, it is divided into two branches, each of which goes into the Lungs of its reſpective ſide: they are again ſubdivided into two other branches, and theſe again into others till at laſt they end into very ſmal twigs in the ſurface of the Lungs. But the branches thereof which are greater then the reſt of the Veſſels of the Lungs, entring into the Lungs, do go through the middle thereof, between the Vena Arterioſa which is hindermore, and the Arteria venoſa which is before it: with which it is joyned by obſcure Anaſtomoſes, or conjunctions of Mouths, hardly diſcernable by our Eyeſight.

*In a Swan.* In Bruits tis *Situate* much after the ſame manner.

manner. Yet we muſt note that it is different in a Swan, and after a manner altogether ſingular. For being longer, it inſinuates it ſelf by a crooked winding into a caſe of the Breaſt-bone, and ſoon after from the bottom of the caſe, it returns upwards, and having mounted the Channel-bones, it bends it ſelf towards the Cheſt. But before it reaches the Lungs, tis propped by a certain boney Pipe, broad above, narrow beneath, which in a Duck is round, then it is divided into two branches, which ſwel in the middle, but grow ſmaller where they tend to the Lungs, till they enter into them.

*Its Membranes.* Tis cloathed with a double *Membrane*: one *External*, another *Internal*.

The *External* is a thin one ariſing from the Pleura, and ſticks cloſe to the intermediate Ligaments of the Griſtles, and Uſhers along the recurrent Nerves.

The *Internal* being furniſhed with ſtraight Fibres is thicker and more ſolid (moſt of all in the Larynx, leaſt of all in the branches of the Lungs, indifferently in the middle Pipe) to the end it may not eaſily be hurt by Acrimonious drinks, or other Liquors voided by Coughing, or falling down from the Head.

It *ariſes* from the Coat which compaſſes the Palate, and therefore is continued with the Mouth.

It is ſmeared with a *fat Humor* to hinder its being dried up by motions, loud cryings, drawing in of hot Air, going out of ſharp ſooty Exhalations, &c. And by the Superabundance or Deficiency hereof the Voice is hurt. For in the former contracted by Diſtillations, it becomes Hoarſe; in the latter through burning Feavers, &c. It becomes ſqueaking. If it overabound, we are quite Dumb and unable to ſpeak, and the moiſture being conſumed our Speech returns again: which might happen in that ſame dumb Son of *Cræſus* mentioned by *Herodotus*, and in *Ægle* a Samian wraſtler, mentioned by *Valerius Maximus*, and *Zacharias Orphanus* a Fool, of whom *Nicolas Fontanus* tels a ſtory in his Obſervations. *The Voice hurt.*

This Coat is of exquiſite ſenſe, that it may raiſe it ſelf to expel what ever is trouble-ſome thereunto.

Between theſe two Membranes is the proper *ſubſtance* of the Trachea arteria, which is partly of the nature of a *Griſtle*, and partly of a *Ligament*.

## The FIGURES Explained.

This TABLE repreſents the Aſpera Arteria, the Oeſophagus, the recurrent Nerves about the Arteria Magna and the Arteria Axillaris, behind

### FIG. I.

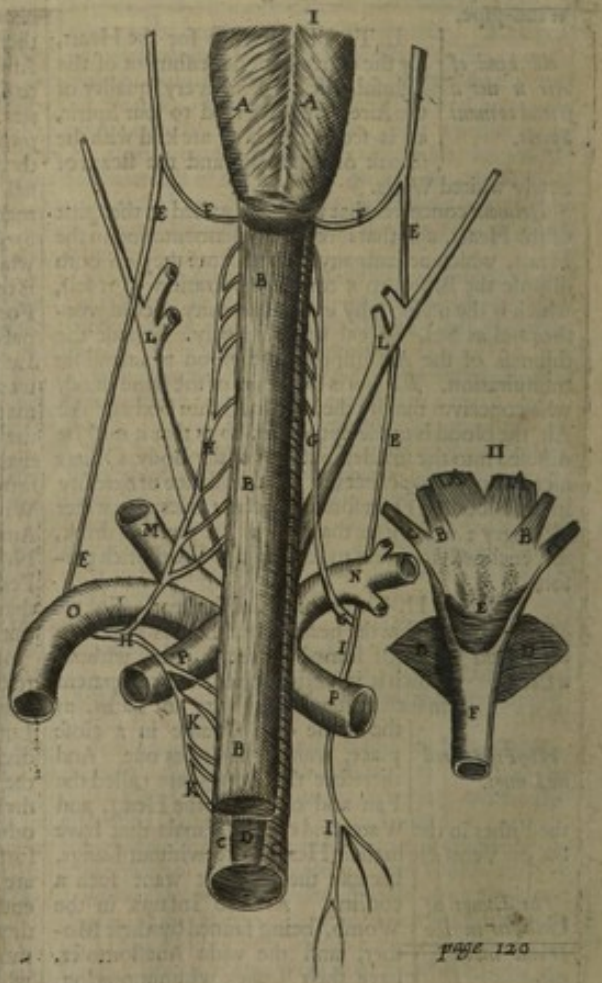
AA. *The Muſcle contracting the Oeſophagus.*
BBB. *The Oeſophagus or Gullet.*
CCC. *The Aſpera arteria or Weſand placed under the Throate.*
D. *The Membrane between the Weſand and the Gullet.*
EEEE. *The Nerves of the ſixth Conjugation.*
FF. *Nerves of the Tongue inſerted behind.*
GG. *The right recurrent Nerve, turned back to the Artery of the Shoulder.*
HH. *The left recurrent Nerve about the Deſcendent Trunk of the Arteria Magna.*
II. *A Nerve tending to the left Orifice of the Stomach and to the Diaphragma.*
KK. *A Nerve deſcending to the Diaphragma.*
L. *The jugular Arteries on each ſide one.*
M. *The left humeral Artery.*
N. *The right Humeral or Shoulder Artery.*
OO. *The Arteria Magna or great Artery.*
PP. *The Trunks of the Arteries deſcending to the Lungs.*

### FIG. II.

This Figure ſhews the upper part of the Gullet with its Muſcles.

AA. *The* Muſculi Cephalo-pharyngæi *ſo called.*
BB. *The* Muſculi Spheno-pharyngæi.
CC. *The* Muſculi Stylopharyngæi.
DD. *The Sphincter drawn from the Gullet.*
E. *The Inſide of the Gullet.*
F. *The Deſcending part of the Gullet.*

## The VIII. TABLE.




page 120

*Why the Weſand is in part Griſtly?*

I. For the Voices ſake: becauſe that which makes a ſound muſt be ſolid.

II. Otherwiſe by reaſon of its ſoftneſs it would alwaies fall together, and would not eaſily be opened in Reſpiration.

*Why in part Ligamental.*

It was to be partly *Ligamental*, and not wholly of a Griſtly ſubſtance: for if it ſhould conſiſt of one only Griſtle, or many circular ones,

I. It would be evermore open, and not ſomtimes widen and then fall together.

II. It would bear hard upon the Gullet, to which nevertheleſs it ought to give way, eſpecially in the ſwallowing down of ſolid meats, that the Throat or Gullet might be ſufficiently widned. And ſo the Griſtles help to frame the Voice; and the Membranous Ligaments for Reſpiration.

The *Griſtles* are many, round like Rings, but not exactly. For on their backſide, where they touch the Gullet, a fourth part of a circle is wanting, in place whereof there is a Membranous ſubſtance.

From their ſhape they are termed *Sigma-ſhap'd* reſembling the old Greek letter C, til they are fixed in the Lungs, for then changing their Figure, they change their name. For the Wind-Pipes do there conſiſt of perfect Griſtles, Round, four ſquare, or Triangular, but where they are joyned to the reſt of the Veſſels of the Lungs they become Membranous.

Theſe Griſtles are joyned together by Ligaments going between, which in Men are more fleſhy, in brute Beaſts more Membranous; and in men the ſhew like little Muſcles. And the Griſtles do every where keep an equal diſtance one from another, and the higher, the greater they are.

It hath *Veſſels* common with others. *Veins* from the the external Jugulars: *Arteries* from the Carotides: Nerves, from the Recurrent Nerves of the ſixth pair.

*The Uſe of the Weſand.*

Its *Uſe* is, I. In drawing in the Air, that by it as a Pipe, the Air may be received from the Lungs, as from a pair of Bellows. Hence comes that ſame Wheezing in ſuch as have the Tiſſick, the Pipes of the Weſand being ſtopped, ſo that the Air coming and going and not finding a free paſſage makes that Hiſſing noiſe.

II. In blowing the Air out, 1. That through it Fuliginous Excrements may be voided at the Mouth and Noſtrils. For which intent the mouths of the Vena arterioſa do ſo artificially joyn with the Mouths of the Aſpera arteria, that there is paſſage only for ſooty ſteams but not for blood, unleſs it come away by force and violent Coughing. In the next place, that it may help to form the voice, which it doth by expiration likewiſe, though ſome Juglers frame their Voice by inſpiration only or drawing in of their Breath. And therefore *Hippocrates* calls it the breathing and vocal Organ. A wonder therefore it is that ſome Men can live long in the Water like Fiſhes, by Nature and not by Art, if *Cardan* is to be believed in the ſecond Book *de Subtilitate*, when he makes relation of one *Calanus* a Diver in *Sicily*, who would lie three or four hours under the Water. And how in the *Weſt-Indies* everywhere, ſuch as dive for Pearl-oyſters, will lie an hour together under the Water. If they did this by ſome art, it were not ſo wonderful. So the Egyptians are moſt perfect divers, and exerciſe Robberies that way. For as appears by the Deſcription of *Nicolas Chriſtophori Radzivily* his journey to *Hieruſalem*, they lie lurking under the Waters, and not being content to ſteal on land, what ever they can catch they draw into the water, and carry it away: and frequently they catch a man as he lies upon a Ships deck draw him under the water and kill and ſtrip him of his cloathes: So that ſuch as ſail are ſaid many times to watch all night armed. And in the ſame parts, aboundance of fiſher men will dive under the water and catch fiſh with their hands, and they will come up with a fiſh in each Hand and a third in their mouths. Theſe perſons doubtleſs, do either live only by Tranſpiration, as ſuch do that have fits of the Apoplexy and the Mother; or they have Anaſtomoſes open in their Hearts, by means of which as in the Womb, the blood is freely moved, without any motion of the Lungs.

# Chap. XI. *Of the Larynx.*

*The Larynx.*

THe Head or beginning of this Lung-Pipe, is termed LARYNX, which is the voices Organ.

*Its Situation.*

Tis *Situate* in the Neck, and that in the middle thereof, for it is

*Number.*

In *Number* one, that there may be only one voice.

*Shape.*

Its *Figure* is round and almoſt circular; becauſe it was to be hollow for the voices ſake; but on the foreſide it is more Extuberant, on the hinder ſide depreſſed, that it may give way to the Gullet, eſpecially in the time of ſwallowing, in which while the *Oeſophagus* is depreſſed, the *Larynx* runs back upwards, and ſo aſſiſts the ſwallowing, both by giving way and bearing down that which is to be ſwallowed.

*Magnitude.*

Its *Magnitude* varies according to the Ages of perſons. For in younger perſons the Larynx is ſtrait which makes their voice ſhril: in grown perſons tis wider, and therefore their voice is bigger. To which alſo the length or ſhortneſs of the Larynx doth contribute: and if plenty of Air or Spirit be drawn and expelled, the Voice becomes big; if little, it becomes ſmal.

*How the voice becomes ſhril, or big?*

*What the Cauſes are of a great Voice?*

And therefore according to *Galen* there are two cauſes of a great Voice: the Largeneſs of the Aſpera arteria, and the ſtrong blowing out of the air, and *Hippocrates* ſaies both theſe are cauſed by great heat. And therefore in his Book of the *Seed*, he teaches us that the ſtones do contribute to the formation of the Voice. Hence Males when they grow of ripe years change their voice. A Guelded Horſe looſes his neighing. A Capon leaves his crowing or crows after a weaker faſhion, different from his former crowing.

*How the Voice comes to change.*

The Parts of the Larynx or about the Larynx: are *Griſtles*, *Muſcles*, *Membranes*, *Veſſels* and *Kernels*.

*Its Muſcles.*

Its *Muſcles* do firſt of all offer themſelves, which move the Griſtles, which the Larynx is poſſeſt of, that it may be moved with a voluntary motion, ſeeing we utter our Speech, as we pleaſe our ſelves.

Now the *Muſcles* of a Mans Larynx, are but thirteen, four common and nine proper: though ſome make twenty, other eighteen, others fourteen.

## The FIGURES Explained.

This TABLE Represents the Larynx, with its Muscles and Gristles.

### FIG. I.

A. *The Gristle cal'd* Shyroides *or Scutiformis, Sheild-fashioned.*
BBBB. *A Pair of common Muscles called* Sternothyroides.
CC. *Another pair of common Muscles called* Hyothyroides.

### FIG. II.

A. *The Epiglottis lying yet hid under the Scutiformis.*
B. *The Scutiformis or Sheild-fashion'd Gristle.*
CC. *Its Processi.*
DD. *Two Muscles proper to the Larynx, of which that on the left Hand is removed from its place, that the Ring-fashion'd Gristle* E. *may be seen.*
F. *The Extuberancy of the Ring-fashion'd Gristle, or Cartilago Annularis.*
G. *A portion of the Aspera Arteria.*

### FIG. III.

AAA. *The Bone Hyoides with three Extuberancies.*
B. *The Epiglottis.*
CC. *The Sheild-fashion'd Gristle, hollow on the Back-side.*
DD. *The two Muscles cal'd* Cucullares, *or the hinder pair of the* Cricoarythenoides *so called.*
E. *The hinder and Membranous part of the Aspera Arteria.*
FF. *The Muscles cal'd* Arytenoides, *by some the ninth pair.*

### FIG. IV.

A. *The Concave part of Cartilago Scutiformis dilated.*
B. *The third pair of proper Muscles cal'd* Cricoarythenoides laterale.
C. *The first pair of proper Muscles.*
D. *The fourth pair cal'd* Thyroarythenoides internum.
EE. *Insertion of the recurrent Nerve.*
FF. *The hinder and Membranous part of the Aspera Arteria.*

## The IX. TABLE.


### FIG. V.

AA. *The Cartilago Thyroides or Scutiformis.*
BB. *The inferior processes thereof.*
C. *Its Concave Part.*

### FIG. VI.

A. *The inside of the Cartilago Annularis.*
B. *Its lower and fore-side.*
C. *Its hinder and upper-side.*

### FIG. VII.

A. B. *The Cartilago Arythenoides according to its hinder side joyned, as yet to the Annularis.*
C. *The broader and Back-part of the Annularis.*

### FIG. VIII. IX.

*Shews the Gristles which constitute the Arythenoides, Separate from the Annularis.*

---

*The Common.* The *Common* are those which are implanted into the Larynx, and yet do not arise therefrom.

*The Proper.* The *Proper* have both their original and termination in the Larynx.

The *first pair* of the common, called by the Ancient *Sternothyroides*, being lower more, arises within from the Breast-bone, its original being broad and fleshy, and going along by the Wezand, it is inserted beneath into the sides of the Sheild-fashion'd Gristle.

Its *Use* is to straiten the Chink of the Larynx, by drawing down the Scutiformis.

The *second Pair* called *Hyothyroides*, being the uppermore, arises from the lower side of the *Os hyoides*, being broad and fleshy, and touches the Scutiformis, being implanted into the Basis of the said Scutiformis.

Its *Use* is to widen the Chink, by lifting up the Scutiformis,

*Spigelius* and *Vesingius* assign contrary offices to these: for they will have the first pair to widen and the second to straiten the Chink of the Larynx.

Others do here add a *third pair*, which *Columbus* nevertheless and *Casserius* do account but one Muscle.

But

But this is rather *Musculus Deglutitorius*, or a Swallowing muscle, because arising from the Scutiformis tis wrapped about the Gullet.

It is judged, by contracting the sides of the Scutiformis, to straiten the Chink: but it is no Servant to the Larynx unless by accident.

*The Proper.*

The *first proper Pair*, arises on the foreside, from the lowest part of the Scutiformis, as the Insertion of the Nerves doth shew, and ends at the *Annularis*. And therefore this pair may be termed *Thyrocricoides*; but not, as most Anatomists will have it, *Cricothyroides*. *Some* will have it to arise from the fore-side of the *Cricoides*, and to end into the lowest side of the Scutiformis. If it be broad and spred out side-waies, it may be divided into two pair, the *foremore* and the *side pair*, and so *Riolanus* divides it. But it is for the most part single and smal enough.

Its *Use* is to draw the Cartilago Annularis to the Scutiformis-(lightly, because it is almost immoveable) so that they may be joyned together, and kept in that posture. Others who differ about its original, will have it to widen the Chink or the Scutiformis.

The *second Pair* rises from the back side of the Annularis, with a fleshy orignal, and is implanted into the lower part of the *Glottalis* or *Arytænoides*, with a Nervous end, opening the Larynx, by drawing asunder the two Gristles called *Arytænoides*. And therefore they are called *Par Cricoarythenoides posticum*. *Casserius* cals them *Par Cucullare*.

The *third pair*, *Cricoarythenoides laterale*, arises above from the sides of the Annularis, and is inserted at the sides of the *Glottalis*, into the joynt, there where it is not touched by the former, and opens the Larynx, with the same oblique carriage of the Gristles.

The fourth pair, called *Thyroarytenoides*, being inward and very broad, proceeds from the Scutiformis, viz. from its inner and fore part, and from the *Cricoides* likewise, as *Riolanus* suspects, and ends into the sides of the *Glottalis*, or the *Arytænoides*, which while it contracts and draws to the *Thyroides*, it shuts the Larynx, by a straight passage. When this pair is inflamed in a Squinsie, it makes the Disease deadly, because it exactly shuts the Chink.

The *ninth Muscle*, which others term *Quintum par Arytenoides*, arises from the hinder line of the *Guttalis*, and being carried along with transverse Fibres, it is inserted into the sides thereof, shutting the Larynx, while it straitens the Cartilago *Arytænoides*.

For *it is to be noted*, that all the proper Muscles of the Larynx, are ordained either to contract or widen the Chink, which that it may be the more conveniently accomplished, some of them widen and straiten the *Thyroides*, others the *Arytænoides*, which Gristles do compass the Chink, which being drawn in, or wideneth, the Chink is withal made narrower or wider. Whence it appears, that I have not unskillfully propounded the Muscles of the Larynx, as *Riolanus* upbraides me.

The *Epiglottis* in Mankind has no Muscle; for it is not voluntarily moved in Men, as some vainly perswade themselves; but is only depressed by the weight of such things as are swallowed.

But in brute Beasts, the *Epiglottis* hath Muscles, because they are continually eating, and chewing the Cud, and they have a very great *Epiglottis*. And in them some Muscles arise from the *Hyoides*, and are implanted into the Basis of the *Epiglottis*, which they lift up; (and this pair *Vesalius* reckons to be the fift common pair) and others are seated between the Coat of the *Epiglottis* and the Cartilage, shutting the same.

*Its Gristles.*

The *Gristles* of the Larynx *are five*: which in elderly persons do somtimes attain a boney hardness; by means whereof, some have scaped the danger of suffocation, when they hung upon the Gallows.

The *first Gristle* is termed *Cartilago Thyroides*, or *Scutiformis*, *Scutalis*, *Clypealis*, *Peltalis*, &c. from its shape; because it resembles a sheild, being in a manner four-square, hollow within, Bossie and bunching without, but more in Men then in Women: because their Necks are made even, for beauties sake, by those Kernels placed by the Larynx. That same bunch which is seen on the foreside of the Neck, is called *Adams Apple*, because the common people have a beleise, that by the judgment of God, a part of that fatal Apple, abode sticking in *Adams* Throat, and is so communicated to his posterity. It is distinguished in the middle with a line, and therefore some have made it double, whereas in truth it is very rarely found otherwise then single.

*Adams Apple is more bunching out in Men then in Women.*

In its Corners it hath *processes*, above two long ones, wherewith by help of a Ligament, it is joyned to the lower sides of *Os hyoides*; and beneath two likewise, by which tis joyned to the following Gristle.

The *second* is the *Cricoides* or Annularis, because it is round like a Ring, and compasses the whole Larynx. Now it resembles the Turkes Ring, wherewith they Arm their Thumbs when they shoot, for the hinder part is broad and very thick. The fore part is straiter and drawn in like one of our Rings. Tis vulgarly termed *Innominata*, or the nameless Gristle, because the ancients gave it no name. Tis the Basis of the rest of the Gristles, by help whereof they are joyned to the Aspera Artera, and therefore it is immoveable.

The *third* and *fourth*, which others count for one, when the Membrane is taken of. appears to be double. Tis called *Arutainoeides*, *Guttalis*, by reason of its resembling the spout of an Ewer, whereout the Water is poured, if the two processes of the upper part are considered, which being joyned together do make up that little Chink which modulates the voice, which others terme *Lingula*, *Parva Lingua*, or *Glottis*, the little Tongue, for the voice cannot be framed but through a narrow passage. This rests upon the upper and hinder side of the *Cricoides*, in the Cavity of the *Thyroides*.

*The Glottis.*

In this place is to be observed a certain *Hollowness*, which is formed between the Guttalis and the Scuralis, by the Membranes which gather up the Cartilages; into which if peradventure while one is speaking or laughing, and the *Epiglottis* is open, a crum of bread or a drop of drink do happen to fall, it causes Coughing, because it goes against the Course of the wind. But if any thing slide seasurely down the Chink, by the Walls of the Larynx, it hinders not the wind, and so causes no Coughing.

The *fift* is termed *Epiglottis*, which covers and shuts the Chink, least an considerable quantity of meat or drink should fall into the Wesand, but that the *Epiglottis* being shut, they might pass down the Gullet. But it is not exactly shut, so that some final quantity of drink may slip down the sides. For when we say that drink passes

*Epiglottis.*

not

not into the Weſand and the Lungs, it is to be underſtood of the greateſt part; for that ſome is carried thither, I have ſhewed you before. And therefore in Diſeaſes of the Cheſt, we preſcribe Electuaries and Lozenges, which are to be held in the patients mouth, his Head leaning backwards, till they melt away, that ſome portion of them may ſlip in by the Walls of the Weſand. Tis opened when we Laugh, and therefore Men muſt be careful that they do not Laugh when they are ſupping of broath, or the like. Alſo let ſuch as are greedy eaters take heed leaſt, any meat get between the *Epiglottis* and the Chink, whence immediately ſuffocation follows, as I have ſeen in a yong man of *Hafnia*, who was ſuddainly choaked by a peice of Neats-tongue weighing an ounce and an half, greedily eaten.

Now the *Subſtance* of the *Epiglottis* is ſoft, and its *Shape* reſembles a Tongue, or an Ivie leaf, according to *Hippocrates*. And on either ſide a *Membrane* is faſtend to the common mouth; ſuch an one as that which being daubed with a clammy Humor, doth compaſs the inner Cavity of the Larynx, and the outſide thereof is likewiſe covered thereby.

*Veſſels* | As for *Veſſels*.
The Larynx hath *Veins* from the internal Jugular.

It hath *Arteries* from the larger branch of the Carotides.

It hath *Nerves* which *Galen* terms *Vocales*, for the motion of the Muſcles, from the recurrent branch of the ſixt pair.

*Kernels.* | Two *parcels* of *Kernels* attend the ſame.
One *Parcel* at the upper part of the Larynx, viz. at the ſides of the *Uvula* or the Gargareon which are called *Tonſilla* or Amygdalæ, alſo *Pariſthmia* and *Antiades* the Almonds of the Ears: which being Spongy (on each ſide one) do receive the moiſture of the Brain, turn it into Spittle and

*Spittle* | therewith moiſten the Throat, Larynx, Tongue and *Oeſophagus*; though it helps alſo our Taſting, which cannot be performed without moiſture. Theſe Kernels are about the Root of the Tongue, and are covered with the common Coat of the Mouth, and receive Veins from the Jugulars.

They have placed by them two little white *Bladderkeys*, which receive ſerofity out of the Kernels, and void forth into the Mouth. *Riolanus* doth acknowledg no ſuch in a Man, but Suſtitutes in their ſtead Ligamental Membranes, ſtretched out from the *Uvula* to the Almonds.

*Others* ſtand by the lowerſide of the Larynx, on each ſide one, at the ſides of *Cricoides* and of the firſt ring of the Weſand, being great and ſpongy, through which Veins are ſpred, from the Jugularis externa. In Women it is more Perſpicuous; in a Man and in an Ox, more fleſhy and red.

The *Uſe* is, to bedew the Larynx, with a clammy and fat, but not fluid moiſture, that the Griſtles may be more fit for motion, and the voice may be made ſweeter: which is imitated by thoſe who anoint their pipes with Oyl.

The *Uſe of the Larynx* is to be the Organ of the Voice.

For the *Organs of the Voice* are either *Remote* or *Immediate*.

The *Remote* are the Cheſt and the Lungs, without the Aſſiſtance of the Heart; for if the four Veſſels of the Heart ſhould be tied, and the Heart cut off, yet a Dog can both run and bark, as beſides later Authors, *Galen* did often experiment: and the illuſtrious Sr. *Francis Bacon*, in his Hiſtory of Life and Death, *Article* 15. tels of an unbowelled Man, who after his Heart was taken out, uttered three or four words of his Prayers.

The *Immediate* are either preparatory, as the *Trachea*; or aſſiſtant as the *Muſcles* and *Nerves*; or conſervatory, as the *Mouth* and *Throat*. But the moſt principal part is the *Larynx*: and that part thereof termed *Glottis* is the next and adequate Organ of the Voice.

*How the Voice is made?*

Now the Voice is made after this manner: the Air is ſuddenly and ſtrongly blown out by the Lungs, and the Chink is moderately ſtraitned, where by the ſmiting of the Air the Voice is made, as we perceive the wind to whiſtle through the Chink of a Dore. And therefore *Ariſtotle* cals the Voice a ſmiting of the Air; underſtanding, in a cauſal way of expreſſion, the Action for the quality ſpringing thereſrom. And if the breath go out, the Organ being wide open, it cauſes a *Sigh*.

*Sighing.*

And therefore, that noiſe which Animals make cannot properly be termed a voice, they wanting this Organ; as the noiſe which ſome fiſhes make, the croaking of Frogs, and the creeking of Graſs-hoppers. *Ariſtotle* tels us that the croaking of a Frog is made, when the Lip of the lower Jaw being equally let down, and a little water being in their Throats the upper Jaw which remains immoveable, is ſo forcibly bent, that their Eyes ſeem to ſparkle. But, it is evident, that a Frog hath Lungs, and a Chink in ſtead of a Larynx. And therefore the Voice is an Animal ſound, made by the Glottis through ſmiting the Air as it is breathed in and out, being produced to ſignifie the Conceptions of the Mind. And therefore Voice is only in living Creatures, nor is every ſound in them a Voice, but that which is made in the Glottis; not Coughing, nor hawking. If any Fiſhes make a noiſe, it is by their Gills or ſome ſuch thing, but not by their Mouths. Creatures without Blood and Inſects, as Bees, Waſpes, Locuſts and the like, utter no Voice, but as *Ariſtotle* rightly obſerves in his fourth Book *de Hiſtoria Animalium*, they make a noiſe which proceeds from their Back, as for example ſake, a Graſs-hopper makes a noiſe, by rubbing its wings one againſt another; For in theſe inſects there is contained a certain Spirit and Air, in a Membrane beneath the Septum Tranſverſum. Others will have it that inſects make ſuch noiſes by beating the Air after ſundry manners with their wings.

*What is properly a Voice?*

*The differences of Voices, or Speeches.*

The *Differences of Voices* are infinite, which are made, 1. By the Figuration of the Mouth. 2. By the different Percuſſion and Modulation of the Air, as we ſee in Pipes. 3. From the largeneſs and other qualities of the Inſtruments, viz. the Larynx, Weſand, Lungs and Cheſt. 4. According as the Voice comes to the Ear, intire or mangled. And beſides theſe differences, every particular Beaſt hath a voice of its own, which the Brutes themſelves can accurately diſtinguiſh, having herein a better hearing then Men. For a Lamb newly brought forth, knows its Mothers bleating among a thouſand Sheep, and the Ew likewiſe knows the bleating of her own Lamb from all others. Which is alſo true of Henns and Chickens. For the ſame voice never happens, becauſe the Inſtruments do never agree in all things: even as

Bells

Bells made of the ſame matter, the ſame weight, the ſame form, and by the ſame workman, do nevertheleſs alwaies differ in ſound.

*Parts of Voice or Speech.* The *Parts of the Voice or Speech*, are Vowels and Conſonants. We repreſent the Vowels only by five Letters, becauſe the root of the Tongue is only moved by ſo many motions. But when a Vowel is further cut and modified, in the fore part of the Tongue, by the Lips and Teeth, it becomes a conſonant, which therefore cannot be uttered without a Vowel, becauſe that is its matter, ſeeing it ariſes only from a Vowel modified and cut: juſt as from the confuſed ſound of a Pipe, an Articulate and Harmonious ſound is made, when after a certain Method, the ſounding Air is again ſtopped and cut by the Fingers.

## Chap. XII. *Of the* OESOPHAGUS *or Gullets.*

THe Oesophagus which ſome term *Gula* others *ſtomachus*, and *Cœlius Aurelianus Via ſtomachi and Ventris* the way of the Stomach and Belly, in Engliſh the *Gullet*, is the Pipe or Funnel of the Stomach, as the Weſand is the Pipe of the Lungs.

*Its Situation.* Tis ſo *Situate*, as that it begins in the Throat, where it is termed *Pharynx*, and from thence goes down right forward, under the Weſand, into the Stomach. And when it is come as far as to the fift Vertebra of the Cheſt, giving way to the Aorta, which paſſes through the middle thereof, it bends to the right Hand; afterwards it riſes again to the left great Artery, and at the eleventh Vertebra, through the Diaphragma or Midriff it enters the left mouth of the Stomach, accompanyed by two Nerves ariſing from the ſixt pair.

*Its Veſſels.* It hath a few *Veins* from the Cava, the Azygos, Intercoſtal and Jugular Veins.

It hath *Arteries* from the Intercoſtal Arteries, and the internal Carotides.

And *Nerves* from the ſixth pair.

*Connexion.* Its *Connexion* is, at the beginning with the Jawes and Larynx, by the Coat of the Mouth, which is common to it and the Stomach. To the Vertebræ, the Trachea and neighbouring parts tis joyned by Membranes ariſing out of the Ligaments of the Back.

*When the Gullet is diſeaſed, Medicaments are applied to the Back.* And becauſe it lies upon the Spina or Back-bone, therefore when it is Diſeaſed, we apply external remedies to the Back-bone.

*Its Kernels.* A *Glandulous Body* grows to the hinder part of it, which affords moiſture, to wet the Cavity thereof, the better to aſſiſt the ſwallowing of things. And ſomtimes it ſwels ſo much, as to hinder the ſwallowing of all liquid meats and drink.

*Subſtance.* Its *Subſtance* conſiſts of a tripple Coat, that it might more eaſily be ſtretched long-waies and broad-waies.

The *firſt* is common with the Stomach. This ſome will have to ariſe from the Ligaments of the Vertebra's, others from the Pleura, who are therein both miſtaken. For it hath its riſe, there where the Membrane of the Stomach ariſes, viz. from the Peritonæum, for it is one continued Body with the Membrane of the Stomach, it is exceeding thin and in a manner deſtitute of all Fibres.

The *ſecond* is the firſt *Proper* one, the external being more fleſhy, thicker and ſofter, then the other; being as it were a Muſcle bored through, being commonly reputed to be interwoven with round and tranſverſe Fibres. Alſo *Hofman* doth thereby prove it to be a Muſcle, becauſe it ſuffers Convulſions and Palſies.

The *third* is the ſecond *Proper* one, internal, more Nervous, ſomwhat ſubtile and harder, being commonly ſaid to be interwoven, with ſtreight and long Fibres. It is contained with that Membrane which covers the Palate, Throat and Lips, and therefore when a Man is ready to vomit, his lower Lip trembles.

Howbeit, contrary to the vulgar opinion aforeſaid, our Eyes can witneſs, that the inner Coat is furniſhed with tranſverſe and circular Fibres, the external with ſtraight and longiſh ones.

*Muſcles.* The *Muſcles* of the Gullet which other have paſſed over in ſilence, are *four*.

The *firſt*, is the ſame I ſpoke of before, treating *de Larynge*. It is only one like a Sphincter Muſcle compaſſing the Gullet. And therefore *Riolanus*, *Spigelius*, and *Veſlingius* terme it *Muſculus Oeſophagus*, being the Authors of that name.

The ſecond, is the *Sphænopharyngæus* by them ſo called, ariſing from the internal acute proceſs of the Sphænoides, and being obliquely implanted into the ſides of the Oeſophagus, that it being drawn upwards and widned, it may be the more wide to receive in meat.

The third is *Stylopharyngæus*, which ariſing from the Bodkin-ſhap'd acute proceſs, is ſtretched out to the ſides of Oeſophagus; which both Dilates and Amplifies.

The fourth, is *Cephalo-pharyngæus*, commonly ſaid to ariſe from the Chin, but according to late Authors, from the loweſt part of the Heads-top where it is neareſt the Neck; and is inſerted with a various contexture of Fibres into the beginning of Oeſophagus, where it is larger: and therefore beauſe of its Latitude and Fabrick, it ſeems to be two.

*Whether Swallowing be a Natural or Animal Action?* The *Action* therefore of the Oeſophagus is Animal; ſeeing it is performed by Muſcles and not natural, as the vulgar opinion is of all Authors, and ſwallowing doth doubtleſs depend upon our free will and liberty.

Now ſwallowing is performed after this manner: when any thing is to be ſwallowed, that ſame firſt Muſcle which *Galen* terms *Sphincter* doth every way contract it ſelf, whereupon its oblique Fibres, which reach from the Oeſophagus to the Larynx, are made tranſverſe, which being done, the Larynx is lifted up, and the Gullet is depreſſed; and the Cavity of the Gullet ſo depreſſed, is made more narrow. Hereunto the fourth Muſcle is aſſiſtant. For as the firſt being contracted, embraces the meat which by chewing is brought into a round Maſs, and ſo bears it down: ſo this fourth Muſcle alſo contracting it ſelf, comes out as it were to help, and that the meats received in at the Mouth may not go back, it ſtraitens and repels them on every ſide, and tranſmits them into the Gullet, ſo that by both theſe Muſcles contracted, and the Semicircular joyned therewith a perfect circle as it were and Sphincter is made, viz. by the fourth in the upper part of the Pharynx, and by the firſt in the lower.

The *Use* of the *Gullet* is, that by it as by a Funnel, meat and drink may be passed into the Stomach.

*Why sometimes solid meats are more easily swallowed then liquid.*

And liquid things are indeed more easily swallowed then solid; contrarywise in some sick persons solid meats are more readily swallowed then liquid, because the faculty is more provoked by a stronger object, being otherwise lulled a sleep as it were; especially in the Palsie.

## Chap. XIII. *Of the Neck.*

*The Neck.* AN Appendix or Appurtenance to the middle Belly, is the Neck, as a medium between the Head and the Chest.

*Why call'd* Collum.

'Tis termed *Collum* a *Colendo*, because it is wont to be adorned: or a *Colle* from an Hillock, for it arises out of the Body, as an Hill out of the rest of the Earth.

*Its Magnitude.*

'Tis oblong for the modulation of the Voice; and therefore Animals which utter no true Voice, as Fishes and Frogs, have no Necks: and those which make the greatest Voice, have the longest Necks, as Cranes and Geese, &c. By the use of Venery the *thickness* of the Neck is altered, because heat distends the Aspera Arteria, the Carotides, and the Jugular Veins. Whence it was an ordinary Practice among the Romans to measure the Brides Neck the day after the Wedding, by which they knew whether she were a Virgin or Corrupted, as we learn out of *Catullus* and *Mercurialis*.

*Its Parts.*

The hinder part of the Neck is properly termed *Cervix*. Now the parts of the Neck are either external, as the Skin, Muscles, &c. or internal, as the Vessels which run through, the *Trachea* and *Oesophagus*: of the latter I have spoken of the rest, I shall speak in their proper places.

*Its Use.*

The *Use* of the Neck is, 1. For the Oesophagus, Wesand, and Lungs. Hence Creatures that have no Lungs, as Fishes, have no Necks. 2. To be instead of an Hand to some Creatures, to take their meat with, according to *Galen*. 3. That it may afford Nerves to the fore-parts, the Shoulder, Cubit, Hand, Midriff; for those creatures only have these parts who have Necks.

THE

# THE THIRD BOOK OF THE Uppermoſt Cavity, *VIZ.* THE HEAD.

*Why the Head is placed ſo high.*

THe third or *upper Venter* or Cavity is the HEAD, the chief manſion-houſe of the ſenſitive Soul, which is placed in the top of the Body, for the Eyes ſake, which are there placed as in a Watch-tower; and requiſite it was that the Brain ſhould be near the Eyes, becauſe they have ſoft Nerves, which cannot be carried far.

*Its Figure.* The Head is *round* like a Globe, but a little flatned withal, and longiſh.

*Greatneſs.* Tis *greater* in Man then other Creatures, becauſe of the Largeneſs of his Brain.

*Subſtance.* And for more ſafeguard, the Head is altogether *bony*.

*Diviſion.* The Head is divided into the *Hairy* part, and *that which is without Hair*.

The former is termed *Calva*, the latter *Facies*.

*Calva.* The *external parts of the Calva* are theſe following.

*Synciput*, which is the forepart reaching from the Fore-head to the coronal Suture.

*Occiput*, which is the hinder-part, reaching from the Lambda-faſhion'd Suture, to the firſt Vertebra of the Neck.

*Vertex*, which is the part ſituate between the two former, bunching out.

*Tempora*, the Temples which are the Side-parts, between the Eyes and the Ears.

Now the parts which *conſtitute* the Calva, are *ſome* of them *external* and *cloathing*, others internal and *contained*. The former are either common, as the Scarf-skin, the Hairy-skin, the Fat, the fleſhy Membrane: or proper as the Pericardium, Perioſtium, the Muſcles, the Bones, the Menings. The *contained* are the Brain, the Petty-brain, and the Marrow, which is partly in the Skull, partly in the Back-bone.

*The Face.* The *ſmooth part* of the Head, called the FACE beſides the parts containing, hath parts proper to it ſelf, viz. the upper part which is called the *Forehead*, and the lower in which are the Organs of the Senſes; as the *Eyes*, *Noſtrils*, *Ears*, and *Mouth*, wherein the *Tongue* and other parts are concealed.

## Chap. I. *Of the Hairs.*

IN the Head there is the greateſt plenty of Hair, therefore the Nature of the Hair may conveniently be delivered in this place: though conſidered as an Excrement, it does not belong to this place.

*What creatures have Hair.* Hairs are found well-near in all Creatures that engender their young ones within their bodies, as *Ariſtotle* aſſures us: inſtead whereof Fiſhes have ſcales, Birds feathers, and ſome Beaſts as the Hedg-hog, have long ſharp prickles.

Now the *Hairs* are indeed Bodies, but not parts of the body, unleſs in a very large ſignification, as when we ſay ſome parts ſerve only to adorn the body.

The *immediate material Cauſe* of which the hairs are made, is certain fuliginous and excrementitious Vapors, thick and earthy, yet ſomwhat glewiſh and clammy.

*Whether Hair & Nails grow of good nutriment.* Its therefore falſe, which ſome affirm, that the Hairs and Nails are nouriſhed and generated of good and laudable nuttiment. For they grow even in perſons conſumed and pined away, and being cut, they grow again in all ages of a mans life; and the oftner they are cut, the ſooner they grow again. Yea in dead men, as on thieves upon the Gibbet, &c. they grow. See *Paræus* at the end of his Book, who had an embalmed body in his houſe twenty four years together, the Hairs and Nails whereof grew again as often as they cut them. They are therefore bred of ſooty Steams and Vapors, of the third Concoction, or of the fleſhy ſubſtance it ſelf, by whatſoever heat reſolved into vapors.

*The remote matter of Hair.* The remote Matter, is nothing ſeminal out of which the hair ſprouts as a flower, nor any fat ſubſtance enclining

clining to the Nature of the Seed or Blood, but a superfluous moisture; especially that which is contained in the Kernels. And therefore where there are Kernels, in those places there are commonly Hairs, as at the Ears, in the Arm-pits, in the Groins, &c. And if somtimes there are Kernels without Hairs, this want of hair springs from a too great quantity of humors.

*Where Hair breeds.*

For the *Matter in which*, or the *Place* where hairs are bred, ought not to be too moist, nor too dry; as we see nothing grow in a wet suliginous Soyle, nor in ground over dry and parched.

*Why crusted Animals have no hairs.*

And therefore the *Skin*, because it is a temperate part, as the place of Generation of hairs; but if it be too moist, or too dry, as in some persons it is, the hair does not shoot forth: and therefore crusted Animals, as Crabs, Lobsters, Oysters, &c. have no hairs.

The *Skin* therefore on which hairs must be bred, ought to be moderately dry, least the hair should fall from its root; but it must not be immoderately, but laxe and rare, least otherwise the hair should not make its way through. And therefore hairs may grow all over the skin, because it is every where porous, and every Pore hath the root of an hair fastned therein, excepting the palmes of the hands and the soles of the feet, which parts because of their continual motion and wearing, have no hairs, and because they were to be of an exquisite sense. And for this cause there grows no hair upon a Scar, because it hath no Pores.

Hairs also do somtimes grow on the inner Membranes of the Body, in the Heart as was said before, in the Womb, in the Urinary passages, Witness *Hippocrates, Galen, Schenkius*. Hair was found in the stomach by *Heer*, and lately in *Norway* hairs were voided by vomit from the Stomach, whether bred there, or taken in. At the Danish *Hellespont* red hairs were lately taken out of the musculous flesh of an Ox leg.

The *Efficient* Cause of hair, is not the Soul, nor any vegetative hair-making faculty, but moderate heat, drying up those suliginous vapors, and thrusting them forth into the pores of the Skin.

*Requisites to the Generation of hair.*

These three things already explained, are the chief *Requisites* for the Generation of Hair, viz. The *Matter*, the *Place* convenient, and *Heat*.

*Cause of baldness.*

From whence by the Rule of Contraries, the Cause of Baldness may be gathered, viz.

1. When Matter is wanting.

2. When the Skin is Originally too dry, and afterwards grows drier, and is not moistned by any neighbouring part. Now the fore-part of the Head is here to be understood, which is commonly the only bald place; for no man, according to *Aristotle*, becomes bald on the hinder-part of his Head. For either Fat or other moisture in the hind-part and the Temples keeps them from baldness; fat in the fore-part, the Skin becomes dry and hard like a shell, and therefore is bald.

3. By reason of too much or too little heat. For weak heat does not sufficiently dry the matter, as in cold and moist persons, and such as are in years. And therefore the humor growing over hot by carnal Copulation, is the cause of baldness, and for this cause Boys and Eunuchs do not become bald.

4. Also four Husbandmen near *Bruxells* became bald by poyson, as *Franciscus de Paz* the King of *Spains* Physitian observed, and wrote thereof to *Nicolas Fontanus* and *Hamelmannus* in his Annals tells of an Horse of the Count of *Oldenburg*, which by poyson was made bald hither, because this poyson had some specifical contrariety to the Hairs, or because the Spirits being extinguished, and the vigor of the Body quelled, the roots of the hairs could not be retained in the Skin. Such a poyson is the fat of a certain Whale in the Island of *Feroe*, newly taken out, by which Copper-vessels are also broken.

The Hairs are commonly *divided* into such as are bred in the womb, and such as grow afterwards.

*Hairs bred in the womb.*

Those bred in the Womb are threefold, those of the Head, of the Eye-lids, and the Eye-brows.

The Hairs which grow afterwards, are such as spring up when a man comes to a just age; that is, in a boy when he begins to breed Sperm, and in a Maid when her Courses break forth, for then the Skin grows open.

Also these are threefold: for 1. Hairs breed on the Share, seldom in the Womb and the Heart. 2. In the Arm-pits, also in the Nostrils and Ears. 3. On the Chins of men, but not of women; for in women their Courses spend the matter of hair which should make a beard, and therefore somtimes, when their Courses are poxt, women have hairs growing on their Chins. It was a rare case for a young woman of thirty years of age, one of the Arch-dutches of *Austria's* Women, to have ever since she was a Girl, before her courses brake forth, a long beard with mustachios like a man. And I saw such a like Girl not long since in the Low-countries, who was also hairy all her Body over. Lately *Helena Mavrin* in *Friesia*, had a Girl with a long beard of a reddish yellow colour.

*Use of Hair.*

The *End* or *Use* of Hairs,

I. Is to cover the Parts.

II. To adorn them. And this is chiefly seen in the Hairs of the Head and Face. For

*Why a man hath plenty of hair?*

1. The Hairs of the Head do shield the Brain from external injuries of cold and heat, &c. So in *Æthiopia* by a peculiar thrumming of their hairs, they are defended from the heat. And as a man hath the greatest Brain of all Creatures, so hath he thereon most plenty of hairs.

2. They moderately heat, as otherwise in the Head there is no Fat to keep it warm: but rather a boney substance, and that far distant from the Heart. Now the hairs according to the advice of the Physitian, are to be let grow, or to be cut off in this or that person, but they must not be shaven off, because thereby Defluxions are caused. So also the beard does cherish and moderately warm the Chin. In persons that are recovering out of sickness, the hair must not be cut off, for fear of a relapse, touching which Question see *Sitonius*.

*The Beard adorns.*

3. They adorn: for bald persons and thin-hair'd are deformed. So the Beard also adorns a man, and makes him venerable, especially if the hairs be spred all about. But in women there was no need of so venerable an appearance.

III. To purge the Humors and Spirits, and the whole Body of superfluous footy steams. And therefore frequent cutting the hair, quickens the sight, and *Celsus* in a long Defluxion of Rheum, bids us cut the hair to the skin. *C. Aurelianus* saies that in the Phrenzie, when the hair is cut off, the parts transpire, being freed from a great burthen. Hence a reason may be drawn, why *Helmont* tasting an Asses milk, could tell whether

whether she had been curried and combed that morning or not.

IV. To afford signs whereby to know the Temperament, Manners and hidden Diseases of every person.

*Their Form.* The *Form* of Hairs is not the Soul, as many would have it, because in persons that consume, and such as are dead, the hairs grow; and those who conceive with *Plempius*, that there is a Soul in persons dead twenty four years, I leave the Readers to make an estimate of their Wisdom. Nor do they retain a vegetative life in dead persons, for so the whole man should not die, nor is there any thing in a dead Carkass, that should rather preserve this life, then the sensitive or rational, not to say that these ignoble Parts by the long-lasting of their lives, should excel all other parts. Plants indeed spring living from the lifeless Earth, but out of a living Seed, which I deny to be in the Hairs, and therefore they stick not in the Body like Plants, nor are bred thereout. Nor must we say with *Plotinus*, that certain reliques of life remain after death, as warmed rooms remain hot, when the fire is out; for such Reliques of life could not remain so many years. The form therfore of the hairs may be described by their accidents, which are these following.

*Magnitude.* 1. *Magnitude*: Now the Head-hairs are longest, because the Brain is greater then the rest of the Kernels: also they are thickest, because the Skin of the Head is most thick, howbeit it is laxe and open, and contains sufficient moisture.

According therefore as the Skin is thick or thin, rare or compact, and the humor plentiful or scanty, and the heat weak or strong, the hairs become thick or thin, hard or soft, plentiful or scanty, &c. He had store of hair on his Head, who could suffer himself to be shot in the head with a bullet, and had no hurt, whom *Busbequius* saw in his Voyage to *Constantinople*. Yet they grow not infinitely, because the Exhalations are not so plentiful, nor does the expulsive Faculty work infinitely.

*Figure.* 2. Their *Figure*: The hairs are straight and flat, in such as abound with moisture, but curled in such as are dry. Therefore curled hair is harder then that which lies flat. Hence all Blackmores are curle-pated, because of their dry Temperament. But the Scythians and Thracians have long flat hair, because they are moist, according to *Aristotle*. Again the hairs are straight because of the straightness of the passages through which they break forth; and crisp because of the crookedness of the said passages. The augmenting Glass informs us that the hairs are quadrangular; though others will have them to be round because of the roundness of the Pores.

Also they are porous or hollow within, as the Disease *Plica* in *Poland* does shew, and the hairs of an Elk. Again because they may be split, they have Pores, according to *Aristotles* maxime.

*The cause of the colour of the hair.* III. Their *Colour*: which in Brutes follows the colour of the Skin; and in men is exceeding variable, according to the Country, ambient Air predominant Humor, Age, &c.

For those that dwell in hot and dry Countries, have their hair not only dry, crisp and brittle, but also black, as the Ægypians, Arabians, Indians; also the Spaniards, Italians, and part of the French have their hair for the most part black. They who dwell in cold and moist Countries, have their hairs not only soft and straight, but for the most part yellow or white, as the Inhabitants of *Denmark*, *England*, *Norway*, *Swedland*, *Scythia*, &c.

Again the predominant Humor makes the Colour of the hairs: as in flegmatick persons, the hairs are for the most part white, and so of the rest.

Also the Variety of Heat makes variety of Colours: for immoderate heat makes black hairs: for a vaporous Excrement is raised by the heat, and is changed into an exact soory stream. But temperate heat makes the hairs yellow; more temperate makes them red; a weak heat makes them white. But both these causes of Colours do easily concur in the hair, as when flegm abounds, weakness of heat is joyned therewith, and when Blood abounds, heat is moderate, &c.

Also a change in the Colour is made in respect of Age, as also of other accidents. For grown persons have their hair not only thicker, harder, stronger and more plentiful, but at length also grey and whiteish.

But no Hairs on the Body of Man are Naturally green, or blew, though there are both green and leek-colour'd Choler in Mans Body; the cause whereof is not the thickness of the hair, uncapable of light, as *Cardan* imagined, because the hair is capable of being yellow, its thickness nothing hindring; but, as *Scaliger* rightly philosophizes, seeing every colour is not agreeable to every Plant, no more is it to the hairs. Yet I have seen green hair'd men at *Hafnia*, and those as work Metals have their hair commonly green. *Marcellus Donatus* relates of *Antonius Maria Catabenus*, grey hair'd through Age, how that much Choler mixt with blood abounding in his Body, not only his Skin became of a Verdigreese or yellow-green colour, but his grey hairs were also died of the same hue.

*The cause of grey hairs.* The Ancients conceived that grey hairs did proceed from driness, as the Leaves of Trees when they are dried, look white.

But *Aristotle* confutes them. For those who go with their heads covered, do sooner grow grey, and yet are not so dried, as those that expose their heads bare to the air. Again some are grey as soon as they are born or quickly after, which cannot proceed from Dryness.

*Why they are soonest grey-hair'd that go with their Heads cover'd?* Now they grow soonest grey that go alwaies with their Heads covered, because the heat cannot be fanned, but is overwhelmed and strangled, which being extinguished, an external heat is introduced; so that putrefaction is the cause of grey hairs, which sprung from scarsity of innate heat, which cannot so digest the humors as in youth. And the outmost and smallest end of the hair is whitest, where there is least heat.

*Why Men are soonest grey about their temples?* Now why a white Humor should arise from putrefaction, the Cause is, according to *Aristotle*, because a great part is turned into Air, which being well mixed with an earthy and watry Substance makes whiteness. Hence also it is apparent, why men are soonest grey about their Temples, because there great and fleshy Muscles are placed under the Skin, which through moisture do easily putrifie. Add hereunto, that the Bones of the Temples are very thin, and therefore extraneous heat can easily pass through them.

# Chap. II *Of the Membranes without and within the Skull.*

THE EXTERNAL MEMBRANES which compass the Skull, are two: The PERICRANIUM and the PERIOSTIUM which compass the Brain; also there are two Meninges or *Matres* so called, viz. DURA MATER and PIA MATER, that is to say a thick Membrane and a thin one, which perform the same Office in their Cavity, which the Pleura performs in the middle Cavity and the Peritonæum in the lowest.

*The Pericranium.* The PERICRANEUM is a Membrane thin and soft, compassing the Skull, and springing from the *dura Mater* coming out at the Sutures of the Skull.

That it springs from the *dura Mater*, the extraordinary Consent between the Brain with its Meninges and the Pericraneum, does sufficiently prove, which cannot be by any other way more conveniently made forth. Moreover, this production of the Pericranium from the *dura Mater*, is manifestly visible in Infants, in whom the Moles of their Heads are not yet sufficiently closed. Those Fibres wherewith *Horstius*, *Spigelius*, and *Laurembergius* do conceive that the Pericraneum is only fastned to the *dura Mater*, do not go unto the Throat: for the Bones being by little and little hardned and compressed, that same Continuity of the Pericraneum and *dura Mater*, was broken off with Age, from whence arose that appearance of Fibres which hath deceived some.

*Periostium.* The PERIOSTIUM is a most thin and nervous Membrane, and therefore exceeding sensible, by help whereof, all the bones saving the teeth being compassed therewith, become sensible.

I distinguish these two Membranes with *Vesalius* and *Bauhinus* against *Fallopius*, *Laurentius* and others, who confound them, seeing they may be accurately separated by a skilful Anatomist.

Now the various Muscles about the Head shall be explained in their proper place.

*Crassa Meninx.* The CRASSA MENINX or harder Membrane called also DURA MATER, because of its thickness and hardness, and because many conceive all the Membranes of the Body do arise out of this and the *tenuis Membrana* or *pia Mater*, does cover the Skull all over on the inside, and all its Cavities and hollowness and sticks strongly to its Basis, so that some have thought it took its Original from thence.

Now it compasses the Brain also loosely, on the upper side, and covers the inside of the Skull. (For whereas *Hildanus* and *Varolius* have observed that it is straitly fastned to the Skull, that was besides the ordinary Course of Nature) that there may be some distance between, as there is between the Heart and the Heart-bag, both in living and dead bodies, though in the latter it is greater, by reason of the defect of Spirits and the falling in of the Brain, which I grant *Olhafius* and *Hofmannus*; and this is so contrived that the swelling Vessels of the Brain, may not be compressed, and that there may be no hindrance of the

*The Brain moves.* *Motion of the Brain*, which is made up of Systole and Diastole, and is continual, as may be seen in Wounds of the Head, new born Children, and most vehement pains of the head, as *Fabricius Hildanus* hath observed: And I my self have frequently seen this motion in wounded persons. Strange therefore it is that some learned men will needs deny this motion. But it is a very hard task to assign the true Cause of this motion: Some make it to be the Meninges; others the Arteries; others the Substance of the Brain. But it is ill ascribed to the Meninges: for a great portion of the brain being taken away, and the Meninges themselves, the brain was observed to move in a living Sheep, by the *renowned Riolanus*. They judg better who ascribe the same to the Arteries, for the motions of the Brain and Arteries do happen both at one and the same time, as may easily be observed in Fractures of the Skul, and in the Heads of Infants. Yea and *Walæus* observes that in those who being wounded in the Head to the Brain, have extream anguish, only certain conspicuous Arteries do move, and not the Substance of the Brain; and when the parties wounded gather strength, the motion of their Brain evidently returns. Also *Coiter* hath observed in living Lambs, Kids and Dogs, that the brain it self hath no motion but only the Arteries. To him *Olhafius* gives consent, because the motion is most observable about the Cavities of the dura mater, where are most Arteries. And therefore I conceive we must not have recourse to the substance of the brain; which is also soft and flaggie, and sufficiently indisposed for motion. But the chiefest motion is observed at the full of the Moon, by reason of the working of the humors at that season. But that also springs from the Arteries, which are more distended with blood; for the motion of the Heart becomes quicker or slower, according to the various Influence of the Stars. That the motion of the brain should answer the motion of the Lungs, I have no sufficient sign to prove.

Now *it is fastned* to the pia mater and the brain, by Vessels; to the Skul by thin membranous fibres springing out of it self, passing out through the sutures, and constituting the Pericranium.

This Meninx or Coat is double, as the rest of the Membranes are. The external part respecting the Cranium, is hard, rough, and of a small sense, because of the hardness of the Skull which it was to touch.

The inner part is smooth, slippery, brightly shining and white, being more drenched with a watersh moisture.

It is *fourfold* where it distinguishes the Brain from the petty-brain, in which place Dogs have a bone underpropping their brain, that it may not bear hard upon the Cerebellum, Branilet, or petty-brain.

*The Sickle.* But on the Crown of the Head it is doubled, where it divides the brain into the right and left part: and because the Reduplication is in the hinder-part broad, and grows afterwards narrow by degrees, yet not to a point, so as to represent a Reapers Sickle, therefore they term this Body *Falx* the Sickle. *See Tab. II.* And while it is thus multiplied, it constitutes.

*The upper Cavities.* *Cavities bottomnesses*, being receptacles of abounding blood and Spirits, and they are four in number; which *Galen* sometimes calls the *Ventricles* of dura Mater; and others call them *Sanguiductus*, Cisternes of Blood.

*The first two.* The *first two* begin at the Basis of the Hind-part of the Head, by the sides of the Lambda-shap'd Suture, where the Veins and Arteries disburthen themselves. The Veins truly, of the jugular branch are manifestly inserted, and receive blood out of the Cavities; but the Arteries, whether mediately by certain branches of the Cavities,

## The FIGURES Explained.

This TABLE Represents the Coverings of the Brain both proper and common, in the same order in which they are represented in Anatomical Dessections.

FIG. I. Shews the enternal Parts.

AAA. *The Skin and the Scarf-skin with the Roots of the Hairs.*
B. *The true Skin separated from the Scarf-skin,* C.
DDD. *The Membrana Carnosa furnished with little Veins.*
EE. *The Muscle of the Fore-head out of its own proper place, receiving the Nerves which come out of the hole,* O.
FF. *Fat spred over the Skull.*
G. *The Pericranium lying upon the Periostium in its natural Situation.*
I. *The same separated from the Periostium and turned inside out.*
K. *The Periostium spred out upon the Skull.*
L. *The same plucked off from the Skull.*
MM. *The Skull naked.*
N. *The Coronal suture.*
PP. *The Sagittal suture.*
QQ. *The temporal Muscle as yet covered with the Pericranium.*

FIG. II. The Skull being taken away this Figure discovers the Coats of the Brain.

AA. *The dura Mater covering the left side of the Brain.*
*bbb.* *Veins and Arteries sprinkled up and down the same.*
CCC. *The Brain covered only with the pia Mater.*
*dd.* *The turnings and windings of the Brain.*
*eeee.* *Vessels sprinkled up and down the pia Mater.*
F. *The dura Mater drawn downwards.*
GGG. *The upper Cavity engraven in the dura mater.*

## The I. TABLE.


page 131

Cavities, as *Walæus* suspects, or knit immediately to the Cavities themselves, do disburthen themselves, into the Cavities, And these two being afterward united, do make up,

*The third.* The *third* which is longest of all: For it goes all along the Head to the tops of the Nostrils. *Galen* sometimes calls it a *Vein*, because it contains store of Blood. And when these Cavities are opened, an immeasurable quantity of Blood comes out by the Nose, which is supplied from the Arteries.

The *fourth Cavity*, not reaching to the Skul as the former, is short, and goes inwardly between the Brain and the Brainelet, unto the Glandula pinealis.

It arises, where the three former meet together, and this beginning some from *Herophilus* call *Torcular* the Wine-presst; and *Nemesius* conceives that this part is chiefly obstructed in the Apoplexy. But 1. We do sometimes allow thereof, as a remote Cause. for all that accident is to be referred to the noble Ventricle. 2. Vital blood may be brought to the Brain by the *rete Mirabile*, whence Vessels go for Nutriments sake, to the substance of the Brain.

The *third*, or the uppermost of the sickle, and the *fourth* Cavities, do seem to me to end into the two former, or greater lateral ones; in which I follow *Fr. Sylvius* exceedingly versst in the Anatomy of the Brain: and that not by a streight passage, but inclining to the sides; so that there is no common concourse of these four Ventricles; though these greater lateral ones are joyned by an intermediate passage or Channel. Yet here also I have found some diversity according to the variety of subjects, so that they have sometimes met, and sometimes been separated. *Riolanus* makes the *Torcular* with *Galen* to be in the third longitudinal Cavity, because it distributes blood into all parts of

See Tab. II.

the

the Brain and Brainlet or Cerebellum, which Reason holds truer in reference to the Arteries.

*The lower Cavities.*

Besides those four Cavities or Ventricles already described, *three others*, by the Information of *Sylvius* have in dissection presented themselves to me; which nevertheless, I have not always, and I tell you so much, least any man not finding them presently in one or two Bodies, should accuse me of falshood. *Riolanus* accounts them to be Coherences of the Duplicated Brain, spred under the greater once. by the intercedency of the *pia Mater*. Which is nothing, for they have Cavities as the others have, nor are they naked Coherences.

See *Tab. II.*

The one of these, which was also observed by *Vesalius*, is carried through the lowest part of the Sickle, and therefore I have termed it, the lower Ventricle of the Sickle; and for distinctions sake, I have termed that which is commonly call'd the third, the upper Ventricle of the Sickle. This lower Ventricle of the Sickle, ends into the fourth Ventricle.

The *other two* smaller lateral ones, on each side one, are distant about a thumbs breadth from the greater, situate in the dura Mater which distinguisheth the Brain from the Brainlet, not being so long as they. The one of them goes into the great lateral Cavity; I have also seen them ending into the fourth.

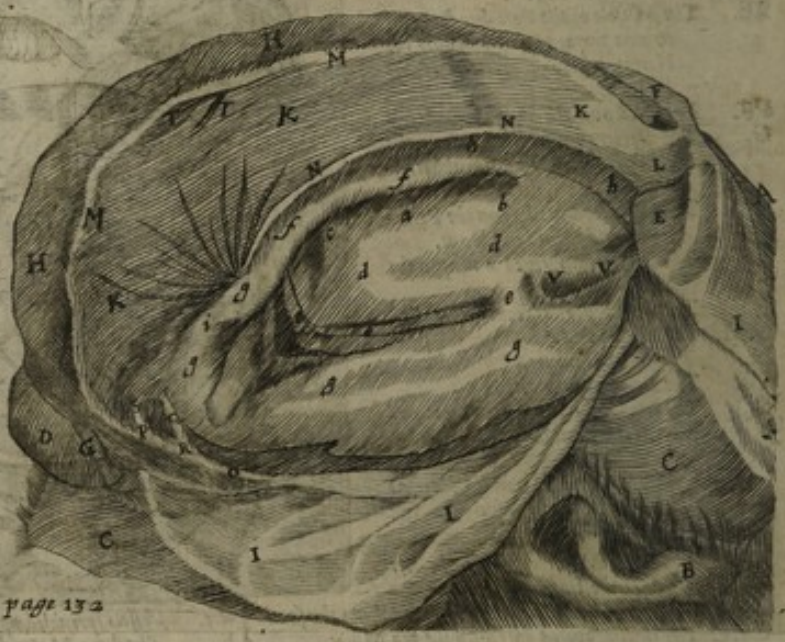
From the Cavities arise the branches or creeping jugular Veins, and into them the *Arteriæ Carotides*, being distributed upwards and round about, and opening into them by mutual Anastomoses.

Now the blood is contained in these Cavities in very great plenty, because the bulk of the Brains substance is very great, and they perform the office not only of Veins but of Arteries also, seeing they Pulse as

## The FIGURE Explained.

This Figure Represents the right side of the Brain, cut away to a great depth, according to the passage of the Ventricle.

## The II. TABLE.



page 132

A. *The Nose.*
B. *The right Ear.*
CCCC. *A portion of the Skin of the Head hanging down.*
D. *A Rudiment of the Muscle of the Hind-part of the Head.*
E. *The Socket of the Eye.*
F. *The Forehead Bone.*
G. *The Bone of the Hinder-Head or* Occiput.
HH. *The left side of the Brain, covered as yet with it's dura Mater.*
III. *The dura Mater of the right side hanging down.*
KKK. *The Falx or Sickle.*
L. *The End of the Sickle at the Galli Crista or Cocks-Comb.*
MMM. *The upper Cavity of the Sickle.*
NN. *The lower Cavity of the Sickle.*
O. *The greater Right-hand lateral Cavity.*
P. *The ingress of the upper Cavity of the Sickle into the greater lateral Cavity.*
Q. *The fourth Ventricle between the Brain and the Brainlet.*
R. *The ingress of the fourth Ventricle into the greater Lateral one.*
S. *The common passage of the greater lateral cavities.*
TT. *A portion of those great Vessels which pass into the upper cavity of the Sickle.*
VV. *Part of the great cleft in the Brain.*
x. *The lower and outer part of the right Ventricle, where a little twig of the carotick Artery, pierces as far as the Plexus Choroides.*
y. *The hinder and larger part of the right Ventricle.*
z. *A roundish cavity of the right Ventricle resembling the finger of a Glove.*
a. *The upper and inner part of the right Ventricle, under the Corpus callosum.*
b. *The descent and orifice of the right Ventricle going into the third or middle-most.*
ccc. *The Glandulous intertexture called* Chorocides.
dd. *The Root of the spinal Marrow.*
e. *The Brain continued to the root of the spinal Marrow.*
ff. *The Corpus callosum so called.*
gggg. *The hinder and lower part of the Brain, continued to the Corpus callosum, and forming the cavity of the right Ventricle.*
hh. *A portion of the left side of the Brain appearing under the Falx or Sickle.*
ii *Little Arteries creeping along the Surface of the right Ventricle.*

the

the Arteries do. Which *Walæus* could never perceive in the diſſected brains of live Creatures, nor in fractures of the Skull. Though it be evedent even to thoſe that open the Skull with a Trepan, as *Riolanus* confeſſes.

*The Uſe.* The Uſe therefore of the Ventricles, is not ſo much to contain the two ſorts of Blood, received from the Veins and Arteries; as only to receive the Arterial blood, by means whereof they Pulſe. For the Arterial blood communicated to the Brain by the *Arteria Cervicalis*, which remains over and above after the Nutriment of the Brain and Brainlet, and the Generation of Animal ſpirits, is voided into theſe Caveties, either immediately or mediately, by the little twigs of the Cavities, as *Walæus* ſuſpects; and from thence through the jugular Veins which are joyned to the Ventricles, together with a thin Skin cleaving to their Walls, it runs back downwards to the Heart, that it may be wrought over again. For that the blood is circularly moved in the Brain alſo, appears likewiſe by the Ligatures of live Creatures; ſeeing the jugular being bound, ſwels towards the Head, but is empty and lank towards the Cava and Heart.

*P. Laurenberg* conceives the Animal Spirits are generated in the Cavities, without any firm judgment or probable Reaſon.

*A. Kyperus* a moſt learned Man, conceives that a ſpecial uſe of theſe Cavities is, to ventilate and cool the blood, for the better ſervice of the Brain and the Generation of Animal Spirits; ſeeing the extremities of the Arteries do end in them, and the Ventricles themſelves are cloſed in by a ſingle, cold Membrane. But in my Judgment the Arterial blood does not come into the Cavities, before it be cooled, when it returns from the Generation of Spirits. And then it needs no cooling, being to return immediately through the Veins into the Heart.

The *Uſe of the dura Mater* is, I. To cover the brain with the Marrow and Nerves thence ariſing.

II. To diſtinguiſh the Brain from the Brainlet, and the Brain it ſelf into two parts.

III. To conſtitute the *Pericranium*, while it ſends Ligaments therefore, through the Sutures.

*Pia Mater.* The *pia Mater* call'd ſo becauſe of its thinneſs, doth immediately encloſe the Brain, and its Parts and Ventricles, leaſt they ſhould run about; therefore it was to be thin and ſoft; and it is of moſt exquiſite ſenſe. It is thicker in the third Ventricle, then the reſt, if we will believe *Olhoſius*. The ſenſe of this Membrane was more dul in him that had three bones growing thereto without hurt, which were ſeen at *Paris* by my Coſin-German *Henricus Fuiren*: & in that Venetian, who had a pretty large toothed Bone, growing in *Falce* or the Duplicature of the *Meninx*, which *Folius* did ſhew me.

Its *Uſe* is; To cloath the Brain, the Brainlet, the Marrow and the Nerves.

## Chap. III. *Of the Brain and its Marrow in General.*

WIthin the Skul a threefold ſoft and white ſubſtance is to be conſidered: the Brain or foremore Part, the Brainlet or *Cerebellum* the hindmoſt part, and the inmoſt part which lies deep under the Brain being a white Marrow; which becauſe others do ignorantly confound with the Brain it ſelf; I do thus truly ſet down the truth of the matter.

The *Brain* commonly ſo called hath two parts, the one *Internal* the other *External*.

*What is properly the Brain.* The *External* part is properly and ſtrictly called the Brain and is all that which appears outwardly ſoft, of an Aſh color or yellowiſh white; which color ſome conceive to ariſe from an innumerable company of Veins there diſſeminated; and this External ſubſtance is as it were the bark.

*The Marrow what?* The *Internal* is the remaining ſubſtance which lies hidden beneath the the former, being more hard compact and white, which we may call the Marrow, in which are ſeated the Ventricles commonly ſo called, but not in the Brain it ſelf; ſo that

*How they differ?* The Brain and Marrow it ſelf *Differ*, 1. In Situation. 2. In Color. 3. In Conſiſtency. 4. By the going between of Lines. 5. In Magnitude. 6. In Figure. 7. In Cavities, which are in the Marrow, not in the Brain. 8. In Nobility.

The white part therefore of the Brain ſeems to be buryed in the Aſh-color'd part, as the Chryſtalline Humor is in the Glaſſie. And though theſe two ſubſtances, the White and the Aſh-colot'd, do in dead Carcaſſes putrified ſeem very cloſely united and continued one to another; yet in the freſh bodies of healthy perſons ſuddenly killed, they are ſeparated with ſundry lines, ſo that they may be very well actually ſevered, if great Dexterity be uſed, and Diſſection be begun preſently after the parties death, otherwiſe they are overflowed with much moiſture and fall in.

*Parts of the Marrow.* This middlemoſt white ſubſtance or *Marrow*, *I divide into the round* and *long Parts*.

*The Head of the Marrow, what?* The *Globous* or *round part*, which I ſhall call the Head of the Marrow, reſembles the Figure of the Skul, and is of great bulk, having in it three Cavities or Ventricles commonly ſo called.

*A new opinion concerning the place where the Animal ſpirits are made.* The *long* part, which I will call the Tail of the Marrow, ariſes immediately out of the former like a certain Tail, wherein is ingraven the *Calamus Scriptorius* or fourth Ventricle ſo called by ſome; wherein I hold the true Generation of Animal Spirits to be affected.

And this long Portion of the Marrow, is the beginning and original of all Nerves whatſoever that are in that place; contrary to what is commonly thought.

Alſo this lengthened *Marrow* may be conſidered in a twofold manner: either as it remains ſtill *within the Skul*, and then the Nerves ariſe therefrom, which are vulgarly attributed to the Brain: or as it is without the Skull, and ſlides into the Back-bone, gaining the title of the Spinal Marrow.

But that young Learners may not be confounded, I ſhall now propound the ſtructure of the whole Brain commonly ſo called.

*The Magnitude of the Brain.* The *greateſt* of a Mans Brain is remarkable in proportion to the reſt of his body, as *Ariſtotle* obſerves. And for the moſt part a man hath twice as much

Brain as an Ox, viz. the quantity of four or five pound weight, becauſe he is a more noble Creature, and perpaps becauſe he goes bolt upright: for when when we would have any thing that is moveable to ſtand upright we put a great weight on the top, to prevent its falling. Yet the ſcull of a monſtrous beaſt lately found in *Scania*, might preternaturally contain twice that quantity of Brain. The Skull it ſelf is kept in the ſtudy of *Wormius*.

*Who have moſt Brains.*

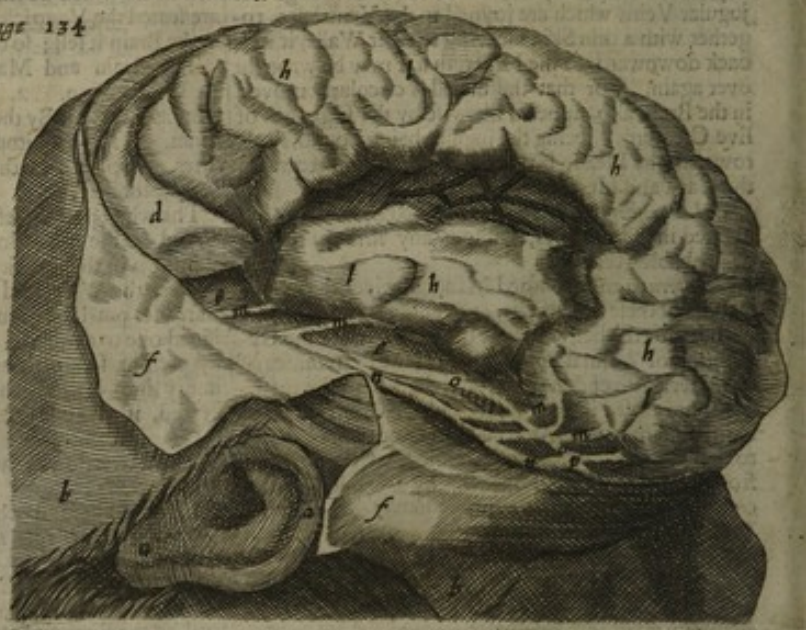
And among Man-kind, Men have more Brains then women. For to them the greateſt brain is given, that have moſt need of brains, and greateſt uſe of them, for the exerciſe of ſundry excellent Animal faculties. Yet *Spigelius* or *Bucretius* will not allow of this difference of the brains of the two Sexes, moved doubtleſs by Ocular Inſpection, and the great Minds and Endowments of ſome Women, which the foregoing Age and this of ours have brought forth. But Women are therefore ſaid to have leſs brains then men, becauſe for the moſt part they have leſs bodies.

*Knobs of the Brain.*

It is of a roundiſh ſhape anſwerable to the Skul; yet inwardly the brain hath certain knobs, which by ſome are cal- *Proceſſus mammillares*

## The III. TABLE.

*page 134*




## The Explication of the FIGURE

This FIGURE preſents the left ſide of the Brain bowed back into the place of the right, which according to the foregoing Figure is taken away, as alſo the great Clift of the ſaid Side.

aa. *The left Ear.*
bb. *The Skin of the Head hanging down.*
cc. *Part of the Fore-head-Bone.*
d. *The Socket of the Eye.*
eee. *The Hollowneſs of the Skull, wherein the lower part of the Brain was contained.*
ff. *The dura Mater hanging down.*
hhhhh. *The left ſide of the Brain inveſted with the pia mater*
iii. *The great Clift of the left ſide of the Brain, ſeated over the Root of the Spinal Marrow.*
kk. *The left Root of the Spinal Marrow, appearing in the Bottom of the great Clift, with new Rudiments of the winding, and Veſſels there diſtributed.*
llll. *The windings of the Brain, according to which the Branches of the Carotick Artery are diſtributed.*
mmmm. *The Branches of the Carotick Artery, ending into the larger left-ſide Ventricle.*
nn. *The greater left-ſide lateral Cavity or Ventricle.*
oo. *The ſmaller left-hand lateral Ventricle.*
p. *The Entrance of the ſmaller lateral Ventricle into the greater*

---

*Why the Brain hath windings.*

The outward ſurface of the brain is ful of turnings and windings like thoſe of the Guts: which we muſt not ſay were made for underſtanding with *Eraſiſtratus*, ſeeing Aſſes alſo have them; nor for lightneſs ſake as *Ariſtotle* would have it; nor that they are without End or Uſe, as others conceit; but that the Veſſels of the brain might be more ſafely conveighed through thoſe turnings and windings, leaſt they might by continual motion be in danger of breaking, eſpecially at the ful of the Moon, when the brain doth moſt of all ſwel within the Skul.

*The winding Clift of the Brain.*

The windings of the brain (which I firſt learnt of *Fr. Sylvius* a great Anatomiſt) if you diligently examin the matter, you ſhall find to deſcend a good depth, & that the brain doth gape on each ſide, over & above that ſame middle diviſion made by the Sickle, with a winding clift, which begins in the forepart, about the roots of the Eyes, whence according to the bones of the Temples, it goes back above the Root of the ſpinal Marrow, and divides the upper part of the brain from the lower part. Yet now and then, that ſame great Chink cannot be found or very hardly. In ſtead thereof I have found a certain ſmal lateral clift on each ſide eaſily ſeparable, even in the common ſection, near the Ventricles, ful of the Carotick Arteries.

See *Tab* 3.

The *inner* Surface hath ſundry Extuberances and Cavities, as ſhall be ſaid in the following diſcourſe.

The

*The Colour.* The *Colour* is white, because the brain, as all other parts hath its original from the Seed, but so, that it hath less of Amplification then of Constitution: and therefore in extream fastings the brain suffers no diminution.

*Its temperament.* Its *Temperament* is cold and moist, which appears from its whiteness and moistness. And therefore *Hippocrates* saies the brain is the seat of cold and clammy humors. For the overgreat heat of the brain is an hinderance both to Reason and Sleep, as appears in Phrenetick persons. Yet is it by reason of the spirits hotter then any Air, as *Galen* rightly saies; yet is it not so exceeding hot, as the Heart

*Why the substance of the brain is moderately soft?* Its substance is proper to it self, such as is not in the whole body besides. *Hippocrates* doth liken it to a Kernel, by reason of the Colour and plenty of moisture. It is soft and moist for the more easie impression of Images and Conceptions, for it is the seat of Imagination: Yet is it not so soft as to run about, but hath a consistent softness, so that what is imprinted therein, may continue for a season: for the brain is also the seat of Memory.

The followers of *Des-cartes* doth weave the brain together of soft and pliable Fiberkies, mutually touching one another, with intermediate spaces of the pores, by which Fiberkies the Images of Objects are imprinted upon the brain. They do indeed excellently explain the reason of Sense, if this *Hypothesis* of theirs were true. But such Fiberkies are not found in the soft substance of the brain, unless we shall mean the beginning of the Spinal Marrow, out of which the little Ropes of Nerves do arise.

It is a rare case for the substance of the brain to be quite wanting, but *Horstius* saw it sometimes much diminished by over great use of carnal Embracements, as his Epistles shew. Howbeit *Schenckius, Valleriola, Carpus, &c.* saw a Boy without any brain; as also *Nicolas Fontanus* at *Amsterdam* in the year 1629, who in stead of a brain and spinal marrow, found a very clear water enclosed in a Membrane.

*There are Veins in the Brain.* Sundry Vessels are Disseminated through the brain. For if you squeeze the substance thereof, many little Dripplekies of blood do sweat out: and therefore I conclude with *Galen* that very many capillary Veins and Arteries are there disseminated: which I have also divers times beheld with mine Eyes. Which will then principally happen, as *Fr. Silvius* observes, when the brain is Flaccid and Friable, because he observed that then it would come of it self from the Vessels, in dissection; and especially if the Vessels by means of Age, or any other waies, are become more solid then ordinary.

Now there are no *Nerves* Disseminated through the Brain and therefore it is Void of all Sense.

The Veins which are carryed through the substance of the brain are, 1. The five branches of the jugular Veins, some of which go into the Cavity of the dura mater, others are spred up and down through the Coats and substance of the brain. But they, according to the Observation of *Walæus*, are no other then, 2. very smal twigs, which on either side go into the substance of the brain, out of the Cavities of dura mater.

There are four Arteries from the Carotides and Cervicales, whereof the former are disseminated into the brain upwards and downwards, the latter into the Brainlet or Cerebellum. In the Chinks the same Carotick Arteries are carried in very great number, both in the surface and the bottom, which *Fr. Sylvius* conceives to be the cause of that same troublesome pulsing about the Temples in some kinds of Head-ach: though in the judgment of *A. Kyperus* the pulsation of the external Arteries adds somwhat hereunto, as the Cure of the pain doth shew, by opening the said Arteries.

*The Use of the Brain.* The *Use of the Brain* according to *Aristotle*, is to cool the Heart, which *Galen* justly refutes, because the brain is far from the Heart. But there are some Peripatetick who deny that *Aristotle* dissents from the Physitians, while he saith the brain is made to temper the heat of the Heart, and they will have it made to produce Animal spirits: In as much as the Animal spirits cannot be generated, unless the vital Spirits be first cooled But,

The *Use* thereof is, 1. To be the Mansion of the sensitive Soul, for the performance of Animal Functions. Now the brain is no particular Organ of Sense, as the Eyes, Ears, &c. but an universal one: for judgment is made in the brain of the Objects of all the Senses.

*Of the brains Motion.* Also it passes judgment touching Animal Motion, whereas it self hath no Animal Motion: But it hath a Natural Motion, communicated from the Arteries, and that a perpetual one of widening and contracting it self, as appears in Wounds of the Head and new-born Children, in the forepart of whose Head, the brain is seen to pant, because their bones are as yet exceeding soft and plyable.

In its Dilatation the brain draws vital Spirit with arterial blood out of the Carotick Arteries, and Air by the Nostrils.

In its contraction it forces the Animal spirits into the Nerves, which like Conduit pipes carry the said Spirit into the whole body, and therewith the faculties of Sense and Motion. And by the same Contraction, the blood is forced out of the Ventricles through the Veins unto the Heart.

*The Matter of the Animal Spirits.* The Matter therefore of the Animal Spirits is two fold; viz. Arterial blood ful of vital Spirit, and Air. Touching the place of its Generation we shall speak hereafter. For I am not of their opinion who confirme that this Spirit is Generated in the substance of the Brain, or in those Ventricles in the forepart thereof.

2. That the Animal spirit may be contained and kept in the brain as in a Store-house, after it is generated. And the substance, truly, of the Brain is a convenient House and Receptacle for the Animal spirit, seeing it is the same with the internal Marrowy substance of the Nerves, which also contains the said Animal Spirit.

*A new opinion of the Author, touching the use of the Brain and the Marrow.* Now I am of Opinion that in the Brain, properly so called, or the Rinde, is contained Animal Spirit for Sense; and that in the whole Marrow Head and Tail, Spirits is kept for Motion, which shall be made manifest in the following Chapter.

# Chap. IV.

## *Of the Parts of the Brain in Particular, and I. of the lengthened and Spinal Marrow, and its noble Ventricle.*

*The right Dissection of the Head must begin at the lower Part.*

*See the Figure of the Section in the Manual of Nerves.*

SOme with *Galen, Vesalius, Fallopius,* intending to contemplate what is contained in the Brain, begin their Dissection in the upper part and proceed to the lower, and therefore they do unfitly propound and explain many parts. I, treading in the steps of *Constantinus Varolus*, shall take a quite contrary Course, yet such as is true and accurate, beginning at the lower part of the brain and so passing to the uppermost: and I shall afterward propound the order of parts from top to bottome, for their sakes that will needs follow the vulgar and common way of Dissection; where also a third way of Dissection shall be propounded.

*The beginning of the Spinal Marrow.*

Beginning therefore at the lowest part of the Brain, we meet first with the *beginning of the lengthened Marrow*; the progress whereof because it is contained in the Vertebra's of the Spina or Back-bone, therefore it is termed *Spinalis* and Dorsalis, *Medulla*, the Spinal or Back-marrow.

*An Objection.*

*The Answer.*

*A new Opinion of the Author, that the Marrow is the Original of the brain.*

And if any one shall think we ought therefore to begin with the brain, because the Spinal Marrow is said to take its beginning therefrom; we answer, that we make the Marrow both as it is within the Skull and in the Back-bone, to be the beginning rather of the brain: and that the brain being divided into two parts, is as it were a certain double process or production of the Marrow it self.

*A proof hereof.*

Which is yet more manifest to those that behold the Anatomy of Fishes; for there the Head and Tail of the Marrow, is very great, but the process of the Marrow, or the brain is very little: the Cause whereof is, that Fishes use motion more then sense, intimating that the brain or barke contributes more to sense, and the Marrow it self to Motion. Hence Fish are dull of Sense, but very nimble in motion. And according to this opinion of ours that saying will be verified, than an hard body is fittest for motion, and softer for sence.

## The IV. TABLE.


page 136

## The FIGURES Explained.

This TABLE presents the fourth Ventricle of the Brain, the Brainlet, and the *Corpus Callosum*, in several Figures.

### FIG. I.

AA. *The Brainlet or Cerebellum and its Globes.*

B. *The Worm-like process of the Cerebellum or Brainlet.*

CCCC. *The processes of the Brainlet, which make the bridg of* Varolius.

D. *The beginning of the Spinal Marrow.*

EE. *Two roots or smaller Processes of the Spinal Marrow arising from the Brainlet.*

F. *The fourth Ventricle likened to a Pen.*

GG. *A portion of the Brain cleaving to the Brainlet.*

### FIG. II.

AA. *The inner whitish substance of the Brainlet.*

BBB. *The outer and more duskish substance compassing the white about.*

CCCC. *An Elegant structure of the Brainlet Representing the branchings of Trees.*

### FIG. III.

AA. *The appearance of the brain cut off in the middle as far as to the Ventricles.*

BB. *The corpus callosum drawn a little to the left side.*

C. *A portion of the Sickle turned backwards.*

DD. *The right fore Ventricle uncovered above.*

EE. *The left Ventricle open in like manner.*

FF. *The Plexus choreides.*

G. *A portion of the Speculum or Septum Lucidum.*

HH. *The dura Mater drawn away on both sides.*

II. *The two Thighes or portions of the Fornix.*

The

The *lengthened Marrow* ariſes as ſome conceive from the brain alone, according to others from the Brainlet or Cerebellum. But it hath both (to ſpeak now at a vulgar rate) for its beginning.

For it ariſes from four Roots or Foundations; two of which are greater from the fore-part of the brain commonly ſo called, two are leſſer from the inner part of the Brainlet or petty Brain. From theſe united, the ſpinal Marrow ſeems to be conſtituted. But it is peradventure a more true opinion to think, that thoſe originals are proceſſes of the Marrow it ſelf, as was ſaid before.

The *Subſtance* of the *Medulla oblongata* or lengthened Marrow, is a little harder then that of the brain.

*The ſpinal Marrow divided.*

One part thereof is within the *Skull*, four Fingers breadths above the great Hole of the Hind-part of the Head. Another and the longeſt part thereof is *without the Skull* in the Vertebra's, from the firſt of the Neck to the laſt of *Os ſacrum*.

Its Figure is longiſh and round, The Scripture calls it the Silver Cord. In its beginning it is thicker and larger then elſewhere.

*Another diviſion.*

It is further divided into the *right* and *left* part, even as the brain is, by the *pia Mater* which immediately inveſts the ſame, which may be ſeen in the Marrow of an Oxe indifferently boyled. Hence there may be a Palſie of only one ſide of the body.

*Another diviſion.*

Now it is divided into many little Cords as it were, about the ſixt and ſeventh Vertebra of the Cheſt: and if the ſpinal Marrow of a body newly dead, be preſently plunged in cold water, and a ſeparation of theſe cords made, you may ſee the ſhape of an Horſes tail, (eſpecially towards the end) divided into many long Hairs: ſo that according to *Laurentius*, the Nerves alſo of the Back and Loyns, do ſpring from the Marrow of the Neck.

*The Coats of the Marrow.*

It is covered with a tripple *Membrane*, the firſt which immediately covers it, is from the *pia Mater*.

The *ſecond* is from the *dura Mater* and cleaves to the former, Which two, according to the Obſervation of *Spigelius*, are not ſeparated any diſtance one from another, as they were within the Skul, but touch one the other.

The *third* being external ſprings according to *Galen* from a ſtrong Ligament, which binds together the forepatts of the Vertebra's, and in the hinder part ends into a ſtrong Coat, leaſt in bending or extending the Back-bone, the Marrow ſhould be hurt.

A thick and clammy humor is poured round about this Coat, to moiſten the ſame.

Afterwards the Marrow is ſhut up in the Vertebræ, leaſt it ſhould be hurt (as the brain is ſhut up in the Skul) ſeeing it is a noble part, and the original of the Nerves. Therefore the Ancients called the Cavity of the *Spina* or Back-bone *Hieran Surigga*, the holy Pipe.

In the beginning of this Marrow, while it is yet in the Skul, there appears ingraven.

*A noble Ventricle in the Marrow.*

An *Hollow Cavity*, which *Galen* calls the Ventricle of the Brainlet; others call it the fourth Ventricle of the brain, though it is not in the brain. But I ſhall term it the *noble Ventricle* of the Marrow.

This is moſt ſolid, moſt pure, moſt ſubtile, but leaſt of all, for it containes a matter of greater force and faculty then the reſt, as *Galen* ſaies.

And becauſe, after a ſtraight even progreſs, it is widened on each ſide, and ſharpened afterwards into a point, becauſe of this ſhape tis called *Calamus Scriptorius*, the *Writing Pen or Quil*.

*The cover of the noble Ventricle is from the Brainlet.*

Now from the Cerebellum or Brainlet, which is joyned to this Marrow, another and middle half of this Ventricle is conſtituted, as it were a cover; ſo that all this Cavity is between the brainlet and *Medulla oblongata*, or production of the Marrow, but the cheif Cavity is the lowermoſt, which is in the Marrow.

*The true place where Animal Spirits are generated according to our Author.*

The *Uſe* of this Ventricle I hold to be this, viz. that it ſhould be the place where Animal ſpirits are Generated and Elaborated. For this Ventricle is 1. The moſt pure and ſubtile. 2. It hath a Cavity ſufficient for that purpoſe. 3. It is ſeated in ſuch a place, that it can poure forth Animal ſpirits, into all the Nerves round about it. And therefore *Herophilus* did rightly judg, that this was the moſt principal Ventricle.

*A Proof.*

Nor can I deviſe how it came to paſs that certain learned Men could not ſee theſe weighty Arguments, who have written without cauſe, that I aſſigned the Generation of Animal Spirits to the *Calamus Scriptorius*, without any reaſons moving me thereto.

Now muſt we think with *Spigelius*, that this Ventricle did only reſult by conſequence, out of the round particles of the Brain, touching one another without any deſign of Nature: for Nature doth nothing to no end, no not when ſhe ſeems moſt of all to do ſo.

Others conceive that the Animal Spirit is bred in the fore Ventricles of the Brain.

But they are full of Excrements, whoſe receptacles they rather are, as appears by the *Glandula Pituitaria* unto them, and in that they are often found filled with Flegm, and abundance of water.

*The preparation of the Animal Spirits where it is?*

Others in the *Rete Mirabile*, others in the *Plexus Choroides*.

But in theſe we hold the Animal Spirit is prepared, but not Generated, For nature is wont to provide intertwinings of Veſſels for the preparation of any matter: and ſeeing theſe Veſſels are ſo ſmal, how can it be generated in them, eſpecially ſeeing ſo many Excrements of the brain flow through the Ventricles.

Others will have them to be wrought in the ſubſtance of the brain. Others in the lengthened body of the ſpinal Marrow. But the Generation of ſo ſubtile a Spirit, did require ſome Cavity, which is alſo allowed to the Generation of the vital Spirits.

For which cauſe ſome have been induced to allot the making of the natural ſpirit to be in the right Vencle of the Heart, becauſe there is no Cavity in the Liver.

I am therefore of opinion that the Animal Spirit is prepared in the *Rete Mirable*, and yet more in the *Plexus Choroides*, and that is generated and wrought up in this Cavity of the *Medulla Elongata*, or in the noble Ventricle; and afterward, as much of it as not derived into the ſpinal Marrow and the Nerves of the brain, is preſerved and retained in the whole brain, as in a Store-houſe.

*This Marrow the beginning of all Nerves.*

The *Use* of the lengthened and ſpinal Marrow, is to be the original of all the Nerves. For from that part thereof within the Skull, thoſe Nerves ariſe which are commonly attributed to the Brain, being uſually reckoned to be ſeven pair. But from the longeſt part thereof which is in the Backbone, Anatomiſts do reckon thirty pair of Nerves to ariſe, *viz.* as many as there are holes in the Vertebræ.

Mean while we muſt not ſo underſtand the matter, as though only ſo many branches or Cords did thence ariſe. For every Nerve ariſes with many little ſtrings or Fibres, which going out at the hole of any Vertebra, are there joyned together by the Membranes, as if the Nerve came out of one branch.

## Chap. V. *Of the* Cerebellum *Brainlet, Or Petty-Brain.*

*The Brainlet what it is?*

THe Brainlet being as it were a little and private kind of Brain, is a certain ſmaller portion, placed under the Brain in the lower and after-part of the *Occiput* or Hinder-Head: In Brutes it takes up commonly the whole Region of the *Occiput*.

It hath the ſame Subſtance, *Conſiſtency*, *Colour*, Motion, &c. with the Brain.

*Its Structure.*

In the *Turnings* and *Windings* it differs from the Brain. The brain hath ſundry Circumvolutions without any Method or Order: the Brainlet hath circular and ordinate ones, ſtretched one over another like Plates. They are differenced partly by interpoſed Veſſels, partly by the pia mater, which being ſeparated, the ſeveral Circles may be taken out after another.

The inner *Subſtance* is various, whiteiſh and Aſh-coloured, which diſtributed certain Veſſels as it were.

The *Veſſels* interpoſed betwixt the ſeveral plates, are carried through the pia mater like nets; which according to the accurate Obſervation of *Francis Sylvius*, ariſing from the Branches of the Arteria cervicalis, do at laſt end into the fourth Ventricle.

It is *conſtituted* chiefly of two lateral parts, on each ſide making a Globe as it were.

It hath two *Proceſſes* or Excreſcences, termed *Vermiformis* or *Worm-like*, becauſe they are variouſly orbiculated, and conſiſt of many tranſverſe portions, coupled with a thin Membrane. Their Extremity being thin and convex, is as big as a ſmall tare.

And they are *ſituate* at the ſeat of the noble Cavity, one before, the other behind.

About the hinder-part of the Trunk of the Spinal Marrow, in the Circumference of the noble Ventricle, out of the ſame brainlet there proceed two other globous proceſſes, ſomtimes two of each ſide, ſomtimes three. Thoſe are greateſt which are ſeated by the Vermiformis, the reſt are ſmaller. *Varolius* calls it the bridg of the brainlet.

*See Tab. 4. Fig. 1.*

The *Uſe* of all the Proceſſes is to hinder the noble Ventricle from being obſtructed, by preſſure of the brainlet. *Laurentius* ſaies they help the motion of the Ventricles like a Valve, becauſe the Vermiformis being ſhortned opens the way, which goes from the third to the fourth Ventricle; when it is extended it ſhuts the Chink, leaſt the Spirits ſhould go back into the upper Cavities. *Riolanus* diſſents but little from him, for he will have it to open and ſhut the entrance of the fourth Ventricle. But it is not moved of it ſelf, becauſe, as the brain, ſo is it void of any proper motion, unleſs you aſſign it to the Veſſels or pia Mater, which are very ſmall, or at leaſt to the neighbouring Animal Spirits.

Now I believe the uſe of the bridg is, to combine and keep in compaſs the Circles of the brain, and as a bulwark to defend the noble Ventricle. And therfore it would more properly be called a Sconce or Fence, then a bridg.

*The Uſe.*

The *Uſe* of the brainlet is the ſame with that of the brain. But *Galen* would have it to be the Original of the hard Nerves; which is falſe. For no Nerves have their Original from it.

## Chap. VI. *Of the reſt of the Parts obſerved in the Brain; viz the Rete mirabile, Glandula pituitaria, Infundibulum, Ventricles of the Brain, Corpus calloſum, Fornix, Plexus, Choroides, Glandula pinealis.*

THe precedent parts being conſidered, we muſt come now to thoſe things, which are preſently viſible, about the Conjunction of the Optick Nerves, ſuch as are: the *Rete mirable*, *Glandula pituitaria*, and the *Infundibulum*.

*Rete mirabile*

The *Rete mirable* or *wonderful Net*, which ſome call *Plexus retiformis*, is ſo called by reaſon of its artificial and wonderful ſtructure, for it ſhews like many Nets heaped together. Now it hath another ſtructure in Calves and Oxen, in which Creatures it is alſo more manifeſtly diſcernable then in mankind, though we muſt not ſay that it is not in Men as *Veſalius* doth, though hard to diſcern. I remember nevertheles that it hath been wanting.

*Veſalius his Error.*

This Net *lies under* the Baſis of the Brain, encompaſſes the Glandula, at the ſides of the Cavity of *Os Sphænoides*.

It conſiſts (not of the Nerves of the third Conjugation as *Volcherus* would have it, but) of the Carotick and Cervical Arteries, carried up from the Heart, to the Baſis of the Brain, which convey blood and Spirit in to this Net.

*Riolanus* places the *Rete mirabile* at the ſame Baſis of the Brain, *viz.* The offſpring of the *Plexus Choroides*, which creeps through the former Ventricles.

The *Uſe* of this *Net* is, that therein the blood and vital Spirit may be a very long time detained, that the firſt preparation towards the Generation of Animal Spirits may there be made. Alſo *Walæus* hath obſerved that this Net doth conſiſt of ſmal twigs of the jugular Veins; that they may doubtleſs carry back ſuch blood as is ſuperfluous after the preparation of the Animal Spirits.

*Glandula pituitaria.*

The *Glandula pituitaria* or *Rheum-kernel*, is ſo called from its uſe, becauſe it receives

*Its Seat.* receives the Excrements of the brain out of the Ventricles through the Funnel. And therefore it is *placed* at the end of the Funnel in the ſaddle of the *Sphænoides*. *Galen* calls it barely *Glandula*.

*Its Figure.* On the *upper-ſide* it is hollow, *beneath* boſſie or bunching.

*Its Subſtance.* Its *Subſtance* is harder and more compact then that of other Kernels.

*Its Uſe.* It is *cloathed* with the *Pia Mater*.

Its *Uſe* is the ſame, with that of other Kernels, *viz.* by its drinking ſpungy fleſh to receive groſſer Excrements (for the thin Vapor out at the Sutures) collected in the Ventricles of the brain, many times in great quantities. For the brain being of great bulk, did need much Aliment, and therefore it breeds many Excrements, eſpecially when it is in any meaſure diſordered. Theſe Excrements the Kernel doth ſomtimes caſt into the Palate of the Mouth, and ſomtimes ſuffers them to drain away by the holes in the baſis of the Skull.

*The Brain ful of Excrements.*

Others ſuppoſe the uſe of this Kernel to be, to ſhut the Funnel, leaſt the Animal Spirits ſhould go forth. For juſt over the *Glandula Pituitaria* or Rheum-Kernel, is

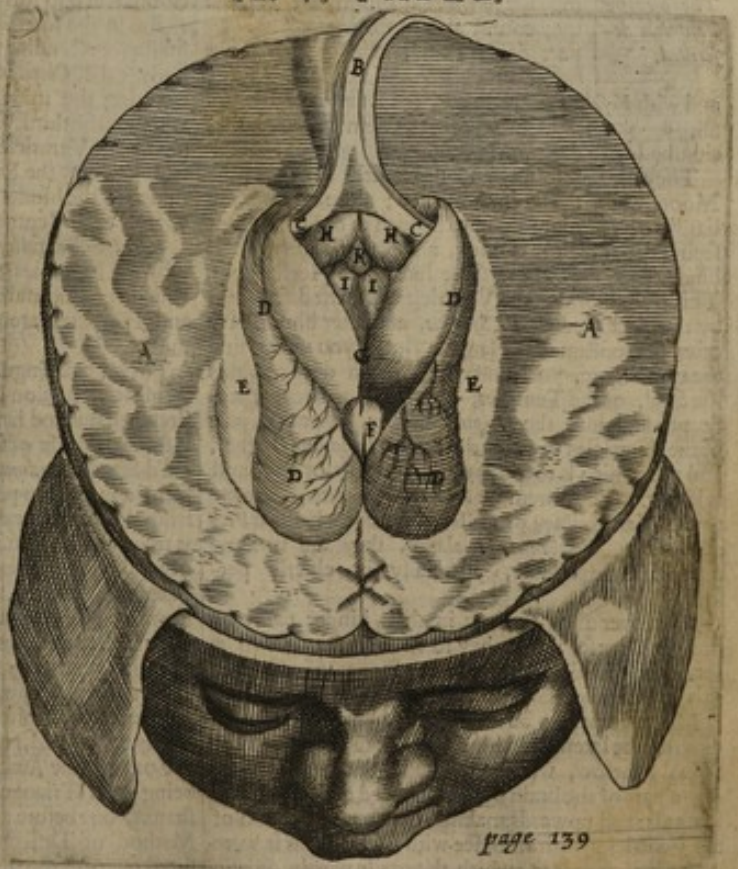
*Infundibulum* or *Funnel*, ſo called from its ſhape, for above the Head thereof is large, the lower part is a long and ſtrait pipe. Others call it *Pelvis* the Baſin, which words doth more properly belong to the Head, or beginning of the Funnel then to the whole body thereof. *Infundibulum.*

The *Funnel* therefore is an Orbicular Cavity (ſomtimes triangular with ſharp or blunt Angels) made of the *pia Mater*, where it ingirts the baſis of the brain. Its beginning is large, at the hole of the third Ventricle, as they call it; through which the Excrements are packt away out of the Ventricles into this Funnel.

*Riolanus* informs us that it hath four little pipes, which diſtil Rheum or Phlegmatick ſerum through the four holes reſting upon the *Sellæ Sphenoideæ*.

Its of a dark *Colour*, and if you open it you ſhall find it full of thick Flegm.

## The V. TABLE.




page 139

## The FIGURE Explained.

The Fornix being removed the Glandula Pinealis is here to be ſeen as alſo the third Ventricle of the Brain, which is in the middle between the two foremore Ventricles.

AA. *The Brain cut ſmooth off through the middle.*

B. *The Fornix took away and turned back.*

CC. *Its Expanſions or hinder Thighs.*

DDDD. *The bottom of the right and left Ventricles, wherein the Veſſels appear before.*

EE. *Their Walls or Sides.*

F. *The foremore hole of the third Ventricle, which ſome call* Vulva.

G. *A chink denoting the third Ventricle.*

HH. *Bunchings of the Brain called* Nates, *the Buttocks.*

II. *The Protuberances or bunchings called* Teſtes *the Stones.*

K. *The Glandula Pinealis or Pine-kernel-ſhap'd Glandulæ.*

Two little whiteiſh Kernels or Portuberancies of the brain are placed before this paſſage, which are to be ſeen, the brain being turned upſide down, there where the Funnel receives wheyiſh Excrements out of the Ventricles.

Theſe things being thus handled, the *Original of the Nerves* follows in courſe the Section to be obſerved, which every where ariſe from the Marrow; of which I ſhall ſpeak in our Manual of the Nerves.

The

The *Ventricles* or *Cavities* of the Brain do follow.

These according to the common manner of Section, beginning from above, are thought to be *three*: two *foremore and uppermore* as they call them, and *one in the middle*, to which some add a *fourth*, of which we spoke before.

But if dissection be made after the new manner, beginning from beneath; there appear only two, so that the third is common, being a portion of the other two.

*The Authors opinion that there is but one Ventricle of the Brain.*

I conceive that *there is but one Ventricle of the brain*, which is in the middle, but the beginning thereof is divided into two; or there are two processes, which receiving the Excrements, carry them into the middle it self, which they call the third. For there is one continued Cavity of the brain, and the two Ventricles so called, do end into a common Cavity.

Mean while, because this and that part of the Cavity seem diversly formed, some distinction may be allowed for Doctrins sake.

*The foremore Ventricle described.*

Those *two Ventricles* which are ill-termed the *foremore* and *uppermore* (because they consist also in the *hinder* and *lower* part of the Brain, perhaps they might better be called the lateral Ventricles, and with *Vesalius* the right and left) are the largest of all, crooked, full of windings, Semicircular, and cloathed with the *pia Mater*.

They are commonly and not unfitly liken'd to the Moon when she is in the Wane; although they are hardly ever demonstrated to be such in dissection. But seeing they are both oblong, and very large in their hinder part, they may also be likened to Horse-shoes. This round form of the Ventricles was first discovered by the most accurate *Fr. Sylvius*, and after him I have often demonstrated the same. But if you would find the true Figure, you must cut the brain deep towards the Skul, or the Temples, on each side, because it is deeply sunk into the *Corpus Callosum*. For that part of the Ventricles towards the *Septum lucidum* is higher, and that which is towards the lateral part of the Skull is lower. The foremore and deeper parts, are near to the Mammillary processes, and if we believe *Piccolhomineus*, *Bauhinus*, *Riolanus*, they are in some manner transpassable, especially in elderly persons.

Moreover they run out in their hinder part by a straight Course, where they form a Cavity which is somwhat round, not unlike the Finger of a Glove; this I remember hath been sometimes wanting.

Moreover it is to be noted, that these Ventricles do environ the lateral and hind parts of the Roots of the Spinal Marrow, which also, under the *Plexus Choroides*, a part of the brain being wreathed and attenuated inwards, and upwards making the Concameration of the Ventricles, doth embrace with a selvidge as it were and a Fringe or lace, which the praise worthy *Sylvius* wont so to call for likeness sake, it being knit to the was foresaid roots by exceeding thin threds. If gently lifting up the Plexus, you shall remove this lace from the Root, you shall find little Arteries creeping through the lower surface of the Ventricle, continued to the Net-like Coronet of little Arteries investing the root; by help of which, this Lace seems to stick more close to the Root.

But here you shall observe, that there is an easie outgate for the Humors contained in the said Ventricles, which may descend down along the spinal Marrow.

*Corpus Callosum.*

They are therefore formed, not in the Brain, but in the marrow, where they call it *Corpus Callosum*, because the substance is there harder like a *Callus*, where the Ventricles seem to rest upon the two foremore Extuberancies.

*The Conformation of the Ventricles of the Brain.*

The Conformation of the Ventricles of the brain, which all cannot easily discerne, I have by Anatomical Inspection and the Guidance of *Sylvius*, learnt to be thus.

Two Roots of the Spinal Morrow do penetrate a good depth into the substance of the brain; to the upper and former whereof, especially where it looks inward, the brain being continued (now I mean the whiteish and Ash-coloured part by the term Brain) it spreads it self every way, especially outwards and backwards and by little and little wreathes and contracts its lower extremities inward and upwards, till at last being attenuated, it doth on all sides embrace the Root of the spinal Marrow with a lace, a little below the place where it springs therefrom, as was said before; and so forms the lateral Ventricles.

But in the foremore and inner part, and whiteish substance ascending from each Root, and making one body cal'd *Corpus Callosum*, it is carried back; and covering the middle distance between the Roots, which is the third Ventricle, and the wide mouths of the lateral Ventricles opened thereinto, framed by it self, it makes the Fornix, Arch or Vault; and is continued to the hinder and inner part of the Limbus or edge of each Ventricle.

*Regius* adds many pores in the Ventricles, looking into the Fiberskies of the substance of the brain, in which the Animal spirit is bred. But those pores and Fiberkies are invisible to the Eyes of Anatomists.

*Septum lucidum.*

They are distinguished by a loose and wrinkeld Partition-Skin: which if it be stretched out and held against the light, it shines because of its transparency, and is therefore cal'd *Septum lucidum*: which some will have to spring from a most thin portion of the brain it self, others from the *pia Mater* doubled. But the former opinion is truer, which you may perceive, if after the manner of *Sylvius* having removed the brain and fickle of the other side, you shall search the Ventricle of the opposite part, and shall lift up that part of the brain which is continued with the *Corpus Callosum*, at the Orifice of the third ventricle; for then it may easily be seen, and discerned to be a final portion of the brain.

*Fornix.*

The lower, whiteish part, where the ventricles are joyned, is termed

Fornix the Arch, or *Testudo* the Belly of a Lute, being of a Triangular Figure, consisting of three shanks, one before and two behind. In the common Method of Dissection, this body is supposed to be spred out over the third ventricle, and to lie beneath the *Corpus Callosum*.

Under the *Fornix* according to the observation of *Sylvius* the *Choroides plexus* of both sides, is immediately carryed, tending towards the *Glandula pinealis*; under which *Plexus*, in its upper part, the two Roots of the spinal Marrow grow together; so that here the *Testudo*, is not seated immediately under the third ventricle.

The

## The FIGURE Explained.

This Figure preſents the left Ventricle of the Brain, being bent back, as it is repreſented in the fift Figure.

## The VI. TABLE.

a. *The right Ear.*
b. *The left Ear.*
cccc. *The bone of the Forehead.*
dd. *Part of the Skin of the Head hanging down on either ſide.*
eeeeeee. *The dura Mater of both ſides hanging down.*
ffffff. *The Brain according to the paſſage of the left Ventricle, divided from that part which lies over the Root of the ſpinal Marrow, and turned backwards.*
ggg. *Part of the Brain reſting upon the ſpinal Marrow.*
hh. *A great chink of the Brain going over the Root.*
iiiiii. *The inner face and form of the left Ventricle reſembling the ſharp corner'd Moon.*
k. *The Cavity of the Ventricle like a Gloves-finger.*
l. *An orifice going into the third Ventricle.*
mmm. *The lace ſticking to the Root of the ſpinal Marrow*
nn. *The lace removed from the ſaid Root.*
ooo. *The Plexus Choroides.*
ppp. *The Root of the ſpinal Marrow raiſed up.*
qqq. *Veſſels creeping up and down the inner ſurface of the Ventricle, and ſpringing for a great part, from the ſmal Arteries which compaſs the Root.*
r. *The Septum lucidum.*

*The third Ventricle.* The third Ventricle commonly ſo called, or the long Chink, is the meeting together of the Ventricles aforeſaid, which is formed in the Centre, as it were of the Marrow of the Brain, by reaſon of the Conjuction of two round Trunks proceeding out of the Brain. It hath in it two paſſages, the firſt foremore, going downwards to the Glandula pituitaria, that it may there void its Excrements: the other is hindermore, cloathed with a Membrane; which hole ſome call *Anus*, the Fundament; it goes beneath the Buttocks to the noble Ventricle, that the prepared matter of the Animal ſpirits, may paſs into the place and Womb as it were of their Generation.

*The Anus, what it is?* This hole is nothing elſe but a ſpace ariſing upon the mutuall contact of the four Trunks of the ſpinal Marrow,

*The Nates and Teſtes.* Now the *Nates* or *Buttocks*, and the *Teſtes* or *Stones* are four Orbicular prominences, which they ſay are in the Brain, which is falſ. They call the two portions of the Roots of the Medulla oblongata, which ariſe from the Brainlet, Nates; and thoſe two little ones of the Roots from the Brain, they call *Teſtes*. And theſe parts are lower, the other upper.

Theſe differences, as *Fr. Sylvius* notes, between the *Teſtes* and the *Nates*, have place in Brutes rather then in Men; for the Men they are commonly equal, and many times the *Teſtes* are the bigger.

*Penis. Vulva.* But it is a trifling peice of buſineſs to impoſe ſuch Names as theſe; as alſo when they call the *Glandula pinealis*, *Penis*, and a certain long ditch between the Eminences they term *Vulva*.

*The Plexus Choroidis, what?* Between the fore-more Ventricles ſo called, and the Seat of the Teſtudo, there is, the Plexus Choroidis or Reticularis ſo called, being a contexture of very ſmal Veins and Arteries, ſent partly from the Arteries, partly from the Veſſels of the dura Mater in the fourth Ventricle. There is a glandulous ſubſtance interwoven within this Plexus, and a portion of the pia Mater. The Plexus Choroides being truly glandulous, does receive a little branch of the Carotick artery, which pierces into the lower part of the brain, which ends about the Glandula pinealis, where it branches up and down through the lower Surface of the Ventricle.

The *Uſe* hereof is the ſame with that of the Rete mirabile.

*Glandula pinealis.* At the beginning of that hole, which paſſes from the middle Ventricle into the noble Ventricle, there is placed a certain *Glandule* or *Kernel*, termed *Pinealis* the Pine-kernel Glandule, becauſe it is faſhioned like the Kernel of a Pine-apple. The Greeks call it *conarion* or *ſoma conoeides*, ſome term it the Yard of the brain.

It is of an hard substance, of a yellowish and somtimes dark colour, and is covered with a thin Membrane. In Creatures newly kil'd tis large, in old karcasses, being melted it is scarce apparent, or is very small, as also in men, whose brains cannot be opened whil'st they are warm. And therefore they say it spends like Camphire exposed to the air, being also partly melted, as Salt is in a moist place.

According to the Observation of *Sylvius* a *nervous little string* does fasten this Kernel as it stands betwixt the Testes.

Who also observed more then once certain granes of sand in this Kernel, and somtimes also a little stone as big as the fourth part of a pease, and somwhat round.

The *Use* of this Pine-kernel is like that of other kernels, and especially to help the distribution of Vessels through the brain. Some will have it placed like a Valve before the hole which passes into the fourth Ventricle.

*Des Cartes* and his Followers *Meyssonerius*, *Regius*, *Hogelandius*, do conceive that this Kernel being placed in the middle of the Ventricles, which when a man is awake are distended with Spirits perpetually, does 1. Receive the motions of all Objects. 2. That the Soul in this part alone by these motions, does apprehend all external sensible Objects, and all the Ideas proceeding from the five Senses, as in a Centre, and discern the same, and does afterward by help thereof send Spirits into all parts; as in a smal Sphærical glass, all things are received in the same order in which they are either in a Field or Chamber.

For this cause *Meyssonerius* will have it to be of a *conick Figure*, because Individuals require more space then sorts or kinds of things. And that these Idea's are diversly moved by the motion of the animal spirit, but are alwaies found joyned by the Verb Est, and according to their equality or inequality, truth or falshood is compounded, being compared together like two Lines.

And that for this cause Infants do not presently speak nor reason, because the flappiness of their brain gives not passage to the Idea's. And that the overgreat and confused motion of these Idea's in the Pine-shap'd kernel, makes ravenings, as in persons drunk, phrentick, &c.

But many things there are which will not suffer me to embrace this new and witty Opinion. For

1. It is too small and obscure a body, to be able to represent clearly the Species of all things.

2. The Species of all Senses do not come hither, because the Nerves do not touch the Kernel.

3. It is placed in the Quarter of Excrements, whether they are purged out, by the third, and two foremore Ventricles, where the Species or Representations of things would be defiled.

4. The Species of things are perceived rather there whereto they are carried. But every sensory Nerve each in its place carries the Species to the beginning of the spinal Marrow, and therefore each in their place are judged and received by the Soul, in the beginning of the spinal Marrow. Moreover this Marrow is big enough, globous, hard, and of a brighter colour.

5. Several Idea's would be confounded in this little body. The Eye indeed being likewise very small, receives the Species or Representations of things without Confusion, but they are only the visible Species; whereas in this Kernel the divers Species of different Senses are to be received.

6. There is hence no open or known passage to the Nerves, as from the beginning of the Marrow, nor any communion with some Nerves of the external senses.

*That the Ventricles of the Brain serve to receive Excrements.*

The *Use* of the Cavities or *Ventricles* of the brain is, to be the Receptacles of Excrements, which is apparent.

1. From their Structure: for an hole goes from the Cavities to the Glandula pituitaria.

2. The Surface of the Ventricles is continually moistned with a watry Humor.

3. They are often found topful of flegm and watry moisture.

*The order of the parts to be shewn in the new way of Dissection.*

Howbeit in this new Section after the neck of the funnel is shewed with the Glandula: the Marrow being lifted up, first of all the Nates and the Testes are seen, and then the hole into the noble Ventricle; afterwards divers Nerves, the Ventricles of the brain with the hole into the funnel the Corpus callosum, the Fornix, the Plexus Choroides, and the Glandula pinealis.

*The order of the parts in the old Dissection.*

But in the old and common way of Dissection, these parts of the brain are shewed in order: The Corpus callosum, the Septum renue, the two Extuberances, upon which the Ventricles rest; the two Ventricles, commonly called the foremore; the Fornix, the Plexus Choroidis, the third Ventricle, its two holes, the Glandula pinealis; and the brainlet being a little removed, the Nates and Testes the brainlet, the worm-fashion'd Processes, the noble Ventricle, the Pelvis, Glandula pituitaria, and Rete mirabile.

*The order in the middle way of Dissection.*

But if you will use the middle way of Dissection, familiar to *Fr. Sylvius*, thus you shall proceed. Take off the Skull as deep as conveniently you can. Then suffering the left side of the brain to remain untoucht, with its Membrane; begin your Dissection on the right side, first of all cutting asunder and removing the dura Mater; then take away some particles of the brain with the pia Mater, til you come to the Cavity of the Ventricle, and then follow both its upper and lower passage with your Dissection, as you see it done in the second Table. Separate the Limbus if you please, with a blunt probe, from the root of the Spinal Marrow, and shew it; though that may be more conveniently done in the opposite side of the Brain. The greatest part of the right side of the Brain being thus taken away, the upper and lower Cavities of the Sickle are to be shewn, as also the greater right side lateral Cavity, and the oblique descend of the upper Cavity thereinto, all which you have expressed in the foresaid Table.

*The Dissection of the right side.*

*The Dissection of the left side.*

These things being thus done, go to the left side, and therein first cut asunder the dura Mater, and remove it with the *Falx* or Sickle; then gently remove the left side of the Brain, into the place of the right side newly removed; and as you are doing this observe from Tab. 3. the Vessels going into the lateral Cavity, and how they rise up about the optick nerves, and are distributed into very many branches, creeping every where up and down the inner Substance of the brain, and especially the winding Surface thereof, til at last they end into the Carotick Arteries. Then search out that same notable chink or clift, between the windings,

dings, which is figured out in the Table aforesaid; and having cut the pia Mater, open the sides thereof a little little with a Spatter, that the branches of the Carotides may better appear, which are carried through the bottom of the turnings, with the Rudiments of new windings. But if, before you shall begin to shew the brain, you shall free the Carotick Arteries and the jugular Veins from the parts adjacent in the Neck, and bind them distinctly; and then by a Wound made in an Artery shall put in a crooked hollow probe and blow; the vessels disseminated through the whole brain wil swel, as being branches of the Carotick Arteries, until the air with the forced blood shall at length empty it self into the Ventricles: if by the foresaid hollow probe, you shall in like manner blow into the Ventricles, you will perceive their continuation and communion with the jugular Veins, by the swelling and distention of the said Veins; and will acknowledg that the Circulation of the blood, is not a little confirmed by this pleasant Spectacle.

*An excellent Argument for the Circulation of the Blood.*

Hence, returning to a farther search into the fabrick of the brain, and a wary Incision being made in the hinder part of the side propounded, search there for the larger Cavity of the Ventricle, and follow it with your Dissection to both the Ends; then turn back every way the outer part of that which is dissected, the middle part being kept upright, which rests upon the root of the Spinal Marrow, and is continued therewith, which is excellently well expressed in Table the sixt, in the Explication whereof, what you see set down, weigh in order.

Finally, taking away the Brain, observe again all the Cavities and that more distinctly; and then when you have seen the third Ventricle, the Funnel, the Glandula pituitaria, the pares of Nerves, after the usual manner; go back again to the Penis, Anus, Testes, Nates, &c. and examine the brainlet and its parts.

Nor will it be unprofitable, as often as a new occasion of Dissection is offered, so often to change the section in some part; for so it will come to pass, that you will alwaies observe somwhat which was unobserved before, or neglected, or not distinctly enough considered.

# Chap. VII.
## *Touching the Forehead.*

*Why Mens Face, is void of Hair?* THe Hairy part of the Head being explained, the smooth part or FACE follows, which in man is void of Hairs, otherwise then it is in Beasts, for Beauties sake; it is also called *Vultus* because of the judgment of the wil, which is Conspicuous of the Face.

*Frons why so called?* The upper part thereof, *viz.* the Forehead is termed *Frons a ferendo* from carrying, as some conceive, because it carries in it tokens of the mind: the rest thereof, from the Eye-brows to the Chins end, is the lower part, in which are many other parts, which are hereafter to be explained in order, external and internal, the Organs of the Senses, Muscles of the Eyes, Nose, Lips, &c.

*Its Skin.* The *Skin of the Forehead*, because it is moved, therefore it hath Muscles, which *Platerus* terms the significrs of the Affections of the Mind. Now the *Muscles* of the Forehead do lift up the Eye-brows, and are thickest at the said Eye-brows.

*Muscles.*

They arise from the Skull, near the coronal Suture, and are *knit* at the sides to the temporal Muscles, but in the middle they are distinguished a little above, but beneath they are so nearly associated, that they seem to be one Muscle, and end at the Eye-brows. Yet I have observed in a large nosed person, that an Appendix of the said Muscles did reach to the Gristles of the Nose.

They have straight *Fibres*. Surgeons therefore must not cut them athwart, least they destroy the lifting up of the Eye-brows; but upwards, according to their length. *Hofman* after *Aquapendent* stands for oblique fibres, on the right side from the right hand to the left, on the left side from the left hand to the right. But this they do against Experience, ocular Inspection, and Reason. For the skin of the Forehead is by a straight course, either elevated or depressed by help of right fibres, which are the cause of straight motion. In the point of right fibres, we have the Consent of great Anatomists *Vesalius*, *Laurentius*, *Bauhinus*, *Platerus*, *Vesslingus*, &c.

And because the skin of the Forehead grows close to these Muscles, therefore both the Forehead and the Eye-brows are moved.

Howbeit there are somtimes also two Muscles in the *hinder part of the Head*, which move the skin thereof, short, thin and broad, with straight fibres, ending above into a broad Tendon, and touching the hindermore Muscles of the Ears, in their sides. Some men that are furnished with these Museles, can draw the skin of their Heads backwards.

# Chap. VIII. *Of the Eyes.*

*The Eyes why called Oculi?* THe *Eyes* are termed *Oculi ab occultando* or *occludendo* from shutting or hiding, because they are hid under the Eye-lids; they are the Instruments of Sight made of Humors, Membranes, Muscles, Vessels, and other Parts.

*Their Situation.* They are *seated* in an eminent place like Watch-men, in boney Sockets covered with the Periostium for better Safeguards sake.

*Their Number.* They are in *Number* two, for the perfection of Sight, and that one being defective, the other may supply its place and office. Howbeit both Eyes see but one Object, at one and the same time, and not a double one, whether because the knowing and judging Faculty is one, as *Aquapendent* conceives, or because the Axle-tree of the two visual Pyramides, do pass along upon the same Surface of a plane, as *Galen* expounds the matter; or because of the exact similitude they have received from particular things from whence they came, the internal sense judging only one and the same species, as *Aquilonius* does philosophize. They are in Mankind very little distant one from another, both for the Nobility and perfection of their Action, and the Reception of visible species.

*Their Shape.* They are *round*; but a little longish, like bulbous Roots whereupon

Two *Angles* or *Corners* are made, at the Socket of the Eyes, which are termed *Canthi*; the *inner* and greater at the Nose, the *outer* and lesser at the Temples.

In

*Its Parts.* In and about the Eye, there are sundry parts, some without the Eye, for safeguard or commodities sake, as the *Eye-lids* with their *Hair* and the *Eye-brows*, also Caruncles in the Corners of the Eyes; other parts there are which constitute the Eye it self, and they are *Fat*, *Muscles*, *Membranes* and *Humors*.

*The Eye-lids.* *Palpebræ* the *Eye-lids* are parts which cover and shut the Eye, which cleanse and purifie the Cornea Tunica, and likewise by their overshadowing render the Picture in the *Retina* more illustrious, according to the opinion of *Averrhoes*, *Varolius*. *Plempius*.

The are *made up* of the Skin, the Membrana carnosa, Muscles, a Coat, the Tarsi and Hairs: and therefore their substance is soft.

*Whether the lower Eye-lid be moved?* The *Eye-lid*, is either the *lower* which if we believe *Galen*, is of it self immovable, save in some birds. Yet *Bauhin* and *Aqua-pendent* do aver that they are really moved, and *Fallopius* proves it by the example of a Sea-Calf, and any one may prove the same in a Looking-glass, wherein he may see his lower Eye-lid meet the upper. But either this motion is obscure or we must say with *Vesalius* and *Sylvius* that the upper part of the circular Muscle doth lift up the upper part of the Eye-lid, and that the lower part is drawn down, by the other part of the Muscle, which notwithstanding is not true, because the straight Muscle lift up; or we must say with *Piccolhomineus* that they follow the motion of the Cheeks; or finally, the Orbicular Muscles only moves the upper Eye-lid, and doth but embrace the lower, and knit it is a coupler. The other is the *upper*, which is moved and that most swiftly. so that we compare a quick motion to the twinkling of the Eye.

*The Muscles of the Eye-lids.* Now they are moved upwards, that is to say are opened and lifted up by the *right Muscle* which is less then the other. It arises about the Optick Nerve, and ends with a Tendon into the Extremities of the Eye-lid. They are moved downwards, that is

## The Explication of the FIGURES.

This TABLE represents the Muscles of the Eye in their natural Situation, and the Muscle of the Eye-lid by it self.

### FIG. I.

AAAA. *The hollow part of the Skul cut off.*
BB. *The inner and whitelsh portion of the Brain dissected.*
CC. *The Brainlet or Cerebellum*
D. *The meeting and union of the Optick Nerves.*
EE. *The parting of the said Nerves going to each Eye.*
F. *The Caruncula Lachrymalis drawn out of its place.*
GG. *The first Muscle of the Eye called* Attollens.
H. *In the right Eye, shews the second Eye-muscle, or the Musculus deprimens.*
II. *In both Eyes shews the Musculi recti interni or Adducentes.*
KK. *In each Eye shews the recti externi or Abducentes.*
L. *The Musculus quintus, or obliquus externus, is shewed in the right Eye.*
MM. *The sixt Muscle or the obliquus, internus, whose Tendon passes through the Pully,* N.
O. *Shews the optick Nerve in the right Eye.*
P. *The Cornea Tunica, in the midst whereof is the Pupilla.*

### FIG. II.

A. *The optick Nerve.*
B. *The Nerves which moves the Eye.*
C. *The Trochlearis Musculus, whose Tendon,* E. *goes through the Pulley,* D.
F.G. *The Musculi recti, internal and external.*
H. *The Muscle proper to the upper Eye-lid, contained within the Socket of the Eye.*
III. *The Eye-lids cut out off.*
KK. *The Cilia, that is the Ends of the Eye-lids adorned with Hair.*

## The VII. TABLE.


page 144

to say are shut and covered, by a certain Orbicular or Circular Muscle, which is every way half a Fingures breadth, arising from the Root of the Nose, which afterwards runs back with circular Fibres, under the lower Eye-lid, through the outward corner, and ends above the upper Eye-lid, at the same place of the inner corner. *Spigelius* and others do divide it into the upper and lower Muscle, because each hath a different Nerve coming from divers places, and they observed that in the *Convulsio canina* so called, somtime the lower Eye-lid was stif, the upper being moveable. But no division of this Muscle can be discerned by the sharpest Eye-sight, the Fibres being every where continued, though the insertion of the Nerves be different as it is in some other Muscles, of the Nose &c.

*The Membranes.* The *Membrana carnosa* is thin in this place, together with the Muscles, like another simple thin Membrane; and therefore *Aristotle* said that the Skin of the Eye-lid was without flesh, and being cut off, like the Fore-skin, it grows not again.

They are cloathed with an inner Coat springing from the Pericranium, exceeding thin and soft, least they should hurt the Eyes, which they touch.

The *Extremities* of the Eye-lids are hard and Gristley; but soft like smal Gristles, and Semicircular, the Greeks term them *Tarsous*, the Latins CILIA whereon the Hairs are fastned (which some term *Cilia*) being straight because situate in an hard place, keeping all waies in a manner the same greatness hindering smal and light matters from falling into the Eye, and serving to direct the sight which *Galen* proves from such as have them fallen or pulled off, who can hardly discerne things afar off, especially if they be of a dark colour, which *Montaltus* doth prove by the example of a youth at *Lisbon*.

*The Cilia, what?*

*The use of the Eye-brow.* The SUPERCILIA or Eye-brows, are Hairs growing at the bottom of the Forehead, above the Eyes, intercepting such things, as fall from the Head that they may not light into the Eyes.

CARUNCULA a smal portion of flesh, is placed at each great corner of the Eye, containing Humor to moisten the Eye; and it is placed over an hole bored in the Nose-bone, which is called *Punctum lachrymale* (distinct from these two holes in the edge of the Eye-lids, which *Galen* call *Tremata*, and are most visible in living bodies, especially of such as are inclined to weeping) least we should continually weep. But in an Oxe there is moreover a moveable Membrane, which can shut the Eye, though the Eye-lid be open, by help whereof Brutes wink and cover their Eyes, when they fear any thing should fall into or hit them.

*Punctum lachrymale*

*The use of fat in the Eye.* In the spaces between the muscles and sundry Vessels, there is fat, which heats, moistens, and so helps the motion of the Eye, and makes it round and even.

*The Eye muscles.* The MUSCLES of Mens Eyes are *six*. Because they have so many distinct motions: four straight and two circular: all are *seated* within the Cavity of the Skul, and accompany the optick Nerve. All their Tendons being joyned together at the *tunica Cornea*, under the *Adnata*, do make that Coat which *Columbus* call *Tunica innominata*, the *Nameless coat*, as if it had not been known to the ancients, whereas *Galen* hath made mention thereof, in his tenth Book *de Usu partium* Chap. 2. & 8. though it be not properly a Coat, but only divers Tendons of Muscles, nor doth it compass the whole Eye. Yet by some it is called *Tunica Tendinosa* or *Tendinea*, the Tendinous Coat.

*Columbus his Error.*

*The first Muscle of the Eye.* The *first Muscle* being the upper and thicker is called *Attollens* the *lifter up* or Superbus, the proud Muscle.

*The second* opposite to the other, being the smaller in the lower part, is termed *Deprimens* the depresser, and *Musculus humilis* the lowly Muscle, because it draws the Eye downwards towards the Cheek-balls.

*The second.*

*The third.* The *third* placed in the greater Angle is called *Adducens*, the *drawer to*, and *Bibitorius* the drinking Muscle, moving the Eye inwards towards the Nose.

*The fourth.* The fourth is called *Abducens* the drawer from, drawing the Eye towards the side of the Face to the smal cornerward; tis also termed *Indignatorius* the Muscle of indgnation.

All these four Muscles have the same beginning, the same progress and end: for the beginning of them all is acute, near the hole where the optick Nerve enters into the Socket of the Eye, from the Membrane wherof they do arise: they have all a fleshy and round belly: their end is a very smal Tendon, as was said, at the Cornea.

By these four acting together the Eye is drawn inwards, and is kept from stirring, which holding is by Physitians called *Motus tonicus*.

*The fift.* The *fift* is lean, round, short, *oblique*, seated between the Eyes and the Tendons of the second and third Muscle, and ascending by the outer corner of the Eye, to the upper part of the Eye, is inserted into the *Cornea tunica* by the Region of the Iris. It whirles about the Eye obliquely downwards to the external Angle, or corner.

*The sixt or pulley Muscle.* The *sixt* being the smallest of all, and having the longest Tendon, *wheels the Eye about* unto the inner Corner. For arising from a common beginning with the first four, it is carried right out to the inner Corner; there it passes through the Pulley, and ascends in a right Angle to that place where the fift was inserted. Tis called *Trochlea Musculus* the Pully-muscle, because it wheeled about as it were through a Pulley which Pulley is a Gristle in the Eye sticking out, first observed by *Fallopius*, though *Riolanus* do also attribute the Invention thereof to *Rondeletius* who lived at the same time with him. Tis situate at the upper Jaw-bone, by the inner corner of the Eye, and therefore in the Cure of *Fistula lachrymalis*, the Surgeons ought to have a great care, least they wrong this Pully,

These two last are termed *Amatorij*, love Muscles, and Circumactores, rowling Muscles the upper and lower. *For by the help of these Muscles lovers cast Sheeps-Eyes one at another.*

*A seventh Muscle in Brutes.* There is yet a *seventh* Muscle in Brutes, which may be divided into two, three, or four.

This is a short Muscle, compassing the optick Nerve, fat coming between, and being fleshy it is inserted into an hard Coat.

Its *Use* is; to hold up the Eyes of Brutes which look down towards the Ground, and to enwrap the soft optick Nerve.

An *eigth* membranous Muscle may be added, wherewith Brutes do wink.

Some Animals have no Muſcles. *Scaliger* proved it by Diſſection in Cats, yet *Caſſerius* pictures out the Muſcle of a Cats Eye. A *Chameleon* indeed hath no Muſcles, and yet moves his Eyes every way, and either of them backwards, and that by a wrinkled membrane furniſht with Fibres, as *Panarolus* does aver.

*Veſſels of the Eye.* *Veſſels* are ſent to the Eye, a *Vein* from the Jugulars, an *Artery* from the Caroticks, diſſeminated through the Muſcles, Fat, and Membrane.

*The Nerves.* The Eyes have the two firſt pare of Nerves, as they are commonly reckoned: The firſt is the *Optick* or *ſeeing* pare being thick and porous, carrying from the Brain the Faculty of ſeeing with the Spirit, or carrying the viſible Repreſentations of things to the Brain. It is inſerted behind, into the Centre of the Tunica cornea, to which from the hard Tunicle or external Membrane it communicates a Coat, and paſſes more inward to the Centre of the Retina, into which its marrowy ſubſtance is ſpred abroad; and ſomtimes a portion of the vitrea tunica, ſticks to the inner part of the Marrow. In Brutes it is inſerted obliquely, and not into the Centre of the cornea tunica, but into the ſide. The ſecond is the *Moving pare*, which goes into the Membranes, and ſends a little Branch into every muſcle. But touching theſe Nerves I ſhal diſcourſe more largely in my Manual of the *Nerves*.

*The Membranes of the Eyes but three.* The *Membranes* beſides the external and the conjunctive (which is common) are but *three* and the *Humors three*. And as in a Nerve, there is a threefold ſubſtance which enters the Eye: ſo theſe three ſubſtances do make the three Coats of the Eye. For the *firſt* Coat ariſes from the dura Mater; the ſecond from the pia Mater; the third from the marrowy ſubſtance in the Brain.

*Adnata Tunica.* The Tunica *adnata alba* or *conjunctiva* is ſmooth and thin, ariſing from the Pericraneum. Some will have it ariſe from the Perioſteum, and end at the Circle of the Itis, after it hath communicated a Coat to the Eye-lid. It is the outmoſt Coat of all, next the bone. *Hippocrates* calls it the White of the Eye.

*Its Uſe.* It faſtens the Eye to the Socket and inner Bones like a Ligament.
It is of exquiſite Senſe.

*The Seat of the Opthalmia or Bleareyedneſs.* It is ſprinkled about with very many little Veins and Arteries, not appearing ſave when there is an Afflux of Humors, for then they ſwell and are very red as in the Opthalmia or Bleareyed ſoreneſs, which Diſeaſe is ſeated in the Part.

*1. Tunicle of the Eye.* This Adnata being removed, the firſt that offers it ſelf, is the *Sclirotica* or *dura* ſo called, which ariſes from the dura Mater, and it is thick, ſtretched, equal,

*Cornea.* and dark on the back part. The forepart of this they call tunica *Cornea*, becauſe it is poliſhed and tranſparent like an horn: for it may be ſcaled into four plates, over which the Epidermis is placed, and involves the whol forepart of the Eye. It is next the ſclirotica or dura, firmly cleaving in the hinder part of the *Choroides*, yet joyned with the Chryſtalline in the middle, that it may ſeparate the watry and glaſſie Humors.

*2. Tunicle of the Eye.* The ſecond is called *Choroides*, becauſe it is like the Chorion, and Veſſels are ſprinkled up and down. It ariſes from pia Mater, being from the firſt Original blackiſh, eſpecially within, that the Idea's received in a dark place, might be the more illuſtrious. In Brutes it is of ſeveral Colours, ſomtimes watchet, &c. Under the tranſparent Cornea it is in men ſomtimes skie-colour'd, ſomtimes blew, or grey, which Colours are ſeen through the Cornea. This in its forepart is termed *Uvea*, by reaſon it is of the colour of a Grape, in which part it is thick and doubled: it is moveable and according to the diverſity of the Object or Light, it is contracted and dilated, as we may very well diſcern in Cats. This forepart is alſo perforated in the middle, to let in the Species or Repreſentations of viſible Objects, where

*The Pupilla.* The *Pupilla* or ſight of the Eye is formed, which in Mankind is round: in ſome Brutes of an oblong ſhape, or long and round. *Riolanus* hath obſerved the compaſs of this hole or the Crown thereof, being drawn with the point of a Penknife, to have been cut off orbicularly, which may better be ſeen in an Ox eye boyled, which makes him think this Circumference to be a diſtinct Membrane from the Uvea, ſince it hath peculiar fibres. But this is confuted by *Plempius*, and becauſe the Verge of the uvea tunica hath divers colours, hence ariſes

*Iris.* The *Iris* or Circle, which *Galen*, *Caſſerius*, *Riolanus* reckon to be ſixfold, and *Plempius* but threefold: a double narrow one at the White of the Eye, a third at the Sight true and larger, illuſtrated with a conſtant colour. This Circle is ſeen variouſly coloured, and where it makes the Iris, it is ſomtimes skie-coloured, otherwhiles fierie, grey, black, &c.

*Ligamentum ciliare.* From the Circumference of the Uvea, where its duplicated Membrane bends it ſelf back to the Chryſtalline, there ariſes a Ligament or *Interſtitium ciliare* ſo called, which are certain then filaments produced out of the Uvea repreſenting the black Lines of the Eye-lids, like Hairs, and they compaſs the Chryſtalline humor, which by help of theſe is knit to the neighboring parts: it is moved with the Uvea being moveable. *Carteſius* will have its uſe to be to move the Chryſtalline, that the Situation thereof may be changed, according to the various neceſſity of ſight.

*The third Coat.* The *third* is the *Retina* or *Amphibleſtroides* as the Greeks call it, that is the Net-faſhion'd Coat, made of the inner ſubſtance of the Brain or of ſome Nerve ſpred out as it were, the pia Mater withal accompanying in the ſame, if we believe *Galen* and *Caſſerius*. Therefore this ſoft, and as it were ſnotty matter may be gathered together, compaſſing the vitreous Humor and its vitreous Coat like a Net. It is an exceeding thin coat, but more dark then lightſom, mixt with an obſcure Redneſs, becauſe the Species received, are here ſtopped and repreſented; yet is it a little ſnotty, with which Snot is ſomtimes white, for the illuſtration of the Species received. In my Judgment, it is the ſlimineſs of the marrowy Subſtance.

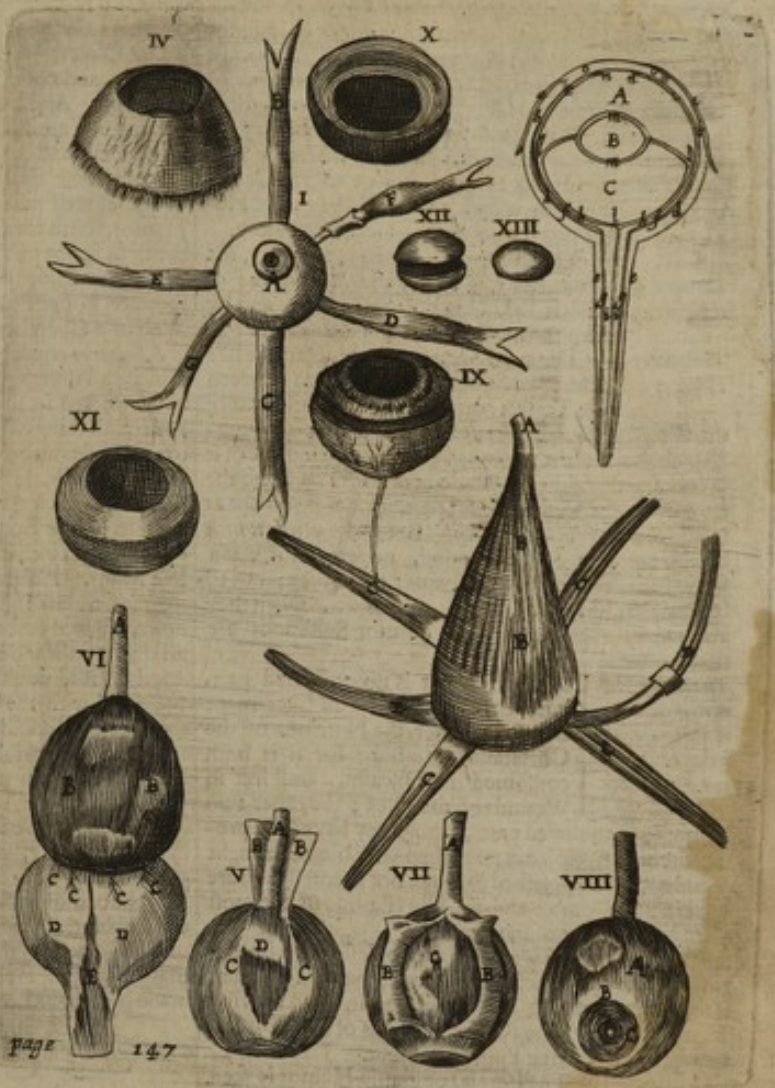
Its *Figure* is ſemicircular, like a Mitre, and its ſides are near the Chryſtalline, for the diſtinct Repreſentation of the Species.

*Platerus* ſaies it hath no Veſſels; contrary to *Galen*, *Caſſerius*, *Sylvius* and others, and Experience it ſelf: for the hinder part of the Choroides and the ſclirotica tunica, have Veſſels manifeſtly apparent in this Coat, and there they ought to be, that it may be nouriſhed with its contents. This compaſſing yet farther becomes the *Aranea* or Chryſtalloides, the proper Tunicle of the Chryſtalline Humor, cloathing the fore and hinder part thereof, white, moſt thin and tranſparent, ſo that it is cal'd the *Looking-glaſs*.

*Aranea.*

I a ld

## The VIII. TABLE.




## The Explication of the FIGURE.

The TABLE shews the Muscles of the Eye, the Tunicles and the Humors.

FIG. I.

A. *The horney tunicle with the Pupilla or sight to be seen through it.*
B. *The right Muscle that lifteth up the* Eye.
C. *The internal right Muscle or the Muscle drawing to, or shutting.*
D. *The right internal Muscle or the drawing from, or opening.*
E. *The right external or opening Muscle.*
F. *The internal crooked Muscle called* Trochlearis.
G. *The external oblique Muscle below.*

FIG. II. Shews the Muscles in a Sheeps Eye.

A. *The Optick Nerves.*
BB. *The seventh Muscle that is about the Optick Nerve proper to Beasts.*
CCCC. *The straight Muscles.*
D. *The trochlear Muscle.*
E. *The lowest oblique Muscle.*

FIG. III.

*aa. The adnata tunicle in its place.*
*bb. The Cornea or horney tunicle.*
*cc. The uvea tunicle.*
*dd. The tunicle sclerotis.*
*ee. The hard Membrane of the Optick Nerve.*
*ff. The tunicle Choroides.*
*gg. The thin Membrane of the Optick Nerve.*
*hh. The Net-tunicle called Retina*
*ii. The marrowy Substance of the Optick Nerve.*
*l. The inward Marrow affixed to the Vitrea.*
*mm. The Chrystal tunicle.*
*m. The Pupilla.*
*oo. The shineing part of the Cornea.*
A. *The watry Humor.*
B. *The Chrystalline Humor.*
C. *The glassie Humor.*

FIG. IV. The adnata Tunicle separated from its place, with many Veins and Arteries.

FIG. V.

A. *The Nerve Optick taken from the dura Mater.*
BB. *The dura Mater going about the Optick Nerve.*
CC *The Sclerotis opened, through which the* Uvea *is seen.*

FIG. VI.

A. *The Optick Nerve covered only with the pia Mater.*
BB. *The Choroides taken from the Sclerotis.*
CCCC. *The Veins of the Sclerotis.*
DD *The Sclerotis turned inside out.*
EE. *The Rupture of the Sclerotis.*

FIG. VII.

A. *The Nerve Optick.*
BB. *The* Uvea *unfolded and separated in part from the Retina.*
CC. *Part of the Retina laid bare from the* Uvea, *made too obscure.*

FIG. VIII.

A. *The Retina laid bare.*
BB. *The White of the Eye or tunica conjunctiva.*
C. *The Cornea.*
D. *The Pupilla.*

FIG. IX.

*The glassie tunicles with the Hairs of the Eye-lids.*

FIG. X.

*The watry Humor thickned in the middle of which there is a hollow to receive the forepart of the Chrystalline.*

FIG. XI.

*The glassie Humor with the Christalline in the middle.*

FIG. XII.

*The Chrystalline tunicle.*

FIG. XIII.

*The Chrystalline Humor in its proportion.*

I add

*Vitrea.* I add the *tunica Vitrea*, which covers the vitreous or glaſſie Humor on all ſides, that it run not about, and ſeparates it from the Chryſtalline Humor. It is of exceeding ſmoothneſs and thinneſs, ſhed about the Humor like a thin Skin, not only in the convex part of the ſaid Humor, but alſo in its concave part, where it receives the Chryſtalline, where indeed it cleaves cloſe to the Chryſtalline Coat, but is different from it. It is furniſhed with many, but very little Veins, and the inner portion of the marrowy Subſtance of the Optick Nerve, cleaves to the Centre thereof. The form is ſuch as that of the glaſſie Humor, large and convex behind, and concave before.

*Humors of the Eyes.* The Humors of the Eyes are three, the *watry*, the *glaſſie*, and the *Chryſtalline*: of which the laſt is the moſt noble, and by ſome termed the Soul and *Centre of the eyes.*

*The watry Humor.* The *watry* becauſe thin and fluxive like water, occupies the whole ſpace between the Tunica cornea, and the fore part of the Chryſtalline. *Riolanus* alſo proves that it is poured round about the vitreous Humor, and that all of it is contained within the whole *uvea tunica*; becauſe the Eye being cut in the hinder part, water flows out as much as if it were cut before. But if the *vitrea tunica* be alſo cut with a large Wound, no wonder if water flow from thence, which *Plempius* alſo notes; not to ſay how eaſily the inner parts are broken, when they are rudely fingred. In the Humor Suffuſions are made.

*The watry Humor is no animated part, the other Humors are.* This Humor is no animated part, but ſeems only to be an Excrement remaining after the Nutrition of the Chryſtalline Humor: for it is both conſumed in Diſeaſes, and loſt in Wounds of the Eyes; the other two humors are animated parts, ſeeing they have their proper circumſcription, are nouriſhed with blood brought Veinlets, when periſhed they are not reſtored, and are bred in the Womb: and the Chryſtalline of the moſt pure lightful part of the Seed.

The *Uſe of the watry* Humor is to defend the bordering parts from drineſs: others add, that as a medium it ſerves to break the brightneſs continually flowing in, and to greaten the Repreſentations of the Objects, being ſtraitned in the Pupilla or Sight.

*The vitreous or glaſſie humor.* The *Vitreous* or glaſſie Humor is ſeen behind, like molten Glaſs, ſofter then the Chryſtalline, then which it is nevertheleſs five times bigger, and twice as big as the watry Humor. It is round in its hinder part, plane before, but being concave in the middle, it makes an hollowneſs wherein the Chryſtalline Humor is placed as in a Pillow. Its *Uſe* is not barely to nouriſh the Chryſtalline, as *Galen* conceived, but to prepare and communicate Nouriſhment thereto. According to *Aquapendent* from whom *Riolanus* had the notion, that the light carried beyond the chryſtalline may not return defiled by dark and other coloured tinctures, and ſo diſturb the Sight. *Platerus* more rightly, that the ſplendid vitreous Humor might fill up a neceſſary ſpace between the Chryſtalline and the Retina, which *others* explain more clearly, that the glaſſie Humor may give a paſſage to the Species to the Retina, and may refract them from Perpendiculars.

*The Chryſtalline.* The *Chryſtalline* (which ſome call the icie becauſe of its firmneſs) is ſo called from its exceeding bright and ſhineing colour, which it hath, being free from all other colours, that it may receive all colours, it is ſhineing indifferently hard, round behind, with ſome longneſs, flat on the foreſide: howbeit according to the ſundry affections of the Eye, this form is variouſly changed.

Its *Uſe* is, to be the chief Medium of ſight, as a glaſs held before the hole, receives the external ſpecies into a dark Cloſet, even ſo the Chryſtalline Humor, both receives and collects the Species or Repreſentations of things. And becauſe the humor is tranſparent, the Species are not ſtopped therein, nor colours perceived, which moſt Anatomiſts have beleived after *Galen*; for otherwiſe there were no reaſon why they ſhould not be as well perceived in the Cornea, and vitreous Humor, both tranſparent and animated. Therefore the ſight is not primarily made in this Humor, but the Species are diſcerned in the *retina tunica*, becauſe there they are ſtopped by a dark Body, as we ſeen on the Wall of a Chamber, when the Windows are ſhut.

*Scheinerus* conceives, that the Species which did repreſent all things the bottom upwards, are corrected and refracted in the Chryſtalline Humor, ſo as to repreſent all things in their due poſture. But according to the Obſervation of *Joh. Walæus*, *Fr. Sylvius*, and *Fr. Vander Schagen*, the Choroides, the Sclirotica, and Retina tunica, being taken away from behind, all things are ſeen by the Eye, and repreſented with the bottom upwards, very ſmall in an Oxes Eye, ſomwhat greater in a Mans. *Plempius* proves the ſame by an Experiment of a glaſs Inſtrument filled with the three Humors, placed before the hole of the Window, where all things appear on the Wall with the wrong ſide upwards. And doubtleſs the Species muſt needs be repreſented with the bottom upwards in the Retina, otherwiſe we ſhould ſee all things the wrong end upwards, and not right, which *Keplerus* hereby demonſtrates, becauſe in paſſion the Patients muſt be juſt oppoſite againſt the Agents.

*Others* will have it, that our Judgment corrects the depraved Figure, which diſcerns the juſt Magnitude of things by very ſmall Species received. *Others* alledg the common Senſe, which ſeeing the inverted ſpecies, behind and above the Cavity of the Retina, apprehends them in their true poſture. Finally *others* ſay that a true Judgment is therefore made, becauſe it is made by a right Line.

# Chap. IX.
## *Concerning the Ears.*

THe Organ of Hearing, viz. the Ears are either external or internal.

The *external* which are by ſome termed *Auriculæ* the Earlets, are in Mankind of a ſemicircular Figure, convex without, concave within.

The outer Ear is *divided* into the upper and lower part.

*Names of the parts of the outer Ear.* The upper is broader, and by ſome called *Pinna*, by others *Ala*. The lower is ſoft and hanging down, termed *Fibra*, *Auricula infima*, *Lobus*.

The outer Circumference of the Ear is called *Helix*, alſo *Capreolus*, becauſe of its wreathed formed. The inner part oppoſite to the former, is termed *Scapha* or *Anthelix*. In the middle hereof is a large Cavity, the principal part of the external Ear, called *Concha*. But the Cavity near the *Meatus auditorius* or Hearing-paſſage, where Ear-wax is collected, is cal'd *Alveariſum*. Towards the Temples there grows a certain eminency like a covering, which either receives or hinders

things

things that would go into the Eare, and is termed *Hircus* the Goat, because Hairs grow thereon.

The Parts whereof the external Ear is compoſed, are either common, as the Skarf-Skin, the Skin, a Nervous Membrane, Fleſh, and a little Fat in the Lobe: Or Proper, as Muſcles, Veſſels, and a Griſtle.

*Its Skin.* The *Skin* is exceeding thin, cleaving to a little Fleſh with a firm Griſtle; and as in the Palms of the Hands a Nervous Membrane is firmly faſten'd thereto; by the ſenſe whereof it happens that cold water ſprinkled on the Lap or Lobe of the Ear doth cool the whole Body. In the Lobe it is ſo mingled with Fleſh, that it becomes thereby fattiſh, fleſhy and ſpungy: Hence the Lobe is ſoft and flexible, ſo that it may be bored with no great trouble, and therefore ſome hang Jewels and Ear-rings thereon.

*It Veſſels.* As to *Veſſels*: it hath Veins from the Jugulars.

*Arteries* from the Carotides.

Little *Nerves*, two from behind, and two from the ſides, ariſing from the ſecond pair termed *Cervicale*.

*The Muſcles.* *Muſcles* rightly conſpicuous in ſuch as move their Ears, are common or proper. which it was my luck once to ſee, and ſuch *Juſtinian* muſt have had, whoſe Ears could move as *Procopius* deſcribes him. But in moſt people the Ears are unmoveable, both becauſe of the ſmalneſs of the Muſcles, and becauſe there was little need of their motion, becauſe a Man can do that with his Hands which Beaſts do with their Ears, wherewith they drive away flies.

*Why few move their Ears?*

*The uſe of the firſt*

The *firſt* Muſcle is *common* to the Ear and each Lip; and it is a part of the firſt Muſcle which moves the Cheeks, and the Skin of the Face, and it is termed *Quadratus*, the *ſquare Muſcle*, ſufficiently thin and broad. It is implanted into the Root of the Ear under the Lobe, that it may draw the Ear to one ſide downwards.

*The uſe of the ſecond Muſcle.* The *ſecond* is *proper* and ſeated more foreward, leaning upon the temporal Muſcle, from the end of the Muſcle of the Forehead (from which it differs by the carriage of the Fibres) ariſing ſomtimes with a round, otherwhiles with a corner'd beginning, and being Tendinous, it is implanted into the upper part of the Ear, where it is narrower, that it may move the Ear upwards and forewards.

*The uſe of the third Muſcle.* The *third* and hinder more ariſes above the *Proceſſus mammillaris*, from the hind-part of the Head and its Muſcle, with a narrow beginning; afterward growing broader and divided as it were into three parts, it goes hindlongs to the Ear, that it may draw it, ſomwhat backwards and upwards.

*The uſe of the fourth,* The *fourth* ariſing from the *Proceſſus mammillaris*, being broad, grows narrower by little and little, till at laſt it ends in a Tendon. This Muſcle is rather threefold, becauſe it hath three Inſertions, yet all ſpring confuſed from one place. Some of theſe are ſomtimes wanting, otherwhiles they are all found; ſomtimes there are more, nature variouſly ſporting her ſelf in the Muſcles of the Ear.

*The Ear Griſtle.* The Ears *Griſtle*, is a ſubſtance tied to the *Os petroſum*, by a ſtrong Ligament ſpringing from the Pericranium.

Certain *Kernels* there are outwardly about the Ears, thick and large, which are termed *Parotides*, though this word do alſo ſignifie the ſwellings of the ſaid Kernels. *The Kernels call'd* Parotides.

They are not only behind the Ears, as is commonly imagined, but on both ſides and under the Ear, but not above. *Their Situation.*

Theſe *Kernels* by the Ears are called the *Emunctories* of the *Brain*, becauſe they receive the Excrements thereof.

There are alſo many other Kernels in the whole ſpace which is under the lower Jaw, in which many Diſeaſes are bred, and ſwellings called *Scrophulæ* in ſome Creatures, as wild Swine. The common people count theſe Kernels a dainty diſh and cal them Sweetbreads. *The ſeat of Kings-Evil ſwellings.*

Their *Uſe* is, to moiſten the parts, and to aſſiſt in the diviſions of the Veſſels.

*The Uſe of the External Ear* is,

I. For Ornament, and therefore the Engliſh, Dutch and other Nations puniſh Male-factors by cutting of their Ears.

II. To ſafeguard the Brain, that it may not be hurt by the Air ſuddenly ruſhing in.

III. To be the Organ of Hearing, not principal, but aſſiſtant. The true Organ lies within, as doth that of the ſwelling. And as the Noſe being cut off a Man can ſmel though imperfectly; ſo if the Ears be quite cut off cloſe to a Mans Head, he can Hear, but dully, confuſedly, with a murmering noiſe, ſo that Articulate words will ſeem as the noiſe of Water-ſtreams, or the ſcreekings of Graſs-hoppers, as they know who have loſt their Ears. Yea, and the Hearing of that Ear which is not cut off, is dammaged, unleſs the cut Ear be ſtopped. *The External Organ of Hearing.*

The *Uſe* therefore *of the External Ear*, is more readily and rightly to receive ſounds; and to gather them when they are ſcattered in the Air into the Cavity of the Ear, that they may come unto the Drum without violence, being firſt moderated and allayed in the hollow and winding paſſages. Hence, leaſt ſounds which are diven towards the Ears, ſhould ſlip beſide, Beaſts turn their Ears this way and that way to ſounds. Hence alſo the Emperor *Hadrianus*; that he might hear more diſtinctly, would hold the hollow of his Hand before his Ears, which alſo deaf perſons frequently practiſe. Hence ſome Scythians, whoſe earlets ar mortified and rotted of with cold, doth apply a Fiſh-ſhell to their Ears, that the Air being detained in the Cavity thereof, may be more eaſily received, that ſo thoy may hear the better. Hence, they hear moſt exactly, whoſe Ears ſtick furtheſt out from their Heads, and if our Ears were not too much preſſed down, what by long lying upon them, what by the binding of Nurſes, we ſhould hear better then we do.

The *Internal Ear* hath alſo ſundry parts contained in the *Os petroſum*, and beſides the parts and little cavernes of the Bones, there are: *The Drum*, two *Muſcles*, *the Veſſels* and *inſhed Air*. *The Internal Ear.*

In the auditory paſſage cloathed with Skin, through which ſounds are carryed, is found a Cholerick clammy humor, which the Ancients cal'd *Cerumen*, Ear-wax, being purged from the Brain: but Intrinſically it is obliquely placed before this hole or paſſage of Hearing.

There is a certain *Partition*, or little Orbicular Menbrane, compaſſed with a boney circle, which ſome call *Myrinx*, others *Sextum Membranum* and *Mediaſtinum*, others *Tympanum*, but ſome rightly *nympani Membranula*. For it is ſtretched before the internal Cavity containing the congenit Air, as the Parchment or Velam on a Drum Head. *Caſſerius* conceives that it ariſes from the Pericranium, but *Veſlingius* believe that it is an expanſion of the Periosteum, who hath alſo obſerved it to be double, and alſo frequently cruſted over by thickned Excrements.

*Tympanum.*

It is *exceeding dry*, that it may ſound the better, for dry bodies are fitteſt for ſound.

It is *Tranſparent* thin and ſubtile, that the ſounds may more eaſily paſs through to the implanted Air: For thoſe that have it thick from their birth, have an incurable Deafneſs, as thoſe alſo who have a thick Coat growing over the ſame without, the Cure whereof is nevertheleſs taught by *Paulus*; and if this happen from the birth, ſuch perſons continue for the moſt part Dumb, becauſe they can neither conceive in their mind nor utter with their Tongue ſuch words as they have never hard. But if a Snotty matter cleave thereto within, or a thick Humor flow thereto, a thickneſs of Hearing or a Deafneſs incurbale is thereby cauſed. If a thin Humor flow thereto, there ariſe tinklings and noiſes in the Ears.

*A cauſe of Deafneſs.*

*A Cauſe of thickneſs of Hearing.*

Finally it is Nervous, of ſo exquiſite a Senſe that, it can neither bear the putting in of a Probe, nor ſharp Humors; yet is it ſtrong ſo as to endure againſt external Injuries; for being hurt or corroded it cauſes thickneſs of Hearing or Deafneſs, as they find by experience, who have it hurt by the noiſe of great Guns or Bells, or in whom it is broken by ſwimming. For the ſafeguard therefore hereof, there are three little Bones added within (of which, the Hammer ſticks faſt to the Drum, and is ſeen through the ſame) and two Muſcles.

The *Uſe* thereof is, to ſhut the paſſage of hearing, and to ſeparate the innate Air from that which is external, and to keep it within. Alſo to ſave it from Duſt, Water, creeping things, &c.

Within the Membrane of the Tympanum, thereis an *Internal Cavity* in the Bone, containing a certain *Air*, which ſome term the inbred, *Congenit* and comp lanted Air, becauſe it is placed in the Ears at the firſt formation, being pure, ſubtile and immoveable: which ſome count the internal Medium of Hearing, others the Organ it ſelf of that Senſe.

*The Cavity of the Drum.*

There are two *Muſcles* of the inner Ear according to Anatomiſts.

They call the firſt the *Internal*, ſeated in the *Os petreum*, with a double Tendon: The one being fixed to the higher proceſs of the Hammer, the other to its Neck.

*Muſcles of the inner Ear.*

Its *Uſe* is to draw the Head of the Hammer obliquely inwards, and to carry it inwards from the Anvil, and the proceſs of the Hammer being bowed back, to drive the little Membrane inwards.

The *ſecond is external*, found out by *Caſſerius*, though *Aquapendent* doth likewiſe attribute to himſelf the Invention thereof; it is exceeding ſmal, fleſhy, and conſiſting in the upper Region of the Auditory paſſage, with its Tendon implanted into the Centre of the Membrane, there where the Hammer is inwardly joyned to the ſaid Membrane. So that *Pariſanus* labours in Vain by denying this Membrane in contradiction to *Caſſerius*.

Its *Uſe* is to draw the Membrane with the Hammer outwards.

A certain ſmal Griſtly paſſage is to be obſerved, which goes from the *Concha* of the Ear near the ſides of the *Pterygoideum* proceſs, to the Palate. *Fallopius* ſaies it is a conveighance of Water, *furniſhed with a ſmal Valve*, *Riolanus* in the mean while, an old Maſter of Anatomy, denying that there is any ſuch Valve to be found.

The *Uſe* hereof is, 1. To purge the inbred Air, for this way Excrements paſs from the Ear into the mouth, but, not back again, becauſe there is a Valve to hinder. And this is the Reaſon that Maſticatories are very helpful in Diſeaſes of the Ears.

*Why Maſticatories help in Diſeaſes of the Ears?*

II. To let in ſound in Deaf and ſtopped Ears.

*Varro* writes and *Pliny* with *Archelaus*, that Goats draw in Breath at their Ears, which *Ariſtotle* reports of *Alcmeon*. And ſuch as are ſomwhat thick of hearing, do perceive words more diſtinctly when they Gape, and when our Ears are ſtopped, we can hear our own Speech though weakly. Such as have the Venereal Diſeaſe, are hurt not only with cold Air, but with any other uneven noiſe, paſſing through their Mouth into their Ears, as *Tulpius* obſerves, who alſo hath obſerved that two perſons troubled with the *Orthopnœa*, were ſaved from choaking, by voiding their Breath out at their Ears, by means of this paſſage. Thoſe do abuſe this paſſage, who render the ſmoak of Tobacco which they take, through their Ears.

Finally, we meet with the *Nervous Auditories* or Hearing Nerve, which proceeds from the fift pair of the Brain, entring the Ear through the hole of *Os Petroſum*. It touches the *Cochlea* and the *Labyrinth* with a double branch that it may in both places perfect the Hearing. To which a Branch is added to move the Muſcles, proceeding from the fourth pair, and cleft in two.

## Chap. X. *Of the Noſe.*

ANother Organ of Senſe follows, *viz.* The *Noſe* the Inſtrument of ſmelling, given to Men and fourfooted Beaſt that bring forth living Creatures.

Now it is *divided*, as the Ear, into the *External* and *Internal* Noſe.

The *Internal* hath Bones and Nerves, with the Mammillary proceſſes, of which in *their place*.

*The Names of the parts of the Noſe.*

The *External* is Extrinſecally divided into the upper and lower part.

The *upper part* which is boney and immoveable, is termed the Back of the Noſe, and its Acuminated part, *Spina*. The lower part is Griſtley and moveable, the utmoſt end wherof is termed *Globulus* and *Orbiculus*, by the only feeling whereof *Michael Scotus* pretends to tel whether a Maiden have loſt her Virginity. The lateral or ſide parts are termed *Pterugia alæ*, *Pinnæ*; that is Wings or Pinnacles, that fleſhy part which ſticks out in the middle near the Lips, is called *Columna* the Pillar.

The Noſe is divided within, by a partition Wall, into two Holes or Cavities which they call *Nares* the Noſtrils:

Noſtrils: that one hole being ſtopped, we may draw in and paſs out the Air by the other. And when both are ſtopped, the Mouth ſupplies the Office of the Noſtrils. Now each hole is again *divided* about the middle of the Noſe *into two parts*: the one aſcends upwards, to the *Os Spongioſum*; the other goes above the Palate into the Throat and upper part of the Mouth. Hence drink ſomtimes comes out at the Noſtrils: and things put into the Noſtrils, the Noſe being ſhut, are wont to ſlip into the Mouth. Hence alſo the thicker Excrements alſo of the Brain, while they are carryed downward to the Noſtrils, may ſlide into the Mouth, or be brought thither by Hawking, and ſo purged out at the Mouth.

It is ſituate in an high place, *viz.* between the Eyes. 1. For comelyneſs Sake. 2. Becauſe all ſmels mount upwards.

The *Magnitude* varies, as alſo the *Figure*, for ſome have great Noſes, others little Noſes, ſome Hawke-noſes and Roman-noſes, and others ſaddle-noſes, &c. Touching which *Phyſiognomiſts* Diſcourſe.

*The parts of the Noſe.*

Its *Subſtance* conſiſts of the *Scarfe-Skin*, *Skin*, *Muſcles*, *Bones*, *Griſtles*, *Veſſels*, and *Tunicles*.

*The Skin.*

Its *Skin* is thin, and void of fat, that it may not grow too much; under the partion in the Colomme it is thick and Spungy; ſo that it is like a Griſtle and is compaſt with Hairs termed *Vibriſſæ*.

*Muſcles of the Noſe.*

There are eight Muſcles of the Noſe, eſpecially in large Noſed people, but they are ſmal becauſe the motion of the Noſe is little. *Four ſerve to widen the Noſe*, while the *Alæ* or Wings being drawn upwards, they open the holes of the Noſtrils. And there are *four more which ſtraiten the Noſe*.

The *two firſt widners* being fleſhy, do ariſe from the Cheek-bone, near the Muſcle of the Lips, which they make a third. They are inſerted partly into a part of the upper Lip, partly into the lower Wing. *Caſſerius* found them reſembling the leaves of Myrtle.

## The FIGURE Explained.

This TABLE repreſents the Muſcles of the Fore-head, Eye-lids, Noſe, Cheeks, Lips, lower Jaw and Ear-let.

*a.* *The Pericranium.*
*b.* *The Perioſteum.*
*c.* *The Hairy Skin or Scalpe.*
*d.* *The Skull made bare.*
*e.* *The temporal Muſcle.*
*f.* *The upper Muſcle of the Ear.*
*g.* *The Muſcle of the Hind-part of the Head, ſtretched out to the hinder Muſcles of the Ears.*
*h.* *The Muſcle of the Fore-head.*
*i.* *A frontal Appendix ſpred out upon the Back of the Noſe.*
*kkk.* *The orbicular Muſcle of the Eye.*
*l.* *The triangular Muſcle of the Noſtrils.*
*m.* *The common muſcle of the Lips, which lefts up.*
*n.* *The firſt proper muſcle of the upper Lip.*
*o.* *The ſecond proper Muſcle of the upper Lip.*
*p.* *The trumpeters Muſcle.*
*q.* *The chewing Muſcle.*
*r.* *The common Muſcle depreſſing the Lips.*
*ſ.* *The proper Muſcle of the lower Lip, caled Mentalis deprimens.*
*tt.* *The third common Orbicular Muſcle of the Lips.*
*u.* *The Circular Muſcle of the Noſe.*

## The IX. TABLE.


page 151

*xxx* *The part of the Earlet termed* Helix.
*y.* *The oppoſite Part cal'd* Anthelix.
*z.* *The part of the Ear-let cal'd* Tragus.
*A.* *The Antitragus.*
*v.* *The Lobe or lap of the Earlet.*

The *other two* which are commonly triangular, and like the Greek letter Δ on each ſide one, with a ſharp and fleſhy beginning, do grow from the Suture of the Forehead by the *Foramen lachrymale* or Tear-hole, and are implanted into the *Spina* or the *Pinnæ* of the Noſe. I have ſomtimes obſerved an Appendix thereof to have deſcended to the upper Lip, *viz.* in ſuch as cannot lift up their Noſe without their Lips. *Caſſerius* againſt the mind of all Anatomiſts, draws its original from the *Pinnæ* of the Noſe; but they are moveable.

The *two firſt Straitners*, which are little do ariſe fleſhy,

fleshy, about the Root of the Pinnæ, are carried along tranſverſly, and inſerted into the corners of the Alæ. *Caſſerius* did firſt of all obſerve a portion thereof and deſcribe it, which is not alwaies found; for more often the *circular* Sphincter involves the Pinnæ of the Noſe orbiculatly. The *Uſe* thereof is a little to ſhut the Noſtrils, depreſſing the Pinnæ.

The *remaining two* are exceeding firm and membranous, lying hid under the Coat of the Noſtrils, in the inner part. They ariſe from the Extremity of the Noſe-bone, and are implanted into the Pinnæ or Wings.

Beſides theſe Muſcles of the Noſe aforeſaid, I have found on the Noſe-back of a certain perſon, a *fleſhy Muſcle*, thin, ſtretched right out from the frontal muſcles, with a broad Baſis, and ending ſoon after, narrower about the outmoſt Griſtle of the Noſe.

*The Griſtles of the Noſe.*

*Griſtles* do make up the Subſtance of the lower part of the Noſe, and are five in number.

The *two uppermoſt* being broad ones, do ſtick unto the Bones of the Noſe, and the more they deſcend, the ſofter they grow, ſo that the end of the Noſe hath a ſubſtance, partly griſtly and partly ligamental.

The *third* being in the middle of the other two, makes the partition-wall between the two Noſtrils.

By theſe are placed the *other two*, of which the Pinnæ of the Noſe are conſtituted, and they are tied together by membranous Ligaments.

*Its Veſſels.*

As to *Veſſels*. It hath *Veins* from the Jugulars.

*Arteries* from the Carotides.

*Nerves* from the third pare, on each ſide one, which goes through the holes common to the Noſe and eyes, at the greater corner into the Coat of the Noſe, and the Muſcles, and the Palate.

*The Coat of the Noſtrils.*

The *Coat* which cloaths the Noſtrils is from the dura Mater, and common to the Mouth, Palate, Tongue, Larynx, Gullet and Stomach; but in the Noſtrils it is thinner and of exquiſite ſenſe;

*The cauſe of Sneezing.*

for being vexed it cauſes Sneezing: it is bred with many little holes which go into the *Os cribroſum*.

*Riolanus* informs us that within the Cavities of the Noſtrils, there are ſpungy parcels of fleſh to be ſeen, of a reddiſh colour, wherewith the ſpungy bones of the Noſe are filled, of which being ſwelled, the Diſeaſe in the Noſtrils, called *Polypus*, is bred, touching the pulling out and cure whereof, read *Tulpius*.

*The uſe of the Noſe.*

The *Uſe* of the outer Noſe is

1. That through it air may enter into the Brain for the needs of the Animal Spirits.

2. That by it air may enter into the Lungs, for the cooling of the Heart, and to breed vital Spirits.

3. That by the Noſtrils Odours may be carried to the Mammillary proceſſes, which lie concealed above the *Os cribroſum*. And therefore they whoſe Noſe is cut off at the Roots, cannot ſmell at all, or badly.

4. That the Excrements of the Brain may flow down there through, as by a Channel. Which is but a ſecondary uſe of the Noſe, becauſe *Jo. Walæus*, *Jo. Dom. Sala* my Maſters and my ſelf, have known ſome perſons that never voided any Excrements at their Noſe

5. It is alſo ſomtimes aſſiſtant to the Voice.

6. It adds an Ornament to the Face. It is ſtoried in the Chronicles of *England*, how a company of honeſt Maidens of that Country, in the time of the Daneiſh War, did cut off their own Noſes, that they might preſerve their Maidenheads from the violence of the Daneiſh Soldiers, by this deformity. This was the puniſhment of Adulterers in *Ægypt*, which alſo *Jehovah* threatens to the Inhabitants of *Hieruſalem*, by the Prophet *Ezekiel*. In our Hiſtoriographer *Saxo*, we read how *Hialto* deformed a Curtezan by cutting off her Noſe, when ſhe asked him who ſhould be her next Lover. And therefore becauſe it makes much for the Ornament of the Face, the *Chirurgia Curtorum* was invented, teaching how to ſupply a Noſe in the room of that which is cut off, of which ſee *Tagliacotius*.

## Chap. XI. *Of the Mouth, Cheeks and Lips.*

THE laſt Organ of Senſe remains, viz. the *Tongue*, the Organ of Taſting, which before I explain, I muſt propound the external parts about the Mouth, and the internal parts in the Mouth.

*The Names of the outward parts about the Mouth.*

The external parts about the mouth are ſundry. The *upper* part under the Eyes, between the Noſe and the Ears, by reaſon of its uſual Redneſs, and the unuſual by reaſon of bluſhing, is called *Pudoris ſedes* the *Seat of ſhamefaſtneſs*, *Malum* or *Pomum* the Apple, alſo *Circulus Faciei*, the Circle of the Face.

The *lower* and looſer part which may be blown up, as we ſee in Trumpeters, is termed *Bucca* the Cheek, the upper part of the Lip is called *Myſtax*. The Cavity imprinted therein and dividing the ſame, is called *Philtrum*, from its lovelineſs. Now the Lips are two, the upper and the lower, and the chink between both, is termed *Os* the Mouth. The outer parts of the Lips which hang over, are called *Prolabia*. The lower part under the lower Lip is called *Mentum* the Chin; the fleſhy part under the Chin is termed *Buccula*.

Now the Mouth conſiſts of parts, partly boney, as the *upper* and *lower Jaw* with the *teeth*; partly fleſhy, as the *Lips*, *Lip-muſcles*, *Cheek-muſcles*, and *lower Jaw-muſcles*.

The whole inner capacity of the Mouth is cloathed with a thick *Coat*, which goes alſo about the Gums and Lips, and is thought to be doubled when it conſtitutes the Uvula.

*The uſe of the Mouth.*

The *Uſes of the Mouth* are:

1. To receive in Meat and Drink, and to prepare the ſame, or begin Chyliſication the beginning, of which is performed in the Mouth.

2. To receive in and let out the Air.

3. To ſpeak and frame the Voice.

4. To give paſſage to the Excrements of the lungs, the Head and Stomach, by hawking, ſpitting, and vomiting.

*Two pare of Muſcles common to the Cheeks and Lips.*

*Two pare of Muſcles* there are, common to the Cheeks and Lips, on each ſide two Muſcles.

The *firſt* is that ſame broad and *ſquare* muſcle lying under the skin of the neck, which the Ancients did not diſtinguiſh from the Skin.

It ariſes about the Channel-bones, and the hinder-part of the Neck; and with oblique *Fibres* (which a Surgeon muſt diligently obſerve, leaſt he cut them freely and athwart, and ſo make the Cheeks to be pul-

led

ed away to one side,) it is implanted into the Chin, the Lips and Root of the Nose, and sometimes of the Ears: which parts also it moves to the part, and this is first cramped in the *Spasmus cynicus*.

*Spasmus cynicus.*

The *second* lies under this, which makes the Cheeks with its Bulk, and therefore is termed *Buccinator* the trumpeting Muscle, which is most conspicuous in Trumpetters.

*The Figure of the Muscle Buccinator.*

Tis *round* like a Circle, thin and membranous; interwoven with sundry Fibres, inseparably cloathed with the coat of the Mouth.

In the Centre hereof *Casserius* hath observed a certain strong band, breeding from without, and creeping to the Cheek-bone, where it is terminated into a certain small and lean Muscle, directly opposite to the Bucca.

This Muscle *arises* from the upper Cheek-bone, is *inserted* into the lower, at the Roots of the Gums.

Its *Use* is to move the Cheeks and Lips: and it is to the teeth instead of an hand, while it thrusts the meat this way and that way to the teeth, that it may be more exactly chewed.

*The Lips.*

The *Lips* consist of undigested spungie flesh (*Fallopius* reckons it for the ninth pare of Muscles which move the Lips) whose Skin is so mingled with Muscles, that it seems to be a musculous Skin, or a skinny Muscle.

*Trembling of the Lip in such as are ready to cast, how caused?*

They are covered with a *Coat* common to the Mouth and Stomach: and thence it is that in such as are ready to vomit, the lower Lip trembles.

The parts of the Lips which touch one another are red, because of the afflux of blood.

Their *Use* is, 1. To shut in the Mouth and teeth, and to defend the inner parts from cold and external Injuries.

2. For the conveniency of Eating and Drinking.

3. For the Voice and Speech.

4. To cast out the Spittle. and therefore that Servants might not spit nor speak, they were bound with Skins, as *Ammianus Marcellinus* informs us.

5. For Ornament.

There are some *proper Muscles of the Lips* besides the common ones aforesaid, which nevertheless may vary in respect of number. Some reckon fewer and others more: for some are by some Authors counted simple, which others reckon to be manifold.

The proper Muscles which move the upper Lip, are on each side two. Three there are which move both Lips. The lower Lip is moved only by one proper pare.

*Four pare of muscles moving the upper Lip.*

The *first pare* proper to the upper lip, is a remarkable pare described by *Fallopius*, which *slipping down* from the corner betwixt the Eyes and Nose, is straight way *sunk* into the Substance of the upper Lip.

The other pare, arising from the upper Jaw-bone, just in the Cavity of the Cheeks under the Socket of the Eye, thin but broad, fleshy, sunk into store of Fat, is carried downwards right on, to the upper Lip, which moves it directly upwards with the first pare. Sometimes also it is obliquely inserted into the confines of both the Lips, wherefore some do make two pare thereof.

*Muscles common to both Lips.*

The *first pare* common to both Lips, is long, fleshy, broad at the beginning; *arises* outwardly from the Jugal process, and descending obliquely through the Cheeks, it is *terminated* in the space between the two Lips. Sometimes I have seen it from the beginning drawn out as a Rope to the first proper pare. Its *Use* is, to draw both the Lips obliquely upwards towards the Temples.

The *second common pare* of the Lips, from the lower Jaw-bone to the sides of the chin fleshy, arises with a broad beginning, and sometimes stretched out to the middle of the chin, grows by little and little narrower, till it is obliquely inserted, into the same confine of each Lip, but lower, which draws away the Lips obliquely downwards and outwards, in such as grin and gern for anger.

The *third Muscle* common to the two Lips is circular like a Sphincter encompassing and constituting the whole Mouth, spungy, and firmly sticking to the ruddy Skin, it draws the Mouth together, when people simper as Virgins are wont to do.

*Muscles of the lower Lip.*

The *proper pare* of the *lower Lip* is called *par Mentale*, the *Chin-pare*; *arising* from the middle of the Chin with a broad beginning, and ascends directly to the middle of the lower Lip, which it moves downwards.

Now all the Muscles of the Lips, are so mixed with the Skin, that the Fibres do cross one another mutually, and therefore the motions of the Lips are very divers.

To cause that exquisite Sense which is in the Lips, Branches of Nerves are sent thither, and Veins and Arteries from the neighbouring places: from whence that same ruddy splendor of the Lips proceeds, a note of Beauty and of Health.

*Muscles of the lower Jaw.*

The *Muscles of the lower Jaw* (for it is moved the upper being immoveable) some reckon eight, others ten, called *Masticatorij*, *Manforij*, *Molares*, Chewers, Eaters, Grinders, because they serve for the chewing or grinding of the meat. One only pare depresses the Jaw, because it is apt to go downwards of it self: the other pares fetch it up, which are exceeding strong ones. Hence it is that some can take heavy weights from the ground with their teeth, and so carry them. Hence phrentick and otherwise distracted persons, do shut their mouths with so much stubbornness and strength, that they can hardly be opened with great force and iron Instruments. Contrariwise, the stubborneſt person in the World may be compelled without much ado, to shut his or her mouth.

*Temporalis.*

The *first* Muscle is termed *Crotaphites*, the *temporal* Muscle from its Situation, because it possesses the Cavity of the Temples.

This is the greatest of them all, firm and strong, yet firmer and stronger in some Beasts, as Lyons, Wolves, Dogs, Swine, &c. which were naturally to bite hard.

*The use of the temporal muscle.*

For the *End* of the temporal Muscle, is in the beginning of the lower Jaw, which it moves and draws upwards, and so shuts the mouth; and it is terminated in a sharp process, with a tendinous Nerve short and strong.

Now it arises from the Temples with a beginning broad, fleshy, and semicircular, and by little and little, grows narrower as it descends.

*Why tis dangerous to hurt the temporal muscle.*

Three *Nerves* are on each side inserted thereinto, two from the third pare, another from the fift pare. And therefore this Muscle being wounded or bruised, there is great danger of Convulsion and

of Death in conclusion; especially if the lower part be hurt which is most Nervous. And because of the distention hereof, *Hippocrates* did pronounce the Luxation of the lower Jaw-bane to be deadly, unless it were put presently in joynt again.

For safeguard sake, Nature hath given it, 1. A *Membrane* thick and hard, and black and blew in color, wherewith it is covered, and shines with a neat color; the Pericraneum, so that the inner part of the Muscle being all fleshy, doth there stick to the bone without the Pericranium. 2. The *Os jugale* over the lower part Tendinous and Nervous. 3. She hath fenced the tendon with flesh above and beneath.

*Manforius primus.* The *second* Muscle is the *Manforius primus*, *first chewer*, called *Masseter*, *Molitor*, and *Mandibularis*, or *Lateralis*, seated in the Cheeks.

It *arises* from a double Head: the one fleshy, the other Nervous, from the *Os jugale*, and the first bone of the upper Jaw. It is *implanted* into the lower part of the Jaw-bone (by a Connexion sufficiently broad and strong) which it turns this way and that way, in such as are eating. For the Fibres of the Head do so interferr and cross one another, that they move the Jaw both forwards and backwards and sidewaies.

*Alaris.* The third pair is the *Pterygoides* or *Alare externum*, the outward Wing-muscle, the finding whereof we owe to *Fallopius*; but *Vesalius* accounts it a part of the temporal Muscle. Tis seated under the temporal.

It *arises* from the *Os Sphænoideum* and the external *processus Alaris*, with a beginning partly Nervous and partly fleshy. Tis *implanted* into the Neck of the lower Jaw-bone, and the inner seat of the Head thereof.

Its *Use* is to move forwards and thrust out.

*Manforius alter.* The *fourth* is termed *Manforius alter*, the other Chewer, or *Alaris internus*, being thick and short.

It *arises* Nervous from the Productions of *Os Sphænoideum* called *Alatæ internæ*; and is inserted into the inner and hinder part of the jaw, with a broad and strong tendon.

Its *Use* is to draw the Jaw upward and backward, to assist the temporal Muscle.

*Graphyoides.* The *fift* is termed *Graphyoides*, because,

It *arises* from the Appendix Styloides, Membranous and broad, and soon becoming round and fleshy, tis *inserted* into the Chin. Hence it is seen to have a double belly, and therefore tis also termed *Digastricus*, twibelly. Tis fastned to a Ligament least it should go too far back. For,

Its *Use* is to draw the jaw downwards and so to open the Mouth.

Others do reckon for another pair, part of the *Musculus quadratus*, fixed in the middle of the Chin. Which broadest Muscle, arising from the upper part of the Brest-bone, the Channel bone and the Shoulder tip, and covering the Neck and the whole Face, after *Galen*, *Sylvius*, and *Theophilus*, *Riolanus* describes in this place. I spoke thereof, in the beginning of the Chapter.

# Chap. XII. *Of the Parts contained in the Mouth*, viz. *The Gums, Palate, Uvula, Fauces, and Throat-Bone.*

PArts contained in the Mouth besides the Teeth: are the *Gums*, *Palate*, *Uvula*, *Fauces*, *Tongue-bone*, *Tongue*, *Almonds or Tonsillæ*, *Larynx*, *and beginning of the Gullet*. Of the three latter I spoke in my second Book, because of the Connexion of Parts. Of the five former, we will treat in this Chapter and of the Tongue in the Chapter following.

*Gingiva.* Gingiva the *Gum*, is an hard flesh compassing the Teeth like Rampart, and in such as have lost their Teeth, serving in some measure to chew their meat: which being either eaten away, or too much relaxed, or overdryed, the Teeth become loose, or fal out.

*Palatum.* Palatum the *Palate*, is the upper part of the Mouth moderately hollow, like the Roof of an House, whence it is called the Heaven of the Mouth, and is the Basis or Foundation on which the Brain rests, being made of the *Os Sphænoideum*.

'Tis invested with a *thick Coat* arising from the *dura Mater*, which covers the Cheeks and whole mouth on their Insides, and is common to the Gullet and Stomach, and therefore there is also a consent between these parts. Nor can we purge the Head with Masticatories, unless we purge also the Stomach by the Palate.

Tis furnished with *final Nerves* for Sense.

*The Uvula how seated.* The Uvula hangs from the Palate further into the Mouth near the passages of the Nostrils, over the Chink of the Larynx among the Almonds or Kernels so called. Some call it *Gargareon*, from the noise it makes when we *Gargle* any Liquor; tis also called *Gurgulio* and *Columna*.

*Its Muscles.* It is a Process made of a Glandulous, Spungy and red *Substance*, which *Columbus* doth suppose to be made of the Coat of the Palate Reduplicated in that place. *Riolanus* rather believes that it is flesh, arising from the extremity of the Muscles, which are carried to the Body.

It is *roundely long*, thicker *above*, and ends in an acute Figure obtusely. It is suspended and held up by two little Muscles, an Internal and an External pair, either to stir the Uvula foreward and Backward in the time of swallowing, or when it is relaxed with Humors and falls down, to draw it up again.

*Riolanus*, from *Aretæus*, the *Author of Anatomia Vivorum*, *Abenzina* and *Carpus*, describes two broad Ligaments fastening the Uvula on both sides, like to wings spred abroad, which the Arabians term *Galsamach* of which he is worthy to be consulted.

*The falling of the Uvula.* Somtimes by reason of Humors too much flowing in, it hangs two much down, which is called *Casus Uvulæ* the *falling down of the Palate of the Mouth*. Which if it cannot be restored to its place by Medicaments nor manual operation, it is wont to be burnt and cut by Skilful Surgeons.

## The FIGURES Explained.

In this TABLE are shewn *Os Hyoides*, *Uvula*, and certain Muscles of the Tongue.

### FIG. I.

A. *The Gargareon or* Uvula, *in English the Palate of the Mouth.*
BB. *An outward pair of Muscles.*
CC. *Its tendon.*
DD. *An inner pair of Muscles, a little compressed.*
E. *Part of the Roof of the Mouth, at which the* Uvula *hangs.*

### FIG. II. & III.

AA. *The Basis of* Os Hyoide.
BBBB. *The sides or horns of the said Bone.*
CC. *Two Gristly Appendixes.*

### FIG. IV.

A. *The first Muscle of the tongue, arising from the external Face of the Styloides.*
B. *The second Muscle of the tongue.*
C. *A Muscle of the third pair called* Geniogloſum.
DD. *The fift pair* Ceratogloſum, *situate without.*
EE. *The tasting Nerves.*
FF. *The tongue moving Nerves.*
G. *A muscle of* Os Hyoide.
H. *The Processus Styliformis.*
II. *The* Os Hyoidis.
K. *The* Cartilago Scutiformis.
LL. *Two muscles proper to the Larynx*

## The X. TABLE.


page 155

Its *Use* is to moderate, the coldness of the Air, that it may not suddenly rush into the Lungs: and therefore those that have lost the Palate of their Mouths die of a Consumption.

*Vulgar Error.* Some think it helps to modulate the Voice, and therefore they call it *Plectrum vocis*, the striking quil of the Voice. But though it be wounded or quite cut off, yet is not the voice hurt, unless some neighbouring parts, which assist the voice are also dammaged: for then by the roughness of those parts, caused by those Catarrhes, which have eaten the Uvula, the Voice becomes Hoarse.

A second Use is, to hinder drink from passing out of the Mouth into the Nostrils. And therefore *Salmuth* tels of the Son of a Man called *John*, who being born without any Uvula or Almonds, voided the Milk which he suckt, out of his Nose, and did not live long.

By FAUCES sometimes we understand the whole wideness of the Mouth: but more strictly it is ment of the hinder and lower part, which cannot be seen, but when the Mouth is wide open and the Tongue held down, the Greeks term it *Pharynx*, howbeit that word in *Hippocrates* doth often times signifie the Diseases of this part, as Inflammation, &c, *Galen* calls it *Isthmus* because of the narrowness of the place.

*Names of the Os hyoides.* In the *Fauces* is that Bone which from the shape of the Greek letter υ is called *Hyoides*, *Hypsiloeides*, also from resemblance to the letter Λ *Lambdoeides*, that is the upsilon or Lambda-shaped Bone. Tis also called *Os gutturis*, the Throat-bone, and *Os linguæ*, the Tongue-bone, of which I must treat in this place, and not in the History of the Bones, because it is not fastned to the other parts of the Skeleton.

Now the Bone is the Basis and Foundation of the Tongue, upon which it is placed and moved: and it is set before the Larynx.

*Its Construction.* It consists of sundry little bones, three at least, somtimes of five, seven, nine.

The middle Bone is the greatest, bunching without, hollow within, under which sticks the Epiglottis;

Epiglottis; it hath proceſſes termed *Cornua* horns, two in Number, conſiſting of Bones more or fewer, greater or leſſer.

Four *Griſtles* are added, two are ſomwhat great, long and round, in the Belly of *Os hyoides*, two alſo beſides the Horns, which in ſome perſons become boney.

Its proceſſes are faſtened to the Ligaments and ends of the *Styloides*, alſo with the Cartilago guttalis.

*Its Muſcles.* This *Bone is moved*, but not except the Tongue be moved; and therefore it hath four pair of Muſcles common to the Tongue, nor can the Muſcles of the Tongue be ſhewed till they are removed.

The *firſt pair* lies concealed in the forepart, under the Skin, reſting upon the Weſand and the Cartilago Scutalis.

It *ariſes* with a broad and fleſhy beginning, from the higher and inner Region of the Breaſt-bone; and therefore this pair is called *Sternohyoides*. Its *End* is fleſhy, in the Baſis of *Os hyoides*. And in the middle according to their length, theſe Muſcles are divided with a line.

Their *Uſe* is to draw right down.

The *ſecond* being under the Chin and the fift pair of the lower Jaw; is large, ſhort and all fleſhy.

It *ariſes* from the inner part of the lower Jaw, with a various carriage of Fibres: it is *ended* in the middle ſeat of the *Hyoides*. Some call it *Geniohyoides*.

Its *Uſe* is to draw right upwards and a little forwards.

The *third* is lean and round, ſeated under the Chin, ariſing from the Root of the Appendix of Styloides; it *ends* into the horns of the Hyoides. Somtimes they are bored through the middle, for the Muſcle which opens the Jaw.

The *Uſe* is, to move ſidewaies, and a little obliquely upwards. Tis called *Stylo-cerato-hyoides*.

The *fourth* being lean and long, lies concealed under that Muſcle of the Scapula which they count the fourth, moving downwards and obliquely ſidewaies.

It *ariſes* from the upper ſide of the Scapula, near the proceſſus Coracoides, and therefore tis called *Coraco-hyoides*: it is carryed upwards obliquely to the ſides of the *Os hyoides*, under that Muſcle of the Head which is counted the ſeventh. And this pair is long, hath two Bellies, and is extenuated in the middle like a Tendon, like that which draws down the lower Jaw.

Some add to theſe a *fift pair*, which is indeed proper to the Tongue, *Riolanus* indeed the *Myloglofſum* and therefore he terms it *Mylo-hyoideum*; but *Veſlingius* the *Genioglofſum*, and thereof he calls it the *Genio-hyoides internum*: which ariſing inwardly from the Chin under the *Par Genio-hyoideum*, is inſerted into the Baſis of the *Hyoides*, which it draws ſtraight upwards.

*The Uſe of Os hyoides.* The *Uſe* of this *Os hyoides*, is

I. To be the Baſis of the tongue, and yet but obſcurely moveable: leaſt as *Walæus* conceives, it ſhould perpetually hang in the Throat, and hinder the ſwallowing of Meat; but it moves forward in ſwallowing, and ſo makes the Orifice of the Gullet more wide.

II. That from it many Muſcles might ariſe of the tongue and Larynx.

# Chap. XIII. *Of the Tongue.*

*The tongue.* THe Tongue called *Lingua à lingendo* from licking.

*Its Situation.* Is *placed* in Mankind, in the Mouth under the Palate thereof.

*Number.* Is in *Number* one, in Sea-Calfes two, in Serpents divided into three parts, in Lizards and Snakes divided into two parts.

*Figure.* In Man tis long, broad and thick, and thicker at the Root, thinner and ſharper at the End.

*Magnitude.* Its *ſize* is moderate anſwerable to the mouth, which if it be too great, ſo that it cannot move readily, it makes a man Liſpe and Stutter; and if it be overſoft and moiſt as in young Children, they cannot ſpeak plainly. *Galen Camerarius*, *Zacutus Luſitanus* and *M. Donatus*, have obſerved the tongue grown to ſo monſtrous a greatneſs, that it could not be contained within the mouth.

*Its Connexion.* As to the *Connexion*, in fiſhes the whole tongue cleaves to their mouth; in mankind, it is in its hinder part faſtned to the Larynx, and the *Os hyoides*, alſo to the Fauces and Tonſillæ. Beneath in the middle of its body tis faſtned with a ſtrong membranous Ligament for ſtrength and ſtabilities ſake, alſo for the inſertion of its proper muſcles, whoſe extremity is termed *Frænulum*; nor can any other ſtring be found different from this. This in many new born Chidren, doth ſo tie the whole tongue, that it is wont to be torn by the Nail of the Midwife (which is nevertheleſs a Pernicious courſe and not to be allowed) or the ſmal Knife of a Surgeon, that it may not hinder the Childs ſucking or future ſpeaking, and that it may freely turn and move it ſelf. Howbeit for want of skill, they cut it in all Infants indifferently, whereas not one of a thouſand, when it is let alone, doth ſtammer.

*A Pernicious Practice of midwives.*

*Its Coat.* Tis cloathed with a Coat (hard in ſuch as uſe to ſwallow very hot Liquors) ordinarily thin, ſoft, and porous, that taſts may eaſily peirce into the tongues fleſhy.

*Subſtance.* *Subſtance*, which is a peculiar kind of fleſh, ſuch as is not in the Body beſides (and it is the Organ of taſt, not the Coat, as *Galen* would have it, nor the Nervus Guſtatorius, as ſome from *Columbus*) ſoft, looſe, rare and ſpungy, to drink in the taſts brought to it with ſome humidity. In Fiſhes and ſome other Animals tis boney. It is rather of a kernelly then a Muſculous ſubſtance, eſpecially about the Baſis thereof.

*Whether the tongue be a muſcle.* For the tongue is no Muſcle, ſeeing it hath no Fibres, nor moves any other part, but is moved by its Muſcles. Others add this Reaſon, becauſe then motion would be made towards the end of a Muſcle, and the tail of a Muſcle ſhould be moveable, the head immoveable. But this Reaſon is falſe. For the beginning of the tongue is near the Larynx, and ariſes as it were from the *Os Hyoide*.

*Its Veſſels.* As to *Veſſels*. Two remarkable Veins are to be ſeen under the tongue, which are wont to be opened in ſquinzies and Diſeaſes of the Fauces, termed *Raninæ* from their color, ariſing from the external Jugulars, theſe

Two

Two pretty big *Arteries* do accompany, from the *Carotides*.

*Nerves* are inserted into the Tongue, both those of motion, and those of Sense: a thicker pair creeping through the inner parts, from the seventh conjugation, which being obstructed or not reaching to the Tongue, the taste is lost according to the observation of *Columbus*. A *thinner* pair runs through the outer parts of the Tongues Coat, arising from the fourth conjugation, or as some say, from the third.

*The line of the tongue.* The Tongue is distinguished in the middle of its surface, into the right and left part, by a certain *white line*, which *Hippocrates* terms *Mediana*.

*Its muscles* The *muscles proper* to the *Tongue*, ending in its substance, are by some Anatomists reckoned to be six, by others nine, by some ten, by others eleven, which move the Tongue, upwards and downwards; forewards and backwards; to the right hand and to the left.

The *first pair*, which in Oxen is double fleshy and thick, *arises* from the out side of the Appendix *Styloides*, being Maigre in Mankind: it *ends* with transverse Fibres, into both sides of the Tongue, about the middle thereof.

Its *Use* is to move the Tongue inwards. But by reason of the Fibres interwoven, they lift the Tongue upwards if they act both together; but upwards only to one side, if only one of them act. This pair is called *Stylogloſſum*.

The *second pair* is called *Myloglossum, arising* from the sides of the lower jaw, at the Roots of the grinding Teeth. Tis inserted under the Basis of the tongue, into the tongues Ligament. *Riolanus* will have it belong to the *Os hyoides*, because it touches not the tongue. But it suffices to move the tongue, if it be affixed to the Ligament thereof.

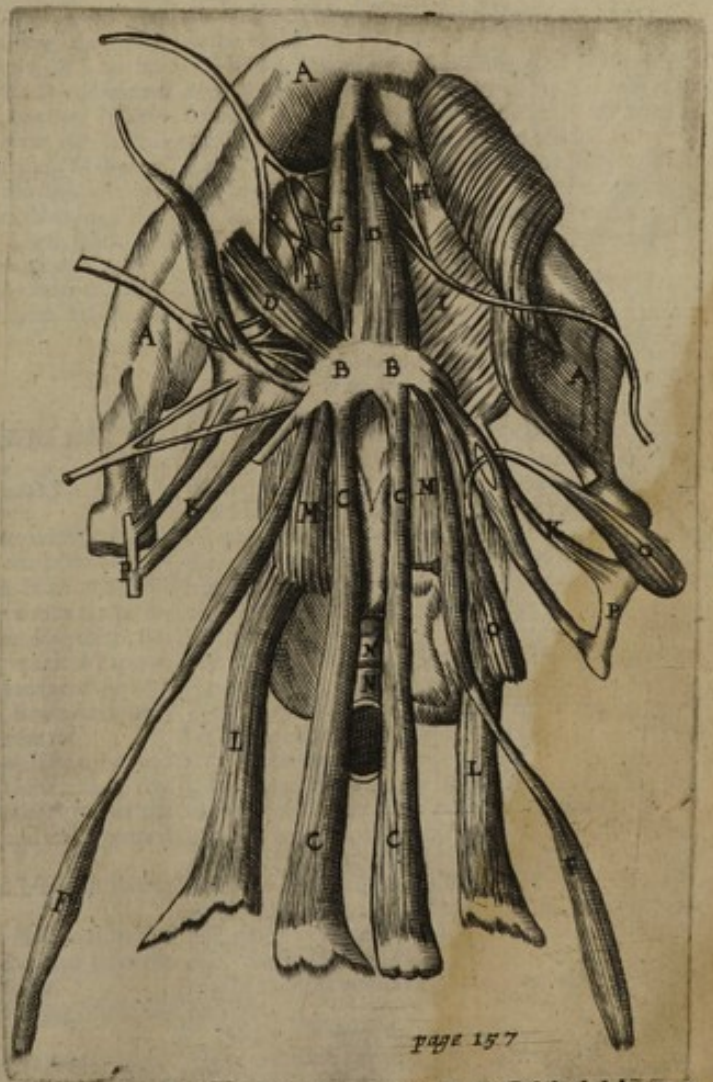
Its *Use*; when one acts, the tongue is moved obliquely upwards; when both act, it moves with its point right to the Palate and upper teeth.

## The FIGURE Explained.

### This TABLE expresses the Muscles of *Os Hyoides* and of the Tongue.

AAA. *The Body of the lower* Jaw.
BB. *The Body of* Os Hyoides.
CC. *The first pair of Muscles called* Sternohyoides.
D. *One Muscle of the second pair in its situation, the other removed therefrom.*
EE. *The third pair bored in the middle.*
FF. *The fourth pair Coraco-hyoides.*
G. *A Muscle of the fourth pair of the Muscles of the tongue.*
HH. *The Parenchyma of the tongue into which the Nerves are inserted.*
I. *A Muscle of the fift pair of tongue Muscles.*
KK. *A Muscle of the first pair of tongue Muscles.*
LL. *The common muscles of the Larynx, cal'd* Sternothyroidei.
MM. *Other common muscles of the Larynx,* Hyothyroidei.
NN. *The Gristles of the Aspera Arteria.*
OO. *A muscle of the lower* Jaw *cal'd* Digastricus, Twibelly.
PP. *Portions of the processus* Styloides.

## The XI. TABLE.




*page 157*

The *third pair* arises inwardly at the middle of the Chin, whence tis called *Geneo-glossum*; it *ends*, wellnear into the middle of the tongue inwardly. *Vesslingius* will have it fastned into the Basis of the *Os hyoides*, and therefore he reckons it amongst the Muscles thereof. And by reason of the diversity of its Fibres, it seems to perform contrary actions: for the greatest part of the Fibres, which is towards the Root of the tongue, being drawn towards the Original, the tongue is thrust without the Lips; but the smallest part of the Fibres acting, tis drawn inwards. This pair hath inscriptions as if it were many Muscles.

The *fourth pair ariſes* fleſhy out of the upper and middle Region of the *Os hyoides*, and is terminated in the middle, after it is drawn out according to the length of the tongue. It is ſomtimes obſcurely divided, as if it were many Muſcles.

Its *Uſe* is, to draw the tongue right in, and ſo to depreſs the ſame. And it is called *Baſioglosſum*, or *Hypſilogloſſum*.

The *fifth pair* is called *Cerato-gloſſum*, becauſe it *ariſes* from the upper horns of the *Hyoides*, and is obliquely inſerted into the ſides of the tongue, near the Root thereof.

Its *ariſes* ſomtimes from the lower horns, *viz.* when the higher are wanting, eſpecially in Women. And this pair is double in Oxen.

Its *Uſe* is, to move the tongue directly downwards towards the inner parts, when both act; but if only one be contracted, it moves it to the right or left ſide.

By others an *eleventh* Muſcle is added, which yet is no Muſcle, becauſe it conſiſts not of fleſhy Fibres; but it is a parcel of fleſh, conſiſting of very many Kernels and fat, ſituate at the Root of the tongue, and appearing when the foreſaid Muſcles are taken away.

Its *Uſe* is, that the tongue may be moiſtened by this plenty of Kernels.

*The uſe of the Tongue.*

The *Uſe* of the Tongue is:

I. To be the Inſtrument of Taſt.

II. Of Speech.

III. To further the chewing of Meat, by turning it this way and that way.

IV. To lick with.

By all which it appears, that the tongue is not neceſſary to the very being of life, but to the well being: for the part thereof may be cut off without danger of life or health, *Zacutus*, *Walæus* and others after *Galen*, have found by experience. *Abenzoar*, *Joubertus*, *Foreſtus*, have obſerved that Stones have bred under the tongue, hindring Speech, till they were cut out; and I remember that long ſince ſuch ſtones were taken out at *Padua*.



THE

# THE FOURTH BOOK OF THE LIMBS.

*The Limbs what?*

BY Limbs we understand those Members which grow as it were out from the Trunk of the Body, viz. the ARMES above, the LEGS beneath. In which are chiefly considered the Muscles, Veins, Arteries, Nerves and Bones. Of the four last I shall treat, in the four following Manuals: but of the *Muscles* of the *Limbs* in this Book, as also of the neighboring Parts, viz. the Head, Neck, Chest, Back, &c. their Muscles; not because they appertain to the Limbs, but because in the Order of Dissection, an Anatomist cannot shew them before the Muscles of the Limbs.

*Why the muscles also of the Head, Neck, Back &c. are handled in this Book?*

## Chap. I.

## *Of the Arm and Hand in General with the Nails.*

*The use of the Hand.*

*Aristotle* calls the Arm with its Hand, *Organon Organôn*, the Instrument of Instruments, wherewith Man otherwise naked and unarmed is guifted, that he may not be inferior to the Brute-beasts and conquered by them; but may overcome them, making for himself Weapons, and other necessary Instruments. Man therefore hath received Reason and Hands, which Beasts have not; and the Hand is his Servant and Instrument.

*Manus what?*

Now the old Writers *Hippocrates* and *Galen* by HAND did understand that Part of the Body, from the top of the Shoulder to the ends of the Fingers, and this is termed *summa Manus*.

And it is *divided* into the Arm and Hand strictly so called, or the *extrema manus*.

And the *Arm* is divided again, into the Shoulder and Cubit, the *Shoulder* is the part of the Arm from the Shoulder-tip to the bending of the Elbow.

The *Cubit* is that part from the bending of the Elbow unto the Wrist.

The *Manus extrema* or *Hand properly so called, is divided into the Brachiale* or *Wrist*, which is the part between the Elbow and Palm; into the Postbrachiale or Metacarpum, *after-wrist*, which is the part between the Wrist and beginning of the Fingers, and into the Fingers. The Postbrachial part internal is called the *Palm* of the Hand, the external part is called the *Back* of the Hand.

*Why many Fingers on the Hand?*

There are many *Fingers*, that the action of the Hand might be the better performed, which is laying hold: also that we might be able to take up the smallest matters, which we do by two fingers, and other things of many-shaped Figures: and because all things could not be comprehended with one hand, two were made that meeting together, the one might help the other.

*Why the right Hand is more active then the left?*

The *right* Hand is more active commonly and more ready for motion, not for those causes which others childishly cite, but 1. Because in a mans right side is the *Vena sine pari* so called, which peradventure is double in such as can use both hands alike. 2. Because the bones are more heavy in the Shoulder, Shoulder-blade and whol arm, then on the other side, as some men know for certain; which may proceed from an impression of more plentiful Heat in the Mothers Womb, the right part whereof is hotter then the other. Hence *Aristotle* teaches, that naturally the right hand excels the left; and in another place, he tells us the first endeavor of motion is on the right side; so that when a man is about to walk, first moves his right Leg; a Bird about to flie, moves first its right wing. 3. Because the trunk of the Subclavian Artery is greater on the right side then the left, as they know that have diligently considered the matter in opposition to *Riolanus*, though the difference is not, neither needed to be very great. *Plato* conceives that all men are naturally ambidexters, viz. that they can use both hands alike, and that it is mens unskilfulness and ignorance that makes them right handed only or left handed. But *Aristotle* is of Opinion, that from our first Formation, the right sides of our Bodies, are alwaies in a manner hotter and stronger then the left, unless any man by much custom, and much exercise, do draw much Heat and Spirit to his left Hand that he may become Ambidexter, and able to use it as his right.

*The number of the Fingers.*

Now the *Fingers* for perfection of Action are made five in number, differing in length and thickness. Tis besides nature, if either the Fingers be quite wanting, which I have seen at *Malta* and at *Florence*; or if in place of true Fingers there appear only certain soft

marks

marks as big as Peason, which I lately observed here at *Hafnia*.

The *first* is cal'd *Pollex* a Pollendo because of its strength, and it alone is opposed to the whole four, when any thing is to be taken up, and therefore it is thick.

The *second* is cal'd *Index* and *Demonstrator*, the shewer, or pointer: because therewith we point at any thing.

The *third* is the longest and middlemost, cal'd *Impudicus* the *shameless*, because Physitians use it in filthy and stinking places; not is it wont to be adorned with Rings.

The *fourth* is termed *Medicus*, also *Annularis*, the *Ring-finger*, because it is adorned with a Gold Ring before any of the rest, by reason of a common but false opinion Repugnant to Anatomy, *viz.* that a Vein should come from the Heart to this Finger above all the rest; now the Heart is comforted with Gold.

The *fift* cal'd *Auricularis* the Ear-finger, because fittest to pick the Ears, is smallest, *and by us cal'd the little Finger.*

*Laying hold.*

*How the Hand is compounded?*

The Cause therefore of *laying hold*, which is the action of the Hand, or as others speak less accurately, its chiefest use, is the apt composition of the whole Hand. Yet the chief Organ of this motion is a Muscle: the strength is in the Bones, which are three in every finger, the lower of which as the sustainer is alwaies greater then that which is above it and stronger, and in the Joynts they are furnished on each side with a Gristle, on which an Oyly moisture is poured out for Hummectations sake, and to Facilitate the motion.

A *secondary* use of the Arms and Hands as *Kyperus* learnedly Discourses, is the better to help our going by their weight and ballancing; Yea and to speed our going; and therefore dancers on the Ropes, whose Foot is broader then that which they tread on, do bear themselves up with long Poles, and when they dance a pace, they ballance themselves with their Hands, which they move this way and that way.

*Of the Nails.*

The *Nails* are placed externally on the tops of the Fingers, as also of the Toes: whose upmost part being white, is called the Root of the Nailes, the white half Moon, and the little Skin which grows to the Root.

Their *matter* is not Alimentary Humors; as *Æmilius*, *Parisanus* and *Plempius* would have it, and others, but thick Excrements, not which ascend from the Heart, as *Rosa Anglicana* conceives; or from the Arteries, but from the Bones and Gristles, as the great *Hippocrates* doth affirm.

The *Efficient* is that heat which the Soul directs to this rather then any other part of the Body. But the Nailes are not made by the Soul, as *Parisanus* and *Plempius* contend, because in Cacochymick and Phlegmatick persons they grow more abundantly, in such as have been twenty five years dead, according to the observation of *Pareus*. Nor are we moved when they say that there is a great variety of colours in horns and shels of Fishes, for they no more prove the action of the Soul in such things, then in party coloured and speckled Marble.

Their *End* and *Use* is,

I. To fence the ends of the Fingers and Toes which are exceeding soft, and to save guard them by their hardness, so that they may more easily take up any thing. So in the Feet, that they may be able to resist the hardness of the Ground and stand firm. And therefore it was ill said by him of old, that the Gods had erred in their placeing the Nails.

II. For ornament: and therefore we cover our Fingers when the Nails are impaired.

III. To rub, scratch and defend, which is a secondary use.

IV. To free the Body from superfluous Humors and steams Fuliginous.

V. To afford Physiognomists and Physitians tokens of Life and Health, which may be seen in divers authors. And *Achmetes* ch. 74. 75. interprets dreams concerning them, according to the Tradition of the Indians, Persians and Ægyptians.

Their *form* we gather from the Accidents.

Their *Figure* is somwhat convex, that they may apply themselves to the Fingers.

They have a substance indifferently hard that they may resist, but yet flexible, that they may yeild a little and not break.

*Colour of the Nails and signs from thence.*

They are *Transparent* and therefore variously coloured: for according to the flesh beneath them, they are red, blewish, &c. And therefore Physitians are wont to observe the Colour of the Nails; for the Nails, for examples sake, grow pale when the heat of the Heart is deficient; in such as are at deaths door they are livid and brown. Those same white spots which in yong people sometimes appear in their Nails, spring from a vigorous heat, which drives hidden Excrements to the Nails, and separates them from others of a different Nature.

*Whence the sense of the nails proceeds*

They are *knit* about the Root with a Ligament, and Skin grows about them without; and flesh grows under them, or rather the tendons of Muscles, there dilated: there is therefore in that place an exquisite sense, and great pain when they are hurt.

And so much may suffice to have spoken of the Nails, breifly, and by way of Compendium.

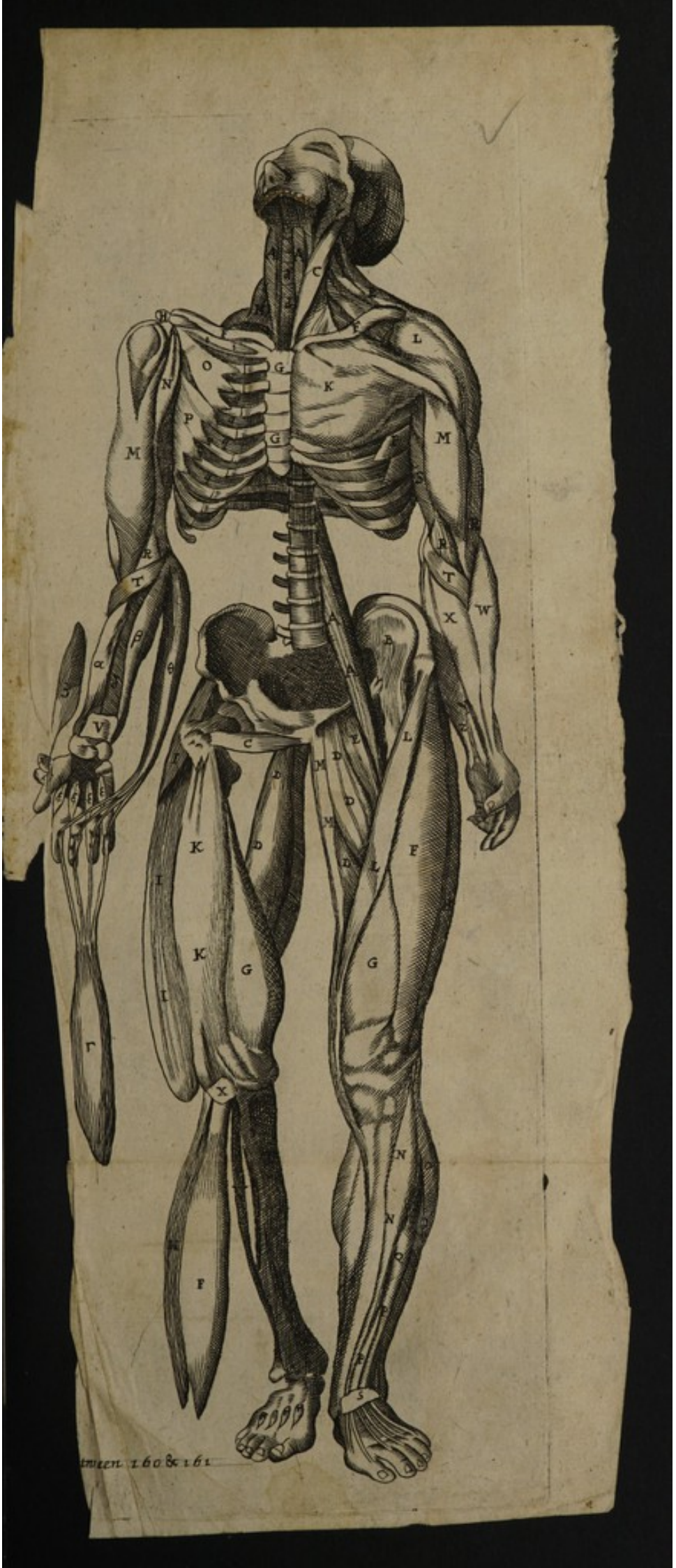
## Chap. II. *Of the Muscles of the* Humerus, *or of the* Brachium, *peculiarly so called.*

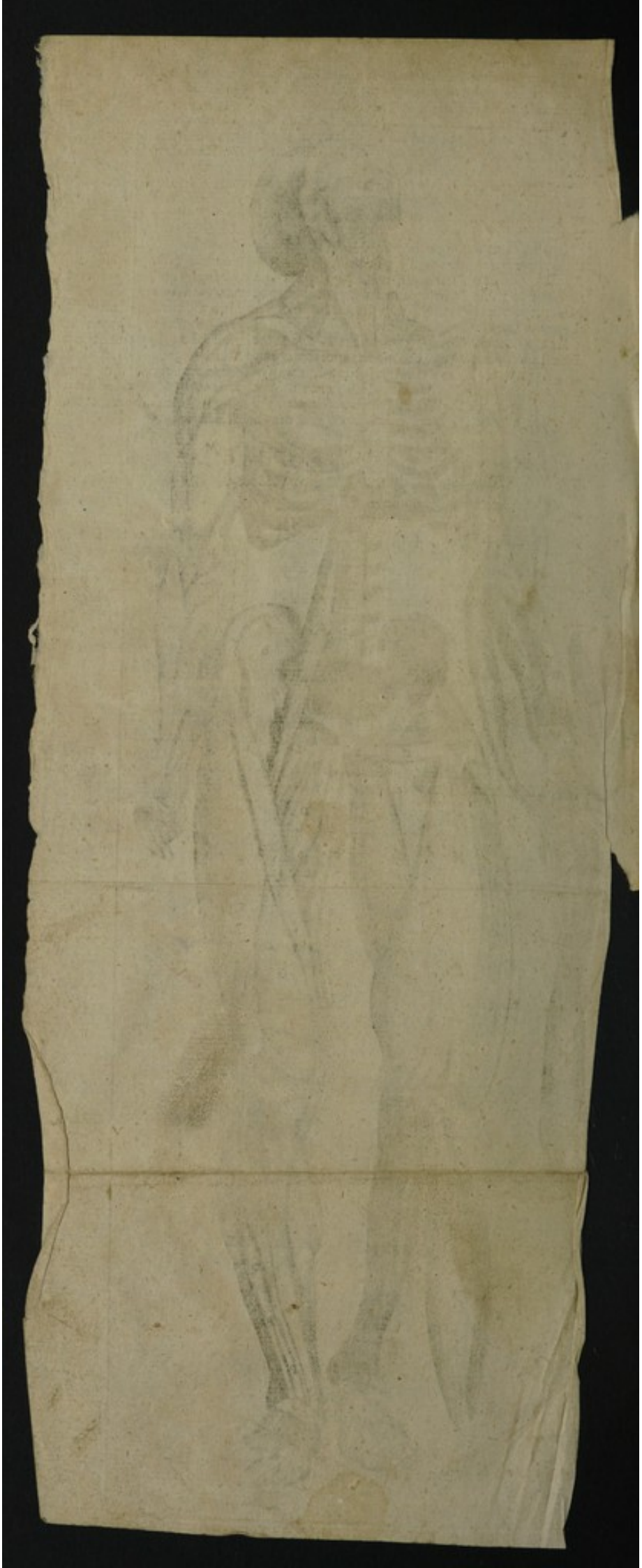
THe common containing Parts being removed, *viz.* the Scarf-skin, the Skin, the Fat, the *Membrana carnosa*, &c. the Muscles shew themselves, by which the motion is made, of which I am to treat in this whole Book; in a convenient place, though *Hofman* think otherwise, especially because the Doctrin of the Muscles is useful and necessary, by reason of Issues, Wounds, &c. And in the other parts they could not be treated off.

Now touching the *action* of the Muscles of the Arm in general, it is to be noted, that the inner Muscles do mostly serve to bend, and the outer to extend. And in the whole Arm the internal Muscles are more and stronger then the external, because bending is more worthy then the extension.

*The Muscles of the Humerus how many?*

The *Humerus* is variously moved, and therefore it hath sundry Muscles, partly lying upon the Chest, and partly growing to the *Scapulæ* or Shoulder-blades, &c. Some reckon them seven, others


M
M
K
K
G
G
F
F
N
N
X
X
T
T
W
L
L
P
O
R
V
S



thers eight and *Caſſerius* nine. For the Arm is ſaid to be lift up by two Muſcles, *Deltoides* and *Supraſpinatus*; and downwards by two, the *Aniſcalptor* and *Rotundus major*: forewards by one alone, *viz.* the *Pectoralis*; backwards by three, the *Infraſpinatus* and *Subſcapularis*, and the *Tranſverſus brevior*. But they conceive the circular motion thereof is cauſed by all of them acting one after another: but others will have the Arm to be wheeled about by the *Infraſpinatus*, *Supraſpinatus*, and *Subſcapularis*. But I ſhall in recounting them follow the order of Diſſection.

The *firſt* is termed *Pectoralis*, becauſe it takes up the Breaſt or forepart of the Cheſt being great and fleſhy; which *Galen* conceived might be divided into three or four.

It *ariſes* from wellnigh the whole Breſt-bone, and the Griſtles thereto annexed; where it is a little tendinous in part of the *Clavicula*, and the fift, ſixt and ſeventh true Ribs. T is implanted with a ſhort, broad, Nervous and ſtrong tendon, into the *Os Humeri*, between the Deltoides and the Biceps.

Its *Uſe* is, to move the Arm to the Breſt, and as the Fibres are contracted more to the upper or lower part or right forward, ſo doth the Arm incline this way or that way. This is the Muſcle which ſuffers in that torment which the Italians call *Tratta de corda*, the Strappado. For it is very much haled and drawn a ſunder, when the Arms are pulled forcibly backwards.

The *ſecond* is called *Deltoides*, from its likeneſs to the Greek letter Δ alſo *Triangularis Humeralis*, which is fleſhy and ſo abides, and is ſpread upon the Head of the Shoulder.

It *ariſes* from the middle of the *Clavicula*, looking towards the *Scapula*, and from the top of the Humerus, with a fleſhy end indeed, but yet a ſtrong tendon lies concealed therein.

*The place of an Iſſue in the Arm.*

Its *Uſe* is to lift up the Arm. In the middle hereof the Ancients were wont to make Fontanels or Iſſues; but others in the external part of the ſaid Muſcles: but an Iſſue is better made in the ſpace between the Deltoides and the Biceps, as I ſhew in *my Treatiſe of Iſſues*, becauſe 1. There is the Cephalick or Head Vein. 2. It is between two Muſcles. 3. It may be very well ſeen and dreſſed by the Patient. Now the place is exactly found below the Shoulder joynt, four or five Fingers breadth, where when you bend the Arm you may feel the ſpace between the two Muſcles, and the Arm being lift up, it is Circumſcribed in fat perſons with a ſmal Cavity, as *Claudinus*, *Solenander* and others obſerve. *Ferrara* meaſures four Fingers breadth from the Elbow upwards. See alſo *Glandorpius*.

## The FIGURE Explained.

This TABLE repreſents all the Muſcles of the Body deſcribed by the Authour, which are to be ſeen before.

AA. *The Muſcles of the Neck, called* Muſculi longi.
B. *The Muſcles Scalenus.*
C. *The Muſcle Maſtoides which bends the Head.*
dd. *The Vertebra's of the Neck.*
E. *The Levator Scapulæ, lifter of the Shoulder.*
FF. *The Claviculæ or Chanel bones.*
G. *The Breaſt-bone, cal'd* Sternum.
H. *The Acromion or Shoulder-tip.*
ii. *The Muſculus Subclavius.*
K. *The Pectoral Muſcle.*
L. *The Muſcles Deltoides.*
MM. *The Muſcle Biceps.*
N. *The Muſculus perforatus, or bored Muſcle.*
O. *The Serratus minor, or Smaller-ſaw-muſcle.*
PP. *The greater Saw-muſcle, or Serratus major.*
qqqq *The Intercoſtal or Rib between Muſcles.*
RRRR. *The branchiæus on each Arm, conſpicuous from each part of the Biceps.*
SS. *The firſt Arm extender, or the Longus.*
TT. *The Muſculus Radij pronator rotundus.*
V. *Radij Pronator Quadratus.*
W. *Supinator Radij primus.*
X. *Carpi flexor primus or externus.*
Y. *Muſculus palmaris.*
Z. *Carpi flexor alter, or the internus.*
α. *The Os Radij.*
β. *The Os Cubiti.*
δ. *The Ligament which faſtens the Cubitus to the Radius.*
Γ. *The Digitorum flexor ſublimus or Perforatus.*
Θ. *The Profundus or Perforans, under the former.*
ιιι. *The Muſculi Lumbricales.*
ζ. *The Flexor pollicis or Thumb-bender.*
κλ. *The Muſcles which draw the Thumb towards the Hand.*

The following Characters ſerve to point out thoſe Muſcles, which run out from the Region of the Loyns to the End of the Feet, in the forepart of the Body.

A. *The Muſcle Pſoas or Lumbaris.*
B. *The Muſcle Iliacus.*
C. *The Obturator internus.*
DDDD. *The Muſculus Triceps, or Tripple-headed Muſcle.*
EE. *The Muſculus Lividus.*
FF. *The Rectus in its Situation, but on the right Leg hanging by its End.*
GG. *The Vaſtus internus.*
H. *The Vaſtus externus, which on the right Leg hangs ſeparated.*
II. *The Muſculus membranoſus, or the Faſcia lata.*
KK. *The Muſculus Cruræus.*
LL. *The Muſculus longus, Faſcialis or Sartorius.*
MM. *The Muſculus gracilis.*
NN. *The Muſculus Tibiæus anticus.*
O. *The Muſculus peroneus Biceps.*
PP. *The Muſcle which extends the four Toes of the Foot.*
Q. *The Muſcle which extends the great Toe.*
R. *The Muſculus Gaſtrocnemius.*
rrrr. *The Muſculi Interoſſei.*
S. *The tranſverſe Ligament of the Foot.*
T. *The Tibia.*
V. *The Fibula.*
X. *The Patella.*

The third is *broadeſt of all*, and with its fellow covers almoſt the whole Back. T is called *ani Scalptor*, *Clawbreech*, becauſe it draws the Arm backwards and downwards.

It ariſes with a membranous and very broad beginning, from the points of the Vertebra's of the Back bone, from the *Os ſacrum* and *Ilium*, as far as to the ſixt Vertebra of the Cheſt. It is inſerted between the Pectoral and the round Muſcle, with a ſtrong, ſhort and broad Tendon. Its *ſhape* is triangular.

*Fallopius* out of *Galen* againſt *Veſalius*, doth teach that this Muſcle is furniſhed with a new but very ſmal beginning, while from the lower Corner of the Shoulder-blades, it receives very many fleſhy Fibres. This Muſcle becauſe it hath a large beginning, and therefore divers Fibres; according as they are variouſly contracted, ſo the Shoulder is either drawn more upwards or depreſſed more downwards. And becauſe it alſo paſſes through the lower corner of the Shoulder blade therefore it lightly draws the ſame alſo away with the Shoulder.

The *fourth* is called *Rotundus major*, and it is obliquely ſeated behind, under the Axilla, being fleſhy, thick, and rounder then the reſt.

It *ariſes* fleſhy from the Rib of the lower Scapula, and aſcending a little with its tendon, ſhort, broad, and ſtrong, it is implanted with the Pectoral, into the upper and lower part of the Humerus.

Its *Uſe* is, to draw the Arm downwards and backwards, and to work contrary to the Deltoides.

The firſt is ſhort and round, quite fleſhy, which ariſes with a ſharp beginning out of the loweſt corner of the Scapula; after it grows thicker and thicker to the middle of its belly, and thence growing ſmaller by little and little, it *terminates* with an acute end into that Ligament, wherewith the Head of the Shoulder is involved.

It hath an oblique *Situation*, and ſome call it *Tranſverſus muſculus brevior*, others *Rotundus minor*. And it is the eighth in *Fallopius* his account: which Muſcle others ſuppoſe to be a certain portion of the fourth.

The *ſixt* is called *Infra ſpinatus*, alſo *Superſcapularis inferior*, becauſe it covers the whole external bunching part of the Scapula, whoſe form alſo it bears; but becoming more narrow, it is with a broad and ſhort Ligament inſerted into the Shoulder.

*Its Uſe.* It is thought to wheel the Arm backwards and outwards.

The *ſeventh* is the *Supraſpinatus*, alſo *Superſcapularis ſuperior*, alſo *Rotundus minor*; it is fleſhy and ſomwhat longiſh, over the Armpit; it fills the Cavity between the upper Rib of the ſcapula, and the Spina thereof, out of which it *grows*,

Now it is *inſerted* with a broad and ſtrong tendon, into the Neck of the Humerus, at the Ligament of the joynt, being carryed above the firſt joynt.

The *Uſe* of this is thought to be the ſame with that of the former. Others conceives it moves upwards with the Deltois.

The eighth is termed *Subſcapularis* or *Immerſus*; being very fleſhy, it quarters betwixt the Scapula and the Ribs, and takes up the inner part of the Scapula; but it is inſerted with a broad tendon, internally, into the ſecond Ligament of the Humerus.

Its *Uſe* is to bring about the Arm inwards.

The *ninth* Muſcle was firſt obſerved by *Arantius* and *Placentinus*, being in the former part of the Arm and called *Perforatus*.

It ariſes from the *Coracoides Proceſſus* of the *Scapula* (and is therefore by *Riolanus* called *Coracoideus*, or *Coracobrachieus*) it is *inſerted* into the inner part of the Shoulder about the middle, by the tendon of the Deltoides. It hath a beginning nervous and ſhort, a long round Belly ſufficiently corpulent, and a ſtrong tendon. Its Belly hath an hole bored in it, and gives paſſage to the Nerves, which are diſtributed to the Muſcles of the Cubit. This Muſcle others have only termed a muſculous Portion of the Biceps.

Tis *uſeful* to draw the Arm to the Proceſs of the Scapula; or draw it forward upon the Breaſt.

## Chap. III. *Of the Muſcles of Scapula or Shoulder-blade.*

BEcauſe the *Scapula* is moved forward and backward; upward, and downward; therefore it hath received *four Muſcles*. To which nevertheleſs others add two more, viz. the *Serratus major* and the *Digaſtricus*, but they do not well. For the latter is proper to the *Os hyoides*, the former to the Cheſt. *The Error of other Anatomiſts.*

I. The firſt is called SERRATUS MINOR, and it is ſpred under the *Muſculus pectoralis*.

It ariſes from the four upper Ribs, excepting the firſt, and aſcending obliquely upwards, with an end partly fleſhy, and partly tendinous, it is *inſerted* into the Scapula by the *Proceſſus ancoriformis*.

Its *Uſe* is to draw forward into the Breaſt.

II. The ſecond is by *Galen* called *Trapezius*, others term it *Cucullaris*, becauſe it reſembles a Friars Cowl. But that this *Muſcle* was given our firſt Parents, as the Badg of a religious life, as *Riolanus* conjectures, I do not believe, becauſe others are religious that wear no Cowles, and many are irreligious that wear them, whether you look at their Profeſſion or Manners. However this Name was given this Muſcle by Chriſtian Phyſitians, becauſe of its likeneſs to a Monks Cowl.

It *ariſes* fleſhy and thin from the hind-part of the Head. From whence it deſcends to the eighth Vertebra of the Cheſt, and from thence as alſo from the hinder part of the Head growing ſmall by little and little, it is inſerted into the Back-bone, the Scapula, the top of the Shoulder and the Clavicula.

But becauſe of its various Original and various Fibres.

It variouſly moves the Scapula, upwards, obliquely, by reaſon of Fibres obliquely deſcending from the hind-part of the head to the Omoplata, which *Riolanus* denies in vain; downwards, by reaſon of the carriage of fibres, aſcending from the eigth Vertebra of the Back and right out to the Back, by reaſon of right fibres in the middle of the Muſcle, ſtretched out to the Scapula.

III. The third is the *Rhomboides* from its figure like a Diamond, ſituate under the Cucullaris, thin and broad.

It ariſes from the three lower Vertebra's of the Neck, and the three upper Vertebra's of the Cheſt, and with the ſame latitude is *inſerted* into the Baſis of the Scapula.

Its *Uſe* is to draw back a little obliquely upwards.

IV. Is the *Levator*, which others call the Muſcle of Patience; becauſe thoſe whoſe Affaires go croſs, are wont to lift up their Shoulders: it is above the Clavicula.

It ariſes from the five tranſverſe Proceſſes of the Vertebra's of the Neck, with ſundry beginnings (which

makes it ſeem divers Muſcles ) which ſoon grow into one: and its *Inſertion* is in the higher and lower corner of the Scapula, with a broad and fleſhy tendon. Its *Uſe* is, to draw forward and lift up the Scapula and the Humerus.

With theſe Muſcles the Scapula is moved directly or of it ſelf, and the *Brachium per accidens*, accidentally: as the Scapula is accidentally moved by the Muſcles of the Brachium.

## Chap IV.
## *Of the Muſcles of the Cheſt, or which ſerve for Reſpiration.*

VEry many Muſcles ſerve for Reſpiration; as the Midriff, all the Intercoſtal Muſcles, ſome of the Belly ( of which I have treated in the firſt and ſecond Book ) and ſome

*Proper to the* CHEST, which are reckoned *on each ſide* ſix; to which nevertheleſs *Fallopius* adds three in the Neck; which in *Veſalius* are parts of Muſcles poſſeſſing the Breaſt and Back.

The proper *Muſcles* of the Cheſt do grow thereto: two in the forepart, *ſubclavius* and *triangularis*; *Serratus major* poſſeſſes the Sides; the reſt are in the hindpart, viz. the two *Serrati poſtici* and the *Sacrolumbus*.

I. The SUBCLAVIUS, becauſe tis ſeated under the Clavicula, fills the place between it and the firſt Rib. *Platerus* reckons it amongſt the Intercoſtals.

It *ariſes* fleſhy from the inner and lower part of the Clavicula: it is *inſerted* fleſhy into the upper part of the firſt Rib, which it draws upwards and outwards. And this is the firſt muſcle which dilates or diſtends the Cheſt. To this *Spigelius* aſſigns a contrary uſe, viz. to draw the Clavicula downwards, which nevertheleſs is of it ſelf immoveable, and therefore he aſcribs thereunto a Riſe and an Inſertion contrary to it.

II. The SERRATUS MAJOR, is a great, broad, and every way fleſhy muſcle, with the oblique deſcendent of the Abdomen, it makes a Saw-like Combination.

It *ariſes* fleſhy, from the internal Baſis of the Scapula. *Riolanus* hath obſerved an higher Original thereof, from the two upper Ribs, as far as to the Clavicula, which two Ribs ſeem immoveable. It is *carried* by its tendon, with five unequal ends, to the five true Ribs, and ſomtimes to two baſtard Ribs; which it lifts up. *Spigelius* alſo and *Veſlingus* do aſcribe a contrary Uſe hereunto, and conſequently a contrary Original, and Inſertion.

III. SERRATUS POSTICUS SUPERIOR *minor*, does quarter under the Rhomboides, in the Back, between the two Shoulder-blades.

It *ariſes* membranous from the lower Spines of the Neck, and the firſt of the Back: it is *inſerted* into the three Intervals of the four upper Ribs, being tripartite: and it draws thoſe Ribs upwards.

IV. SERRATUS POSTICUS INFERIOR, *major*, is membranous and broad almoſt in the middle of the Back, under the *Muſculus latiſſimus* or *Aniſcalptor ariſing* from the Spines or ſharp points of the lower Vertebra's of the Back. It is *inſerted* into the Intervals of the four lower Ribs, being parted as it were into Fingers. Its *Uſe* is to widen the lower part of the Cheſt.

V. Is ſpred under the former, and by others ſuppoſed to be common to the Back and Cheſt. Tis called SACROLUMBUS, becauſe it *ariſes* from the lower part of Os ſacrum, and the ſharp points of the Vertebra's of the Loins. It is fleſhy within, nervous without. It is *inſerted* into the lower Ribs, with a double tendon, one external which is ſtrongeſt, the other internal. It is not eaſily ſeparated from the loweſt muſcle of the Back, ſo that it ſeems to be a parcel thereof. Its *Uſe* according to *Veſlingus*, to contract the Cheſt. *Spigelius* conceives as I do, that becauſe it grows out of one beginning with the *Muſculus longiſſimus* of the Back, that therefore it extends and raiſes up the Cheſt.

VI. Is the TRIANGULARIS, ſmall and ſubtile, in lean perſons ſcarce fleſhy, it lies inwardly concealed under the Breaſt-bone, out of the lower part whereof, it hath its *Original*. And therefore it may conveniently be called the Muſcle of the Breaſt-bone. Its obliquely *inſerted* into the lower Griſtles, which it draws to, and ſtraitens the Cheſt.

## Chap. V.
## *Of the Muſcles of the Head.*

THE HEAD is *moved*, either ſecondarily by the muſcles of the Neck, according to the motion thereof; or primarily upon the firſt Vertebra, to which it is immediately and cloſely joyned, being bent forward and backward. It is turned round upon the tooth-faſhioned Proceſs of the ſecond Vertebra ( on which the hind-part of the Head reſts, and to which it is firmly faſtned ) as it were upon an Axle-tree; which motion is performed by nine pare of Muſcles.

The firſt pare is *long* and thick, by ſome called *Splenium*, ſpred out on each ſide upon the Vertebræ. It *ariſes* from a double beginning, one from the Spinæ of the upper Vertebra's of the Cheſt, another from the five lower Spinæ of the Vertebra's of the Neck, from which it is carried to the middle of the Occiput. Its *Uſe* is, to draw the Head directly backwards. But if only one do act, the motion is thought to be made circularly to one ſide.

The *ſecond* is implicated and complicated, and therfore termed *Complexum*. It ſeems to conſiſt as it were of three Muſcles. It hath divers beginnings, at the ſeventh Vertebra of the Neck, at the firſt, third and fourth of the Cheſt, and it is after a different manner implanted into the Occiput.

*Riolanus* obſerves touching the Fibres of the Splenium and the Complexus, that they are croſs-waies interſected, and diſpoſed for the ſtrength of both the Muſcles.

The *third Pare* is ſituate under the ſecond, *ſmall* and thick, which *Veſalius* would have to be the fourth part of the former Muſcle. It is *inſerted* into the hindermore Root of the *Proceſſus mammillaris*. Its *Uſe* is, lightly to bring the Head backwards; and if but one act, to bring it backwards to one ſide.

The *fourth* pare is called *Rectum majus*, being ſmall, fleſhy and lean. It *ariſes* from the ſecond Vertebra of the Neck; *ends* into the middle of the Occiput.

The *fift* pare called *Rectum minus*, lies concealed under the former pare. Its *Riſe* is from the firſt Vertebra of the Neck, its Inſertion and *Uſe* is as of the third and fourth.

The *ſixt* is the *Obliquum ſuperius*, which lies alſo beneath. It *riſes* according to ſome, out of the middle of the Occiput, and deſcending is inſerted athwart, into the points of the Proceſſes of the Neck. But others among whom *Veſlingus* do rightly think it ariſes from the Proceſs of the firſt Vertebra, and ends into the Occiput

ciput, by the outward side of the Recti.

The *seventh* called *Obliquum inferius*, *arises* from the second Vertebra of the Neck, and is *inserted* into the transverse Process of the first Vertebra.

The Use of the two oblique Muscles, is to bring the Head about to the Sides.

The *eighth* called *Mastoides*, *arises* long and round in the forepart of the Neck, for the most part double, from the upper part of the Breast-bone and the Clavicula: it is *inserted* with a fleshy and thick End, into the Mammillary Process, which it embraces. Its Use is to turn the Head.

A *ninth* pare is added by *Fallopius*, under the Throat, in the forepart of the Neck, lying near the first pare of the Neck. It *arises* nervous from the Ligaments of the Vertebra's of the Neck; and is *inserted* into the Basis of the Head, which it turns in like manner with the former.

## Chap. VI.
## *Of the Muscles of the Neck.*

THe Muscles of the Neck are on each side *four*. The two first extend, the two others do bend the same.

I. The two Long Ones lie hid under the Oesophagus or Gullet, arising from the first Vertebra of the Chest, with a beginning fleshy and sharp, they ascend into the extuberant Process of the first Vertebra, with an acute tendon, and sometimes are inserted into the Occiput, near its great Hole.

Its Use is, to bend the Neck right forwards and the Head withal: and if but one act, it turns it on the one side.

The Scaleni so called, which some count Muscles of the Chest, have a peculiar Hole, through which Veins and Arteries enter into the Arms. They *arise* fleshy, at the side of the Neck, from the first Rib; they are *inserted* inwardly into all the Vertebra's for the most part of the Neck, and especially into their transverse Processes.

III. The Transversales *duo*, seated in the back, *do rise from* the six Vertebra's of the Chest which are uppermost and outmost: they are *inserted* externally into all the transverse Processes of the Vertebra's of the Neck. And between these Nerves go out. Their Use is, to extend or to bend backwards, but if one act alone, to move obliquely.

IV. The two Spinati possess the whole Neck between the Spinæ, and are long and large. They *arise* from five Spines of the Vertebra's of the Neck, and seven of the Chest. They are strongly *implanted* into the whole lower part of the Spine of the second Vertebra. Their Use is the same as of the third pare.

## Chap. VII. *Of the Muscles of the Back and Loins.*

THe *Spine of the Back* or *Back-bone* is moved forward, backward, to the right and to the left, and circularly. Yea and in tumblers we may see infinite motions of the Back. For tendons are brought to all the Vertebra's, as though the Muscles were many and infinite; which tendons nevertheless many Anatomists do refer to some one great Muscle, and say that one Muscle hath many tendons. But commonly, they make four pare of Muscles of the Back: where it is to be observed, if only one act, the Back-bone is moved side-waies, if the pare acts, it is either bended or extended.

The first pare is termed Quadratum, adhering to the transverse Processes of the Vertebra's of the Loins;

## The FIGURE Explained.

This TABLE presents certain Muscles which do first offer themselves to sight, in the Hinder-part of the Body.

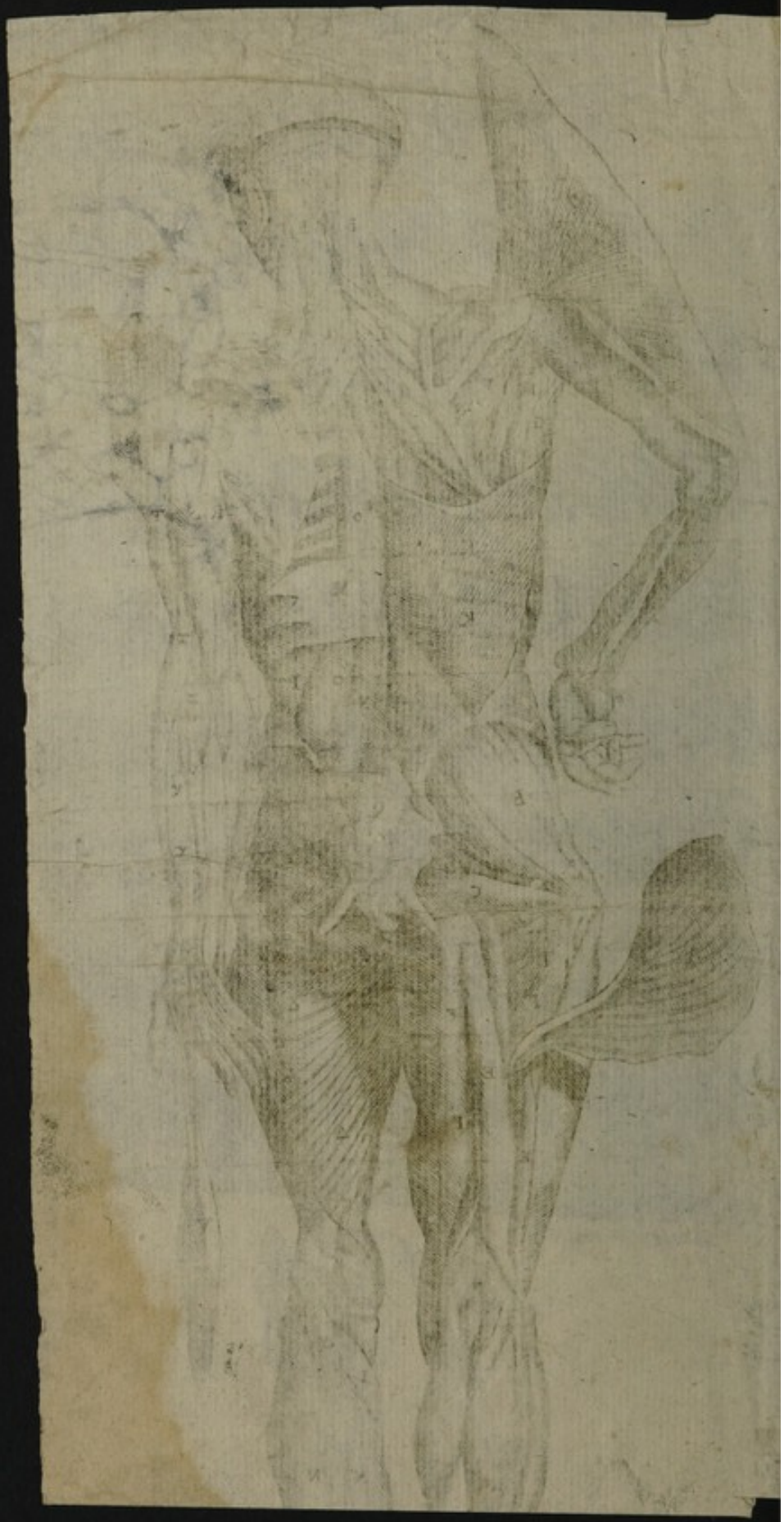
aa. *The Muscles of the Head called Complexi.*
BB. *The Muscles called Splenij.*
CC. *The two Levators Scapulæ.*
D. *The Trapezius or Cucullaris out of its place.*
E. *The Supra spinatus.*
F. *The Infra spinatus.*
G. *The Rotundus major.*
h. *The Rotundus minor.*
II. *The Rhomboides.*
KK. *The Dorsi latissimus.*
L. *The Serratus posticus superior.*
M. *The Serratus posticus inferior.*
NN. *The Dorsi longissimus.*
OO. *The Sacrolumbus.*
P. *The Quadratus.*
Q. *The Sacer Dorsi musculus.*
R. *The musculus longus which extends the Arm.*
S. *The musculus brevis, the other Arm-extender.*
TT. *The Supinator Brachij alter, according to our Author, see the first pare in the next Table.*
V. *The Extensor Carpi primus, which some term Bicornis*
W. *The Extensor Carpi secundus.* (here hanging down.
XXxx. *The two Extensores Digitorum.*
Z. *The External Apophysis of the Shoulder.*
Δ. *The Deltoides.*
T. *The Brachieus.*

### These following Characters demonstrate the Muscles of the lower Limbs.

A. *The Glutæus major out of its place.*
B. *The Glutæus medius in its place.*
C. *The Pyriformis Musculus.*
D. *The Obturatus internus or Marsupialis.*
EE. *The Biceps which bends the Leg.*
gg. *The Seminervosus.*
hh. *The Gracilis.*
III. *The Triceps of the left Side.*
K. *The Vastus externus.*
ΔΔΔ. *The Triceps of the right Side.*
LL. *The Popliteus.*
MM. *The two Gastrocnemij, which on the left side are in their proper Situation, on the right side out of the same.*
NN. *The Musculus soleus.*
O. *The Musculus plantaris.*

arising


between 164 and 165



ariſing inwardly from the Bones Ilium and Sacrum, broad and fleſhy. *Riolanus* would rather bring them from the tranſverſe Apophyſes of the two lower Vertebra's of the Back, and the laſt Rib, that it might with the oblique deſcending Muſcles and the right ones, agitate and move forwards the Fabrick of the *Oſſa Ilij*. Howbeit, ſeeing that *Hypotheſis* is as yet uncertain, and himſelf confeſſes with *Cajus*, that the buſineſs is to be underſtood, of the bowing of the Loins, and the frame of the Ilian Bones; according to the Original by me aſſigned, the Uſe of this Muſcle is rather to bend the Vertebra's of the Loins.

The *ſecond* being called LONGISSIMUM, *ariſes* with an acute and ſtrong Tendon, without tendinous, within fleſhy, from the end of Os ſacrum, the Vertebra's of the Loins, and the Os Ilij; having the ſame beginning with the Sacrolumbus, wherewith it is in a manner confounded, til in the Progreſs it is ſeparated therfrom, by the loweſt Vertebra of the Back. And it is joyned afterward to each tranſverſe proceſs of the Vertebra's of the Loins and Back, unto which it affords tendons like *Claſpes*, and at length ends ſomtimes into the firſt Vertebra of the Cheſt, ſomtimes at the mammillary proceſſes, near the Temples-bone. Its *Uſe* is, to extend the Cheſt, Loins, and their Vertebra's.

The *third* under this, is that which is called SACRUM, becauſe it *ariſes* from the Os ſacrum behind, being fleſhy, and ends into the Spina of the twelfth Vertebra of the Cheſt (or as others ſay, into the Spines alſo, and oblique proceſſes of the Vertebra's of the Loins) with ſundry tendons. The *Uſe* is as of the former.

The *fourth* the SEMISPINATUM, *ariſing* where the former ends, and embracing all the Spines of the Vertebra's of the Cheſt, and giving them tendons; and *it ends* into the Spine of the firſt Vertebra of the Cheſt. Its *Uſe* is to rear up the Cheſt.

If all eight act, they hold the Back ſtraight, and do as it were ſuſtain a man. Nor are there any muſcles of the Loins, ſave theſe, and what have been explained before, which I have omitted, as *Riolanus* objects, or whereof I have been ignorant.

## Chap. VIII. *Of the Muſcles of the Cubitus and Radius.*

*An Order in Diſſection.*

THe *Muſcles* of the CUBIT, according to the arbitrary Method of Diſſection follow. Yet I do adviſe the Diſſector, that the Muſcles of the Radius are not to be ſhewed immediately after theſe, but laſt of all; but after the Muſcles of the Cubit, thoſe of the fingers, thumb and wriſt; becauſe the Muſcles of theſe parts being ſhewn and removed, the Inſertions of the Muſcles of the Radius, are more conveniently diſcerned. Otherwiſe the Brachium may follow next after the demonſtration of the Muſcles of the Cubitus and Radius, by an Order free for any one to follow.

The Muſcles of the Cubit are *four*, and of the RADIUS as many.

There are two Benders of the Cubit as the *Biceps* and *Brachiæus*: two Extenders, viz. the *Longus* and the *Brevis*.

There are two Pronators of the Radius, the *Rotundus* and the *Quadratus*, and two Supinators, the *Longior* and *Brevior*.

For the proper Motion of the Cubit is flection and extenſion. But the Radius makes the whole Arm prone or ſupine.

The firſt of the Cubit is termed BICEPS, becauſe of its double diſtinct *Beginning*, which is from the Scapula, the one tendinous and round, from the upper lid of the Acetabulum, the other broader and leſs tendinous, from the *Proceſſus anconiformis*. And it is *inſerted* with the Head of the Radius, and poſſeſſes the inner part of the Arm with its Body. The tendon of this Muſcle ought in Blood-letting to be taken heed of

The ſecond lying under this, and ſpred out upon the bone it ſelf, being ſhort, is called BRACHIÆUS; tis all fleſhy, leſs then the former; *ariſes* from the middle bone of the Brachium, and is before *inſerted* into the common beginning of the Cubitus and Radius, and the Ligament of the Joynt.

The third is the EXTENDENS *primus* and LONGUS, it *ariſes* with a double beginning, from the lower Rib of the Scapula, is ended being fleſhy in the Olecranum.

The fourth is the EXTENDENS *ſecundus* and BREVIS; it *ariſes* from the Neck of the Humerus, is behind mixed with the precedent, and occupies the *Os Humeri*; and it ends into the part of the Olecranon on which we lean.

*Caſſerius* adds a fift called *tertius extendens*, which others count a portion of the fourth Muſcle; but he counts it a diſtinct Muſcle, as later Anatomiſts *Riolanus* and *Veſlingus* do, which they term *Anconeus*. But he would have it to be a portion of his *Brachiæus*, becauſe it ſticks ſomtimes cloſe to the fleſhy Extremity thereof, and to anſwer to the *Poplitæus*, that an equality may be mainrained between the foot and the hand. It ſprings out of the hinder extremity of the Shoulder, by the end of the fourth and third Muſcle, and paſſing beyond the Joynt of the Cubit, it is alſo *inſerted* by its hinder and lateral part, yet not above a fingers breadth beyond the Olecranon, into the *Os Cubiti*.

Moreover *Galen* ſeems to add a ſixt, which is the fourth Extender, viz. a fleſhy Lump hudled up of the two former, which *Riolanus* calls *Brachiæus externus*, to difference it from the *Brachiæus internus flectens*, becauſe being ſpred out upon the outſide of the Brachium, it is placed under the two former.

The firſt Muſcle of the Radius is termed ROTUNDUS, or *Teres*; from the inner Apophyſis of the Arm by a ſtrong and fleſhy beginning, it ends obliquely very near into the middle of the Radius, with a fleſhy end, and likewiſe a membranous tendon, which *Spigelius* writes, does go again to the middle of the Radius, and it knit to the outward ſide of the ſaid Radius.

The ſecond QUADRATUS, reaching from the loweſt part of the Cubitæ, into the loweſt of the Radius, wholly fleſhy, every where two fingers broad; it goes above that Ligament common to the Radius and Cubitus. Theſe are the *Manus pronatores*.

The third is the SUPINATOR PRIMUS, from the lower part of the Brachium growing ſharp, till it reach into the lower part of the Radius, fleſhy, where it is *inſerted* with a tendinous End.

The fourth is the SUPINATOR ALTER, growing from the outward Apophyſis of the Arm, fleſhy, membranous without, fleſhy within, and is *inſerted* into the middle welnear of the Radius.

Among the Muſcles of the Radius *Caſſerius* once found two little ones, and very ſmall, about the Joynt Cubit, and proceeding in an oppoſite faſhion, and moving the radius Prone and Supine like a Pulley. Howbeit, I found them not as yet. I have ſomtimes ſeen in their place, in a muſculous man, one *triangular*

Muſcle, ariſing from the top of the Shoulder, and ending about the middle of the ſame, with a fleſhy and narrow end, nor was it the portion of any Muſcle, all which we had before diligently ſeparated.

## Chap. IX. *Of the Muſcles of the Wriſt and Fingers.*

TO the *Muſcles* of the WRIST and the *Hollow* of the Hand, is the *Muſculus* PALMARIS referred, ariſing from the inner Apophyſis of the Arm, with a round and tendinous beginning, ſpred almoſt over all the Muſcles of the Hand, it is ſtretched out over the Hollow of the Hand, and cleaves exceeding faſt to the Skin: where under the Skin in the hollow of the hand is a broad Tendon; whence proceeds that exquiſite Senſe which is in that part: and it ends into the firſt Intervals between the Joynts of the Fingers: it ſeems to have been made, that the Hand might take the better hold, when the Skin of the Palm is wrinkled.

To this they ad the *Membrana carnoſa* which they wil have to open the Palm of the Hand when it is contracted; alſo a *four ſquare Parcel* of *Fleſh* growing out of that Membrane, reſembling certain Muſcles; either to extend the Palm when the Hand is open, as *Spigelius* conceives, or to make it hollow, which *Riolanus* would have.

The Muſcles of the Wriſt or CARPUS are *four*; two *Benders* which are internal; two *Extenders*, which are external.

The *firſt Bender* (which *Riolanus* calls *Cubiteus internus*, to whom we are beholden for theſe Names) ariſing from the internal Apophyſis of the Arm, and being ſtretched over the Elbow, it is implanted with a thick Tendon, into the fourth Bone of the Wriſt.

The other, *Radius internus* becauſe it is drawn along the Radius, *ariſing* from the ſame *beginning ends* into the firſt Bone of the Metacarpium, under the forefinger.

The *Extenſor primus*, or *Radieus externus*, ariſes with a broad Beginning, from the external Apophyſis of the Arm, and then growing more fleſhy and ſpred out upon the Radius, and *ends* into a double Tendon, at the firſt and ſecond Bone of *Os Metacarpi*.

The *other*, *Cubitens externus*, from the ſame beginning, through the length of the Cubit, goes with one Tendon into the fourth Bone of the Metacarpe under the little Finger.

The FINGERS are *bended*, *extended*, *drawn to*, and *drawn away*.

Bended by the Muſcles *Sublimis* and *Profundus*.

The *former* from the inner Apophyſis of the Arm, before it comes to the Wriſt, is divided into four Tendons, incloſed in a Ligament, as it were in a Ring: they are inſerted into the ſecond Joynting of the Fingers, a Cleft being firſt made, which the Tendons of the following Muſcle do paſs through, whence it is termed *Perforatus*, the bored Muſcle.

The latter ſpred out under the former and like unto it, is inſerted through the Clifts of the former Tendons, into the Joynting. And therefore it is called *Perforans*, the Borer.

Concerning theſe Ligaments of the Fingers, it is to be obſerved. 1. That by an elegant Workmanſhip of Nature, a long ſlit is made in each of them, that the Ligaments of the third Joynting may paſs through them,

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

This TABLE ſhews the reſt of the Muſcles, which are viſible in the Hind-part of the Body, thoſe which lay by them or over them being removed.

aa. *The Muſcles of the Head called* Recti minores.
bb. *The Recti majores ſo called.*
cc. *The obliqui Superiores.*
dd. *The obliqui Inferiores.*
α. *The Levator Scapulæ.*
β. *The Rotundus minor.*
γ. *The Serratus major.*
EE. *The Muſculi tranſverſales belonging to the Neck.*
ffff. *The Spinati duo.*
GG. *The Sacrolumbus.*
HH. *The Dorſi longiſſimus in its proper Situation.*
II. *The ſame out of its place, that it may be ſeen.*
K. *The Semiſpinatus of the Back.*
LL. *The ſacer Muſculus of the Back.*
MM. *The Muſculi Quadrati of the Back.*
N. *The firſt Supinator Brachij.*
O. *The firſt Extenſor Carpi, or the Bicornis out of its proper place.*
P. *The other Extenſor Carpi.*
QQ. *The two Extenſores Digitorum out of their place.*
R. *The Extenſor Judicis.*
SS. *The two Pollicem extendentes.*

### Theſe following Characters deſign the Muſcles of the lower Limbs.

A. *The Glutæus medius out of its place.*
B. *The Glutæus minimus in its place.*
CC *The ſame out of its place.*
DD. *The Pyriformis on both ſides.*
E. *The Marſupialis, or Obturator internus.*
F. *The ſame in the left ſide out of its place.*
G. *The Marſupium neatly expreſſed.*
H.H *The Obturator externus.*
K. *The fourth of the Quadrageminii, by the Author called* Quadratus.
LL. *The Biceps which bends the Leg.*
MM. *The Semimembranoſus.*
NN. *The Seminervoſus.*
OO. *The Gracilis.*
Δ. *The Muſculus triceps.*
Γ. *The Cruræus.*
PP. *The Tibiæus poſticus.*
QQ. *The Flexor Digitorum Pedis, Magnus or Perforans.*
R. *The Flexor minor or Perforatus.*
SSS. *The Flexor Pollicis.*
τ. *The Pollicis Adductor.*
υ. *The Pollicis Abductor.*
χ. *The Abductor minimi.*
ζ. *The fleſhy Maſs in the Sole of the Foot.*

between 166 and 167

them as through an Arch. 2 That the membranous ſheath does ſtraitly embrace and keep in the ſaid Tendons, leaſt in the bending of the hand, they ſhould be removed out of their place. 3 That a ſtrong membranous Ring does in the wriſt bind together all the Tendons internal and external, which being cut aſunder, they are eaſily removed out of their places.

*Iacobus Silvius* reckons the *Extenſores* for one Muſcle; and calls it Tenſor Digitorum, whereas both their Originals and Inſertions doe vary. They are two and ariſe commonly from the external Apophyſis of the Arm, and the ring-faſhioned ligament, and with their bored ligaments, being firſt collected, they are then *inſerted* confuſedly into the ſecond and third joynt.

The Fingers are drawn to by four muſcles called *Lumbricales* or *Vermiculares* worm-faſhioned muſcles, from their ſhape and ſmallneſs. They ariſe from the tendons of the Muſculus profundus, and being drawn out along the ſides of the fingers, they are obliquely carried unto the third joynting. *Spigelius* and *Veſtingius* will have them to be inſerted by a round tendon only into the firſt joynting, whom I have ſomtimes found to be in the right, their tendon being mixed with the membranes of the interjuncture.

The *Abductores interoſſei* are ſix, in the ſpaces of the Metacarp, three external and three internal, which joyning with the vemiculary do goe along the outſides and inſides of the fingers, and ſtretch their tendons to the three inter-joyntings. They ſerve in ſome meaſure for extenſion. The *External* reſt upon the Palm, the *Internal* upon the hollow of the Hand, between the bones of the Metacarp.

The *Muſcles* which bend the *Thumb* are two.

The firſt *ariſeing* from the upper part of the radius is inſerted into one of the joynts.

The other *ariſeing* from the wriſt bone, under the Thumb, is *inſerted* into the middle of the ſaid Thumb. It lies wholly under the former.

There are two extendentes or ſtretchers out, which ariſe from the Cubit. The firſt reaches unto the third Interjuncture, the other unto the ſecond, and the reſt, with many tendons; ſometimes one, ſometimes two, and otherwhiles three.

The *Abducentes* are three; two ariſeing from the Metacarpium, and the third from the bone of the Metacarp, which looks towards the forefinger: which *Riolanus* cals *Antitheneh*, as the other the former of the bringers to *Hypothenar Pollicis*.

The *Abducentes* or drawers away are three nameleſs muſcles, ſave that the ſaid *Riolanus* calls one of them *Thenar*.

The *Forefinger* has two proper muſcles, which ſome confound the firſt is the Abductor, ariſeing from the firſt Interjoynting of the Thumb, and terminated into the bones of the Forefinger, wherewith the ſaid Forefinger is drawn from the reſt of the Fingers, towards the Thumb.

The other is the *Indicis extenſor* the ſtretcher of the Forefinger which *Riolanus* calls *Indicatorem* the pointer, as alſo *Veſtingius*, though he confound it with the Abductor. It *ariſes* from the middle and external part of the Cubit, and *ends* with a double tendon, into the ſecond interjointure of the foreſinger.

there are alſo two muſcles proper to the ſmalleſt finger, the *Abductor* and *Extenſor*. The former may be parted into many: It ariſes in the hollow of the hand, from the third and fourth wriſt bones of the ſecond rank, and ends externally into the ſide of the firſt joint of the ſaid finger. *Aquapendent* and others that have ſince followed him, do hold that it draws the little finger outwardly, from the reſt. *Extenſor* proprius, which *Riolanus* exactly ſeperates from the great one, *ariſeing* from the upper part of the radius, and carryed along Cubitus and the Radius, is externally inſerted into the finger, with a double tendon,

## Chap. 10. *Of the Legg and Thigh in generall.*

*PES* the Leg and Thigh, is all between the Buttocks and the Toes of the Feet: Others call it *magnus pes*, the great Foot, and *Crus*. It is *divided* into its parts, as the Arm, in a manner not unlike viz. Into the *Femur*, *Tibia*, and *Parvus Pes*. | *Pes what?*

Again the Parvus Pes is divided into *Pedium*, *Metapedium*, and *Digits*.

The *Uſe* of the Leg and Thigh, is to be the Inſtrument of walking: which is performed by ſtirring and ſitting. For one Leg being firmly ſet upon the ground, we move and bring about the other, and our Foot being firmly fixt, keeps us from falling: and ſo we come to walk. The ſetting therefore of our Leg is the Motion of the whole Body, but the motion proceeds from the Leg, which the length or ſhortneſs of the Leg does either help or hinder; and therefore birds becauſe they were to flie, that their bulk might not hinder them, they have a ſhort Thigh and long Feet, which makes the going be ſlow. But Men go ſlower then Dogs, becauſe the ſucceſſive putting on of their Foot from the Heel to the Toes, ſlackens their motion; whereas Dogs with one motion of their little Feet do paſs along. Some do conceive that the length of a womans Leg helps to generation. Now there is an Inciſion made into our knees and heel, that we might not go leaping.

This Motion is variouſly made by the muſcles of the Thigh, Leg and Foot We are therefore now to treat of the Muſcles of the whole Leg.

## Chap. 11. *Of the Muſcles of the Thigh.*

THe *Thigh* is *bended* by two Muſcles.

The firſt is in the Belly, and is termed *Pſoas* or the *Muſculus Lumbaris* it ariſes with a fleſhy beginning from the upper Vertebraes of the Loines, and is *inſerted* into the forepart of the ſmal Trochanter, with a round and ſtrong tendon,

The other muſcle called *Pſoas* minor I found in a ſtrong fleſhy body at *Hafnia*, 1651 differing from that which *Riolanus* brags to have ſeen. For the greater part it lay under, but outwardly inclined more to the ſides. The *beginning* was fleſhy, and the whole muſcle was three fingers broad. It was *inſerted* fleſhy, into the upper brim of Os Ilij backwards, where the Iliacus internus ariſes. I conceived that its *uſe* was to ſpread as a pillow under the greater muſcle, becauſe the Os Ilij is of it ſelf immoveable, or to hold the Os Ilij upright, that it might not burthen a man to much when he ſtands. *Michael Lyſerus* a moſt-expert anatomiſt can witneſs the ſame with me.

The *Iliacus ſecundus* is inſerted in the ſame place, with a tendon which grows to the tendon of the precedent muſcle, *ariſeing* from the whole internal cavity of the Os Ilij, by a ſmal and fleſhy beginning.

The

The Thigh is extended by three muſcles of the Buttocks termed *Glutæi*.

I. Is the *Major*, externus et ampliſſimus, beginning at the Crupper, the ſpina of Os Ilij, and the Os ſacrum; and ends into the Os Femoris, under the great trochanter.

II. The other is the *medius* or middlemoſt in Situation and Magnitude. It ariſes from the inner ſide of the Spina of Os Ilij, ending into ths great trochanter with a broad and ſtrong tendon.

III. The third called *minimus* the ſmalleſt, lies concealed under the middlemoſt; It *ariſes* from the back of Os Ilij near the Acetabulum with a broad and ſtrong tendon, and *Ends* into the great trochanter.

Theſe three do make up the fleſhy Subſtance of the Buttocks.

*The Thigh is drawn to, and wheeled about inwards* by three muſcles, which many do reckon for one, and cal it *triceps* triple headed, becauſe of its threefold beginning. 1 Is from the upper joynting of the Os pubis. 2 Is from the loweſt joynting of Os pubis. 3 Is from the middle part of the ſaid bone. They are *inſerted* firſt of all into the inner head of the Thigh bone, near the Ham, with a round tendon, or into the rough line of the Thigh. 2 to the upper, partly. 3 partly to the lower, at the Rotator minor. *Riolanus* has other inſertions: For he wil have the firſt to be inſerted into the middle of the Thigh, the ſecond to be produced with a very ſtrong Tendon as far as to the End of the Thigh, the third below the neck of the Thigh-bone.

To theſe *Spigelius* and *Veſtingus* do ad one which they call *Lividus* ariſeing at the joyning of Os pubis, neat the Griſtle, and implanted with a ſhort tendon, into the inner ſide of the thigh: but they grant that this is a portion of the Triceps. But they do ill to reckon it among the bending muſcles. But *Riolanus* cals it *Pectineus* and reckons it for a bender, yet acknowledges that it is the uppermoſt and fourth portion of the triceps, which with *Fallopius* he divides into four muſcles, and indeed it ſeems to have ſo many parts.

*It is drawn away and turned about outwards by ſix* Muſcles: the *Quadrigemini* and the two *Obturatores*.

The *Quadrigemini* are in a manner one like another, and little, placed as it were athwart, *ariſeing* from the lower and outer part of the Os ſatrum, the bunch of Os Iſchij, and the Appendix of the Hip-bone. They are *inſerted* into ihat ſpace which is between the two Trochanters. The firſt Quadrigeminus is called *Pyriformis* Pear-faſhioned, becauſe of its ſhape, and *Iliacus* externus from its Situation; the reſt want names, have the fourth, which is called *Quadratus*.

The *Obturatores* ſtoppers, take up the wide hole between the Os pubis and Os Iſchij. And they are external or internal, the former ariſeing from the outer Circle of the hole of the ſhare: the latter from the inner and they are inſerted into the great trochanter: the inner may be termed *Burſalis* or purſe-faſhioned becauſe it hides the fourfold tendons in a fleſhy purſe as it were, neatly ſhaped by the third and fourth quadrigeminal Muſcles.

## Chap. 12. *Of the Muſcles of the Legg.*

THe *Leg is bent* by the four muſculi poſtici.

One of them has two *Heads*, termed *Biceps* the *firſt* fromthe joining of the Os pubis, the *ſecond* from the outer part of the thigh, and both of them are *inſerted* with one tendon, the fleſhy ſubſtance being firſt increaſed in the middle, into the hinder part of the Leg.

The ſecond called *Semimembranoſus ariſes* from the ſwelling of the Iſchium, and is inſerted into the inner ſide of the Leg, backwards.

The third is the *Seminervoſus*, and has the ſame beginning and the ſame end with the former, ſave that in the hinderparts it is carried little forward obliquely, before it terminates at the inſide of the Leg.

The fourth is the *Gracilis*, which is inſerted into the ſame place, and ariſes from the joyning of the ſhare-bone.

*Four* Muſcles *extend* the Leg.

The firſt is the *Rectus*, ariſeing with an acute tendon from the outer and lower Spine of the Ilium.

The ſecond and third are the two Vaſti, the *external* ariſeing from the whole root, the great trochanters, and the bone of the Thigh which lies under: the *Inner* from the ſmall Trochanter: they are terminated on each hand at the ſide of the *Rectus*.

The fourth is the *Cruræus*, fixed to the Thigh bone, as the *brachiæus* is to the Brachium.

Theſe four Muſcles, are *terminated* into one tendon, which embraceing the ſubſtance of the fleſh into it ſelf, it is inſerted before into the beginning of the Leg, and is there inſtead of a Ligament for it.

Two Muſcles, pul it to, inwards.

The firſt is the *longus*, *faſcialis* or *ſartorius* which *Spigelius* and *Veſtingius* reckon among the benders, on which Tailors or Botchers reſt them ſelvs when they ſit croſs-leg'd. It is well nigh the longeſt of all muſcles, *ariſeing* from the formore Spina of Os Ilij, and *deſcending* obliquely unto the inner and fore-part of the Leg.

The other is the *Popliteus ariſeing* from the lower and outer extuberancy of the Thigh, and being *inſerted* four-ſquare into the inner and upper part of the leg obliquely.

The *Abductor* is one, which is called Membranoſus and *faſcia lata*.

It *ariſes* fleſhy from the Spina of Os Ilij, and is *carried* obliquely, into the outer part of the Leg, and with its moſt broad and long tendon, inveſts well-near all the Muſcles of the Thigh.

## Chap. XIII. *Of the Muſcles of the Feet.*

THe *Foot* is bended and extended. Two muſcles bend it forwards.

The *firſt* is termed *tibiæus anticus*, affixed to the Leg ariſeing from the upper proceſs thereof, it is *inſerted* into the Os Pedij, before the great Toe, with a tendon which at the end is divided into two.

The other is *Peroneus biceps*, which others count for two muſcles, one head ariſeing from the upper Epiphiſis of the Fibula, the other from the middle of the Perone. It has a double tendon the leſſer carried into the bone of the little toe; and the greater going obliquely under the ſole of the Foot, is inſerted into the Os pedij juſt againſt the great toe.

Tis extended backwards by the four *Poſtici duo gemelli* the internall and the external, called Gaſtrocnemij, becauſe they conſtitute the ankle, and ariſe from the inner and outer head of the thigh under the Ham. The *third* being cald *ſoleus* is added to theſe beneath,

ariſing

ariſeing from the hindermore appendix of the fibula. Theſe three muſcles are terminated into a moſt thick and ſtrong tendon, to be inſerted into the beginning of the Heel and Pterna, by which beaſts being killed, are uſual hung up. *Hippocrates* did term it *chorda*: where by reaſon of the fracture of the Heel, he ſaies that hiccuping and convulſive fevers do follow.

The laſt is called *plantaris* and anſwers to the palmaris in the hand; it is lean and meagre, and degenerates into a long tendon, and covering the whole ſole of the foot, it *ariſes* from the outer head of the Thigh bone, under the Ham: and is *inſerted* into the five toes, and has the ſame uſe here which it has in the Hand: though the compariſon of one to the other holds not out very exact. *Veſlingius* has obſerved that this muſcle has ſometimes bin wanting.

The *Tibiæus poſticus* muſt be added to theſe, which *Spigelius* reckons amongſt the obliquely movers, and *Riolanus* among the extenders.

## Chap. 14. *Of the Muſcles of the Toes.*

THe Toes of the foot are moved by muſcles, as well as the fingers of the hand.

Two muſcles *bend* the Toes, the *Magnus* which anſwers to the profundus, ariſeing from the upper Epiphiſis of the Tibia, under the ſole is divided into four tendons, which boreing through the minor, they are implanted into the third Articulation of the four toes. The *Minor* anſwering to the ſublimis, is the midſt of the ſole of the foot, *ariſing* from the lower part of the pterna or heel bone, it is carried into the ſecond articulation of the four toes, to which before it comes it is bored thorough, that it may tranſmit the tendons of the foremore Muſcle: and therefore this is called perforatus, the other perforans.

One muſcle *extends* the four toes of the foot, which is by ſome divided into two; ariſeing from the upper and outer part of the tibia, and having four tendons, which are inſerted into the ſecond and third Interjuncture.

The four *wormfaſhioned* Muſcles do *draw them to*, anſwering to thoſe in the Hand, ſome fleſh being interſprinkled from the Heel: They are faſtened by ſo many tendons to the firſt interjoynting.

The ten *Interoſſei* do draw them away, *ariſeing* from the bones of the pedium, and falling the void ſpaces of the Metapedium, they are external or internal, the former with a broad tendon do ariſe by the ſides, to the firſt interjoynting of the toes by the ſides; the latter at the ſecond interjoynting; but the ninth *ſervs* for the drawing-to of the great Toe, the tenth for the drawing to of the little toe.

The *great Toe* has peculiar muſcles.

It is *bent* by one only, proceeding from the upper part of the fibula, and inſerted into the third interjointing (*Riolanus* ſaies the firſt) of the great toe.

It is *extended* by another, ariſeing from the middle of the Fibula (or as ſome ſay from the out ſide of the tibia, where it receeds from the Fibula) which is oftentimes divided into two tendons.

It is *brought* to, with one, inwardly faſtened to the greateſt bone of the pedium.

It is *drawn away* by one *ariſeing* fleſhy from the inner part of the heel, and *entring* extrinſecally into the firſt bone of the great toe.

Now there is a *new muſcle* found out above the Interoſſeans, the firſt Inventor whereof is *Caſſerius*; who calls it *tranverſalis*, becauſe of its ſituation. *Veſlingius* call it the *Adductor pollicis minor*, which uſe nature ſeems to have intended.

It *ariſes* nervous and broad, from the ligament of the firſt interjuncture of the little Toe, and ſometime from one of the toes next the little toe; and by and by becomeing fleſhy and ſo continueing, it is carryed athwart over the firſt joints of the fingers, and with a ſhort and broad tendon, it is *implanted* into the firſt joynt of the Great-toe, a little inwards.

The *Uſe* hereof is, to ſecure our walking, when we paſs through rough waies, full of round flints, or over any other ſmal, ſlippery, or rowling paſſage. For by help of this muſcle, the foot does accomodate it ſelf to the figure of the Bodies wee tread on, and laies hold thereon as it were, that it might make its paſſage more ſtead-faſt.

The *Abductor* of the little toe, ſticking in the outſide of the foot broad and vaſt, ariſeing from the ſame part of the heel, is inſerted into the outſide of the firſt Interjuncture.

I have obſerved a peculiar *bender* of the little toe, long, round, ariſeing from the head of the Tibia, and divided with two tendons about the inſertion of the toe

Finally a *fleſhy maſs* is to be obſerved in the ſole of the foot, as well as in the Palm of the hand, wherewith our footing is faſtened as with a cuſhion, and the tendons of the muſcles do lie hidden, in a ſoft Pillow.

# THE FIRST MANUAL Concerning the Veins,

Answering to the

# FIRST BOOK OF THE Lower Belly.

ABove, in the Proæm of this Anatomical work, I promised *four Books*, and *four little Books or Manuals*. Four *Books* touching the three Cavities and the Limbs; Four *Manuals*, viz. touching the *Veins*, *Arteries*, *Nerves* and *Bones*. Now every Manual answers to its Book. Because from the lower Cavity, namely, the principal part thereof, the *Liver* arise the *Veins*; from the Heart in the middle Cavity the *Arteries*; from the Marrow in the third Cavity the Nerves, and to the Limbs the Bones do answer. And even as the Bones joyned together do make a peculiar Fabrick or Skeleton, representing the form of the whol Animal; so also do the Veins, Arteries and Nerves. And *Gulielmus Fabricius Hildanus* a Famous Chyrurgeon hath such a Frame of all the Veins of the Body artificially separated; and at *Padua* by the Instruction of *Ad. Spigelius*, and *John Vesslingius*, and *John Leonicenus* such Frames of the Veins Arteries and Nerves seperated from the body, are commonly to be seen at *Padua*; and the like is to be seen here at *Hafnia* acurately made, and explained in four very great Tables, in the Custody of the renowned D. D. *Henricus Fuiren* my Cosin Germane.

The *Veins*, *Arteries* and *Nerves* are Organs or common vessels of the Body, through which some spirit, with or without Blood, is carried from some principal member, into sundry parts of the Body.

## Chap. 1. *Of a Vein in General.*

*What a Vein is.*

A *Vein* is a common Organ, round, long, hollow like a channel or Conduit pipe, fit to carry or bring back Blood and Natural Spirit.

The term *Vein* was by the *Ancients* given both to Veins and Arteries; but they cal'd the Arteries pulsing Veins, and the Veins not pulsing Veins. and some called Vein, the greater Vein, and an Artery the lesser Vein and the *Aorta*.

The *Efficient* of a Vein, is the proper vein-making power or faculty.

The *Matter* according to *Hippocrates* is a clammy and cold portion of the Seed. And this is the principle of a Veins Original.

But the *Principle* of Dispensation from whence the Veins arise, is the *Liver* (not to speak of some ancient triflers, who would derive the Veins from the Brain) and not the Heart, as *Aristotle* would have it.

*'Tis proved against* Aristotle *that the Liver, not the Heart is the Original of the Veins.*

For,

1. Blood is made in the Liver. And therefore 'tis like the original and rise of the Veins is there. and that the first sanguification is not made in the Heart is apparent, because there are no passages to conveigh the Chylus to the Heart; again there are no receptacles for the Excrements of the first concoction placed by the Heart. But all these requisites are found in the Liver.

*Blood is not made in the Heart.*

2. Blood is carried from the Liver to the Heart, but not from the Heart immediately to the Liver. For Blood cannot go out of the Heart into the Liver, because of the Valves; though mediately when it runs back out of the Arteries, it may be carried thither.

3. Fishes have no right Ventricle in their Hearts, in which they would have Blood to be made; and out of which they would have the Veins to arise, and the Fishes have both Veins and Blood.

4. The *Vena portæ* touches not the Heart but the Liver, which the *Cava* also touches: which two Veins are the greatest in the whole body. But according to *Aristotle*

ſtotle all Veins ought to be continued with the Heart. You will ſay; the *Vena arteriosa* does not touch the Liver. I anſwer, neither ought it, ſo no do: becauſe it hath the ſubſtance of an Artery, and therefore ariſes from the Heart. But *Arteria Venoſa*, is a Vein in ſubſtance and uſe, and in the Child in the womb, was continued with the *Cava*.

5. In the Child in the womb, the Navil-vein with Blood goes into the Liver, not into the Heart.

6. If the Veins ſhould ariſe from the Heart, they would pulſe as the Arteries do, for the whole Heart pulſes.

7. Sanguification is never hurt, but when the Liver is hurt, as in a Dropſie, &c.

Theſe are the chief reaſons for this Opinion: but many other reaſons of others men againſt *Ariſtotle* I reject as weak and eaſily refuted, as alſo many weak reaſons of the Peripateticks, againſt this Opinion which we aſſert, which any one may eaſily anſwer, if he be at leaſt but lightly skilled in Anatomy.

*The Uſe of the Veins. According to the Ancients.*

The *End* and *Uſe* of a Vein is,

I. According to the Opinion of the Ancients, to carry Blood and Natural Spirit with the Natural faculty, from the Liver into all parts of the Body to nouriſh the ſame.

*According to later Authors the Primary Uſe.*

But Nature hath revealed otherwiſe to their Poſterity: for neither do the Veins carry any thing from the Liver to nouriſh the parts with, nor is the Venal Blood uſeful for nutrition. But they bring back all the Blood, only to the Heart by *Circulation*, either mediately by the Liver, as the Meſaraick Veins, or immediately, as the *Cavæ*; and that either from the whole body, from the ſmalleſt branches to the greateſt, by the upper and lower branch; or from the Liver whether it be there generated, or is derived from the Meſaraicks and Arteries.

And that they bring the Blood to the Heart as to the Centre, and that they bring it from the ſmalleſt parts as from the Circumference, is evidently provided by ocular Inſpection, Experiments, and Reaſon.

1. In Blood-letting, the Arm being bound above the Elbow, beyond the Ligature, the Vein ſwels not, nor if you ſhould open a Vein would the Blood flow out (which is to be obſerved in oppoſition to the Authority of *Scribonius Largus*) unleſs very little, or if there were ſome Anaſtomoſis of a Vein, with an Artery in ſome parts above. But on this ſide the Ligature under the Elbow, both the Veins of the Arm ſwel, and being opened they void as much Blood as you will, yea all that is in the body. Likewiſe if with your finger you preſs the Vein below the Orifice, the blood ſtops, if you take away your finger it runs again: whence we gather that the blood runs from the outmoſt ſmall Veins of the body upwards unto the great Veins and the Heart; and not from the upper and greater Veins into the lower, ſmaller, and more remote.

2. Without Blood-letting, the Veins being preſſed with the finger ſhew as much: for if in an Arm either hot, or whoſe Veins naturally ſwell, you force the blood downwards with your finger towards the fingers, there follows no blood in the upper part of the Vein, but it appears empty. Contrariwiſe, if you force the blood from the Fingers-ward upwards, you ſhall preſently ſee the Veins full, more blood following that which you forced up.

3. If you ſhall plunge your Arms and Legs into cold Water or Snow, being firſt bound, when you unbind the ſame, you ſhal perceive your Heart offended and made cold, by the cold blood aſcending thereunto; and it will be warmed if you put your Legs or Arms as aforeſaid into hot water. Nor is it any other way by which cordiall Epithems applied to the Wriſts and Privities do good.

4. In perſons that are hanged, their Heads and Faces become red, the Veins being diſtended, becauſe the recourſe of the Blood into the Heart is hindred; as in opening of the Veins of the Head, the upper parts in the Head ſwell, the other parts towards the Heart being empty. But the Halter being looſed from the dead body, the ſwelling and redneſs of the Face does fall by little and little, unleſs the Blood which is forced into the ſmalleſt Veins cannot run back again becauſe of the coldneſs of the parts.

5. In Diſſections of Live-Animals, the matter is moſt evident. For in what part of the body ſoever you bind a Vein, it appears lank and empty on that ſide of the Ligature next the Heart, and on the other ſide it ſwels where it is furtheſt from the Heart, and neereſt the extream parts of the Body.

6. In a living Anatomy, if you lift up a Vein and open it being tied, beyond the Ligature plenty of Blood flows out, on this ſide nothing at all, which you ſhall find true in the crural and jugular Veins of any Creature whatſoever, though you cut the Veins quite in ſunder, as I have often experimented with the great *Walæus*, and *Harvey* was not ignorant thereof.

7. The Valves of the Veins do conſpire to this end, which are ſo contrived, that they ſtand all wide open towards the Heart, and afford an eaſie paſſage from the ſmalleſt Veins to the greateſt, and from thence to the Heart. But from the Heart and great Veins, being ſhut they ſuffer nothing to go back, no not Water driven by force, or a Probe, unleſs being hurt they gape.

8. The Liver ſends only to the Heart; the Heart only to the Lungs, and all the Arteries; as hath been already demonſtrated concerning the Heart. Seeing therefore the Blood by continual pulſation is ſent in ſo great quantity in all parts, and yet cannot be repaired by Diet, nor can return back to the Heart by reaſon of the Miter-faſhioned Valves of the *Aorta*, nor abide ſtil in the Arteries which are continually driving the ſame, nor finally is there ſo much ſpent by the parts to be nouriſhed; it follows, that what remains over and above is brought back again to the heart, and enters the Veins by Circulation. Whereof although ſome dark Footſteps are extant in the writings of the Ancients, as I have proved in my Book *de Lacte Animalium*, and *Walæus* and *Riolanus* do afterward declare the ſame at large; yet it hath been more cleerly manifeſted in this Age of ours to that moſt ingenious Venetian *Paul Sarpius*, *Fulgentius* as relates from his papers, and ſoon after to *Harvey* an Engliſhman, to whom the commendations and praiſe of firſt publiſhing the ſame to the World and proving it by many Arguments and Experiments, are juſtly due, finally to *Walæus* and others approving the ſame.

The *Primary* End therefore of the Veins is to carry and recarry Blood unto the Heart the *ſecondary* ends may be theſe following.

*Their ſecondary Uſes.*

II. A little to prepare the ſaid Blood, as do the *Rami Lacteï*, or to finiſh and perfect the ſame, as a ſmall portion of *Vena Cava* between the Liver and the Heart.

III. To preſerve the Blood, as the proper place preſerves that which is placed therein, as much as may be in a ſpeedy paſſage, and to retain it within its bounds. For extravenated Blood, or Blood out of its natural place, *viz.* Veins and Arteries, curdles and putrefies. Alſo in the Veins themſelves, when they are ill affected, and the courſe of the Blood is ſtopped, ſomtimes the Blood is found congealed, witneſs *Fernelius*: ſomtimes a fatty ſubſtance is found inſtead of Blood, as in the Nerves, which *Bonius* ſaw among the Indians.

IV. Some would have the red veins to make Blood, and the milkie veins to make Chyle, but they are quite miſtaken.

The *Form* of the Veins is taken from ſundry Accidents.

Ite

*Figure.* Its *Figure* is that of a Conduit pipe.

*Magnitude.* Its *Magnitude* varies. For the Veins are great in the Liver, as in their Original; in the Lungs because they are hot, soft, and in perpetual motion, and therefore they need much nourishment, because much of their substance spends; but especially because all the Blood in the Body passes this way, out of the right into the left Ventricle of the Heart, as hath been proved already. In the Heart by reason of its heat, and because it is to furnish the whole Body with Arterial Blood, received in and sent out by continual pulsings. Also the emulgent Veins are great, by reason of plenty of blood and serosities, which is brought back from the Kidnies to the *Vena Cava*. But where the substance of a part is lasting, and is not easily dissipated, by reason of the small quantity of Heat, the Veins are lesser as in the Brain, where the Veins do not always easily appear, and in the Bones, where they never manifestly appear, though the Animal be great.

In all parts towards the ends they are very small, and are divided into Capillary Veins, sprinkled into, & commonly confounded with the flesh, that the superfluous Blood may be better received into them; which is *one* way, by which the Arterial Blood is mediately passed through the porous flesh to the Veins, which way also Blood made of Chyle in the Liver, is infused into the little branches of the *Vena Cava*. The *other* is, by the Arteries immediately. For,

*Connexion.* The *Connexion* is such with the Arteries, that every Vein is for the most part attended with an Artery, over which it lies and which it touches. *Galen* tels us a a Vein is seldom found without Arteries; but no Artery is ever found without a Vein.

*Anastomosis of Veins and Arteries.* But there is in the Body a mutual Anastomosis of Veins and Arteries: that they may conspire together, and the Veins receive out of the Arteries Spirit & Blood; which is apparent from reason, because, 1. If the Veins be quite emptied, the Arteries are empty also. Moreover out of a Vein opened in the Arm or Hand, all the Blood in the Body may be let out, which, because it cannot be contained or generated in the Hand, it must necessarily come out of the Arteries beneath and round about, by means of the Anastomoses: whereof this also is a token, that if the Vein and Artery of the Arm be tied very hard, the Blood ceases running and the pulse stops it beating, til the band be slackned. 2. They are necessary in respect of the Circular motion of the blood, seeing the pores of the Flesh are not sufficient, save in a slow course, and subtile Blood.

Moreover they may be demonstrated in many places to the Eye-sight, where the Conjunctions of the Veins with the Arteries are visible, viz. in the *Plexus Choroides*, the Cavities, in the Lungs of the *Vena Arteriosa*, and the *Arteria Venosa*, with the Branches of the *Aspera Arteria* or Weasand. Of the Thoracick branches descending, with the intercostal Veins. Also the Hypogastrick Veins and Arteries, with the Mammary vessels are joyned mouth to mouth under the *Musculi Recti* in the Abdomen. But the Anastomoses or mutual conjunction of the mouths of the *Cava* and *Portæ* in the Liver, and of the Veins and Arteries in the Spleen, are in a special manner manifest; so in the Veins of the Womb, the seminary vessels, the Navil-strings, and the extremities of the Hands and Feet.

*Anastomoses of the Veins in the Liver.* Though the *Anastomoses* or conjunctions of vessels, are in reason necessary, and manifest to the Eye-sight, yet are they not all *manifestly discernable* by the Sight. I made experiment in the Liver of an Ox and of a Man, diligently separating all the substance from the vessels; yet could I not either with a Probe, or a Knife, or a pair of Bellows find the *Anastomoses* of *Vena Cava* and *Vena Porta* open, but all blind, in dead bodies, though it is not to be doubted, but that they are open in living bodies, where all the passages are inlarged by Heat.

## This TABLE presents the *Anastomases* of *Vena Cava* and *Porta* in the Liver.

TABLE I.

### The Explication of the FIGURE.

A *The descending Trunk of Vena Cava and Porta in the Liver.*

BB. *The Vena portæ.*

C. *The Gall-Bladder.*

dddddd. *The greater branches of Vena Cavæ Disseminated through the Liver.*

eee. *The branches of Vena Portæ.*

ffff. *The first Parallel Anastomosis of the Vena Cava with the Vena Portæ.*

g g. *The second Anastomosis of Trunk with Trunk.*

h h. *The third cross Anastomosis.*

i i. *The fourth Anastomosis mixt.*

k k. *The fifth Anastomosis, which is oblique or angular.*


page 303

I found

*Of sundry kinds.*

I found them to be of divers kinds. The first *Paralel* when the utmost twigs are joyned one to another in right lines. The *second* is of Trunk with Trunk, a transverse vessel going between. The third is *cross-fashion'd*, when either the Branches go over the Trunk, or the Trunk go over the Branches cross-wise, or the Branches over the Branches in the same manner. The fourth is mixt of the Cross-fashion'd and the oblique. The fift is oblique or angular, when the Branches are mutually inserted obliquely. I have before explained the Anastomoses of the Navil-vessels. Now the *Anastomoses* between the Veins and Arteries, are either in the Trunks or the Capillary Vessels.

*Why the Veins are in some places invested with Coats, in others not.*

The Veins are somtimes invested with a common Membrane, or some external thick one, borrowed from the Neighboring parts, when either they are suspended and carried a long way, and are without the Bowels and Muscles; or when they rest upon hard bodies. This happens in the lowest Belly, to the Veins and Arteries from the *Peritonæum*, and in the Chest from the *Pleura*.

But where a Vein is inserted either into some Bowell or a Muscle, it needs not this common coat, because 1. It is otherwise sufficiently susteined. 2. Otherwise the ready sweating through of the blood would be hindred. 3. And the laying down of the Excrements of the Vein. 4. It would not so soon be sensible of the force of the substance of any Bowell. 5. It would more hardly imbibe the Blood which is superfluous after the nourishment of the parts.

Now the Veins being so compassed with Membranes do *not feel* (unless they have Nerves neer them) of themselves and by their own Nature, neither the acrimony of the Humors contained, nor cutting or burning. And therefore *Aristotle* saies in his third Book *de Historia Animalium* chap. 5. A Nerve cannot endure the Fire, but a Vein can. And *Galen* in his sixt *de usu partium* chap. 12. saies that if Veins and Arteries be cut, burnt, or tied, they feel it not at all.

## CHAP. II.

## *Of the Substance of the Veins and of the Valves.*

THe *Substance of the Veins* is Membranous, that they may more easily stretch and shrink in again.

They have only one *Coat*, which is proper to them (the Arteries have two) being thin and rare; because through it the blood is to be received after the parts are nourished, it carries not back such stirring and hot blood as the Arteries carry; because it is grown cold and returns quietly to the Heart without any beating of the Pulse that it may be there again perfected.

*Whether the Veins have Fibres.*

Some conceive that a Vein is interwoven with a triple kind of Fibres: but they add, that those fibres are there obscurely, and only potentially, not can be moved out of their place, by reason of the most strait contexture. But I rather conceive with *Vesalius*, that others imagin Fibres to be there, which are no more there than in Leather. for when we pull the substance of the Reins all in pieces, no fibres are there to be seen. But some Authors attribute fibres to the Veins, because they have præconceived this opinion, that Attraction, Expulsion and Retention are performed by sundry sorts of fibres, whenas the fibres if they have any are to strengthen them.

*Harvey* and *Walæus* do suspect that the Blood in the Veins is driven to the Heart, by the fibres, which nevertheless I conceive to be done, by the motion and contraction of the Muscles, with which the Veins are mingled, they not resisting. Yea, and it may be driven by the blood continually following, from the parts and Arteries moved by the Pulse. But others alleadge attraction to be made by heat, without the fibres.

*Who first observed the Valves in the Veins.*

Within the Veins are found certain *Valves* or *little folding Gates*, which *Bauhine* saies are mentioned by *Avicenna*, under the name of Cells. *Aquapendens* saies himself was the finder of them in the year 1574. to whom *Paulus Servita* or *Sarpi* the *Venetian* gave the first hint though it seems apparent by his *Isagoge*, that *Jacobus Silvius* had also some knowledg of them. But after him or with him mention was made of these Valves by *Salomon Albertus*, *Archangelus Picholhominus*, and *Casperus Bauhinus*; *Laurentius* doth hardly once speak of them.

*How the Valves of the Veins were found.*

The occasion of *Aquapendens* finding of them was this: he observed that if he prest the Veins, or by rubbing endeavored to force the Blood downwards, its course did seem to be stopped. Also in the Arms of persons bound to be let Blood, certain knots apper to swell by reason of the Valves; and in some persons, as Porters and Plough-men, they are seen to swel in their Thighs like the Varices.

*The Cause of the Varices.*

And here seems to consist the Cause of the Varices; because thick Blood and by its heavinesse unapt to move upwards, being long retained in the Valves, makes a dilatation of the said Valves: for without the Valves the Veins would swel uniformly and all of an equal Bignesse, and not in the manner of Varices.

And because this Doctrine of the Valves in the Veins, is known to few, I shall propound the same more exactly, according to my manner of handling rare subjects.

*The Valves of the Veins what?*

These *Valves* are most, thin little Membranes (thicker in the Orifices of of the Veins of the Heart) in the inner Cavity of the Veins; and certain particles as it were of the coat of the Veins; because there the body of the Veins is most thin, where those Membranes do go from it.

*Where they are not found as the original of the Veins?*

They are *seated* in the Cavity of the Veins, but especially in the Veins of the Limbs, *viz.* of the Arms and Legs, after the Kernels of the Arm-pits and and Groyns. Beginning presently after the rise of the Branches, not in the Rises themselves. Now there are two found in the inner orifice of the jugular Vein, looking from above downwards; the rest look from below upwards, as many in the *Cephalica*, the *Basilica*, and in the Veins of the Legs and Thighs.

*Why Valves are not found in the Trunk of Cava, the jugulars, the external small Veins, nor in the Arteries?*

No Valves are found in the Trunk of *Cava*, because the Valves placed in the Divarications do sufficiently hinder the regress of the Blood, nor doth the Trunk make any delay. nor are there any in the Jugulars (besides those aforesaid in the Orifice of the inner Veins) because the venal Blood of it self heavy, doth hardly ascend upwards, nor doth it there need any stop. In like manner there are none in the external small Veins; because in regard of their smallnes, they needed none, nor is there any danger of the Bloods regress, by reason of the neerness of the parts and Arteries which drives the same. We also with *Harvey* have found Valves in the emulgents, and in the Branches of the Mesentery, looking towards the *Vena cava* and *Porta*. Nature endeavored the same in the Milkie Veins; also Dogs and Oxen have them in the division of the crural Veins. Also there are none in the Arteries, because in them there alwaies is and ought to be

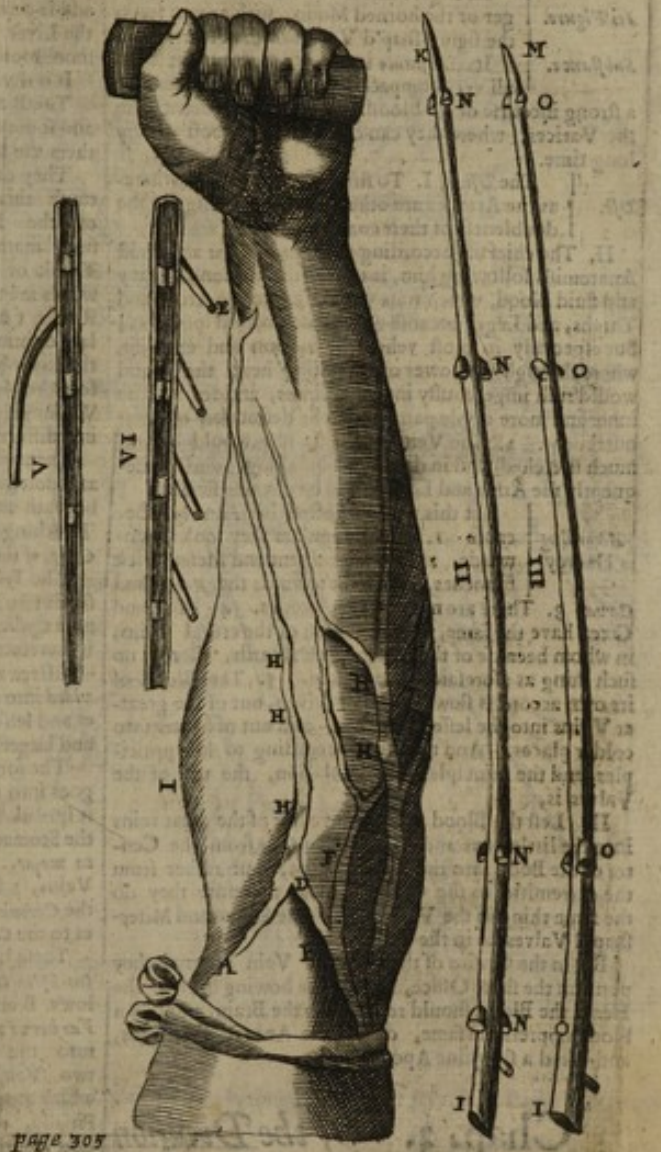
a Flux

## The FIGURE Explained.

## TABLE II.

This TABLE in Fig. 1. shews the Valves of the Veins in a bound Arm, in Fig. 2. and 3. The crural Veins the inside outward, with their Valves.

A. *A Branch of the Vena Cephalica.*
BF. *A part of the Vena Basilica.*
D. *The Vena Mediana.*
E. *A Branch of Vena Cephalica, to which the Mediana was joyned.*
HHHH. *Represent the knots in the Veins, caused by the Valves there placed.*
IK. *One Crural Vein.*
LM. *The other Crural vein.*
NNNN. *The valves of the Veins fil'd with Cotton-wool.*
OOO. *The said valves of the Veins empty.*
FIG. V. *Shews the single valves of the Vena Basilica looking upwards.*
FIG. VI. *In the Crural vein opened double valves are seen.*




page 305

a Flux of spirituous Blood, which begins successively and ends with the Systole and Diastole of the whole Body; nor is there any thing to urge a Reflux; moreover the the Arteries are of themselves sufficiently strong. Yet I have sometimes observed the footsteps of a Valve in the Artery of the Arm, and it may be to stay the Blood running in the Arteries in that subject, that it may not return, as we see in the beginning of the *Aorta*, and the *Vena Arteriosa*.

Now the Valves are so situate, that they have their Orifices upwards towards the roots of the Veins, and are shut beneath, and alwaies look towards the Heart. And the workmanship of Nature is remarkable in their situation, in that they have their postures looking the same way one following another, as knots in the Branches and Stalks of Plants. that is to say, they are not in a right line one against another, or placed on the same side, least the whole Blood should flow streight in through the free part of the vessel. So the lower Valves do stop, what the upper have let slip: and if all the doors of the Valves had been disposed in one right line, there had been little or no delay made in the regress.

Moreover they are situate at Distances, according to the length of the vessel, sometimes two, three, four, or five fingers distance; that if the Blood by some default should be compelled to flow backwards, and should pass the upper Valves, falling on upon the other Valves following, it might be stopped and hindered.

*Their Magnitude.* As to their *Magnitude* they are greater where by reason of the plenty of Blood the Recourse is most vehement, and therefore greater inconvenience was to be feared to happen, either to the parts which would be too much oppressed, or to the Heart least it should be destitute of Blood; as we see in the *Basilica* and in the Crural Vein at the Groyns.

*In what Persons there are most Valves.* The *Number* of all the Valves varies, as also their distances; for there are more Valves in those

1. Who abound with melancholly Blood, or contrarily with very cholerick and thin Blood; because both those humors do not only easily resist the Driver, but when they are driven, by their weight and tenuity, they easily flow back.

2. In great or more fleshy Bodies and consequently having more Veins.

3. In such as have the broadest vessels.

4. In such who have long and streight Veins; for in such as are oblique, the crookedness of the vessels gives some stop to the running back of the Blood.

Moreover, the number of Valves in one and the same place doth not exceed two. For they are seated at distances, somtimes one, otherwhiles two at most; not at any time three, as we find in the Vessels of the Heartt: because in the Heart a greater orifice is to be shut, and the Ventricle underneath is larger, yea and the greater violence of the Blood in the hot Heart, did require more stops, But in the progress of the Veins, their Branching diminishes their Magnitude, and the blood is slower in

motion. Therefore where the Veins are yet pretty big, and there is danger from the plenty of Blood, there are two doors, but otherwise but only one.

*Its Figure.* Its *Figure* likens the Nail on a Mans finger or the horned Moon, such as you see in the sigma-shap'd Valves of the Heart.

*Substance.* Its *Substance* is exceeding thin, but withall very compact, lest they should break by a strong incourse of the blood. And this is apparent from the Varices, where they can contein the blood a very long time.

*Use.* The *Use* is I. To strengthen the Veins, whereas the Arteries are otherwise made strong by the doubleness of their coats.

II. The chief use according to *Aquapendens* and most Anatomists following him, is to stop the motion of heavy and fluid Blood, which runs violently into the Arms and Thighs, and Legs, because of their downward position; but especially in most vehement motion and exercise, where through the power of exceeding heat, the Blood would rush impetuously into the Limbs, and so 1. The inner and more noble parts would be defrauded of their nutriment. 2. The Veins of the Limbs would be too much stretched, and in danger of breaking, and consequently the Arms and Legs would be alwaies swelled.

*According to Harvey.* But this use is rejected by *Harvey*, because 1. In the Jugulars they look downwards. 2. In the emulgent and Mesenterick branches, they look towards the *Porta* and *Cava*. 3. There are none in the Arteries. 4. Dogs and Oxen have the same, in the division of the crural Veins, in whom because of their going downwards, there is no such thing as aforesaid to be feared. 5. The Blood of its own accord is slowly enough driven, out of the greater Veins into the lesser Branches, and out of hotter into colder places. And therefore according to his principles, and the principles of Circulation, the use of the Valves is,

III. Lest the Blood should move out of the great veins into the little ones and so tear them; or from the Centre of the Body into the outmost parts, but rather from the extremities to the Centre. And therefore they do the same thing in the Veins, which the Sigma and Miter-shap'd Valves do in the Heart.

But in the Orifice of the Jugular Vein internal they perform the same Office, least in the bowing back of the Head, the Blood should return into the Brain, and like a Flood oppress the same, disturb the Animal Functions, and breed a sanguine Apoplexy.

# Chap. 3. *Of the Division of the Veins of the Body, and of the* Vena Portæ *and the* Venæ Lacteæ.

ALL the Veins of the whole Body are referred unto two as their Mothers; *viz.* the *Vena Portæ* and the *Vena Cava*, to which is joyned a third kind of vessels found out by *Asellius* viz, the Milky Veins, of which we shal speak by and by.

The *Vena Portæ* its Original and *Root* is the *Vena Umbilicalis*, of which I spake *in the first Book*, the first of all the Veins, arising from the Seed.

*The Vena Portæ, why so called.* Now it is termed *Vena Portæ*, or *Quæ ad Portas est*, the Gate-vein, and Vein at the Gates, and *Vena ostiaria*, the Door-vein; because through the roots thereof, or, as others wil have it, its branches, *viz.* the Mesaraick Veins, the Chyle being sukt out of the Stomach and Guts was anciently thought to be carried, as it were by Gates into the Liver. The Arabians cal'd it *Vena Lactea*, because they thought it drew the Chyle, white like Milk.

This is the greatest Vein in the Body next the *Cava*, and is commonly said to arise out of the hollow part of the Liver. And it is not so compact as the *Cava*, but more loose and soft.

It is divided into the Trunk and *Branches*.

*The Branches of the Porta in the Liver, termed Roots.* The Branches are *upper* and *lower*: and some call the former Roots, others the latter.

They call the former Roots, because this Vein is said to have its original out of the Liver: the latter, because as Roots suck matter out of the Earth, and carry it into the Trunk of the Tree: even so also the *Venæ Mesaraicæ*, which are the lower branches of *Portæ*, do suck Chyle like Roots (according to the Ancients, but according to our late opinion blood out of the Mesentery) and carry it to the Liver by the Trunk and upper Branches; and therefore the Meseraick Veins are termed the *Livers Hands*. We may therefore call them all, both branches and roots, in a different respect.

The upper Branches, four or five of them are spred up and down the hollow part of the Liver, which afterwards, beneath and without the Liver, grow into one Trunk. Touching these and their Anastomoses, see above, *in the Chap. of the Liver, Book the 1.*

The *Trunk* before it is divided into lower Branches, sends two small Veins to the Gall-bladder which are termed *Cysticæ gemellæ*; another Vein to the Stomach, which is therefore cal'd *Gastrica dextra*.

Afterward the *Trunk* inclining to the left hand, it is *divided* into two remarkable lower Branches: the one higher and lesser, going towards the left side; the other lower and larger on the right side.

*The Spleen-Veins of the Stomach.* The former is called *Splenicus*, because it goes into the Spleen, & before it is divided it spreads from it self two upper Branches to the Stomach, the *Gastrica minor* and *Gastrica major*, the largest of all the Stomach Veins, which afterwards constitutes the *Coronaria*. Then it sends lower branches to the *Call* and one to the *Pancreas*.

*Call.* *Pancreas.*

*Spleen.* These being thus constituted, the *Truncus Splenicus* is divided, into the upper and lowe Branch. The former produces the *Vas breve* and other little branches carried into the Spleen. The latter produces two Veins for the Call and Stomach which are termed *Epiploïs sinistra* and *Gastroepiploïs sinistra*. Finally, the rest of its small branches, are spent up and down in the Spleen.

*Call.* *Stomach.*

*Of the Stomach.* *Call.* *Guts.* The *Ramus dexter* of the *Vena portæ*, before it is divided, produces two Veins, 1. To the right side of the Stomach and Call. 2. To the Guts, *viz.* the middle of *Duodenum*, and the beginning of the *Jejunum*: whence certain capillary twigs go through the Pancreas and Call upwards.

*Of the Mesentery.* Afterwards an whole large Branch goes into the Mesentery, and being carried between the two coats thereof, it is distributed into three notable Branches, called *Rami mesenterici*, the Mesenteric branches.

*The Mesaraick Veins.* The right-hand mesenteric branch is two-fold, which spends it self into fourteen nameless branches, and these again into innumerable Off-springs of Veins termed the *Mesaraick Veins* in the Guts, *Jejunum*, *Ileon* and *Cæcum* and part of *Colon*. whose

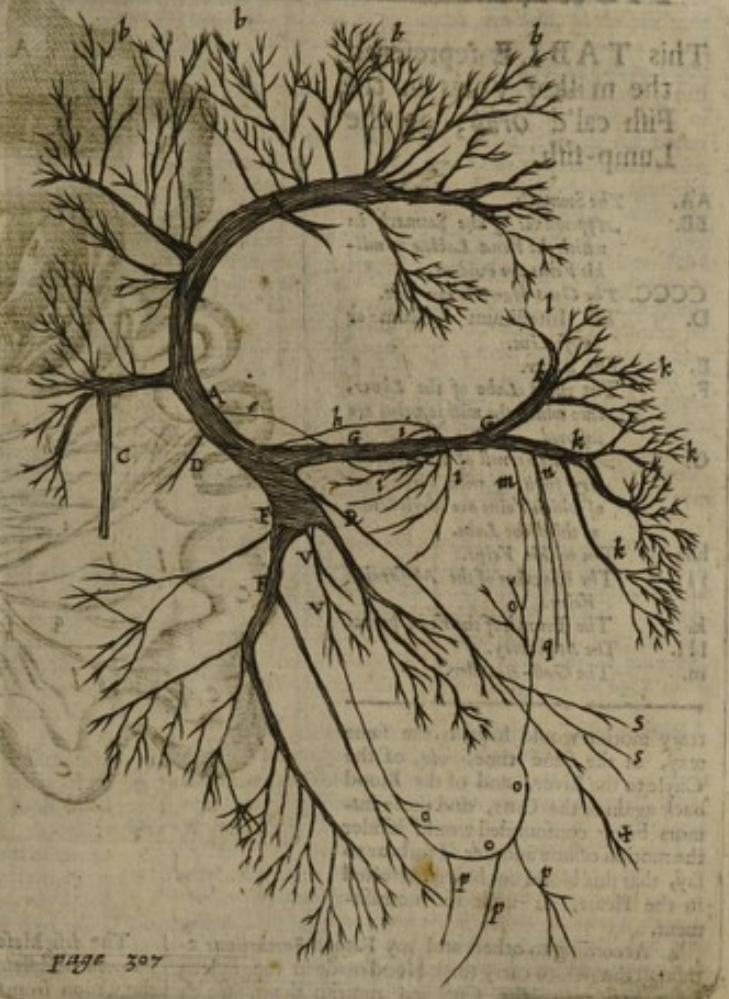
*Their Use.* *Use* is, 1. According to the Ancients, to suck the Chylus out of the Guts, and to carry it by the Trunk of *Vena portæ* into the Liver. but the milkie juyce of the Chylus is never

## TABLE III.

# The FIGURE Explained.

This TABLE shews the Branchings of the *Vena portæ* within and without the Liver.

AAA. *The Trunk of the Vena portæ going out of the Liver.*
bbbbb. *Its branchings in the Liver.*
C. *The Umbilical or Navil-vein.*
D. *The Vena Cystica.*
e. *The Implantation of the Coronary Vein of the Stomach.*
FF. *The right Branch of the Vena portæ.*
G. *The left splenick Branch thereof.*
h. *The Rise of the Coronaria of the Stomach, which after it hath bestowed many branches upon the Stomach it self, being turned back towards the Pylorus, it is implanted into the Trunk of the Vena portæ it self, where the lesser e stands.*
iii *Little branches of the Vena splenica, distributed through the Pancreas.*
kkkk. *The manifold ingress of the said Vena splenica into the Spleen.*
L. *The Vas breve so called.*
m. *The Gastroepiploica sinistra, which runs out upon the bottom of the Stomach, and affords many branches both to to the Stomach it self, and to the Call.*
n. *The Vena Epiploica sinistra.*
ooo. *Little branches disseminated through the bottom of the Stomach.*
ppp. *Branches which run out through the Call.*
q. *Another Epiploica superior to the precedent, for it runs before it, through the lower part of the Call, which comes nearest the Loyns.*
R. *The Rise of the internal Hæmorrhoidal Vein, which*
SSS. *Diffuses Branches through the Mesentery, and at last where this mark stands ⋈ it sends forth the Hæmorrhoid Veins so called.*
V. *The Gastro-epiploica dextra, from which many branches arise that are disseminated through the Call and Stomach.*




page 307

never found in these, they being alwaies full of Blood. Moreover the finding out of the Milkie Veins is repugnant to this Use. Howbeit in time of necessity when the milkie veins are totally obstructed, *Riolanus* grants that the Chylus is carried by these without any Argument. For they do not open themselves into the Guts, for then blood would be poured into them, and in my judgment, nutrition should rather cease, as we see in the Lientery, when they are obstructed.

*According to Harvey.*

*Harvey* to refute the milkie veins, and withall to maintain his Circulation in the Mesentery, does suppose that as the Navil-veins draw in alimentary juyce from the Liquors of the Egg, and carry it to nourish and increase the Chick; even so the Mesaraick Veins do suck Chyle out of the Guts, and carry it into the Liver, even in a grown person. But then they should carry Chyle and Blood together, and so divers juyces would be jumbled together, such as were digested with those that are indigested. And what need is there to confound Vessels that Nature hath distinguished. And every one knows, that the use of the Navil-vessels, is different in a Child in the womb and a grown person.

2. According to the same Antients, to prepare the said Chyle in some measure, and to give it the rudiments of Blood. which would be true if the Hypothesis were true.

3. According to the said Ancients, to carry the Blood back from the Liver, to nourish the Guts. But so a contrary

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

This TABLE represents the milkie Veins in the Fish cal'd *Orbis*, or the Lump-fish.

AA. *The Stomach.*
BB. *Appendixes of the Stomach in which the Venæ Lacteæ or milkie Veins are evident.*
CCCC. *The Guts drawn to one side.*
D. The Intestinum Rectum or *Arse-Gut.*
E. The Liver.
F. *The third Lobe of the Liver, into which the milkie veins are inserted.*
G. *A white kernell of the Mesentary swelling with Chyle, one of which Veins are carried unto third the Lobe.*
hhh. *The milkie Veins.*
iii. *The Branches of the Mesaraick Veins.*
kk. *The Trunck of the Vena portæ.*
lll. *The Mesentery.*
m. *The Gall-Bladder.*

## TABLE IV.


page 308

trary motion would happen the same way, at the same time, *viz.* of the Chyle to the Liver, and of the Blood back again to the Guts, and those humors being confounded would hinder the motion of one another. I forbear to say, that this blood not being perfected in the Heart, is unfit for nourishment.

4. According to others and my Father *Bartholinus* amongst the rest, to carry thick blood made in the Spleen from thence to the Guts to nourish them. which were true did not the Circulation teach otherwise, which hath been found out since his time. And that same blood would be more fit to nourish, by reason of the abundance of Arteries in the Spleen. The Vessels being changed, this Opinion would be absolutely true.

5. *Asellius*, who rightly assigns the milkie veins to carry Chyle to the Liver, hath shewn that these common mesaraick Veins do serve to no other intent, then to bring blood out of the Liver to nourish the Guts. which use, being before refuted, he is therein to be excused, who was likewise ignorant of the true motion of the blood.

6. Their true *Use* is to bring the Blood back after the the nutriment of the Guts, into the Liver, which had bin carried to the Guts, by the mesaraick Arteries. This is apparent by Ligatures in living Creatures, which *Walæus* practised, in which they swell towards the Liver, but are empty towards the Guts. The *Valves* shew as much, which were by *Harvey* found out in the mesaraick veins, looking towards the Cava and the venæ portæ, which *Columbus* also observed, and which hinder the blood of vena portæ from passing into the Guts. Nor does the Conflux of humors out of the Body about the Guts hinder, whither the Humors flow thither of their own accord or provoked by medicaments; because this passage of the Humors is certainly through the mesenterick Arteries which neither *Spigelius* denies, nor those that maintaine the Circulation of the Blood.

The *less* Mesenterick branch is spread abroad into the left and middlemost part of the Mesentery, and part of the Colon from the left side of the Stomach, and to the *Intestinum rectum*. Hence arises the *Vena Hæmorrhoidalis* interna so called, of which in the following and proper Chapter.

*The History of the Milkie Veins.*

This Age of ours being clearer sighted then the former, has found out the milkie Veins in the Mesentery so called, from the white colour of the Chyle in them, which besides the Mesaraicks, make a fourth kind of vessels, through which the Chylus is carried into the Liver. *Erasistratus* in *Galen* had a glimpse of these veins, but after him, the first that discovered them was *Caspar Asellius* an Anatomist of *Ticinum*, in the dissection of a living dog well fed, on the twenty third of *July* in the yeer 1622. In whose foothepe accurate Anatomists treading, who prised nothing more then truth, have found by testimony of their eyes, that those same vessels full of a milkie juyce, are peculiar passages different from the Mesaraicks. For in living Creatures they are allwayes to be seen, if they be dissected about four hours after they have been well fed, viz. when the Chylus is distributed: for after that time they are not to be seen, howbeit, though empty, they alwaies appear like little fibres which have deceived some, making them to take these vessels for nerves: but they are out, because nerves neither have such a Chyle as this, nor Valves nor any cavity. Nor are the Mesentery and Guts so sensible, although they have a few nerves from the sixt

Conjugation

Conjugation. Some have conceived these vessels to be Arteries, but contrary to sense, which acknowledges here a simple coat, and no motion. Only the not knowing of their Trunk, does keep some learned men as yet in suspense, which if it could be demonstrated to be in the Liver, they would be of our mind. But although their Trunk and Original be unknown yet no man should doubt of the existency of these Veins any more then the Inhabitants about *Nilus* doubt of the Existency of that River, whose Head is unknown. And others account it no impossible thing, that they may by their twigs be implanted into the Liver without any Trunk. Yea and it seems not improbable to the renowned *Kyperus* and *Regius*, that the milkie veins being confounded with the Mesaraicks in the *Pancreas* or great kernel, do there empty their Chyle into the *Vena Portæ*, and so it is carried by the Veins into the Liver, that it may be mixed with the *Fermentum* brought from the Spleen, and so receive the Rudiments of Blood. But I shal by and by shew that the milkie veins have branches which reach into the Liver, where they are inserted.

*The History of the Vena Lacteæ.*

But I will briefly relate the History of these milkie veins, following the guidance of *Asellius* and others, and mine own Experience, who have diligently viewed them, in live Animals, and Men newly hanged and choaked.

*Their Name.*

These vessels are termed *Lactes* or *Lactea Vasa* also *Venæ lacteæ* either from *Lacio* a word out of date, signifying *Allicio*, I draw, or *a lacte* from Milk, which they resemble in whiteness, softness and fatness; even as the Ancients and later Writers have given the same name, to the small Guts, the mesaraick Veins, and the Mesentery, for the same cause, though the agreement and verity be not the like.

They were quite unknown to the Ancients, if you except *Erasistratus*, who in Kids that had lately sukt, saw certain obscure Arteries which were soon filled with milk, yet most Ancients were ignorant, that there were one sort of vessels to carry the Chyle, and others to carry the Blood. But they may be easily excused, by indifferent Censurers, because they commonly dissected Animals that had been strangled, in which bodies, unless they be tied, they suddenly disappear. *Galen* who had made more than six hundred live Anatomies, did without doubt take them for Nerves.

*Their Situation.*

Their *Situation* is in the lower Belly, where they are for the most part accompanied with Fat, which cherishes that Heat which is necessary for the attraction and preparation of the Chylus.

They are carried through the *Mesenterium*, from the Guts, by an oblique passage, between its two coats, partly separate from the other vessels, partly together with them, somtimes streight along, otherwhiles going over the same, and cutting them croswise as it were, through many Kernels, placed chiefly at the parting of the branches; they are carried, I say as far as to the *Pancreas*. In the *Pancreas* or great kernel of the Mesentery, which *Asellius* after *Fallopius* calls *Pancreas*, they are wreathed and wrought together like a Lattice, this way and that way, into very many and those inexplicable wreathings and Labyrinths.

From thence again, having sent greater branches by the sides of *Vena portæ*, and somtimes also twigs to the *Vena Cava*, they enter with small Branches into the Cavity of the Liver. From thence, being carried to the Liver it self, and split into very small fibres, they are so long spred up and down into the flesh thereof, every way, til they are at length quite obliterated.

*Their Insertion in the Liver.*

But into what part of the Liver, either the Trunk or Branches are inserted, I have not found by any as yet determined, by reason of the sudden Efflux of the Humors. I, in the dissection of the fish cal'd *Orbis*, by our Country-men Steenbud, by *Gesner* Sea-Hare, by *Clusius* the frog-mouth'd Orbis, by the *Islanders* Roemasiue from the color of its Belly; both Male and Female here at *Hafnia* frequently repeated, in the presence of the most learned *Wormius*, *Sperlingerus*, *Simon Pauli*, *Fuerinus*, and others, have found and demonstrated not only many dayes after, great plenty of milkie veins, full of the white milkie humor, but also the true place of their Insertion. which was the third *Lobe* of the Liver, that same little soft one described by *Spigelius*, into which there entred a milkey branch sufficiently great, from the large kernel seated not far off, and swelling with the milkey humor, unto which kernel, the most of the milky veins out of the *Mesentery*, and the appurtenances of the Stomach, had their Course. Nor is it to be doubted, but that the same betides in men and other Creatures Nature so sharing the business, that to each Lobe its Trunk may be assigned. Now from this they go further, with the branches of *Vena portæ*, inwardly to the rest of the Lobes, and their *Parenchyma*. And it is to be observed, that about this third Lobe, where the milkey veins are inserted, the Gall-Bladder is placed, either to assist Concoction which begins there, or to receive the cholerick Excrement, which in the Concoction of the *Chylus* is separated therefrom.

Now they are inserted into all the Guts, yea even the *Duodenum*, but especially into the smaller Guts, not so many into thick ones, nor are any of them carried to the Stomach or the Spleen. And least the Chylus once received should slip back again into the Guts, they are furnished with Valves which look from within outward, which wil not admit the Chyle though driven back with Violence.

*Its Substance.*

Its *Substance* is of a Vein, which it resembles in structure and all things else, excepting the milkie juyce. Of which there are three compounding parts, *Fibres*, a *Membrane*, and *Flesh*. They have but one single Membrane, wherein they differ from Arteries, neither are they here cloathed with so thick a coat, no more than in other remote parts, though in the Mesentery they receive from it another external coat. *Asellius* doth attribute to them all kinds of fibres, Right, Transverse, Oblique, for Drawing, Retaining, and Expelling; though *Walæus* by Ligature do teach, that the Chyle is rather thrust in them to the Liver, by the Guts contracted and driving the same; and others conceive that it is drawn by the Liver it self.

The *Flesh* which grows to the Membrane, fils up the spaces between the fibres, whose use besides is, to prepare the Chyle before it comes to the Liver.

*Their Quantity.*

As for *Quantity* they grow continually one to another, being all of one Trunk though their magnitude be not equal, some being greater others lesser. Now they are small, least the thick and unprofitable parts of the Chyle, should go into them together, and least distribution should be made too suddenly and tumultuously, which *Frambesarius* observes.

*Number.*

They are infinite in *Number*, dispersed through the Liver, Guts, Mesentery and *Pancreas*, and so much more in number than the vulgar Mesenterick Veins, that their plenty may make amends for their smallness.

*As to the first active Qualities*, they are colder than ordinary Veins, because the Chyle which they carry is colder than Blood. In respect of the *passive* qualities, they are dry, yet moister than the common Veins.

In respect of *the second Qualities*, they are thin and exceeding subtile, where they enter into the body of the Liver; Tender, Smooth, Rare, Rough by reason of the Fibres within them. From these qualities follows their colour which is white, partly because they were made of cold seed, partly because of the white Liquor which they carry, For

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

This TABLE Repreſents the milkie Veins, or *Venæ Lacteæ*.

AA. &c. *The Meſaraick branches of the Vena portæ, and the branches of the Arteria Cœliaca, which accompany the ſame.*

BB &c. *The Venæ Lacteæ or milkie Veins, which being bound in the lower parts do diſcover the Valves.*

CC. *The Nerves running up and down through the Meſentery.*

D. *The Bottom of the Stomach.*

E. *The Pylorus.*

F. *The Gut Duodenum.*

G. *The Gut Jejunum.*

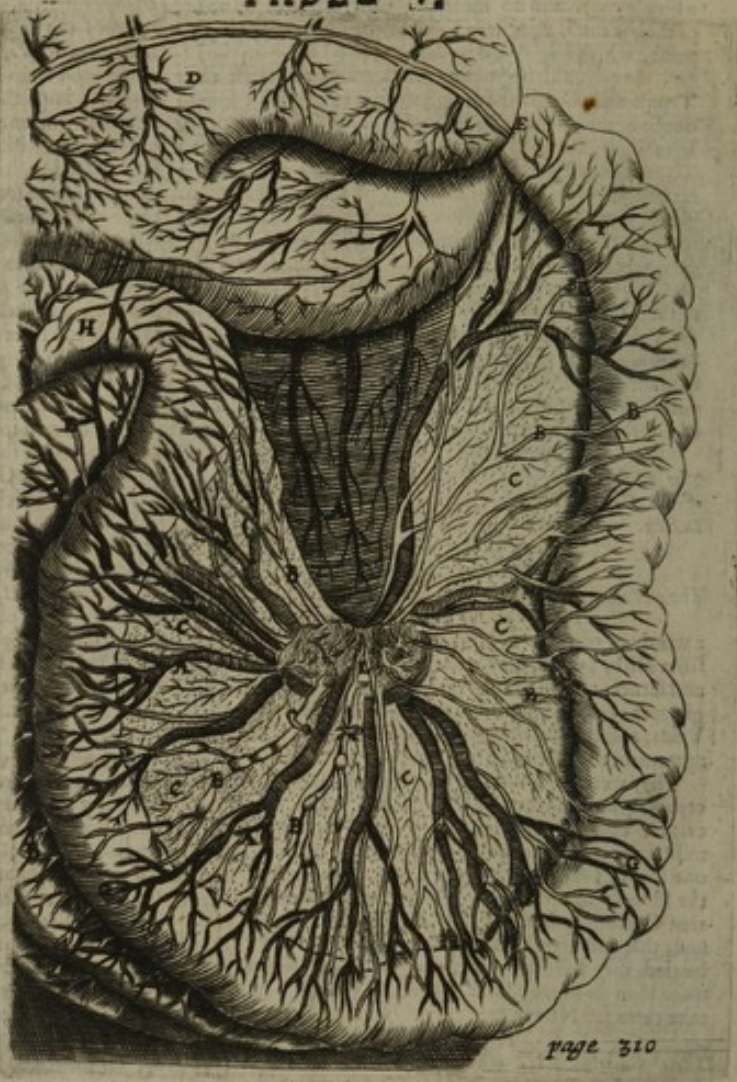
H *The Gut Ileum.*

I. *A Vein and Artery creeping through the bottom of the Stomach.*

K. *Part of the Call.*

L. *The great Kernel in the riſe of the Meſentery which* Aſellius *calls the Pancreas.*

## TABLE V.




page 310

*Their Uſe.* Their *Action* and proper *Uſe* is 1. To deliver up the Chylus to the Liver, not by the Meſaraicks as hath been hitherto believed, by which neither the Chylus aſcends to the Liver, nor the blood deſcends to the Guts, as was ſaid before. Nor let the abundance of the ſaid Meſaraicks trouble us, which the cold and bloodleſs Guts do not need; becauſe doubtleſs they need more of Heat and much nouriſhment, adminiſtred by the abundance of meſaraick Arteries, and therefore plenty of Veins ought to anſwer the plenty of Arteries, that they might carry back the ſuperfluous blood to the Liver.

II To render the Chyle more fit to receive the form of Blood in the Liver. But they are deceived who do aſſigne to them the blood-makeing faculty, for the *Chylus* is not at all changed in colour till it come unto the Liver, where it begins by little and little to grow reddiſh or paleiſh.

III They much conduce to facilitate the Art of Phyſick. For 1 They diſcover a ready way for diſtribution of the Chylus, which has hitherto bin very much controverted, without any fear of a contrary motion or confuſion. 2 They ſhew that the Blood is made in the Liver and its fleſh, and not in the veins. 3 That the ſucking of the Veins is no cauſe of Hunger, becauſe none are carried to the Stomach.

IV They declare the Cauſes of ſome Diſeaſes of the Body which were before obſcure, viz. of the chylous flux of the Guts; of pineing away of the Body, for want of Nouriſhment, by reaſon of the kernels of the Meſentery overcome with ſcirrhous ſwellings, of intermitting Agues quartered in the *Meſoræum*, Hypocondriacal Melancholy &c.

V The learned *Gaſſendus* conceives that by the milkie Veins the white juyce contained in them is carried over the whole Body, to breed Fat; and that the true Chylus is brought the neereſt way by the Porus biliarius, out of the Stomach unto the Liver; But neither of theſe may be granted. Not the former, becauſe of the reaſons brought before, Book the 7 againſt *Foſius*, touching the matter of Fat which *Riolanus* approves and commends; nor the latter, becauſe the Chyle would be infected by meeting with bitter Choler, though that renowned man allows in caſe of neceſſity, the Jejunum being obſtructed, it may ſo be done.

And ſo much may ſuffice touching the Hiſtory ſo the Venæ Lacteæ, to which there is hardly any thing remainning to be added, unleſs the cauſe of their ſudden diſappearing, which is ſufficiently controverted. which is not to be imputed to the ſpiritual diſpoſition of the Chylus which ſuddenly vaniſhes away, as *Aſellius* did at firſt beleive, becauſe the Chylus being drawn out of the Veins does keep its colour a very long time, not vaniſhing away, but becoming wateriſh. But to that which did afterward ſeem probable to *Aſellius* viz. the ſtrong drawing of the Liver, in ſo great Anxiety of the Animal, all this

this may be attributed, by which the spirits being consumed, they need new Blood and Chyle speedily to be digested. And hence a reason may be rendred, why the Venæ lacteæ in a man hang'd at *Amsterdam* cut up by Dr. *Tulpius*, remained visible many daies after; such as have bin divers times seen by *Vesslingius* at *Padua*, and *Folius* at *Venice*: For by reason of the pains broke off by choaking, there could be no drawing of the Liver. For whereas in a Girle ten months old, *Vesslingius* found these Veins swelling: I ascribe that to a like weakness of the Liver, or the thickness of the milkie humor. I also saw at *Hafnia* the last yeer, the milkey veins in *Sueno Olai* of *Vardberg* (who was immediately choak'd with a peice of neats-tongue, having before eaten and drank plentifully) visible in the Mesentery, because respiration being hind ed by the bit of tongue, and his heart being suffocated, there was no necessity for the Liver to draw any Chylus. But P. *Laurembergius* as a man ignorant of this Anatomy does vainly imagine with himselfe, that these veins do disappear, because of the recourse of the Chylus to the Guts, the Valves being loose and flaggie: for, 1 Do all you can, you shall never bring the Chylus back, in dead bodies into the Guts. 2 If a vein be tied in the middle, so that a passage is left open on both sides, both towards the Liver and the Guts: where it looks to the Liver it is emptie, but it swells exceedingly towards the Guts, and if it be left in that posture for some daies together the Chyle will not slip back into the Guts.

## CHAP. IV.
## *Of the Hæmorrhoid Veins.*

*The Hæmorrhoid Veins what?*

THe *Hæmorrhoidal Veins* are those which are in the Fundament, or *Intestinum rectum*, and are also extrinsecally visible, which in some men at set times do open of their own accord, and void forth dreggie Blood, which evacuation does much conduce to Health.

*The Error of other Anatomists.*

These Veins are not of one kind, as the Ancients and many later writers have Imagined: But some are termed *internal*, which arise from the *Vena portæ*, others *external*, from the *Cava*, with which the hæmorrhoidal Arteries are associated, through which the Humors to be evacuated, are carryed.

The Ancients knew only the *Internal* ones, as being commended in melancholick and spleenetick diseases: and they may be opened about the fundament, or leeches may be applied to them, whereas otherwise no branches of the Vena portæ which lies concealed within, do go out to the skin, which can be opened.

*The Differences between the internal and external Hæmorrhoides.*

The internal and external Hæmorrhoid Veins differ one from another.

I In their *Original*. For the *Internal* arises as was said before, From the Vena portæ, and descends along the end of the Colon, under the right gut, the end whereof or Fundament, it circularly embraces with certain smal twigs. It arises sometimes from the Ramus splenicus, from whence is the Vas breve. But seldome which *Casserius* once observed, from the Spleen it self. *Vesslingus* observed it twice or thrice, and therefore *Robert Flud* is out, who condemns the opening of the Hæmorrhoid Veins, because they void not from the Spleen, but rather from the Mesenterie, to the great dammage of the Guts and Stomach.

But the *external* Hæmorrhoides *arise* from the Hypogastrick branch of the Cava.

II By their *Insertion* For the *internal* is inserted into the substance of the Intestinum rectum, which is membranous, and required thick Blood made in the Spleen, and communicated by the Arteria Cœliaca or Splenica.

The external are inserted into the Musculous Substance of the Fundament, which required purer Blood, elaborated in the Heart, and brought hither by the branches of the Arteries.

III In *Number*, the *Internal* is one in number, the *external* is threefold.

IV In the *Quality of the Blood contained*. The Blood of the inner is thick and black, the Blood of the outer is thinner and redder.

V In their *Use* The internal empty the Vena portæ successively, but first the Spleenick Arteries, and help the Obstructions of the Spleen: the external empty the Vena Cava, the Liver by accident, but primarily the great Arterie, and the Heart; yea their evacuation cures diseases springing from Blood, of the Head, Chest, &c. Which *Hippocrates* hints in his *Aphorismes*, and therefore the internal are said to cure the *Cacochymia*, or badness of Humors, the external the *Plethora* or fullness of good Blood.

VI *In the plentiful profusion of Blood*. The flux of the *internal* ones is not so plentiful; that of the *external* is sometimes so large, that men die by the extremity thereof, or fal into greivous diseases.

VII In the Evacuation of the external ones, there is no *Paine* nor Gripeing of the Belly; and some times also no paine in the Fundament; but in the flux of the *inner* Hæmorrhoides, there is greivous paine.

VIII The *Internal* do alone descend, unaccompanyed with the Arteries, howbeit either the Arteries are hidden, or they depend of Arteries in the upper-more.

The *external* descend with the Arteries to the Muscles of the Fundament, manifestly; and therefore the external are more properly called *Vasa Hæmorrhoidalia*, to include the Arteries with the Veins.

## Chap. V. *Of the ascending Trunk of* Vena Cava, *especially of the* Vena sine pari.

*The* Vena Cava *what?*

VEna *Cava* called also *Vena magna* and *maxima*, the great vein and the greatest vein, by the Ancients, because of its exceeding largness, and by *Aurelianus*, *Vena crassa* the thick Vein, is the largest Vein in our whole Body, and the Mother of all other Veins which do not proceed from the Vena Portæ; coming out of the bunching or convex side of the Liver, and therefore by *Hippocrates* termed the Liver vein, haveing spread many Veins through the upper part of the Liver, which about the top are collected into one Trunk

*Its division into great Trunks.*

it is presently divided into the upper or ascendent, and the lower and descendent Trunks.

*The ascendent Trunk what?*

The *Ascendent Trunk* peirces the Midrif, is spread about through the Chest, Neck, Head and Arms. Now it is carried undivided, as far as to the Jugulum. Mean while four branches arise there from.

*The Vein of the Midrif pericardium and mediastinum.*

1 *Phrenicus* or the Midrif vein, on each side one, whence also branches are sent to the Pericardium and Mediastinum. That Quittor in such as have the *Empyema*, is carried by this Vein to

the

the Kidnies and Bladder *M. A. Severinus* ingeniously proves, because 1. The quittor must needs rest at the bottom of the Midriff. 2. By the motion of the Septum it is easily made thin. 3. By the same motion the mouths of the vessels are opened. which may more truly be said of the Arteries, which carry Blood to the Kidnies by their emulgent Branches, and with the Blood sundry excrements, as quittor, Serum &c.

Afterwards the *Vena cava* ascends by the Septum, and boring its passage through the Pericardium, it goes a little towards the left hand, and insinuates it self into the right Ventricle of the Heart, with a large hole, where it is joyned on all sides to the left Ear-let: and there is made,

2. The *Vena Coronaria*, which is sometimes double, compassing the Basis of the Heart, at the Rise whereof a little *Valve* is placed, not suffering the Blood to return into the Trunk. For it is joyned with a continued passage to the Artery, that it may therefrom receive blood, which is to return to the *Cava*.

Afterwards the ascendent Trunk does at last, bore its way through the Pericardium, and taking the former shape, it had under the Heart, but smaller, thorugh the middle division of the Lungs (no more upon the Vertebra's of the Chest, where now the Gullet and Wesand rest) it ascends to the Jugulum. Mean while there is bred

3. A remarkable *Vein* above the Heart called *Azygos, sine pari*, the Vein without a fellow, because in a Man and a Dog, it is commonly but one, quartering on the one side, without another on the other side. But there are two in some Creatures which chew the cud, as Goats, and in Swine &c. And in the Body of Man I have often seen two, once I found none at all, instead whereof on each side there descended a Branch from the *Vena Subclavia*.

It *arises* from the hinder part of the Cava but more towards the right hand, and descends through the right Cavity of the Chest: but in Sheep contrariwise, it arises from the left side of the *Cava*, and descends through the left. In a Man after its Beginning, which is between the fourth and fist Vertebra of the Chest, it bends a little back towards the right side and outwardly, unto the eighth or ninth Vertebra of the Chest; where it begins to possess the very middle space. Howbeit, I have observed it presently after its rise, to descend right forward, above the middle of the Back-bone, and to send out branches on each side.

This *Truncus sine pari*, for the space of eight lower Ribs, sends out on each hand Intercostal branches, which are

*Anastomosis.* sometimes here and there joyned by way of Anastomosis, with the branches of the Thoracica inferior which arises from the Basilica, and with the Intercostal Arteries. And therefore a Vein is not alwaies to be opened in a Pleurisie of the right side, as *Vesalius* would have it.

*The Error of Vesalius.*

Neer the Eighth Rib, it is divided into two Branches.

The one being sometimes the greater, ascends under the Diaphragma to the left side, and is inserted sometimes into the *Cava* above or beneath the Emulgents, sometimes into the Emulgent it self. This way, according to the vulgar Doctrine, pleuritick persons, are many times critically purged by Urine, and void out that way abundance of Quittor: which matter may more truly be said to be purged out by the emulgent Arteries, by mediation of the Heart.

*How pleuritick persons are purged by Urine.*

The other *on the right hand*, goes to the *Cava* and is joyned thereto, seldom to the Emulgent, sometimes bove, the Emulgent. Often times it is implanted into the last sometimes into the first lumbal Vessel; for which cause, in the beginning of a Pleurisie, the Ham-vein may be opened, to draw away the Blood, which would otherwise ascend out of the Arteries and small Veins, into this Vein.

*Why the Ham-vein is profitably opened in a Pleurisie.*

And whereas *Hollerius* and *Amatus* dream that this Vein hath *Valves* in its Beginning, it is false. and therefore false it is, that the *Cava* being evacuated, the *Vena sine pari* is not evacuated, because the Regurgitation is hindred by the Valves. *Fallopius* denies them, because he saw both Wind and Blood regurgitate from thence.

*The Error of Amatus Lusitanus and Hollerius touching Valves.*

4. The *Intercostalis superior*, on each side one, which is sent to the Intervals of the four upper Ribs, when the *Azygos* hath not sent branches to all the Intervals of the Ribs.

# Chap. 6. *Of the* Vena subclavia *and its Branches, and the Jugulars.*

THe Branches aforesaid being constituted, the *Cava* ascends to the *Claviculæ*, underpropped with the *Thymus*, where it is commonly thought to be divided, and in many Anatomical Tables is so represented, into four parts, on either side into an upper part and a lower. whence a common Error of Practitioners arises who scrupulously open the Basilica Vein, in parts affected beneath the Neck; the Cephalica in Diseases of the Head. But at the *Claviculæ* or channel-bones the *truncus vena cavæ* is divided not into four *branches* but *two* only, on each side one, the right and left, which are termed *Subclavij* and by some *Axillares*.

*The Error of other Anatomists.*

*An Error of Practitioners in Blood-letting.*

Wherefore it matters not in Diseases below the Neck, whether you open the Basilica or Cephalick Vein: for the Trunk of *Vena Cava* is alike emptied, for the *Cephalica* and *Basilica* proceed from one root. The Chyrurgeon ought to cut that which of the two is most apparent.

*The most apparent Vein is to be opened.*

Howbeit in Diseases of the Head (if the Circulation did not perswade the contrary) the opening of the Cephalick Vein would help a little more, because there is a branch inserted thereinto proceeding from the external jugular; which I have observed more than once in divers Bodies. But the Case is all one, because the Carotick Arteries exclude all this Difference.

From the Subclavian Veins there arise both upper and lower Veins; and the lower both before and after division: before the division, four.

1. The *Mammaria* (whose original doth notwithstanding many times vary) on each side one, sometimes without a fellow, descending into the Duggs, of which I have made frequent mention. This by way of Anastomosis, is sometimes joyned to the Epigastrica under the right Muscles of the Abdomen.

2. The *Mediastina* which comes to the Mediastinum and the Thymus.

3. *Cervicalis* for the Muscles which lie upon the Vertebra's and for the Marrow of the Neck.

4. *Musculæ inferior*, for the lower Muscles of the Neck and the upper of the Breast. and this also arises sometimes, from the external Jugular.

The *Subclavian* Trunk, being gone out of the Cavity of the Chest, is then properly termed *Axillaris* and the *Scapularis duplex* doth from hence arise, for the external and internal muscles of the *Scapula*, and for the kernels of the Arm-pits. Afterwards the *Axillaris* is divided into the upper branch or *Vena Cephalica*, and the lower or

*Basilica*

# The FIGURE Explained.

## This TABLE propounds the chief distribution of *Vena cava* through the whole Body.

A. *The Trunk of Vena Cava below the Heart.*
B. *Its Trunk above the Heart.*
C. *An hole whereby it gapes into the Heart.*
DD. *The Subclavian Branches.*
ee. *The mammary Veins.*
f. *The Vena Mediastina.*
gg. *The Venæ cervicales.*
hh. *The Venæ Vertebrales.*
iiii. *The Jugulares externæ.*
kkkk. *The Jugulares internæ.*
LLll. *The Vena Azygos or sine Pari.*
mm. *The Intercostalis superior.*
nn. *The Rami phrenici.*
ooooo. *The Branches of Cava through the Liver.*
p. *The Scapularis interna.*
q. *The Scapularis externa.*
r. *The Thoracica superior.*
s. *The Thoracica inferior.*
T. *The Cephalica.*
V. *Its external Branch.*
X. *Its internal branch which in part constitutes the Mediana.*
ZZ. *The Basilica Vein.*
aa. *Its first Bough.*
ββ. *The external Branch of the second Bough.*
γγ. *The internal branch of the second Bough.*
δδ. *The third Bough constituting the other part of the Mediana.*
εε. *The Salvatella.*

## These following Characters design the lower Veins.

AA. *The Emulgent Veins.*
BBBB. *The Spermatick Veins.*
cc. *The Veins of the Kidney-kernels.*
dddd. *The Lumbal Veins.*
EE. *The Rami Iliaci.*
ff. *The Musculæ superior.*
gg. *The Sacra.*
HH. *The Ramus Iliacus externus.*
II. *The Ramus Iliacus Internus.*
kk. *The Musculæ mediæ.*
LL. *The Venæ Epigastricæ.*
mmmm. *The Hypogastricæ Venæ.*
nn. *The Musculæ inferior.*
oo. *The Vena pudenda.*
PP. *The Crural Branch.*
Qqqq. *The Vena Saphæna.*
rr. *The Ischias minor.*
ssss. *The Musculæ.*
ttt. *The Popliteæ.*
uu. *The Suralis.*
xx. *The Ischias major.*

---

*Basilica*, as shal be said in the following Chapter touching Veins of the Head.

From the Axillary after its division from the Trunk of the *Basilica* arise two Veins.

1. *Thoracica superior* spent into the Muscles spred upon the Chest, and into Womens Dugs.
2. *Inferior* which sometimes grows out of

*Anastomoses.* the superior creeping all over the side of the Chest, whose branches are joyned by way of Anastomosis with the Branches of *Vena sine pari* which proceed out of the Chest.

From the upper part of the subclavian trunk, there first arises *musculi superior*, spread out near the jugularis externa, into the skin, and muscles of the hinder-part of the Neck. And afterwards,

*Jugular veins why so called.* The *jugular* Veins, so called, because they ascend in the Jugulum at the sides of the Neck; and they are *internal* or *external*.

*External*, which sometimes, either in its original, or in the middle of its passage, is twofold, creeping upwards under the Skin, and provides for the external parts of the Head, Face, Neck, and Fauces. For under the root of the Ear, it is *divided* into the internal and external *branch*. The *internal* goes unto the muscles of the Mouth, Fauces, Hyoides, &c. The *exterior* being under the Ear propped with kernels, is divided into two parts; one part is carried into the fore-parts of the Face, the Nose and Cheeks, and in the middle of the Forehead being joyned with a Branch of the other side, it makes the Vein of the Forehead which is usually opened. The other is carried through the sides, the Temples, and the Occiput. This the wise *Severinus* opens with very great successe, in the Head-ach, Hoarsness, Shortness of Breath, Pleurisie, pain of the Spleen, Tetters, Squinzy, and which I was present and saw, in Varices of the Face. Mean while these branches are variously mingled in the Head and the Crown of the Head.

The *internal* Jugular in men is the greater, because of their abundance of Brains, but in *Beasts* it is contrarywise Tis called *Appoplectica*, and does ascend to the side of the *Trachea*, to which it sends branches. Reaching to the *Basis* of the Skull in its hinder-part, it is divided into two branches. The one which is the greater, is carryed backwards with the lesser branch of the Carotick Arterie, through the hole of the *Os Occipitis*, which is made for the sixt Pare of Nerves, and enters into the cavity of the *dura mater*. The other being lesser, entring at the hole of the third and fourth pare, is spent into the *Dura Mater*.

# Chap. 7. *Of the Veins of the Arms and Hands.*

THe *axillary Vein* as we have observed in the foregoing Chapter, is divided at the beginning of the Arm, into two remarkeable Branches: the upper and lesser, or the Vena *Cephalica*, and the lower and greater or *Basilica*.

The upper is called Vena *humeraria Cubiti inferior*, *Cephalica* or Capitalis, the Head-vein, because it is wont to be opened in Diseases of the Head, by the Ancients, and by later Surgeons also either out of Ignorance or Superstition.

In *Brutes* it *arises* from the external Jugular, in Men allwaies from the axillary, yet so that from the external Jugular a short twig may be inserted into the Cephalica.

It is carried in the Surface of the Body, between the fleshy Membrane and Coat of the Muscles.

Its *external branch* termed *Funis Brachii*, at the middle of the wrist, in the lower part, is joyned to a branch of the Basilica, and afterwards arising into the outer side of the wrist, passing along between the ring finger and the little finger, it is called *Salvatella*, which is that which the *Arabians* term *Siela*, who as others at this day, commend the opening thereof in the left hand, against melancholick diseases, acute Fevers, and tertian Agues, but in vain, and upon no ground at all. As *Joh. Capt. Sylvaticus* has proved in a distinct Treatise, and *Severinus* lately, whatever *Spigelius* may dispute touching Anastomoses of the Arteries, in the extream parts, wherewith the Spleen abounds: For the Spleen is more remote, and any other part may be as wel opened, for there are Anastomoses in a manner every where.

They make that the *inner branch* of the *Cephalica* which constitutes the *mediana*.

*Basilica* by some call'd *Cubiti interior*, *Epatica*, *Jecoraria*, &c. the Liver vein, because in diseases of the Liver it is usually opened: but in the left side tis termed *Lienaris* the Spleen vein because the opening thereof is commended in Diseases of the Spleen, upon no ground at all.

*A Caution in opening the Basilica or Liver vein.* But let Surgeons take heed when they open this Vein, least they wound a Nerve of the third and fourth pare, which lies neer the same, whence follows great pain, a Feaver, Convulsion, and Death. Also Arteries lie beneath the same, which being hurt, causes an *Aneurisma* and effusion of Blood.

This Vein is divided into more Boughes then the Head vein. Under the tendon of the pectoral muscle it is divided into three Branches.

I The first goes along with that Nerve of the Arme, which they cal the fourth.

II The next is termed *Medius* and *Profundus*, beneath the Elboe Joynt divided into an external and an internal branch, separated but a little way one from another. The former provides for the Thumb, Forefinger, and Middlefinger; as also for the external muscles of the Hand. The latter being stretched along the middle bone of the Cubit, servs the Middlefinger, the Rinfinger, and the little finger, as also the internal Muscles of the Hand.

III The Subcutaneus is divided at the inner swelling of the Arm, is divided into a foremore and hindermore Branch: The latter descends under the Ulna by the little finger, where it is joyned to a Branch of the Cephalica. The former as it passes along the Cubit, produces another remarkeable Vein, which proceeds sometimes directly, otherwhiles with various turnings unto the wrist. And then as it is carried along the Cubit, with the inner Branch of the Cephalica, it makes a common Vein which is called

*Mediana* by *Avicen nigra*, tis cald the mediana or middle Vein because of its Situation in the midst of the Arm. It is frequently opened without danger, because there is no Nerve beneath it, but only the Tendon of a Muscle. From this or rather from that part of the Basilica, whence this arises, a branch is sent forth, which being divided above the *Radius*, produces an exteriour branch, between the Thumb and the Forefinger, which some cal *Cephalica*, others *Occularis*, and some again as *Mundinus*, *Salvatella*, and another more inward, betwixt the middle finger, and the Ring finger, which some as *Rhasis* count the *Siela* or rather *Scilem* of *Avicenna*.

*The Variation of the Veins of the Arm.* But touching the Distribution of all these Veins it is to be observed, that they differ in several Bodies, and are seldome in one man, as they are in another; yea the right side of the same man does rarely agree with the left; and in like manner they varie in Magnitude, in several persons.

CHAP.

## CHAP. VIII.
## *Of the Trunk of* Vena cava *descending as far as to the Thighes.*

THe lower Trunk of *Vena Cava* proceeding out of the Liver, called the descendent Trunk, is more narrow then the upper or ascendent ( which servs very many parts ) and proceeds undivided accompanied with with a great Arterie, as far as to the fourth Vertebra of the Loyns Mean while it sends forth these folowing Boughes.

I The *Venæ adiposæ* which servs the Coat of the Kidneyes and their Fat, the left of which, is commonly higher then the right.

II The *emulgent* Veins, descending to the Kidneyes by a short and crooked passage, sometimes with a threefold Rise, bringing back the wheyish Blood being purified from the Kidnyes into the Vena Cava.

3. The *Spermatick* Veins of which in the first Book.

4. The *Lumbares* or Loyn-veins, somtimes two, somtimes three, which are carried betwixt the four Vertebra's of the Loyns. From these *some* write that they have observed two Veins ascending, within the Vertebra's, on each hand to the side of the spinal marrow in the Brain, which makes them conjecture, that a portion of the seminary matter is brought from the Brain.

These being thus constituted, the *Trunk* going towards *Os sacrum*, at the fourth Vertebra of the Loyns, it goes under the Aorta, which before was unde it, and is *divided* into two equal *Branches*, termed *Rami Ilij* or *Iliaci*, because they go over the *Os Ilij* and *Os pubis* unto the Thighes.

About the division it self, there arise two Veins; the *Musculæ superior* serving the Peritonæum and the Muscles of the Loyns and Belly, and the *Sacræ*, somtimes single, otherwhiles double, for the Marrow of *Os sacrum*.

Afterward the *Ramus Iliacus* is forked out on each side into the external greater, and the internal lesser.

From the inner two Veins sprout; the *Musculæ mediæ* without, serving the Muscles seated on the outside of the Hip, and the skin of the Buttocks; and the *Hypogastrica* which is remarkable, somtimes double, serving very many parts of the *Hypogastrium*, as the Muscles of *Intestinum rectum*, whence are the *Hæmorhoides externæ*; the Bladder and its Neck, the Yard, the lower side and neck of the womb. whence are those Veins by which menstrual Blood is many times thought to be purged in Virgins and Women with Child; which nevertheless seldom happens, when the *Venæ Hypogastricæ* do cumulate thick Blood, and send it not back unto the Trunck, then they may be opened, but otherwise, they are indeed suppressed; but they ascend unto the Heart by the *Vena Cava*, and cause palpitations and other symptomes. But when they are right, the Courses are naturally voided by the Arteries, which appears by their florid color, and the common Office of the Arteries, which is to carry unto the parts of body. *Walæus* proves this also by other tokens in his Epistles. This branch when it is joyned with the crural branch internal, doth cease.

From the outer, three: two before it goes out of the Peritoneum, and one afterward: the first is the *Epigastrica* ( which seldom arises from the crural ) to serve the Peritoneum and Muscles of the Belly; the chief part ascends, under the right Muscles to the Mammariæ, to which they are often joyned about the Navil.

2. The *Venæ pudendæ*, which serves the Privy Parts in Men and Women; it goes athwart to the middle of *Os pubis*.

3. *Musculæ inferior*, going over the side of the Hip-joynt, to serve the Muscles and skin of that part.

Afterwards its Branches are termed Crurals.

## Chap. 9. *Of the Crural Veins.*

THe *Venæ Crurales*, as also the Arteries and Nerves passing along, are in the bending of the Thigh interwoven with frequent kernels, for firmness sake. Afterwards there arise from the crural Vein six branches.

1. *Saphæna* ( so cal'd because of its apparency more than other foot-Veins ) or *Vena malleoli* the *Ancle-vein*, is long and remarkable, it is carried along in the Inside of the Thigh, with a Nerve stretched by it, between the Skin and *Membrana Carnosa* to the Knee, and along the inner part of the Leg, it goes to the inner Anckle. And it is variously distributed into the upper parts of the Foot, towards the Toes, especially the great Toe. This is opened about the Ankle, in Diseases of the Womb, especially when the Courses are stopt, and in the Gonorrhæa to evacuate or revell the Blood which otherwise would ascend too plentifully unto the Womb and Genitals. Now it must be opened where it is most apparent, whether it be on the Back or side of the Foot.

2. *Ischias minor* is opposite to the former. for it is a short outer branch, springing from the crural: it is carried outwardly and athwart into the skin of the Hip, and the Muscles of that place.

3. *Musculæ*, arises from a Trunk, which lies hid among the Muscles: it is a double and remarkable Branch, distributed among the Muscles seated in the Thigh.

4. *Poplitea* the Ham-vein, is made of a double Crural branch mingled together, and runs streight along under the Skin, behind, through the midst of the bending of the Ham, as far as to the Heel, somtimes to the Skin of the Outer Ankle. This Vein is commonly supposed to have been frequently open'd by the Ancients, under the Knee, and *Paulus Magnus* a Chyrurgeon of *Rome*, did once open it. But because it lies exceeding deep, and cannot be seen, we must suppose it cannot be opened; and perhaps this is not the *Vena poplitea* of the Ancients, especially seeing *Galen* is exceeding various in his description thereof, and calls it somtimes the Vein in the Ham, somtimes about the Ham, somtimes at the Knee, otherwhiles under the Knee; peradventure he meant the Ankle-vein, which descends to the inner bunching of the Leg, and is indeed conspicuous enough under the Knee.

5. Is cal'd *Suralis*, which is a great Vein; and is divided into the external and lesser, and the internal and greater branch, and each of them again into exterior and interior. It is distributed amongst the Muscles of the calf of the Leg. On the back of the Foot, being mixed with the branches of the *Poplitea*, it makes that same various texture of Veins, which is apparent under the Skin.

6. *Ischias Major* gives a part to the Muscles of the Calf, and then spends it self into ten branches, bestowing a couple upon each Toe.

Touching all these it is to be noted: 1. That all these branches, do send divers tigs outwards to the Skin, which are termed Skin-veins.

2. That all these branches are diversly disposed in different men, as was said in the Arms; nor is there alwaies the same carriage of Veins, in both the Legs of the same person.

3. That there is also no great choyce to be made in opening the Veins of the Feet; seeing they are all derived from one Trunk, and the Blood ascends from the extream parts and Arteries.

THE

# THE SECOND MANUAL Of the Arteries, Answering to the SECOND BOOK Touching the Middle Cavity or Chest.

## CHAP. I.
### *Of the Arteries in General.*

*The name Artery.*

ARteria an Artery so called from containing and preserving Air or spirit; was by the Antients *Hippocrates*, *Plato* and *Aristotle* the name of the Wind-pipe, which also *Hippocrates* calls *Arteria magna*. *Galen* makes a distinction and cals the Wind-pipe *Aspera Arteria* the rough Artery, and those whereof we are now to treat *Arteriæ leves* the smooth Arteries, which *Hipp.* cals *Arteriæ parvas*, *Aristotle* sometimes *Venam Aortam*, otherwhiles simply *Aorta*.

*What an Artery is.*

Now an *Artery* properly so called, is a common Organ, round, long, hollow like a pipe; consisting of a double Coat, proceeding from the Heart, fit to carry Blood and vital spirits to all parts.

The *Efficient* is the proper Artery-making faculty, which may be called *Arteropoietice*.

The *matter* whereof it is made, is a clammy and cold part of the seed, according to *Hippocrates*. And this is the Beginning of its Generation.

The Beginning of its Dispensation, is not the Brain, as *Pelops Galen's* Master would have it, but the Heart by the Consent of all Philosophers and Physitians. And indeed the Arteries proceed out of the left Chamber or Ventricle of the Heart, not the middlemost, which *Aristotle* feigns to himself, and would have the Aorta to proceed therefrom. And therefore the *Arteria magna* proceeds from the Heart, as also the *Venosa Arteria*, and the *Vena Arteriosa*, but these out of the right Ventricle; of which we have spoken already in the *second Book*.

*The End of the Arteries.*

Their *End* or Use is, 1. Inasmuch as they are Conduit-pipes, they carry the Blood and vital or arterial spirit made in the Heart (for Spirit alone without Blood is not contained in the Arteries) to all parts of the Body. 1. To communicate life or vital faculty, that the vital spirit implanted in the parts, and their Native heat may be sustained and cherished. 2. That animal spirit may be bred, in the noble Ventricle of the Marrow. 3. For the nourishment of all the parts, which are nourished by these only and their Blood and not by the venal Blood or Veins. 4. To carry the Excrements of the Body and the Blood therewith mingled, either to the outer parts of the body to the Kidnies, or the Mesentery, or the Womb, or the hæmorrhoid Veins, &c.

*Why the Arteries pulse.*

II. Inasmuch as they are moved and pulse perpetually; they afford this benefit, 1. That the heat of the parts is fanned, cooled and tempered, and so a symmetrie or due proportion of Heat is preserved. which is caused, not so much by the Airs being drawn in, when the Artery is widened, to avoid Vacuum, as by the arterial Blood continually flowing in, impregnated with Air. 2. That this nourishing arterial Blood, may be continually poured into the smallest Arteries, and from thence into the parts of the Body. For *in the first place*, the Heart by continuall pulsing, drives the Blood into the greater Arteries, which because they cannot let it return because of the Valves, and are too strong to break, it must needs be driven to to the very smallest Arteries and the parts of the Body. And those parts not being nourished with all that is forced in, do send back that which is superfluous into the Veins, that so it may be circulated. *Moreover*, an Arterie being bound in any part of the Body, it is filled towards the Heart, otherwise than the Veins; contrariwise towards the smallest Arteries and the parts it is emptied. *Thirdly*, In Blood-letting, the Arm being indifferently

rently hard bound and the pulse remaining, the Arm is filled, and a Vein being opened below the band, Blood plentifully issues, which because it cannot come out of the Veins which lying higher are stopped by the Ligature, it must needs be brought from the Arteries beneath. *Fourthly*, in live-Creatures dissected, this Tumor of the Arteries is observed neer their Original, and a lankness towards the extream parts of Body, into which they go; and when they are opened, there is a mighty flux of blood, on this side the band, none beyond it. *Lastly*, the same is to be seen by an Aneurisma. 3. Least the Blood of the Veins to which they are joyned, should be stil, and putrifie like standing waters, and that the Heart may not be destitute of Blood in its continual expulsion, by the driving Arteries it is continually filled again through the Veins.

*The Pulse how caused*

This Motion of the Arteries called the *Pulse*, is caused, either by the faculty alone, whether seated in the Arteries themselves, as *Praxagoras* would have it, or flowing from the Heart by the coats of the Arteries, as *Galen* and infinite Physitians after him have taught, especially by reason of a little Reed put into the Arteries, under which they are not mov'd, by reason of the Intercepton of their coat, til it be taken away. again, because as the Heart is contracted and widened, so are the Arteries, as appears by laying one hand to the region of the Heart, and the other to the Wrist, and by wounds in the Heart and Arteries: or by the *Blood* either boyling according to *Aristotle*, or rarefied according to *Des Cartes*, or meerly distending as *Harvey* hath proved: or from both the Blood filling, and the faculty directing, which is my opinion. For that the Arteries are moved and distended by the *Blood*, I prove. 1. The Heart by its perpetual pulsing, expels great store of Blood, as I have demostrated in my Chapter of the Heart. 2. That the same Blood doth fill and move the Arteries, the Artery it self shews, being laid bare, into which at every pulse, you shall feel with your fingers the Blood driven in to flow down, with which it is dilated. 3. When an Artery is opened, Blood leaps out, at every pulse, as out of the Heart. 4. *Harvey* saw a portion of the descendent Artery with two crural branches a span long taken out of the Body of a Gentleman, which was turned into a fistulous hollow bone, and nevertheless the Blood which when he was living, descended through the the Cavity thereof into his Legs, did move the Arteries beneath, by its impulse. The same hath been observed by others in the *Arteria Aorta* 5. In an Aneurisma the flesh is manifestly seen to pulse, as formerly the Artery being sound was wont to do by the afflux of Blood. 6. The waving, Worm-creeping pulse, do argue the same, in the judgment of *Walæus*. 7. *Harvey* gives us another rare experiment, made with the Guts of a Dog, Wolf or other Creature dried, blown up and filled with Water. For if we smite one end with our Finger, and lay our fingers to the other end, we may cleerly perceive every stroak, and the difference of the motion. Howbeit I conceive the faculty ought to be joyned hereto, communicated to the Coats from the Heart, by help whereof, they are contracted and widned; because, 1. Otherwise the Flux of the Blood would be inordinate, and the pulse alwaies unequal. 2. All the Arteries are dilated or contracted in one moment, but the Blood alone fils the Arteries successively and moves them part after part. Indeed, Gloves being blown into, all the fingers are puffed up at once, which *Harvey* objects, and in a Basin the blow and motion are at once in both ends: but corporeal blood is of another Nature, which cannot be moved like species or Winds. 3. The Faculties or Irradiation of vital light, may run through all parts in the twinkling of an Eye, like the Light of the Sun. See more of this in the Chapter of the Heart. 4. Hence within *Galen* his Reed the Artery is obscurely moved, because the swift motion of the Blood ceases when the Faculty is hindred. Howbeit, *Harvey* and *Walæus* argue differently about this difficult Experiment.

*Whether the Arteries are dilated together with the Heart or no.*

Now all the Arteries are widened when the Heart is contracted, and contracted when the Heart is widened, which is certain from the dissection of an Artery and the Heart, and from Ligatures, nor was it so long ago unknown to *Erasistratus*, and reason confirmes the same, because when the Heart expels, then are the the Arteries filled with its Blood. Yet have they not contrary pulses, as we find by laying our hand to the wrist and the Region of the Heart, at one and the same time, for the pulse of the Heart is perceived by us in its Systole, but that of the Arteries in the Diastole, when they are filled, because the two motions, are at one and the same time. The smalleſt *capillary* Arteries are not perceived to pulse, because there is not so much force in them, and therefore we can hardly discern them from the Veins. also they have thin Coats, so that the Blood is seen through them, as through the Veins.

The *Form* is apparent from the Accidents; howbeit the form of an Arterie is the Substancial Soul, as it is of the whole Body besides.

Its *Situation* is deep, allwaies under the Veins, that they might be more safe, and that not only in the external, but the internal parts also, if you except the Belly, a little below the Kidneies: For after that the Vena Cava and the Aorta, descending from the *Diaphragme*, have passed the Region of the Kidneies, the Cava hides it self under the Aorta through all that region, til they pass out of the Abdomen; for then the Arterie does again side it selfe under the Cava. The Cause whereof *Plempius* conceives to be this; that otherwise there would have bin danger, least the bending of the Body often happening in that place, the Vena cava having but a single Coat, would have resisted the said motion.

*Its Magnitude.*

Its *Magnitude* is sufficiently great, but the descending part of the Arterie is greater, the ascendent lesser, because the Number of the internal parts is greater then of the external.

The *Number* of the Arteries is fewer then of the Veins, because the passage of the Blood is quick through the Arteries, slow through the Veins, and therefore there are many receptacles provided for that Blood which is collected by certain pulses. Yet there are more Arteries then we think, or can be discerned by us, because the capillary Arteries are exceeding like to Veins.

Their *Shape* is like a Pipe or Channel, smooth, round, and long.

As to their *Passages*. Some Arteries are terminated into the Guts, by which expulsion of Excrements is caused; some have their mouths terminated into the Skin, through which the external air is attracted (in Transpiration which is performed also by the Veins) and sooty steams expelled. *Platerus* denies that they are inserted into the Bones, but *Spigelius* observed at *Padua*, in a great corruption of the *Os Tibiæ*, that the substance of the Bone was bored through by an Arterie. which perhaps *Aristotle* had likewise seen, because he sayes that Arteries end into a solid Substance.

*Whether the Arteries do feel.*

They are compassed (like the Veins) sometimes with a membrane thick and common, from the Neighbouring parts, when they are without the Bowels and the Muscles; and such Arteries as have a membrane joyned to them with Nerves in it, do feel; whence *Galen* said the Pulse was inflamed, also that an Arterie did feel, and was pained, which one at *Padua* found in his inner parts, who dying with a mighty pain in his Loyns, Stones like a Mans Nailes were found in his Lumbal Arteries. But other Arteries are without Sense.

*Their Substance.*

The *Substance* of the Arteries is membranous, so that they may be distended and compressed more then the Veins. *Fallopius* thought

their Substance to be gristly, because he observed that it did degenerate into a boney nature; which also *Vesslingus*, saw, as well as *Harvey*, in the great Arterie above the Valves, near the Heart of an old Man. But that many things are changed into a boney substance, which were not grisley *Columbus* teaches in the *septum Cordis*. Now an Arterie consists of two peculiar *Coats*.

*How many Coats an Arterie hath.*

The *Exterior* is thin, soft, rare, as the Coat of a Vein is.

The *interior* is compact, hard, and very thick, viz. five times thicker then the Coat of the Veins: And therefore *Herophilus* said, that the Arteries were six times thicker then the Veins, for this Cause, that they might be strong in their perpetual motion, and that their thin Blood should not soon vanish and fly away, being spirituous and vaporous. And therefore in the opening of an Arterie, the incision must be made deep, with a broad and sharp Lancet, because of the deep Situation of the Arterie, and thickness of the Skin. The opening of an Arterie is allowed of by these ancients *Oribasius*, *Ægineta*, *Aetius*, *Alluarius*, *Aurelianus*, *Abensina*. With good success *Galen* practised it, in a disease of the Eyes proceeding from hot Blood, ful of vapors, and in pains of the Hips. *Panarolus* at *Rome* uses the same kind of remedie in a Phrenzie, and *Alpinus* writes that it is frequent in *Ægipt*, which *Paræus* did likewise exercise in *France*, *M. Aurelius Severinus* at *Naples*, and *Paulus Moth* with us, excellent Physitians and Surgeons, do happily open them, to the great good of their Patients, especially in diseases of the Head; in which nevertheless, the opening of an Arterie may seem useless, because 1. Vaporous and hot Blood is as well carried by the inner carotick Arteries unto the Brain, from the Basis to the *plexus retiformis*, as wel as by the external ones, which are opened. 2. The same Blood returnes through the jugular Veins, according to the sure Laws of Circulation. But seeing it did certainly profit the Patients, I conceive it was practised rather by way of preservation, then of Cure. For the antecedent cause being somewhat evacuated by the outer Arteries, the conjunct cause is easily extruded by the jugular Veins. More over, some external Vein or Arterie may be obstructed, so that neither the latter can send, nor the former receive, unless they be opened.

*Whether an Artery may be opened, and how.*

*Galen* ads a third Coat, in their inner Surface, like a Cobweb for Thinness, appearing in great Arteries about the Original.

## Chap. 2. *Of the ascendent Trunk of the great Arterie.*

THe distribution of the Arteries which alwaies in a manner, accompany the Veins, wil be more easy and short; because the dissemination of the Veins is already understood from what has bin said before.

The *Arteria magna* or *crassa*, the great or thick Artery the mother of the other Arteries, comes out of the left Ventricle of the Heart with a gapeing Orifice or vvide mouth; where within the *Pericardium* or Heart-Bag, it breeds from it self the Arteria

*Coronaria*, compassing the Basis of the Heart sometimes single, sometimes double. afterward, going out of the Heart-bag, tis divided into the lesser Trunk ascending, and the greater Trunk descending.

The *lesser* and *upper Trunk* resting upon the Wesand, does provide for all parts quartered above the Heart: and is divided into the *Subclavius Ramus dexter*, which is higher and much the larger, and the *sinister*, rising more low and going obliquely to the Arm.

Afterward the whole Trunk sustained by the Thymus, divides it self into two *Carotides* or Sleep-arteries unequal, which go right upwards.

The *Arteriæ subclaviæ* before they go out of the Chest (for then they are termed *Axillares* when they are out) from their lower part, do produce the *Intercostales superiores* to the Intervals of three or four of the upper Ribs; from their upper part. 1. The *Mammariæ*. 2. The *Cervicales*. 3. The *Musculæ*.

From the *Axillaris* before it comes to the Arm, in the lower part, doth arise the *Thoracica superior*, *Thoracica inferior*, and *Scapularis*: in the upper part, the *Humeralis*. The remainder, goes from the Axillary on each side to the Arm.

## CHAP. III.
## *Of the Arteria Carotides.*

THe *Arteriæ Carotides* do ascend upwards right to the Head by the sides of the Wesand, being knit unto the internal Jugulars: for the internal Veins do not accompany the Arteries. When they come to the Fauces, before they enter the Skul, they give branches to the Larynx and the Tongue: and then a division is made into the outer and inner branch.

The *outer* being the *smaller*, furnishes the Cheeks and Muscles of the Face; and then at the root of the Ears, 'tis divided into two branches; the *one* is sent to the hinder parts of the Ear, whence arise two branches entring the lower Jaw, to furnish the Lip, and the roots of all the lower Teeth: the other goes to the Temples, the Forehead, and the Muscles of the Face.

The *inner* at the saddle of *Os Sphænodes* under the *dura mater*, makes the *Rete mirabile*, and then passes through the *dura mater*, and sends forth two branches. 1. The *lesser* with the Nerve optick to the Eyes. 2. The *greater* ascending to to the side of the *Glandula pinealis*, and distributed through the *pia mater* and the substance of the Brain.

## Chap. 4. *Of the Arteries of the whole Hand.*

THe *Axillary Arterie*, is carried along through the Arm, descending between the Muscles, with a Vein and Nerve of the Arm which they count to be the fourth.

Under the bending of the Elbow, it is divided into two fair branches; the upper and the lower.

The *upper* goes right on through the middle to the Wrist, where Physitians feel the Pulse; afterward proceeding under the ring-shap'd Ligament, it bestows branches upon the Thumb, Fore-finger, and Middle-finger.

The *lower* running through the Ulna to the Wrist; furnishes the Mid-finger Ring-finger and little finger: and so it proceeds to the Wrist, whence we feel the motion of the Pulse beneath, especially in lean persons, or such as have a great Pulse. But we better perceive the pulsing of the former branch, because it is less obscured and hid by Tendons.

CHAP.

# The FIGURE Explained.

This TABLE presents the distribution of the *Arteria Magna* or *Aorta*, through the whole Body.

A. *The Beginning of the Arteria magna arising out of the Heart.*
aa. *Its Trunk ascending, from whence arise*
CC. *The Arteriæ Subclaviæ, and from these*
dd. *The Arteriæ carotides, which afterwards produce*
ee. *The Ramus exterior and*
ff. *The Ramus interior.*
gg. *The Arteriæ Vertebrales or Cervicales.*
hh. *The Arteriæ Musculæ.*
ii. *The Arteriæ Mammariæ.*
kk. *The upper intercostal Arteries.*
ll. *The Scapularis interna.*
mm. *Scapularis externa.*
nn. *Thoracica superior.*
oo. *Thoracica inferior.*
pp. *The Ramus axillaris.*
Qq *Its upper branch dispersed through the Arm to the Wrist.*
Rr. *Its inferior branch going also to the Hand.*

## These following Characters denote the Arteries which spring from the descendent Trunk.

B. *The Trunk of the Artery descending.*
aaaa. *The lower Intercostal Arteries.*
bb. *The Phrenicæ Arteriæ.*
C. *The Arteria Cæliaca.*
d. *The right branch thereof.*
e. *Its left branch or Arteria Splenica, sprinkled with very small twigs through the Spleen.*
f. *The Arteria Gastrica dextra.*
g. *The Arteria Gastroepiploica.*
h. *The Arteria Epiploica.*
kk. *The Arteria Mesenterica superior.*
ll. *The emulgent Arteries.*
mm. *The Spermatick Arteries.*
nnnn. *The Arteriæ Lumbares.*
oo. *The Mesenterica inferior.*
pp. *The Rami Iliaci.*
Qq. *The Arteria Iliaca externa.*
Rr. *The Iliaca interna.*
S. *The Arteria Sacra.*
tt. *Arteriæ Hypogastricæ going to the Arse-gut and the Privities.*
uu. *The Hypogastricæ which go to the Womb.*
XX. *The Umbilical Arteries.*
ZZ. *The Arteria Epigastricæ.*
ΔΔ. *The Arteria Cruralis.*
αα. *The Arteria pudenda.*
ββ. *The Musculæ inferior.*
εε. *The Arteria Musculæ, Cruralis, externa.*
νν. *The Musculæ Cruralis interna.*
θθ. *The Popliteus Ramus.*
κκ. *The Ramus Suralis.*
λλ. *Branches spent upon the Foot and its Toes.*

## CHAP. V.

# *Of the descending Trunk of the great Arterie.*

THe Trunk of the *Aorta* or great Arterie *descending* is greater, because it sends out branches from it self, into the middle and lower belly, as also into the Thighes.

In the *Chest* or middle Bellie, two Arteries proceed from the greater Trunk.

I The *Intercostales inferiores* which go unto the Intervalls of eight Ribs, and the neighbouring Muscles. For it seldom happens, that the Vein sine pari, has to accompany it an Arterie sine pari, arising from the Trunk. By these intercostals if we beleive *Spigelius*, quittor and water collected in the Chest, are received into the great Arterie, and thence by the emulgent Veins carried into the Bladder. which has also reason to back it, because the congested matter is more easily hurried through the Arteries, and the way is shorter. I add that quittor more readily follows the natural motion of the Arterial Blood then of the venal.

II The *Phrenica* to serve the Midriff and Pericardium, or Heart-bag.

The rest of the Trunk pierces through the Clift of the Septum, and spreads branches through the lower Belly, some of which accompany the branches of vena portæ, others the Branches of Vena Cava. Those which accompany the Branches of vena portæ are three,

*Cœliaca Arteria, Mesenterica Superior & Inferior.*

The *Cœliaca*, so called because it sends many branches unto the Stomach, proceeds forward from the Aorta, being under propped by the Call, and is divided into the *Ramus dexter* which is the smaller, and the *Sinister Ramus* which is the larger, which under the hinder region of the Stomach, are knit to the Vena Portæ in the Pancreas.

The *Dexter* ascending to the Cavity of the Liver, and proceeding a little forwards, on the higher side produces *Gastrica dextra*, and the *Cysticæ gemellæ*; from its lower part, *Epiploë dextra*, *Intestinalis*, and *Gastro-epiploïs dextra*, in imitation of the *Vena portæ*. therefore let what was said there, be here repeated. The Remainder from the *Ramus dexter* goes into the hollow surface of the Liver.

The *Sinister* or *Arteria Splenica*, is greater than the *Dexter*, least it should be easily obstructed by thick juyces, and that it may pour sufficient vital blood, into the Spleen. This Artery drawn out into the *Vena Splenica*, by a bending and crooked Course goes to the Spleen, and then spreads branches after the same manner as the *Vena Splenica*.

The *Mesenterica superior* is distributed welnigh into the whole Mesentery, and constitutes the *Arteriæ Mesaraicæ*, in the Gut Jejunum, Ileon and part of Colon: whose use is, 1. To communicate native heat into the neighbouring parts, and those whereinto they are inserted. 2. In a sickly state to receive the Excrement- of the whole body, as the Mesaraick Veins do, to empty them into the Guts, which use was first found out by *Spigelius*. 3. Some conceive the Mesaraick Arteries draw Chyle. 1. Because of their Cartiage. 2. Because of their Ends. 3. Of their Contents. 4. The Authority of *Galen* in his 4. *de usis partium* and in his Treatise *An in Arteria sit sanguis ch.* 5. whom *Hofman* follows. But they cannot draw Chyle, because Chyle was never seen in them, and the Arteries receive nothing from the parts, but communicate somewhat to those parts whereinto they are inserted. Nor do they draw to the Heart, as *Varolius* would have it, for the valves hinder; and the Chyle is not natural to the Heart. Nor to the Liver or Spleen, as others suppose, because only the Splenick Arteries do carry vital Blood to the Spleen, and there is only one little Artery implanted in the Liver. Nor is it returned out of the Arteries into the Veins, as *Spigelius* imagins, for so there would be labour in vain; Nor do they carry this Chyle to the Cœliaca: because nothing ascends by the Arteries, but all descends by them to the parts. Therefore 4. The true use of the *Mesaraick* Arteries according to the Principles of *Walæus* is, to carry Arterial blood to the Guts, for their nutriment. Which motion of the Humors, Ligatures do shew in live-Anatomies. For the Mesaraick Arteries being bound, do swell towards the Trunk and the Heart, and are empty towards the Guts, which suck in the blood, and send back what is superfluous, through the mesaraick Veins to the Liver.

*Whether the Blood of the Belly be circulated.*

For the Blood is also circularly moved in the Abdomen, out of the cœliac and mesenterick Arteries, into the *Vena portæ*, notwithstanding *Riolanus* his denying the same, by his motion through the Trunks, because

1. There is the same Necessity which is in the Heart and other parts, the same Profit and the same Urgency.

2. Seeing there is an impulse of Blood without intermission, into the Meseraic and Cœliack Arteries, of necessity, they must either break, or Tumors and other Diseases must arise in the Mesentery, or it must run back again to the branches of the *Portæ*

3. Ligatures demonstrate the same here, as in other places.

4. The Valves observed by *Harvey* in the *Ramus splenicus*, permit the Blood to run back by the *Vena portæ*.

As to the contrary reasons it is to be observed.

1. That the Blood of the *Vena portæ* is not so impure, if it be compared with that of the *Cava*, but that it is somtimes purer than it; and though it be more dreggy, there is the more need for it to run back, to be made more pure by the Liver and Heart.

2. That there are in the Liver Anastomoses either of the *Vena portæ* and *Vena cava* (though they are not so apparent in a dead body) or such as open into the parenchyma of the Liver.

3. Somtimes there is a remarkable palpitation of the *Arteria cœliaca* in hypochondriacal disorders, which also *Mercatus* and *Fernelius* have observed, without any mutation of the Pulse, viz. the Hypochondrium being ill affected with Wind, or with some distemper, whereby the same Blood coming from the Heart, may be changed in this Region: but that by the Palpitation of the lower parts, the Heart is many times changed, *Tulpius* hath an Example. See also other Arguments, learnedly refuted by *Slegelius*.

The *Mesenterica inferior*, is distributed into the lower part of the Mesentery, and the left side of Colon.

But the other Arteries which accompany the Branches of *Cava*, are these following, excepting the *Mesenterica inferior*. For in this order the branches break forth from the *Arteria magna*, in the lower Belly. 1. *Cœliaca*. 2. *Mesenterica superior*. 3. The Emulgent. 4. The Spermatick. 5. The *Mesenterica inferior*. 6. The Lumbares; from which two Arteries are thought to accompany two Veins of the Brain. 7. *Musculæ superior*.

Afterwards the *Aorta* at the beginning of the *Os sacrum*, goes above the *Vena Cava* and no longer under, least smiting against some Bone in its perpetual motion, it should be hurt; also that the fore-parts, the shops of generation, because of their need of Heat, might be neer the great Artery. And in this place it is called

*Iliaca*, where it is divided like the *Cava* into the two Iliac Trunks, and each of them into the inner and and lesser branch, and the outer and greater which go to the Thigh.

But before they become crural, they send out on each side

side six branches. The *Sacra* presently after the bipartition: from the inner Trunk the *Musculi inferior*, the *Hypogastrica* and *Umbilical Arteries*: from the *Epigastrica* and *Pudenda*; The rest of the Artery, is carried into the Thigh and makes the crural Arteries.

## Chap. 6. *Of the Crural Arteries.*

OF the Crural Arteries, on each side, are constituted these following Arteries.

Above the Hun, from the *exterior* part of the Trunk, *Musculi cruralis externa*, to the foremore Muscles of the Thighes; from the *inner*, the *Musculi cruralis interna*, to the inner Muscles of the Thigh; and this is mingled at the Knee, with a small branch or twig of the Hypogastrica.

Under the Ham arise three branches:

1. The *Popliteus*, into the hinder Muscles of the Thigh.
2. The *Suralis*, which is divided into the *Tibicus exterior*, the *posterior altus* and *posterior humilis*, for the Muscles of the Leg.
3. The rest is spent upon the Foot and its Toes.

# THE THIRD MANUAL Of the Nerves, Answering to the THIRD BOOK OF THE HEAD.

## CHAP. I.
### *Of the Nerves in General.*

*The significations of the term* Nervus.

BY the Term *Nervus* the Ancients did somtimes signifie a Ligament or Band, hence the Comædian saies, He wil come to the *Halter, in Nervum ibis*: but it properly signifies a common Organ, which together with animal spirit, carries the faculty of moving and feeling, wherefore *Aurelianus* calls the Nerves *sensuales viæ*.

*A Nerve what.*

A Nerve therefore is a common Organ long and round, to carry the Animal faculty lodged in the Animal spirit, into the parts of the Body.

The *Efficient* is the Nerve-making faculty.

The Matter according to *Hippocrates*, is a clammy and cold part of the Seed, heated but not burnt: and *Galen* saies 'tis a matter white, thick and roapie. And this is the Beginning of its Generation.

*The Beginning of the Nerves.*

The Beginning of the Dispensation of Nerves or the part whence the Nerves immediately arise, is the *Medulla oblongata*, partly as it is within the Skull and partly as it is in the Back-bone. Within the Skull arise those which are commonly said to arise from the Brain, viz. the seven pair of Nerves: and in the Back-bone thirty. And this most true opinion is confirmed, not only by the similitude of the Marrowie and Nervie Substance, but also by ocular experience.

*The Error of* Aristotle.

*Aristotle* would have them arise from the Heart, who is followed by *Alexander, Averrhoes* and *Aponensis*, who nevertheless say it comes by mediation of the Brain.

Others would have the Nerves to be nothing else but the Veins and Arteries continued, and degenerating into Nerves: as *Praxagoras* of old, in our daies *Cesalpinus, Rousseus, Hofmannus* and *Martianus*, but they are out; seeing 1. In the Brain there is no Conjunction of Arteries and Nerves by Anastomoses. 2. An Artery being hurt or cut in the Head, no Convulsion follows. 3. The distinct Rise of the Nerves in the Brain is apparent, as of the Arteries in the Heart

*Erasistratus* did conceive they came from the *dura mater*.

At this day many Physitians conceive with *Galen*, that some Nerves arise from the Brain, others from the Spinal Marrow: who are all confuted by *ocular inspection*.

Their *End* and Use is, to carry the Animal faculty with the Animal spirit, from the Brain, like conduit pipes, into the parts.

1. Sensory, as the Eyes, Ears, &c.
2. Motive, as the Muscles.
3. All in a manner, that they may in general perceive and understand what causeth pain.

And therefore the Nerves inserted into the parts, do give to the said parts either Sense alone, or Motion alone, or both Sense and Motion: nor is there any voluntary motion or sense without the help of a Nerve; and therefore a Nerve being cut, that part is presently deprived of Sense and Motion.

*Whether the moving Nerves and the sensitive differ.*

The *Nerves* therefore, I say, do afford to the parts either *Sense* or *Motion*, according as they are disseminated into such and such parts, because the Nerves of themselves are not *sensitive* or *motive*. So that if they be implanted into Muscles the Organs of Motion, they are termed motive Nerves; if into the Instruments of sense, sensitive. Many times also according to the Nature of the Parts, one pare of Nerves affords both Sense and Motion. As the sixt pare of the Nerves of the Brain, commonly so called, is communicated to the Bowels of the middle and lower Belly to cause the Sense of Feeling; and when it becomes recurrent, it bestowes motion

motion upon the Muſcles of the Larynx. The optick pare ſo called, gives only ſenſe, becauſe implanted into the Eyes only. But the other pare which is termed *motorium par*, the moving pare, and ariſes from the marrow as wel as the former, cauſes motion becauſe it is implanted into the Muſcles of the Eyes.

The *Situation* of the Nerves, for ſecurities ſake, is more profound and deep then that of the Arteries.

The *Magnitude* is various, according to the condition of the Organs and dignity of the Actions, their Aſſiduity and Magnitude. The optick Nerves are great, becauſe the action of the Eyes is ſo; alſo thoſe Nerves are moſt thick which are ſent to remote and many parts, as the Limbs; indifferent in the ſenſory parts; for becauſe they were to be ſoft, they could not be very ſmall: the Nerves of the neereſt parts are ſmalleſt of all, as in the Muſcles of the Face.

*A new opinion of the Author touching the number of the Nerves.*

The Nerves are commonly ſaid to be *ſeven and thirty pare* in *number*; ſeven pare from the Brain, which I ſay ariſe not from the Brain but from the *medulla oblongata* within the Skull, and thirty from the Marrow in the Back-bone. But I ſay that indeed and in truth, thoſe ſeven pare are ten pare, as ſhall be made apparent in the *following Chapter*: and ſo I make forty pare of Nerves: *ten ariſing within the Skull*, and thirty without in the Back-bone.

The former were indeed by the Ancients reckond to be only ſeven in number, and to ariſe from the Brain, which they comprehended in this verſe.

*Optica prima, Oculos movet altera, tertia guſtat*
*Quartaq; Quinta audit, vaga ſexta eſt, ſeptima linguæ.*

*Firſt ſees, next moves the Eyes; third, fourth do taſt,*
*Fift hears, ſixt roams, ſeventh moves the Tongue too faſt.*

But the ſmelling pare was by them omitted, and that which they make the third pare, is double and diſtinct; ſo the fift is double; one pare of which duplicitie, ſome have made to be an eighth pare. for *Archangelus* reckon'd eight pare, *Columbus* nine, and I ten, as ſhal be ſaid hereafter.

Now the thirty pare of the Marrow of the Back are ſo divided, that ſeven are of the *Neck*, twelve of the *Cheſt* or *Back* (others ſay eleven) five of the *Loyns* (ſomtimes four) and ſix of the *Oſſacrum*.

All theſe Nerves do ſprout out of both ſides, and therefore they are termed *Pares* of *Nerves*, *Suſuzïai* conjugations or couplings of Nerves.

*The uſe of this Doctrine in Phyſick.*

And it is neceſſary for a Phyſitian to know their originals and diſtinctions, that he may underſtand to which part of the Back-bone Topicks are to be applied, when motion or ſenſe, or both are impaired in the Face, Neck, Hands, Muſcles of the Belly, Yard, Fundament, Womb, Bladder, &c.

*The Nervus ſine pari.*

Moreover as to number, you muſt know that every Nerve hath its Mate or Companion, except the laſt or loweſt proceeding from the ſpinal Marrow.

*Why the Nerves are not hollow.*

The figure of the Nerves is long, round, and ſmooth like Conduit pipes; but without any hollowneſs as the Veins and Arteries have: becauſe the latter with Spirit were to carry Blood, but the Nerves carry only Spirit.

*Riolanus* the *Father* excepts the Nerves of the Privitie manifeſtly hollow, which nevertheleſs his Son excuſes to have been meant of the hollow Ligaments of the Privity, who is better verſt in Anatomy then his Father was, and ſo alſo *Laurentius* ſpoke. *Severinus* in his Zootome, ſaies,

*Whether the optick Nerves are hollow.*

the Nerves of a *Buls pizzle* are hollow. *Galen* alſo adds the Optick Nerves, which he will have to be hollow and perforated, ſenſibly and manifeſtly: for the diſcerning whereof he conceives three things are neceſſary, viz. That 1. The Animal be great. 2. That it be cut up as ſoon as killed. 3. That the Air be cleer and bright. *Plempius* doth alſo require three things more, that the Nerve be cut aſunder with a moſt ſharp Knife, that it be not ſqueezed nor ſtretched, and that it be cut beyond the growing together of the two Nerves. *Cornelius Gemma* ſubſcribes to *Galen*, who attributes rather a paſſage to be ſeen like a prick in the inner ſubſtance of the Nerves.

Others conceive the poroſitie is better ſeen in the optick Nerves being boyled. *Fallopius* ſaies that *Galen* thought thus, becauſe in the Bodies of Apes which he diſſected, all Nerves are pervious. Howbeit *Spigelius* admits only certain paſſages in the beginnings of Nerves, where they grow together, and ſoon after towards the Eyes it vaniſhes. I alſo ſaw a Cavity and publickly did ſhew the ſame in a dead body, after they were joyned and before they entred into the Eye.

But *Veſalius*, *Euſtachius* and *Coiterus* deny theſe Nerves to have any Cavity, againſt *Galen*, and ſo do others, and produce experiments which ſucceed not, unleſs the conditions aforeſaid be obſerved.

All the reſt of the Nerves do want a manifeſt Cavity, but they have *Pores* through which the ſubtile ſpirits paſs, leaſt we ſhould grant penetration of bodies which is impoſſible. Theſe pores are double according to *Hoga'and* *leſſer* and *greater*. through the former ſubtil aerial bodies paſs to move the parts; by the latter, bodies leſs ſubtile. Neither of them is diſcernable to the Senſe. Nor are there two ſorts of Spirits in the Brain. I am rather apt to believe that according to the Indigence of every part and the pleaſure of the Wil and the Imagination, ſomtimes more ſpirit paſſes through the greater, ſomtimes leſs through the leſſer, which the more plentiful or ſcanty influx of the Spirit doth make.

Moreover all the Nerves do conſiſt, none excepted, of many nervous fibres or filaments which grow mutually together by little Membranes. I my ſelf with *Johannes Leonicenus* a right diligent Anatomiſt, have obſerved the Trunk of Nerves neer the Hips, if it be diſſected, to ſhew a Cavity as it were, conſiſting of an infinite contexture of fibres, like little Worms, whereas elſewhere it is one continued body, with cohæring and continued fibres.

The *Subſtance* of the Nerves is thought to be threefold: the internal, white and marrowiſh (by which as the Centre the action is performed) from the Marrow of the Brain, but more compact and thickned; and an external, being a twofold coat; the outer harder proceeding from the *dura mater*, the inner finer from the *Pia mater*. Which Membranes do the ſame for the Nerves, which the *dura* and *pia mater* do for the Brain. Howbeit this diſtinction of Subſtances, is to be ſearcht out rather by Reaſon than by Senſe.

*Carteſius* ſuppoſes that there are Valves in the Nerves, which ſtop the Spirit that it may not flow back, otherwiſe the parts cannot be moved. But it ſeems to me, the Spirits may not be retained in the parts, which the Soul that directed the Spirit as far as to the Valve, ſhal direct it into the very parts. For no Anatomiſt as yet hath obſerved any Valves. Nor can ſubtile Spirits be ſtopped by Valves. Nor would Apoplexies or Palſies ſo eaſily happen, if the Spirits could be detained in the parts by Valves.

Beſides Valves *H. Regius* introduces likewiſe a circulation of the animal Spirits in the Nerves. For after they are diſtributed from the Brain to the whole Body, he conceivs part is diſſipated by inſenſible Tranſpiration, and part being inſinuated into the Veins, is mingled with the Blood, and returns with it into the Heart, and thence again into the Brain and Nerves. He proves this by the example of a Snail incloſed in a glaſs, in which the ſpirits through its tranſparent Body, are ſeen to move and paſs from the Tayl, through the Belly, to the Head, and from the Head through the Back, to return to the Tayl, and from thence to the Head again.

But

But some doubts with-hold me from assenting to this witty conjecture, because

1 *Walaus* searching out the Motion of the animal spirits with all his diligence, could find nothing but the motion and distention of the Muscles. For the Nerves being bound, do not swell, nor are distended, and being cut asunder, they shew no other motion, but that they are contracted into themselves.

2 There is no need that the spirits should run back to the Veins, because being subtile they are easily consumed, and by his own Confession do insensibly exhale.

3 New spirit is evermore supplied from the Brain, which may supply the Deffect of that which is consumed.

4 The Veins need none, because they possess that spirit which is proper to the Blood, nor are they moved with annual motion.

5 The Nerves themselves are not moved by Systole and Diastole, nor of themselves as was said, because it appears not when they are bound, and they move with a voluntary motion by the Muscles, and not by the arteries because they are smaller and go not into them: finaly the nerys are unfit for such a motion because of their Slipperiness.

6 In a Snail the Spirit aforesaid is instead of Blood, which Snails have not.

7 I have seen those who had their senses perfect, and the motion of all their parts free to the last gasp, whose Pulse did nevertheless intermit for certain daies. where there was no regress of the Spirits to the Veins, freely passing nevertheless from the Brain to the parts of the Body, as long as there was any left.

*Nerys hard or soft.*

It is now to be observed that all the Nerys are not alike hard or soft; whence *Galen* reckons some *nervs soft*, others *hard*: the former he calls *sensitive*, the latter *motive*. now the Nerys become *harder*.

1 Because of their *Production* as being to go a great way, or through some hard Body, or by a crooked way. And by how much they are further from the Brain, by so much the harder they are. Hence the short Nerves, as those of the Sight, Tast, Hearing, are soft, and those of the Smelling softest of all.

2 *For Use.* for hard Nerys are held to be fitter for motion, soft ones for sense. And therefore the Organs of the Senses have received soft Nerves, that they might be the sooner affected by a sensible object occurring. Now all parts which have voluntary motion have hard Nerves, because that which is hard is fittest to act, that which is soft to suffer.

*Why the moving Nerys are hardest.*

The Use therefore of all the Nerys is,

1 To carry *animall Spirit* to all parts for sense and motion, which appears when they are hurt. For if they are obstructed in the beginning or totally, they both perish and an Apoplexy is caused: or in part, and then one part of the Body is deprived of sense and motion. If they are cut asunder, the motion of that part is lost, into which they were inserted.

2 To diffuse *Animal light* into the parts. For the animal Spirits could not so soon be taken away, either in a Ligature, or Obstruction of the Nerys, but that those Spirits which remain in the part, might cause motion or sense. Therefore the *direction* of the Brain proceeds from somwhat else, which being taken away, the parts presently cease from performing their functions, even as the Hammer is by the Hand directed unto the Anvil, and a Staff is directed when it is hurled. which others endeavour to explain by some hot *Accident* beside the Animal Spirit. But I suppose these things are done by a light which irradiates from the Brain, with the spirits, which being intercepted, the parts are immediately deprived of Sense and Motion, as the light of the Sun is taken away by a Cloud, and the light of a Candle, by holding a mans hand before it. For,

1 No other influent cause, can flow in so suddenly, and be withdrawn so suddenly.

2 Light is the cause of all motion welnear in the Universe, and nothing is swifter then it is.

3 Sometimes it remains after interception, but not long, as light received into the Bononian Stone, and a Stick by me violently darted, and broken in the middle way, does fly yet further, by the motion impressed from my hand.

3 The Temper of the Body followes the Figure and Temper of the Nerves, and therefore *Joh. Damascenus* in the seventh Aphorisme to his Son, advises, in giving of Medicaments, to avoid such as dissolve the force of the Nerves.

## CHAP. II.

## *Of the ten Pare of Nerves, which arise within the Skul, from the medulla oblongata, and their progress.*

I Make the first Pare to be *Par olfactorium* the Smelling-pare, whose processes are termed *mammillares*. And these processes have been sufficiently known to all: but the Nerves, to which they are fastened behind, and well near continued, to none or very few.

*Whether there be any smelling Nerves.*

These Nerves slip out of the Marrow about the Saddle of the Sphænoides, near the foremore Ventricles, and have the carriage, colour, and use of Nerves, and therefore I reckon them for Nerves.

*A Præoccupation.*

For they must not therefore be robbed of the Name of Nerves, because they pass not without the Skul, and Dura Mater, and are not afterward invested herewith, for then all the other Nerves as long as they are within the skull, must not be called Nerves, which were absurd.

*Processus Mammillares.*

To these Nerves are adjoyned two thick portions or processes called *Processus mammillares*, papillares: the Teat-like processes.

They are in *Number* two, *white*, *soft*, *broad*, *longish*, in men thin and small, in Brutes greater, especially in Dogs, and other Creatures that have an exquisite Smell.

For

*The Organ of Smelling.*

The *Use* of these Processes, is to be the true Organs of smelling, and not the Nose nor its coat.

These Processes are *placed* in the fore-part of the Brain, behind the Colander-bone, and to it being covered with the Dura Meninx they put a face. Through the Colander-bone the Odours ascend.

The *second Pare*, which others count the first, is the Optick or seeing-pare, because it carries the seeing Spirits to the Eyes, or the representations of visible objects to the Brain, but not humors from the Brain to the Eye to nourish it, which is the fiction of *Cæsalpinus*. *Hierophilus* calls them *poros opticos* or *meatus*, the optick pores or passages, because they are thought to be hollow.

These Nerves, of all the ten pare, are the greatest and thickest, but softer then the rest.

*The Error of others about the rise of the Optick Nerves.*

*They arise*, not as the *common Opinion* is, from the fore-part of the Basis of the Brain; for their original must be sought further, towards the hinder part of the Head, where they are carried between the Brain, and the begining of the spinal Marrow, and arise out of the beginning of the first Trunks of the Medulla oblongata

oblongata, growing out of the Brain. But *Riolanus* demonstrates, that they are turned round about those great Eminencies of the Brain, which *Galen* cals *Thalamos nervorum opticorum*, which reach unto the foremore Ventricles, that they may fetch optick spirits from thence.

*The Union of the optick Nerves and the true Cause thereof.*

And having proceeded a while, they are neer the middle way united above the saddle of *Os Sphænoides*, not by a simple touch or intersection, in Mankind, but a total confusion and mingling of their Substances, that they might suffer the less, in the middle of a long passage, by reason of their softness. *Vesalius*, *Aquapendens* and *Valverda* have observed that they have somtimes continued divided, in their whole Course. *Vesalius* also observed that in a Woman they were joyned only by mutual Contact, whose right Eye had been withered from a Child; because the right Nerve was smaller than the left, beyond the Conjunction. But in most bodies the inner substance of the Nerves is confounded, as I have observed by accurate Inquisition.

The growing together of the optick nerves, was therfore contrived by Nature, either lest the sensible object being received in by both Eyes should seem double, or that the Visive spirit might, if need were, be all conveighed into one Eye which are the conjectures of *Galen*, or finally for strength and stability here necessary, least in Concussions of the Brain they might hap to be broken or distorted, or least through the softness and moistness of the Brain and optick Nerves, by reason of distillations and other Excrements they might become flaggie, and so driven out of their right station; which is the opinion of *Plempius*.

Soon after being seperated they go out of the Skull into the Centre of the Eyes in Mankind, but much lower in Beasts, because they look more sidewaies.

Within the Skull they are cloathed only with the *Pia mater*; but from the holes, which pass to the Eyes, they are covered with the *dura mater*. Afterward it spreads the latter to the *Sclirotica tunica*, the former to the *Tunica choroïdes*, and its inner marrowy substance to the *Retina*.

The *third pare*, which others count the second, is the *motorium oculorum*, the *Eye-mover*, next unto the former.

*The Error of others about the Rise of the Eye-movers.*

This pare is thought by vulgar Anatomists to arise from the Brain, neer the original of the first pare. But it reaches to the middle of the Head, goes beneath the Opticks cross-wise, and

*Why one Eye being moved, the other moves also.*

*Arises* at the inmost part of the Beginning of the *medulla oblongata*, where in their Rise, these two motive-nerves are so united as to touch one another, yea to become one continued Body, which is the cause, that when one Eye moves, the other is moved also.

*Why sometimes when the temporal muscle is hurt, the Eye is hurt likewise.*

This Pare is *lesser* and *harder* than the former and stretched out by the visive pare; goes out of the Skull at other holes to the Muscles of the Eyes and Eylids. It somtimes though seldom sends a branch to the temporal Muscle; and that is the Cause that the said Muscle being hurt, the Eye is hurt, and the Eye being hurt that is hurt.

The *Fourth*, *Fift* and *Sixt* pares are much confounded by Anatomists. For some make the fourth and fift Pare one, and call it the third Pare, consisting of two roots; the lesser of which some do make the third pare, and they themselves do make the fift and sixt pare one, viz, the fourth pare by them so called. But those who reckon it for one, they count the fourth pare, according to my reckoning, for the lesser root of the third pares and the sixt pare for the fourth. whereas we distinguish all these pares.

The *fourth pare* therefore, which others as *Bauhine* count the third; others as *Fallopius* the eighth pare; others badly, the lesser root of the third pare: for it hath nothing common with the following pare, is not joyned to it, either in the Beginning or the Progress, and grows out of the order of other pares; according to some

From the side of the Beginning of the *Medulla oblongata*; according to others it grows with a very small Nerve, out of the lowest and hinder seat of the *Medulla Cerebri* or marrow of the Brain: then it is carried forwards, and fastned to the second pare, it goes with it out at the common hole, enters the socket of the Eye and sends out from it self branches

Into the fat of the Eye, the fist Muscle, and by a peculiar hole of the Bone of the Fore-head, it goes out to the Skin of the Fore-head, and the upper Eye-lid. And these are furnished by its *first branch*.

The *second* furnishes the Muscles of the upper Lip, and some of the Nose, and the Lip it self and Gums.

The *third* by the Cavity of the Nostrils serves the coat of the said Nostrils.

The *fourth* serves the inner part of the temporal Muscle. All which branches *Fallopius* doth attribute to the two following Conjugations: but my distribution is propounded by *Vesalius*, *Columbus*, *Platerus*, and *Bauhinus*.

The *fift Pare*, which others count the thicker root of the third pare; is commonly thought to furnish the Tongue with the sense of Tasting.

This *arises* neer the following Conjugation, out of the sides of the *Medulla oblongata*, and presently after its passage through the *Os sphenoides*, a writhen branch comes out like a tendrel of a Vine (which some think is done to make it harder) and is united with two little twigs of the auditory Nerve.

It furnishes the Muscles of the Face, the Temporal Muscle, the chewing Muscle of the Cheeks, the Skin of the Face, the Gums and Teeth (for by their means the Teeth have all the sense they have) the Muscle that lies concealed in the mouth and the lower Lip.

The *sixt pare*, which some call *Quarta conjugatio*, others the smaller root of the fourth Conjugation,

Hath a smaller *Original*, next the former, and somwhat harder than it.

*Whether the sixt pare be the same with the fift.*

It goes through a common hole with the former, and yet it doth not therefore become one pare with the former: for the third, fourth, and seventh pare, as I reckon them, do also pass through one and the same hole.

It is carried into the Palate. Others would have this pare also to serve the sense of Tasting.

The *seventh pare*, which others count the eighth, others the ninth, others the smaller portion of the fift pare, when as in the mean while it is a peculiar pare smaller and harder than the fift, also distinct therefrom in its original and progress:

For it *arises* a little before the fist commonly so called, in the middest of the *Medulla oblongata*, and going over the third pare, and cutting the same, it proceeds along between the third and fourth pare, where it is carried upwards and forewards, towards the sides.

It goes out of the hole with the third and fourth pare, and is commonly quite spent upon the *Musculus abducens* of the Eye. But that is a question, which others say, that it is carried into the temporal Muscle, and into that which lies concealed in the Mouth.

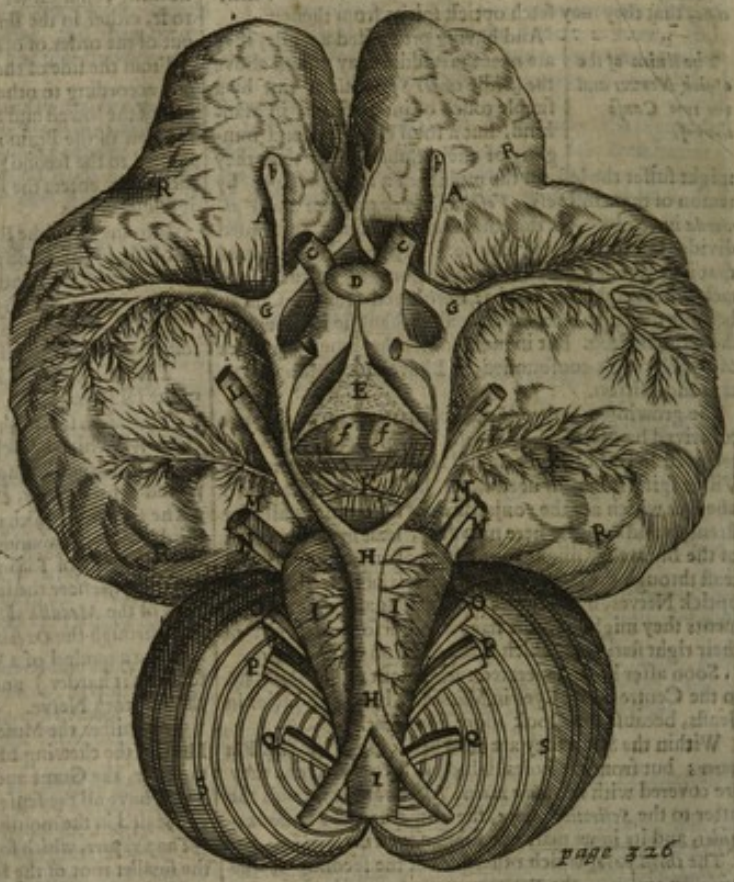
The *Eighth pare* which others count the fist, which is called *Auditorium*, the Hearing pare, arises close by the sides of the former, only a little below. It enters the *Os petrosum*, and is *divided* into the *greater* branch, which being spred out, they wil have to make the Drum, and the *lesser* broad below, as if it would accompany the sixt Conjugation.

## The Explication of the FIGURE.

This TABLE presents the Original of the Nerves to be seen in the Brain turned underside upwards.

AA. *The Smelling Nerves reckoned by our Author for the first pare.*
bb. *Their mammillary processes, or Teat-like productions.*
CC. *The optick Nerves cut off neer the Eye-holes; the second pare.*
D. *The Glandula pituitaria.*
E. *The Infundibilum or Funnel.*
ff. *Two white kernels set before the passage of the Brain.*
GG. *The greater Branch of the Carotick Artery.*
HH. *The Arteria Cervicalis.*
III. *The Beginning of the spinal marrow within the Skul.*
Kkk. *The small branches of the Arteries, which others call the Rete mirabile.*
LL. *Nerves of the third pare according to our Author.*
MM. *The Beginnings of the Nerves of the fife pare.*
OO. *The Nervi Auditorij, or the eighth pare.*
PP. *The Beginnings of the ninth Pare.*
QQ. *The Rise of the tenth Pare.*
SS. *The Cerebellum or Brainlet.*

## TABLE I



page 326

*Why we cough when the Ear-picker goes far into our Ear.*

It sends branches through the first and second Vertebra to the proper Muscles of the Larynx: and therefore it is that picking our Ears too deep, a dry Cough is caused. It is thought somtimes to send branches to the Arm, with the fourth, fift and sixt of the Arm; and somtimes into the whole Foot, with the Nerves of the Back-bone, after it hath accompanied the Spinal Marrow going downwards.

The *ninth pare* which others call *par sexum* and *vagum*, the sixt and roaming or wandring pare; because it furnishes very many parts here and there, yea and all the internal parts seated in the middle and lower Bellies, which receive branches for sense, seeing they are soft bodies, nor can away with the harder sort of Nerves springing from the spinal Marrow. And because of the long way they go, they are *cloathed* with strong *Membranes*, and are carried united to the neighboring parts.

This Pare *arises* a little beneath the foregoing, sundry fibres being presently united.

It goes out through the hole of the *Occiput*, through which the *Rectus major jugularis internæ* had ascended: and not far from its egress it provides for the Muscles seated in the Neck, especially the *Cucularis*. Then the Trunk descends, and is knit with the last pare, the Carotick Artery, and Jugular Vein; and sends branches athwart, through the Membrane and Muscles of the Larynx, also the Muscles of the Hyoides and the Fauces, as also to the Tongue.

Then descending between the Carotick and Jugularis, to the side of the Wesand above the Jugulum, it is divided on each side into the exterior and interior branch.

*The Recurrent Nerves.*

The *Exterior* constitutes the *recurrent Nerves*, or vocal Nerves so called, because they being wounded the living Creature looses its voyce; so that if one be cut asunder, half the Voyce is lost; if both, the animal becomes dumbe. they are also termed *reversivi* or *remissivi*, running-back; for first they descend, and they turn afterwards back again as it were about an Axle-tree on each side, the *right* about the *Arteria axillaris*, the *left* about the descending Trunk of the Artery: and afterward they ascend as high as the Muscles of the Larynx, to which they give numerous branches, which recursion was to be made, because the Muscles of the Larynx have their Heads, not above but beneath.

And therefore the *Exterior dexter* of the sixt pare, presently after the division, furnishes the Muscles arising from the Breast-bone and Clavicula; then the right Recurrent, being constituted for the most part of three little twigs bended back and united, it descends obliquely under the Jugulum, and in its passage shoots out little branches for the Coat of the Lungs, the Pleura, the Pericardium and the Heart; and then makes the right stomachic, under the Gullet joyned to the Jest; and passing through the Septum, it goes into the right Ventricle of the Stomach to the left branch.

The

The *Exterior Sinister*, furnishing the Parts on the same manner as the former, and constituting the left Recurrent, it sends forth the *Stomachicus sinister*, which with its fellow compasses the orifice of the Stomach and the remainder goes to the Pylorus and hollow of the Liver.

The *Interior dexter* first of all gives a Branch of it self at the roots of the ribs, to every intercostal Nerve; and then with the great Arterie it passes through the Septum, and furnishes the whole lower Belly, till it reach as far as to the Os Sacrum. And then it goes into three Branches.

*How Hoarsness comes after the Cholick.*

I. Goes to the Call, from whence arise other three twigs, 1 To the Colon, hence after a long Colick comes hoarsness. 2 the smallest scarsely visible, to the beginning of the Guts. 3 To the right side of the Bottom of the Stomach, the upper Membrane of the Call, the Coat of the Liver, and the Gall-Bladder.

II. The *Inferior* to the right Kidney. Hence they assigne the cause of Vomiting, in fits of the Stone in the Kidney.

*Why Vomiting in the stone of the Kidney.*

III. The *greatest* to the Mesentery, Guts, and right side of the Bladder.

The *Interior sinister* in its side is distributed after the same manner, save that in stead of the Liver part thereof goes unto the Spleen. But from both the interiors, sometimes Branches are sent unto the Womb.

This is the distribution of the sixt Pare according to the vulgar computation, the Ninth according to my account.

## The FIGURE Explained.

This TABLE presents the lower Branchings of the sixt pare of Nerves, which our Author calls the Ninth others the wandring or roaming pare.

## The II. TABLE.

aa. *The coming of the said Nerves out of the Skull.*
bb. *The Ramus externus on both sides.*
cc. *The Ramus internus on both sides.*
dd. *A remarkable Branch spred into the Tongue.*
ee. *A Branch arising from the same on each side, which goes to the Muscles of the Larynx.*
ff. *Another twig which goes with the former to the Larynx.*
gg. *Twigs arising from the external Branch, and propagated to the Muscles of the Neck.*
hh. *The conjunction externi Rami singularis, with Nerves which arise from the plexus of the Neck.*
ii. *The recurrent Nerve on each side.*
k. *The more internal Branch arising near the first Rib of the Chest, which bestows the twig thus X marked upon the Trunk of the Wesand, and then descending ends into the Pericardium or Heart-bag.*
l. *A little Branch arising from the recurrent, which descending produceth another twig out of it self, and goes into the pericardium, and at last it implanted into the external Branch*
m. *The twig arising, as was said, from the same, and diffused into the pericardium.*
nn. *Two twigs arising from the external Branch, the one of which is implanted into the Substance of the Heart, and the other tends to the Beginnings of the Vessells.*
o. *The aforesaid Branch implanted into the pericardium.*
pppp. *The Plexus or contexture of both Branches, viz. of the right and left, about the Gullet, near the upper Orifice of the Stomach.*
qqqq. *Twigs spred abroad into the Lungs.*
rrrr. *Branches propagated into the upper parts, especially of the Stomach.*
ssss. *Four remarkable Branches, which descending into the Mesentery, are spred abroad to the guts.*
tt. *The right and left Nerve-twig of the Kidneys.*
u. *The Nerv-twig of the Spleen.*
x. *The Nerve of the Liver.*

page 327

The

The *tenth and last pare* of Nerves, arising within the skul in the hind part of the Head, out of the Medulla oblongata when in is ready to slide into the Back-bone, is as others reckon the seventh pare.

This is *harder* then the rest, and it springs from divers roots afterwards united, and goes out of the Skul at a crooked hole propper to it self. And soon after it is with strong membranes joyned, not mixed with the precedent pare, for safe-gaurd sake. And then it is separated again, and goes the greatest part of it into the tongue, and some small part into the Muscles of *Os hyoides* and the Larynx.

## CHAP. III.

## *Of the Nerves which proceed from the spinal Marrow, and first of the Nerves arising from the Neck, and so of the Nerves of the whole Arm.*

AND so much for those ten pare of Nerves, which proceed from the *Medulla oblongata* within the skul: the other pares do now follow, which are thirty in number, sometimes nine and twenty, from the same beginning, viz. the *Medulla oblongata* being passed out of the Skull into the Back-bone: where it is termed *Medulla spinalis* or *Dorsalis*, the Marrow of the Back. Now the little Nerves proceed out of the holes of the Back-bone, in a continued course bending themselves inward, from the uppermost to the lowermost.

*Out of the Marrow*, while it is in the *Neck*, there arise *seven pare* of Nerves as some reckon, eight pare as others count, disseminated into the whole outward Head and the neighbouring Muscles.

The *first and second* pare have this peculiar above all the rest, that they *proceed* not from the sides, but from the fore and hinder part, by reason of the peculiar Articulation of the first and second Vertebra.

Now the first pare arises between the hinder-part of the Head and the first Vertebra. *Joh. Leonicenus* of *Padua*, a dextrous Anatomist in taking out of the Nerves, denied that there was any such pare as this, because he could neither see it, nor can it come out of the first Vertebra having no hole, and sticking closely to the second Vertebra and the Occiput.

The *second* pare arises between the first and second Vertebra, and so of the rest in order.

The first and second pare are *disseminated* into the Muscles of the Head, and to the Ears.

The *third* and *fourth* into the Muscles of the Cheeks, also those which are common to the Head and Neck.

The *fifth* with the branches of the fourth and sixt, do make the remarkable thirdrif Nerves: and the fift with the foresaid, sends a part backwards, and a part forward into the Muscles bowing the Head; those of the Arms, Shoulderblades, and the Skin there.

The *sixt* to the Arms and the hollow of the Shoulder-blades.

The *seventh* is joyned with two of its Neighbours, viz. the sixt of the Neck and first of the Chest, whose greatest part goes to the Arms and as far as the Hands.

For there are carried *into the Arms* five or six pare of Nerves, viz. from the *fifth*, *sixt*, and *seventh* pares of the Neck, also from the first and second pares of the *Chest*. which when they first break forth, they are all mixed and united, nor are separated without dammage, and soon after they are severally divided into the foresaid Pares; to the End haply, that by that light concourse, a collection might be made of animal spirits. Hence Tetrick Medicaments, in a Palsie, or Convulsion of the Arm, the upper part of the Arm being affected must be applied on the side of the upper part of the Back and the Neck, from whence the Nerves proceed, not directly in the middle, either of the Back or Neck, unless by reason of the common beginning of the Nerves.

*The Nerves of the whole Arm.*

The *first Pare*, from the fift pare of the Neck, goes chiefly into the Deltoides Muscle, and the Skin of the Arm, leaving a part which accompanies the *Vena humeraria*.

The *second* being thicker, is carried through the Middle and Forepart of the Cubit, where it furnishes the *Musculus biceps*, whereupon it is joyned with the third Nerve, and afterwards going downwards, it salutes the *Supinator longior* with a twig: but at the bending of the Cubit, it is divided somtimes into Two, otherwhiles into three branches.

1. The *upper* and *lesser*, goes along the outside of the Arm, to the outer part of the first or second Interjunkture of the Thumb.

2. The middle and thicker descends obliquely within the Cubit to the Wrist.

3. The lower, being stretched along by the inner branch of the Basilica, is spent into the Skin of the Cubit and Hand.

The *third* is joyned with the former, under the Muscle Biceps, it provides for the Brachiæus and the inside of the Hand.

The *fourth* being the thickest, goes along with the *Vena profunda* and the Artery, Afterwards is variously divided. Now it furnishes the Muscles which extend the Cubit, the Wrist, the Thumb, the fore and the middle Finger, and the Muscles which stretch the Fingers out.

The *fifth* stretcht along by the former, between the Muscles of the Cubit, which it furnishes descending through the lower and hinder part of the Cubit (where when we strike against any thing or compress the Nerve, we feel a numbedness in our fingers) in the middle thereof it is divided into two.

*One branch* goes externally through the *Ulna* to the Middle Finger, Ring-finger, and little Finger. On the Inside of the Fingers for securities sake, that they may give place in laying hold of any thing, for there Wounds are more pernicious than in the middle.

The other goes inwardly through the *Ulna* betwixt the Finger-bending Muscles as far as the Wrist, and sends branches to the same parts as the former sent to.

The *sixt* is spent into the Skin of the Cubit, going betwixt the Skin and the Membrane.

CHAP.

# The FIGURE Explained.

This FIGURE presents the spinal Marrow and the Nerves derived therefrom to the Limbs.

A. *The beginning of the spinal Marrow neer the Skull.*
bbbb. *The Boughs orderly propagated from the Medulla.*
ccc. *The Body it self of the Marrrow, half included within the Vertebræ, above which little Veins and Arteries spread themselves.*
DDdd. *Branches arising from three pare of Nerves of the Neck, and two of the Chest, to be distributed into the Hand.*
E. *The Contexture and Commixion of those Nerves.*
ff. *The first pare of Nerves of the Hands.*
gg. *The second Pare.*
hh. *The third Pare.*
ii. *The fourth Pare bigger than the rest.*
k k. *The fifi pare.*
l. *The six pare which is under the Skin.*
M. *The first Nerve of the Thigh.*
N. *The second Nerve.*
ooo. *The branch of the second Nerve which accompanies the Saphæna.*
PP. *The third Nerve of the Thigh.*
QQQ. *The fourth Nerve of the Thigh, thickest of all.*
rr. *The Ramus externus.*
ss. *The Ramus internus.*


## CHAP. IV.

## *Of the Nerves of the Chest, the Back and Loyns.*

FRom the Marrow of the Back arise *twelve pare*, or as some reckon eleven all and every of which after thir Egress are *divided* into the greater and lesser branches: the one of which is carried forward, the other backward, being bowed backwards.

The *foremore* branches, are sent into all the Intercostal spaces, the internal and external ones (both which I have somtimes seen divided into two branches) for the Muscles which lie upon the Chest, also for the oblique descendent of the Belly.

The *hindermore* and lesser branches go backwards to the spines of the Back, betwixt the Muscles which grow to the Vertebræ, into which they are partly consumed, and partly into those which grow from these points of the Spines, as into the *Rhomboides, Cuculares, &c.*

Out of the spinal *Marrow* when it is in the Vertebræ of the Loyns, there arise somtimes *five*, somtimes *four* pare of Nerves: which pares are greater than those of the Back. And each of these is divided into the foremore and hinder branches, which are disseminated, partly into the Muscles of the Loyns and Hypogastrium, and partly into the Thighes. For

1. This Pare gives a branch to the fleshy parts of the Midriff; and then provides for the Muscles of the Belly and Loyns.

2. It affords branches to some of the Muscles of the Thigh and Leg, and as many suppose, a branch to the Spermatick Vessels.

3. It goes to the Knee and its Skin, and part accompanies the Saphæna, and part goes to the Muscles which rest upon the Loyns.

4. Among the Lumbal ones, it is the greatest, proceeding to the fore Muscles of the Thigh and Leg, as far as to the Knee.

5. It passes through the hole, which is betwixt the Hip-bone, the Share and Flank bones, and bestows branches upon some of the Muscles of the Thigh, Yard, neck of the Womb and Bladder.

But the greatest branches go from these three parts, unto the Thighs as shal be said in the following Chapter.

## CHAP. V.

## *Of the Nerves which proceed from the Marrow of Os sacrum, and of the Nerves of the whole Foot.*

OUt of the *spinal Marrow* contained in the *Os sacrum*, there arises five pare of Nerves, or as some reckon them six pare, out of the four uppermost of which, and the three lowest of the Loyns, arise the *crural Nerves*, descending between the Feet, which being in their Rise joyned like a little Net, do soon after sprinkle three branches from themselves, as shall be said by and by touching the Nerves of the Feet.

Now the *first pare* of Nerves of *Os sacrum*, is divided like the Lumbal Nerves, into a foremore and hindermore branch. But the five following Pares otherwise. For before they go out, they are on each side double, and on each side one Nerve goes into the fore parts, another into the hinder parts. The hindermore branches are disseminated like the hinder Lumbals, viz, into the hindermore neighbouring parts.

The three foremore which are uppermost, do go into the *Thigh*, the two lower to the Muscles of the Fundament and Bladder; and some to the Interfomineum and Scrotum.

Moreover, the end of the Marrow of the Back, doth produce *only one* branch out of it self which is therfore termed *Sine pari*, without a Mate or fellow; yet sometimes it hath a fellow. It spends it self into the Skin, between the Buttocks and the Fundament, and into certain Muscles of the Thigh.

*The Nerve Sine pari.*

Now follow the *Nerves which go into the Thigh*, which before were said to be *four* in number.

The *first and third* are shorter, and reach only to the Thigh, the *second* is longer, and goes also to the Leg, the *fourth* is longest of all.

The first being made up of the third and fourth pares of the Loyns, descending to the small Trochanter, spends it self into the Skin and Muscles of the Thigh, and some of the Leg, and is *ended* above the Knee.

The *second* arising from the same place, descends with the Vein and Artery to the Thigh through the Groyns, it goes to the foremore Muscles of the Thigh, and is spread about the Knee. But it sends a remarkable branch inwardly with the Saphæna to the Ankle.

The *third arises* in the Articulation of the fourth and fift Vertebra, passes through the hole of *Os pubis*, to some upper Muscles of the Thigh and Yard, arising out of the *Os pubis*; and to the Skin of the Thigh in the Groyn.

The *fourth* is the thickest, longest, hardest and driest in the whole body, made up of four pare of the *Os sacrum*; it furnishes the Skin of the Thigh, and certain Muscles thereof, as also of the Leg and Foot. I have somtimes observed this to have a double rise, and a double progress, the one *External* the other *Internal*.

But that same great Trunk under the Ham, is divided into an external and an internal Branch.

The *external* goes to the Ham, the outside of the Foot, the *Musculi peronæi*, and the outer Ankle.

The *Internal* and greater goes along the Leg to the Muscles of the Feet and Toes; the inner Ankle, the great Toe and sole of the Foot: and bestows two twigs upon each Toe.

All the Nerves therefore well-neer, which go into the whole Leg and Foot, do arise from the only greatest crural Nerve.

THE

# THE Fourth and last Manual OF THE BONES And also of the Gristles and Ligaments Answering the FOURTH BOOK Of the Limbs.

*The reason of the Authors Method. Why he treats last of the Bones.*

IN the last place, I shall briefly (as I have done other things) explain the Doctrine of the Bones.

In the last place, I say, because when all things else are removed and separated, then only the *Bones* come in view, and are subject to examination. The most diligent *Riolanus* treats in two places of his Enchiridion, of the Bones, once as they appear in the dead Carkas, when the Muscles are cut off, and again as they are dried in a Skeleton. But this Ostentation is superfluous in a compendium. For by the same reason we should make a new Anatomical discourse, of the Veins, Arteries, Nerves, Guts, Stomach, Womb, and other Parts taken out, and dried, and commonly hung up for shew in the Anatmoical Theatres. There is no use of the latter Doctrine of the Bones, unless to help the Memory, nor is it perfectly understood without the former. And therefore other Anatomists, with the parts demonstrate the Bones lying beneath them, in the dead body. I shal therefore only busie my self with the first, and therewith.

Joyn the Doctrine of *Gristles* and *Ligaments*.

*Why he treats of the Gristles and Ligaments with the Bones.*

1. Because of the similitude of their substance: for these three similar parts are very neer of kin, A *Bone*, a *Gristle*, and a *Ligament*, so that they seem to differ only gradually in respect of more and less one from another. For a *Bone* is the hardest, a *Gristle*, a little softer, yet so as that it may turn to a Bone, as we see in the tender Bones of Infants, which at first were gristly. A *Ligament* is yet softer than a Gristle, which also it self somtimes turns to a Bone, as in decrepit Persons. Hence many attribute the same matter to a Bone, a Gristle, a Ligament, yea and a Tendon.

2. Because of the Nearness of Place; for a Bone, a Gristle, and a Ligament do for the most part accompany one another, and are found joyned together. For the Bones are tied with the Ligaments, and where they are tied, they are covered about their Heads, with a Gristly Crust or Cover.

## CHAP. I.

## *Of the Bones in General.*

THE Nature of the Bones is easily known, if we shal but orderly propound their *Causes* and *Accidents* or *Adjuncts*.

The *Matter out of which* the Bones are bred in the Womb, according to *Hippocrates*, is an earthy Excrement, with Fat and Moisture added thereto. *Aristotle* also calls it *Excrementum seminale*, an excrement of the Seed. *Galen* saies it is the thicker and harder part of the Seed dried.

Now some Bones are *perfectly* generated in the Womb, as those in the Ear which serve the Sense of Hearing, being the smallest in the whole body; others *imperfectly*, as the Teeth and all the rest of the Bones, in which at first somwhat is wanting, either a process, or an Appendix. &c.

Moreover

Moreover, all other Bones save the Teeth have a certain determination of their growth: but the Teeth grow continually, for if one Tooth be removed, that just against it grows longer: which Nature therefore ordained, because they are alwaies wearing through grinding and chewing the Meat.

*Whether the Marrow be the Nutriment of the Bones.*

*Their remote nutritive Matter*, is thought to be the thicker and more earthy part of the Blood, and that which is as it were excrementitious, flowing in through the Veins into the Marrow, where in the Caverns of the Bones it may be digested, for *Platerus* denies that the Bones have Arteries, wherein *Spigelius* contradicts him: if there be Veins, there will doubtless be Arteries, which are as inconspicuous to the sight as the Veins are. Hence it is, that in the Cavities of the Bones of Animals newly brought forth, the Marrow is as yet bloody.

The *Immediate nutritive Matter* of the *hollowed* Bones, according to *Hippocrates* and *Galen*, is the Marrow contained in the said Bones (who are contradicted by *Aristotle* and other Peripeteticks, who will have the Marrow to be rather the excrement of the Bones) as in Grisles that same snotty matter which lies round about them, is their immediate nutritive Matter; and in Ligaments, Membranes and Nerves, that same clammy humor shed in amongst them.

Of the *solid Bones* not hollowed, the immediate Nutritive matter, is thick Blood sent in through the pores; because 1. Being broken they are joyned with a Callus, bred of the Remainders of the alimentary Blood. 2. They are liable to Imposthumation in their Substance, the superfluities of the nourishment putrifying in the pores. *Hofman* allows that they are nourished with Blood contained in the Marrow, and that the Marrow serves the Blood, by carrying the solid part.

The *Efficient* is the *Vis ossifica*, or Bone-making faculty, or the innate faculty, acting by the Assistance of Heat.

The *Form* of a Bone is the Soul, as of the whole, and in the next place the *ratio formalis* whereby a Bone is a Bone and no other thing, 2. *de Gen. Anim. cap.* 1. And therefore the Bones of dead persons are not properly but equivocally Bones. The Accidents or Adjuncts of Bones, are their sundry Figures, Solidity, Strength, &c. of which hereafter.

The *End* or Use of the Bones, is,

1. To be the Foundations and Supporters of the whole Body, like Pillars or Foundations in Houses.

2. To be as a Safeguard for some parts, as the Skull saveguards the Brain.

*Why creeping things cannot go.*

3. To serve for going, as is apparent in the Thighes and Legs. and therefore Serpents, Worms and other Creepers, which have no Legs, cannot go, but are forced to crawl.

4. There are some private uses of divers Bones, of which in the special History of Bones.

5. Certain Medicinal Uses there are of Bones. Their Pouder cures a Cancer, Fevers, any Fluxes. Their Oyl is good for the Gout, the Magistery of a Mans Skull is good against the Falling-sickness, as also the triangular Bones of the Occiput, &c.

The *Situation* of the Bones is deep, because they are the Foundations and Upholders of the Body.

They vary in *Magnitude* according to the variety of their Utilities. *Great* are the Bones of the Leg, Thigh, Arm, Shoulder, &c. *Small* those of the *Ear* serving for *Hearing*, the *Sesamoidean* Bones, the *Teeth*, the *Wrist-bones*, &c.

*Why many Bones in a living Creature.*

They are many in number and not one only, because of the variety of motions; and lest that one being hurt, all should be hurt.

Now a monstrous thing it is for a Child to be born without Bones, such an one as *Hippocrates* speaks of, being a Boy, four fingers big, but not long-liv'd the like to which *Foreestus* also saw.

The Number of all the Bones of the Body, is not the same in all Persons. For in Children they are more, which by degrees grow together and become fewer. Others may number the Epiphysis by themselves as distinct Bones, and so make a mighty number. Others may omit the Sesamoidean and other small Bones, or such as are seldom found, as in the Carotick Atteries: and so doth *Archangelus* who reckons but two hundred forty nine: others make commonly three hundred and four. Others as many as there are dates in the year.

They vary in *Figure* some are round, others flat, some sharp, others blunt, &c. as shal be shewed when we come to speak severally of the particulars.

The *Colour* in such as are naturally constituted, is white, mixt with a very little red.

They are all of them externally *inclosed* (not internally) with the Periostium, excepting the Teeth, sesamoidean Bones, and the sides of the other Bones where they are mutually joyned one to another. And the Periostium is exquisitely sensible: but the Bones themselves want the sense of Feeling, excepting the Teeth, to whom we may attribute some Sense, seeing they feel exceeding cold Air or Water, yea with their Ends: especially when the Teeth are on Edge, before it reach to the little Membranes and Nerves, by help wherof they are thought to Feel.

*The Periostium feels, but not the Bones: The Sense of the Teeth.*

The *Connexion* of the Bones is various. But the mutual and artificial hanging together of all the Bones is by the Greeks cal'd Skeleton, as if you would say a dried Carcass from *Skellein* to drie. Being compacted partly with the natural Ligaments dried with the Bones, & partly with artificial ones, somtimes bolt upright, otherwhiles in the posture of sitting; which doth not properly belong to Anatomy, but the other *Natural* Osteology, framed by *Nature*, and adorned with its own moist Ligaments.

And this natural Cohærence or Connexion, according to *Galen*, is made either *Kat' Arthron* by way of Joynting; or *katà sumphusin*, by way of growing together.

He makes *Arthron* a Joynt to be double; viz. *Diarthrosis* or by way of Diarticulation or Joynting, such as are *Enárthrosis*, *Arthrodia* and *Gigglumos*: or *Synarthrosis*, such as he reckons *Sutura*, *Harmonia* and *Gomphosis*

Moreover *Symphysis* or growing together, is said to be with or without a Medium.

But I shall thus divide the Connexions of the Bones.

The Bones are fastned together either by *Articulation* or Joynting; or by *Symphysis* or growing together.

*Articulation* or *Joyning* is with motion, and that either *obscure* (which others cal neuter or doubtful Articulation) as that of the Ribs with the Vertebræ, also of the Bones of the Wrist and Pedium; or *evident* loose and manifest, and it is called

*Diarthrosis*, of which there are three sorts:

I. *Enarthrosis* Inarticulation, which is when there is a great quantity both of the Cavity of the Bone receiving, and of the Head of the Bone which is received: as in the Articulation of the Thigh with the Huckle-bone.

II. *Arthrodia*, is where the Cavity receiving is superficial, and the Head received flat: as is that of the lower Jaw with the Bone of the Temples.

III. *Gigglumos*, when the same Bone both receives, so that contiguous bones do mutually enter one into another. And it is done three manner of waies:

1. When the same bone is received by one bone which receives the same again mutually; as we see in the Articulation of the Shoulder-bone with the Cubit.

2. When one bone receives and is received of another, as in the Vertebræ. For the Vertebra being placed in the middle, receives the upper and is received by the lower.

3. In

3. In manner of a wheel, as that of the ſecond Vertebra of the Neck with the firſt; where upon the Axel-tree as it were of one Vertebra, another is turned and wheeled about,

By *Sumphuſis* or growing together, Bones are faſtned, when the Connexion is without motion, and two Bones do only touch one another, or approach mutually one to another, as in the former.

And this growing together is either without a medium or with it.

*Without a Medium*:

1. *Rhaphé* a Suture as in the Skul.

2. *Harmonia*, which is a joyning of Bones by a ſingle Line, ſtreight, oblique, or circular: as in bones of the upper Jaw and the Noſe. And ſo all Epiphyſes in a manner are joyned.

3. *Gomphoſis* that is to ſay Nailing, when one Bone is faſtned into another as a Nail in a Poſt, as the Teeth in the Jaw-bones.

Theſe three ſorts *Galen* and others following him, have comprehended under *Synarthroſis* as the Genus or kind. But they are out: becauſe Bones thus joyned have no motion. yet peradventure they may ſome waies pertain to *Synarthroſis*, becauſe of the firmneſs they afford to the parts of the body.

*With a Medium* there is alſo a threefold growing together of the Bones, by reaſon of a threefold body coming between as the Medium:

1. A *Griſtle* and the conjunction is called *Synchondroſis*. as in the Bones of the lower Jaw, and the Share-bones.

2. A *Ligament* and it is termed *Sunneuroſis*, as is ſeen in the Union of the Huckle-bone with the Thigh-bone.

3. *Fleſh* or a Muſcle, and it is called *Suſſarcoſis*, as in the *Os hyoides* with the *Scapula*.

The *Subſtance* of the Bones is hard, but not with drineſs in an healthy State, but with a ſhining fattineſs. to which others joyn an acid or ſharp ſpirit and a volatil Salt, in which regard they eaſily take fire and are burnt inſtead of Wood, as the *Rogus* of the Romans or their Funeral-fires did witneſs [*and our Engliſh Bonefires*, for anciently (and yet in the North) they kept their Bones of Beef &c. til an occaſion of Triumph, and then brought them out for joy to make Bone-fires] otherwiſe they would eaſily be broken, as we ſee in calcined Bones, and in that old Woman, whoſe Members would break at the leaſt touch, as *Nic. Fontanus* relates in his Obſervations. And *Galen* tels of ſome bones that would turn to Sand and Duſt, like rotten wood, which is the effect of drineſs.

*A Bonefire properly what.*

The Leſs this *Hardneſs* of the Bones is, the better do broken bones grow together and unite.

But in Perſons that are come to years, they do not truly grow together, nor are regenerated, but are as it were glewed together, by the coming between of another ſubſtance like Glue, which they term *Callus*. *Galen* calls it *Porus*. Now a *Callus* ſomtimes happens beſide the Intent of Nature, through overgreat plenty of Aliment and bad Nutrition: viz. when by a boney callus, the three upper Vertebra's of the Neck are ſo glewed together as they ſeem to be but one bone: or when the firſt Vetebra is glewed to the Skul; and ſuch perſons cannot expreſs their conſent or diſſent, by moving their Head forwards or backwards as the manner is.

There is a greater hardneſs in ſome Bones than in others, as the Thigh, &c. But other Bones are ſofter, as of the *Os Spongioſum*, the laſt bones of the Fingers &c. *Fernelius*, *Ruellius*, *Hollerius* have found all the bones ſo preternaturally ſoft, that they might be bowed like Wax, and that chiefly by the venereal Pox, witneſs *M. Donatus*. The *Cartilago inſiformis* proves ſomtimes ſo ſoft and flaggie, that it falls, of which ſee *Cadronchius*.

The *parts of the Bones* are ſolid or Hollow; yet *Pliny* tels us, that there were ſome that lived whoſe bones were ſolid, without any hollowneſs, who are by him called *Cornei*, and that ſuch perſons are known, in that they never ſweat nor thirſt. which *Salinus* avouches of one *Lyddanus* a Syracuſian. But both theſe Authors can ſomtimes drop leaſings.

The *Cavities* are either *within* where the Marrow is, which cavities nevertheleſs are not every where conſpicuous; or *without* at the *joynings*; which hollowneſſes if they are deep, they are called *Cotúlai* or *Coulides* (not *couledones*) alſo *Acetabula*, Sawcers. *Cotyle* was among the Ancients, a meaſure of Liquors, containing as much as their *Hemina*; alſo a kind of Drinking Cup, as ſome ſuppoſe If the Cavities are *ſhallow*, they are called *Glénai* and *Glenoideis* from the form of the Eyes hollowneſs when the Eye-lids are ſhut.

The ſolid parts of the Bones are three.

The *firſt* and principal is called *Os*, and is the hardeſt part, ſeated commonly in the middle.

The *ſecond* is by the Greeks called *Apophyſis*, alſo they term it *Probolen* and *Ecphóſeſin* &c. the Latines call it *Proceſſus*, *Productio*, *Projecture*, *Exuberantia* &c. It is a part of a bone, not only touching as *Epiphuſis*, but continued bunching out beyond the plain ſurface of the Bone: ſuch as many are in the Vertebra's of the Back, alſo in the lower Jaw-bone.

Its chief *Uſe* is for the original and Inſertion of parts, as Muſcles.

The *third* is *Epiphuſis*, or *Appendix*, *Adnaſcentia*, *Additamentum*; being a bone growing upon a bone, by a ſimple and immediate Contact, though not with ſo very plain a Surface, but a little mutual Ingreſs of Heads and Hollows, like *Ginglymus*, though without motion.

The Subſtance of the *Epiphyſes* is rare and looſe, being at firſt for the moſt part griſtly; but in perſons grown to years, it is hardned, and turns to a bone: yea in elderly perſons, the *Epiphyſis* is ſo united to the bone, as if they were but one contined bone,

At the Ends of the *Epiphyſis* a Griſtle is placed.

But all Bones have not theſe *Epiphuſes* growing to them: yet there are divers of them; as in the *Scapula*, on the Bones of the *Tibia* and the *Fibula*, viz. on each ſide, at the Tree and Foot &c. Alſo the Tooth of the ſecond Vertebra, the *Rotator magnus*, the *Appendices Styloydes*, are *Epiphyſes*.

The *Uſe* of *Eppiphyſes*.

1. In ſoft bones they are inſtead of covers, that the Marrow may not run out.

2. They ſerve for firmneſs, for that Baſis is moſt firm which is broadeſt and largeſt.

3. That from them Ligaments may ariſe.

4. According to *Pavius*, that they might be as it were an intermediate matter, to be inſerted betwixt a bone and Ligaments, as the Membranes betwixt the Brain and Skull.

The *Apophyſis* are in ſome places called *Capita* Heads; in other places, *Cervices* Necks; in other places *Tubercula* bunches; in ſome place *Spinæ* thorns; in other places *Mucrones* ſharp points. But the parts which at the round of the Cavities, ſtick out and hang over like Lips, are called *Supercilia* Brows, and *Labra* Lips.

## Chap. II.
## *Of Griſtles in General.*

*Griſtles* next to Bones are the hardeſt ſimilar parts; and almoſt juſt of the ſame Nature with Bones, for ſuch Beaſts as have no Bones, have Griſtles inſtead of Bones according to *Ariſtotle*.

But they differ, becauſe they are ſofter than Bones, though harder than Ligaments: and though very many Griſtles are in proceſs of time turn'd into Bones [as Carti-

dan ſhews by the example of a Thief of *Milaine*, whoſe weſand was become boney. Alſo many Sceletons of my Kinſman *Henry Fuirenus* declare, that the Cartilago ſcutiformis, or ſheid-faſhion'd Griſtle, is changed into the hard ſubſtance of a Bone, which I alſo have obſerved in Diſſections ] yet all Griſtles are not ſo, as the Enſiformis, that of the Share, of the Spines of the Back, of the Noſtrils and Ears: which nevertheleſs ſomtime, in aged perſons are turned into Bones. Moreover a Griſtle hath no Marrow, no Cavities nor Caverns.

The *Efficiens* is the *Griſtl-making power* or faculty.

The *Matter* according to *Ariſtotle* is the ſame with that of the Bones, from wich he wil have them to differ only gradually. According to *Galen* it is an earthy but withall moiſt part of the Seed, partly clammy and glewiſh, partly fat: but more clammy than fat.

Its *Uſe* 1. Is principally to render motion more eaſie and laſting in the Joynts, whiles it anoynts the parts of the Bones, leaſt by mutual rubbing one againſt another, they ſhould wear and fret. Hence in ſome Joynts are found Griſtles which cruſt over two bones joyned together.

2. To defend the parts from external injuries. For they are not eaſily bruiſed and broken, becauſe they are hard and not friable, nor are they eaſily cut and ſqueezed as the ſoft and fleſhy parts. Hence the extream parts of the Noſe are griſtly. Hence Griſtles are joyned to the Breaſtbone and Ribs, to defend the Heart and Lungs, and the Griſtle *Enſiformis*, to defend the Midriff and the mouth of the Stomach.

3. To make ſuch a Connexion of the Bones as is termed *Sunchondroſis*.

4. To ſhape parts prominent or hollow; as appears in the Ears, Larynx and Weſand.

5. To fill up hollowneſſes, eſpecially in the Joynts, as is ſeen in the Knee.

6. To ſerve for a cover, as in the *Epiglottis*.

7. To be as an underpropper to ſuſtain ſomwhat, as the Griſtles of the Eyelids bear the Hairs.

Their *Situation* is various, for Griſtles are found in ſundry parts, in the Eye-lids, Noſe, Ear, Larynx, Wezand, Spine, Cheſt, Ear-lets, of all and every of which in their places.

Their *Magnitude* alſo varies: ſo alſo

Their *Figure* is divers, as ring-faſhion'd, Sheild-ſhap'd, Sword-like, &c.

As to their *Connexion*. Some *Griſtles* conſtitute parts of themſelves, as that of the Noſe, *Xyphoidis*, the *Coccyx*: others grow to bones, which knit them together, either without any other medium, as in the Share and Breaſtbones, or by common Ligaments coming between, as in the Connexion by *Diárthroſis*.

In *Subſtance*, ſome are harder, as thoſe which in time become boney; others are ſofter, faſtning the Joynts, and reſembling the Nature in a manner of Ligaments, and are therefore called *Chondro-ſyndeſmoi*, *Griſtly Ligaments*.

Now though their Subſtance be hard, yet it is flexible and tough becauſe leſs cold and dry than a bone, and becauſe compaſſed with a ſnotty matter,

And this Subſtance of theirs is void of ſenſe; becauſe it hath no acquaintance with Nerves nor Membranes. Nor was it requiſite that it ſhould feel, leaſt in motion when the Griſtles rub and ſtrike one againſt another, pain ſhould be cauſed.

In other things they agree with Bones.

# Chap. III.

## *Of Ligaments in General.*

LIgamentum a Band or Tie, is by the Greeks called *Sündeſmos*. The Ancients, as *Hippocrates*, *Ariſtotle* and *Galen* ſomwhere, call it *Nervum* and *Nervum colligatum* a Nerve, and a twiſted Nerve or Nerve tied together; becauſe in ſhape and colour it counterfets a Nerve: and otherwiſe the term Ligament, may in a large ſignification be applied to any part, which faſtens divers patts together. Alſo *Galen* calls the beginning of a Muſcle *Ligamentum*, part whereof is thought to turn to a Tendon. All theſe are improper acceptations. I ſhall now decipher a Ligament properly ſo called.

Its *Efficiens* is the Ligament-making Power.

Its *Matter* is a clammy roaping part of the Seed.

Its *Uſe* is, like a cord to bind together the parts of the body, eſpecially the Bones, and ſo to keep them together, in the Head, Cheſt, Back, and Limbs, that they may not be diſlocated or diſpointed.

Becauſe of its moſt ſtrong cleaving thereunto, a Ligament is ſaid to ariſe (though it be indeed made of the Seed) from the Bone primarily, ſomtimes from a Griſtle, griſtly bone or Membrane: and its ſaid to be *inſerted* into a Bone, Griſtle, Muſcle, or ſome part. Or if you would rather have it ſo; Ligaments grow among the Bones, or in the Bones.

Their *Situation*. Some are without among the Bones, as the griſly Ligaments ſo called, which are thick and commonly round: others are wound externally about the bones which are thin and membranous.

As to *Figure*: ſome are broader which Anatomiſts term membranous Ligaments, as hath been ſaid; others are longer, which are called Nervous Ligaments. And they call them ſo becauſe of their reſemblance, not as if a Ligament were truly membranous or nervous. So they are called membranous, which being broad and thin do compaſs the Joynts, alſo which are wrapt about Tendons and Muſcles.

Its *Subſtance* is ſolid, white, bloodleſs, ſofter than a Griſtle, harder than Nerves and Membranes: for it is as it were of a middle Nature betwixt a Griſtle and a Nerve.

It is without Cavity, Senſe or Motion. It was to be without Senſe, leaſt it ſhould be alwaies pained in Motions; when as the Ligaments are made ſomtimes longer and ſhorter, that is to ſay, are contracted and extended. Some nevertheleſs wil have membranous Ligaments to feel, but they muſt grant it to be ſo, by means of membranes and not of their own proper ſubſtance.

For this ſubſtance of theirs is as *Galen* tels us diviſible into fibres viſible to the ſight, which experience alſo confirms.

Now this Subſtance is in ſome places *ſofter* and more membranous than in others, as in all Ligaments wel-neer, which go round about the Joynts; and among theſe, it is ſofter about the Joynt of the Shoulder, than about that of the Hip; and yet ſofter where it goes about the interjoyntings of the fingers. But in other places the ſubſtance is harder and as it were in part griſtly, and therefore they are in ſuch places termed griſtly Ligaments; and they are ſuch as lie concealed among the Bones, as that which goes from the Head of the Thigh, into the Hip-joynt.

# Chap. IV.

## *Of the Skull in General.*

*The diviſion of the Skeleton.*

WE divide all the *Bones* of the Skeleton into the HEAD, TRUNK, and LIMBS; and them into the *Arms* & *Legs*.

The whole ſtructure of the Bones of the Head is termed CRANIUM the Skul, becauſe it is as it were *Crânos* an Helmet; ſome term it *Calva* and *Calvaria*.

Its *Situation* and *Magnitude* follow the Brain and correſpond thereunto.

Its *Figure* is natural or non-natural and depraved.

Its *natural* figure is *round*, that it may hold the more, yet a little longiſh towards the fore and hindparts, where it branches forth, that it may contain the Brain and Brainlet;

let; on the sides it is flatted, but more towards the fore-parts; and therefore the hind-part of the Head is of greater capacity than the forepart: of which *Albovinus* King of the Longbeards or Lombards made a Drinking Cup for Festival daies, as *Diaconus* relates in his History.

*Depraved shapes of the Head eleven in number.*

The *depraved* and non-natural Figure thereof is manifold.

1. When the foremore protuberancie of the Head is wanting; and such persons are counted foolish and mad, for want of Brain, which ought to be most plentiful in the forepart of the Head.

2. When the Hinder Protuberancy or bunching forth is wanting.

3. When both are wantings so that the Head is round as a Ball, such as the Heads of the Turks and Greenlanders are thought to be. And these three depraved figures *Hippocrates* doth acknowledg.

4. The fourth Figure *Galen* adds, which he conceives may be imagined but not really found, when the length is changed into breadth. But *Vesalius* saies he saw such an one at *Venice*, and at *Bononia*.

5. The fift way may be added also out of *Hippocrates*, an acuminated or oval Figure, when the Head rises up like a Sugar-loaf: which shape in some Nations *Hippocrates* tels us had a great reputation of Gentility, and may be formed by Midwives, when they swathe the Childs Head into such a shape and so preserve it; and at last Nature transfers such kind of Heads from Parents to Children. The same *Hippocrates* in his *Epidemicks*, brings in two kinds of thus shap'd Heads, one with the strength of the parts, the other with weakness of the said parts. And such a figure of Heads, is at this day more frequent in some Countries than in others.

But now I wil add other figures which I have observed in many Skuls, especially in *Italy*.

*Other shapes of the Head observed by the Author.*

6. When the right side branches out.

7. When the left side sticks out.

8. When the right part of that bunchiness which naturally should be before is wanting, and the left sticks out very much, in some more, others less.

9. When the left side of the said Protuberancy is wanting, and the right sticks out more than ordinary.

10. When the right part of the Hinder Prominency is away.

11. When the left part of the said hinder Protuberancy is away.

And thus I make *twelve shapes* of the Head in all, one *natural* and eleven *depraved*.

The *Substance* of the Skul is boney, to secure the soft Brain. But in Children new born it is softer then ordinary, and in some places cartilaginous and membranous, especially about the Sutures, and most of all in the middle and upper region of the Head: and all these for the making the Birth more easie, that it might give a little way when it is pressed. But the Substance of the Skul is.

1. Thick, not thin, that it may more strongly resist external injuries.

2. Rare not compact. 1. Least it should weigh too much. 2. That it might contain Juyce for nourishment, 3. That vapors may exhale.

Now this Substance of the Skul doth consist as it were of a double boord or plate. It is seldom simple and single without a *Mediullium* or middle matter, as I found it in the Dissection of a certain person, and seldomer hath it three boords, But for the most part two as hath been said. some call them *Diploas*, the outer whereof being unhurt, the inner may be hurt. And each of these plates is commonly polished within and without, smooth and thick. Hence it appears how thick the Skul is, seeing it is every where in a manner double.

I say in a manner or wel-neer, which others do not observe: for in some places the Skul is single, thin and transparent. without any distance of plates. And therefore some Chirurgeons are deceived, who in taking away the first Plate do think they must so long cut and prick, til blood comes out. The external Plate is somtimes eaten off by the VenerealDisease, and somtimes it sprouts forth Gums by force of the said Disease.

*The Error of Chirurgeons*

But tho rarity or light composure of the Skul appears from that *middle substance* between each Plate, which they call *mediullium*. This Substance, I say, is rare or light, lax, and receives little Veins: which also *Hippocrates* knew, who therefore warns us that the Skul is very easily inflamed, and therefore when the Trepan is used, the Iron must divers times be dipt in Milk and Water.

The *Surface* of the Skul, is external or internal.

The *upper External* is smooth and even; the lower or Basis, is rough and uneven, by reason of sundry Appendices and Processes.

The *upper Internal* is hollow, smooth; save that it hath the Marks of Veins, and certain Cavities, wherein the *dura mater* grows: the lower is very uneven by reason of divers protuberancies.

And every where there are frequent *holes* in the Skull, very small and placed without order, through which small Veins and Arteries pass, to the inner Cavity of the Bones, and the *dura Menynx*. But somtimes they are not to be found.

At length, that we may come to the parts of the Skull, we must know that the Skul doth not consist of one only Bone, least by one wound the whole Skul should be broken in pieces; but of divers: which are fastned together by the Sutures, of which in the following Chapter.

And some are Bones of the Skull, others of the Jaw.

The *Bones* of the *Skull* in persons grown to ripe years are *eight*. whereof two *are common* to the Skul, with the upper Jaw-bone, viz. the *cuneiforme* and the *spongiosum*. But there are *six proper* bones, which make up the Skul it self: One of the *Forehead* (in new born Children two) two of the Forepart of the Head, one of the *Hind-part* (in an Infant four) two of the *Temples*. And there lie hid in the Auditory passages, other *six* bones, on each side three little ones: the *Hammer*, the *Anvil*, and the *Stirrup*, to which a fourth is added called *Orbiculare*.

And thus there are perpetually in the *Skull fourteen* or sixteen Bones.

The Use of the Skul:

1. To be the Mansion and Bulwork of the Brain, which of it self is soft.

2. That through it Vapors may pass.

To the former use, its thickness and hardness is subservient; to the latter its rarity and Sutures.

On the Skul of a Man somtimes *Horns* grow, one whiles soft, another while hard like Rams Horns; somtimes fixed to the Skul, otherwhiles to the Skin, and they proceed from a thick, clammy and melancholick humor. There are examples hereof in *Paræus*, *Thuanus*, *Hildanus*, *Renodæus*, *Zacutus*, *Severinus*, and others; I also saw two horns, one at *Padua* in a Nunn, another at *Purmerant* in *Holland* in an old Woman, which was sufficiently long and hard: I have discoursed of these Horns in my new Observations *de Unicornu*, of the Unicorn.

## Chap. V.

## *Of the Sutures of the Skull.*

A *Suture* is a sort of connexion resembling the putting together of two Saws, tooth within tooth, or the making up of a Garment of many torn patches.

Such Sutures there are many in a mans Head: for an Head is seldom found without any Suture, such as *Aristotle*

*An Head without Sutures.*

stotle saw, and at *Helmstadt* and the Monastery of *Heilbrun* in *France* such an one is shewed (as a Rarity) and is every where to be met with.

And such persons have not their Heads so liable to external injuries, but very much to inward Infirmities, because transpiration is thereby made more difficult. By which distinction, *Falopius* and *Columbus* do reconcile *Celsus* and *Robertus Constantinus*, the former of whom wrote, that the Head which had no Sutures was most liable to sickness, the latter that the Head without Sutures was more subject.

Somtimes through Age and Drines, the Sutures do so grow together in aged persons, that they are scarce to be seen; whereas they are in the mean season, more visible in young persons. Somtimes the coronal suture is only seen obliterated; but the temporal do hardly vanish, except all the other be first defaced.

*The Error of* Aristotle.

The *Number* and *Situation* of the Sutures, is the same in a Woman and in a Man, contrary to what *Aristotle* thought; nor doth it vary in respect of figures, as *Hippocrates* and *Galen* would have it, unless very rarely. For *M. A. Severinus* observed between the saggiteal and Lambda-fashion'd suture, another over and above of a triangular shape, and neer the end of the said Sutures in another Skul, a new oval Suture.

Moreover, the Sutures of the Head of a certain Fool, did vary in figure, which all stuck up with one Hillock as it were, which I saw in three Epileptick Children at *Naples*, especially in the coronal Suture, which did suggest a new Cause and Cure of the Epilepsie or Falling-sickness.

The *Sutures* which knit the Bones of the Skul, are some of them called true and proper, others false and Bastard Sutures.

They are termed *true*, which meet together like the teeth of Combs, or like Saws put together, which I have somtimes seen after Contusion movable, which also in most Skuls that are over dried in the Earth is common. They are also loose in Children, and therefore they open in Hydrocephalic or Water-headed Children, as I saw in a Boy at *Hafnia*, like to that which *Severinus* pictures out in his Treatise of Imposthumes, and *Donatus* describes.

The *bastard* Sutures are joyned like Scales and Tiles on an house-top, and therefore they are termed *Squamosæ conglutinationes*, Scaley-conjunctions, and may rather be termed joynings, seeing they are more like to an Harmonia then a Suture.

There are three *true* ones.

*The coronal Suture why so called.*

1. Is the foremore, and is called *Coronalis*. 1. Because the Ancients wore Crowns on that part of their Heads. 2. Because it hath some resemblance to a Crown or Circle:

For from the Temples it ascends on both sides, athwart, to the top of the Head. The Arabians call this suture *Arcualis* and *Puppis*.

Its *Use* is to joyn the Fore-head bone with the bones of the Hinder-head, and to distinguish them therefrom. The place of the coronal Suture is found out in a living person, either by carrying the hand upwards from the Wrist along the Nose, or by drawing a Thred out from Ear to Ear, and another cross the same from the end of the Nose.

2. That which is opposite to this, is behind and in the *Occiput* or Hinder-head. 'Tis called *Lambdoides* the Lambda-shap'd, from the Greek letter Λ. some call it *Lupsiloïdes* from the letter *upsilon*, also *prora suturæ*.

This ascends obliquely, from the Base of the Hinder-head, to each Ear, grows into an Angle. Somtimes when the Hinder-head is large or otherwise, 'tis divided by a transverse suture, simple, or double: somtimes there is a double triple Suture as if a greater triangle did contain one or two lesser Triangles within the same: where the Bones so comprehended, are termed *ossicula triangularia*, the little three-cornerd bones, commended, in the Falling-sickness.

*The triangular Bones of the Skul.*

Besides these triangular bones, *Olaus Worm* a rare man, found others in the Lambda-like Suture, which perforated both the Boards of the Skull, observed as yet by very few. Three for the most part on the right, as many on the left side, differing in magnitude, figure and situation, which also are accurately discerned and distinguished in Infants. The *lowest* is seen at the *Processus mammillares*, the *middlemost* a little higher, scarce half a Fingers breadth, the *third* a little further distinct from the second. *Parius* found only two like to these, circumscribed with their little Sutures or seams, which he doubts whether he should refer them to the Bones of the *Occiput* or the Bregma.

In *Shape* they are Various, Triangular, Oblong, Oval. somtimes in living persons I have observed them to grow so high, that I could Feel them with my Fingers, as if they had been Epiphysis or somewhat growing upon the Bone.

All are *larger* on the left side, but the greatest exceeds not the Nail of a Mans thumb.

They appear more distinct on the inner & Concave side of the Skul, than in the outward and convex, and therefore they are all more cleerly discern'd when the Skul is taken away,

We are nevertheless to observe that these bones of *Worm* do in divers Skuls vary, both in Number, Magnitude, Figure, Situation; so that somtimes there are four, somtimes two, and in a Right line only, somtimes in the very Juncture of the Sagittal with the Lambda-shap'd; somtimes also in the Scaley temporal Sutures.

Their *Use*, I believe, is 1. That the Sutures being inlarged thereabouts, might afford a more free passage for Excrements.

2. That the Skul being made up of more bones, might be more safe in Blows and Contusions.

The *Use* of this Lambda-like Suture, is to distinguish the bone of the *Occiput* or Hinder-head, from the bones of the Temples, and the forepart of the Head.

3. In the middle betwixt these two is the Suture termed *Sagittalis* or Arrow-shap'd, because it runs in a streight line all along the Head, like an Arrow, betwixt the Coronal and Lambda-shap'd Sutures.

Somtimes it proceeds through the middle of the Coronal Suture and the middest of the Fore-head, as far as to the Nose, especially in Infants: in some also it cuts part of the Bone of the *Occiput* or Hinder-head. I remember it hath been somtimes wanting.

This Suture is termed *Virgata* and *Recta*.

Its *Use* is to distinguish and joyn together the two bones of the *Sinciput* or Fore-part of the Head.

*Why some Sutures are like Scales.*

Those two Suture are commonly called *Nendosæ* or Bastard-sutures, which are wont to be called *Squamosæ* Scalie, *Corticales* and *Temporales*, because they circumscribe the Bones of the Temples. Now this Connexion like Scales was necessary, because the Temple-bones, being in the lower part very thick would have been too heavy, if they had not been made by little and little thinner in their upper part, and joyned to the bones of the *Sinciput* attenuated by little and little like Scales.

*A great number of Sutures.*

Now there are many spurious Sutures every where in the Skul, also many harmonies, where the bones are joyned together: in the Palate bone a peculiar Suture is seen.

The *Use* of the Sutures.

1. They serve for the free transpiration of fulliginous vapors. And therefore *Hippocrates* pronounces, that they have soundest Heads, who have most Sutures: and those that have their Heads without Sutures, are troubled with

an

## The FIGURE Explained.

TABLE I.

A. *A Portion of the Sagital Suture.*
B. *The Lambda-like Suture.*
C. *The Skull cut with a Saw.*
D. *The first Bone of* Worm, *on the left quarter.*
E. *The second.*
F. *The third.*
G. *The first of the right Quarter.*
H. *The second.*
I. *The third.*
K. *The great hole of the Skull.*
LL. *The mammillary productions.*


page 341

an inveterate Head-ach. And *Galen* saw so great an Inflammation caused by over strait binding of the Head, whereby the Sutures were shut up, and the Excrements kept in, that the Patients Eyes came out of their holes.

II. That by them the *Dura mater* may be tied and held up, least it should squeez the inner parts of the Brain.

III. That the said *dura mater* might by them send out fibres to constitute the *Pericranium* and the *Periosteum*.

IV. That Vessels may go in and out, to nourish and inliven the parts; which Vessels are by *Fallopius* cal'd *Venæ puppis*.

V. That one Bone being broken the others might remain whole. And therfore *Galen*, *Paulus*, *Guido* and *Fallopius*, denie that there can be any contrafissure or Countercleft, save in a solid Head without Sutures: *Hippocrates* writes the Contrary, and cals it a Misfortune, as also *Celsus* and others, and *Fallopius* himself, *Paræus* and *Pavius* relate examples, and before them *Soranus*, taking a similitude from a Glass Bottle, which oftentimes, being struck on the one side, is crakt on the opposite part.

VI. That Topical Medicines being outwardly applied, may more easily penetrate.

# Chap. 6. *Of the proper Bones of the Skull in particular.*

THe *first Bone* is the Os FRONTIS, the Forehead bone, which some call *Coronale*, *Inverecundum*, *Os puppis*: which hath

A *Figure* imperfectly circular; more perfect where it is circumscribed with the Coronal Suture, more imperfect neer the Eyes.

Its *Substance* is thinner than that of the *Os occipitis* or Hinder-head bone, and thicker than the *Ossa sincipitis*, or bones of the foremore part of the Head.

It is twofold in Children new-born, distinguished by the sagittal Suture: also framed of a twofold Plate, an external and internal.

*See Tab. 4. Fig. 1.*

At the top of the Nose above the Eye-brows, there are large *Cavities* commonly two in number, between the two plates, sometimes cloathed with a green Membrane and separated, containing a certain soft and marrowish body. But these Cavities are not 1. In Children til they are a year old. 2. In such as have a flat and Saddle-face. 3. In such whose Fore-head is divided.

The said Cavities have *holes* which end into the wide spaces of the Nostrils: and another which ends into the Skul, above the *Septum* of the *Os Spongiosum* to distinguish the Organs of Smelling.

*The Use of these Cavities.*

1. To make the Voyce Melodious and Sounding; because they are not in such who have a bad Speech.

2. Some conceive they serve for the Air to be elaborated in, to generate animal spirits.

3. That they may contain the Air which is drawn into the Nostrils and brings the smels of things along with it, from whence it passes leisurely to the Organs of Smelling, and to the Brain to alter the same, and reduce it to its natural State, when it is disordered. And therefore it is that many times an whole day together a smel is perceived in the top of the Nostrils.

4. Others suppose, they serve to collect Excrements, not only thick but watry, which being carried to the *Glandula lachrymalis*, do make Tears.

5. Some conceive that the marrowy matter therein contained, doth pass through the hole of the greater Corner of the Eye, and moisten the Eye make it glib and slippery, that it may move the Easier.

This Bone hath *Processes*: one at the greater Corner of the Eye, another at the lesser, to constitute the upper pare of the Eye-hole or Socket. There are also two cornerd *Eminencies* or risings on each side one, towards the Temples, which are termed Horns; by *Albucasis*, Dionysisci the *Author* of the Definitions and *Heliodorus* the Physitian; and if that boney Tumor be only on one side *Ingrassias* calls it *Dionysiscus*.

It hath three *holes*; one more inward of which before, which ends into the Skul: two outward, at the middle of the Eye-brows, for the thorough-fare, of the Nerves of the third Conjugation to the Forehead.

The *Second* and *Third* are the two *Bones* of the *Sinciput* or *Vertex*, which some call *Parietalia*, others *Arcualia*, *Nervalia*, *Rationis* or *Cogitationis*, of reason or thought: the Greeks *Brégmatos ostâ*, because the most moist and soft Brain, is placed under them.

In *Shape* they are four square and unequal.

Their *Substance* is more rare and infirm then of other Bones, because the Head in this part, wants very much evaporation: and therefore the Wounds of the *Sinciput* are deadly.

*Why the wounds of the Sinciput are deadly.*

# The FIGURES Explained.

In this TABLE are presented the Bones and Sutures of the Skul, as also the parts of both the Jaw-bones.

## TABLE II.


### FIG. I.

AA. *The Coronal Suture.*
B. *A part of the sagittal Suture.*
CC. *The scalie Suture of the Bones of the Temples.*
D. *The Os frontis, or Bone of the Fore-head.*
EE. *Processes of the said Bone, to the greater corner of the Eye.*
F. *Another process to the lesser corner.*
G. *An hole for the passage of Nerves expressed on one side.*
H. *Os Bregmatis.*
I. *The Bone of the Temples.*
K. *Its Appendix cal'd Styloides.*
L. *Its mammillary process.*
M. *Another process thereof, which makes the Os jugale.*
N. *The first bone of the lower Jaw according to our Author.*
O. *The second Bone.*
P. *The hole of this Bone, neer which is the Caruncula Lachrymalis.*
QQ. *The third Bone of the upper Jaw.*
RR. *The fourth Bone thereof.*
S. *The Partition of the Nostrils.*
T. *The lower Jaw-bone.*
u. *Its outer and lesser hole, the greater is to be seen within.*
X. *The process of that Jaw-bone, termed Corone.*
Z. *The other blunted Process called Condilodes.*
ttt. *The Dentes Incisores or Cutting Teeth.*
ßß. *The Dog-teeth.*
ßßß *The Grinders or Grinding-teeth, Molares.*

### FIG. II.

AAA. *The Coronal Suture.*
BB. *The Sagittal Suture.*
CC. *The Lambdoidea.*
D. *The Os frontis.*
EE. *The Bone, of the Sinciput, Bregma, or forepart of the Head.*
FF. *A portion of Os Occipitis or Hinder-head Bone.*

---

In Infants, that part which is at the Conjunction of the coronal and Sagittal Sutures is found Membranous, and soft, and among all the Bones of the Head, it last receives a boney hardness, then when the Child begins to speak distinctly and intelligibly. while it remains Membranous and soft. it is not so thick as afterwards, but transparent. Hence in Children there is observed in that place a Gap or Chink, which some term *Fontanella* and *fons pulsatilis*; where also they are wont to make Issues in desparate Catarrhs. I have once observed this part in a person grown up, to have been not yet boney, but membranous as in Children, viz. in a man of years of Age. *Bauhinus* in a Woman of twenty six years old, found it remaining still open.

There are within superficial *Cavities*, being the impressions of Veins, and without certain small holes.

The *fourth Bone* of the *Occiput* which some call *Basillare*, *Os proræ*, *Os memoriæ*, *Os pixidis*, the Greeks *σφηνοειδες*; doth constitute almost the whole hindermore and inner part of the Skul.

Which in grown persons is commonly *bone one*, seldom double or treble; in Children it consists for the most part of four, seldom of five bones. Its

Its *Figure* is of a Spherical triangle.

Its *Substance* is the thickest and most compact of all the rest (because there the noble Ventricle is seated, and there the Nerves arise as from a Fountain) especially at the Basis of the Skul, save at the sides of the great hole, where it is most thin (and therefore in this respect *Aristotle* did well say, that this was the thinnest Bone of all, which *Columbus* taxes) and therefore for safeties sake, there is in the middle thereof a long *Prominency*.

It hath *five holes*, one which is the greatest neer the first Vertebra, through which the *Medulla oblongata* passeth forth; the rest are lesser serving for the going out of Nerves and the entrance of Veins and Arteries.

It hath nine Cavities, seven within and two without.

It hath before two broad Proceſſes at the Basis (in Children they are Epiphyses) covered with a Gristle, within more eminent, inserted into the Cavities of the first Vertebra, for the motion of the Head. There is another small Process behind, joyned to the first Vertebra.

In the Hinder-head of Dogs, there is another small *bone* between the Brain and the Brainlet, which is *triangular*: that it may as a Prop sustain their going with their heads downwards.

*The triangular bone in Dogs.*

The *fifth* and *sixt*, are the *Temple Bones*, by the Ears; some call them *Lapidosa*, *Petrosa*, *Saxea*, *Squamiformia Mendosa*, and others *Parietalia* and *Arcualia*.

Their *Shape* is uneven (but rather circular than three square) because of their manifold Substance, which is like Rocks and craggy Clifts; for which cause they are also called *Ossa petrosa* the rocky bones. But in their upper part they are attenuated, so as to be transparent, where they lie under the temporal Muscles, and are joyned to the bones of the Sinciput, like Scales.

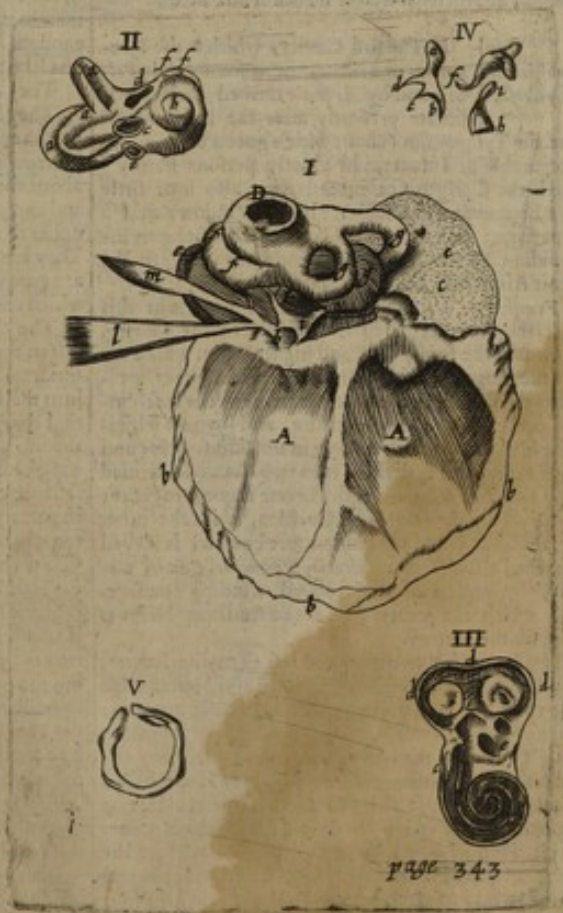
They have six *holes* without, two within. the first external hole is large, *viz.* The Auditory passage; the rest are small, for Vessels to pass thorough.

They have two *Cavities*. The outer is covered with a Gristle,, and receives the lower Jaw-bone. The inner is longish, common to the *Os occipitis*.

# The FIGURES Explained.

This TABLE demonstrates the inner structure of the Organ of Hearing, with the little Auditory Bones.

## TABLE III.




### FIG. I.

AA. *Os temporis, the Temple Bone.*
*bbb. The scalie Suture of the said Bone.*
*cc. The Os spongiosum, or Spungy-bone.*
D. *The Cavity into which the Auditory Nerve is inserted.*
*e. The boney Circle.*
*ff. The greater winding of the Cochlea.*
*ggg. Three boney half-circles, which form the Labyrinth.*
*h. The Malleus or Hammer in its situation.*
*i. The Anvil or Incus.*
*k. The Stapes or Stirrup.*
*l. The external Muscle of the Ear.*
*m. The internal Muscle of the Ear, of which see* B. 3. chap. 9.

### FIG. II.

*aaa. The Labyrinth.*
*b. The Cochlea.*
*c. The oval hole where the Stapes is seated.*
*d. Fallopius his Aquæ-ductus.*
*e. The Fenestra Rotunda, round window.*
*ff. Little holes to let out Veins and Arteries.*

### FIG. III.

*aa. The Cochlea dissected.*
*bb. An intermediate space or thing dividing the Cochlea into two wreaths.*
*c. A round hole, ending into the Cavity of Hearing, and the lower wreath of Cochlea.*
*ddd. The wreathings or Circumvolutions of the Labyrinth opened.*
*e. The Fenestra ovalis, or oval window.*

### FIG. IV.

*a. The round Head of the Malleus or Hammer.*
*b. Its end whereby 'tis fastned to the Drum.*
*c. The smaller process of the Malleus, Malles or Hammer.*
*d. The larger and more fine process thereof, first observed by* Folius.
*e. The Incus or Anvil, whose upper part hath a Cavity to receive the Head of the Hammer.*
*f. The longer process of the Anvil, to which the Stirrup is fastned.*
*h. The Stapes or Stirrup.*
*i. A fourth little bone fastned to the Stapes or Stirrup by a Ligament, first observed by* Fr. Sylvius.

### FIG. V.

*Shews the boney Circle in Infants, to which the Membrane of the Drum is fastened.*

It hath a certain *Appendix*, ſharp, long and ſmall, and therefore called *Styloides*, *Belenoides*, *Graphioides*, *Plectrum*, &c. It is ſoon broke off, and therefore it is not in all Skuls, eſpecially ſuch as are dug out of the ground. In grown perſons 'tis bony, in Infants Griſtly. It is a little crooked, like a Cocks Spur.

It hath three *Proceſſes*.

1. Is *external* and obtuſe, thick, ſhort and cavernous, *id eſt*, having holes like a Spunge in it; its cal'd from its ſhape, *Mamillaris*, Dug like.

2. Is *External* alſo, and a portion of *Os jugale*.

For the *Os jugale* or *Zygomatis*, ſeated under the Eye, is not a peculiar bone, but is made up of the Proceſſes of two bones; the one is that newly mentioned, the other is that of the Jaw, joyned by an oblique Suture, making as it were a Bridg: whoſe *uſe* is to defend the Tendon of the temporal Muſcle, the Skul being otherwiſe but thin in that place.

3. Is *Internal* with a long protuberancy, wherein there is a threefold Cavity: the *Drum*, the *Labyrinth*, the *Cochlea*, alſo the bones which ſerve the Hearing. But if the outer paſſage before the Membrane of the Tympanum be reckoned, there wil be four Cavities of the Auditory paſſage. The Ancients makes mention but of one Cavern.

*The Cavities in the Oſſa petroſa.*

I. The firſt Cavity, which is the *Tympanum* or *Concha*, or as ſome call it *Pelvis*, and by *Ariſtotle* termed *Cochlea*, is ſituate preſently after the little Membrane of the Tympanum (about which goes a *boney circle*, eaſily ſeparable in Infants, in elderly perſons hardly) wherein is the Congenit or inbred Air, alſo four little bones, a Ligament and Muſcles, little Windows and a water-paſſage; and from this Cavity a Channel goes into the palate of the Mouth. It doth not tranſmit the Congenit Air, which Nature ſtudies to retain.

The *Feneſtræ* or Windows, are two little holes in this Cavity: the *one oval*, is in the middle of the Cavity, more towards the fore-part, and higher, upon which the Baſis of the Stapes or Stirrups reſts, and in a great meaſure ſhuts the ſame: in the hinder part, it opens it ſelf into the Cochlea with a large overture, and joyns it ſelf alſo to the *hinder hole* which is *lower* in mankind, leſſer and narrower? and this is divided into two channels, divided by a very thin bony Scale: with the one it goes, together with the oval window unto the Cochlea, with the other to the Labyrinth; and the hindermore channel is called *Aquæ-ductus*, alſo *Meatus cochlearis*, *Tortuoſus*, *Cæcus*, *Capreolaris*, by reaſon of the crooked winding paſſage, through which the greater part of the Auditory Nerve is carried with the Artery.

II. The ſecond being round and leſs than the former, is called *Labyrinthus* and *fodina* the Maze and Mettal-mine or Cole-mine, becauſe of its crooked manyfold turnings: behind the Feneſtra ovals, it joyns it ſelf to the following Cavity. From this, many waies run out, which they call *Semicirculos oſſeos excavatos*, hollowed boney Half-circles, or *funiculos* little Ropes, three for the moſt part, large at the beginning, and then by little and little growing narrower, cloathed with a little thin Membrane, that the ſounds may become more acute, and being by little and little broken may ſo aſcend unto the Brain. It hath four holes beſides the oval, and a fiſt which is terminated into the Cochlea.

III. The third is termed *Cochlea* becauſe of its wreathed turning, others call it *Cavitas cochleata*, *Buccinata*, *Antrum buccinſum*, &c. for it hath three or four windings (theſe who are thick of Hearing have only one or two) mutually receiving one another, and is cloathed with a very exceeding thin and moſt ſoft Membrane, and is adorned with infinite little Veins, which being twined about the wreathings of the Cochlea, doth by many branches creep into the ſecret turnings of the Labyrinth.

# Chap. 7. *Of the Bones which ſerve the Senſe of Hearing.*

THere follow eight other Bones of the Head, which are leaſt of all, on each ſide four, being the Bones ſubſervient to the ſenſe of Hearing, called from their ſhapes, *Malleus* the Mallet or Hammer, *Incus* the Anvil, *Stapes* the Stirrup, and the *Orbicular* bone: all which were unknown to the Ancients. The two firſt were found out by *Jacobus Carpus*, who was afterwards followed by *Maſſa*, *Jacobus Sylvius*, and *Veſalius*: and he being admoniſhed by *Fallopius*, at laſt made mention of the third, whoſe firſt finder out was *Ingraſſias*; although *Euſtachius* and *Columbus* do arrogate the Invention hereof unto themſelves.

The fourth Auditory Bone, was found out and ſhewed to me by *Franciſcus Sylvius*, being round and ſmall, and by *N. Fontanus* likened to the Scale of a Pike: annexed by a ſmall Ligament to the Stirrup ſide, where it is joyned to the Anvil; which you ſhall more eaſily find in the boyled Calves Heads, in which they are bigger than in the Heads of Men: howbeit in a Man it is viſible enough. *Pavius* found in the Head of an Ox a year old, one like this, of a ſeſamoidean ſhape.

They are ſituate in the firſt Cavity or Concha.

They have a *Subſtance* hard and denſe, hollow within, that they might be lighter, and might contain in them, Marrow for their nouriſhment, without any Perioſteum about them: alſo that they might make the Air drier, and carry it along, like thoſe Ropes which are faſtened to doors to make them open and ſhut again of themſelves. They are as perfect in new-born Children as in thoſe that are grown up; though not ſo hard, but more moiſt, for which cauſe Infants are dull of Hearing.

The *Connexion*. The Hammer by its proceſs ſticks faſt to the Membrane of the Drum, beyond the middle, like a tail turned back; the head whereof is articulated into the Cavity of of the Anvil, having a ſmall Proceſs, that the Tendon of the *Muſculus rotundus* may be applied thereto; it hath alſo a longer Proceſs, but ſmaller, firſt obſerved by *Cæcilius Folius*, to which another Muſcle is faſtened, which belongs to the external Ear. It reſts athwart upon the bony circle, with which perhaps it grows together in perſons that are of years, for commonly in Children it is only viſible, in others it is eaſily broken becauſe of its fineneſs, when the bones are taken out.

The *Anvil* reſembling a grinding Tooth, lies under the Hammer, having beneath two proceſſes; the one ſhorter reſting upon the *Os ſquamoſum*, the other longer, ſuſtaining the top of the Stirup or triangular bone, which reſts upon the Cochlea, till it is ſunk into the broad Baſis of the *Feneſtra ovalis*, or oval window, to which it is faſtned by a looſe Ligament, ſo that it may be lightly raiſed, but not moved upwards and downwards.

Theſe three little bones, are *joyned* with a very fine Ligament, which is ſtretched over the whole Membrane, as the ſtrings over the bottom of a Drum.

The *Uſe* of theſe little bones is not to make a ſound, but that the ſpecies of ſound being received, may paſs to the lower parts, and that there may be a paſſage for the excrements of the Ears. For the Stirrup ſhutting the oval or upper window, is moved by the Anvil (whereupon the window is opened, that the ſpecies or repreſentation of Sounds may paſs into the Nerve, and the Anvil being ſmitten by the Hammer, and the Hammer by the Membrane of the Drum, through the impulſe of the external Air (which the Hammer hinders from being driven too far forwards) which while it is in doing, the membrane of the Drum is droven inwards, and becomes bunching out, whereby the inbred Air is affected, which wandring through the Cochlea cauſes, that the branches of the Auditory

ditory Nerve, do receive the species of sounds, brought in by the windows, and communicate the same to the Brain. And thus the Hammer is moved only inwards. But in the recourse, it is moved outwards, with the Membrane of the Drum, by that very little Muscle found out by *Casserius*.

## Chap. VIII.
## *Of the Bones common to the Head and upper Jaw,* viz. *Os cuneiforme and Os Spongiosum.*

THe *Os Sphænoides* or *Cuneiforme*, or Wedg-fashion'd Bone, so called because as they say, it hath the shape of a Wedg; was by the Ancients called *Polumorphos* or many-form'd, by reason of sundry processes within and without whereby it is made rugged and uneven: others call it *Os Paxillare, Os Colatorij, Os Palati, &c.*

'Tis *seated* in the middle of the Basis of the Head, and is placed under the Brain as a foundation, so that it touches well-neer all the Bones of the Head and upper Jaw.

It is *one Bone* in grown persons: but it is at first made of four which are afterwards united.

The *Processes* are sundry.

*Outwardly* there are two remarkable ones, at the sides of the palate, cal'd *Pterigoeides, aliformes*, Wing-fashion'd, because they resemble the wings of Batts or Flittermice, and are furnished with a longish Cavity.

*Inwardly* there are four little ones, on each side two, having the shape of a Turkish Saddle. and therefore this process is termed *Sella Sphænoidis*, the saddle of *Os Sphænoides*; in which process being square and broad, there is a Cavity to hold the *Glandula pituitaria*.

At the Saddle, there is a *Cave* full of little holes, that the inbreathed Air, may be elaborated to make Spirits, and that flegmatick excrements, may distill through the funnel, out of the Ventricles of the Brain.

It hath sundry *holes* for the passage of the Vessels this way and that.

Os SPONGOIDES, *spongiosum* or *Spongiforme*, the spunge-like bone, being seated in the middle basis of the Forehead, and filling the Cavity of the Nostrils, is also called *ethmoeides, Cribriforme* or *Cribrosum*, the Seive-fashion'd bone: because

Its inner side, where it joyns to the Head, is pierced through with many holes like a Sieve, winding and turning, but not streight; and this part properly is, and ought to be called *Cribrosa*, Sieve-fashion'd.

It *hath* in its middle a *sharp Process*, resembling a *Cocks comb*, by which as a Partition this bone is divided into two parts: And to this upper process *another* is opposed below, distinguishing the Nostrils, where the outer part of this bone is, which is contained in the Cavity of the Nostrils without the Skul, being light and spungie, and therefore there properly so called.

It hath also another part thin, solid and smooth, where it is joyned to the socket of the Eye, a small portion whereof it constitutes, but it is not a part of the upper Jaw-bone, as *Vesalius* would have it.

The *Use of the spongie part* is, to alter the Air drawn in with Smels.

The chief *Use* of the *Sieve-fashion'd* part is,

1. To admit the Air for Animal spirits.

2. That the Species of odours may with the Air be carried to the mammillary processes, the Organs of smelling, which end into these holes. And therefore in the Disease *Coryza*, this bone being obstructed, the smelling is lost.

A secondary use, is the purging of the Brain. for flegm is not only voided by the *Glandula pituitaria* into the Palate, but it drops down also into the *Os cribrosum* and the Nostrils, if the upper Ventricles of the Brain so called, do abound with too much Flegm. Howbeit, this Flux is preternatural.

## Chap. IX. *Of the Bones of the Jaw in General.*

THe *Jaw-Bones* are the foundations of the whole Face, the *upper* above the mouth the *lower* beneath.

For the upper, which *Celsus* calls *Mala*, is the boney part of the Face, comprehending the lower and lateral parts of the Eye-socket, the Nostrils, the Cheeks, the Palate, and the whole row of the upper Teeth.

And this Jaw-bone in Mankind, is shorter and rounder than in Brutes, for Beauties sake, also it is immoveable as it is in Beasts, saving the Parrot, the Phœnicopterus, and the Crocodile as wel that which lives in the water, as the Land-Crocodile; yet do they not move the upper Jaw only, but their whole Head withall being straitly fasten'd thereto, as Vipers do, and the like is to be said of the Parrot.

But the *lower* Jaw-bone in Mankind and other Creatures, is only movable, save in the Crocodile, which hath it so united to the Bones of the Temples, that it can no waies be stirred; but the Parrot moves both.

The *Connexion* is without motion in the upper Jaw, by a Suture or Harmonie whereby it is joyned with many bones of its own, of which it is composed, and other bones placed round about; in the *lower* by way of *Synchondrosis*, which is in the middle of the Chin. But in grown persons, the Gristle is so turned into a Bone, that the lower Jaw seems to be one only bone, whereas before it consisted of two.

In the Brim or Circuit of each Jaw-bone, which place *Galen* calls *Phaenian*, we meet with Cavities, wherein the Teeth are fasten'd, which *Galen* terms *Bothria*, the Latines *Alveolos, Loculos, Fossulas, Præsepiola, Mortariola*.

These *holes* according to the nature of the teeth in them, are somtimes single, otherwhiles threefold: somtimes they are obliterated and shut up, the Teeth being fallen or pluckt out. Somtimes they breed anew, by fresh Teeth breaking out. In old Age, frequently these holes are obliterated, the Teeth being lost, and the Gums become sharper and harder, so that old folks chew their meat with them instead of Teeth.

## Chap. X. *Of the Bones proper to the upper Jaw.*

THe *Bones proper to the upper Jaw*, are eleven on each side five, and one without a fellow.

The *first* being in a manner triangular, doth make up the lower part of the socket of the Eye, the lesser Eye-corner, and part of the *Os jugale* and of the Cheek-bone.

The *second* makes the greater Eye-corner where there is an hole which passes into the Nostrils, by which a Caruncle is placed.

Here those Impostumes are made which they call *Agilopas*, which if they be unskilfully or negligently handled, they pierce to the Bone, and cause the *Fistula Lachrymalis*.

This is a little Bone, and the least among the upper Jaw-bones, Thin, Transparent, Loosly, Adhereing, so that it is eatily broken and lost: and therefore 'tis seldom found in Skuls dug out of the Earth.

The *third* is a very great one, by which are constituted the large region of the Palate, and the great lower socket

containing the Teeth. It hath large Cavities (and holes through which veſſels paſs) on both ſides remarkable, both for to make it lighter, and that it might contain Marrow to nouriſh the Bones and the upper Teeth. Others ſay to help to frame the Voyce. In Children they are not hollowed til after ſome years, and they are then cover'd with a very thin Membrane.

The *fourth* with its companion, doth conſtitute the upper and more eminent boney part of the Noſe.

It is thin, hard, ſolid and quadrangular.

And theſe two external bones of the Noſe are divided with a Suture. Within they are rough, that the Griſtles of the Noſe, may be the better faſtened.

There is another inner bone (which is the third of the Noſe) cleaving to the proceſs of the *Os ſpongioſum*, which is called *Septum narium* becauſe it diſtinguiſhes the Noſtrils.

The *fift* is ſeated at the end of the Palate, where the holes of the Noſtrils go into the Throat or Fauces. They

# TABLE IV.

## The FIGURES Explained.

This TABLE preſents the lower part of the Skul, to be ſeen within and without.

FIG. I.

AAAA. *The two Boards of the Skull with the marrowy ſubſtance between them.*

B. *The Cavity in the Forehead bone, ending into the wideneſs of the Noſtrils.*

cc. *The Os Cribroſum or Sieve-like bone full of little holes.*

D. *Its acute proceſs reſembling a Cocks combe.*

EE. *The two inmore and foremore proceſſes of the Os Sphænoides or Cuneiforme.*

FF. *The two inner and hindermore proceſſes of the ſaid Bone.*

GG. *The holes of the ſaid bone for the optick Nerves to paſs out.*

H. *The Cavity cut in the middle of the Saddle, wherein the Glandula pituitaria is contained.*

I. *Another cavity whereon the conjunction of the optick Nerves doth reſt.*

KK. LL. MM. *Shew the holes of the Os cuneiforme, for the paſſage of the veſſels.*

NN. *The Proceſſus petroſus of the Temples-bone.*

oo. *An hole in the ſaid proceſs, for the Auditory Nerve to paſs through.*

pp. *An Additament or Appendix of the Os Occipitis.*

Q. *The greateſt hole of the Os occipitis through which the ſpinal marrow paſſes.*

RR. *The Cavities of the Os occipitis within the Skull, in which the Cerebellum or Brainles reſts.*

FIG. II.

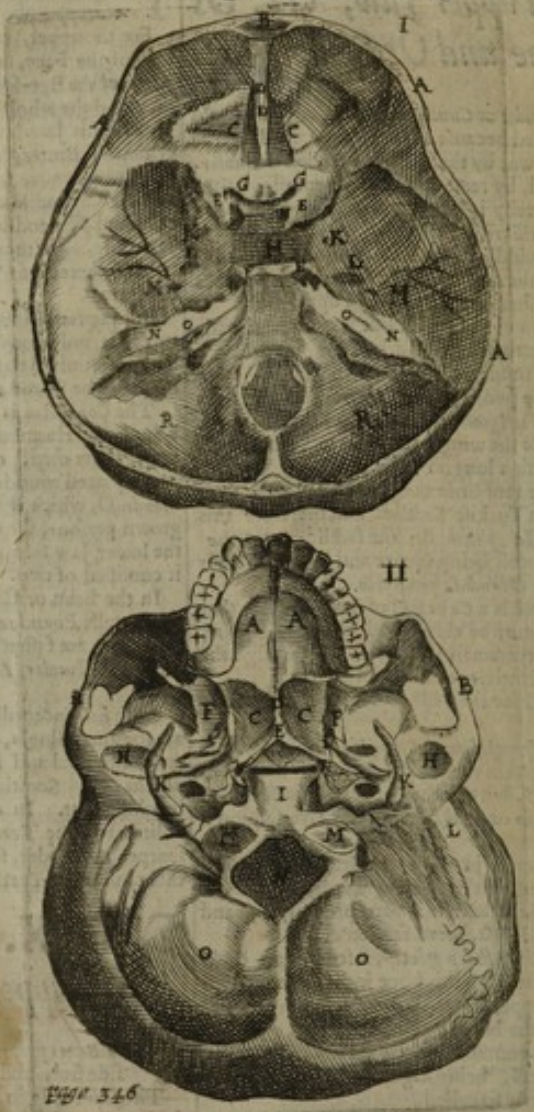
AA. *The fift bone of the upper Jaw, diſtinguiſhed by a Suture.*

BB. *The Os jugale.*

CC. *Holes opening into the wideneſs of the Noſtrils.*

D. *The partition of the Noſtril.*

E. *The eleventh bone of the upper Jaw, which Columbus calls Aratrum.*




*Page 346*

FF. *The external proceſſes of Os cuneiforme, like Bats wings.*

gg. *The Cavity of theſe Proceſſes.*

HH. *The Cavity of the Temple-bone, receiving the Head of the lower Jawbone.*

I. *An Additament or Appendix to the Os occipitis.*

KK. *The proceſſes of the Temple-bones, cal'd Styloides proceſſus.*

LL. *The mammillary proceſſes.*

MM. *Two Heads or proceſſes at the Baſis of Os Occipitis, whereby it is articulated into the firſt Vertebra.*

N. *The greateſt hole of the ſaid Bone.*

OO. *The two ſides of Os Occipitis, furniſhed with divers protuberancies.*

are distinguished one from another by the middle Suture of the Palate, and make the hinder part of the Cavity of the Palate and Nostrils, they are thin, solid and broad.

To these ten *Columbus* ads the *eleventh*, like a Plough, the inmost and middlemost above the Palate, shutting the lower part of the Nostrils, like a partition wall.

# Chap. XI.
## *Of the lower Jaw-bone.*

THe *lower Jaw-bone* in grown persons, consists of one Bone only, in Children till seven year old of two, which are joyned together by way of *Synchondrosis*.

Its *Figure* is that of the Greek letter υ or like a Bow.

Its *Substance* is exceeding hard and strong, that it may hold out in biting and chewing; within hollow, where Marrow is contained to nourish it and the teeth.

It hath two *Holes* on each side, which go quite through the Jaw-bone like a Pipe, so that a bristle put in at one hole will come out of the other.

The one is more *inward*, hindermore and greater, receiving in a part of those Nerves which we reckon to be the fift pare, to the Roots of the teeth, with a little Vein and Artery.

The other is more *outward*, less round, by which a Branch of the foresaid Nerve received in, is sent out to the lower Lip.

It hath sundry *Asperities* and *Cavities* for the Risings and Insertions of Muscles.

Also on each side two *Processes* called *Horns*, carried upwards.

*One goes out forwards* broad and thin, whose point or sharp end is called *Corone*, into which the Tendon of the Temporal Muscle is implanted. And therefore *Hippocrates* counts the Luxation of the lower Jaw-bone deadly.

The *other* hindermore, is carried backwards; representing a little bunch and is called *condulodes*, having a little Head coverd with a gristly crust, under which there is a longish Neck.

By this Process the Articulation is made with the Temple bones, where yet another Gristle is placed, between the Cavity and the gristly head, to facilitate the motion. Also a common membranous *Ligament* doth cover this Articulation.

# Chap. XII.
## *Of the Teeth in General.*

THe Teeth are called DENTES as if you would say *Edentes*, Eaters, and by the Greeks *odóntes* as it were *edóuntes* Eaters; and they are Bones properly so called, hard and solid, smooth and white, like other Bones.

*How the Teeth do differ from other Bones.*

They have some things peculiar which other bones have not, which nevertheless doth not exclude them from the number of Bones.

1. They are harder than other Bones, that they may bite and chew hard things; and they are little less harder than Stones, nor can they easily be burnt in the Fire, and whereas in the *Sarcophagus* or Flesh-eating Stone, the whole body is consumed in forty daies, the Teeth remain unimpaired. and therefore *Tertullian* writes that in them is the Seed of our future Resurrection.

2. The Teeth are naked without any Periosteum, least they should pain us when we chew.

3. Yet they have a Sense, but more of the first than of the second Qualities, and especially rather of what is cold than what is hot contrary to the Nature of flesh, according to *Hippocrates*. and hence they are so apt to be set on edg.

*Which part of the Tooth feels.*

But the whole Tooth doth not feel of it self, but the inner, softer and more marrowy part; which is covered over with an hard external part, which is not pained, neither by Fire, nor Iron, as in a Sword under the most hard rind of the Steel, an Irony marrow less hard lies within, and the Skin through the sensless Scarf-skin doth feel, so the inner part of the Tooth feels through the outmost, into which inner part being hollow, little soft Nerves enter and little cloathing Membranes. Hereupon a certain Nun at *Padua* causing a very long Tooth shee had above all the rest to be cut off to avoid the Deformity thereof, shee presently fell down into a Convulsion and Epileptick fit. Now in the part of her Tooth which was cut off, there appeared the tokens of a Nerve.

4. Hence, they receive Nerves into their Cavity which other bones do not.

5. They grow longer than any other of the Bones, almost all a mans life, because they are dayly worn, by biting and grinding; as

*Gutta cavat lapidem non vi sed sæpe cadendo.*
*The hardest Stone a dropping House-Eve hollows,*
*Cause drop upon drop, drop after drop still follows,*
*But not by force.*

And look how much they wear away, so much are they still augmented. which hence appears; in that if any Tooth fall out and grow not again, the opposite Tooth grows so much the longer, as the empty space of the former Tooth comes to.

*Fallopius* considering the præmises, and how new Teeth are thought to breed, he collects that the formative faculty remains alive in the Teeth to extream old age.

*Helmont* counts the matter of the Bone not to be meerly boney, but as it were of a middle nature betwixt Bone and Stone; because the Teeth turn to Stone whatever kind of food sticks long to them, be it Bread, Flesh, Herbs, Fish, Apples, Beans, or Pease, &c. But there is no petrification or turning to Stone, unless the things eaten be of a tartareous Nature, but only a drying, the moisture being consumed by the Spittle; nor are the Teeth made bigger by that addition, which somtimes is scraped off, somtimes turne to clammy filth.

*The Teeth are bred in the Womb.*

The Teeth *are bred* in the *Womb*, after the Generation of the Jaw-bones, twelve in each Jaw, or a few more, as I shall speak hereafter touching their number, four Cutters, two Dog-teeth, six Grinders: which lie somwhat imperfect and concealed within the Jaws (for it is rare for an Infant to be born toothed) least the child as it sucks should hurt the Nipple. And therefore in an Abortion, or a young Infant, small teeth may be pulled out.

They break out of the Gums sooner in Brutes (though *Varro* be otherwise minded as touching Horses) because they are sooner capable of solid meat; in mankind at the seventh month or later, after the Child is a year old: and the upper sooner than the lower, yet in some the lowest first, and among the rest,

The *fore-teeth in the first place*, because

1. They are most sharp.
2. They are less then the rest.
3. Because the Jaw-bone is there thinnest.
4. Because there is most need of them both to speak with and to cut and bite the meat.

*Why Children are sick of Teeth-breeding.*

And at that time when the Teeth of Infants shoot forth, *Hippocrates* tels us that Feavers, Convulsions, Fluxes of the Belly arise, especially when the Dog-teeeth come forth: because when the Teeth make their way through the Gums, they torment more than pricks in the Flesh.

These Teeth have a *Substance* boney, hard, and hollow where they break out, but in their hinder part they have a soft substance, covered with a thin and transparent Membrane.

And

*Why and when young ones looſe their Teeth.*

And about the ſeventh and fourteenth yeer, *other Teeth are wont to break out* (the former falling away) in both the Jaws ten, four Cutters, two Dog-teeth, and four Grinders. And the former fall out in the fourth, ſixt, and ſixt year. becauſe the holes grow wider, and therefore the Teeth being at that time ſoft, do grow looſe and fall out. *Nicephorus* in his Interpretation of Dreams ſaies, that for a man to dream he looſes a Tooth another comes in the Rome, betokens gain and unexpected Joy. If their Teeth do not ſhed, the latter Teeth come out at new holes, the upper commonly on the outſide, the lower on the inſide, as there were new ranks of Teeth. More frequently they ſpring out on the ſides and augment the number.

*Whether new Teeth are bred out of the womb?*

But theſe Teeth are not bred anew without the Womb: for then likewiſe Membranes, Nerves, Veſſels and Ligaments might be bred anew: but the ſeeds of them lie within the Jaws. For *Euſtachius* and *Riolanus* have obſerved ſome ſmaller Teeth at the back of the reſt which fall out, a very thin partition being removed which is found between the two ſorts of Teeth. But a rare caſe it is for Teeth to breed again, after many years and in old age. As *Thuanus* relates of a man that was an hundred yeer old: in our *Fionia* a man of an hundred and forty years of age, had new Teeth. *Helmont* ſaw an old Man and Woman of ſixty three yeers of age, whoſe Teeth grew again with ſuch pains as Children have when breed they teeth, which was no token of their long living, for both of them died that yeer. Sir *Francis Bacon* hath the like Example touching an old Man.

But now let us ſpeak of the Teeth in grown perſons.

The Teeth are *ſeated* in the Compaſs of the two Jaw-bones, in Mankind, ſhut up within his mouth; in a Boar they ſtick out, as alſo in the Whale-fiſh cal'd *Narhual* in our *Greenland*; which ſends out an exceeding long wreathed Tooth, out of the left ſide of his upper Jaw, which is commonly taken for the Unicorns horn, and is yet of great value among Noble Men and Princes.

In *Magnitude* they come ſhort of the Teeth of other Animals, becauſe of the ſmallneſs of Mans mouth. And in Mankind ſome have greater, others leſs.

They vary in *Figure*. In Man they are of a threefold figure: Cutters, Dog-teeth, and Grinders, as ſhall be ſaid in the following Chapter; ſave that *Fontanus* obſerved in a certain Man, that they were all Grinders which he had. In Creatures that *chew the Cud* they are double; Cutters and Grinders. In Fiſhes they are in a manner all perfectly ſharp, excepting one kind of Whale, which the *Iſlanders* call Springwall, whoſe teeth are blunt, but broad.

The *Surface* is ſmooth and even.

The *Colour* white, and ſhining, unleſs negligence, Age, or ſickneſs hinder.

The *Number* is not the ſame in all Men, for to let paſs rarities, viz. that ſome men are born with one continued tooth in their upper Jaw-bone (which they relate of *Pyrrhus*, and a certain Groenlander brought hither in the Kings Ships) alſo of a double and tripple row of teeth, ſuch as I have ſeen in ſome Fiſhes, and ſuch as *Lewis the thirteenth* King of *France* had, and which *Solinus* writes of *Mamichora*, and is known of the *Lamia*, which hath five ranks, ſtrangely ordered, and among them exceeding ſharp teeth, reſembling the ſtones called *Gloſſopetræ*, and therefore *Columna* took the teeth of a Lamian turned to ſtone, to be the *Gloſſopetræ* or precious Stones of *Malta* ſo called, of which I have ſpoke elſwhere. In a Sea-wolf, I have obſerved a double rank, the former of ſharp teeth, the inner of grinders, cloſe joyned together, which poſſeſs the lower part of the Palate. A man hath ordinarily but one rank in each Jaw-bone, and *twenty eight* in all, ſometimes *thirty*, in the upper Jaw ſixteen, in the lower fourteen; but for the moſt part *thirty two*, ſixtern in each Jaw.

But this number is ſeldom changed, ſave in the grinders, which ſometimes are on each ſide five, ſometimes four; otherwhiles five above, four beneath, or five on the right, and four on the left ſide, or contrarily.

*Many teeth argue long life.*

A great number of teeth argues length of life, few teeth a ſhort life, according to *Galen* and *Hippocrates*. And rightly. For the rarity and fewneſs of teeth is bad as a *Sign* and a Cauſe: for it argues want of matter, and the weakneſs of the formative faculty. As a *Cauſe*: becauſe few teeth cannot well prepare the meat, and ſo the firſt digeſtion is hurt, and conſequently the ſecond. But we muſt underſtand that this prediction holds for the moſt part, but not alwaies, as *Scaliger* well diſputes againſt *Cardan* in his 371. Exercitation. For *Auguſtus* who lived ſeventy ſix years, is ſaid to have had thin, few, and ſcalie teeth; and ſo likewiſe *Foreſtus* who lived above eighty years.

Their *Connexion* is by way of *Gomphoſis*, for they ſeem to be fixed in their holes as nails in a poſt. Alſo they are tied by ſtrong *Bands* unto their neſts, which bands ſtick to their roots; and then the Gums compaſs them, of which before.

The *outer Subſtance* is more ſolid and hard, not feeling; the *inner* is a little more ſoft, endued with ſenſe, by reaſon of the neighborhood of a Nerve and Membrane, and hath in it a Cavity, larger in Children then Elder perſons, and compaſſed about till they be ſeven years old, with a *thin Scale* like the Combs of Bees, and full of ſnotty matter; in grown perſons the humor being dried up, it is diminiſhed.

*The Diſeaſes and Pains of the Teeth, how cauſed?*

This Cavity is cloathed with a *little Membrane* of exquiſite Senſe, which if it imbibes ſome Humor flowing from the Brain, extream Tooth-ach follows. In this begin Ecoſions, Putrefactions, and moſt painful Rottenneſs; and herein ſometimes grow the ſmalleſt ſort of worms, which exceedingly torment men.

*Veſſels* are carried to this Cavity, by the holes of the Roots of the Teeth.

As *Veins* to carry back the blood after nutrition and continual augmentation. Which are not ſeen ſo apparently in Mankind (as neither the Veins of the *adnata tunica* of the Eyes) but they are manifeſtly ſeen in Oxen, and are gathered from the ſprinkling of blood in the Cavity.

*Little Arteries* to afford Natural Heat and Blood for Nutrition and Alteration. And therefore upon an Inflamation, a pulſative pain of the teeth is ſometimes cauſed, which *Galen* experimented in himſelf. Hence much lightful, ſhineing blood, comes ſometimes from a tooth that has an hole made in it, and ſometimes ſo as to cauſe death.

*Little Nerves* tender and fine, are carried to them from the firſt pare, according as we reckon, which go through the Roots into the Cavity, where they are ſpred abroad within, and by ſmall twigs mingled with a certain mucilaginous Subſtance found in the middle of the teeth.

The *Uſe* of the Teeth

In the *firſt* and chiefeſt place, is to chew and grinde the meat. And therefore ſuch as have loſt their teeth are fain to content themſelves with ſuppings; and therefore *Nicephorus* reckons that it is bad to dream of a mans teeth falling out, and ſaies it ſignifies the loſs of a Friend.

2. They ſerve to form the voice (and therefore Children do not ſpeak, till their mouths are full of teeth) eſpecially the fore teeth which help the framing of ſome certain Letters. Hence thoſe that have loſt their teeth, cannot pronounce ſome Letters, as for Example T. and R. in the ſpeaking whereof, the tongue being widened, ought to reſt upon the fore-teeth. Alſo the loſs of the grinders hurts the Explication or plain Expreſſion of the Words, according to *Galen*,

*Speech hurt.*

so that the Speech becomes slower, and less clear and easie. Let therefore such as have lost their teeth, procure artificial ones to be set in, and with a golden wire to be firmly fastned.

3. For *Ornament*. For such as want their teeth are thereby deformed.

4. *Homer* conceives the teeth are an edg to the tongue and Speech, to keep in a mans words, and prevent prating.

5. In Brutes they serve to *fight* withal, in which case a man uses his hands.

6. In the said Brutes, also to shew their Age. For the Age of an Horse is known, by looking into his Mouth, where before he is four years old that tooth to be seen which they term *Gnomon*, when he is four year old, there is another tooth seen with an hole in it that will hold a Pease, which every year grows less and less, till at eight years the tooth is filled up, becomes smooth, and no hole to be seen therein.

## Chap. XIII.
## *Of the Teeth in Particular.*

IN respect of their threefold Shape, their Situation, and Office, there are in Mankind *three sort* of *Teeth*: The *Fore-teeth*, the *Dog-teeth*, and the *Grinders*.

The *Fore-teeth*, from their Office which is to cut the meat, are termed *Incisores* and *Incisory Cutters*, also *Geloſinoi* the laughing teeth, because in laughing they are first discovered.

They are placed before, in the middle of the rest, in each Jaw four (some have only two in a Jaw, as large as four) broad and sharp like Swords, shorter then the Dog-teeth, and fixed in their Sockets with single Roots; and therefore they fall the sooner out, especially the upper-more. After these follow on either side

The *Dog-teeth*, so called, because of their sharpness, hardness, and use; for what the former cannot cut these do bruise and grind. They are commonly termed the Eye-teeth, not as some think, because they do almost touch the circumference of the Eye, seeing they hardly reach the lower part of the Laps of the Nostrils, but because a portion of that Nerve which moves the Eye, is carried unto them, and they are deeply rooted, and therefore it is counted dangerous to draw them, also when they are pained, the Eye-lids do pant a little.

*Why Men have few dog teeth.*

These teeth are two in each Jaw, on each side one, broad and thick in their basis, and sharp above. For a Man did not need many of these kind of teeth, seeing he is a gentle Creature, and hath hands to defend and offend.

They are fastned with simple Roots as the Fore-teeth are, but they are more deeply and firmly rooted: for their Roots exceed all the other teeth in depth, and they are longer then the upper teeth.

The remaining hindermore teeth are called *Molares*, both from their shape resembling Mill-stones and their use, because they grind the meat after it is cut, they are rough and great, hard and broad. The Germans call them the Cheek-teeth.

In men they are *more in number* then the Cutters; but the contrary holds in fierce Beasts, which use their sharp also to fight with.

They are commonly *twenty*, on each hand in both the Jaws five, although the number varies, as was said before.

The two last of these are termed *Dentes Sapientiæ*, the Teeth of Wisedom, also the teeth of Sense and Understanding, because they do then first break out (sometimes with very great pains, and otherwhiles without any pain) when men begin to be wise, about the twenty eighth or thirtieth year of their Age, and sometimes when they are very old; *Aristotle* saw them break out in some when they were fourscore, and *Valæus* at the Age of eighty three years. Sometimes they hardly appear, and otherwhiles they are scarce created; the Latins call them *Genuinos*.

*Why the upper Grinders have more roots then the lower?*

These Teeth are fastned by divers roots, either two and three, as the lower Jaw-teeth, or with three and four, as the upper Jaw-teeth, which have more roots then the other: Because,

1. They hang of themselves, otherwise then the lower teeth which are fastned partly by their own heavinesse.

2. Because the Substance of the upper Jaw is more rare and soft.

*A Transition.*

And so much for the first part of the Skeleton, viz. the Head: Now follows the second Part, or *Trunk*.

## Chap. 14. *Of the Back-bone and its Vertebra's in General.*

IN the Trunk or other Part of the Skeleton, all the *Vertebræ* of the *Back-bone* are to be examined, also the *Ossa Ischij*, the *Ribs*, the *Breast-bone*, the *Channel-bones*, and the *Shoulder-blades*.

*What the Spina is?*

All *that* is termed the *Spina* or Back-bone, which reaches from the first Vertebra of the Neck to the *Os coccygis*, or Crupper-bone. It is called *Spina* the *Thorn*, because the hinder part therof is all along sharp-pointed like a thorn branch.

The Parts of the Spine or Back-bone are termed *Spondyloi* in Greek, in Latin *Vertebræ Whirl-bones*, or *Turning-bones*, because by means of them the Body is turned several waies.

And these Bones of the *Spina* are divided into seven Vertebræ of the *Neck*; twelve of the *Back*; five of the *Loins*, and five or six of the *Os sacrum*; to which is added the *Crupper-bone*.

All the Vertebræ are hollowed, to contain the Spinal Marrow, they were to be *many*, not one, both for Motion which ought to be made forward and backward; also that the hurting of one might not draw the whole Spine into consent. The Father of *Nic. Fontanus* saw five Vertebræ or Whirle-bones of the Spina in a cluster like a round ball, in the Body of a Porter that carried burthens. And *Pavius* hath observed that in decrepit old people these Vertebræ grow together into one, the moisture being dried up, and the intermediate Ligaments hardned, which he represents by a Picture. *Tulpius* saw the Back-bone in a Boy divided into two parts, and *Salmuth* hath seen it broke asunder in persons that were hanged.

The *Figure* of the whole Back is, that *sometimes* it inclines *inwards*, as the Vertebræ of the Neck, to sustain the Gullet and aspera Arteria; and those of the Loins, for the Trunk of the Aorta and the Cava descending. *Sometimes outwards*, as of the Back, and a little of the Os sacrum; that there may be a larger space for the Heart, Lungs, Bladder, Fundament and Womb.

And these Parts do bend more outwards in Women, for the sake of the Child in the Womb.

The Figure of each Vertebra above and beneath, is plane and broad, that luxation may not easily be caused, round within, convex and bunching out; but in the neck broader and more even, by reason of the Wezand and Gullet resting thereupon. On the outer or Back-point, the Vertebræ are furnished with many prominencies.

For there are three kind of *Processes* in every Vertebra.

I. *Four oblique ones*, two on the upper part aſcending, two in the neither part deſcending.

II. *Two tranſverſe*, for the Original and Inſertion of the Muſcles. And they are in the Vertebræ of the Neck broad and bored through; in the Back thick, ſolid and round, excepting the eleventh and twelfth.

III. *One ſharp one*, in the hinder part, which is properly called the Spine or Thorn, and is wanting in the firſt Vertebra.

They have five Appendixes. Two above and beneath at their Body; as many at their tranſverſe Proceſſes, and one at the extremity of the *Spine*.

There is a moſt wide hole in the middeſt of each Vertebra for to keep the Spinal Marrow in. Alſo there are other holes in the ſides, which are leſſer, to let the nerves out, which *John Leonicenus* affirm to go out only at the joyntings of the Vertebræ.

The Subſtance of each Vertebra, is thicker and more ſpungie in the inſide: to which grow the *Epiphyſes* and *Griſtles*. For the extream Parts of the Vertebræ, excepting the firſt of the Neck, are furniſhed with Appendixes, between which there come thick and ſoft *Griſtles*, that they may be more eaſily moved; ſo that above and beneath, they have Griſtles, which in the Os ſacrum are harder and drier, becauſe this Bone is immoveable.

The Vertebræ are *knit together* by Articulation in the hinder part, viz. by the way of *Ginglumos*, but in the fore part by way of *Symphyſis*, and that by very ſtrong Ligaments or Bands.

Now the *Ligaments* of the Vertebræ are twofold.

*Some* do knit the Vertebræ above and beneath, and are ſhaped like the half Moon, thick, ſtrong, fibrous, and ſnottie.

*Others* ariſe from the Epiphyſes, as well the tranſverſe as the ſharp ones, which are membranous, by which the Proceſſes are more ſtrongly tied.

# Chap. XV.

## *Of the Vertebræ or Whirl-bones of the Back in Particular*

THe Vertebræ of the *Neck* are commonly ſeven. In Brutes for the moſt part ſix only, and *Busbequius* relates that the *Hyena* hath none, who is confuted by the Skeleton of that Beaſt in the cuſtody of P. *Caſtellus*. Theſe Vertebræ of the Neck, have ſome Peculiarities, whereby they differ from the reſt.

I. Some of them have their tranſverſe Proceſſes cleft in two.

II. Alſo they have them bored, for the cervical Veins and Arteries, aſcending into the Brain.

III. They have a cloven Spine or thorny Point.

The *two firſt* are joyned by Ligaments to the hinder-part of the Head, that they may ſtick moſt cloſe to the Head, and have ſomwhat peculiar to themſelves, which the other five have not.

*Why the firſt Vertebra has no Spine?*

I. Is termed *Atlas*, becauſe it ſeems to bear the Head up, which reſts upon the two hollows thereof. Some call it *Epiſtrophens*, though more give that Name to the ſecond. It *hath no Spine* or *ſharp Point*, leaſt the two ſmall Muſcles of the Head which ariſe from the ſecond Vertebra, ſhould be hurt when the Head is ſtretched out.

It hath a thinner, but more compact *Subſtance*. It receives, and is not received: and therefore it hath its Cavity covered with a Cartilage, to receive the tooth of the following Vertebra.

II. Is called *Epiſtrophens* from turning: for out of the middle of its Body, there riſes an Appendix (others call it a Proceſs) round and oblong, like a Dogs tooth, about which the Head with the firſt Vertebra is turned.

*An incurable Squinzie by Luxation of the Tooth.*

Hence that Appendix is called a tooth; yea and the whole Vertebra is by *Hippocrates* ſo called, by the Luxation whereof, he conceives an incurable Squinzie, is often cauſed.

The Surface of the Tooth is in ſome ſort rough, becauſe thence proceeds the Ligament, whereby it is bound to the *Occiput* or hind-part of the Head, about which alſo is wound a ſolid and round Ligament, like a Nerve in ſhape, wonderous artificially twiſted, that the Marrow may not be compreſſed and hurt.

Now this ſecond Vertebra is joyned with the firſt, by a broad *Ligament*, turned round.

The laſt does more agree with the Vertebra's of the Cheſt, and hath its laſt Proceſs not alwaies cloven.

The *Vertebræ of the Back* are commonly *twelve* in number; to which ſo many Ribs on each ſide are articulated: ſeldom one is wanting; and there is ſeldomer one more.

They are thicker then thoſe of the Neck; leſs ſolid, and full of little holes, for the paſſage of the nouriſhing Veſſels.

I. Is by the Ancients called *Typhia*, becauſe it is higher, and ſticks out more then the reſt.

II. Is termed *Maſchaliſter* Axillaris the Arm-pit Vertebra.

The reſt are called *Coſtales* the Rib-vertebræ.

The eleventh is termed *Arrhepos*, becauſe the Spine or ſharp point thereof is ſtraight.

The twelfth is called *Diazoſter* the Girder.

The five of the *Loins* are the thickeſt and greateſt, being full of little holes, whoſe motion is looſer then that of the Back, that we may more eaſily ſtoop to the ground.

The tranſverſe Proceſſes are longer, but thinner, excepting the firſt and fift; but the Spines are thicker and broader, to which the Muſcles and Ligaments of the *Back* are faſtned.

1. Is termed *Nephrites*, from the Kidneys which reſt thereupon.

The *laſt*, is by ſome called *Aſphalites*, the ſtabliſher or underpropper.

The reſt agree with the others aforeſaid.

*The Os ſacrum why ſo called.*

The *Os ſacrum* or *holy Bone* follows, ſo called, becauſe it is the biggeſt of the Spine or Back-bone, for the Ancients termed that which was great, Sacred. Or becauſe it lieth under the obſcæne or privy Parts, which Nature her ſelf covers and hides: For *Sacrum* did alſo ſignifie *execrable*, as *Servius* ſhews from *Petronius*, commenting upon that Expreſſion of *Virgil*; *Auri ſacra fames*: the curſed thirſt of Gold.

It is broad and immoveable, being the Baſis or Foundation of the Back.

Its *Figure* is commonly triangular. It is in its fore-part hollow, ſmooth and even; behind it is bunching and rough.

*Os ſacrum properly hath no Vertebræ.*

Its Vertebræ ſo called, not in regard of uſe but ſimilitude, are *five*, ſometimes *ſix*, in young Children eaſily ſeparable, in grown perſons ſo glewed together, that they ſeem to be but one Bone. *Solomon Albertus* and *Pavius* have ſometimes obſerved them to be ſeven in Number.

*Galen* makes the Os ſacrum to conſiſt of three Bones; becauſe he comprehends the other Bones of Os ſacrum under the Crupper-bone, and calls that an Epiphyſis, which others call *Os Coccygis*.

The Holes are not in its ſides, as thoſe of the former, but in the fore-part (which are greater, becauſe there are greater Nerves) and the hinder-part: becauſe at the ſides in the Os Ilion or Flank-bone.

In the three upper Cavities are engraven, where the *Oſſa Ilij* cleave to it.

Os

Os Coccygis the Cockow-bone, ſo called from the Shape it hath of a Cuckows-bill, is under the former, conſiſting of three or four Bones, and two Griſtles. But I conceive there was a greater number of Bones and Griſtles in that Daniſh Boy, who had a Tail growing out at his Rump.

*The Os coccygis may be looſned.*

Their Connexion is looſe, and in Women looſer then in Men, that they may give way.

1. In the Voidance of large Excrements.

2. In the time of Womens Travel, that the cavity may be more wide. And therefore ſome conceive that this Bone only gives way in the Birth, though *Pinæus* be againſt it, and that the Pains of Women in Travel depend upon the Concourſe of little Nerves in that place. Afterwards in ſitting it comes forwards, and of its own accord returns into its place.

This Bone in Men bends more inward to ſuſtain the Inteſtinum rectum; in Women outwards, becauſe of the Neck of the Womb, and that the Cavity might be wider.

This Bone being hurt or broken, exceeding great pains are raiſed, as the Stories related by *Amatus* and *Donatus*, do witneſs. *Hofman* believes it is of no uſe, but is only the mark of a tail, as the Nipples in Men are only the ſigns or marks of Duggs. But the conſtant Doctrine of *Galen* is, that all Parts of the Body are made for ſome Uſe.

## Chap. 16. *Of the Nameleſs Bone, or Os Innominatum.*

THe Os Innominatum or Nameleſs Bone, which ſome term Os Coxæ or Ilium, the Flank-bone, conſiſts of *three Bones, Ilium, Pubis*, and *Iſchium* joyned together by Griſtles, till the ſeventh year it appears diſtinguiſhed by a threefold Line, but in grown perſons tis one.

The *Os Ilion* ſo called, becauſe it contains the Gut Ilium, is the firſt part, which is the uppermore and broadeſt, knit to the Os ſacrum, by a common membranous and moſt ſtrong Ligament, although a Griſtle alſo comes between.

Its ſemicircular and uneven Circumference, is termed *Spina Oſſis Ilij*, whoſe inner part hollow and broad, is termed *Coſta*, the Rib; the outer part formed with unequal Lines, is termed *Dorſum*, the Back.

*Why the Os Ilium is larger in Women?*

This Bone is larger in Women, and its Spine is drawn more out ſidewaies, that the Womb of a Woman with Child may better reſt upon it. And therefore women with Child do a little complain of this Part, as if it were pulled aſunder from the Os ſacrum and other neighbouring Parts to which it cleaves.

*The Share-bones are looſned in Child-birth.*

*Os pubis* or *Pectinis*, the Share-bone, is the ſecond middlemore and foremore Part; which Bone is joyned to the Bone of the other ſide, by way of Sunchondroſis, that is to ſay, by a griſtle coming between; which in Women is twice as thick and looſe or wide as in Men, that theſe Bones in Childbirth may be (not diſlocated or disjoynted, but) looſned and made to gape, when the Child ſtrives to come forth. But now and then when the Childs greatneſs, or the narrowneſs of the place requires, the Share-bones are pulled aſunder, as, beſides the Authority of the Ancients, *Parœus* and *Riolanus* have obſerved in the Diſſections of Childing-women, &c. and it is largely proved in the Anatomical Controverſies of my *Father Bartholinus*: But this is not alwaies ſo, namely when the Child is ſoft and apt to bend it ſelf and comply with the ſtraitneſs of the place when the way is ſlippery, the Bones much widened, &c. for then the looſning of the Griſtle does ſuffice.

But whether the Share-bones are moved is another queſtion. *Joh. Cajus* affirms they are moved by help of the right Muſcle of the Belly. *Spigelius* alſo ſaies they are moved after a peculiar manner upwards, whiles the Body rouſes in the bed, the Legs being lifted upwards. *Riolanus* proves that the Share-bones are moved, not alone, but with the Hip-bone, by help of the ſame Muſcles, this I ſay he proves by the Venereal Embracements, in which theſe Parts are moved; by the going of ſuch whoſe Legs are cut off, and laſtly by dancing.

But ſome doubts do as yet make me ſcruple this Motion.

1. Becauſe *Cajus* himſelf confeſſes, that the Share-bones (I add the reſt) are not moved of their own Nature, but by the bending of the Back-bone.

2. Theſe Bones being joyned together by Symphyſis, can have no motion, which *Riolanus* himſelf confeſſes.

3. I have aſſigned another Uſe for the right Muſcles, above in Book the firſt.

4. Theſe ſeeming Motions of the Bones, are not proper to them, but are motions of the Thigh or Back, whoſe motion they follow. For in the Examples alleadged, any man may experiment in himſelf, that both his Thighs and Back are moved; alſo he may by his hand perceive, that both the Muſcles of the Thigh called *Glutæi*, and the other adjacent Muſcles are moved.

5. They ought to be immoveable, becauſe the upper Parts reſt upon them as on a Foundation, and we reſt by ſitting upon this Part.

In Women that have been lately delivered, theſe bones may be ſeparated with the back of a thin knife, which they cannot be in others. Moreover, though the Share-bones are joyned by a Griſtle, yet they have likewiſe two *Ligamenis* 1. compaſſes them about circularly. 2. Is membranous, which poſſeſſes the hole.

*Why there are great Holes in the Sharebones.*

They are *thin*, and for highneſs ſake furniſhed with very great *Holes*, which in women are more large and capacious, becauſe of the Womb and Child, for the inner and lower Proceſſes do bunch more outwards.

*The Share-bones larger in women.*

With the Os ſacrum they conſtitute that Cavity which is termed *Pelvis* the Baſin or Bowl, wherein are ſeated the Bladder, the Womb, and Part of the Guts.

Os Ischion or the Hip-bone is the third part, which is lower and more outward, wherein is a large and deep Cavity, (they call it *Acetabulum*, the Saucer, and *Pixis* the Box) to receive the large Head of the Thigh-bone, which if it fall out, either by reaſon of ſome internal humore, or outward chance, a Luxation or Semiluxation is thereby cauſed. The griſtley Proceſs of this Cavity, is termed *Supercilium*, the Brow.

The loweſt Parts of this Bone are more diſtant in women then in men, and therefore their *Pelvis* or Baſin is larger then that in men.

This Bone is *knit* to the Os ſacrum, with a double *Ligament*, growing out of the Os ſacrum: The *one* is inſerted into the ſharp Proceſs of the Hip, the *other* behind, into its Appendix, that the Inteſtinum rectum and its Muſcles may be thereby ſuſtained.

## Chap. 17 *Of the Ribs.*

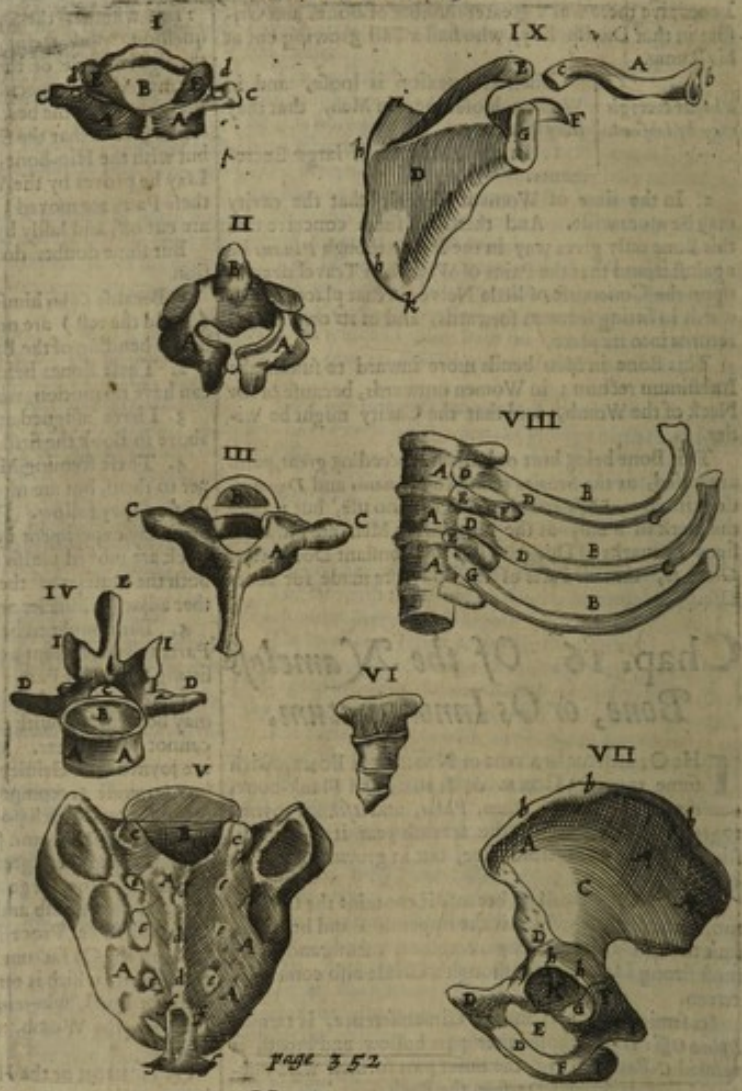
AS the *Os Innominatum* or Nameleſs Bone, is at the ſides of the Os ſacrum, ſo at the ſides of the Vertebræ of the Back, are the Ribs. And therefore, aſcending in the Explication of the Skeleton, theſe are now to be explained, as being the lateral Parts of the Cheſt.

The

# The FIGURES Explained.

## TABLE V.

This TABLE preſents ſome of the Vertebræ, the Os ſacrum, Os innominatum, the Ribs and Shoulder-blade peculiarly, and their Particles.




page 352

FIG. I.

AAA. *The foreſide of the firſt Vertebra of the Neck termed* Atlas.
B. *The hole through which the Spinal Marrow deſcends.*
CC. *The tranſverſe or lateral Proceſſes.*
dd. *The lateral Holes through which the Arteries aſcend to the Brain.*
EE. *Two Cavities receiving the Occiput.*

FIG. II.

AA. *The back-ſide of the ſecond Vertebra of the Neck.*
B. *Its Appendix or Proceſs, like a Tooth.*
C. *Its forked Spine.*

FIG. III.

AA. *The hinderſide of the Back-vertebra.*
B. *Its upper Surface, leſs ſolid and full of ſmall Holes.*
CC. *Its tranſverſal Proceſſes.*
D. *Its hinder Proceſs or Spina.*

FIG. IV.

AA. *The foreſide of the Vertebra of the Loins.*
B. *Its lower Surface, for the moſt part covered with a Griſtle.*
C. *An Hole for the Marrow to paſs through.*
DD. *The tranſverſe or lateral Proceſſes.*
E. *The latter Proceſs or the Spina.*
II. *Its oblique Proceſſes.*

FIG. V.

AAAA. *The hinder-ſide of Os ſacrum, conſpicuous by reaſon of its Knobs and Roughneſs.*
B. *The Hole for the deſcent of the Spinal Marrow.*
CC. *Its oblique Proceſſes.*
ddd. *Its hindermore Proceſſes.*
eeee. *Its Holes for the going out of the Nerves.*
fffff. *Its hinder Proceſs which is forked.*

FIG. VI.

Shews the *Os coccygis* or Crupper-bone, conſiſting of four little Bones or Griſtles.

FIG. VII.

Shews the Os Innominatum or Nameleſs Bone.

AA. *Os Ilium one part of the Nameleſs Bone.*
bbb. *The Spine thereof.*
C. *Its Back.*
DDD *Os Pubis* the Share-bone, *another part of Os Innominatum.*
E. *Its large Hole.*
FFF. *The Os Iſchion or Huckle-bone, a third part of the Nameleſs Bone.*
GG. *The large Cavity or Saucer.*
hh. *The Brim thereof.*
I. *The Knob.*
K. *The Appendix of the Huckle-bone.*

FIG. VIII.

AAA. *The Vertebræ of the Back.*
BBB. *The Ribs.*
CCCC. *The Cavity ingraven in the lower part of the Ribs.*
DD. *The two Knobs of the Ribs, by help whereof they are joyned to.*
E. *The Hollowneſs of the Vertebræ, and to the*
F. *Tranſverſe Proceſs of the Vertebræ.*
G. *The loweſt Rib, having a ſimple Knob.*

FIG. IX.

A. *The Clavicula or Channel-bone.*
b. *Its ſmall Head whereby tis joyned to the Breaſt-bone.*
c. *Its other end whereby tis joyned to the Shoulder-blade.*
D. *The Scapula or Shoulder-blade.*
E. *Its firſt Proceſs, called* acromion.
F. *Its leſſer, lower, and ſharp Proceſs called* coracoeides.
G. *Its ſhorteſt Proceſs called* Cervix *the Neck.*
hh. *The Baſis of the Shoulder-blade.*
i. *Its upper Corner.*
k. *Its lower Corner.*

The *Situation* of the Ribs in the Sides, and the Greeks call them *pleurai*, becauſe they form the Sides.

In *Shape* they reſemble a bow, or the leſſer Segment of a Circle, that the Cheſt might be the larger. *Johan. Fontanus* found a forked Rib; And my ſelf at *Hafnia* ſhewed the third Rib of the left ſide, as thick as two Ribs, joyned to the Breaſt-bone with two ſhanks.

At their Riſe they are narrower and rounder, but the nearer they come to the Breaſt, the broader they grow. In their upper part they are thicker. And the upper Ribs are more crooked, and alſo ſhorter; the middlemore are longer and broader; the lower are cut again ſhorter.

The *external Surface* is rough, where they are faſtned to the Vertebræ, becauſe the Ligaments which tie them do thence proceed: And there they are furniſhed with two little knobs: 1. Is articulated to the hollow of the Vertebra. 2. Is joyned to the tranſverſe Proceſs of the Vertebra. But the five lower are joyned by a ſimple knob.

The *inner* ſide is ſmooth, becauſe of the Membrane *Pleura*.

In the loweſt part there are *Cavities* according to the length of the Ribs, for the Vein, Artery, and Nerve; which appears the more, by how much they are nearer the Vertebra's.

*An Admonition for Surgeons.* Where let Surgeons obſerve in the opening of the Cheſt, which is made between the fiſt and ſixt Rib, the Section muſt be made from the top towards the bottom, but not contrariwaies, leaſt theſe Veſſels ſhould be hurt.

The Ribs have *Connexions*; one with the Vertebræ of the Back, another with the Griſtles of the Breaſt-bone.

*The Griſtles of the Ribs.* The *Subſtance* of the Ribs, is partly boney, and partly griſtley.

1. That the Cheſt may more eaſily be contracted and diſtended.

2. That a Fracture may not eaſily happen.

Tis *boney* in the part near the Back, and the lateral part.

Its *griſtley* near the Breaſt-bone to which they are joyned.

For all the Ribs in their forepart, have Griſtles like Epiphyſes, which in women (not in men unleſs very old) through tract of time, do grow hard as bones, that they may more ſtrongly ſuſtain the Bulk of the Dugs reſting upon them.

The Griſtles of the upper Ribs are harder, becauſe they are coupled with the bones of the Sternon or Breſt-bone; thoſe of the lower are ſofter, becauſe they are joyned to Griſtles. Moreover in its hinder part each hath a Griſtle, which is articulated with a Vertebra.

*Why the Ribs are many in number?* The Ribs are many in *Number*, that the Cheſt may be more eaſily moved. *Pauſanias* in his Relations of *Athens*, tells us, that *Protophanes Magneſius*, had his Ribs faſtned one to another, from his ſhoulders to his baſtard Ribs. *Nicolas Fontanus* ſaw three united and unſeparable. For the moſt part there are on each ſide twelve, both in men and women. Seldom thirteen, more rarely eleven. But often there is only one ſuperfluous. Tis therefore likely that in one ſide of *Adam* there were thirteen ribs,

*How many Ribs* Adam *had.* one of which *Jehovah* took out with the muſculous fleſh growing thereto and turned into *Eve*; or he had twelve Ribs on one ſide, and eleven on the other.

The Ribs are divided into *true genuine* and legitimate; and *baſtard*, *adulterate* and illegitimate Ribs.

*How many true Ribs there are.* The *true* are the ſeven upper ones, ſo called, becauſe they do more perfect the Circle, and touch the Breſt-bone, wherewith they have a perfect Articulation; and with the Vertebræ by a double knob as was ſaid before.

The two uppermore are called *antiſtrophoi retortæ*, turned backwards.

The two following are termed *ſternei ſolidæ*, the ſolid Ribs.

The remaining three are cal'd *ſternitides*, the Pectoral Ribs.

*The baſtard Ribs.* The five loweſt are called *baſtard Ribs*, becauſe they are leſſer, ſofter, ſhorter, nor do they reach to the Breaſt-bone (that dilatation may be there better made, at the beginning of the lower Belly) nor have they a perfect Articulation therewith, but being knit only to the Vertebræ, as if ſome part of them were cut off, they end into longer Griſtles then the true ones: Which being turned back upwards, do ſtick one to the other, as if they were glewed together, the laſt excepted, which is the leaſt, & ſticks to none, & therfore tis truly ſpurious, that a larger ſpace may be for the Liver, Spleen, and upper Guts being diſtended. Howbeit, the eleventh ſomtimes and the twelfth, are tied to the Septum tranſverſum: Somtimes, the laſt grows to the oblique deſcendent Muſcle of the Belly, without the Midriff; ſomtimes it hath the Circumſcription of its proper Muſcle, which pulls it from.

The *Uſe of the Ribs* is:

1. [Epecially of the true ones] to defend the Breaſt and Bowels therein contained, as the Heart, &c.

2. To ſuſtain the Muſcles that ſerve for Reſpiration, and ſome others of the Belly.

[3. Of the baſtard ones, to ſerve the Natural parts contained in the Belly.

## Chap. 18. *Of the Sternon or Breaſt-bone.*

THe Bone of the Breaſt, which in the fore-part of the Cheſt reſts upon the Ribs, and is ſpred thereupon (whence they ſuppoſe tis cal'd *Sternum*) is by *Hippocrates* termed *Stethos*: which Word nevertheleſs ſometimes ſignifies.

1. The whole forepart of the Cheſt.
2. Its Pain.
3. The Breaſt-bone as in this place.
4. The Orifice of the Stomach.
5. The Sword-faſhion'd Griſtle.

Others call this bone *Os Gladiole* or *Enſiforme* the *Sword-bone* or *Sword-faſhion'd* bone, becauſe of the ſhape of a Sword or rather ſuch a Dagger as was uſed by the Ancients: for it is *convex*, *long* and *broad*.

Its *Subſtance* is partly boney, but fungous and red, partly Griſtly.

It conſiſts of *divers bones*, not of one, as is commonly ſeen in old Men. the diverſity of its bones appears, when you remove its Membranes. In Infants it is wholly griſtly, excepting its firſt bone. Moreover, the upper bones are ſooner made than the lower, and the middle parts, than the outmoſt: ſo that in concluſion, eight bones are found in the Breaſt of a Child, which after ſeven yeers grow together, and become fewer, ſo that in grown perſons there are ſomtimes three, ſomtimes four, ſomtimes more bones. But the firſt and laſt remain in grown perſons as in Children; but the middle ones growing together, the number of bones comes to vary in that place.

Theſe Bones are diſtinguiſhed by tranſverſe lines, and are knit together by *Synchondroſis*; for the Griſtles are interpoſed like Ligaments

The *firſt* and *uppermoſt bone*, is large and thick, plana and uneven, of an Halfmoon faſhion above, repreſenting the joyning of a Dagger blade into the haft. ſome term it *Jugulum* the *Throat-pit*, others call it *Furculam* the little fork.

It hath on each ſide an *hollowneſs* in the upper part, to

receive the Heads of the Claviculæ or Channel-bones, in which copulation Griſtles come between.

And another Hollowneſs within engraven in the middle, that it may give way to the deſcending Trachea or Weſand.

The *ſecond* is more narrow and hath many hollowneſſes on each ſide to receive the Griſtles of the Ribs.

*The Cartilago Enſiformis.*

The third is yet leſs, but broader than the ſecond, and ends into the Griſtle which is termed *Xiphoeidès* Sword-faſhion'd, and *Mucronata* pointed, becauſe towards the end it is ſharp like the point of a Sword. The Arabians term it, the Pomegranate; *Avicen* calls it *Epiglottalis*, and the common name is *Scutiformis* Shield-faſhioned.

This Griſtle is triangular and oblong, ſomtimes round at the End, and ſomtimes broad, otherwhiles cloven, whence ſome call it *Furcella* the little fork; 'tis ſeldom double.

Sometimes 'tis *perforated*, for the Dug-veins and Arteries, which are accompanied by a Nerve. Sometimes in aged perſons, it attains a boney Subſtance, *Veſlingus* hath found it a Fingers length not without great hurt to the Stomach, and trouble when a man bows himſelf. *Pavius* alſo ſaw here a boney Subſtance, in a perſon troubled with extream ſhortneſs of breath.

This if it be too much preſſed and bowed inwards, the parts beneath it are hurt, *viz.* the Liver and Stomach, and the Infants periſh for want of Nutriment: of which ſee *Condronchius* and *Sepalius*, *Zacutus*, *Wilhelmus Piſo*. This Diſeaſe is by ſome Women cal'd, the Hearts compreſſion.

*Folius* hath obſerved two Muſcles placed on the ſide hereof, by which this Griſtle is lightly moved downwards and inwards.

The Cavity appearing outwardly in this place, is called *Fovea* or *Scrobiculus Cordis*.

The *Uſe* of the Sternum or Breaſt-bone, 1. Like a ſhield to defend the Heart from external dangers.

2. To ſuſtain the Mediaſtinum.

3. To collect the Ribs and faſten themſelves one to another.

# Chap. XIX. *Of the Channel-bones and Shoulder-blades.*

THe Channel-bones are called CLAVICULÆ, *clefdes* in Greek, that is the Keyes; becauſe they ſhut up the Cheſt, and like keyes do lock the Shoulder-blade to the Breaſt-bone. or becauſe they reſemble the Keyes uſed by the Ancients, which *Spigelius* ſaw in an old houſe at *Padua*. *Celſus* calls them *Jugula* à jungendo from joyning, others call them *Ligulas*, *Os furcale*, *Furcalem ſuperiorem*.

They are *ſeated* athwart under the lower part of the Neck, on the top of the Breaſt, on each ſide one.

They have the Shape of a long Latine S, that is to ſay, of two Semicircles, ſet one to another contrariwiſe, at the Throat externally they are convex, inwardly a little hollowed, that the veſſels carried that way may not be compreſſed. But in Men they are more crooked, that the motion of their Arms may be leſs hindred: in Women leſs, for beauties ſake, ſeeing the hollows in that place are not ſo viſible in Women as in Men, and therefore Women are not ſo nimble to throw Stones as Men are.

*An hollowneſs about the channel-bone.*

Their *Subſtance* is thick, but fiſtulous and fungous; and therefore they are often broken.

Their *Surface* is rough and uneven.

They are knit to the upper proceſs of the Shoulder-blade (by a Griſtle, which nevertheleſs grows not thereto, that it may give way a little in the motions of the Shoulder-blade and Arm, only it is detained by Ligaments embracing the Joynt) by a broad and longiſh head, and with the Sternon or Breaſt-bone, it is joyned, by another little head, as was ſaid before.

Its *Uſe* is to ſerve the ſundry motions of the Arm, which becauſe it reſts upon this bone as on a prop, therefore it is more eaſily moved upwards and backwards. And therefore it is that Brutes have no channel-bones, excepting the Ape, Squirril, Mouſe, and Hedg-hog or Urchin.

*Where the Scapula is.*

*Os Scapulæ* the *Shoulder-blade* is by the Greeks termed *Omoplatè*, becauſe it makes the breadth of the Shoulder, thoſe that ſpeak barbarouſly cals it *Spatula*. It is a bone broad and thin, eſpecially in the middeſt, but in its proceſſes thick, on each ſide one, reſting upon the upper Ribs, behind, like a Shield.

Its *Figure* is in a manner triangular.

Its *Parts* are ſundry. The Internal is hollow, the other part (which hath both a corner and an upper and lower Rib) is gibbous, which is termed *Teſtudo* the Tortoiſe, alſo the Back of the Shoulder-blade. There is alſo a certain Spine or ſharp-point, looking above and beneath the cavities which are termed *Inter ſcapulia*.

It hath three *Proceſſes*.

I. Is the extream part of the Spine lately ſpoke of, and is called *Acrómion* the *Shoulder-tip*, or *Summus Humerus*, whereby 'tis joyned to the Clavicula or Channel-bone.

II. Is leſſer, lower and ſharp, and from its likeneſs to a Crows bill, 'tis cal'd *coracoidès*; alſo *anchoroidès* from the likeneſs it hath to one part of an Anchor, alſo *Sigmoeidès* and by this proceſs, the Shoulder-bone is contained in its place.

III. The ſhorteſt is termed *auchè* cervix, the Neck; in the end whereof there is a ſuperficial cavity, whereunto the Head of the Shoulder is inſerted, which that it may not eaſily ſlip out, the deepneſs of the Cavity is encreaſed by a thick Griſtle, compaſſing the Lips. And by this proceſs and the Cavity, the Shoulder-blade is joyned with the Arm.

It hath five *Epiphyſes*, three at the inſide, and at the Baſis near the carriage of the Spina. Two of them produce *Ligaments*, which joyn its head to the Shoulder, and the Shoulder-tip to the Clavicula. But common *Ligaments* thin and Membranous, do compaſs the Joynt of the Shoulder-blade and Arm.

*Uſe of the Scapula or Shoulder-blade.*

1. It ſerves to ſtrengthen the Ribs.

2. For the Articulation of the Shoulder and Channel-bones, and for their ſecurity. And therefore the Shoulder is ſeldom (without very great violence) diſlocated or disjoynted upwards, or to one ſide, but for the moſt part downwards, where no Shoulder-blade hinders.

3. For the implantation of Muſcles.

4. Primarily for the action of laying hold according to *Hofman*, to which they are ſubſervient, by inarticulation partly, and partly by the explantation of certain muſcles of the Arm.

5. Secondarily to cover the Heart.

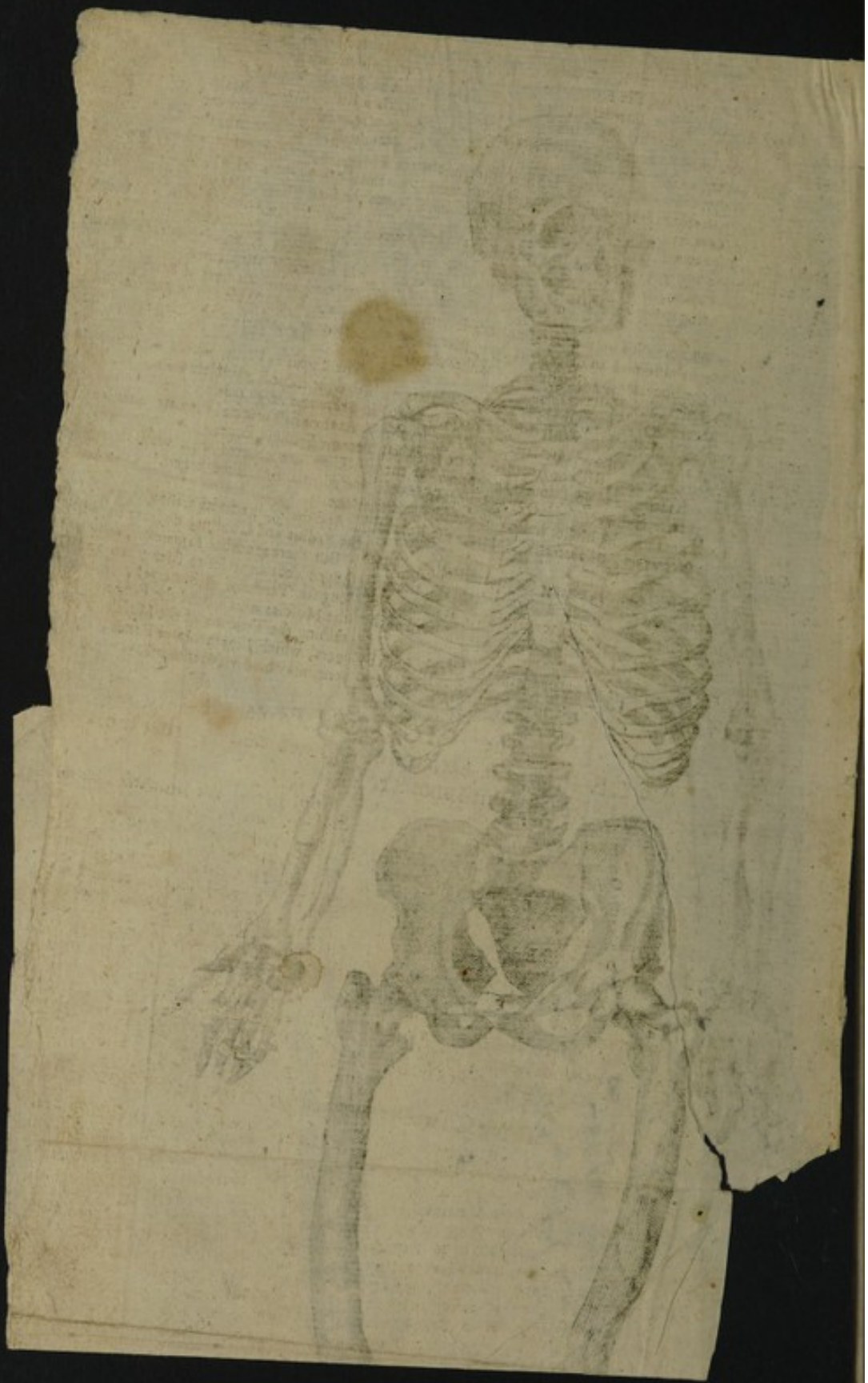
# Chap. XX. *Of the Bones of the whole Arm and Hand.*

THe Bones of the Arm and Hand, are divided into the *Brachium* or Arm peculiarly ſo called, *Cubitus* the Cubit, and *Extrema manus* the Hand.

The Os BRACHII or Arm-bone, is a ſingle Bone, great and ſtrong, long, round, and uneven. In its upper *part* it hath an Appendix or great *Head*, growing to it, which is round, covered with a Griſtle, and articulated with the Scapula by *Diárthroſis*.

The

page 355



The lower part is articulated to the Cubitus and Radius, where there are two *processes*; the *External* which is less and cruſted with a Griſtle; the *Internal* having two Hollows, repreſenting a Pulley, whereby the Cubit being joyned by way of *Ginglymus*, may be bent to a moſt acute angle, but not extended beyond a right line.

The BONES of the CUBIT are two, ſhorter than the Shoulder, and having Appendixes on either ſide, reſting mutually one upon another, and joyned one to another by a Membranous Ligament.

The firſt being lower, greater and longer than the other, is termed *Ulna*, *Cubitus*, by the barbarous Writers *ſcile majus*; the other being upper and leſſer, is termed *Radius* or *ſcile minus*.

The ULNA or *Ell*, ſo called for ſome reſemblance it hath to the Drapers Metwand termed an Ell, in its *upper* part is *articulated* with the Shoulder by *Ginglymos*, and therefore it hath there Proceſſes, and Hollows.

The *Proceſſes* are two, longwiſe ſhaped, and as it were triangular, rough, that the Ligaments might ſtrongly cloſe upon the Joynt and compaſs the ſame faſt. They are termed *Corònai*, that is Beaks, Bils or Acorns. The *foremore* and uppermore is leſs, and goes into the hollow of the Shoulder: the *latter* is thicker and larger and ends in an obtuſe angle, and goes into the hinder hollow of the Shoulder. *Galen* cals it *Olécranum*, Hippocrates *Ancona*, the Latines *Gibberum*.

In the middeſt of theſe is a great Cavity or Hollow, like an half Circle, whence 'tis called *Sigmoides* from the letter Sigma ſo ſhap'd of old by the Greeks. It hath as yet another ſmooth external lateral Cavity, for the Head of the *Radius*.

*In the lower part it is articulated* with the Wriſt, both by a Griſtle going between, as alſo by an acute proceſs, therefore termed *Styloides*, *Bodkin-like*; whence a *Ligament* ariſes, which faſtens the Cubit to the Wriſt-joynt.

The other Bone cal'd RADIUS is more oblique or crooked, and is a little diſtant from the other in the middle, where a thin *Ligament* comes between: but above, the Ulna receives the Radius; beneath, the Radius receives it.

The *upper part* thereof is articulated with the outward part of the *Brachium*, by way of *Diarthroſis*, whence proceeds the forward and backward motion.

The *lower* is articulated with an Appendix with the Wriſt-bone, at the greateſt Finger.

The upper part of *this*, is thinner, the lower thicker; contrary to what is in the former.

The HAND hath four ſorts of *Bones*: thoſe of the *Carpus*, *Brachiale* or *Wriſt*; thoſe of the *Metacarpus* or *poſt brachiale*, the *After-wriſt*; thoſe of the *Fingers* and the *Seſamus-ſeed-bones*.

The CARPUS or Wriſt, which the Arabians call *Raſeta*, hath *eight* diſtinct nameleſs *Bones*, very unequal, differing in *Shape* and *Magnitude*.

At their firſt original they are Griſſles, afterwards they become Spungie Bones.

They are covered with very ſtrong *griſtly Ligaments* and withall ſo faſtned together, as if they were but one Bone.

And theſe Ligaments ariſing from the lower proceſſes of the Radius and Cubitus, do ſerve for Articulation.

But there are other *Ligaments*, which are tranſverſe and ſhaped like rings, for to ſtrengthen and ſafely to carry along the Tendons. the *internal*, containing the tendons of the Muſcles which bend the Fingers; and the *external*, containing the Tendons of the Muſcles which extend the Fingers. which Ligaments or Bands, though they ſeem to be one, may be divided into many.

## The FIGURE Explained.

### This TABLE ſhews the Skeleton of a grown Body, that the contexture of the Bones may be ſeen one with another.

A. *The Bone of the Forehead.*
*bb.* *The Coronal Sutures.*
C. *The Temple Bones.*
*d.* *The Tear-like production or Proceſſus mammillaris.*
E. *The Os jugale.*
F. *The upper Jaw-bone.*
GG. *The lower Jaw-bone.*
*hhh.* *The Vertebræ of the Neck.*
*iiiiii.* *The Ribs.*
KK. *The Sternum or Breaſt-bone.*
LL. *The Claviculæ.*
MM. *The inner-ſide of each Shoulder-blade.*
NN. *The Arm-bone or Os humeri.*
OO. *The Head thereof joynting into the Shoulder.*
PP. *Its lower part articulated with the Cubitus and Radius, where is*
*qq.* *The inward knob thereof.*
*rr.* *The outer knob.*
SS. *The Cubit bone called Ulna.*
TT. *The other cubit bone called Radius.*
*uu.* *The Proceſs of the Ulna, crooked backwards, which Galen calls* olécranum.
*xx.* *The leſſer proceſs of the Ulna.*
YY. *The Wriſt conſiſting of eight little Bones.*
ZZ. *The Metacarpus conſiſting of four Bones.*
*aaaa.* *The Finger rows.*
*ββ.* *The Thumb compounded of three Bones.*

### Theſe following Characters, do point to the lower Bones of the Skeleton.

*Aaaaa.* *The five Vertebræ of the Loyns.*
BB. *The inner-ſide of Os Sacrum with its holes.*
CC. *The Cavity of Os Ilij, conſtituting a great part of the Pelvis or Baſin.*
DD. *The Os Coxendicis with its Acetabulum or Saucer.*
EE. *The Share-bones with their Holes.*
F. *A line knitting the Share-bones by help of a Griſtle.*
GG. *The Thigh-bone.*
*hh.* *The round head of the ſaid Bone.*
*ii.* *The Neck thereof.*
*kk.* *The external proceſs of the Neck, or the great Trochanter.*
*ll.* *The other proceſs or leſs Trochanter.*
*mmmm.* *The lower heads of the Thigh-bone.*
NN *The Mola, patellæve Knee-pan.*
OO. *The Tibia righe and left, in which*
*pppp.* *Shews the two upper Hollowneſſes,*
*rr.* *Shews the Spina,*
*ſſ.* *The lower Proceſs of the Ankle-bone.*
TT. *The Fibula or other Leg-bone ſo called, or the Perone.*
*uu.* *Its lower part conſtituting the external Ankle.*
XX. *Seven Bones of the Tarſus.*
*αα.* *The Aſtragalus.*
*ß.* *The Calx, Calcaneum or Heel Bone.*
*ſ.* *The Os cubiforme, Die-faſhion'd-bone.*
YY. *The Bones of the Metatarſus.*
ZZ. *The Bones of the Toes, of which two are reckoned to the Great Toe and to the other Toes three a piece.*

The

Please to here, The Skeleton of a grown Body.

The Bones of the Wriſt are diſperſed in a certain order: for above, there are four, articulated with the Radius and the Cubitus: beneath as many, knit to the four bones of the *Metacarpus* or Afterwriſt.

The *Metacarpium*, *Afterwriſt*, or *Palm*, hath four Bones (others ſay five, reckoning the firſt of the Thumb amongſt them) ſhaped longwiſe and ſmall.

They are joyned to the Wriſt by a Connexion of obſcure motion, and by *Griſtly Ligaments*: with the Fingers by way of *Ginglimus*.

Theſe Bones are *fiſtulous* containing Marrow, hollow within, boſſie without.

They have *Appendixes* on each ſide, which neer the fingers are round and longiſh heads, going into the hollowneſs of the Fingers. In the middle they gape one from another where the Muſcles cal'd *Interoſſei* do lie conceal'd.

The *Bones* of the *Fingers* are *fifteen*, in each Finger three. For the firſt of the Thumb is reckon'd in this number, becauſe it hath a looſer articulation than the *reſt brachialia*.

The row of Fingers on a hand the Greeks call *Phalanges*, becauſe they reſemble a rank of Souldiers in Battle array.

Each of the Fingers have Ligaments on their inſides, according to their length like Channels, whereby they are faſtned one to another.

The Bones of the Finger differ in *Magnitude*. For in every Finger, the firſt is greater than the ſecond, the ſecond than the third: and they are all thicker at the Joynt, where their knobs are termed *condyloi*, *nodi*, *knots*.

Without they are bunching, within hollow and plane the better to lay hold.

They have Proceſſes above and beneath, beſides the Bones of the third Interjunſture, which they did not need above where they are joyned to the Nails.

# Chap. XXI. *Of the Bones of the whole Leg, Foot and Thigh.*

THE PES or Leg (taking the word in a large ſence) is *divided* into three parts, as the Arm was: *viz.* into *Femur* the *Thigh*, *Tibiam* the *Shank*, and *Extremum pedem*, the *Foot*.

FEMUR (the Thigh) is ſo termed *a ferendo* from bearing, becauſe it bears and holds the Creature up, it conſiſts of one only Bone, but the greateſt and longeſt in the whole body, whoſe fore and external part is more bunching, the inner and hinder, more Saddle-ſhap'd.

*A Memento for Chyrurgeons.*

For it deſcends obliquely inwards, unto the Knee; which Chirurgeons are to obſerve, leſt in the Fracture thereof they come to diſorder this ſituation.

The *upper part* hath three *Proceſſes*, which are rather *Epiphyſes*, and are eaſily ſeparated in young Children.

I. Is a moſt great and round Head, made of an Appendix, which is inſerted into the *Acetabulum* or hollow Sawcer of the Coxendix, and is by a double *Ligament* faſtned to the ſaid Coxendix or Hip-bone: the *one* common, broad, membranous, but thick enough, compaſſing the Joynt round about; the *other*, round, as it were a Griſtle (as if it were a Griſtly Nerve) betwixt the head of the Thigh and the Depth of the Cavity, leaſt the Head of the Thigh fall out.

The *Neck* hereof hath a double *proceſs* furniſhed with an Appendix, which Appendixes are eaſily plukt aſunder in Infants, but not in grown perſons.

II. Is external, which is called *magnus Trochanter* or *Rotator*, the great whirler or wheeler about, having hollows, Impreſſions, and Lines.

III. Is internal, cal'd *parvus Rotator*.

Whoſe *Uſe* is, for the original and Inſertion of thoſe Muſcles by which the motions are cauſed: and therefore alſo it is, that they are called *Trochanteres*, Wheelers or Whirlers about.

The *lower part* is articulated or joynted with the ſhank by way of *Ginglimus*. For at the Knees, with a double head, the inner more thick, the outer more broad and flat, it enters the Cavity of the Tibia; between which heads there is a large ſpace, of a Thumbs-breadth, through which the veſſels do paſs unto the Thighs with a Nerve of the fourth pare; and wounds in this part are dangerous, by reaſon of Convulſions.

MOLA ſo called from its likeneſs to Mill-ſtone; is a round and broad Bone; it is in this place put upon the joynting of the Thigh and Shank, where the Knee is compas'd with a membranous Ligament, all ſave the *Mola*. others call it *Rotula*, *Patella*, *Mola*, *Scutum*, *Oſſ ſcutiforme*, &c. the Knee-pan, becauſe it conſtitutes the Knee.

Its *Subſtance* for ſome months in young Children, is Griſtly, in grown perſons it becomes bonie.

Its *ſhape* like a Buckler, for in the middle one part thicker than the reſt, bunches out.

It grows to, and is faſtned by certain thick Tendons, of ſome Muſcles of the Thigh.

It is *movable*, and for to make the motion more eaſie, inwardly at the Thigh-bone, 'tis cover'd with a ſlippery Griſtle.

Its *Uſe* is: I. To ſtrengthen the joynt in that part, leſt the Thigh ſhould ſlip and be diſlocated inwards, and ſo a man ſhould fall, eſpecially walking downwards, and much bending his Knee. 'Tis reported, that in *Nova Zembla*, Men bend their Knees as well backwards as forwards.

II. To defend the Tendons of the Muſcles.

TIBIA the ſhank, being that part which is between the Knee and the Ankle, conſiſts of *two Bones*, as the Cubitus or lower half of the Arm.

The *one* being inner and greater, is called by the name of the whole, *Tibia*, *Cnéme*; by ſome *focile majus*, *canna major* &c. In an Elephant alone of all Creatures (as *Bontius* informs us) there is a bending or joynting in the middle of the Shanks, beſides the other ordinary bendings common to all Creatures.

In *the upper part* it hath a *Proceſs* in the middle received by the Cavity of the Thigh-bone, and two cavities framed long-wiſe, for the Heads of the Thigh-bone; the depth of whoſe Hollows is encreaſed by a Griſtle, faſtned thereto by Ligaments, which is movable, ſoft, ſlippery, and ſmeared with an Oyly moiſture, thick in its circuit, thin towards its Centre, and therefore termed *Lunata*, Moon-ſhap'd.

A *knob* growing there, doth ſeparate the two *Cavities*, from the top whereof a ſtrong Ligament proceeding, it is faſtned into the hollow of the Thigh-bone.

But from the fore and rough ſide come two Ligaments, which encreaſe the Moon-faſhion'd Griſtles.

Its *foremoſt* part which is ſharp and long, is termed *Spina*, where the ſhape of the Bone is as it were triangular, and ſo acute that it is like the edg of a Knife. and therefore if the Bone of the Tibia or ſhank be ſtrucken on this forepart, it cauſeth exceeding pain, becauſe the neighbouring Skin and the Perioſteum are cut by this ſharp Bone as it were with a Knife.

In the *lower part* there is a *Proceſs* void of fleſh, ſticking out with a bunch, neer the Foot, and 'tis cal'd *malleolus internus*, the inner Ankle-bone; as the proceſs of the Fibula, is termed *malleolus externus*, the outer Ankle-bone.

FIBULA *perône*, the *Button*, becauſe it ſeems to button together and joyn the Muſcles of the ſhank; is alſo cal'd *Sura* the Calf, *Canna minor*, *Focile minus* &c. and it is a ſmaller and lanker bone, drawn along before the Tibia without, as the Radius before the Cubit.

*In the upper part*, its round head doth not touch the Knee, but it ſubſiſts beneath: but *with its lower part*, it goes beneath the Tibia, and therefore 'tis as long a bone as the Tibia is.

In

In the middle the Tibia and Fibula hold a gaping distance one from another, by reason of the Muscles of the Feet there placed, in which space a thin broad *Ligament* joyns these Bones together, according to their longitude. 'tis joyned also to the Tibia, by a common Ligament, above and beneath.

Beneath, the Head becoming sharp, hath an *Appendix*, which growing thick, begets a process called *malleolus externus* the outer Ankle-bone which is lower then the inner Ankle-bone.

The *Bones of the Foot* are divided as the Bones of the Hand, into three parts: into the *Tarsus*, *Metatarsus*, and the Toes.

The Bones of the *Tarsus* are *seven* though some number only the last four to be in the *Tarsus*, because the three first have no Bones in the hand answering to them.

I. It's cal'd *Astragalos*, in Latine *Talus*, and commonly *Os Balistæ* the Sling-bone, also *quatrio*, because of its four sides.

'Tis placed beneath the shank bones as a Basis or foundation: for it is joyned with the Appendix of the Tibia by way of *Ginglumos*; wherefore they have upon a long Neck, an high, round and smooth Head, covered over with a *Gristle*, in the middle whereof is a smooth *Cavity*: whereupon it comes to have on each side a brim or brow, like a pully or little wheel on which a Rope runs.

At the sides it receives on each hand the Ankle bones: it's also joyned with the *Os naviculare*; also below to the Heel, with a double joynt, where its lower part is uneven, twice hollowed, and thrice bunched. It receives the Head of the Heel-bone.

In the middest of these Joynts a *Cavity* is to be observed (to which the hollow of the Heel answers) wherein is contained fat and a slimy substance, to moisten the gristly Ligaments, which knit the Talus to the Bone, least in their motion they should be dried. Hence I have observed as often as there is scarsity of this moist and fat substance or none at all, either by means of a wound in that place, or any other cause, that there is a noise in a mans Foot when he walks, by the knocking of the two bones one against another, yet without pain, because there is no sensitive part within, but only Bones, Gristles and Ligaments.

II. Is the greatest and thickest in the Foot, as being the chiefest stability thereof (as the Talus is chief for motion) and therefore 'tis joyned by many Ligaments to the Talus or Ankle, and other adjacent Bones.

'Tis called *Pterna calx*, *Calcaneum*, *pedis calcar*, the Spur of the the Foot or Heel-bone, into which the greatest and strongest *Chord* or Tendon in the whole Body is fastned, being made up of the Tendons of three Muscles of the Foot.

Its *lower part* is somwhat broad, where it turns backwards, that the Foot may more firmly be settled and strengthened, otherwise a man would easily fall backwards.

In its upper part, it hath a large head, going into that shallow cavity which receives the knob of the Talus. But it is also joyned to the *Os cubiforme* or Die-fashion'd bone with its flat head.

III. Is called *Os naviculare*, *Scaphoides* from the similitude of a Boat: 'tis knit to the Talus and the three hindermore bones.

IV. From the form of a *Die* or four square solid body called a Cube, is termed *Cubo-ides* cube-fashion'd, also *Os tesseræ*, the Dice-bone, by the Arabians *Grandinosum*, by some others *polimorphon*, many-shap'd or many-fac'd. Being greater then the rest, 'tis *placed before* the Heel, *joyned* by an uneven Surface; with its other side 'tis joyned to the fourth and fift bone of the *Pedium*; but within, to the seventh bone of the Tarsus.

The other three, anciently without names, cal'd by *Fallopius Calcoidea*, *Cuneiformia*, wedg-fashion'd, are articulated to the *Naviculare* or Boat-fashion'd-bone: and they are a greater or middlesiz'd, and a lesser from a broad Basis growing by little and little smaller and smaller.

The *Bones of the Metatarsus* or Sole, are *five* knit to the Bones of the Tarsus; *those of the Toes* are *fourteen*; because the great Toe is made up only of two Bones, and the Interjunctures are shorter than in the Hand, but those of the great Toe, thicker than in the hand.

The others are like the Bones in the Hand which answer to them, as the Ligaments also commonly answer.

But under the sole of the Foot, the Skin and Fat being removed, there is a *Ligament* broad and strong; and from the lowest Bone of the Heel *Sesamoidean* little bones are inserted into all the ranks of Toes, for the greater firmness of the whol Foot.

# Chap. XXII. & last.
## *Of the Sesamoidean Bones.*

IN the Interjunctures of the Hands and Feet are found certain very little Bones called *Sesaminis* or SESAMOIDEA because they answer in likeness to Sesamus Seeds and also in their smallness.

*Their shape.* They are *round* and a little flat.

*Magnitude.* They are less in the Feet then in the Hands, excepting in the great Toe, because it is greater than the Thumb is. In ancient persons they are greater and a little plane.

*Situation.* They *grow* to the Tendons of the Muscles which move the Toes, under which they lie concealed, wrapt up in the *Ligaments*, so that they come away with them in the cleansing of the Bones unless great Care be used.

Somtimes they are gristly, as in Children, In which they are not very conspicuous; otherwhiles bony, covered with Gristles, and inwardly Spungie and porous.

They are commonly twelve in number in each Foot and Hand, but somtimes sixteen, nineteen, twenty and more: somtimes there are only ten. They are more in number, greater and harder, in the inside of the hand then without, in which *Riolanus* saies there are none. Their number therefore is uncertain: for many are so small that they are not observed: and Nature herein as in a matter of small moment, somtimes abounds, and sometimes again comes short.

But *those two* are chiefly remarkable for their greatness which are joyned to the first Joynt of the great Toe, at the Head of the Bone Metatarsus; one which is the greater, placed under the Nervous part of that Muscle, which bends the first Bone of the great Toe. and the form and size therof, is like the half of a great Pease the white skin being taken off: which little bone is by the Arabians called *Albidara*. Some Ancient Philosophers held that a Man should grow up again at length from this Bone, as from a Seed, which *Corn. Agrippa* from the tradition of the Hebrews calls *Luz*. But another much less, is placed under the second Joynt of the great Toe.

And though most commonly these same very small bones are found in the Interjunctures of the Fingers and Toes, yet are they to be seen also in other places.

As somtimes in the outside of the Hand, where the eighth Bone of the Wrist is fastened to the Bone of the Metatarsus which sustains the little Finger, there is one which fils an hollow place there: and after the same manner here is the like Bone in the Tarsus of the Foot, at the outside of the articulation of the fift Bone of the Metacarpus which sustains the little Toe, with the *Os cubiforme*, or Die-fashion'd bone: also two little bones in the Ham by the *Os femoris*, which grow not in the Tendons, but in the Beginnings, of the two first Feet-moving Muscles, which are found in old men and in dry Creatures, as Deer, Dogs and Hares. Hereunto they refer that bony part in aged people, which is placed against the

Their *Uſe is.*

I. To defend the Tendons, and by their hardneſs to retain them in their motion, leaſt they ſhould fall from the Joynt when it bunches out.

II. To ſtrengthen the Joynt and preſerve it from Luxation.

III To fill up empty ſpaces. And while theſe things are performed by the ſaid little Bones, the Hands do thereby lay firmer and ſafer hold upon any things and the Feet can ſtand and go more ſteadily, eſpecially on rough ground.

*To God our Creator* be Praiſe, Honour and Glory who hath form'd and faſhion'd us ſo wonderfully.

*FINIS.*

# TWO EPISTLES OF Johannes Walæus Concerning the Motion of the Chyle And the BLOOD. TO Thomas Bartholinus The Son of CASPAR BARTHOLINUS. *The ſixt Edition.*

## THE FIRST EPISTLE Concerning the Motion of the Chyle and Blood. TO *Thomas Bartholinus* the Son of *Caſpar.*

*To* PARIS.

THE chief men in Church and Commonwealth have in all Ages contended about Primacie: but learned Men have in no Age more ambitiouſly ſtriven who ſhould ſeem moſt learned, then at this preſent time. And to attain their deſire very many are not afraid to aſſiſt themſelves by Calumnies and other worſe Arts. No man can publiſh in Print or communicate to his Friend any writing, which ſome account excellent, but he preſently meets with a Detracter who will prick out and tear him moſt cruelly. Now for a man to ſeek nothing elſe by his Cares and Labours, but Envie and vexation of Mind, is extream madneſs.

These

These Causes have (I confess) hindred me from satisfying your frequent Request; and besides, because I am not willing to determine of those things, which long experience of years cannot either prove, or sufficiently limit. Howbeit you continue your Request, and I am much ashamed, alwaies to deny you. Also a certain learned Man, hath imposed a necessity upon me, in a manner, to discover to others my opinion concerning the Motion of the Blood. For certain Theses having been disputed concerning the the Motion of the Blood, my self being President of the Dispute; though the Defendent truly professeth in his said Theses, that they are his own, yet he hath undertaken to tax and blame them, as if they were mine. And although that young man need not be ashamed of those Theses: yet I would not have another mans Theses, though disputed when I was President, to be accounted mine. Neither can he be ignorant of the Reason, who is acquainted with my Liberty in Disputing, or the Custome of our University

*The occasion of this writing.*

Now therfore take my Opinion of the Motion of the Blood, as follows.

That same hot Blood which leaps out of the great Arteries being opened, is thinner, more rare and of a more bright colour, then that which flows out of the Veins when they are opened: yet, I will not therefore say, that the Arterial Blood differs formally from the venal Blood: for the Arterial Blood may differ as aforesaid from the Venal, because it comes reaking hot as it were from the fire, and abounds with greater store of Spirits, as we see boyling Milk differs from it self being cooled, for the same reason: for that Blood which is in the smaller Arteries, and so farther from the Heart, is observed to differ less from the venal Blood. And when we have taken Blood out of the greater Arteries, yea out of the Heart it self of a living Creature, and from the same Creature, have taken some out of the Veins, and have let them both grow cold and congeal, we could never observe any difference betwixt them. So that we can see no other, but that the Arterial Blood is of the same kind with the Venal.

*What Blood it is which is moved?*

Some few wil have, that the venal Blood is of two kinds, one which is contained in the *Vena cava*, another in the *Vena portæ*. But we cannot see any difference of these Bloods either when they are included in their vessels, or when they are let out: and that Reason doth teach as much we shall see anon.

Besides these, we may likewise conceive another sort of Blood, which being made of Chyle in the Liver, hath not received any further perfection in the Heart. And we are little concerned to know the Nature thereof, because we see it continues such but a very little while. So that we are to enquire into the motion of *only one sort of Blood.*

*That is is only one kind of blood.*

Now the Blood may be *moved* either in *that part of the Vein* or *Artery wherein it is contained*, or *out of that part into another.*

In *one part of a Vein or Artery*, the Blood is not discerned to move up and down, like boyling water, neither when it is received into a Vessel, nor when let out of a living and hot Body; nor yet in the Artery it self, if it being on either hand tied, shall be opened in the upper part betwixt the two Ligatures. Yea, when we have many times cut off the point of a living Heart, and set it upright, we have found the Blood to be hot, but never to boyl.

*It is not moved up and down in the Vessels like boyled water.*

But that the Blood is moved *from one part of an Artery or Vein into another*, is a thing very manifest. For Blood is contained in the Veins of the farthest parts of the Body, which seeing it is not bred there, it must needs come from some other place. And it is evident enough, that in living Creatures, the Blood flows out of the *Vena cava* into the Heart and out of the Heart into the *Aorta.*

*But it is moved out of one part into another.*

But that this same *whole Motion of the Blood* may be by us the better understood, I conceive our best way wil be to begin *at the very Fountain*, and Original thereof.

*Which motion perfectly to understand, the motion of the Chylus must be sought into.*

I have often seen solid *Meat* in Dogs hold the same order in the Stomach, just as is was eaten by the Beasts; unless the Stomach being distended with too much Drink, did make the Meat to float, and so to change its order and situation.

The Meat which the Stomach receives, although it be but two ounces, it evidently imbraces the same round about; just as we see folded purses contract themselves about a Bullet or round Ball within them. also the upper and lower Orifice are both shut: which by making an hole near the same, and putting in your little Finger, it is easie to try. But the lower orifice notwithstanding, when we find it perfectly shut, seems rather to be fallen together, then straitly closed, that upon the smallest pressure it may let the Chylus pass by. Also many times when the Stomach and its orifices are weak, they fail in their natural closeness, and upon searching are found looser.

*That meat which is first eaten hath the first place in the Stomach.*

*The Stomach closely embraces the same.*

The Meat retained in the Stomach, as thoroughly moistened with the Liquor of our food, Drink and Spittle: and it quickly becomes porous and Spungie: because as is most likely the said Liquor hath drawn out and sucked into it self some of the substance of the Meat.

*It is moistned with the moisture of the Stomach.*

A while after it is cut and torn as it were into very small particles, both that of thin and that of gross Substance, yea in Dogs the very shells themselves of Eggs: which doth questionless proceed from some acid sharp humor that hath in it a dissolving power. So we find by experience that the Stomach burthened with the quantity or grossness of meat, doth find it self eased, by taking a little vinegar, Juyce of Citrons, Oyl of Sulphur or Vitriol. Nor let any man assign the Cause thereof to Spittle or Choler belching back into the Stomach, when he shall see Bread steeped some hours in hot Spittle or the Gall of an Ox, by them not dissolved. moreover in an hundred Dogs and more which I have cut up on purpose alive, I found Choler flowed back into the Stomachs of only two of them, one of which had eaten nothing for three daies, and in his stomach, which was wonderful to behold, there was a cholerick froath so thick and full of bubbles, as that we see on the Suds of such as wash in Lye.

*It is cut and minced by an acid humor.*

Now I conceive this acid humor comes from the Spleen into the Stomach, because there is no other part in the body which we can perceive to be sharp or acid: and because upon swallowing a bit of boyled Spleen especially of a Sow, heaviness of the Stomach proceeding from the Quantity or grossness of Meats, is thereby holpen.

*Which comes from the Spleen.*

Thus the Meat being mixed in its smallest particles with the Liquour, in tract of time by concoction it comes to the consistence of thin Barly-cream: which when it hath attained, then at last it is thrust into the Guts.

*Afterward it is changed into Cream.*

Howbeit all Meat doth not receive this change in the Stomach in the same space

*Some sooner, some later.*

ſpace of time; it is ſooner performed in the day time, with a little meat thin of Subſtance and well chewed; it requires a longer ſpace in the night, when there is more of it, the meat is groſs, and ſwallowed down in great Bits; ſo that the meat which is well grinded with the Teeth, begins to be turned into Cream, when that continues yet ſolid, which was ſwallowed down in great Bits.

*How ſoon or late it is concocted and diſtributed.*

Milk and Broaths in the day time are perfectly digeſted in an hours ſpace or ſooner, and if ſomwhat elſe hinder not, they then alſo diſtributed; which the voiding of Urin alone, after them, doth evidently ſhew, without any Diſſection: Herbs are more ſlowly changed. Bread in reſpect of Digeſtion ſeems to be of a midling Subſtance, we find in the firſt hour and half very little changed in the following hour it is rare and light, juſt like a wet Spunge, when that hour is paſt, it is divided into very ſmall particles, and mixt ſo with the Drink, that all appears liquid, and ſoon after it is moſt of all digeſted, and at laſt as much of the Bread as is digeſted, between the fourth and fift hour after its eating, is by the Stomach forced through the Pylorus, into the Guts. But ſome of the ſaid Bread ſtaies behind, which by little and little is perfectly digeſted, as alſo if any other meat were eaten with the Bread of harder digeſtion than it: which meats I have obſerved to be digeſted in this order. Firſt Beans and Peaſe, then Fiſh, then Fleſh which is perfectly digeſted and thruſt out of the Stomach between the ſixt and ſeventh hour: Beef between the ſeventh and eighth: yea and the membranous parts of Animals are longer in digeſtion, as alſo the ſhells of Egs; I have ſeen Bones that have abode in the Stomach unto the third day, during which ſpace they were become like Griſtles.

*All at once or by piecemeal.*

Yea and in the parts of theſe very meats, oft times great variety is ſeen, as of Bread and Fleſh, though they ſeem whole in the Stomach, yet ſome portion though very little, is diſtributed ſomtimes the firſt hour, unto the Milkie Veins.

So that whatever is digeſted, doth not at all expect the digeſtion of the reſt, nor is ſtaied by that which is undigeſted, but preſently ſlips out, and is carried into the Guts: yea and you ſhall ſeldom find a Dogs Stomach empty, although he have not eaten in ſixteen hours before.

Now I could eaſily make all theſe Obſervations in Dogs, which I cut up alive, at ſeveral diſtances after they had eaten their Meat.

*Being digeſted it is diſtributed into the Guts and milkie Veins.*

In the Guts the *Chyle* is of an Aſh-colour, and is ſeldom coloured by the yellowneſs of Choler: and preſently now from the Duodenum it begins to enter the milkie veins of *Aſellius*, nor doth this entrance ceaſe in any of the Guts as long as any Chyle remains in the ſaid Guts, ſo that the *Inteſtinum rectum* or Arſe-gut it ſelf, is endued with milkey veins, which are many times ſeen to look white by the afflux of Chyle. And that we may not think that ſame milkie juyce comes elſewhere then from the Guts, I have bound theſe milkie veins inſerted into the Body of the Guts, and obſerved that from the Cavity of the Guts to the Ligature they are evidently full and ſwoln, but from the Ligature towards the Meſentery they wax empty and fall in.

*See the Figure of the milkie Veins,* page 563.

*Not through the Meſaraick veins.*

But the Chyle hath never been obſerved to enter into any Vein in the body of the Stomach, nor any meſaraick Vein, nor yet the Blood being by the binding of *Vena portæ* (whereof the reaſon ſhal hereafter appear) exceedingly augmented in the meſaraick Veins, hath ever been ſeen to enter into the milkie veins. So that I cannot ſee otherwiſe, but that Nature hath ordained the milkie veins only to carry Chyle, and the Stomach and meſaraick Veins only to carry Blood.

*Alwaies white.*

The Chyle in the milkie Veins is allwaies though it proceed from Aſh-colourd Chyle in the Guts or ſuch as is dyed yellow by Choler.

*By one continued paſſage of the milkie veins*

By theſe Milkie Veins the Chyle goes upwards, after what manner, is not very eaſie to ſay. This ſeems to me moſt probable, which I obſerved in great and lean Greyhounds; that ſome of the milkie veins do go right on, to the *Ramus meſentericus*, ſome into the *Vena portæ* it ſelf, others into the hollow parts of the Liver, and very few do ſomtimes end in the *Vena cava*, near the Emulgents. For theſe Animals have not that ſingle kernel in the Beginning of the Meſentery, which *Aſellius* hath termed Pancreas, and which is wont to obſcure the paſſage of theſe Veins; but they are furniſhed in that place with ſmaller kernels, for the moſt part five in number, which being diſtant by a manifeſt ſpace one from another, through that ſpace they afford free paſſage to ſome milkie Veins. But ſeeing that above theſe kernels, there are fewer branches of the milkie veins (and ſome of them greater) than beneath; I am apt to believe, that neer thoſe kernels, the milkie Veins are divided into branches, and that the ſaid kernels ſerve, as elſewhere in the body, to accomodate the divarication or branching of Veſſels.

*Not to the Spleen.*

Somtimes alſo I have been ſhewed milky Veins, which entred into the Liver, but when in the preſence of the Shewers, I accurately examin'd the matter, we found them to be Nerves.

*But to the Liver.*

The Chyle being carryed through theſe milky Veins is mixed with the Blood in the Ramus meſentericus, in the Vena portæ, and in the very *Liver* alſo it ſelf: for in what place ſoever you tie the milky Veins, they alwaies ſwel, becauſe they are hindred from paſſing the Chyle to theſe parts, and the Ligature being looſed, they manifeſtly infuſe the ſame into thoſe parts.

The Branches of the Vena portæ in the Liver although in ſundry places they are knit to the branches of Vena Cava, yet are they never opened into a great branch of *Vena cava*, but the ſmalleſt branches of *Vena portæ* do transfuſe this Chyle mixt with Blood into the ſmalleſt branches of the *Vena cava*; as is eaſie to obſerve in the Liver blown up when the Fleſh is taken off, and it ſwims in water. And that the ſame happens to the reſt of the Chyle mingled with the Blood, will be hereafter manifeſt. Out of the little branches of the Vena cava in the Liver, the Blood is in the Judgment of all men poured into the Vena cava: and when in live Anatomies it is tied above the Liver, it manifeſtly ſwels with Blood flowing in.

*Out of the Liver into the Vena Cava.*

*Out of the Vena cava into the Heart.*

Out of the *Vena cava* it enters into *the right Ventricle of the Heart*, and either part of the *Vena cava* being tied, either that which is ſeated above, Or that which is below the Heart, I have many times obſerved, eſpecially in an Eel, that it is quickly emptied towards the Heart which alſo *Harvey* hath obſeerved chap. 10. of his Book.

*Out of the right Ventricle of the Heart into Vena arteriosa.*

Out of the right Ventricle of the Heart, it enters manifeſtly enough into the *Vena arteriosa*, and by it into the Lungs.

But I dare not ſay that any of the Blood paſſeth out

of

of the right Ventricle of the Heart, by the partition wall, into the left Ventricle thereof, seeing I find open passages elsewhere, but none in this place.

*But not through the Septum intermedium or partition of the Heart*

*Petrus Gassendus* a General Scholar and of a candid Spirit, in his Exercitations upon *Fluds* Philosophy part 3. chap. 17. relates how he had seen *Payanus* shew the Partition wall of the Heart to be transpassable, by sundry crooked and turning passages: and that they might be found out, if putting a Probe gently into one of the pits, you shall most leasurely thrust it upwards and downwards and to one side, and still seek a further passage till you meet with the end thereof. And the truth is I have divers times found it to succeed as he saies; but I have withall observed, that those waies and turning passages, were not at all made by Nature, but by the Probe or point of a Penknife, while we open a way already made, and seek one farther: for the Flesh of the Heart is so tender and withall so consistent, that with the smallest touch of any thing that can bore, it is presently broken, and leaves a Cavity; so that we may also after this manner, find passages through the sides of the Heart.

*Out of the Vena arteriosa into the Arteria venosa and the left Ventricle of the Heart.*

That the Blood being entred by the *Vena arteriosa* into the Lungs, doth return through the *Arteria Venosa* unto the *Left* Ventricle of the Heart, I do hereby collect, in that having bound the greater branch of the *Arteria Venosa* (in a live Anatomy) neer the Pericardium or Heart-bag, we have seen it grow hard and swell towards the circumference of the Lungs, that part being emptied and falling in which looks towards the Heart, and when the Ligature was loosed, we saw the Blood move to the left Ventricle of the Heart: and this is very easily observed in Rabbits. Now this Blood, because it can come from no other place, must needs come from the *Vena arteriosa* hither.

*Leonardus Botallus* a most learned Man, at the end of his Book *de Catarrho*, supposeth he hath found another way, by which the Blood may continually goe, out of the right, into the left Ventricle of the Heart. *A little above the Coronal Artery* (saith he) *I found a passage visible enough, near the right Earlet, which goes immediately and right forth into the left Earlet*

*But not through the foramen ovale.*

This passage unless it be the progress of the *Vena Cava* to the *Vena arteriosa*, which we call *Foramen ovale*, or another passage which I have sometimes found in a Sheeps Heart, as big as a Wheat straw, going with a crooked passage from one Earlet to another; unless, I say, it were one of these, I know not what for a passage it was.

And as for that *Ovale foramen Egg-fashion'd-hole*, it is not every where alike shut up, and oftentimes there is a very thin and transparent little Membrane growing in the middle thereof, which with the smallest touch of a Probe is easily broken, but it is very seldom upon any occasion found open, in grown persons. And the Blood flowing through the *Arteria Venosa* out of the Lungs, doth fasten the Membrane placed before that hole, so that even when it doth not grow to, hardly any thing can pass that way.

But that same oblique passage which I have seen in a Sheeps heart, doth many times pierce deep into the substance of the Earlet, but is very seldom carried into the other Earlet. And I conceive it was given the Earlet for its Nutrition, it not being wont to receive branches from the *Coronaria*.

Now from such things as seldom happen, we cannot conclude any thing touching those things that constantly come to pass: for Nature frequently sports her self in the Fabrick of the Heart. So in the *Septum Intermedium* or partition wall of an Oxes Heart, in the upper part according to the length of the Heart, sometimes I have found a Cavity, opening at the left Ventricle, about the point, which was as long and large as a mans Fore-finger. The like whereunto possibly *Aristotle* saw, when in his 3. *de partibus* Chap. 4. he saith the greater sort of Animals have three Ventricles in their Heart. For the greatest Animals that are, have but two Ventricles, as I observed in the Dissection of a young Whale.

So that the Blood cannot be thought to go ordinarily any other way, then through the Lungs into the left Ventricle of the Heart.

*And thence into the Heart, the Arteria aorta, and the rest of small Arteries.*

The Blood being thus caried into the left Ventricle of the Heart, goes from thence to the *Arteria aorta*, the middle and smallest Arteries: for they being bound in living Anatomies, do wonderfully swell towards the Heart, and towards the extream parts they fall in, and the Ligature being loosed, they evidently send the Blood to the remoter parts of the Body.

*Out of the Arteries the Blood by common mouths.*

The Blood out of the smaller Arteries may enter into the Veins; for the Arteries have a way open into the Veins, by the common mouths of one opened into another. And to the intent we might be sure that Blood may pass by those mouths, we have freed the Vein and Artery in the Foot of a dead Dog, from such things as are wont to hinder their being seen, and we emptied the greater crural Vein, and bound it in the flank, least any Blood might flow in that way, and in the Knee we bound both this Vein and its neighbouring Artery: and then with our fingers we forced the Blood in the Iliack Arteries, as far as to the Knee, and so we emptied the crural Artery, but the crural Vein we saw manifestly replenished; and seeing into the Vein tied above and beneath nothing could come or a very little out of its branches and yet it was much filled, and the Artery quite emptied; we did gather that the Blood wherewith the Vein was filled, was driven by the little mouths out of the emptied Arteries, into the said Vein.

*Known to the Ancients.*

And that this Opinion is not new *Galen* himself shews in his 5. chap. *de Usu pulsus*. *The Conjunctions of the mouths of the Veins and Arteries are not visible to our Eyes: and if you shall justly refuse to believe them as not credible enough, you may be brought by other reasons delivered by the Ancients to believe there are such things: and not a little by this plain token, that in case a Man shall take any of those Creatures in whom the Veins and Arteries are manifest, as an Ox, an Hog, an Ass, an Horse, a Sheep, a Bear, a Libard, an Ape, or a Man himself, and open many large Arteries in the said Creature, he may draw all the Blood in its Body out through the said Arteries. I have divers times experimented the same, and finding always that the Veins are emptied with the Arteries, I did perswade my self that the Opinion was true concerning the common mouths of the Veins and Arteries, and of the common passage of the Blood from one to another.* Yea it is a received and common opinion, that the Arterial blood doth naturally enter into the smallest Veins, to the end that the part might be nourished with arterial and venal Blood.

*Goes into the Veins.*

And that indeed and in truth the Blood doth naturally pass in living Creatures, out of the *Arteries* into the *Veins* by those little mouths, these signs do clearly witness.

*As the store of Blood sent into the parts doth shew.*

He that in living Dissections shall consider that Quantity of Blood, which by the Arteries is conveighed to the parts and Veins, can hardly perswade himself to think, that it is all consumed in nourishing the parts: especially if he shall consider that the Arterial Blood is thick enough, and not a fourth part thinner than the Venal blood, as I have often observed, when I have suffered both of them to grow cold and congeal, whence

we may justly conclude with *Harvey*, that the Blood which is communicated from the Arteries to the Veins and Parts, does a great part of it, return back again to the large Veins.

*The pressing a Vein below the orifice in Blood-letting.*

Moreover, when we open a vein in a bound Arm, if you press that part of the swelling Vein with your Thumb which is neer the orifice, betwixt it and the Hand, or if you make such a ligature as the former betwixt the Hand and the Orifice, you shall see that no blood will come forth; whence it seems to follow, that the blood comes from the Hand, which flows from the orifice. And seeing some pounds of Blood are drawn away by such a Blood-letting, and so much cannot be contained in the lower part of the Veins of the Arm, it shall needs come thither from the Arteries, which are not stopped by that Ligature above the orifice, as their Pulse remaining entire doth testifie.

*The Ligature of a vein in living Anatomies.*

But that we might see the same with our Eyes, we have divers times in great living Dogs, freed the large Vein and Artery in the groyn, from such things as did hinder their sight; which may be easily done if they lie not beneath the Muscles: and we bound the said vein with a thred, and we observed that part of the Vein which looked towards the *Vena cava* to empty and fall in, and the other part towards the Foot exceedingly to swel, so that in regard of its fullness, it seemed harder than the Artery it self; but the ligature being loosed, the Blood presently moved upwards, and the fullness and hardness of the Vein was very much abated. And the Artery being bound, that part thereof did wonderfully swell, which was neareſt *Aorta*, and the other part more remote did fall in through emptiness: nor did the Vein then bound evidently swell. And this we did many times and the effect was still the same.

*Dissection of a Vein in living Creatures.*

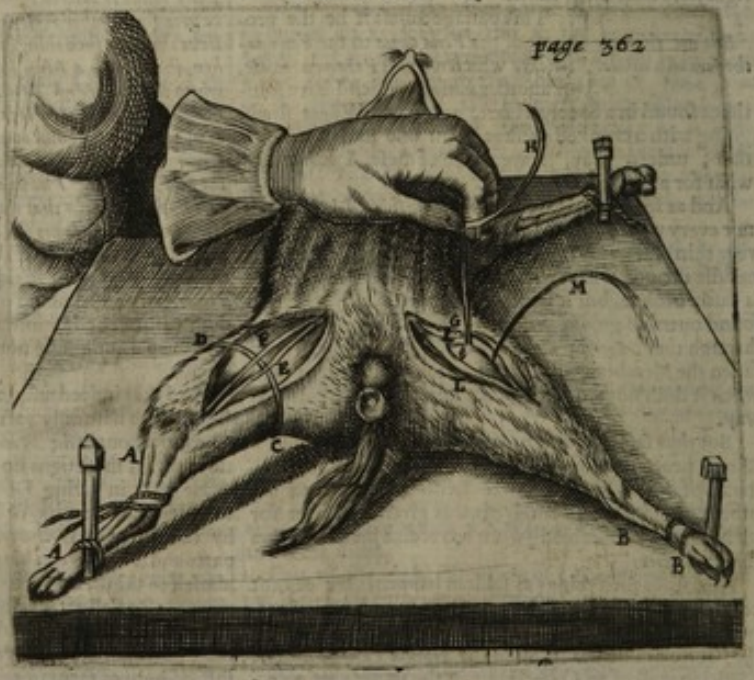
And that we might have no scruple remaining, and might observe withall, what was done within in the Vein, we did lift up the Vein and Artery being thus made bare, and under them we firmly bound the Thigh it self, that the Blood might not move upwards or downwards, by any other Vein save that which we had lift up. Then the Vein being held up, and also shut with a Thred, as is expressed in this Figure, we opened it above and below the Thred with a small orifice. Now immediately from that part of the Vein which was farthest from the Heart, the Blood flew out violently plentifully, and in a full stream. but that part of the Vein which was on the other side of the thred towards the Heart, did only drop out a few drops. whence it seemed to us to be a cleer case, that the Blood did not come downwards from the greater Vessels, but upwards out of the smaller Vessels into the greater. Especially when having made another Ligature upon the same Vein further from the Heart, betwixt the foresaid Orifice and the Foot of the Beast, we saw no blood at all come from that Orifice, whence before it issued with such violence For we conceived those drops which fell from the Orifice neer the Heart, might proceed from Blood which possibly was in the Vein when it was opened, or which it might continually receive from some small Branch of the crural Vein situate above the thred; but this cause will anon appear more evidently.

*The emptying of the Veins appearing in the Skin.*

It is easie to make this experiment without any opening of a Vein in such persons as have the Veins of their Arms very Conspicuous: In whom if you stop the Vein near the Hand with one Finger, and with your other hand force the blood upwards, and the whole Vein will appear empty: which will soon after be filled, when you take away your lower Finger, but not if you take only your upper; as *Harvey* also observed in the 13. Chapter of his Book. For the upper Blood goes into the greater Veins, and the Valve hinders it from descending, which will hardly let any thing pass by, unless the vein be so far widened, that a great space remain between it and the Valves.

Seeing therefore the Blood comes out of the Hands and Feet, and they do not breed new Blood, so as to supply the whole Body therewith, we doubt not but that the Blood in those parts continually and naturally goes into the Veins, *and out of the lesser Veins into the greater.*

## TABLE I.




## The Explication of the FIGURE.

A. *The right Leg of the Dog.*
B. *The left Leg of the Dog.*
CD. *The Ligature made under the Vein and Artery, which fast binds the Thigh, expressed in the right Thigh, least the confusion of the lines might disturb the Spectator in the left Thigh.*
E. *The Crural Artery.*
F. *The Crural Vein.*
G. *The String wherewith the Vein is tied and born up.*
H. *The Needle through which the thred goes.*
I. *The upper part of the Vein which flags upon the binding.*
K. *The lower part of the Vein swelling after the Ligature.*
L. *The drops of Blood which fall leisurely from the orifice in the upper part of the Vein.*
M. *The stream of Blood continually spinning out of the lower part of the Vein wounded.*

Nor

Nor do I fear that the Arterial Blood cannot be contained in the single coat of a Vein, which I see contained in the smallest little Arteries, and in an Aneurisma, where the Artery hath but one coat. And whereas the Arteries neer the Heart have a double Coat, that might be so contrived, least by violence of the Blood issuing out of the Heart, the Artery might be loosned; as we see it loosened by a strong palpitation of the Heart.

*But the Blood doth not come out of the greater Veins into the lesser.*

But doth not the Blood flow as out of the Arteries, so out of the greatest Veins into the lesser? This that kind of Blood-letting seems to argue, which is ordained for Revulsion sake: for the Vein of the Arm being opened in a Pleurisie, that Blood seems to be revelled or drawn back, which flowed out of the *Vena cava* into the *Azygos*, and out of the *Azygos* into the *Pleura*. But there is no token that the blood is so revelled; for the Basilica Vein being opened the blood may be drawn out of the Arteries of the Arm; the Arteries of the Arm draw out of the axillary Artery, the Axillaris out of the Aorta, by whose intercostal branches it had flowed into the Thigh, and not by the twigs of *Azygos*, as we shall see by and by. And doubtless, except in the Pleurisie, the blood should be revelled through the Arteries, there were no reason to be given why we should for Revulsions sake rather open the Vein of the side affected, then that on the right side alwaies; since the *Azygos* arises from the right side of the *Vena cava*, and that a Vein to be opened for Derivation is to be opened on that side through which the blood flows into the part affected.

*Revulsory Blood-letting doth not argue it.*

*Nor the Arms falling away occasioned by a Ligature.*

But what shal we say? Doth not the Arm after a sort grow lean and fall away (and so other parts) when it is bound, as in those who have it hollowed in a Fistula? because the Vein being bound, the blood cannot descend as it ought, unto the lower parts of the Arm? There is no necessity that it should be so. For all that may happen because the Artery is bound. And really, this is an Argument that it is so, in that many times that Arm in which there is an Issue, is perceived to pulse less and more faintly than the other; the influx of the blood and spirits, being in some measure hindred, by the the binding of the Issue. Yet some part may peradventure fall away by binding of a Vein alone; because Nature cannot plentifully infuse new blood through the Artery, seeing it cannot freely go back by the Veins. And though the Veins and Arteries do then contain store of Blood, yet is it peradventure not very fit to nourish the parts as they should be, but this wil better appear hereafter.

*Nor the Varices.*

It is nevertheless manifest, that in such as have the *Varices* so called, the blood descends from the *Vena cava* to the greater, and out of the greater into the lesser Veins. For that is easie to see in a Varix of the Thigh and Foot, and in the Hæmorrhoids. But that motion of Blood may happen besides Nature, because the Veins being weakned do not send the Blood upwards, but gather the same; and because the humors by that weight, do resist the Natural motion upwards, and descend, and therefore being collected in great Quantity in the lower Veins, new Blood still coming out of the Arteries; they cause their dilatation and consequently a Varix. Thus artificial Fountains about those places from which they ascend, are most frequently observed to make clefts, being at last drawn asunder and torn by the Heavines of the Water, which ought nevertheless according to the Nature of Fountains to ascend upwards. And it is altogether most likely that Varices are caused after this manner: because humors in such as have Varices, do not inlarge the Vein, when they are violently moved in exercise, but when they have rested after exercise; because the humors can resist a smaller motion and descend by their own weight.

*But it flows out of the smaller vessels into the Vena cava.*

So that these are not tokens, that the Blood goes out of the greater Veins into the lesser, but they argue rather that the Blood goes out of the Arteries into the Veins, and out of the lesser Veins into the greater, and the *Vena cava* it self.

*Out of the Vena cava to the Heart again.*

We said before that the Blood goes out of the *Vena cava* into the right ventricle of the Heart. But what! Doth that very self same Blood, which *a little before had come out of the* Vena cava *into the Heart*, and out of the Heart was shed into the Arteries, and from thence had returned into the Veins, doth *that* enter again into the Heart? or doth that alone which being newly bred in the Liver doth the first time enter into the *Vena cava*, and hath never yet past through the Heart? Truly both.

*Yea that Blood which hath already past the Heart.*

For that may easily be done, seeing both are alike near to the Heart: and it ought to be done; seeing that which is returned out of the Arteries into the Cava, is more plentifull than that, which is all of it consumed in the nourishment of the *Vena cava*, and that is not carried to the lesser Veins. Doubtless it is a sign that this is so, in that a Vein being tied near the Heart, is not only a little but very much emptied, and sends all the Blood it hath, and not only some to the Heart.

*Because the Meat affords not so much Blood as the Heart passeth through.*

Also the Heart seems to shed more Blood into the *Arteria aörta*, then the Liver can supply it withall, at least not in some daies fasting. For I have divers times experimented that in many persons the Heart pulses above three thousand times in an hour. And the Heart as long as it hath any vigour left, expels somwhat at every pulsation: for the *Arteria aorta* being bound near the Heart, between the Heart and the Ligature, I opened the said Artery, and I saw some Blood come out at every pulse; till the Heart grew quite to languish. for then somwhat came away after three or four pulses only: because so little was thrust from the Heart, that it could not be moved upwards till some quantity of it was collected, nor pass out at the upper orifice of the Artery.

Also I cut off the tip of an Heart and setting the same upright, I observed though the Ventricles were not full, at every pulse somwhat was shed forth; which also *Harvey* notes in his 2. Chapter. Yea and when the Heart is cut through the middle, there ceased not to come somwhat out, till either the Beast died, or the Blood congealed so in the upper part, as to make a kind of small Skin, so that the Blood could flow no more that way. And certainly somwhat must needs come out of the Heart at every pulse, because there in the Heart is alwaies made more strait, as shall afterward appear.

*Viz. about half an ounce at every pulse.*

Now, how much comes from the Heart at every pulse, we cannot determine. this I can witness, that out of the Heart of a Rabbit there hath come at every pulse half a dram of blood, and out of the Heart of a great Water-spaniel half an ounce: yet I conceive more comes out, when a live Creature is Dissected, than when it is in health. And if a man would determine by conjecture from what we have seen, how much may come out of the Heart of a Man in health at every pulse, I shall not be against them who say that out of the Heart of a Man at every pulse half an ounce of Blood is shed into the *Arteria aorta*.

Butlet us suppose it is but a scruple; seeing the Heart makes above three thousand pulses in one hour, there must above ten pound of blood pass every hour through the

the Heart, which is more than we eat, and more than the Liver can supply the Heart withall.

*So that the Blood moves circularly.*

So that must needs be, that the Blood which hath once past the Heart, must flow thither again, and from it return again into the Arteries. So that there is a *circular motion of the Blood*, from the *Vena cava* into the Heart, from the Heart into the Arteries, from the Arteries into the Veins, out of which it returns again into the Heart, and thence into the Arteries.

*Which motion of the Blood was not unknown to the Ancients.*

Truly, I cannot sufficiently wonder, that in so many Ages past, this motion of the Blood hath been unknown, seeing I find sundry, and those no small intimations thereof in the ancient Writers.

In the Volume of the Works of *Hippocrates*, The Author of the first Book *de Victus ratione*, attributes three circular motions to our Heat and Humors, whereby they are moved inward and outward from divers parts.

To Hippocrates in Foetius Edition pag. 344.

*Hippocrates* in the middle of his Book *de Ossium Natura*, *The Veins* (under which he comprehends the Arteries) *being spred* saith he, *through the Body, do cause a flexion and motion, sending many branches from one. And this one, whence it hath its original and where it ends I cannot find. For it keeps in a circular course, so that you can find no beginning.* and it will appear plainly to him that examins the place, that he understands this Circle to be chiefly in the distribution of the Humors.

pag. 277.

As also in the End of his Book *de Natura humana. The great Veins do mutually afford nourishment one to another the internal to the external, and then again to the internal.*

pag. 229.

And more plainly the Author of the Book *de alimento. There is one beginning of all that nourish, and one end of all, and the same is the beginning and the End*: and therefore a little after he subjoyns these words: *The Aliment comes into the Hair and Nails, and from the inner parts into the outer Surface; from the external parts the nourishment comes from the outer surface to the most inward parts: there is one conflux, one conspiration and one consent of all.*

To *Diogines Apolloniata.*

And *Diogenes Apolloniata* seems not to have differed from this Opinion, in *Aristotle* his 3. *de Historia Animalium* chap. 2. *The most thick Blood is sucks by the fleshy parts, and that which redounds into these places viz.* the greater Veins, *becomes thin, hot, and frothy.*

## The FIGURE Explained.

AAAA. *The Abdomen or Paunch of a Dog opened.*
BB. *The Midriff.*
CCCC. *The Gall turned inside out, towards the Chest, that the inner parts thereof might be more visible.*
DDD. *Three lobes or laps of the Liver turned a little to the right hand.*
EEE. *Certain little portions of the Pancreas which is cut off, that the following Vessels might come into sight.*
F. *The left Kidney covered with its Coat.*
G. *The upper hollow part of the Spleen, together with the adjacent Fat.*
H. *The middle part of the Spleen, about which Vessels are inserted.*
I. *The lowest part of the Spleen.*
KKKK. *The Guts moved downwards, that the following Vessels might be visible.*
LLLL. *The Mesentery.*
MM. *The splenick Artery.*
N. *Part of the Vena splenica annexed to the Trunk of Vena portæ, which falls in, upon the Ligature.*
OOO. *A portion of the Vena splenica and three branches arising therefrom, which are implanted into the spleen, and do very much swell upon the Ligature.*
PP. *The left Mesenterick Artery.*
Q. *A portion of the Vena Mesenterica sinistra, next to the Trunk of Vena portæ, falling in as empty, upon the Ligature.*
R. *The lower part of the Vena Mesenterica sinistra, ready to be divided into branches, swelling by means of the Ligature.*
SSS. *The Mesaraick Veins, therefore more full and swollen, because the Mesenterick Vein is tied.*
TTTT. *The rest of the Mesaraicks, not so swollen, because their Trunk is not tied.*

## TABLE I.

page 364

Yea

To *Plato.* Yea and those things which *Plato* in his *Timæus* delivers concerning the Blood, are more sutable to this Opinion than the common.

To *Aristotle* *Aristotle* himself may easily be drawn to this Opinion. For thus saith he in his Book *de Somno* chap. 3. *Every inability of Sense is not sleep, but that only which is caused by the vaporation of Meats, for that which is rarified, must needs after a sort be lifted up, and and afterward return and flow back like an Euripus: for the Heat of every Animal, must needs naturally move upwards, and when it is come aloft, it soon after circulates and descends again.*

It is to be feared, that those Writers which followed the former did not sufficiently study the motion of the blood, yea that they obscured the same, because what the former attributed to their Veins, that is to say the Veins and Arteries, these latter attributed to the Veins in opposition to, and as distinct from the Arteries. And seeing *Galen* a most excellent Physitian, was not able to reform all things perfectly: and the latter Greeks, Arabians and Latines, have too close followed or transcribed him, hence I suppose it is, that this motion of the blood hath remain'd concealed til this present Age.

*But in this Age found out afresh by* Paulus Servita. Wherein that incomparable *Paulus Servita* the Venetian, did accurately observe the Fabrick of the Valves in the Veins, which Observation of his that great Anatomist *Fabritius ab Aquapendente*, afterwards published, and out of that constitution of the Valves and other Experiments he collected this motion of the Blood, and asserted the same in an excellent Treatise, which I understand is preserved to this very day amongst the Venetians.

The most learned *William Harvey* being taught by the foresaid *Paulus Servita*, did more accurately search into this motion of the Blood, augmented the same with Inventions of his own, proved it strongly, and publisht it to the World in his own name.

Such hath been the Invention and such the Fate of this motion of the Blood.

*Publisht in Print by* William Harvey And let us now further enquire, whether *through all the Veins and Arteries* the Blood hath this motion or whether in some others it hath some other motion? Concerning which thing, that I might be more certainly informed, I contemplated the motion of the Blood in many Veins and Arteries of liveing Creatures, and I have found, besides what hath been already said of the Veins and Arteries of the Arms and Legs, that the blood is moved through the Spermatick Arteries to the Stones; through the Veins from the Stones to the left Emulgent or *Vena cava* in the right side: through the Messenterick Arteries: to the Guts: through the Veins to the *Ramus mesentericus*: through the Cæliack Arteries to the Spleen; through the *Ramus splenicus* of *Vena portæ* forthwith to the Liver: through the branches of the *Arteria cæliaca*, which answer to the following Veins to the Stomach and Call; through the Gastrick and Epiploick Veins, to the *Ramus splenicus*: that the short arterial and venal Vessels, are branches of the cæliacal Artery and the *Vena splenica*, which when they are come unto the middle space, betwixt the Stomach and the Spleen, are divided into two branches, one of which goes to the Stomach, the other to the Spleen; by this branch of the Artery the Blood goes to the Spleen, and by the branch of the Stomach to the Stomach; and by the venal branches to the Trunk of *Vas breve*, from the Stomach and the Spleen it is moved through the emulgent Arteries to the *Vena cava*: by the coronal Artery of the Heart into the Vein; out of the coronal vein of the Heart, into the *Vena cava*: by the Intercostal Arteries into the *Pleura*; out of the *Pleura* by the Veins into the *Azygos*, and thence into *Vena cava*. And this I found by binding the Veins and Arteries in live Anatomies; which did swell in that part which did look towards those parts, from which we have shewed the course of Blood to come, and the other parts did not only grow empty but quite settle and fall in. And I was very carefull, not to bind an Artery with a Vein, for then the Artery swelling towards the Heart, would have raised the Vein above it, and so it would have seemed that the Vein was filled on both sides the Ligature.

*Now this motion is made through all the Arteries and Veins of the Body.*

*Tea of the Head.* Now in the *Head* and Neck I saw, and that in a live Goose most easily and in an Hen, that the jugular being tied, did swell from the Head towards the Ligature, and was emptied from the Ligature towards the Cava. so that it is there also manifest, that the Blood returns from the Head through the Veins into the Heart. But if it should come to the jugular veins I cannot determine, since by reason of the hardness of the Skull, I could not accurately dissect the living Brain, but that the Beast would first die: but credible it is nevertheless, that it flows through the carotick and cervical Arteries unto the four Ventricles of the Brain, for they have passages open to the said Ventricles. For those most learned Men *Franciscus Sylvius* and *Franc. Vander Shagen*, have told me, that the fibrous substance being pul'd away which frequently is found congealed in the Veins and Arteries of dead bodies; when it was drawn back in the carotick Artery, it discovered a certain motion, as far as to the third Ventricle of the Brain. and verily, since the blood out of the Ventricles, through the jugular veins, flows back into the Heart, the Ventricles cannot receive it elsewhere, then from the Arteries. But whether the Arteries do shed it immediately into the Ventricles, or into the branches which arise from the Ventricles, is not very easily discerned; because the Arteries, are hardly distinguished from those little branches, seeing the Arteries also have only one Coat in the Brain: but I am apt to beleive, that the Arteries empty their blood, into those little branches of the Ventricles, rather then into the Ventricles themselves; because I have observed those vessels which are inserted into the ventricles, to be greatest near the ventricles, as branches are wont to be at their Original.

*Tea in the Child in the Womb.* And thus it is in grown persons; but in the *Child in the Womb*, the Circulation seems to be somwhat otherwise, and thus I conceive it is. The Blood out of the Mothers Womb, does not go into the Umbelical Arteries, which according to the Observation of *Aranzius*, are not joyned to the Womb; but it enters into the Umbelical Vein, and from thence into the Liver, the Vena cava, and right Ventricle of the Heart; for the Heart beats in the Child though it be imperfect. Out of the right Ventricle it goes into the Vena arteriosa; but because the Lungs do not breath, and therefore are not opened, they cannot receive the blood plentifully, nor send it to the Arteria venosa; and therfore it goes out of the Vena arteriosa by a peculiar passage into the Aorta, and likewise by a peculiar passage or hole of the Vena cava getting into the Arteria venosa, tis poured into the left Eare of the Heart, and into the left Ventricle thereof. Out of the left Ventricle of the Heart, just as that out of the *Vena Arteriosa*, it enters into the *Arteria Aorta*; so that in the Womb-child Nature useth the two Ventricles for one, least in the Child in the womb, which ought to have much but no intense heat, and which must not be dry, the Blood being twice boyled should be burnt, being destitute of the cooling and Fanning action of the Lungs. Out of the *Arteria aorta* the Blood goes to the Umbilical Arteries; for they being bound, the part towards the Child, doth pulse and swell: the other part towards the Womb is void of pulsation. Out of the Umbilical Arteries it goes to the Placenta or Womb-cake; where the

Arteries are joyned to the Veins by manifeſt *Anaſtomoſes*, and by thoſe *Anaſtomoſes* the blood entring into the Vein, is again carried through all the forementioned journey.

*It goes out of the Arteries into the Veins.*

*By Anaſtomoſes.*

Theſe are the Veſſels by which the blood flows from Heart. But from the *Veſſel* of the *Arteries* it goes into the *Veins* after a double manner; firſt and moſt uſually by *Anaſtomoſes*, by which the Arteries are joyned to the Veins, which *Anaſtomoſes* are ſometimes great and in the greater Veſſels as about the Spleen, in the Bladder, in the Womb, in the Womb-liver. And the moſt accurate *Beſſerus* obſerves the like Anaſtomoſis of the *Arteria aorta* into the *Vena cava* of the Belly, but I could never yet be ſo happy as to find it in the Body of Man or Beaſt. And therefore they are not all in the extream parts of the Body, but ſome in the middle parts: and therefore we ſee in a Cripple whoſe limbs are cut off, the ſame motion of the blood continued out of the Arteries into the Veins. Secondly it ſeems alſo poſſible that Blood may paſs out of the Arteries into the Veins, through the fleſh it ſelf: for we ſee when a Vein is opened till the colour change, Inflammations fall, becauſe the Blood ſhed out of the Veſſels, is drawn out of the Fleſh. But I conceive the paſſage of the Blood this way is but ſeldom and in ſmall quantity.

*And through the Fleſh.*

*And that motion of the Blood.*

So that it is now, I conceive, cleer, *what the motion of the Blood is*, and by what waies it is accompliſhed: it follows that we enquire, what *kind of motion it is*, and how it is performed

*Is continual.*

I have obſerved that this Motion of the Blood out of the Heart into the Veins, from the Veins into the Heart, is *continuall* never ceaſing, nor once ſtopped or interrupted for a moment of time. And the truth is, ſeeing the ſaid motion is made, as we ſhall ſee anon, becauſe the Heart receives and tranſmits, and ſeeing this motion laſts perpetually all the life long, the ſaid motion of the blood, cannot but naturally be continuall.

*Quick.*

Alſo the motion of the Blood is quick, for an Artery or Vein being bound compreſſed, it immediately ſwels and grows round and hard: and when the ligature and compreſſure are taken away, the Blood is ſeen to be ſwiftly moved.

*So that the whol Circuit or round is performed in leſs than a quarter of an hour.*

But how ſoon the Blood performs its Circuit from the Heart and to the Heart again, I cannot preciſely determine. We obſerve it is done ſooner by an Anaſtomoſis near the Heart, then by one off; nor will I be much againſt him that ſhall ſay the greateſt Circuit from the remoteſt parts of the body is performed in leſs then a quarter of an hour; for the blood paſſeth with exceeding celerity. Howbeit it goeth not ſo ſwiftly, as we ſee it leap out when a Vein or Artery is opened, becauſe then it is moved in the free and open Air; but within the Body it is compreſſed to lift up its veſſels, and to thruſt on the foregoing blood.

And therefore we ſee an Artery being cut open eſpecially if neer the Heart, is ſooner emptied then the Heart can ſupply it with new Blood.

*Nor do the Fits of Agues argue any other.*

But if this be true, why do Feavers return once in a quarter of an hour, ſeeing the Fit ſeems then to happen, when the corrupt matter comes to the Heart? whereas now ſome fits come every day, others every third, and ſome every fourth day. Truly, I will not deny, that it may fall out, that when the Corrupt matter comes to the Heart, the Fit may Happen, as *Harvey* hath an example thereof, in the 16. chapter of his Book. But I do not think it is neceſſary for ſome portion may ſlip out of the corrupt Seminary, or ſome ſooty ſtream may ariſe, and go into the heart and ſo raiſe the Feaver, as moſt Feavers are ſeen to ariſe from the Inflammation of the Parts, which the Impoſthume being opened and the Quittor removed, do ceaſe. And as ſuch kind of ſymptomatick Feavers, even ſo alſo may ſome intermitting Feavers and Agues happen, by reaſon of ſome matter ſhut up, within or without the Veſſels, which by putrefying every day, every third day, or every fourth day, regurgitating or fuming into the large Veſſels, may bring the Fit.

*Nor the Exacerbations of Feavers.*

In continual Feavers I confeſs, whoſe matter is to ſtick the larger veſſels, it is harder to ſhew a reaſon why there ſhould not be a Fit or exacerbation at every Circuit of the blood. But I conceive I may alleadg the ſame cauſe which is vulgarly given, why continuall Feavers are not allwaies alike feirce; becauſe, though the matter be ſufficiently neer the Heart, yet it doth not cauſe a Paroxiſm till it have attained a certain degree of putrefaction: and that the Fit laſts ſo long, till that putrid matter be evacuated, which touches the Heart, or ſends its Fumes thereto. But I ſuppoſe no man, becauſe of the reaſon of the return of Ague-fits, which is altogether obtruſe and unknown, will deny the motion of the blood to the very quick, which is a very manifeſt thing.

*This motion is alſo vehement.*

Beſides ſwiftneſs, the blood *hath vehemence* in its motion, which appears from what we have ſaid touching the Hardneſs and tenſion or ſtretching, which the Veins and Arteries acquire when they are bound: for nothing can be diſtended by a liquid Subſtance into an extream hardneſs eſpecially upwards, unleſs it be vehemently driven thereinto or retained therein. But this vehemence of motion is chiefly neer the Heart, removed from which it grows by degrees leſſer and leſſer, ſo that the little Arteries in the remote parts, do not pulſe, unleſs ſome impulſe of blood greater than ordinary do happen, as we obſerve to happen in Feavers. therefore it is that the Veins are not ſeen to pulſe, becauſe the impulſe of the Blood is leſs in them than it is in the ſmalleſt Arteries; and becauſe the Veins joyned to the Arteries by Anaſtomoſis, when they go from them, divide themſelves into more little branches and twigs then the Arteries do; for when Rivers are divided into divers Arms the force of the Waters motion is abated. And therefore when ſome Arms of a Vein are ſhut, either by ſomthing preſſing them, as in certain Tumors, or ſomwhat which ſtops them, as in the Varices, the blood ſlipping back by its own weight, the force of the bloods motion is then again obſerved, and the Veins are ſeen to pulſe: for I have often obſerved in the Veins which are tranſparent through the Skin, that moſt of thoſe palpitations in the parts, which are thought to proceed from Winds, are nothing elſe but the pulſations of the veins.

*Not of like vehemence in the Arteries and Veins.*

*Yet the ſame Quickneſs in both.*

And becauſe the motion is more vehement in the Arteries then in the Veins, it ſeems at firſt ſight to be *ſwifter alſo in the Arteries then in the Veins*, juſt as Men, Horſes, & other Animals which move themſelves with great labour, are through miſtake judged many times to make the greater ſpeed. For the Blood forced through the Arteries cannot all paſs through the Anaſtomoſes, becauſe it comes out of a wide place into a narrow, and therefore it is accumulated in the Arteries, they are dilated, in which dilatation they perſiſt a ſmall time. wherefore in the middle of the dilatation and in the whole time of the reſt, that ſame force doth very little further the quickneſs of the bloods motion, which motion is in the mean time

more

more free in the veins, because it comes out of a strait into a wide place, and is performed by more waies. Now Reason doth teach us in this Case, that in this motion of blood, the swiftness hereof must be alike in the Arteries and the veins; for as much blood as the Liver sends to the heart made of new Chyle, and as much nourishment as the Arteries give to the parts, must be repayed, or the Heart will at last be void of all moisture. which thing also sense confirms, for the *Vena cava* pulses so often, in that whole Tract from the Liver to the Jugulum, and therefore drives into the heart, as the Artery is observed to pulse and therefore to receive from the heart. But we shall hereof speak more anon.

*Yet of greater quickness when the Heart beats.*

Howbeit in the Arteries themselves, the blood is moved more *nimbly* when the *Heart drives it*; from which Quickness it departs by little and little, when the Heart begins to rest and is afterwards dilated. Yea and in the Veins themselves, the motion of blood is more vehement and quick when the Heart pulses; which as we have observed in live Anatomies, so have we often noted the same, when a Vein hath been opened in the Arm, in which the Veins were not much distended with the Ligature. Also the foresaid palpitations of the Veins, seem to proceed from no other cause then that the veins being straitned by the Blood sliding back, or by some other means, when the blood cannot by its force make it self way, it lifts the Vein up, which falls again, when that forcible endeavor is abated or the Vein gives a freer passage to the Blood flowing through the same.

*One portion of blood doth not allwaies go the same way.*

But I do not conceive that the blood which is once carried, for examples sake to crural Veins, is continually carried the same waies, but that when it is returned to the Heart, it is mixt with *that blood which comes out of other parts*, and is so promiscuously distributed to the parts of the Body: for so the parts may be the better nourished, if they have allwaies new blood, out of which they may draw, that which may best serve to nourish and strengthen them: so Plants do best grow, when they are transplanted into new Soils.

*The Vital Spirits are moved with the Blood.*

This is the whole Manner of the Bloods motion: and also of the the *motion of the Vital Spirits*, seeing they are mingled with the Blood.

*The Animal Spirits motion through the Nerves cannot be observed.*

I have often endeavoured to search out the *the motion of the Animal spirits*, but I could not elsewhere observe it save in the Muscles, which seemed by them to be distended broadwaies and deepwaies, and being cut asunder to tremble and pant. For the Nerves being bound neither swell nor are they extended, and being cut in sunder they shew no other motion, save that they contract themselves. And it is a very easie matter to bind the Nerves of the sixt pare, which freely wander through the Chest.

*But the motion of the Chylus easily through the milkie Veins.*

But the motion of the Chyle through the milkie Veins, is most manifest. Now it is not so continual as that of the Blood, because there is not alwaies a supply of Chylus. And when it wanders out of the Guts through the milkie Veins, it goes quicker than the Blood it self, and the Veins being bound do swell immediately. And therefore they do not long appear in live Anatomies, nor are they found in dead Carcasses; unless some obstacle do hinder the motion of the Chyle. And in that being bound they do not so swell as to grow hard, it seems to be a Sign that the motion of the Chyle, is not so vehement as that of the Blood: peradventure because the Chyle is to be moved through a smaller space, the like violence of motion was not requisite.

*What kind of motion that is.*

*The Cause of the Bloods motion.*

But it is now time to enquire into the *Causes* of *these motions*, and first of the motion of the Blood.

Whatever the Cause is, either it must be moved by an inbred virtue or faculty, or by some motion which must be referred to carrying, drawing, or thrusting.

*Is not an inbred power thereof.*

That the Blood is moved in this manner by its own proper Virtue, we cannot observe, either from the Blood received in a Basin or shed into the body, which that it should be in a moment corrupted is hard to say: nor can we see such a spontaneous motion in any inanimate thing. And whereas *Harvey* relates chap. 4. that when the Earlet was still. he observed the motion of the Blood; I likewise have observed the same, and likewise when the Heart was quiet; but with all, that motion was imparted to the Blood from the *Vena cava*, and that in the Heart from the Earlet, as we shall see anon.

*Nor is the Blood carried by the Spirits.*

That the Blood is here carried by the Spirits cannot by any Argument be proved: and they by their lightness should move the Blood upwards, which we see here to be moved downwards and sidewaies.

And therefore it remains that either the Blood must be drawn or thrust.

*Nor is it voided by reason of rarefaction only.*

That the Blood is thrust forwards, Men of excellent wits do conceive, because the Hearts heat immeasurably rarefying the same, it requires a greater place, and that therefore it dilates and lifts up the Heart; and seeing it cannot be contained in the dilated Heart, it is poured with such violence into the *Vena Arteriosa* and the *Arteria aorta*, that it distends all the Arteries and makes them pulse. And they bring this Argument for their Opinion, that the Heart of an Eel or any othe Animal when it leaves pulsing, if it be warmed by Fire held under it, it is seen to pulse again. But whether may not that pulse happen, because the Spirit being by that heat made more lusty, can better assist that cause which moves the pulse in the Heart? just as, when the Guts and Muscles are heated in a live Dissection, in which nevertheless there is no ebullion, the motion seems to be restored. For there is indeed only a certain light rarefaction proceeding from a certain warmth in the Heart; no ebullition or sudden diffusion. And truly I have often seen in strong Dogs, that the Blood doth not leap out of the Heart by reason of rarefaction; whose Heart the tip being cut off; when through the Efflux of Blood it was not half filled, being set upright, it was not filled by rarefaction: but the Constriction following, that portion of Blood which was left in the Heart, was spirted out above four Foots distance, so that my self and others by me (for many were present) were bespatterd therewith. whence it is manifest, that the Blood is driven by the part.

*It is also driven* because the Blood being so changed, is troublesome to the Heart and those parts. For if the whole Heart, or the tip thereof living and Dissected, or other greater particle, be pricked with a Pen-knife or a Pin; as often as it is pricked, so often it will move it self as by Natural motion, though it seem long ago to have lost all motion.

*But it is driven by the Vena cava into the Earlet.*

And that the Blood is driven by the *Vena cava* into *the right Earlet of the Heart*, I have manifestly seen in the dissection of live Creatures: for in all motions of the Heart, the first beginning of Motion is so or no, because the Cava was knit to the Earlet and the Heart, we cut the Heart and the Earlet quite off in living Dogs, at the *Vena cava*, and we observed, that even then the

the *Vena cava* did a very little pulse, and at every time did send forth a little Blood. And therefore the *Vena cava* hath certain fleshy fibres, for the most part, about the Heart, which elsewhere you shal not find in the *Vena cava:* but they may be seen very evidently in the *Vena cava* of a Man, an Ox, a Dog. Now the motion of the *Vena cava* is most evident neer the Heart, yet for the most part I have observed it also in live Dogs, all along that passage from the Liver and from the Jugulum, as far as to the Heart.

*Out of it into the Heart.*

The *right Earlet* drives that Blood which receives, by a certain tension and constriction into the *right Ventricle of the Heart*: for also in the Earlet the motion or constriction is a little sooner than it is in the Heart. And the right Ventricle of the Heart being cut open as far as to the Earlet, at every constriction there manifestly appeared somwhat to be droven out of the Earlet into the Heart, which also *Harvey* observes in his fourth Chapter.

*Yet is it drawn also.*

So that the Blood comes chiefly by pulsion, into the right Ventricle of the Heart. But is it not also *drawn* both into the Earlet, and the right Ventricle? I conceive so: for with part of that Blood which they receive, they ought to be nourished within: now that which must nourish, must be drawn, to the end the part may receive that Blood which is most useful to it; for by pulsion also that which is unprofitable is sent away, as *Galen* excellently (according to his wonted manner in other Cases) doth infer in his 1, 2, and 3. Books *de Nat. fac.* Now this drawing is not only of that blood which is neer, but also of that which is far off, as all parts have that faculty, least they should be soon destitute of nourishment.

But doth not the Heart also draw, because it is widened, to avoid Vacuum, as we are wont to say? It is not likely, because in its dilatation there can be no fear of Vacuum, as shal hereafter more evidently appear.

*The cause of the motion into the left Ventricle, is the same.*

As the Blood comes to the right *Ventricle of the Heart*, so also it comes *to the left*, save that we could not observe the impulse of the Blood, when the Lungs fall, to be so strong out of the *Arteria Venosa* into the left Earlet, as out of the *Vena cava*; yet there is manifestly some.

*And happens in both places at one moment.*

But the Impulse into both Earlets and into both the Ventricles, happens at one and the same moment of time: save in Creatures ready to die, in which we have observed, that both Earlets and both Ventricles do not pulse at one and the same time.

But when the Blood is thus driven into the Ventricles of the Heart, the Heart hath no motion evident to the Eye, but putting our Finger upon the Heart, we perceive somwhat to enter into the Heart, and that the Heart becomes fuller, which also *Harvey* hath observed, in his 4. Chapter. Yea, we have observed that the Earlet hath pulsed seventy, somtimes an hundred pulses, before any motion of the Heart followed.

So that we see how the Blood is moved into the Heart. Let us now see how it is moved into the Arteries.

*The Blood is driven out of the Heart into the Arteries when the Heart is contracted.*

The *Blood is moved into the Arteries by way of pulsion or driving*: for an hole being made in the Heart, we saw Blood come forth, when the Heart contracted it self; also the *Aorta* or *Vena Arteriosa* being cut off from the Heart, we saw Blood poured forth when the Heart did straiten it self; the tip of the Heart being cut off and the Heart set upright, we saw the Blood expelled and leaping out of the Heart; the Heart being cut athwart in the middle, we saw the Blood expelled in the Systole, but we never saw it go out in the Diastole. And whereas some say they have seen in live Dissections the Blood come out in the Diastole, I conceive they were deceived, by taking that to be a Diastole, which is indeed the Systole: which also that rare Anatomist *Columbus* observed in his 14. Book *de Re Anatomica.*

For in the *motion of the Heart*, we must exactly distinguish betwixt the Constriction, Quiet, and Dilatation thereof.

*The Cause of the Constriction of the Heart.*

In the *Constriction* or Systole of the Heart, the point of the Heart draws neer to the Basis, and therefore it becomes a little broader. And in his Animals in which the Aorta is inserted not into the Basis of the Heart, but a little towards the middle, as in Rabbits, Eels and such like, the Basis also of the Heart draws towards the point. Now the sides of the Heart, seated against the right and left Ribs, do come one neerer to another: so that if you shall cut off the tip of either side, so that it may hang, in the constriction it will return unto the found side and as it were into its place. But the side of the Heart against the Breast-bone, is lifted up, and especially towards the Basis: and so the whole Heart is bent and stretched on all sides, and that part neer the Basis being lift up, seems most of all to smite the breast, and to make that beating which we feel; although the point also may do it. which that great Anatomist *Riolanus* observed, in the sixth Book of his *Anthropologia* Chapter, 12

And that I might be the better assured, that this motion of the Heart now described, is the Constriction thereof. I have somtimes cut off the tip of the Heart, and somtimes cut it asunder athwart through the middle; And I manifestly saw, when it made the foresaid motion, that the Cavity of the Ventricles became less, and my Finger being put into the hole, I felt the Ventricles contract themselves to my Finger. And the self same motion which I have shewed in the Heart makes externally when it contracts it self, it shews also inwardly; save that there seems to be no motion in the *Septum intermedium*: peradventure, least the Septum to straiten the left Ventricle, should come neerer the left side of the Heart, it should leave the right Ventricle wider.

*Which is performed by help of the fibres.*

This is the Tension and Constriction of the Heart, whereby the Blood is forced out of the Ventricles of the Heart, into the *Vena Arteriosa* and the *Aorta*. And when it is languishing, it is made only by the help of those fibres wherewith the flesh of the Heart is furnished; but to make a stronger constriction, those greater fibres concur, which are seen in the Ventricles of the Heart, as I have often observed, in Dissecting the Ventricles of the Heart in live Anatomies.

Now those fibres in the Ventricles and in the substance of the Heart it self, do manifestly cause the Constriction, because they are on all sides distended broadwise, and therefore they are abbreviated as to length; just as all the musculous parts of our Body, do in like manner perform their motion: and therefore when we would chew our meat we feel our temporal Muscle swell and grow hard. By reason of this swelling the Cavity of the ventricles of the Heart, is made more strait. And this Tumor of the Flesh and greater fibres begins at the Basis, and proceeds gradually unto the tip. In regard of which Motion if *Hippocrates* in the Beginning of his Book *de Corde*, cal'd the Heart a strong Muscle, he did truly, after an elegant manner express the manner of its Motion.

*The Heart after its Constriction returns to its Natural state.*

When the Heart by its Constriction hath forced the Blood into the Arteries, it returns to its Natural state. For the point returns from the Basis, as also the Basis from the point, in those Animals which have no passage into the *Aorta*, in their basis: but the left and right side of the Heart, extends it self towards the Ribs, and that side which looks towards the Breast-bone falls in, especially there

there where it answers to the Orifice of the Aorta, and then the whol Heart *rests* and is found loose and soft.

And unless that upper side did settle and fall in, the Heart would be dilated in this return hereof to its naturall state, as is ealie to see and feel, when the heart is dissected. But that upper side must needs fall in, least the heart being emptied by foregoing constriction should admit a Vaccuum. But when out of Vena Cava and the Arteria Venosa, new blood is forced into the heart, and the Blood contained therein is rarified by heat, then the upper side rises: and the other sides, as we said before, remain extended. And so the heart is then in its *dilatation*; nor is there any other dilatation of the heart save this, to be observed.

*And then it is dilated.*

In the Particles of a live heart dissected and taken out of the Bodie, there is no other dilatation then a remission or slackening from Constriction. Indeed in those particles where constriction is ceased, there remains a seeing kind of Palpitation; but that is another kind of motion proceeding from the spirit conteined in the flesh and seeking its way out; such as may also frequently be seen in the muscles whole or dissected, in Creatures dissected presently upon their death.

So that the Dilatation and Constriction of the heart happens after the same manner as that of other parts, the Stomach, Gutts, Bladder, Womb, which are distended by what is sent into them, which when they have voided, they return to their naturall state.

Now we cannot better observe this motion of the Heart, then in those Beasts which have only one ventricle in their Hearts, or if they have two, when the Animals begin to languish, otherwise when the Creatures are strong, the motion is hardly discerned because of its Swiftness; also because the two ventricles present those motions doubled; and because the Cone of the right ventricle, seeing it is less high then the left, when it is drawn back to the Basis, it makes an oblique motion.

But let us return to our business, and let us see further how the blood out of *the Arteries near the Heart*, is spread through the Arteries of the whol Body, now it is done by a manifest Impulse or driveing or any Artery being bound, at the Ligature it swels very much, and is stretched to an extream hardness.

*The Blood is driven out of the greater into the lesser Arteries.*

Notwithstanding the *Heaviness* of the Blood further its motion downwards, and therefore the Heart seems to have been placed neerer the Head then the Heels.

It is also likely that the Blood is drawn into all the Arteries, to the end that they and their neighbouring parts may be nourished with convenient Blood.

*Yet it is drawn withall.*

But that the Arteries should draw by being widened, there seems no necessity: for the Blood may be driven forward only by impulse, and the Arteries may drive the same: for an Artery being broke and an Aneurisma made in the Flesh, the Aneurisma in the flesh, is perceived to pulse after the same manner as the Artery; wherein manifestly the flesh doth not draw the blood by dilatation, but the blood is driven into the same. A miserable example whereof we latlely saw in the most expert Dr. *Johannes Elemannus*, in whom an Artery breaking, the Aneurisma possessed a fourth part of his Chest. And the like was observed by *Riolanus* in the 6. Book of his *Anthropologie* chap. 12. And that indeed the pulse of the arteries is caused by the Impulse of Blood, the waving, creeping, pismire pulses seem to shew. and many others which manifestly imirate the motion of the Blood in the artery.

*Not necessarily by dilatation of the Artery.*

True it is indeed, in that Book of *Galen whether blood be contained in the Arteries*, in the last words it is asserted, that an hollow Reed being thrust into the arteries, and the artery tied above the Reed, the artery doth not pulse beyond the ligature, though the blood may be driven through the Reed. But I suspect that place is mained and wants somwhat, because after the manner there described, the operation can very rarely and hardly succeed. for a free artery is there prescribed to be opened out of which when it is open, every body knows what a world of blood leaps out. so that either the Creature will die, or through its weakness, no arteries at least not those more remote can pulse.

*Nor doth* Galens *experiment shew any other thing.*

But suppose the place is perfect, and that the operation shall succeed as it is there described, it may happen that the Creature quite languishing because of the flux of Blood, the pulse might be felt on this side the Reed, because the Reed being thrust in, rendring the artery more narrow, might in part stop the blood, so that it might easily fill the artery and list it up. So I have many times seen, arteries which shewed either a languishing or no pulse, manifestly pulsing, when they were compressed not very far from the Heart. But *Galen* observed no pulse beyond the Reed, because through the Reed much narrower than the artery, the artery received little blood. And that such a thing might easily happen, I have observed in a Rabbit. into the *Aorta* whereof, it being tied on each side we thrust a little Reed, but because the ligature being loosed the Beast died, we thought it not worth the while to bind the artery above the Reed and we thought we saw some pulse as far as to the Reed, but we could perceive none beyond the Reed.

Moreover we could never make that experiment succeed, because it is not easie to find a convenient Artery. and when it is found and duly opened, the Creature most speedily dies, either because of Bloodshed, or (which may seem strange) by Convulsions.

So that we can see no other, but that the Blood being forced may pass through the Arteries, and that by it also the Arteries may be distended. nor seems it necessary to call any other Cause to make the Arteries pulse, seeing the forealleadged Cause may suffice. Yet Nature is wont frequently to call more assistances to the performance of her works then do indeed to us seem necessary, who cannot alwaies dive into her Secrets. So here, some tokens are observed by *Galen*, that besides that dilatation they receive from the impulse of the Blood, the Arteries do also endeavor their own dilatation. That all the Arteries of the body both in sound persons and Creatures, and in live Anatomies. do pulse in one and the same moment: but nothing that is moved to distance, can be every where at one moment; and therefore not at the same moment make distention every where. The Guts when blown up by Anatomists, or Pudding-makers, are seen to be distended in the parts neer the Blower first, before the remoter parts are distended. True indeed it is, that the Arteries are not empty as the Guts, but they are distended being partlyfilled with blood: yet, seeing that blood which comes out of the Heart must thrust forward that which is next it, and *that* again that which is next it, and so forward untill the Arteries be filled and distended every where, it doth not seem, though the motion be performed out of a wide into a narrow place, that it can be performed in one moment. just as we see twenty stones which the Boys set in a row, the greatest first; when the first is beaten down, all the rest do not fall in one moment. And therefore we may suspect, that the Diastole of the Arteries, is caused by the impulse of blood. and by their own proper dilatation: and that both these causes contribute to the bloods motion.

*Yet* Galen *hath certain tokens that the dilatation of the Arteries helps their motion.*

De usu puls. *cap.* 5. An sanguis in Art. *c.* 8.

Hence also it appears, that this same impulse of the Blood is made only by the

*But the impulse is here caused only by the Hart.*

the Heart, nor does one part of the Arteries drive it into another: for that part which drives by constriction, that cannot in the same moment be dilated, but all the Arteries are dilated in a moment.

*Out of the Arteries into the Veins, out of the smaller Veins into the greater*

And thus the blood is moved through the Arteries; and out of the *Arteries* into the *Veins*, out of the lesser Veins into the greater and the *Vena cava* it self, the blood is moved also by *Impulse*. For any Vein being bound in living Creatures, it falls in, and growes lank towards the Heart, and it is filled in that part which is more remote from the Heart,

*It is driven.*

*By every Particle of the Vein.*

And this same Pulsion to the Heart, seems to happen from any part of a Vein, for a Vein bound or compressed in a living Arm it is not only stretched in the part remoter from the Heart, but also in the rest there of nearer the Heart it falls in and is emptied; which nearer part if you also tie that also will be distended beyond the Ligature, and will swell. Now this Pulsion is caused by the Fibres whereof the Veins are constituted.

*And drawn.*

We conceive nevertheless that the veins do also draw, least they should receive the blood without choice, and that they may draw to themselves that which is most useful: howbeit they seem to receive the blood more by Pulsion then by traction or drawing, because the veins being bound, are wonderfully distended.

In the *Vena cava* there is a certain Store-house of Blood, wherein blood is treasured up for future Uses, when it is more plentiful then that all of it need be sent unto the Heart.

*So also by Pulsion the Chyle is moved out of the Stomach.*

And all these are Causes of the Natural motion of the blood. To which the *causes of the motion of the Chyle*, are not unlike: for the *Stomach* contracting it self by its Fibres, *squeezes* out as much Chyle as is digested, And by that pressure it seems also to open the Pylorus: for there seems not to be any spontaneous motion in the Pylorus, such as is in the Stomach or the Guts.

*Through the Guts.*

The Chyle staies not long in the *Guts*, but is presently driven out *by the constriction of the transverse Fibres*: and while many fibres, and which mutually follow one another, do act, the Chyle is pressed, nor can it all slip downwards, whereupon some of the pressed chyle slips into the milkie Veins; yet least that the Chylus should slip too soon to the Fundament, it is stopped by the constriction of the lower transverse Fibre: and being thus shut, and compressed above and beneath, it is pressed through the wrinkled Coat of the Gut, as it were through a strainer into the milkie Veins. Now this same constriction of the transverse Fibres, happens in all the thin or small Guts, and in all the thick or round Guts, in a certain order, and at certain distances of time.

*By the milkie Veins.*

That the Chyle is moved through the *milkie Veins* into the Veins of the Portæ, into the Liver, and sometimes also into the *Vena cava* by pulse, a Ligature does shew.

*And also drawn.*

It is also likely that Chyle *is drawn* out of the Guts and milkie Veins, for it is moved more swiftly out of them, then the Guts or *Venæ lacteæ* do seem to drive or force the same.

The Chylus in the *Ramus mesentericus*, *Vena portæ* and *Vena cava*, being mingled with the blood, is moved by the same cause, which there as we have said, does move the blood.

*Why not through the mesaraick Veins.*

Now the Chylus is carried by peculiar Veins, rather then by the Mesaraicks which contain blood, because the Mesaraicks being to admit blood, were to have their mouths opened into the Guts, through which the blood would easily have slipt into the Guts. Nor could the drawing Faculty prevent that inconveniency, which is here much obscurer and much weaker then the expulsive Faculty.

As this Motion of the Chylus, so also the circular motion of the blood hath its uses and conveniences, of which the principal seem to be these.

*The motion of the blood serves for the utility of the parts.*

That by the continual passage ther- of through the Heart, the blood is also continually heated, and whiles som blood goes through seldomer, other blood oftner, there is found in the Veins blood of all Qualities: which while it is carryed into all parts, and Nature unlocks, and offers all the treasure to them, they may be the better heated, and receive that Nourishment, which may be most convenient to feed and strengthen them.

*And that it may be preserved.*

But this motion does also contribute much to the preservation of the blood in its integrity, free from corruption or putrefaction: for

*Vitium capiunt, ni moveantur aquæ.*
*Unstirred waters easily corrupt.*

which is also most true of the blood, as we may daily see when the Vessels are obstructed.

*And to perfect the Blood.*

It contributes also to the perfection of the Blood, whilest by continual motion, it is rarified and attenuated. But it makes chiefly towards it perfection, in that the blood is somtimes attenuated, grows hot, and is rarified in the Heart, and somtimes again it is condensed and congeales as it were in the Habit of the Body. For no part in the Body is hotter then the Heart, and none less hot then the Habit of the Body. And therefore there happens a certain Circulation as it were, not unlike to that whereby the Chymists make their Spirits most subtile and perfect. For the blood which is attenuated by heat, after it is condensed by cold, is able to persist in that thinness, nor does it return to its old thickness: from which degree of thinness in tract of time it attains to a greater by means of heat, in which being again condensed by cold, it comes to continue; and so at last it becomes most fit for the making of vital Spirits.

*The blood which is carried to nourish the part, is not moved circularly.*

For this end the blood is moved circularly; but hath it not therefore elsewhere another motion? Out of the smallest Arteries the blood is carried right out into the flesh, that it may constitute the nameless humor, the *Rot*, *Gluten*, and *Cambium*, nor does it return hither from whence it came, least the blood flowing through the least, should hinder these humors from being gleued and assimilated to the parts.

It flows also somtimes chiefly, because it is driven out of the Arteries into the flesh: and frequently also the chief moving cause is attraction: for the bones cannot without attraction receive the thicker part of the humor for their nourishment, and leave the remaining thinner part thereof, unfit to nourish them in the Vessels.

Some

## TABLE. III.

## The FIGURE Explained.

AAAA. *The vulgar meſaraick Vein and Arteries, derived from the Gate-vein called* Porta.

BBBB. *The milkie Veins diſcovered by* Aſellius.

C. *The Glandule or Kernel in the Centre of the Meſentery which* Aſellius *calls the Pancreas or Sweetbread, to which all the Branches of the milkie Veins do go.*

DD. *Two milkie Branches greater then the reſt, aſcending by the Porta, and inſerted into the Liver by the Opinion of* Aſellius.

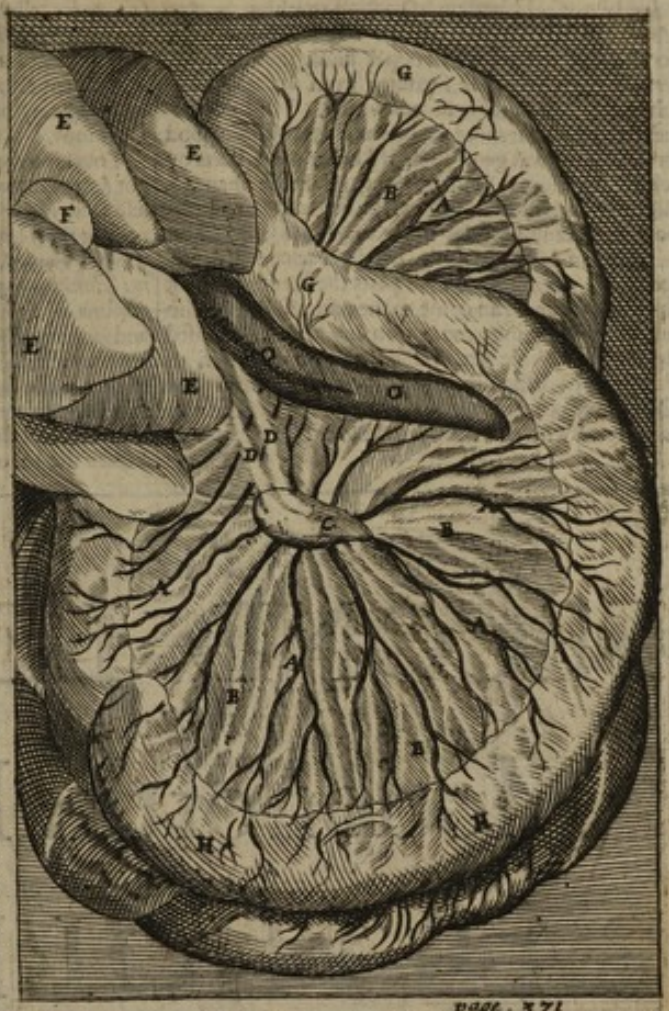
EE. *The Lobes of the Liver.*

F. *The Gall.*

GG. *The empty Gut called* Jejunum.

HH. *The Ilium.*

OO. *Glandulous Fleſh in Dogs, by the Duodenum and the Entrance of the Jejunum, which may be called in Dogs, the lower part of the Pancreas.*




page. 371

*Nor is there any other motion of the Blood, whereby the Valves of the Heart are ſhut.*

Some alſo there are who ſuppoſe, that the blood being carried out of the Heart does go back, and return again by the Arteries into the Heart. Which they are therefore moved to think, that they may be able to give a mechanick cauſe, why the Valves of the Heart in the Orifice of the Arteries, do fall down and are cloſed up. I truly have alwaies eſteem *that* a rare deſign of *Eraſiſtratus*, to explain all things that happen in our Body mechanically, but I account it a raſh thing in him to meaſure the Wiſdom of God by his own Wiſdom. And theſe are to be counted Engins, which evident reaſon, and eſpecially Senſe do ſhew to be ſuch. Here contrariwiſe our Senſes obſerve, that the blood goes through the Arteries from the Heart not to the Heart; and in a rare and languiſhing Pulſe, that the Artery does not ſwell laſt, where it is knit to the Heart, as it ſhould do if that Opinion were true, but firſt of all. Alſo that the Valves are not ſhut by the blood running back, we have this ſign, that in caſe the Artery be bound two fingers from the Heart, and it be ſo opened betwixt the Ligature and the Valves, that the blood may freely paſs forth, and therefore go neither backwards nor forwards; yet the Valves may be divers times well faſtned, the Heart ordinarily moved, and ſo as not to ſhed forth the blood, ſave in its conſtriction. And therefore if I would here allow of any mechanical Motion, I ſhould admit the common Opinion, which ſaies, that the ſhutting, as of the heart, ſo of the Valves, is performed by contraction of the Fibres. For that ſame contraction of the fibres in the Heart, is every where obvious to the Eye-ſight.

*Nor in Paſſions of the Mind.*

But we have truly no ſign or token that the Blood is any other waies directly moved through the Veins from the Heart, or through the Arteries to the Heart. In Joy, truly, the Humors move outwards; but this may be beſide by the Arteries alone. And in Sadneſs, the Humors may be moved inwardly through the Veins alone: and they muſt needs do ſo, for ſeeing the Pulſe does not ceaſe in Sadneſs, and by the Pulſe there goes continually ſomwhat through the Arteries outwards, hardly can any thing be moved through the Arteries inwards, and to the Heart.

*Yet there is another prætarnatural motion thereof.*

Howbeit, prætarnaturally the humors have another motion beſides that which we have here deſcribed, whileſt by their lightneſs or other activity, they mount upwards, or by their weight deſcend downwards, as is manifeſt in ſuch as have the *Varices* ſo called. Alſo that way being ſhut up, by which they were wont to be moved, they are compelled to ſeek another. So in a Duck I have divers times ſeen in the Veſſels of the Breaſt, the blood parti-coloured, ſome whiteiſh, ſome reddiſh, which the Artery being contracted, was moved to and from the Heart, in divers ſides of the Artery;

ry: but that motion lasted not long, nor did the blood ever enter into the Heart by that motion.

And thus (most worthy Friend *Bartholine*) I conceive I have answered your Question touching the motion of the Blood. Whereunto I did enquire more scrupulously, that I might better know the Nature of the Humors, and their Defluxe: from which Flux of Humors innumerable Diseases arise. I did also believe that I might more exactly understand how good or bad blood was generated, if I knew those Parts by which the Humor passing along might be changed. Also I conceived that I should be better able to judg, how very many Diseases ought to be cured, if I knew which Vein being opened, would evacuate such and such parts, and through what parts the Remedy ought to pass, before it can come to the part affected? Also innumerable things came into my mind, diffused through our whole Art, as the Doctrine of Pulses, of Feavers, of Inflammations, their Generation and Cure, and other things, which made me desire to be acquainted with this Motion of Blood.

And the Experiments whereby I was brought into this Opinion, are so evident, that I doubt not to affirm, that learned and discreet Physitians will henceforwards, allow of this Motion of the Chyle and Blood. Howbeit in some Causes and in certain circumstances of this Motion, I cannot promise the like Agreement: for sundry men are Naturally inclined by a disparity of their Judgments, to embrace different Opinions.

Touching the truth of these Experiments, you cannot (my *Bartholine*) make Question, who have your self seen many of them: and there were frequently present most learned Doctors of Physick not unknown to you, *Franciscus Sylvius*, *Johannes Van Horn*, *Abasuerus Schmitmerus* most accurate Dissecters; and those persons of solid Learning *Franciscus vander Schagen*, and *Antonius Vockestaert*: nor were they only present, but they also afforded their Counsels and Handiwork to help make the said Experiments: to whom in that respect I am very much obliged. And so farewel most learned *Bartholine*, and persist to love me. Dated at *Leyden* the 10. of the Kalends of *October*, *Anno* 1640.

# THE SECOND LETTER OF THE Motion of the Blood, To the said BARTHOLINUS.

SUch is the Fate of Writers, that they are compelled to write when they are unwilling: that so they may answer their Adversaries, unless they would rather be wanting to themselves, or the cause which they defend. A certain learned Man would needs extort this from me, being busied about far other matters. For those Theses which he had before objected against, he hath endeavored now lately by a peculiar Writing to refute. In which Writing there are many witty and learned Passages: but I find that fault in the Author, which the Ancients found in *Albutius* the Rhetoritian, who made it his Business in every Cause he pleaded, not to say all that should be said, but all that he was able to say. Also that Motion of the Blood which is evident in live Dissections, he hath never labored to observe: just as if the matter might better be conceived by the Mind, then he could see it with his Eyes. But these and other things concerning those Theses, I leave to the Care of *Roger Drak* who is now a Doctor of Physick at *London*, a Man of an acute Wit and solid Learning: I shall only meddle with such things as shall seem to oppose the circular Motion of Blood. And in the first place, what it is that Blood-letting does teach us in this Case, concerning which that learned Man hath observed things worthy of Consideration.

*The occasion of this second Letter.*

*Answer to the Objections.*

*That in Blood letting the Vein does swell at the binding.*

*Not through Pain.*

A Surgeon being to open a Vein, makes a Ligature upon the Arm, that the Vein may swell. The Vein *that* swells, not on this side the Ligature towards the heart, but on that side the Ligature, which is furthest from the Heart. Now the Cause of that Tumor is not Pain, caused by binding the part: for oftentimes little, and commonly no pain in the part bound. And when the Arm is pinced or pained by Burning or otherwise, it hath its Veins for the most part less swollen, then upon a simple and bare Ligature.

*Not by straining the Vein;*

Nor is it more likely, that the Veins swell upon the Ligature, because through the Veins which are straiter because they are bound, greater plenty of Blood comes and with more swiftness from the Liver; as about Bridges and in other places, Rivers being straitned do run more swiftly. For the Water of a River being gathered

thered together in a narrow place, is manifeſtly lifted up into a ſwelling, from which when it falls, it goes the faſter: but the arm being bound the contrary happens; for they are not the Veins nigheſt the Liver, from which blood ſhould come, but thoſe fartheſt from the Liver which are moſt diſtended.

*But becauſe the motion of the Blood is ſtopped*

It remains therefore, that the Veins ſwell beyond the Ligature, becauſe the motion of the blood running from the ſmal veins into the Heart, is ſtopped by the Ligature, and being there gathered together, diſtends the Vein. But to the end I might be more certain hereof, I bound the jugular and crural branch, in living Creatures very ſtrongly with a thred, ſo that no blood might paſs by; and I opened that part of the Vein which was more remote from the Heart, it bled plentifully, ſwiftly, vehemently, ſoon after I looſed the band, and cut the Vein aſunder through the middle, and the part thereof fartheſt from the Heart being drawn out of the body upwards, preſently and ſwiftly fell a bleeding: whilſt in the mean time the part of the Vein neereſt the heart, being ſomwhat elevated, leaſt the Creature ſtrugling with pain ſhould eaſily force out the Blood; firſt it voided but little, and afterwards no blood at all. whence it ſeemed to me apparent, that the blood came out of the veins far from the heart, into thoſe near the ſame, and not out of the greater Veins into the leſſer: unleſs haply ſome neighboring blood finding a way might ſlip away. Any one may eaſily trie as much in opening a vein in the Arm: for if he force the blood above the Ligature upwards with his finger, ſo that the vein appear empty, yet ſhall he ſee the blood yſſue out as faſt as ever below the Ligature; which could not come through the upper branch being at preſent empty.

*Nor doe the Arteries ſwel becauſe of the Ligature.*

But if the Vein be thus diſtended with blood, which is moved from the ſmaller veins to the Heart, how can the artery be diſtended upon the ligature, which divers excellent Pyſitians relate to have been ſo diſtended, that it has been opened inſtead of a vein; the truth is, the Arttery doth not ſwell upon the Ligatures being made, unleſs where it is neer the Heart, but farther of it falls in ſomwhat, and is diminiſhed, as I have an hundred times and oftener eperimented in the Diſſections of living Anatomies. But I do not think it was any of the authors, meaning that the remoter part of the Artery was diſtended by means of the Ligature, but that their meaning only was, where the Vein did not appear which was to be opened, that there the place where it lay was to be ſought by feeling; and that by a pit, by motion and and ſwelling of the Blood it was to be found: and when wee feel a ſwelling, or otherwiſe diſcover the ſame, we ſhould not preſently conclude that there was the Vein; for it might be an arterie which by reaſon of the hard binding had loſt its pulſe, and which by reaſon of the thickneſs of the Coates not quite falling in, might counterfeit a certain tumor and puffing-up as it were.

*But the Veins ſwel alſo with two Ligatures, and wherefore.*

But moreover if the Vein ſwels by reaſon of the Blood returning to the Heart, why does the vein alſo ſwel and if opened, why void Blood, when there is a Ligature made below as wel as above the place phlebotomized? which Blood cannot be thought poſſibly to come from the lower parts, by reaſon of the Ligature made below the Orifice. But this does not allwaies ſo happen, but ſomtimes, only when the Arm is tied at a certain diſtance, and then the geater Veins in the place between thoſe two Ligatures do receive that blood from the ſmaller Veins, which ſmaller veins receive it from the ſmaller arteries, which are joyned to the ſmal veins by way of Anaſtomoſis. And that indeed the blood which flows out betwixt the two Ligatures, does come by way of Anaſtomoſis out of the Arteries, this is a ſign and in that it flows more hotter and with more violence, and more eaſy and ſooner a Lipothymia or fainting fit follows the efflux hereof. And this Ligature I am wont to make uſe of, when I have ſigns that ſpirituous and hot blood is in fault, and I bid the Surgeon ſeek out thoſe Anaſtomoſes, by his Ligature: for if the Ligature be made above the Anaſtomoſis, it ſtops the motion of the blood; but beneath it does not ſtop it, but the blood leaps out hotter to the feeling of the Patient.

*Why in blood-letting they unbind the Arm, when the blood does not run apace.*

When a Vein is opened and the blood runs out, as ſoon as it begins to ſtop or come away ſparingly, or if it did ſo at firſt, we looſe the Ligature, that the blood might run out faſter. Now the Ligature ſeems not therefore to be ſlacked, to the intent the blood may come from the Liver through the Veins. For though there be little or no blood above the Ligature, yea only a pit appear in the Vein, yet will the courſe of the Blood be increaſed by looſening the Ligature, which cannot poſſibly come out of an empty Vein. But by the looſening of the band, the Blood may the better deſcend by the Arteries, and paſs out of them into the Veins; becauſe the Arteries being compreſſed by the Ligature, by looſening the ſaid Ligature become more free. Now that the Arteries are not allwaies ſufficiently at Liberty when the arm is bound, the patient himſelf can witnes, who oft perceives the pulſe of the Arterie at the Ligature, which perception the compreſſed Arterie cauſes, when it ſmites againſt the fleſh. And the Phyſitian if he examin the matter, ſhall often find a leſs pulſe in the bound arm then in the free. And I can teſtifie that I have divers times applied my fingers to the Patients wriſt, when the band was to be looſed, and obſerved, that when by looſeing the Ligature Blood came in more plentifully, the Pulſe became greater.

*Why much blood may be taken away.*

But if that Blood which flows out when a vein is opened, comes out of the Arteries into the veins, how can it be plentifully taken away? for al the Arteries pulſe equally, and therefore they ſeem to afford blood to the Veins in one and the ſame meaſure: and if ſo be the reſt of the Arteries afford ſo much to their veins, as the arteries of the Arms do to theirs and is drawn out, ſhal not the heart be ſoon deſtitute of all blood? There is truly no danger at all: For we have ſaid the blood comes as faſt unto the Heart, as it is driven thence.

Yet I cannot conceive the Blood enters all veins alike, although the Arteries ſeem to pulſe equally; for all Liquors flow more eaſily and ſwiftly into an empty place, in which there is nothing to drive and force them. and moreover in this caſe the Blood is more forcibly drawn by the emptie Veins then by the full ones.

*And more out of the Arm then out of the Hand.*

Now more ſtore of Blood iſſues from a vein opened in the cubit, then in the Hand, becauſe all that blood, which comes to the Veins through all the Anaſtomoſes of the Cubit of the Hand, muſt return through the Cubit Veins

but leſs runns through the Veins of the Hand, and that only, which comes through the Anaſtomoſes of the Hand.

*Why it flows out of a wounded Arterie not bound.*

Out of a wounded Arterie, indeed the blood preſently flowes, although it be not bound. But that happens becauſe the Blood is carryed with greater vehemence, through the arteries then through the Veins; by which vehemency, it fills the Arterie, lifts up and diſtends the Coat, and if it be opened, neceſſarily flies out.

*The Ligature being looſed, the blood ſtops, and ſometimes it runs, and why?*

Out of a Vein opened when Blood has flowed ſufficiently, we ſtop it by uniteing the Ligature, becauſe the Blood may be carried again its old way, now it is at Liberty, and the way free. But if it ſo happen, that to much blood being gathered about the Ligature, the Veins cannot give it a free paſſage; or ſo large an orifice be made, that the Blood may now goe right out that way, by which it went, when it was ſhut in, ſometimes the Band being looſened, the blood runs out in a full ſtream.

Which our Surgeons at this very day, that they may effectually ſtop, they frequently compreſs the Vein with their Thumbs a little below the Orifice, and ſo they ſtop the blood; leaſt if they ſhould compreſs it above the orifice, the blood contained therein ſhould preſently curdle, and hinder the healing up of the Vein. And they that deny that the blood may thus be ſtopped, I know not wherin we ſhould credit them, who would a uſe us in a thing obvious to the Senſes. And ſeeing the Blood is ſtopped by compreſſing the lower part of the Vein, it is truly manifeſt that the Blood aſcends from the lower parts.

*But is ſtopped by holding the finger in the Vein below the Orifice.*

*Alſo when the Vein is cut aſunder in the middle and wherefore,*

But in caſe it ſhould happen, not in Blood-letting, but by ſome other miſchance, that a Vein ſhould be ſo wounded, that the Blood could not be ſtopped, the Vein is cut aſunder in the middeſt: Whereupon, the Vein being no longer ſtretched out as before, the parts cut aſunder are drawn upwards and downwards into the fleſh, by which fleſh the mouths of the Veins are compreſſed and ſhut, and that ſo much the more eaſily becauſe the Blood can move its ſelf ſo much the more eaſily through the neighboring veins which are extended and open, the former being ſhut up, and therefore for the very ſame cauſe a ſmall Arterie being cut aſunder athwart, neither Bleeding nor Inflammation doe follow.

Which things being ſo, I conceive it is evident to all Men, that ſuch things as happen in Blood-letting, do either prove the Circular motion of the Blood, or at leaſt are not againſt the ſame.

*No parts receive Blood by the veins excepting the liver.*

But ſeeing other Things are objected againſt us, we muſt anſwer them alſo. And firſt whereas they prove that the Blood comes through the Veins, not out of the Arteries, but from the Liver; becauſe ſome parts receive Blood, and have Tumors ariſeing from the Afflux of the Blood, which parts have no Arteries, amongſt which they reckon the pleura But it does not follow, if the parts have not Arteries, that their veins do not receive their blood from the Arteries, but from the Liver. for as we ſaid, the blood out of the meſenterick and celiack Arteries, does not enter the meſenterick and ſplenick Veins, through which it is carried to the Liver: even ſo other veins may receive blood from the Arteries, which they may carrie into a part more remote from Arteries. Howbeit there is no part of the Body of any bulk, wherein the Anatomiſts do not rightly acknowledg Arteries to be. And infinite Arteries do not as yet lie concealed from their knowledg, becauſe the ſmalleſt Arteries diſperſed through the fleſh, have only one Coat as the Veins have. yea and in the Liver it ſelf, there are ſo many branches of the Arteria celiaca, as there are Branches of the Vena Portæ, and as many branches alſo there are of the Ductus cholidochus. all which have bin by Anatomiſts hitherto reckoned for Branches of Vena Portæ, becauſe thoſe three kinds of Veſſels are in the Liver incloſed in a common Coat. At leaſt no man will ever denie the Arteries of the Pleura, that has once ſeen the Cheſt of a living Creature opened; for whilſt the Cheſt is diſſected, Blood is wont to leap out of the Arteries of the Pleura.

Moreover they prove that Blood does not come out of the Arteries into the Veins, becauſe the Arm being ſo bound, that the Arteries may ſtill pulſe, the arm is not immeaſurably ſwelled below the ligature, whereas it ought to be ſo ſwollen and diſtended, if by reaſon of the Ligature nothing can flow back into the greater Veins, and at every pulſe, the Arteries drive ſomewhat into the lower veins, at every contraction, of which Contractions there are more then three thouſand performed every hour. Nevertheleſs, it may come to paſs that the Arm is not extended to ſuch a bulk when it is bound; becauſe the veins are not totally ſhut up, and the blood may by ſome creeping holes paſs under the ligature, and go into the greater veins: as wee ſee a part being cloſely bound to repel Humors, for divers months or years, is nevertheleſs nouriſhed by the blood which flows through; alſo it may come to paſs that ſo little Blood is forced in through the Arteries of the bound Arm, as that it cannot diſtend, or ſwell the ſame under a long time. for that Blood only is forced in, the veins being ſtretched with fullneſs, which is in the Arteries from the Ligature unto the Hand; for that which is above the Ligature, can enter more eaſily into the veins, by open Anaſtomoſes. yea it may come to paſs, when the veins being diſtended, do no longer permit the Blood to be forced into them by the Arteries, that that the pulſe of the Arteries is ſtopped, or that the Blood regurgitates upwards, and enters the Veins above the Ligature, through the Anaſtomoſes: the like whereto I ſaw in a Duck, as I formerly related. Unleſs one of theſe things happen, the Arm would preſently ſwel after it is bound, and a ſuffocation of the innate Heat, by the Aboundance of Blood driven in would follow. For I have often bound mine own and others Armes above the Wriſt, and I allwaies ſaw the veins diſtended, and the Fleſh to ſwell ſomwhat and grow red; and oftentimes though not allwaies, the arteries abated by little and little of their pulſe, yea and ſometimes intermitted; and afterward the red colour of the bound Arm was changed into black and blew: and therefore I preſently undid the Ligature, being frighted with this Example. A certain Country-man being wounded in the Inſide of his Arm about the Cubit, when the Village Surgeon could not ſtop the Blood, he bound the Arm extream cloſe about the Wound, whence followed an exceeding Inflammation of the lower part of his Arm, and ſuch a ſwelling, that deep pits were ſeen in the place of his fingers joynts, and within eighteen houres, the lower part of his Arm was gangreenated and ſphacelated, which *Chriſtianus Regius* an expert Surgeon did cut off, in the preſence of my

ſelf

ſelf, and *Ewaldus Screvelius* a excellent Phyſitian.

*How and why the venal blood differs from the arterial.*

Moreover they object, if the venal Blood comes out of the Arteries, how can the arterial Blood differ ſo much from the Venal? But we muſt know that it differs leſs from the venal Blood, then moſt men imagine, who from the violence wherewith the arterial Blood leaps forth do collect, the great plenty of Spirits therein, and the great rarity or thinneſs thereof: wheras that Leaping proceeds from the Force wherewith the Heart drives the Blood through the arteries; for an Arterie being opened below or beyond the ligature, the Blood comes out only dropping. And the difference between theſe two bloods is cauſed by the greater or leſs quantity of Heat and Spirits, according as the Blood is more or leſs remote from the Heart the fountain of Heat. For the Blood which is neer the Heart differs much from that which is far off, in the ſmalleſt arteries, which you can hardly diſtinguiſh from that which is in the ſmal veins. And the ſmaller veins have more thin and hot Blood, then the great ones; which any one may eaſily trie in opening veins of the Arm and Foot. yea and if the Vein be opened with a double Ligature on each ſide the orifice, as I ſaid before, the Blood will come out hotter then with a ſingle Ligature.

*How menſtrual Blood is collected about the womb.*

Now that the Blood does not go out of the ſmaller veins into the greater, they endeavour to prove by womens monthly purgations, according to their judgment, are gathered one whole month together in the Veins about the Womb; and if they are carried from the womb unto the Head, they conceive that they do not paſs through the vena cava and the Heart. Howbeit, the common and true opinion is, that about the time of the uſual flux, the blood begins to be moved to the Womb, from which motion of the humors, pains of the ſides and loines are wont to ariſe about that time, And I know by Experience, if about the time of the menſtruall Flux, if the Pulſe of the Heart and arteries can be made greater, the Courſes will flow the better, becauſe the Blood will through the arteries be driven more forcibly into the Womb,. It may nevertheleſs fall out, that the Courſes may be collected and make an Obſtruction in the Womb, and that then the Blood may not return into the greater veins, that motion being ſtopped: but that is beſides nature.

*How they are carried out of the Womb into the Head.*

And when the menſtrual blood is carried out of the Womb into the Head, the way is not inconvenient, through the Vena Cava, the Heart, and the aſcending branch of the Arteria Aorta, And that they do indeed paſs through the Heart, thoſe palpitions and light faintings do ſeem to argue, which are wont to attend upon the Courſes ſtopped.

*How it comes that the Humors paſſing through the Heart, do not cauſe great Inconveniences.*

But ſhould we not conceive it to be a dangerous thing, if all the ill humors in our bodies muſt paſs into and through the Heart. But we muſt know, that our bodies are ſo framed, as that they may be moſt convenient for us when we are in Health, and not when we are ſick. Moreover the Humor which putrefies by reaſon of obſtruction and is very bad, comes not to the Heart, becauſe its way is ſtopped up. Nor is the Heart ſo weak as to be corrupted by an evil Humor, which ſtaies not long therein: for thoſe great Phyſitians *Galen*, *Hollerius*, *Laurentius* have obſerved that the Quitter of ſuch as have an Empiema, and other ſharp and ſtinkeing Humors, do critically and withour any bad ſymptomes, paſs through the left ventricle of the Heart which many times makes for the good of the ſick Perſons, in whom that bad Humor paſſing through the Heart, is often vanquiſhed by the Vigour and Virtue hereof.

*The Objections againſt* Circumſtances.

The other Objections which they make, do only reſpect the Cauſes of this motion or certain *Circumſtances*, wherein men are wont more freely to diſſent. yet let us breifly conſider whether or no they have in them any weight, wherewith to burthen our Opinion.

*Nothing hinders, but that half an ounce of Blood may be forced out of the Heart, at every Pulſe.*

They ſay that at every contraction of the Heart, the blood is not driven out by half ounces, nor by drams, nor by ſcruples, out of the Heart of a Man, for three Cauſes: firſt becauſe that blood is too ſpirituous. but I have already ſhewed that it is not ſo ſpirituous as men imagin commonly, ſecondly becauſe thoſe little Valvs of the Heart, do only gape a little, and then are cloſe ſhut again, which alſo doth not agree with experience: for an Arterie being cut off from the heart, great ſtreams of Blood do iſſue from the Heart. Thirdly that the Arteries are too full then to be able to admit half an ounce, a dram, or a ſcruple of Blood. But that is too inconſiderately avouched; for when the Heart contracts it ſelf, all the arteries in the Body are enlarged, and that on all ſides, as I have divers times perceived with my hand, holding the naked arterie betwixt my fingers. And who will now ſay, that all the Arteries of the Body being dilated, cannot admit of a Scruple, a Dram, yea half an Ounce of Blood, more then they have?

*Nothing hinders but that the Blood may be circularly moved in the child in the Womb.*

Alſo they deny that in the child in the Womb, the blood out of the vena cava, does through the Veſſels of the heart united, enter into the Arteria aorta, and goe from thence out of the umbilical Arteries into the umbilical Vein, and return back by it into the Heart: becauſe they think this great abſurdity will follow, that one Vein ſhould carry the mothers blood and withal ſo much blood as the two umbilical arteries do bring in. As if Rivers did not frequently carry as much water in one Channel, as many Brooks are able to bring in. And here the umbilical Vein when it is but one, is much greater then the Arterie. There is often but one arterie or there are two veins; that the arteries may as much as may be anſwer to the veins. *In brute Beaſts (ſaies* Fallopius *a rare Anatomiſt) there are allwaies two Veins and two Arteries, which with the urachus or piſs-pipe do reach as far as the Navil, and the Veins do preſently grow into one before they enter into the abdomen which does reach to the Gates of the Liver, as I have obſerved in all Sheep, Goats, and Cows, whoſe young ones I have diſſected. But if they ſpeak of the Child in a Womans Womb, I avouch that ſomtimes I have not ſeen the two umbilicall Arteries, but only one Arterie and one Vein, aſcending together with the urachus to the Navil: where the Arterie is again divided into two, which afterwards go unto the ſides of Os ſacrum.* And that indeed thoſe Veſſels of the Heart are united in a Child in the Womb, that the Blood may paſs that way out of the vena cava into the aorta, Waterfowl, as the Duck, Gooſe, and ſuch like do ſeem to teach us;

*A ſign that indeed.*

which because they cannot often breath under the water, nor dilate their Lungs, nor consequently admit the blood that way, they have those unions of the vessels of the Heart, when they are grown up. Which also *Harvey* notes in his 6. Chapter.

*Though there be Anastomoses of the Veins & arteries, yet Tumors may arise.*

Also they deny the frequent Anastomoses of the Veins and Arteries, for if such there were, they say tumors would not arise by Fluxion and Congestion of Humors. As if Rivers though they have outlets, receiving over-great plenty of water, may not overflow the neighbouring fields; nor can the blood shed out of the Vessels, because it congeals, easily return into them again. Moreover Tumors are many times caused, for as much as by reason of Obstruction, the bloods passage is stopped: and because by heat and pain it is drawn into the flesh.

Now those Tumors seem rather to favour the Doctrine of the bloods circular motion, because they happen through cold, bruising, and all stoppage of the passages of the Body; and because with aqua vitæ or some such medicine, the Humors and the Tumors being often made fluid, it is by this motion of the blood drawn into the Veins; and the Tumor by that means sooner cured then by repulsion, revulsion, concoction or dissipation.

*Not by Rarefaction.*

Touching the *Cause of the Bloods motion*, difficultiesdo also present themselves unto us; and when we deny that the blood according to the Course of Nature, is so suddenly and vehemently rarified in the Heart, as to be able to move the Heart, the blood of the whole Body, and the Arteries themselves: those famous men the Ring-leaders of this opinion, do suppose that they do hereby prove in, *In that while we are cold, all the Veins of our Body are contracted, and can hardly be seen, whereas afterwards when we grow hot, they do so swell, that the blood contained in them, seems to take up ten times so much space as before it did.*

As for me, this truly is my Opinion, and thus I perswade my self, that seeing they have now divers times, so diligently endeavored in Publick to perswade men to embrace this their Opinion of Rarefaction; and have dissected and lookt into the Hearts of Living Creatures, nor have yet dared to say, that they could sensibly perceive any such Rarefaction of the blood in the Heart; I say, my Opinion is, that they could not indeed and in truth observe any such Rarefaction of the blood in the Heart, and as they would in this place maintain: And it will be easie for him that is a little verst in live Dissections, to see that there is no such rarefaction. And therefore though it might be proved, that such a Rarefaction of the blood, does somtimes happen præternaturally, yet ought not the cause of the Natural motion of the Heart, Blood and Arteries be therefore attributed thereunto.

Yet in the Example which they propound, I do not see what certainty there is that the blood by reason of its Rarefaction does possess ten times more space then before. For might not the that same Tumor of the external Veins easily arise, because whereas before the veins were contracted and straitned through cold, they could not receive much blood, and therefore they could not swell: Which cold and straitning of the vessels being afterwards taken away, and the Veins being loosned by heat, they might admit much blood, which is driven into them by the heart, and so appear ful and ing. That this is not the leaft cause of the tumor of eins, persons that are feaverish seem to teach us, who if they thrust their arms into the cold, have not their Veins so swelling, but if they keep them warm under the cloaths, they have them very full and swoln, which tumor if it came from Rarefaction, it ought to be in both cases alike, seeing that in them, the bloods Rarefaction proceeds from an internal cause.

Nor do I conceive that it is also void of Question and undoubted, that when we are first cold, and afterwards grows hot, the inner Veins as well as the outer do swell. For it is much to be suspected, that the inner parts do possess less blood and heat before; because by that cold wherewith before they were not hurt, if when we are so heated we drink cold drink, they are wonderfully weakened. Doubtless as the inner veins are oftentimes the treasury of the blood, wherein the blood is stored up for future uses, so may the external Veins be the like treasury, and they appear to be when they so swell as aforesaid.

*But by constriction of the heart the blood is driven in the Arteries.*

These men themselves when they observed that this also was much against their Opinion, that we asserted that the blood was manifestly poured out, at the constriction of the Heart; they avouch that *that* is not the constriction, but the dilatation of the heart which we mean. But that we were deluded by a certain appearance, because in our constriction, there was a constriction only at the Basis, but about the tip a true Dilatation; which invention when others saw that it could not hold, least they also should seem to desert their cause, they invented that there is a constriction indeed, in the Cavity of the whol Ventricle, but in the pits and passages of the sides, especially in Dogs, there is a certain kind of Extension and true Dilatation.

But truly, the upper part of the Heart is not seen to be dilated, when the lower is contracted: save when the Creature is dying, and that the waving motion of the Heart is caused by the impulse of the blood. Nor can we observe one Dilatation or Constriction of the Pits, another of the Cavity of the Ventricles. Only a certain progressive motion is observed in a large Heart, because the Dilatation or constriction doth evidently begin at the basis, and sensibly proceeds to the tip, although tis performed all welnear in a moment. And that I might be perfectly assured, that the Heart was contracted within likewise, on all sides, having cut off the tip of each Ventricle, I put my thumb and fore-finger into the living heart of a dog and a Rabbit: and I manifestly felt the sides of the Heart to press my fingers to the middle partition, equally in the middle, tip and Basis; and that the pits in greater Beasts, became to Sense, not bigger but lesser. And soon after the Constriction abating, that the sides of the heart above, beneath and in the middle were loosned, and the pits did feel evidently larger. But in the Septum or partition wall it self, no motion is felt, save that the Spirits seeking egress make a kind of Palpitation, when in Creatures at the last gaspe, the motion of the left Ventricle ceases, the Septum follows the motion of the right Ventricle.

*Not in the dilatation, though sometimes blood go out therein.*

Now they would have it nevertheless that naturally the blood is poured not in the widening of the heart, and ont in the Constriction or straitning therof, because in the wounded Heart of Living Creatures, the blood is seen to come out when the Heart is dilated. And this is somtimes true; but that which they thence collect, our very Senses teach us to be untrue. For either the Dog or other Creature is placed with its Head and breast elevated, and

the

the belly low, and ſo the wound is inflicted into the Heart, in which caſe, ſeeing the blood which enters through the *Vena cava* and *Arteria venoſa* into the Heart, is higher then any wound of the Heart, it, as ſoon as it is entred, which is at the beginning of the Dilatation, flows out, not becauſe of the Pulſe, but of its own heavineſs, and therefore it is not by any force made to flie out to ſome diſtance, as it happens in the Pulſe of the Arteries. But if as it ought to be, the dog be laid on his back, his head and belly reſting on the ſame plane, and the wounded Heart be raiſed with a mans fingers, as long as there is any ſtrength in the Heart, it ſooner by Conſtriction caſts out the blood it hath received, at a diſtance, then the whole Heart is filled or widened. But when the ſtrength of the heart decaies, and that it ſeldom ſtraitens it ſelf or not at all, becauſe the Earlets are more ſtrong, and do ſtill continue pulſing, even when the Heart quite gives over; the blood being driven by the Earlets enters the heart, is there, collected, and when more is come in then the Heart can contain, it goes out at the wound, not with violence, as it muſt do to cauſe Pulſation, but with a gentle motion, drop after drop. So that our Senſe can perceive no ſtrong motion of the blood, ſave in the Hearts Conſtriction.

*And being driven by all parts of the Veins, it returns to the Heart.*

Now they will have the blood to return through the Veins into the Heart, only becauſe the blood being forcibly driven to the Parts, as water poured into an horn, does regurgitate or abound back upwards, and ſo is carried back unto the Heart. But I have already ſhewed tokens, that the blood is either drawn, or driven by all the parts of the Veins: beſides which I have alſo theſe following: in that the Heart being taken out of the body, the motion of the blood, and that ſwift enough, is ſtill ſeen in the Veins. And if a Vein, yea a milkie one, be tied in two places, that ſame Ligature being only looſned, which is neareſt the Heart, while the parts are yet hot, the Chyle will ſtill be moved to the Liver, the blood unto the Heart, which could neither by any ſtep be driven from the Heart through the Arteries, nor from the Guts through the *Venæ lacteæ*; nor would it by its own fluidity move rather upwards then downwards.

*By this motion the Veins and Arteries may be nouriſhed.*

But let us anſwer the remaining objections: They ſuppoſe, if the blood ſhould be moved ſo ſwiftly, that the Veins and Arteries could not conveniently be nouriſhed. But a Dog can quench his thirſt, drinking at the River *Nilus* and running as he drinks; but here the parts ſtay at the brook ſide: and what ever they have drawn from the blood, they treaſure up in their own ſubſtance, leaſt it ſhould be waſhed away, by the running by of the humor.

*And the blood ventilated better.*

Alſo they conceit this Motion is not uſeful for the blood. Seeing it may ſufficiently be conſerved (ſince it abounds with native heat) by reſpiration and tranſpiration. Yet moſt certain it is, that the blood is yet more ventilated, if it be ſpeedily moved, and its ſmalleſt Particles alſo agitated with this motion. So the water of a lake or ſtanding pool, though it be gently moved and fanned on the Surface, yet is it corrupted; when in the mean while Rivers that are totally and in all parts agitated, are found to continue moſt uncorrupt and wholſom.

Theſe are the things (moſt excellent *Bartholine*) which I thought fit to joyn to the former, that I might ſatisfie thoſe who cannot receive a new opinion, wherin they obſerve any difficulty or obſcurity; who many times have neither mind nor time to enquire exactly into the bowels thereof. But in my Judgment, we ought not to deny things manifeſt, although we cannot reſolve ſuch as are difficult.

But I never was diſpoſed to contend and quarrel with any man about words. There are very many excellent things about which time may be ſpent; which many times alſo is not ſufficient for our neceſſary occaſions. Alſo from a Scoffer that ſeeks after her, Knowledg does hide her ſelf away, but to him that is ſtudious of the truth, ſhe comes to meet, and preſents her ſelf to his view. Farewel moſt Learned *Bartholine*. From the Univerſity of *Leyden* in *Holland*, the Kalends of *December* 1640.

FINIS.